



unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Matthew

Version 27

Copyrights & Licensing

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Date: 2020-03-25

Version: 27

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Literal Text

Date: 2020-03-25

Version: 10

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text

Date: 2020-03-25

Version: 10

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy

Date: 2020-03-25

Version: 12

Published by: unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

Date: 2020-03-25

Version: 14

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament

Date: 2020-02-20

Version: 0.12

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible

Date: 2020-02-20

Version: 2.1.11

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Copyright © 2019 by unfoldingWord

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/> or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: "The original work by unfoldingWord is available from unfoldingword.org/utn". You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at unfoldingword.org/contact/.

Table of Contents

| | |
|--|-------------|
| unfoldingWord® Translation Notes | 17 |
| Matthew | 17 |
| Introduction to the Gospel of Matthew | 18 |
| Matthew 1 | 20 |
| Matthew 2 | 47 |
| Matthew 3 | 74 |
| Matthew 4 | 93 |
| Matthew 5 | 120 |
| Matthew 6 | 172 |
| Matthew 7 | 207 |
| Matthew 8 | 239 |
| Matthew 9 | 274 |
| Matthew 10 | 315 |
| Matthew 11 | 368 |
| Matthew 12 | 405 |
| Matthew 13 | 462 |
| Matthew 14 | 526 |
| Matthew 15 | 564 |
| Matthew 16 | 605 |
| Matthew 17 | 637 |
| Matthew 18 | 665 |
| Matthew 19 | 702 |
| Matthew 20 | 735 |
| Matthew 21 | 771 |
| Matthew 22 | 822 |
| Matthew 23 | 869 |
| Matthew 24 | 911 |
| Matthew 25 | 963 |
| Matthew 26 | 1011 |
| Matthew 27 | 1089 |
| Matthew 28 | 1157 |
| unfoldingWord® Translation Academy | 1178 |
| Abstract Nouns | 1179 |
| Active or Passive | 1181 |
| Apostrophe | 1184 |
| Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information | 1186 |
| Background Information | 1189 |
| Biblical Distance | 1192 |
| Biblical Money | 1195 |
| Biblical Volume | 1197 |
| Connecting Words and Phrases | 1201 |
| Copy or Borrow Words | 1205 |
| Direct and Indirect Quotations | 1207 |

| | |
|--|-------------|
| Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding | 1209 |
| Double Negatives | 1212 |
| Doublet | 1214 |
| Ellipsis | 1216 |
| End of Story | 1218 |
| Euphemism | 1220 |
| Exclusive and Inclusive 'We' | 1222 |
| First, Second or Third Person | 1224 |
| Forms of You | 1226 |
| Generic Noun Phrases | 1227 |
| Hendiadys | 1229 |
| How to Translate Names | 1232 |
| Hyperbole | 1236 |
| Hypothetical Situations | 1240 |
| Idiom | 1243 |
| Imperatives - Other Uses | 1245 |
| Inclusive and Exclusive "We" | 1248 |
| Introduction of a New Event | 1250 |
| Irony | 1253 |
| Litotes | 1256 |
| Merism | 1258 |
| Metaphor | 1260 |
| Metonymy | 1266 |
| Nominal Adjectives | 1268 |
| Numbers | 1270 |
| Order of Events | 1273 |
| Ordinal Numbers | 1275 |
| Parables | 1277 |
| Parallelism | 1279 |
| Personification | 1282 |
| Pronouns | 1284 |
| Proverbs | 1286 |
| Quotations and Quote Margins | 1288 |
| Quotes within Quotes | 1290 |
| Rhetorical Question | 1293 |
| Simile | 1296 |
| Symbolic Action | 1299 |
| Symbolic Prophecy | 1301 |
| Synecdoche | 1304 |
| Textual Variants | 1306 |
| Translate Unknowns | 1308 |
| Translating Son and Father | 1311 |
| Verse Bridges | 1313 |
| When Masculine Words Include Women | 1315 |
| unfoldingWord® Translation Words | 1317 |
| Abel | 1318 |

| | |
|---|------|
| Abijah | 1319 |
| abomination, abominable | 1320 |
| Abraham, Abram | 1321 |
| accuse, accused, accuser, accusation | 1322 |
| adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress | 1323 |
| adversary, enemy | 1324 |
| advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels | 1325 |
| age, aged | 1326 |
| Ahaz | 1327 |
| alms | 1328 |
| altar | 1329 |
| amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, ... | 1330 |
| amen, truly | 1331 |
| ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather | 1332 |
| Andrew | 1333 |
| angel, archangel | 1334 |
| anoint, anointed, anointing | 1336 |
| apostle, apostleship | 1337 |
| appoint, appointed | 1338 |
| ark | 1339 |
| Asa | 1340 |
| ash, ashes | 1341 |
| asleep, fall asleep, sleep, sleeper, sleepless | 1342 |
| assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting | 1343 |
| astray, go astray, went astray, lead astray, stray | 1344 |
| authority | 1345 |
| ax | 1346 |
| Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian | 1347 |
| baptize, baptized, baptism | 1348 |
| Barabbas | 1349 |
| Bartholomew | 1350 |
| basket, basketfuls | 1351 |
| bear, bearer, carry | 1352 |
| Beelzebul | 1353 |
| beg, beggar, needy | 1354 |
| believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief | 1355 |
| beloved | 1357 |
| Bethany | 1358 |
| Bethlehem, Ephrathah | 1359 |
| betray, betrayer | 1360 |
| bind, bond, bound | 1361 |
| blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous | 1362 |
| bless, blessed, blessing | 1363 |
| blood | 1365 |
| Boaz | 1366 |
| body | 1367 |

| | |
|--|------|
| born again, born of God, new birth | 1368 |
| bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee | 1369 |
| bread | 1370 |
| bridegroom | 1371 |
| brother | 1372 |
| burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances | 1373 |
| bury, buried, burial | 1374 |
| Caesar | 1375 |
| Caesarea, Caesarea Philippi | 1376 |
| Caiaphas | 1377 |
| call, call out | 1378 |
| camel | 1380 |
| Canaan, Canaanite | 1381 |
| Capernaum | 1382 |
| cast out, driving out, throw out | 1383 |
| centurion | 1384 |
| chaff | 1385 |
| children, child, offspring | 1386 |
| chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect | 1388 |
| Christ, Messiah | 1389 |
| church, Church | 1391 |
| clean, wash | 1393 |
| clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments | 1395 |
| comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted | 1396 |
| command, commandment | 1397 |
| commit, committed, commitment | 1398 |
| compassion, compassionate | 1399 |
| conceive, conception | 1400 |
| condemn, condemned, condemnation | 1401 |
| confess, confession | 1402 |
| consume, devour | 1403 |
| cornerstone | 1404 |
| corrupt witness, false report, false testimony, false witness | 1405 |
| corrupt, corrupted, corruption, incorruptibility, depraved | 1406 |
| council | 1407 |
| courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, ... | 1408 |
| covenant | 1410 |
| create, created, creation, creator | 1412 |
| cross | 1413 |
| crown, crowned | 1414 |
| crucify, crucified | 1415 |
| cry, cry out, outcry | 1416 |
| cure, cured, heal, healed, healing, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy | 1417 |
| curse, cursed, cursing | 1419 |
| curtain | 1420 |
| cut off | 1421 |

| | |
|--|------|
| Cyrene | 1422 |
| Daniel | 1423 |
| darkness | 1424 |
| daughter of Zion | 1425 |
| David | 1426 |
| day | 1427 |
| deceive, deceit, deceiver, deceitful, deception, illusions | 1428 |
| declare, proclaim, announce | 1429 |
| defile, defiled | 1430 |
| delight | 1431 |
| deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, ... | 1432 |
| demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit | 1433 |
| demon-possessed | 1434 |
| desert, wilderness | 1435 |
| desolate, desolation, alone, deserted | 1436 |
| destroy, destruction, annihilate | 1437 |
| devour | 1438 |
| die, dead, deadly, death, | 1439 |
| disciple | 1441 |
| divorce | 1443 |
| doctrine, teaching, beliefs, instructions, knowledge | 1444 |
| donkey, mule | 1445 |
| dove, pigeon | 1446 |
| dream | 1447 |
| drunk, drunkard | 1448 |
| eagle | 1449 |
| earth, earthen, earthly | 1450 |
| Egypt, Egyptian | 1451 |
| elder, older, old | 1452 |
| Eleazar | 1453 |
| Eliakim | 1454 |
| Elijah | 1455 |
| endure, endurance | 1456 |
| envy, covet | 1457 |
| eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever | 1458 |
| eunuch | 1460 |
| evil, wicked, unpleasant | 1461 |
| ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins | 1463 |
| exalt, exalted, exaltation | 1464 |
| exult, exultant | 1465 |
| face, facial | 1466 |
| faith | 1467 |
| faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy | 1468 |
| false prophet | 1470 |
| famine | 1471 |
| fast, fasting | 1472 |

| | |
|--|------|
| fear, afraid, dread | 1473 |
| feast, feasting | 1474 |
| festival | 1475 |
| fig | 1476 |
| fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot | 1477 |
| fishermen, fishers | 1478 |
| flesh | 1479 |
| flock, herd | 1480 |
| flood | 1481 |
| flute, pipe | 1482 |
| fool, foolish, folly | 1483 |
| footstool | 1484 |
| forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned | 1485 |
| forsake, forsaken, leave | 1487 |
| found, founder, foundation | 1488 |
| frankincense | 1489 |
| free, freed, freedom, freeman, freewill, liberty | 1490 |
| fruit, fruitful, unfruitful | 1491 |
| fulfill, fulfilled, carried out | 1493 |
| furnace | 1494 |
| Galilee, Galilean | 1495 |
| gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway | 1496 |
| generation | 1497 |
| Gentile | 1498 |
| Gethsemane | 1499 |
| gift | 1500 |
| glory, glorious, glorify | 1501 |
| goat, goatskins, scapegoat, kids | 1503 |
| God | 1504 |
| God the Father, heavenly Father, Father | 1506 |
| gold, golden | 1508 |
| Golgotha | 1509 |
| Gomorrah | 1510 |
| good news, gospel | 1511 |
| good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best | 1513 |
| govern, government, governor, proconsul | 1515 |
| grain, grainfields | 1516 |
| grape, grapevine | 1517 |
| grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place | 1518 |
| Hades, Sheol | 1519 |
| hand | 1520 |
| hang, hung | 1522 |
| hard, harden, hardness | 1523 |
| harvest, reap | 1524 |
| head | 1525 |
| heart | 1526 |

| | |
|---|------|
| heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly | 1527 |
| heir | 1529 |
| hell, lake of fire | 1530 |
| Herod, Herod Antipas | 1531 |
| Herod, Herod the Great | 1532 |
| Herodias | 1533 |
| Hezekiah | 1534 |
| high priest, chief priests | 1535 |
| holy city | 1537 |
| holy place | 1538 |
| Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit | 1539 |
| holy, holiness, unholy, sacred | 1541 |
| honey, honeycomb | 1543 |
| honor | 1544 |
| hope, hoped | 1545 |
| hour | 1546 |
| hour, moment, immediately, for a while | 1547 |
| house | 1548 |
| house of God, Yahweh's house | 1549 |
| household | 1550 |
| humble, humbled, humility | 1551 |
| hypocrite, hypocrisy | 1552 |
| image, carved image, cast metal images, figure, carved figure, statue | 1553 |
| inherit, inheritance, heir | 1554 |
| innocent | 1555 |
| instruct, instruction, instructors | 1556 |
| interpret, interpretation, interpreter | 1557 |
| Isaac | 1558 |
| Isaiah | 1559 |
| Israel, Israelite, Jacob | 1560 |
| Israel, Israelites | 1561 |
| it is written | 1562 |
| James (brother of Jesus) | 1563 |
| James (son of Alphaeus) | 1564 |
| James (son of Zebedee) | 1565 |
| Jehoram, Joram | 1566 |
| Jehoshaphat | 1567 |
| Jeremiah | 1568 |
| Jericho | 1569 |
| Jerusalem | 1570 |
| Jesse | 1571 |
| Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus | 1572 |
| Jew, Jewish | 1574 |
| John (the apostle) | 1575 |
| John (the Baptist) | 1576 |
| Jonah | 1577 |

| | |
|---|------|
| Jordan River, Jordan | 1578 |
| Joseph (NT) | 1579 |
| Josiah | 1580 |
| Jotham | 1581 |
| joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing | 1582 |
| Judah | 1584 |
| Judas Iscariot | 1585 |
| Judea | 1586 |
| judge | 1587 |
| judge, judgment | 1588 |
| just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification | 1590 |
| kind [NOT kindness] | 1592 |
| King of the Jews | 1593 |
| king, kingdom, kingship | 1594 |
| kingdom | 1595 |
| kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven | 1597 |
| kiss | 1599 |
| know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish | 1600 |
| labor, laborer, work, hard work | 1601 |
| lamp | 1602 |
| lampstand | 1603 |
| law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law | 1604 |
| law, principle | 1606 |
| lawful, unlawful, not lawful, lawless, lawlessness | 1607 |
| learned men, astrologers | 1609 |
| leper, leprosy | 1610 |
| life, live, living, alive | 1611 |
| light, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten | 1613 |
| like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if | 1614 |
| locust | 1615 |
| loins, waist | 1616 |
| lord, Lord, master, sir | 1617 |
| lots, casting lots | 1619 |
| love, beloved | 1620 |
| lust, lustful, passions, desires | 1622 |
| manager, steward, stewardship | 1623 |
| Manasseh | 1624 |
| Mary Magdalene | 1625 |
| Mary, the mother of Jesus | 1626 |
| Matthew, Levi | 1627 |
| meek, meekness | 1628 |
| member, body parts | 1629 |
| mercy, merciful | 1630 |
| messenger | 1632 |
| might, mighty, mighty works | 1633 |
| mind, mindful, remind, reminder, likeminded | 1634 |

| | |
|--|------|
| miracle, wonder, sign | 1635 |
| mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock | 1637 |
| Moses | 1638 |
| Mount of Olives | 1639 |
| mourn, mourner, weeping | 1640 |
| multiply, multiplied, multiplication | 1641 |
| myrrh | 1642 |
| mystery, hidden truth | 1643 |
| name | 1644 |
| Naphtali | 1645 |
| nation | 1646 |
| Nazareth, Nazarene | 1647 |
| neighbor, neighborhood, neighboring | 1648 |
| Nineveh, Ninevite | 1649 |
| Noah | 1650 |
| oath, swear, swearing, swear by | 1651 |
| obey, obedient | 1652 |
| oil | 1653 |
| olive | 1654 |
| on high, in the highest | 1655 |
| oppress, oppressed, oppression, oppressor | 1656 |
| ordain, ordained, ordination, planned long ago, set up, prepared | 1657 |
| pagan | 1658 |
| parable | 1659 |
| partial, partiality | 1660 |
| Passover | 1661 |
| patient, patience, impatient | 1662 |
| peace, peaceful, peacemakers | 1663 |
| people of God | 1664 |
| people, people group, | 1665 |
| perfect, perfected, perfection, complete | 1667 |
| perish | 1668 |
| persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue | 1669 |
| perverse, perversion, pervert, depraved, malicious, devious, ... | 1670 |
| Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas | 1671 |
| Pharisee | 1672 |
| Philip, the apostle | 1673 |
| pig, pork, swine | 1674 |
| Pilate | 1675 |
| pit, pitfall, trenches | 1676 |
| plant, planted, implanted, replanted, transplanted, sow | 1677 |
| possess, possessed, possession, dispossess | 1678 |
| power, powerful, powerfully | 1679 |
| praise, praised, praiseworthy | 1681 |
| pray, prayer | 1682 |
| preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation | 1683 |

| | |
|--|------|
| precious, valuable, expensive, fine | 1685 |
| priest, priesthood | 1686 |
| prison, prisoner, imprison | 1688 |
| profane, profaned | 1689 |
| profit, profitable, unprofitable | 1690 |
| promise, promised | 1691 |
| prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess | 1692 |
| prostitute, harlot, whored | 1694 |
| prostrate, worship | 1695 |
| punish, punished, punishment, unpunished | 1696 |
| queen | 1697 |
| quench, quenched, unquenchable | 1698 |
| Rabbi | 1699 |
| Rachel | 1700 |
| Rahab | 1701 |
| raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up | 1702 |
| Ramah | 1704 |
| ransom, ransomed | 1705 |
| rebuke | 1706 |
| receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance | 1707 |
| reconcile, reconciled, reconciliation | 1709 |
| reed | 1710 |
| Rehoboam | 1711 |
| reign, rule | 1712 |
| reject, rejected, rejection | 1713 |
| repent, repentance | 1714 |
| report, reported, reputation | 1715 |
| rest, rested, restless | 1716 |
| resurrection | 1717 |
| return | 1718 |
| reveal, revealed, revelation | 1719 |
| reward, prize, deserve, | 1720 |
| right hand | 1721 |
| righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, ... | 1722 |
| robe, robed | 1724 |
| rule, ruler, ruling, overrules | 1725 |
| Ruth | 1726 |
| Sabbath | 1727 |
| sackcloth | 1728 |
| sacrifice, sacrifices, offering | 1729 |
| Sadducee | 1731 |
| saint | 1732 |
| Samaria, Samaritan | 1733 |
| sanctify, sanctification | 1734 |
| sandal | 1735 |
| Satan, devil, evil one | 1736 |

| | |
|---|------|
| save, saved, safe, salvation | 1738 |
| scribe | 1740 |
| Sea of Galilee, Sea of Kinnereth, lake of Gennesaret, Sea of Tiberias | 1741 |
| seal, sealed, unsealed | 1742 |
| seed, semen | 1743 |
| seek, search, look for | 1744 |
| seize, seizure | 1745 |
| send, sent, send out | 1746 |
| serpent, snake, viper | 1747 |
| servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women | 1748 |
| set apart | 1750 |
| sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication | 1751 |
| shadow, overshadow, shade | 1752 |
| shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach | 1753 |
| shepherd, chief shepherd | 1755 |
| Sidon, Sidonians | 1757 |
| sign, proof, reminder | 1758 |
| silver | 1759 |
| Simon the Zealot | 1760 |
| sin, sinful, sinner, sinning | 1761 |
| sister | 1763 |
| skull | 1764 |
| snare, ensnare, entrap, trap, trapped, pitfall | 1765 |
| snow | 1766 |
| Sodom | 1767 |
| soldier, warrior | 1768 |
| Solomon | 1769 |
| son | 1770 |
| Son of God, the Son | 1772 |
| Son of Man, son of man | 1774 |
| sons of God, children of God | 1775 |
| soul, self | 1776 |
| spirit, spiritual | 1777 |
| staff, clubs | 1779 |
| stone, stoning | 1780 |
| strength, strengthen, strong | 1781 |
| stumble, reeling | 1783 |
| stumbling block, stone of stumbling | 1784 |
| suffer, suffering | 1785 |
| sweep | 1787 |
| sword, swordsmen | 1788 |
| synagogue | 1789 |
| Syria, Ashur | 1790 |
| tabernacle | 1791 |
| Tamar | 1792 |
| tax, taxed, taxation, taxpayers, tax collector, | 1793 |

| | |
|---|------|
| teach, teaching, untaught | 1795 |
| teacher, Teacher | 1796 |
| temple | 1797 |
| tempt, temptation | 1799 |
| tenth, tithe | 1800 |
| test, tested, testing, testing in the fire | 1801 |
| testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness | 1802 |
| tetrarch | 1804 |
| the twelve, the eleven | 1805 |
| thief, rob, robber, robbery, bandits | 1806 |
| Thomas | 1807 |
| thorn, thorn bush, thistle | 1808 |
| thresh | 1809 |
| throne, enthroned | 1810 |
| time, untimely, date | 1811 |
| to minister, ministry | 1812 |
| torment, tormented, tormentors | 1813 |
| tradition | 1814 |
| trample | 1815 |
| tremble, stagger | 1816 |
| trespass | 1817 |
| tribe, tribal, tribesmen | 1818 |
| tribulation, distresses, trouble | 1819 |
| tribute, contribution, fined | 1820 |
| trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, ... | 1821 |
| true, truth | 1822 |
| trumpet, trumpeters | 1824 |
| trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness | 1825 |
| tunic | 1826 |
| turn, turn away, turn back, return | 1827 |
| twelve tribes of Israel, twelve tribes | 1829 |
| Tyre, Tyrians | 1830 |
| understand, understanding, thinking | 1831 |
| unleavened bread | 1832 |
| Uriah | 1833 |
| Uzziah, Azariah | 1834 |
| vain, vanity | 1835 |
| vine | 1836 |
| vineyard | 1837 |
| virgin, virginity | 1838 |
| vision, envision | 1839 |
| voice | 1840 |
| walk, walked | 1841 |
| waste, wasted, wasteland, becomes weak | 1842 |
| watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out | 1843 |
| watchtower, tower | 1844 |

| | |
|---|-------------|
| water | 1845 |
| wheat | 1846 |
| will of God | 1847 |
| wine, wineskin, new wine | 1848 |
| winepress | 1849 |
| winnow, sift | 1850 |
| wise, wisdom | 1851 |
| woe | 1852 |
| wolf, wild dogs | 1853 |
| womb | 1854 |
| word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, ... | 1855 |
| work, works, deeds | 1857 |
| world, worldly | 1858 |
| worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless | 1859 |
| wrath, fury | 1860 |
| wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful | 1861 |
| year | 1862 |
| yeast, leaven, unleavened | 1863 |
| yoke, yoked, tied | 1864 |
| Zadok | 1865 |
| Zebedee | 1866 |
| Zebulun | 1867 |
| Zerubbabel | 1868 |
| Zion, Mount Zion | 1869 |
| Contributors | 1870 |
| unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors | 1870 |
| unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors | 1876 |
| unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors | 1877 |
| unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors | 1877 |
| unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors | 1878 |



unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Matthew

Introduction to the Gospel of Matthew

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of the Book of Matthew

1. The birth of Jesus Christ and the beginning of his ministry (1:1-4:25)
2. Jesus' Sermon on the Mount (5:1-7:28)
3. Jesus illustrates the kingdom of God through acts of healing (8:1-9:34)
4. Jesus' teaching about mission and the kingdom (9:35-10:42)
5. Jesus' teaching about the gospel of the kingdom of God. The beginning of opposition to Jesus. (11:1-12:50)
6. Jesus' parables about the kingdom of God (13:1-52)
7. Further opposition to Jesus and misunderstanding of the kingdom of God (13:53-17:57)
8. Jesus' teaching about life in the kingdom of God (18:1-35)
9. Jesus ministers in Judea (19:1-22:46)
10. Jesus' teaching about the final judgment and salvation (23:1-25:46)
11. The crucifixion of Jesus, his death and resurrection (26:1-28:19)

What is the book of Matthew about?

The Gospel of Matthew is one of four books in the New Testament that describe some of the life of Jesus Christ. The authors of the gospels wrote about different aspects of who Jesus was and what he did. Matthew showed that Jesus was the Messiah, and God would save Israel through him. Matthew often explained that Jesus fulfilled the Old Testament prophecies about the Messiah. This may indicate that he expected most of his first readers to be Jewish. (See: [Christ, Messiah](#))

How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, "The Gospel of Matthew," or "The Gospel according to Matthew." Or they may choose a title that may be clearer, such as, "The Good News about Jesus that Matthew wrote." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Who wrote the Book of Matthew?

The book does not give the name of the author. However, since early Christian times, most Christians have thought that the author was the Apostle Matthew.

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

What is the "kingdom of heaven?"

Matthew spoke of the kingdom of heaven in the same way that other gospel writers spoke of the kingdom of God. The kingdom of heaven represents God ruling over all people and all creation everywhere. Those whom God accepts into his kingdom will be blessed. They will live with God forever.

What were Jesus' teaching methods?

The people regarded Jesus as a rabbi. A rabbi is a teacher of God's law. Jesus taught in similar ways as other religious teachers in Israel. He had students who followed him wherever he went. These students were called disciples. He often told parables. Parables are stories that teach moral lessons. (See: [law of Moses](#), [God's law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [the law](#) and [disciple](#) and [parable](#))

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

What are the Synoptic Gospels?

The Gospels of Matthew, Mark, and Luke are called the Synoptic Gospels because they have many similar passages. The word “synoptic” means to “see together.”

The texts are considered “parallel” when they are the same or almost the same among two or three gospels. When translating parallel passages, translators should use the same wording and make them as similar as possible.

Why does Jesus refer to himself as the “Son of Man”?

In the gospels, Jesus calls himself the “Son of Man.” It is a reference to Daniel 7:13-14. In this passage there is a person described as a “son of man.” That means the person was someone who looked like a human being. God gave authority to the son of man to rule over the nations forever. And all the people will worship him forever.

Jews of Jesus’ time did not use “Son of Man” as a title for anyone. Therefore, Jesus used it for himself to help them understand who he truly was. (See: [Son of Man, son of man](#))

Translating the title “Son of Man” can be difficult in many languages. Readers may misunderstand a literal translation. Translators can consider alternatives, such as “The Human One.” It may also be helpful to include a footnote to explain the title.

What are the major issues in the text of the Book of Matthew?

The following verses are found in older versions of the Bible but are not included in most modern versions:

- “Bless those who curse you, do good to those who hate you” (5:44)
- “For yours is the kingdom and the power and the glory forever. Amen” (6:13)
- “But this kind of demon does not go out except with prayer and fasting” (17:21)
- “For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost” (18:11)
- “Many are called, but few are chosen” (20:16)
- “Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! for you devour widows’ houses, while you make a show of long prayers. You will therefore receive greater condemnation.” (23:14)

Translators are advised not to include these passages. However, if in the translators’ region, there are older versions of the Bible that include one or more of these passages, the translators can include them. If they are included, they should be put inside square brackets ([]) to indicate that they were probably not original to Matthew’s Gospel. (See: [Textual Variants](#))

Matthew 1

Matthew 1 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set a quotation from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULT does this for the quoted material in 1:23.

Special concepts in this chapter

Genealogy

A genealogy is a list that records a person's ancestors or descendants. Jews used genealogies to choose the right man to become king. They did this because only a son of a king could become king. Most important people had records of their genealogies.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Use of the passive voice

Matthew uses the passive voice very purposefully in this chapter to indicate that Mary did not have a sexual relationship with anyone. She became pregnant with Jesus because the Holy Spirit performed a miracle. Many languages do not have a passive voice, so translators in those languages must find other ways to present the same truths. (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Matthew 1:1

General Information:

The author begins with Jesus' genealogy in order to show that he is a descendant of King David and of Abraham. The genealogy continues through [Matthew 1:17](#).

The book of the genealogy of Jesus Christ (ULT) This is the record of the ancestors of Jesus the Messiah (UST)

You could translate this as a complete sentence. Alternate translation: "This is the list of the ancestors of Jesus Christ"

Jesus Christ, son of David, son of Abraham

There were many generations between Jesus, David, and Abraham. Here "son" means "descendant." Alternate translation: "Jesus Christ, a descendant of David, who was a descendant of Abraham"

son of David (ULT) the descendant of King David (UST)

Sometimes the phrase "son of David" is used as a title, but here it seems to be used only to identify Jesus' ancestry.

Translation Words - ULT

- [of Jesus Christ](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [Christ](#)
- [of Abraham](#)
- [of David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of Jesus the Messiah](#)
- [the descendant of](#)
- [and of](#) (2)
- [the Messiah](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [King David](#)

ULT

¹ The book of the genealogy [of Jesus Christ](#), [son of David](#), [son of Abraham](#).

UST

¹ This is the record of the ancestors [of Jesus the Messiah](#), [the descendant of King David and of Abraham](#).

Matthew 1:2

Abraham became the father of Isaac (ULT)

Abraham was the father of Isaac (UST)

“Abraham became the father of Isaac” or “Abraham had a son Isaac” or “Abraham had a son named Isaac.” There are different ways you could translate this. Whichever way you translate it here, it would be best to translate it the same way throughout the list of Jesus’ ancestors.

Isaac...became the father...Jacob...became the father (ULT)

Isaac...was the father...Jacob...was the father (UST)

Here the word “was” is understood. Alternate translation: “Isaac was the father...Jacob was the father” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [of Isaac](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [of Judah](#)
- [of Jacob](#)
- [Jacob](#)
- [became the father](#)
- [became the father](#) (2)
- [became the father](#) (3)

Translation Words - UST

- [of...brothers](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [of Isaac](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [of Judah](#)
- [of Jacob](#)
- [Jacob](#)
- [was the father](#)
- [was the father](#) (2)
- [was the father](#) (3)

ULT

² [Abraham became the father of Isaac](#), and [Isaac became the father of Jacob](#), and [Jacob became the father of Judah](#) and his [brothers](#).

UST

² [Abraham was the father of Isaac](#). [Isaac was the father of Jacob](#). [Jacob was the father of Judah](#) and of his [brothers](#).

Matthew 1:3

of Perez...Zerah...of Hezron...of Ram (ULT)

of Perez...Zerah...of Hezron...of Ram (UST)

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

of Perez...became the father...Hezron...became the father (ULT)

of Perez...was the father...Hezron...was the father (UST)

Here the word "was" is understood. Alternate translation: "Perez was the father...Hezron was the father" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judah](#)
- [Tamar](#)
- [became the father](#)
- [became the father](#) (2)
- [became the father](#) (3)

Translation Words - UST

- [Judah](#)
- [Tamar](#)
- [was the father](#)
- [was the father](#) (2)
- [was the father](#) (3)

ULT

³ [Judah became the father](#) of Perez and Zerah by [Tamar](#), and Perez [became the father](#) of Hezron, and Hezron [became the father](#) of Ram.

UST

³ [Judah was the father](#) of Perez and Zerah, and their mother was [Tamar](#). Perez [was the father](#) of Hezron. Hezron [was the father](#) of Ram.

Matthew 1:4

Amminadab...became the father...Nahshon...became the father (ULT)

Amminadab...was the father...Nahshon...was the father (UST)

Here the word "was" is understood. Alternate translation:
"Amminadab was the father...Nahshon was the father" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [became the father](#)
- [became the father](#) (2)
- [became the father](#) (3)

Translation Words - UST

- [was the father](#)
- [was the father](#) (2)
- [was the father](#) (3)

ULT

⁴ Ram [became the father](#) of Amminadab, and Amminadab [became the father](#) of Nahshon, and Nahshon [became the father](#) of Salmon.

UST

⁴ Ram [was the father](#) of Amminadab. Amminadab [was the father](#) of Nahshon. Nahshon [was the father](#) of Salmon.

Matthew 1:5

Salmon...became the father of Boaz by Rahab (ULT)
**Salmon...and his wife Rahab, a non-Jewish woman...
 were the parents...of Boaz (UST)**

"Salmon was the father of Boaz, and Boaz's mother was Rahab" or
 "Salmon and Rahab were the parents of Boaz"

**of Boaz...became the father...of Obed...became the
 father (ULT)**
**of Boaz...were the parents...of Obed...were the parents
 (UST)**

Here the word "was" is understood. Alternate translation: "Boaz was
 the father...Obed was the father" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

**of Boaz...became the father of Boaz by...of Obed...Ruth
 (ULT)**
**of Boaz...and his wife Rahab, a non-Jewish woman...were the parents...of Boaz...of Obed...
 Ruth, another non-Jewish woman (UST)**

"Boaz was the father of Obed, and Obed's mother was Ruth" or "Boaz and Ruth were the parents of Obed"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Ruth](#)
- [of Boaz](#)
- [Boaz](#) (2)
- [of Jesse](#)
- [Rahab](#)
- [became the father](#)
- [became the father](#) (2)
- [became the father](#) (3)

Translation Words - UST

- [Ruth, another non-Jewish woman](#)
- [of Boaz](#)
- [Boaz](#) (2)
- [of Jesse](#)
- [and his wife Rahab, a non-Jewish woman](#)
- [were the parents](#)
- [was the father](#) (2)
- [was the father](#) (3)

ULT

⁵ Salmon [became the father of Boaz](#) by [Rahab](#), and [Boaz became the father](#) of Obed by [Ruth](#), and Obed [became the father of Jesse](#).

UST

⁵ Salmon [and his wife Rahab, a non-Jewish woman, were the parents of Boaz](#). [Boaz was the father](#) of Obed. Obed's mother was [Ruth, another non-Jewish woman](#). Obed [was the father of Jesse](#).

Matthew 1:6

David...became the father of Solomon by the wife of Uriah (ULT)

David...became the father...of Solomon; Solomon's mother was the wife of Uriah (UST)

Here the word "was" is understood. "David was the father of Solomon, and Solomon's mother was Uriah's wife" or "David and the wife of Uriah were the parents of Solomon" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

the wife of Uriah (ULT)

the wife of Uriah (UST)

"the widow of Uriah." Solomon was born after Uriah died.

Translation Words - ULT

- [of David](#)
- [David](#) (2)
- [of Solomon](#)
- [Jesse](#)
- [of Uriah](#)
- [became the father](#)
- [became the father](#) (2)
- [king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of...David](#)
- [David](#) (2)
- [of Solomon](#)
- [Jesse](#)
- [of Uriah](#)
- [was the father](#)
- [became the father](#) (2)
- [King](#)

ULT

⁶ [Jesse became the father of David](#) the [king](#), and [David became the father of Solomon](#) by the wife [of Uriah](#).

UST

⁶ [Jesse was the father](#) of [King David](#). [David became the father of Solomon](#); Solomon's mother was the wife [of Uriah](#).

Matthew 1:7

**Rehoboam...became the father of Abijah...Abijah...
became the father of Asa (ULT)**

**Rehoboam...was the father...of Abijah. Abijah...was the
father...of Asa (UST)**

The word “was” is understood in both of these phrases. Alternate translation: “Rehoboam was the father of Abijah, and Abijah was the father of Asa” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of Abijah
- Abijah
- of Rehoboam
- Rehoboam
- of Asa
- Solomon
- became the father
- became the father (2)
- became the father (3)

Translation Words - UST

- of Abijah
- Abijah
- of Rehoboam
- Rehoboam
- of Asa
- Solomon
- was the father
- was the father (2)
- was the father (3)

ULT

⁷ [Solomon became the father of Rehoboam](#), and [Rehoboam became the father of Abijah](#), and [Abijah became the father of Asa](#).

UST

⁷ [Solomon was the father of Rehoboam](#). [Rehoboam was the father of Abijah](#). [Abijah was the father of Asa](#).

Matthew 1:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- of Uzziah
- Asa
- of Joram
- Joram
- of Jehoshaphat
- Jehoshaphat
- became the father
- became the father (2)
- became the father (3)

Translation Words - UST

- of Uzziah
- Asa
- of Joram
- Joram
- of Jehoshaphat
- Jehoshaphat
- was the father
- was the father (2)
- was an ancestor (3)

ULT

⁸ [Asa](#) [became the father of Jehoshaphat](#),
and [Jehoshaphat](#) [became the father of](#)
[Joram](#), and [Joram](#) [became the father of](#)
[Uzziah](#).

UST

⁸ [Asa](#) [was the father of Jehoshaphat](#).
[Jehoshaphat](#) [was the father of Joram](#).
[Joram](#) [was an ancestor of Uzziah](#).

Matthew 1:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Uzziah](#)
- [of Hezekiah](#)
- [of Jotham](#)
- [Jotham](#)
- [of Ahaz](#)
- [Ahaz](#)
- [became the father](#)
- [became the father](#) (2)
- [became the father](#) (3)

Translation Words - UST

- [Uzziah](#)
- [of Hezekiah](#)
- [of Jotham](#)
- [Jotham](#)
- [of Ahaz](#)
- [Ahaz](#)
- [was the father](#)
- [was the father](#) (2)
- [was the father](#) (3)

ULT

⁹ [Uzziah](#) [became the father of Jotham](#),
and [Jotham](#) [became the father of Ahaz](#),
and [Ahaz](#) [became the father of](#)
[Hezekiah](#).

UST

⁹ [Uzziah](#) [was the father of Jotham](#).
[Jotham](#) [was the father of Ahaz](#). [Ahaz](#)
[was the father of Hezekiah](#).

Matthew 1:10

of Manasseh...of Amon (ULT)

of Manasseh...of Amon (UST)

Sometimes this is translated "Amos."

Translation Words - ULT

- of Josiah
- of Manasseh
- Manasseh
- Hezekiah
- became the father
- became the father (2)
- became the father (3)

Translation Words - UST

- of Josiah
- of Manasseh
- Manasseh
- Hezekiah
- was the father
- was the father (2)
- was the father (3)

ULT

¹⁰ [Hezekiah became the father of Manasseh](#), and [Manasseh became the father](#) of Amon, and Amon [became the father of Josiah](#).

UST

¹⁰ [Hezekiah was the father of Manasseh](#). [Manasseh was the father](#) of Amon. Amon [was the father of Josiah](#).

Matthew 1:11

Josiah...became the father of Jechoniah (ULT)

Josiah...was the grandfather...of Jechoniah (UST)

A more specific term for “ancestor” can also be used, particularly if the word “ancestor” would only be used for someone who lived before one’s grandparents. Alternate translation: “Josiah was a grandfather of Jechoniah”

at the time of the deportation to Babylon (ULT)

They lived at the time when the Babylonian army took the Israelites as captives to the country of Babylon (UST)

“when they were forced to move to Babylon” or “when the Babylonians conquered them and made them go live in Babylon.” If your language needs to specify who went to Babylon, you could say “the Israelites” or “the Israelites who lived in Judah.”

to Babylon (ULT)

the country of Babylon (UST)

Here this means the country of Babylon, not just the city of Babylon.

Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [to Babylon](#)
- [Josiah](#)
- [became the father](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jechoniah's brothers](#)
- [the country of Babylon](#)
- [Josiah](#)
- [was the grandfather](#)

ULT

¹¹ [Josiah became the father](#) of Jechoniah and his [brothers](#) at the time of the deportation [to Babylon](#).

UST

¹¹ [Josiah was the grandfather](#) of Jechoniah and [Jechoniah's brothers](#). They lived at the time when the Babylonian army took the Israelites as captives to [the country of Babylon](#).

Matthew 1:12

After...the deportation to Babylon (ULT)

After...the...Babylonians exiled the Israelites to Babylon (UST)

Use the same wording you used in [Matthew 1:11](#).

Shealtiel...became the father of Shealtiel...of Zerubbabel (ULT)

Shealtiel...became the father of Shealtiel...of Zerubbabel (UST)

Shealtiel was Zerubbabel's grandfather.

Translation Words - ULT

- [to Babylon](#)
- [of Zerubbabel](#)
- [became the father](#)
- [became the father](#) (2)

Translation Words - UST

- [Babylon](#)
- [of Zerubbabel](#)
- [became the father](#)
- [was an ancestor](#) (2)

ULT

¹² After the deportation [to Babylon](#), Jechoniah [became the father](#) of Shealtiel, and Shealtiel [became the father of Zerubbabel](#).

UST

¹² After the Babylonians exiled the Israelites to [Babylon](#), Jechoniah [became the father](#) of Shealtiel. Shealtiel [was an ancestor of Zerubbabel](#).

Matthew 1:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- of Eliakim
- Eliakim
- Zerubbabel
- became the father
- became the father (2)
- became the father (3)

Translation Words - UST

- of Eliakim
- Eliakim
- Zerubbabel
- was the father
- was the father (2)
- was the father (3)

ULT

¹³ [Zerubbabel became the father](#) of Abiud, and Abiud [became the father of Eliakim](#), and [Eliakim became the father](#) of Azor.

UST

¹³ [Zerubbabel was the father](#) of Abiud. Abiud [was the father of Eliakim](#). [Eliakim was the father](#) of Azor.

Matthew 1:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- of Zadok
- Zadok
- became the father
- became the father (2)
- became the father (3)

Translation Words - UST

- of Zadok
- Zadok
- was the father
- was the father (2)
- was the father (3)

ULT

¹⁴ Azor [became the father of Zadok](#), and [Zadok became the father](#) of Achim, and Achim [became the father](#) of Eliud.

UST

¹⁴ Azor [was the father of Zadok](#). [Zadok was the father](#) of Akim. Akim [was the father](#) of Eliud.

Matthew 1:15

Connecting Statement:

The author concludes Jesus' genealogy, which began in [Matthew 1:1](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- of Eleazar
- Eleazar (2)
- of Jacob
- became the father
- became the father (2)
- became the father (3)

Translation Words - UST

- of Eleazar
- Eleazar (2)
- of Jacob
- was the father
- was the father (2)
- was the father (3)

ULT

¹⁵ Eliud [became the father of Eleazar](#),
and [Eleazar became the father](#) of
Matthan, and Matthan [became the
father of Jacob](#).

UST

¹⁵ Eliud [was the father of Eleazar](#).
[Eleazar was the father](#) of Matthan.
Matthan [was the father of Jacob](#).

Matthew 1:16

of Mary, by whom Jesus was born (ULT)
was Mary's husband...and Mary was Jesus' mother.
Jesus (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Mary, who gave birth to Jesus" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

who is called Christ (ULT)
is the one who is called the Messiah (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom people call Christ" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

¹⁶ [Jacob](#) became the father of [Joseph](#) the husband of [Mary](#), by whom [Jesus](#) was born, [who is called Christ](#).

UST

¹⁶ [Jacob](#) was the father of [Joseph](#). [Joseph](#) was Mary's husband, and Mary was [Jesus](#)' mother. [Jesus](#) is the one [who is called the Messiah](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [who is called](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [of Mary](#)
- [of Joseph](#)
- [Jacob](#)
- [became the father](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus...Jesus](#)
- [who is called](#)
- [the Messiah](#)
- [was Mary's husband](#)
- [of Joseph. Joseph](#)
- [Jacob](#)
- [was the father](#)

Matthew 1:17

were fourteen (ULT)

Fourteen of them (UST)

"14" (See: [Numbers](#))

the deportation to Babylon (ULT)

the time when...then (UST)

Use the same wording you used in [Matthew 1:11](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Christ](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [to Babylon](#)
- [to Babylon](#) (2)
- [David](#)
- [David](#) (2)
- [generations](#)
- [generations](#) (2)
- [generations](#) (3)
- [generations](#) (4)

Translation Words - UST

- [Messiah](#)
- [Abraham lived](#)
- [then](#)
- [Babylon](#) (2)
- [lived. There were another...David lived](#)
- [King David](#) (2)
- [The list of Jesus' ancestors is as follows](#)
- [Fourteen of them](#) (2)
- [fourteen](#) (3)
- [was born](#) (4)

ULT

¹⁷ Therefore, all the [generations](#) from [Abraham](#) to [David](#) were fourteen [generations](#), and from [David](#) to the deportation [to Babylon](#) were fourteen [generations](#), and from the deportation [to Babylon](#) to the [Christ](#) were fourteen [generations](#).

UST

¹⁷ [The list of Jesus' ancestors is as follows: Fourteen of them](#) from the time when [Abraham lived](#) to the time when [King David lived. There were another fourteen](#) from the time when [David lived](#) until the time when the Israelites went away to [Babylon](#), and then yet another fourteen from [then](#) until the time when the [Messiah was born](#).

Matthew 1:18

General Information:

This begins a new part of the story in which the author describes the events leading up to the birth of Jesus.

His mother, Mary...engaged to marry Joseph (ULT)
Mary, his mother...had promised to marry...Joseph (UST)

"His mother, Mary, was going to marry Joseph." Parents normally arranged the marriages of their children. Alternate translation: "The parents of Mary, the mother of Jesus, had promised her in marriage to Joseph" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

His mother, Mary...engaged to marry (ULT)
Mary, his mother...had promised to marry (UST)

Translate in a way that makes it clear that Jesus was not already born when Mary was engaged to Joseph. Alternate translation: "Mary, who would be the mother of Jesus, was engaged" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

before...they came together (ULT)
but before...they...lived together as husband and wife (UST)

"before they got married." This may refer to Mary and Joseph sleeping together. Alternate translation: "before they had slept together" (See: [Euphemism](#))

she was found to be pregnant (ULT)
they found out that she was expecting a child (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they realized that she was going to have a baby" or "it happened that she was pregnant" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

by the Holy Spirit (ULT)
by the Holy Spirit's power (UST)

The power of the Holy Spirit had enabled Mary to have a baby before she had slept with a man.

Translation Words - ULT

- of Jesus...Christ
- Holy
- the Holy Spirit
- Christ
- Mary
- Joseph
- to be pregnant
- to be pregnant

ULT

18 The birth [of Jesus Christ](#) happened in the following way. His mother, [Mary](#), was engaged to marry [Joseph](#), but before they came together, she was found [to be pregnant](#) by [the Holy Spirit](#).

UST

18 This is the account of what happened just before [Jesus](#) the [Messiah](#) was born. [Mary](#), his mother, had promised to marry [Joseph](#), but before they lived together as husband and wife, they found out [that she was expecting a child](#) by the [Holy Spirit's power](#).

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus...Messiah
- Holy
- Holy Spirit's power
- Messiah
- Mary
- Joseph
- that she was expecting a child
- that she was expecting a child

Matthew 1:19

Joseph...her husband (ULT)

Joseph...who was to be her husband (UST)

Joseph had not married Mary yet, but when a man and woman promised to marry each other, Jews considered them husband and wife though they did not live together. Alternate translation: "Joseph, who was supposed to marry Mary" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

to divorce her (ULT)

drop his plans to marry her (UST)

"cancel their plans to get married"

Translation Words - ULT

- [a righteous man](#)
- [Joseph](#)
- [to divorce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [a man who obeyed God's commands, so he decided not to marry her](#)
- [Joseph](#)
- [drop his plans to marry](#)

ULT

¹⁹ But [Joseph](#), her husband, was [a righteous man](#) and did not want to publicly disgrace her, so he intended [to divorce](#) her quietly.

UST

¹⁹ Now [Joseph](#), who was to be her husband, was [a man who obeyed God's commands, so he decided not to marry her](#). But he did not want to shame her in front of other people. So he decided to quietly [drop his plans to marry](#) her.

Matthew 1:20

As he thought (ULT)

he was seriously considering (UST)

“As Joseph thought”

appeared to him in a dream (ULT)

surprised him in a dream (UST)

“came to him while Joseph was dreaming”

son of David (ULT)

descendant of King David (UST)

Here “son” means “descendant.”

the one...who is conceived in her is from the Holy Spirit (ULT)

For what has been conceived in her...For what has been conceived in her...is there by the Holy Spirit (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the Holy Spirit caused Mary to become pregnant with this child” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

²⁰ As he thought about these things, behold, [an angel of the Lord](#) appeared to him in [a dream](#), saying, “[Joseph, son of David](#), do not [fear](#) to take [Mary](#) as your wife, because the one [who is conceived](#) in her is from the [Holy Spirit](#).”

UST

²⁰ While he was seriously considering this, [an angel whom the Lord sent](#) surprised him in [a dream](#). The angel said, “[Joseph, descendant of King David](#), do not [be afraid](#) to marry [Mary](#). [For what has been conceived in her](#) is there by the [Holy Spirit](#).”

Translation Words - ULT

- fear
- of the Lord
- an angel
- son
- Holy
- the...Spirit
- Mary
- Joseph
- of David
- a dream
- who is conceived

Translation Words - UST

- do...be afraid
- whom the Lord sent
- an angel
- descendant of
- Holy
- Spirit
- Mary
- Joseph
- King David
- a dream
- For what has been conceived in her

Matthew 1:21

She will give birth...to a son (ULT)

She will give birth to...a son (UST)

Because God sent the angel, the angel knew the baby was a boy.

you will call his name (ULT)

name...him (UST)

"you must name him" or "you must give him the name." This is a command.

for he will save (ULT)

Since it is he who will save (UST)

Translator may add a footnote that says "The name 'Jesus' means 'the Lord saves.'"

his...people (ULT)

people...him (UST)

This refers to the Jews.

Translation Words - ULT

- will save
- his...people
- Jesus
- you will call
- sins
- to a son
- name
- people
- She will give birth

Translation Words - UST

- who will save
- his...people
- Jesus
- name
- sins
- a son
- name
- people
- She will give birth to

ULT

²¹ She will give birth to a son, and you will call his name Jesus, for he will save his people from their sins."

UST

²¹ She will give birth to a son. Since it is he who will save his people from their sins, name him 'Jesus.'"

Matthew 1:22

General Information:

The author quotes the prophet Isaiah to show that Jesus' birth was according to scripture. (See: [Background Information](#))

this...All...happened (ULT)

this...All...happened (UST)

The angel is no longer speaking. Matthew is now explaining the importance of what the angel said.

what was spoken by the Lord through the prophet (ULT)

the Lord told the prophet Isaiah (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what the Lord told the prophet to write long ago" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the prophet (ULT)

the...prophet Isaiah (UST)

There were many prophets. Matthew was speaking of Isaiah. Alternate translation: "the prophet Isaiah" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)
- [prophet](#)
- [fulfill](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the Lord](#)
- [prophet Isaiah](#)
- [make come true](#)

ULT

²² All this happened in order to [fulfill](#) what was spoken by [the Lord](#) through the [prophet](#), saying,

UST

²² All this happened to [make come true](#) what [the Lord](#) told the [prophet Isaiah](#) to write long ago. Isaiah wrote,

Matthew 1:23

Behold...Immanuel (ULT)

Listen...Immanuel (UST)

Here Matthew quotes the prophet Isaiah.

Behold, the virgin (ULT)

Listen, a virgin (UST)

"Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important: the virgin"

Immanuel (ULT)

Immanuel (UST)

This is a male name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

which means, "God with us (ULT)

which means, "God is with us (UST)

This is not in the book of Isaiah. Matthew is explaining the meaning of the name "Immanuel." You could translate it as a separate sentence. Alternate translation: "This name means 'God with us.'"

Translation Words - ULT

- [they will call](#)
- [to a son](#)
- [God](#)
- [name](#)
- [means](#)
- [her womb](#)
- [give birth](#)
- [virgin](#)
- [will conceive](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [They will call](#)
- [a son](#)
- [God](#)
- [They will call](#)
- [means](#)
- [will become pregnant](#)
- [will give birth to](#)
- [virgin](#)
- [will become pregnant](#)

ULT

²³ "Behold, the [virgin will conceive](#) in [her womb](#) and [give birth to a son](#), and [they will call](#) his [name](#) Immanuel"— which [means](#), "[God](#) with us."

UST

²³ "Listen, a [virgin will become pregnant](#) and [will give birth to a son](#). [They will call](#) him Immanuel"— which [means](#), "[God](#) is with us."

Matthew 1:24

Connecting Statement:

The author concludes his description of the events leading up to the birth of Jesus.

as...commanded...Joseph...angel of the Lord (ULT)
what the angel had commanded him to do...Joseph...
the angel had commanded him to do (UST)

The angel had told Joseph to take Mary as his wife and to name the child Jesus.

he took her as his wife (ULT)
He began to live with...Mary as his wife (UST)

"he married Mary"

Translation Words - ULT

- of the Lord
- commanded
- angel
- Joseph
- sleep
- woke up
- as

Translation Words - UST

- the angel had commanded him to do
- the angel had commanded him to do
- the angel had commanded him to do
- Joseph
- sleep
- got up
- what

ULT

²⁴ Then [Joseph woke up](#) from his [sleep](#) and did [as](#) the [angel of the Lord commanded](#) him and he took her as his wife.

UST

²⁴ When [Joseph got up](#) from [sleep](#), he did [what the angel had commanded him to do](#). He began to live with Mary as his wife.

Matthew 1:25

he did not know her (ULT)

he did not sleep with her (UST)

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: "he did not have sexual relations with her" (See: [Euphemism](#))

to a son (ULT)

a son (UST)

"to a male baby" or "to her son." Make sure it is clear that Joseph is not portrayed as the actual father.

But...he called his name Jesus (ULT)

But...Joseph named him Jesus (UST)

"Joseph named the child Jesus"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [he called](#)
- [to a son](#)
- [name](#)
- [he...know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [Joseph named](#)
- [a son](#)
- [Joseph named](#)
- [he did...sleep with](#)

ULT

²⁵ But [he](#) did not [know](#) her until she gave birth [to a son](#). Then [he called](#) his [name Jesus](#).

UST

²⁵ But [he did](#) not [sleep with](#) her until she had given birth to [a son](#). And [Joseph](#) [named](#) him [Jesus](#).

Matthew 2

Matthew 2 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in verses 6 and 18, which are words from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

“His star”

These words probably refer to a star that the learned men believed to be the sign of a new king of Israel. (See: [sign](#), [proof](#), [reminder](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“Learned men”

English translations use many different words to translate this phrase. These words include “magi” and “wise men.” These men could have been scientists or astrologers. If you can, you should translate this with the general word “learned men.”

Matthew 2:1

General Information:

A new part of the story begins here and continues through the end of the chapter. Matthew tells about Herod's attempt to kill the new King of the Jews.

Bethlehem of Judea (ULT)

the town of Bethlehem in the province of Judea (UST)

"the town of Bethlehem in the province of Judea"

in...Now...Jesus...the days of Herod...king (ULT)

in...Jesus...time that King Herod the Great...ruled there.

Some time after Jesus was born (UST)

"when Herod was king there"

of Herod (ULT)

King Herod the Great (UST)

This refers to Herod the Great.

learned men from the east (ULT)

some men...from very far away to the east...who studied the stars (UST)

"men from the east who studied the stars"

from the east (ULT)

from very far away to the east (UST)

"from a country far east of Judea"

Translation Words - ULT

- Now...Jesus
- of Judea
- of Herod the king
- Bethlehem
- Jerusalem
- king
- the days
- learned men

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- province of Judea
- King Herod the Great ruled there. Some time after Jesus was born
- the town of Bethlehem
- the city of Jerusalem
- ruled there. Some time after Jesus was born

ULT

¹ [Now](#) after [Jesus](#) was born in [Bethlehem of Judea](#) in [the days of Herod the king](#), behold, [learned men](#) from the east arrived in [Jerusalem](#),

UST

¹ [Jesus](#) was born in [the town of Bethlehem](#) in the [province of Judea](#) during the [time that King Herod the Great ruled there](#). [Some time after Jesus was born](#), [some men](#) from very far away to the east [who studied the stars](#) came to [the city of Jerusalem](#).

- time that
- some men...who studied the stars

Matthew 2:2

Where is he who was born King of the Jews (ULT)
Where is the one who has been born king of the Jews (UST)

The men knew from studying the stars that the one who would become king had been born. They were trying to learn where he was. Alternate translation: "A baby who will become the king of the Jews has been born. Where is he?"

his star (ULT)
a star...he has been born (UST)

They were not saying that the baby was the rightful owner of the star. Alternate translation: "the star that tells about him" or "the star that is associated with his birth"

in the east (ULT)
in the east that shows us (UST)

"as it came up in the east" or "while we were in our country"

to worship (ULT)
to worship (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) they intended to worship the baby as divine, or 2) they wanted to honor him as a human king. If your language has a word that includes both meanings, you should consider using it here.

Translation Words - ULT

- of the Jews
- to worship
- King of the Jews
- King

Translation Words - UST

- of the Jews
- to worship
- king of the Jews
- king

ULT

² saying, "Where is he who was born [King of the Jews](#)? For we saw his star in the east, and have come [to worship](#) him."

UST

² They asked people, "Where is the one who has been born [king of the Jews](#)? We have seen a star in the east that shows us he has been born, so we have come [to worship](#) him."

Matthew 2:3

he was troubled (ULT)

he became very worried (UST)

"he was worried." Herod was worried that this baby would replace him as king.

all Jerusalem (ULT)

Many of the people...in Jerusalem (UST)

Here "Jerusalem" refers to the people. Also, "all" means "many." Matthew is exaggerating to emphasize how many people were worried. Alternate translation: "many of the people in Jerusalem" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Herod...king](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [he was troubled](#)
- [king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [King Herod](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [he became very worried](#)
- [King Herod](#)

ULT

³ But when [Herod](#) the [king](#) heard this, [he was troubled](#), and all [Jerusalem](#) with him.

UST

³ When [King Herod](#) heard about what those men were asking, [he became very worried](#). Many of the people [in Jerusalem](#) also became worried.

Matthew 2:4

General Information:

In verse 6, the chief priests and scribes of the people quote the prophet Micah to show that the Christ would be born in Bethlehem.

Translation Words - ULT

- [scribes](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [people](#)
- [Herod brought together](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [teachers of the Jewish laws](#)
- [ruling priests](#)
- [Messiah](#)
- [teachers of the Jewish laws](#)
- [Herod called together](#)

ULT

⁴ Then [Herod brought together](#) all the [chief priests](#) and [scribes](#) of the [people](#), and he asked them, "Where is the [Christ](#) to be born?"

UST

⁴ Then [Herod called together](#) all the [ruling priests](#) and [teachers of the Jewish laws](#). He asked them where the prophets had predicted that the [Messiah](#) was to be born.

Matthew 2:5

In Bethlehem of Judea (ULT)

in the town of Bethlehem, here in the province of Judea (UST)

"In the town of Bethlehem in the province of Judea"

this is what...was written by the prophet (ULT)

because...the prophet Micah wrote long ago (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "this is what the prophet wrote long ago" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [prophet](#)
- [of Judea](#)
- [Bethlehem](#)
- [was written](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the prophet Micah](#)
- [province of Judea](#)
- [the town of Bethlehem](#)
- [wrote long ago](#)

ULT

⁵ They said to him, "In [Bethlehem of Judea](#), for this is what [was written](#) by the [prophet](#),

UST

⁵ They said to him, "He will be born in [the town of Bethlehem](#), here in the [province of Judea](#), because [the prophet Micah wrote long ago](#),

Matthew 2:6

you, Bethlehem...are not the least among the leaders of Judah (ULT)

You...who live in Bethlehem...your town is certainly very important (UST)

Micah was speaking to the people of Bethlehem as if they were with him but they were not. Also, "are not the least" can be translated with a positive phrase. Alternate translation: "you, people of Bethlehem,... your town is among the most important towns in Judah" (See: [Apostrophe](#) and [Litotes](#))

who will shepherd my people Israel (ULT)

He will guide my people who live in Israel (UST)

Micah speaks of this ruler as a shepherd. This means he will lead and care for the people. Alternate translation: "who will lead my people Israel as a shepherd leads his sheep" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [my...people...Israel](#)
- [of Judah](#)
- [of Judah \(2\)](#)
- [Bethlehem](#)
- [will shepherd](#)
- [people](#)
- [leaders](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [my...people...who live in Israel](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [your town is certainly very important \(2\)](#)
- [who live in Bethlehem](#)
- [will guide](#)
- [people](#)
- [your town is certainly very important](#)

ULT

⁶ 'But you, [Bethlehem](#), in the land [of Judah](#), are not the least among the [leaders of Judah](#), for from you will come a ruler who [will shepherd](#) my [people Israel](#)."

UST

⁶ 'You [who live in Bethlehem](#) in the land of [Judah](#), [your town is certainly very important](#), because a man from your town will become a ruler. He [will guide](#) my [people who live in Israel](#)."

Matthew 2:7

Herod secretly called the learned men (ULT)
King Herod secretly called those men who studied the stars (UST)

This means that Herod talked to the learned men without other people knowing.

to ask them the exact time the star had appeared (ULT)
He asked them exactly when the star first appeared (UST)

This can be translated as a direct quotation. Alternate translation: “men, and he asked them, ‘When exactly did this star appear?’” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

the exact time the star had appeared (ULT)
exactly when the star first appeared (UST)

It is implied that the learned men told him when the star appeared. Alternate translation: “what time the star had appeared. The learned men told Herod when the star first appeared” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- called
- Herod
- Then
- exact time
- learned men

Translation Words - UST

- called
- King Herod
- Then
- exactly when
- men who studied the stars

ULT

⁷ [Then Herod](#) secretly [called](#) the [learned men](#) to ask them the [exact time](#) the star had appeared.

UST

⁷ [Then King Herod](#) secretly [called](#) those [men who studied the stars](#). He asked them [exactly when](#) the star first appeared.

Matthew 2:8

the young child (ULT)

the infant (UST)

This refers to Jesus.

tell me (ULT)

come back and report to me (UST)

“let me know” or “tell me” or “report back to me”

and worship him (ULT)

and worship him (UST)

See how you translated this in [Matthew 2:2](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [and worship](#)
- [young child](#)
- [Bethlehem](#)
- [tell](#)
- [he sent](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and worship](#)
- [infant](#)
- [Bethlehem](#)
- [come back and report](#)
- [to them](#)

ULT

⁸ Then [he sent](#) them to [Bethlehem](#), saying, “Go and search carefully for the [young child](#). When you have found him, [tell](#) me, so that I also may come [and worship](#) him.”

UST

⁸ Then he said [to them](#), “Go to [Bethlehem](#) and inquire thoroughly where the [infant](#) is. When you have found him, [come back and report](#) to me so that I, myself, can go there [and worship](#) him, too.”

Matthew 2:9

After they had heard (ULT)

After...heard...request, they (UST)

"After the learned men"

they had seen in the east (ULT)

they had seen while they were in the eastern country (UST)

"they had seen come up in the east" or "they had seen in their country"

went before them (ULT)

went ahead of them again (UST)

"guided them" or "led them"

and stood still over (ULT)

it stood above...the house (UST)

"stopped over"

where the young child was (ULT)

where the child was (UST)

"the place where the young child was staying"

Translation Words - ULT

- [young child](#)
- [king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [child](#)
- [the king's](#)

ULT

⁹ After they had heard the [king](#), they went on their way, and behold, the star that they had seen in the east went before them until it came and stood still over where the [young child](#) was.

UST

⁹ After the men heard [the king's](#) request, they went toward the town of Bethlehem. To their surprise, the star that they had seen while they were in the eastern country went ahead of them again until it stood above the house where the [child](#) was.

Matthew 2:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [they rejoiced with...joy](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [they rejoiced](#)

ULT

¹⁰ When they saw the star, [they rejoiced with](#) very great [joy](#).

UST

¹⁰ When they saw the star, [they rejoiced](#) greatly and followed it.

Matthew 2:11

Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts to the house where Mary, Joseph, and the young Jesus were living.

they went (ULT)

They found (UST)

“The learned men went”

They fell down...and worshiped him (ULT)

They bowed down...worshiped him (UST)

“They knelt down and put their faces close to the ground.” They did this to honor Jesus. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

their treasures (ULT)

their treasure boxes (UST)

Here “treasures” refers to the boxes or bags they used to carry their treasures. Alternate translation: “the containers that held their treasures” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [gifts](#)
- [myrrh](#)
- [and worshiped](#)
- [young child](#)
- [Mary](#)
- [frankincense](#)
- [of gold](#)
- [house](#)
- [They fell down](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [gave](#)
- [myrrh](#)
- [worshiped](#)
- [child](#)
- [Mary](#)
- [expensive frankincense](#)
- [gold](#)
- [house](#)
- [They bowed down](#)

ULT

11 Then they went into the [house](#) and saw the [young child](#) with [Mary](#) his mother. [They fell down and worshiped](#) him. They opened their treasures and offered him [gifts of gold](#), and [frankincense](#), and [myrrh](#).

UST

11 They found the [house](#), entered it, and saw the [child](#) and his mother, [Mary](#). [They bowed down](#) and [worshiped](#) him. Then they opened their treasure boxes and they [gave](#) him [gold](#), [expensive frankincense](#), and [myrrh](#).

Matthew 2:12

God warned them (ULT)

God warned them (UST)

"Afterwards, God warned the learned men." God knew that Herod wanted to harm the child.

in a dream not to return to Herod (ULT)

in a dream not to return to King Herod. So (UST)

This can be translated as a direct quotation. Alternate translation: "dream, saying, 'Do not go back to King Herod,' so" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Herod](#)
- [to return](#)
- [a dream](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [King Herod. So](#)
- [to return](#)
- [a dream](#)

ULT

¹² But God warned them in [a dream](#) not [to return](#) to [Herod](#), so they departed to their own country by another way.

UST

¹² Then God warned them in [a dream](#) not [to return](#) to [King Herod. So](#) they left for their country, but instead of traveling back on the same road, they went on a different road.

Matthew 2:13

General Information:

In verse 15, Matthew quotes the prophet Hosea to show that the Christ would spend time in Egypt.

after...had departed...they (ULT)

After...left Bethlehem...the men who studied the stars (UST)

“the learned men had departed”

appeared to Joseph in a dream (ULT)

appeared to Joseph in a dream (UST)

“came to Joseph while he was dreaming”

Get up, take...flee...Remain...you (ULT)

Get up, take...flee...Stay...you (UST)

God is speaking to Joseph, so these should all be singular forms.
(See: [Forms of You](#))

until I tell you (ULT)

until I tell you (UST)

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “until I tell you it is safe to come back” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

I tell you (ULT)

I tell...you (UST)

Here “I” refers to God. The angel is speaking for God.

Translation Words - ULT

- [of the Lord](#)
- [an angel](#)
- [young child](#)
- [young child](#) (2)
- [to Joseph](#)
- [Egypt](#)
- [Herod](#)
- [to destroy](#)
- [Get up](#)
- [to seek](#)
- [a dream](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [from the Lord](#)
- [an angel](#)

ULT

¹³ But after they had departed, behold, [an angel of the Lord](#) appeared [to Joseph](#) in [a dream](#) saying, “[Get up](#), take the [young child](#) and his mother, and flee to [Egypt](#). Remain there until I tell you, for [Herod](#) is going [to seek](#) the [young child](#) [to destroy](#) him.”

UST

¹³ After the men who studied the stars left Bethlehem, [an angel from the Lord](#) appeared to [Joseph](#) in [a dream](#). He said, “[Get up](#), take the [child](#) and his mother, and flee into [the country of Egypt](#). Stay there until I tell you that you should leave, because [King Herod](#) is about [to send soldiers to look for](#) the [child](#) so that [they can kill](#) him.”

- child
- child (2)
- Joseph
- the country of Egypt
- King Herod
- they can kill
- Get up
- to send soldiers to look for
- a dream

Matthew 2:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [young child](#)
- [Egypt](#)
- [rose](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [child](#)
- [Egypt](#)
- [Joseph got up](#)

ULT

¹⁴ So that night, Joseph [rose](#) and took the [young child](#) and his mother and departed for [Egypt](#).

UST

¹⁴ So [Joseph got up](#) that same night; he took the [child](#) and his mother, and they fled into [Egypt](#).

Matthew 2:15

He was (ULT)

They stayed (UST)

It is implied that Joseph, Mary, and Jesus remained in Egypt.

Alternate translation: "They remained" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

until the death of Herod (ULT)

until King Herod died (UST)

Herod does not die until [Matthew 2:19](#). This statement describes the length of their stay in Egypt, and it does not say that Herod died at this time.

Out of Egypt I have called my son (ULT)

I have called my son to come out of Egypt (UST)

"I have called my son out of Egypt"

my son (ULT)

my son (UST)

In Hosea this refers to the people of Israel. Matthew quoted it to say that this was true of God's Son, Jesus. Translate it using a word for son that could refer to the only son or the first son.

Translation Words - ULT

- [I have called](#)
- [the Lord](#)
- [prophet](#)
- [son](#)
- [fulfilled](#)
- [of Egypt](#)
- [of Herod](#)
- [death](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [I have called](#)
- [God](#)
- [prophet Hosea](#)
- [son](#)
- [came true](#)
- [Egypt](#)
- [King Herod](#)
- [died](#)

ULT

¹⁵ He was there until the [death of Herod](#). This [fulfilled](#) what had been spoken by [the Lord](#) through the [prophet](#), saying, "Out [of Egypt I have called](#) my [son](#)."

UST

¹⁵ They stayed there until [King Herod died](#), and then they left Egypt again. In this way, what [God](#) had told the [prophet Hosea](#) to write [came true](#), "[I have called](#) my [son](#) to come out of [Egypt](#)."

Matthew 2:16

General Information:

These events happen before Herod's death, which Matthew mentioned in [Matthew 2:15](#). (See: [Order of Events](#))

Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts back to Herod and tells what he did when he learned that the learned men had deceived him.

he had been mocked by the learned men (ULT)
those men had tricked him (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the learned men had embarrassed him by tricking him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

he sent and killed all the male children (ULT)
sent soldiers there to kill all the boy babies (UST)

Herod did not kill the children himself. Alternate translation: "He gave orders for his soldiers to kill all the boys" or "He sent soldiers there to kill all the boy babies" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

who were two years old...and under (ULT)
two years old...and younger. Herod calculated how old (UST)

"2 years old and younger" (See: [Numbers](#))

according to the time (ULT)
according to what...told him about when the star first appeared (UST)

"based on the time"

Translation Words - ULT

- [male children](#)
- [Herod](#)
- [Bethlehem](#)
- [time](#)
- [and killed](#)
- [he sent](#)
- [learned men](#)
- [learned men](#) (2)

Translation Words - UST

- [boy babies](#)
- [King Herod died](#)
- [Bethlehem, Herod](#)
- [what...told him about when the star first appeared](#)

ULT

¹⁶ Then [Herod](#), when he saw that he had been mocked by the [learned men](#), was very angry. So [he sent and killed](#) all the [male children](#) that were in [Bethlehem](#) and in all that region who were two years old and under, according to the [time](#) that he had determined exactly from the [learned men](#).

UST

¹⁶ Before [King Herod died](#), he realized that [those men](#) had tricked him, and he became furious. Because he thought that Jesus was still near [Bethlehem](#), [Herod sent soldiers there to kill](#) all the [boy babies](#) two years old and younger. Herod calculated how old the baby was, according to [what the men who studied the stars told him about when the star first appeared](#).

- to kill
- sent soldiers there
- those men
- the men who studied the stars (2)

Matthew 2:17

General Information:

Matthew quotes the prophet Jeremiah to show that the death of all of the male children in the region of Bethlehem was according to scripture.

Then was fulfilled (ULT)

When Herod did this, what...came true (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "This fulfilled" or "Herod's actions fulfilled" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

what had been spoken through Jeremiah the prophet (ULT)

the prophet Jeremiah had written long ago...of Ramah (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what the Lord spoke long ago through the prophet Jeremiah" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- prophet
- was fulfilled
- Jeremiah

Translation Words - UST

- prophet
- came true
- Jeremiah

ULT

17 Then [was fulfilled](#) what had been spoken through [Jeremiah](#) the [prophet](#), saying,

UST

17 When Herod did this, what the [prophet Jeremiah](#) had written long ago [came true](#), when he wrote about Bethlehem near the town of Ramah:

Matthew 2:18

A voice...was heard...she refused...they were no more (ULT)

Women...were weeping...not...all the children (UST)

Matthew is quoting the prophet Jeremiah.

A voice...was heard (ULT)

Women...were weeping (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People heard a voice" or "There was a loud sound" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Rachel weeping for her children (ULT)

Rachel, the ancestor of those women, was weeping for their dead children (UST)

Rachel lived many years before this time. This prophecy shows Rachel, who has died, weeping for her descendants.

she refused to be comforted (ULT)

People tried to comfort her...they could not (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "no one could comfort her" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

because they were no more (ULT)

because all the children were dead (UST)

"because the children were gone and would never return." Here "were no more" is a mild way of saying they are dead. Alternate translation: "because they were dead" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [for...children](#)
- [Ramah](#)
- [Rachel](#)
- [A voice](#)
- [mourning](#)
- [weeping](#)
- [to be comforted](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [dead children](#)
- [Ramah](#)
- [Rachel, the ancestor of those women](#)
- [Women](#)
- [wailing](#)
- [was weeping for](#)
- [People tried to comfort her](#)

ULT

¹⁸ "[A voice](#) was heard in [Ramah](#), weeping and great [mourning](#), [Rachel weeping](#) for her [children](#), and she refused [to be comforted](#), because they were no more."

UST

¹⁸ [Women](#) in [Ramah](#) were weeping and [wailing](#) loudly. [Rachel, the ancestor of those women, was weeping for their dead children. People tried to comfort her](#), but they could not, because all the children were dead.

Matthew 2:19

Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts to Egypt, where Joseph, Mary, and the young Jesus are living.

behold (ULT)

an angel (UST)

This marks the beginning of another event in the larger story. It may involve different people than the previous events. Your language may have a way of doing this.

Translation Words - ULT

- of the Lord
- an angel
- to Joseph
- Egypt
- Herod
- when...died
- a dream

Translation Words - UST

- that the Lord had sent
- an angel
- Joseph in
- Egypt
- Herod
- After...died and
- a dream. He said to Joseph

ULT

¹⁹ Now [when Herod died](#), behold, [an angel of the Lord](#) appeared in [a dream to Joseph](#) in [Egypt](#),

UST

¹⁹ [After Herod died and](#) while Joseph and his family were still in [Egypt](#), [an angel that the Lord had sent](#) appeared to [Joseph in a dream. He said to Joseph](#),

Matthew 2:20

those who sought the child's life (ULT)

the people who were trying to kill the child (UST)

Here "sought the child's life" is a way of saying they wanted to kill the child. "Alternate translation: "those who were looking for the child in order to kill him" (See: [Euphemism](#))

those who sought (ULT)

the people who were trying to kill (UST)

This refers to King Herod and his advisors.

Translation Words - ULT

- [life](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [child](#)
- [child's](#)
- [are dead](#)
- [Get up](#)
- [who sought](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [were trying to kill](#)
- [the country of Israel](#)
- [child](#)
- [child](#)
- [have died](#)
- [Get up](#)
- [were trying to kill](#)

ULT

²⁰ saying, "[Get up](#) and take the [child](#) and his mother and go to the land [of Israel](#), for those [who sought](#) the [child's life are dead](#)."

UST

²⁰ "[Get up](#) and take the [child](#) and his mother and go back to [the country of Israel](#) to live, because the people who [were trying to kill](#) the [child have died](#)."

Matthew 2:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- of Israel
- child
- rose

Translation Words - UST

- Israel
- child
- Joseph took

ULT

²¹ Then Joseph [rose](#), took the [child](#) and his mother, and came into the land [of Israel](#).

UST

²¹ So [Joseph took](#) the [child](#) and his mother, and they went back to [Israel](#).

Matthew 2:22

Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the part of the story that began in [Matthew 2:1](#) about Herod's attempt to kill the new King of the Jews.

But when he heard (ULT)

When Joseph heard (UST)

"But when Joseph heard"

Archelaus (ULT)

Archaelaus (UST)

This is the name of Herod's son. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

he was afraid (ULT)

he was afraid (UST)

"Joseph was afraid"

Translation Words - ULT

- [he was afraid](#)
- [over Judea](#)
- [of Galilee](#)
- [Herod](#)
- [father](#)
- [was reigning](#)
- [a dream](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [he was afraid](#)
- [province of Judea](#)
- [of Galilee](#)
- [King Herod the Great](#)
- [father](#)
- [now ruled in the](#)
- [a dream](#)

ULT

²² But when he heard that Archelaus [was reigning over Judea](#) in the place of his [father Herod](#), [he was afraid](#) to go there. After God warned him in [a dream](#), he left for the region [of Galilee](#)

UST

²² When Joseph heard that Archaelaus [now ruled in the province of Judea](#) instead of his [father](#), [King Herod the Great](#), [he was afraid](#) to go there. Then God instructed Joseph in [a dream](#) what to do, so Joseph, Mary, and the baby went to the district [of Galilee](#).

Matthew 2:23

what had been spoken through the prophets (ULT) what the prophets had said long ago (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “what the Lord spoke long ago through the prophets” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

he would be called a Nazarene (ULT) People will say...he is from Nazareth (UST)

Here “he” refers to Jesus. The prophets before the time of Jesus would have referred to him as the Messiah or the Christ. Alternate translation: “people would say that the Christ is a Nazarene” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- called
- he would be called
- prophets
- was fulfilled
- Nazareth
- a Nazarene

Translation Words - UST

- of Nazareth
- People will say
- prophets
- came true
- of Nazareth
- he is from Nazareth

ULT

²³ and went and lived in a city [called Nazareth](#). In this way, what had been spoken through the [prophets was fulfilled](#), that [he would be called a Nazarene](#).

UST

²³ They went to the town [of Nazareth](#) to live there. The result was that what the [prophets](#) had said long ago [came true](#): “[People will say](#) that [he is from Nazareth](#).”

Matthew 3

Matthew 3 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULT does this with the quoted material in verse 3.

Special concepts in this chapter

“Bear fruit worthy of repentance”

Fruit is a common picture word in the scriptures. Writers use it to describe the results of either good or bad behavior. In this chapter, good fruit is the result of living as God commands. (See: [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [unfruitful](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“The kingdom of heaven is near”

No one knows for sure whether the “kingdom of heaven” was present or still coming when John spoke these words. English translations often use the phrase “at hand,” but these words can be difficult to translate. Other versions use the phrases “is coming near” and “has come near.”

Matthew 3:1

General Information:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story where Matthew tells of the ministry of John the Baptist. In verse 3, Matthew quotes the prophet Isaiah to show that John the Baptist was God's appointed messenger to prepare for Jesus' ministry.

in...those days (ULT)

While Jesus was still in the town of Nazareth...While

Jesus was still in the town of Nazareth (UST)

This is many years after Joseph and his family left Egypt and went to Nazareth. This is probably near the time that Jesus begins his ministry. Alternate translation: "Some time later" or "Some years later"

Translation Words - ULT

- of Judea
- John the Baptist
- wilderness
- preaching
- days

Translation Words - UST

- province of Judea
- John, whom the people called the Baptizer
- desolate place
- He was preaching to the people who came there. He kept saying
- While Jesus was still in the town of Nazareth

ULT

¹ Now in those [days John the Baptist](#) came [preaching](#) in the [wilderness of Judea](#),

UST

¹ [While Jesus was still in the town of Nazareth, John, whom the people called the Baptizer](#), went to a [desolate place](#) in the [province of Judea](#). [He was preaching to the people who came there. He kept saying,](#)

Matthew 3:2

Repent (ULT)

You must stop sinning (UST)

This is plural in form. John is speaking to the crowds. (See: [Forms of You](#))

is near...the kingdom of heaven (ULT)

is near, and he will reject you if you do not stop sinning...God's rule from heaven (UST)

The phrase "kingdom of heaven" refers to God ruling as king. This phrase is only in the book of Matthew. If possible, use the word "heaven" in your translation. Alternate translation: "our God in heaven will soon show himself to be king" (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

² saying, "[Repent](#), for the [kingdom of heaven](#) is near."

UST

² "[You must stop sinning](#), because [God's rule from heaven](#) is near, and he will reject you if you do not stop sinning."

Translation Words - ULT

- [of heaven](#)
- [kingdom of heaven](#)
- [Repent](#)
- [kingdom](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [from heaven](#)
- [God's rule...from heaven](#)
- [You must stop sinning](#)
- [God's rule](#)

Matthew 3:3

For this is he who was spoken of by Isaiah the prophet, saying (ULT)

Isaiah the prophet had said long ago. He said...anyone who comes...he comes...for (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "For Isaiah the prophet was speaking of John the Baptist when he said" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

The voice of one calling out in the wilderness (ULT)
In the wilderness people hear someone shouting to (UST)

This can be expressed as a sentence. Alternate translation: "The voice of one calling out in the wilderness is heard" or "They hear the sound of someone calling out in the wilderness"

Make ready the way of the Lord, make his paths straight (ULT)

When John began preaching, then came true what...Get ready to receive the Lord when...Get everything ready...him (UST)

These two phrases mean the same thing. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Make ready the way of the Lord (ULT)
Get...the Lord when...ready (UST)

"Get the road ready for the Lord." Doing this represents being prepared to hear the Lord's message when he comes. People do this by repenting of their sins. Alternate translation: "Prepare to hear the Lord's message when he comes" or "Repent and be ready for the Lord to come" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of the Lord](#)
- [prophet](#)
- [Isaiah](#)
- [wilderness](#)
- [The voice](#)
- [of one calling out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Lord](#)
- [prophet had...long ago](#)
- [Isaiah](#)
- [wilderness people hear...to](#)
- [someone](#)
- [shouting](#)

ULT

³ For this is he who was spoken of by [Isaiah](#) the [prophet](#), saying, "[The voice of one calling out](#) in the [wilderness](#), 'Make ready the way [of the Lord](#), make his paths straight.'"

UST

³ When John began preaching, then came true what [Isaiah](#) the [prophet had](#) said [long ago](#). He said, "In the [wilderness people hear someone shouting to](#) anyone who comes, 'Get ready to receive the [Lord](#) when he comes! Get everything ready for him!'"

Matthew 3:4

His food was...wild honey (ULT)
food...honey that he found in the wilderness (UST)

The word "Now" is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Matthew tells background information about John the Baptist. (See: [Background Information](#))

wore clothing from camel's hair and a leather belt around his waist (ULT)
wore rough clothing made from camel's hair. As the prophet Elijah had done so long ago, he wore a leather belt around his waist (UST)

This clothing symbolizes that John is a prophet like the prophets from long ago, especially the prophet Elijah. (See: [Symbolic Action](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [John](#)
- [honey](#)
- [his waist](#)
- [camel's](#)
- [locusts](#)
- [clothing](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [John](#)
- [honey](#)
- [waist](#)
- [camel's](#)
- [only grasshoppers](#)
- [rough clothing](#)

ULT

⁴ Now this [John](#) wore [clothing](#) from [camel's](#) hair and a leather belt around [his waist](#). His food was [locusts](#) and wild [honey](#).

UST

⁴ [John](#) wore [rough clothing](#) made from [camel's](#) hair. As the prophet Elijah had done so long ago, he wore a leather belt around his [waist](#). His food was [only grasshoppers](#) and [honey](#) that he found in the wilderness.

Matthew 3:5

**Then...Jerusalem, and all Judea, and all the region around (ULT)
came...People who lived in the city of Jerusalem, many people who lived in other places in the district of Judea, and many others who lived near (UST)**

The words "Jerusalem," "Judea," and "the region" are metonyms for the people from those areas. The word "all" is an exaggeration to emphasize that very many people went out. Alternate translation: "Then very many people from Jerusalem, Judea, and that region" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)
- [the Jordan River](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [many people who lived in other places in the district of Judea](#)
- [Jordan River](#)
- [People who lived in the city of Jerusalem](#)

ULT

⁵ Then [Jerusalem](#), and all [Judea](#), and all the region around [the Jordan River](#) went out to him.

UST

⁵ [People who lived in the city of Jerusalem](#), [many people who lived in other places in the district of Judea](#), and many others who lived near the [Jordan River](#) came to John to hear him preach.

Matthew 3:6

They were baptized...by him (ULT) baptized them...he (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "John baptized them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

They were baptized (ULT) baptized them (UST)

This refers to the people coming from Jerusalem, Judea, and the region around the Jordan River.

Translation Words - ULT

- [They were baptized](#)
- [their sins](#)
- [confessing](#)
- [Jordan River](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [baptized them](#)
- [sins](#)
- [After they heard him, they openly confessed](#)
- [Jordan River](#)

ULT

⁶ [They were baptized](#) by him in the [Jordan River](#), [confessing their sins](#).

UST

⁶ [After they heard him, they openly confessed](#) their [sins](#), and then he [baptized them](#) in the [Jordan River](#).

Matthew 3:7

General Information:

John the Baptist begins to rebuke the Pharisees and Sadducees.

You offspring of vipers, who (ULT)

You people are the children of poisonous snakes! No one (UST)

This is a metaphor. Here “offspring” means “having the characteristic of.” Vipers are a kind of dangerous snakes and represent evil. This can be stated as a separate sentence. Alternate translation: “You evil poisonous snakes! Who” or “You are evil like poisonous snakes! Who” (See: [Metaphor](#))

who warned you to flee from the wrath that is coming (ULT)

No one warned you that one day God will punish everyone who sins, did they? Do not think that you can escape from him (UST)

John uses a question to rebuke the Pharisees and Sadducees because they were asking him to baptize them so that God would not punish them, but they did not want to stop sinning. Alternate translation: “you cannot flee from God’s wrath like this.” or “do not think that you can flee from God’s wrath just because I baptize you.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

to flee from the wrath that is coming (ULT)

that one day God will punish everyone who sins, did they? Do not think that you can escape from him (UST)

The word “wrath” is being used to refer to God’s punishment because his wrath precedes it. Alternate translation: “run away from the punishment that is coming” or “escape because God is about to punish you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [baptism](#)
- [wrath](#)
- [of the Pharisees](#)
- [Sadducees](#)
- [of vipers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to baptize them](#)
- [that one day God will punish everyone who sins](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [Sadducees](#)
- [of poisonous snakes](#)

ULT

7 But when he saw many [of the Pharisees](#) and [Sadducees](#) coming to him for [baptism](#), he said to them, “You offspring [of vipers](#), who warned you to flee from the [wrath](#) that is coming?”

UST

7 But John saw that many [Pharisees](#) and [Sadducees](#) were coming for him [to baptize them](#). He said to them, “You people are the children [of poisonous snakes](#)! No one warned you [that one day God will punish everyone who sins](#), did they? Do not think that you can escape from him!”

Matthew 3:8

Therefore produce fruit worthy of repentance (ULT)
If you truly stop sinning, then do right things to show it (UST)

The phrase “bear fruit” is a metaphor referring to a person’s actions.
Alternate translation: “Let your actions show that you have truly repented” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [worthy](#)
- [of repentance](#)
- [fruit](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [If you truly stop sinning](#)
- [If you truly stop sinning](#)
- [then do right things to show it](#)

ULT

⁸ Therefore produce [fruit worthy of repentance](#).

UST

⁸ [If you truly stop sinning, then do right things to show it](#).

Matthew 3:9

We have Abraham for our father (ULT)
we are descendants of our ancestor Abraham, God will not punish us (UST)

"Abraham is our ancestor" or "We are descendants of Abraham." The Jewish leaders thought that God would not punish them since they were descendants of Abraham. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

For I say to you (ULT)
Since...I tell you (UST)

This adds emphasis to what John is about to say.

Abraham...God...to raise up children for Abraham even out of these stones (ULT)
our ancestor Abraham, God will not punish us...he... change these stones here into descendants of Abraham (UST)

"God is able to make physical descendants out of even these stones and give them to Abraham"

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- is able
- children
- Abraham
- for Abraham (2)
- for our father
- to raise up

Translation Words - UST

- he
- can
- descendants
- our ancestor Abraham, God will not punish us
- of Abraham (2)
- we are descendants of
- change...into

ULT

⁹ Do not think of saying among yourselves, 'We have [Abraham for our father](#).' For I say to you that [God is able to raise up children for Abraham](#) even out of these stones.

UST

⁹ I know that God promised to be with Abraham's descendants. But do not say to yourselves, 'Since [we are descendants of our ancestor Abraham](#), [God will not punish us](#) even though we have sinned.' No! I tell you that [he can change](#) these stones here [into descendants of Abraham](#)!

Matthew 3:10

Connecting Statement:

John the Baptist continues to rebuke the Pharisees and Sadducees.

**But already the ax has been placed against the root of the trees. So every tree that does not produce good fruit is chopped down and thrown into the fire (ULT)
God is ready right now to punish you, just like a man who starts to chop away the roots of a fruit tree that does not give good fruit. He will chop down every tree like that and throw it into the fire (UST)**

This metaphor means God is ready to punish sinners. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has his axe and he is ready to cut down and burn any tree that grows bad fruit" or "As a person gets his axe ready to cut down and burn a tree that grows bad fruit, God is ready to punish you for your sins" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

¹⁰ But already the [ax](#) has been placed against the root of the trees. So every tree that does not produce [good fruit](#) is chopped down and thrown into [the fire](#).

UST

¹⁰ God is ready right now to punish you, just like a man who starts to [chop away](#) the roots of a fruit tree that does not give [good fruit](#). He will chop down every tree like that and throw it into [the fire](#)."

Translation Words - ULT

- [good](#)
- [fruit](#)
- [the fire](#)
- [ax](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [good](#)
- [fruit](#)
- [the fire](#)
- [chop away](#)

Matthew 3:11

for repentance (ULT)

people are sorry for having sinned (UST)

“to show that you have repented”

But he who comes after me (ULT)

But someone else will come soon who will do very (UST)

Jesus is the person who comes after John.

is mightier than I (ULT)

powerful things. He is so much greater than I, that (UST)

“is more important than I am”

He will baptize you with the Holy Spirit and with fire (ULT)

He will baptize you in the Holy Spirit and in fire (UST)

This metaphor compares John's baptism with water to the future baptism with fire. This means John's baptism only symbolically cleanses people of their sins. The baptism by Holy Spirit and fire will truly cleanse people of their sins. If possible, use the word “baptize” in your translation to keep the comparison to John's baptism. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [worthy](#)
- [baptize](#)
- [will baptize](#)
- [Holy](#)
- [the Holy Spirit](#)
- [repentance](#)
- [mightier than](#)
- [water](#)
- [with fire](#)
- [sandals](#)
- [to carry](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [do...even deserve](#)
- [I baptize](#)
- [will baptize](#)
- [Holy](#)
- [the Holy Spirit](#)
- [people are sorry for having sinned](#)
- [powerful things](#)
- [water. I do it when](#)
- [in fire](#)
- [his sandals](#)
- [to carry](#)

ULT

¹¹ I [baptize](#) you with [water](#) for [repentance](#). But he who comes after me is [mightier than](#) I, whose [sandals](#) I am not even [worthy to carry](#). He [will baptize](#) you with [the Holy Spirit](#) and [with fire](#).

UST

¹¹ “As for me, I am not very important, because [I baptize](#) you only with [water](#). [I do it when people are sorry for having sinned](#). But someone else will come soon who will do very [powerful things](#). He is so much greater than I, that I do not [even deserve to carry his sandals](#). He [will baptize](#) you in [the Holy Spirit](#) and [in fire](#).”

Matthew 3:12

His winnowing fork is in his hand, both to thoroughly clear off his threshing floor (ULT)

He is holding his winnowing fork, ready to separate the good grain from the bad chaff. He is ready to clear out all the bad chaff from where he has threshed (UST)

This metaphor compares the way Christ will separate the righteous people from the unrighteous people to the way a man separates wheat grain from chaff. Alternate translation: "Christ is like a man whose winnowing fork is in his hand" (See: [Metaphor](#))

His winnowing fork is in his hand (ULT)

He is holding his winnowing fork, ready to...the...from the bad chaff. He is...all...where he has threshed (UST)

Here "in his hand" means the person is ready to act. Alternate translation: "Christ is holding a winnowing fork because he is ready" (See: [Idiom](#))

winnowing fork (ULT)

winnowing fork, ready to...the...from the bad chaff. He is...all (UST)

This is a tool for tossing wheat up into the air to separate the wheat grain from the chaff. The heavier grain falls back down and the unwanted chaff is blown away by the wind. It is similar in shape to a pitchfork but with wide tines made of wood. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

his...to thoroughly clear off...threshing floor (ULT)

his...separate...ready to clear out...the bad chaff from (UST)

Christ is like a man with a winnowing fork who is ready to clear off his threshing floor.

his...threshing floor (ULT)

his...ready to clear out...the bad chaff from (UST)

"his ground" or "the ground where he separates the grain from the chaff"

to gather his wheat into the storehouse...the...he will burn up...chaff with fire that can never be put out (ULT)

the grain. He will take the righteous people home...his wheat into his storehouse...the...he will burn the wicked people, like one burns...chaff, in a fire that never goes out (UST)

This is a metaphor showing how God will separate righteous people from evil people. The righteous will go to heaven like wheat into a farmer's storehouse, and God will burn the people who are like chaff with a fire that will never be put out. (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

¹² His [winnowing fork](#) is in his [hand](#), both to thoroughly clear off his [threshing floor](#), and to gather his [wheat](#) into the storehouse. But he will burn up the [chaff with fire](#) that can never be put out."

UST

¹² [He is holding](#) his [winnowing fork](#), [ready to](#) separate the good grain from the bad chaff. He is [ready to clear out](#) all the bad chaff from where he has threshed the [grain](#). [He will](#) take [the righteous people home](#), as a farmer puts his wheat into his storehouse; but he will burn the wicked people, like one burns the [chaff, in a fire](#) that never goes out."

that can never be put out (ULT)
that never goes out (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "will never burn out" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [winnowing fork](#)
- [threshing floor](#)
- [chaff](#)
- [with fire](#)
- [wheat](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [He is holding](#)
- [winnowing fork, ready to](#)
- [ready to clear out](#)
- [chaff](#)
- [in a fire](#)
- [grain. He will...the righteous people home](#)

Matthew 3:13

Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts to a later time when John the Baptist baptizes Jesus.

to be baptized...by him (ULT)

John...could baptize him (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so John could baptize him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [to be baptized](#)
- [Jordan River](#)
- [Galilee](#)
- [John](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [could baptize him](#)
- [Jordan River](#)
- [district of Galilee](#)
- [John](#)

ULT

¹³ Then [Jesus](#) came from [Galilee](#) to the [Jordan River](#), to [John](#), [to be baptized](#) by him.

UST

¹³ During that time, [Jesus](#) went from the [district of Galilee](#) to the [Jordan River](#), where [John](#) was. He did this so John [could baptize him](#).

Matthew 3:14

**I need to be baptized by you, and yet you come to me
(ULT)**

**I need you to baptize me...so why do you come to me
(UST)**

John uses a question to show his surprise at Jesus' request. Alternate translation: "You are more important than I am. I should not baptize you. You should baptize me." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to be baptized](#)
- [But John](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to baptize](#)
- [John to baptize him, John](#)

ULT

¹⁴ [But John](#) kept trying to stop him, saying, "I need [to be baptized](#) by you, and yet you come to me?"

UST

¹⁴ When Jesus asked [John to baptize him, John](#) refused; he said, "I need you [to baptize](#) me! But you are not a sinner, so why do you come to me?"

Matthew 3:15

for us (ULT)

we two will do everything that God requires (UST)

Here “us” refers to Jesus and John. (See: [Inclusive and Exclusive “We”](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [righteousness](#)
- [to fulfill](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [But Jesus said](#)
- [we two will do everything that God requires](#)
- [we two will do everything that God requires](#)

ULT

¹⁵ But [Jesus](#) answered and said to him, “Permit it now, for it is right for us [to fulfill](#) all [righteousness](#).” Then John permitted him.

UST

¹⁵ [But Jesus said](#) to him, “Baptize me now, because in this way [we two will do everything that God requires](#).” Then John agreed to baptize him.

Matthew 3:16

Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the part of the story about John the Baptist. It describes what happened after he baptized Jesus.

After he was baptized (ULT)

After that (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "After John baptized Jesus" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

behold (ULT)

Just then (UST)

The word "behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

the heavens were opened to him (ULT)

it was as though the sky was opened (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Jesus saw the sky open" or "God opened the heavens to Jesus" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

coming down like a dove (ULT)

coming down...in the form of a dove (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) this is simply a statement that the Spirit was in the form of a dove or 2) this is a simile that compares the Spirit coming down upon Jesus gently, the way a dove would. (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heavens](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [After he was baptized](#)
- [of God](#)
- [Spirit of God](#)
- [water](#)
- [a dove](#)
- [like](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sky](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [After that](#)
- [God's](#)
- [God's...Spirit](#)
- [water](#)
- [a dove](#)
- [in the form of](#)

ULT

¹⁶ [After he was baptized](#), [Jesus](#) came up immediately from the [water](#), and behold, the [heavens](#) were opened to him. He saw the [Spirit of God](#) coming down [like a dove](#) and resting upon him.

UST

¹⁶ [After that](#), [Jesus](#) immediately came up out of the [water](#). Just then, it was as though the [sky](#) was opened, and Jesus saw [God's Spirit](#) coming down and sitting on him, [in the form of a dove](#).

Matthew 3:17

a voice came out of the heavens saying (ULT)
God spoke from heaven and said (UST)

"Jesus heard a voice from heaven." Here "voice" refers to God speaking. Alternate translation: "God spoke from heaven" (See: [Metonymy](#))

my...Son (ULT)
my Son (UST)

This is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heavens](#)
- [Son](#)
- [beloved](#)
- [a voice](#)
- [I am very pleased](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#)
- [Son](#)
- [I love him, and](#)
- [God spoke](#)
- [I am very pleased](#)

ULT

¹⁷ Then, behold, [a voice](#) came out of the [heavens](#) saying, "This is my [beloved Son](#). [I am very pleased](#) with him."

UST

¹⁷ Then [God spoke](#) from [heaven](#) and said, "This is my [Son](#). [I love him, and I am very pleased](#) with him."

Matthew 4

Matthew 4 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in verses 6, 15 and 16, which are words from the Old Testament.

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULT does this with the quotation in verse 10.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“the kingdom of heaven has come near”

No one knows for sure whether the “kingdom of heaven” was present or still coming when Jesus spoke these words. English translations often use the phrase “at hand,” but these words can be difficult to translate. Other versions use the phrase “is coming near” and “has come near.”

“If you are the Son of God”

The reader should not understand these words in verses 3 and 6 to mean that Satan did not know whether Jesus was the Son of God. God had already said that Jesus was his Son (Matthew 3:17), so Satan knew who Jesus was. He also knew that Jesus could make stones become bread and could throw himself off of high places and not be hurt. He was trying to make Jesus do these things and so disobey God and obey Satan. These words can be translated as “Because you are the Son of God” or “You are the Son of God. Show me what you can do.” (See: [Satan, devil, evil one](#) and [Son of God, the Son](#))

Matthew 4:1

General Information:

Here Matthew begins a new part of the story in which Jesus spends 40 days in the wilderness, where Satan tempts him. In verse 4, Jesus rebukes Satan with a quotation from Deuteronomy.

Jesus was led up...by the Spirit (ULT) led Jesus...God's Spirit (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the Spirit led Jesus" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

to be tempted by the devil (ULT) the devil to tempt him (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so the devil could tempt Jesus" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [to be tempted](#)
- [Spirit](#)
- [devil](#)
- [wilderness](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [to tempt him](#)
- [God's Spirit](#)
- [devil](#)
- [wilderness for](#)

ULT

¹ Then [Jesus](#) was led up by the [Spirit](#) into the [wilderness to be tempted](#) by the [devil](#).

UST

¹ Then [God's Spirit](#) led [Jesus](#) into the [wilderness for](#) the [devil to tempt him](#).

Matthew 4:2

he had fasted...he was hungry (ULT)

he had not eaten food day...he was hungry (UST)

These refer to Jesus.

forty days and forty nights (ULT)

and night for forty days (UST)

"40 days and 40 nights." This refers to 24-hour periods. Alternate translation: "40 days" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [he had fasted](#)
- [days](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [he had not eaten food day](#)
- [days](#)

ULT

² After [he had fasted](#) forty [days](#) and forty nights, he was hungry.

UST

² After [he had not eaten food day](#) and night for forty [days](#), he was hungry.

Matthew 4:3

the tempter (ULT)

Satan, the tempter (UST)

These words refer to the same being as “the devil” (verse 1). You may have to use the same word to translate both.

If you are the Son of God, command (ULT)

If you are really the Son of God, tell (UST)

It is best to assume that Satan knew that Jesus is the Son of God. Possible meanings are 1) this is a temptation to do miracles for Jesus' own benefit. Alternate translation: “You are the Son of God, so you can command” or 2) this is a challenge or accusation. Alternate translation: “Prove that you are the Son of God by commanding”

the Son...of God (ULT)

the Son...of God (UST)

This is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

command that these stones become bread (ULT)

tell these stones to become bread for yourself (UST)

You could translate this with a direct quotation. Alternate translation: “say to these stones, ‘Become bread.’” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

bread (ULT)

bread (UST)

Here “bread” refers to food in general. Alternate translation: “food” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of God](#)
- [the Son](#)
- [tempter](#)
- [bread](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of God](#)
- [the Son](#)
- [Satan, the tempter](#)
- [bread](#)

ULT

³ Then the [tempter](#) came and said to him, “If you are [the Son of God](#), command that these stones become [bread](#).”

UST

³ [Satan, the tempter](#), came to him and said, “If you are really [the Son of God](#), tell these stones to become [bread](#) for yourself!”

Matthew 4:4

It is written (ULT)

has said in the scriptures (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Moses wrote this in the scriptures long ago" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Jesus...Man...shall not live on bread alone (ULT)

not do this, because God...For...people...to truly live, they must have more than food; they must listen (UST)

This implies that there is something more important to life than food.

but by every word that comes out of the mouth of God (ULT)

to every word that God has spoken (UST)

Here "word" and "mouth" refer to what God says. Alternate translation: "but by listening to everything that God says" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [shall...live](#)
- [of God](#)
- [bread](#)
- [It is written](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to truly live, they must have more than](#)
- [God](#)
- [food; they must listen](#)
- [has said in the scriptures](#)

ULT

⁴ But Jesus answered him and said, "[It is written](#), 'Man shall not [live](#) on [bread](#) alone, but by every word that comes out of the mouth [of God](#).'"

UST

⁴ But Jesus said to him, "No! I will not do this, because God [has said in the scriptures](#), 'For people [to truly live, they must have more than food; they must listen](#) to every word that [God](#) has spoken.'"

Matthew 4:5

General Information:

In verse 6, Satan quotes from the Psalms in order to tempt Jesus.

Translation Words - ULT

- holy
- devil
- temple building
- holy city

Translation Words - UST

- Jerusalem, the city that was especially for God
- devil
- of the temple
- Jerusalem, the city that was especially for God

ULT

⁵ Then the [devil](#) took him into the [holy city](#) and set him on the highest point of the [temple building](#),

UST

⁵ Then the [devil](#) took Jesus to [Jerusalem, the city that was especially for God](#). He set him on the highest part [of the temple](#)

Matthew 4:6

If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down (ULT)
If you are truly the Son of God, jump down...of course, not be hurt (UST)

It is best to assume that Satan knew that Jesus is the Son of God. Possible meanings are 1) this is a temptation to do a miracle for Jesus' own benefit. Alternate translation: "Since you are truly the Son of God, you can throw yourself down" or 2) this is a challenge or accusation. Alternate translation: "Prove that you are truly the Son of God by throwing yourself down"

the Son...of God (ULT)
you are truly the Son of God...jump down...of course, not be hurt (UST)

This is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

throw yourself down (ULT)
jump down...of course, not be hurt (UST)

"let yourself fall to the ground" or "jump down"

for it is written (ULT)
to the ground. You will...because God has said in the scriptures (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for the writer wrote in the scriptures" or "for it says in the scriptures" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

He will command his...angels...to take care of you,' and (ULT)
God will command his angels to protect you...and they will...you (UST)

"God will command his angels to take care of you, and" This can be translated with a direct quotation. Alternate translation: "God will say to his angels, 'Take care of him,' and" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

They will lift you up (ULT)
They will lift you up (UST)

"The angels will hold you"

Translation Words - ULT

- [He will command](#)
- [angels](#)
- [of God](#)
- [the Son](#)
- [their hands](#)
- [it is written](#)
- [They will lift...up](#)

ULT

⁶ and said to him, "If you are [the Son of God](#), throw yourself down, for [it is written](#), '[He will command](#) his [angels](#) to take care of you,' and, '[They will lift](#) you [up](#) in [their hands](#), so that you will not hit your foot against a stone.'"

UST

⁶ and said to him, "If [you are truly the Son of God](#), [jump down to the ground](#). [You will, of course, not be hurt](#), because God has said in the scriptures, '[God will command](#) his [angels to protect](#) you. [They will lift](#) you [up](#) in [their hands when you are falling](#), and they will keep you from even hitting your foot on a stone.'"

Translation Words - UST

- God will command
- angels to protect
- jump down...of course, not be hurt
- you are truly the Son of God
- their hands when you are falling
- to the ground. You will
- They will lift...up

Matthew 4:7

General Information:

In verse 7, Jesus rebukes Satan with another quotation from Deuteronomy.

Again it is written (ULT) also said in the scriptures, 'Do (UST)

It is understood that Jesus is quoting scripture again. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Again, I will tell you what Moses wrote in the scriptures" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

You must not test (ULT) not try to make...prove who he is (UST)

Here "you" refers to anyone. Alternate translation: "One should not test" or "No person should test"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [the Lord](#)
- [God](#)
- [You must...test](#)
- [it is written](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [But Jesus](#)
- [the Lord](#)
- [God](#)
- [try to make...prove who he is](#)
- [also said in the scriptures...Do](#)

ULT

⁷ [Jesus](#) said to him, "Again [it is written](#), '
[You must](#) not [test the Lord](#) your [God](#)."

UST

⁷ [But Jesus](#) said, "No! I will not jump down, because God has [also said in the scriptures](#), '[Do](#) not [try to make the Lord](#) your [God prove who he is](#)."

Matthew 4:8

Again...the devil (ULT)

Then...the devil (UST)

"Next, the devil"

Translation Words - ULT

- world
- glory
- devil
- kingdoms

Translation Words - UST

- world
- magnificent things
- devil
- nations

ULT

⁸ Again, the [devil](#) took him up to a very high hill and showed him all the [kingdoms](#) of the [world](#) along with all their [glory](#).

UST

⁸ Then the [devil](#) took him on top of a very high mountain. There he showed him all the [nations](#) in the [world](#) and the [magnificent things](#) in those nations.

Matthew 4:9

He said...to him (ULT)

he said to him (UST)

"The devil said to Jesus"

All these things I will give you (ULT)

I will let you rule all these nations and give you the magnificent things in them (UST)

"I will give you all these things." The tempter is emphasizing here that he will give "all these things," not just some of them.

you fall down (ULT)

bow down and (UST)

"put your face near the ground." This was a common action to show that a person was worshiping. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and worship](#)
- [you fall down](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [you...worship](#)
- [bow down and](#)

ULT

⁹ He said to him, "All these things I will give you, if [you fall down and worship](#) me."

UST

⁹ Then he said to him, "I will let you rule all these nations and give you the magnificent things in them if you [bow down and worship](#) me."

Matthew 4:10

General Information:

In verse 10, Jesus rebukes Satan with another quotation from Deuteronomy.

Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the part of the story about how Satan tempted Jesus.

For it is written (ULT)

God has said in the scriptures, 'It is to (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "For Moses also wrote in the scriptures" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

You will worship...you will serve (ULT)

whom you must bow down...you must worship (UST)

Both instances of "you" are singular, a command to everyone who hears it. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [the Lord](#)
- [God](#)
- [Satan](#)
- [You will worship](#)
- [it is written](#)
- [you will serve](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [the Lord](#)
- [God](#)
- [Satan, so](#)
- [whom you must bow down](#)
- [God has said in the scriptures, 'It is to](#)
- [you must worship](#)

ULT

¹⁰ Then [Jesus](#) said to him, "Go away from here, [Satan](#)! For [it is written](#), '[You will worship the Lord](#) your [God](#), and [you will serve](#) only him.'"

UST

¹⁰ But [Jesus](#) said to him, "No, I will not worship you, [Satan, so](#) go away! [God has said in the scriptures, 'It is to the Lord](#) your [God whom you must bow down](#), and [you must worship](#) only him!'"

Matthew 4:11

behold (ULT)

at that moment (UST)

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the important new information that follows.

Translation Words - ULT

- [angels](#)
- [served](#)
- [devil](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [angels](#)
- [took care](#)
- [devil](#)

ULT

¹¹ Then the [devil](#) left him, and behold, [angels](#) came and [served](#) him.

UST

¹¹ Then the [devil](#) went away, and at that moment, [angels](#) came to Jesus and [took care](#) of him.

Matthew 4:12

General Information:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story in which Matthew describes the beginning of Jesus' ministry in Galilee. These verses explain how Jesus came to be in Galilee. (See: [Background Information](#))

Now (ULT)

While Jesus was in the province of Judea (UST)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Matthew starts to tell a new part of the story.

John had been arrested (ULT)

John the Baptizer's disciples came and told him...had put John in prison (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the king had arrested John" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [had been arrested](#)
- [Galilee](#)
- [John](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [had put John in prison](#)
- [district of Galilee, to the town of Nazareth](#)
- [John the Baptizer's disciples came and told him](#)

ULT

¹² Now when Jesus heard that [John had been arrested](#), he withdrew into [Galilee](#).

UST

¹² While Jesus was in the province of Judea, [John the Baptizer's disciples came and told him](#) that King Herod [had put John in prison](#). So Jesus returned to the [district of Galilee, to the town of Nazareth](#).

Matthew 4:13

**in the territories of Zebulun and Naphtali (ULT)
in the region that formerly belonged to the tribes of
Zebulun and Naphtali (UST)**

“Zebulun” and “Naphtali” are the names of the tribes that lived in these territories many years earlier before foreigners took control of the land of Israel. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Capernaum](#)
- [Nazareth](#)
- [of Zebulun](#)
- [Naphtali](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the city of Capernaum](#)
- [Nazareth](#)
- [Zebulun](#)
- [Naphtali](#)

ULT

¹³ He left [Nazareth](#) and went and lived in [Capernaum](#), which is by the Sea of Galilee, in the territories [of Zebulun](#) and [Naphtali](#).

UST

¹³ Then he left [Nazareth](#) and went to [the city of Capernaum](#) in order to live there. Capernaum is located beside the Sea of Galilee in the region that formerly belonged to the tribes of [Zebulun](#) and [Naphtali](#).

Matthew 4:14

General Information:

In verses 15 and 16, Matthew quotes the prophet Isaiah to show that Jesus' ministry in Galilee was a fulfillment of prophecy.

This happened (ULT)

He went there so that (UST)

This refers to Jesus' going to live in Capernaum.

what was spoken (ULT)

these words that the prophet Isaiah had written long ago (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what God said" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- prophet
- to fulfill
- Isaiah

Translation Words - UST

- words that the prophet Isaiah had written long ago
- might come true
- words that the prophet Isaiah had written long ago

ULT

¹⁴ This happened [to fulfill](#) what was spoken by [Isaiah](#) the [prophet](#), saying,

UST

¹⁴ He went there so that these [words](#) [that the prophet Isaiah had written long ago might come true](#):

Matthew 4:15

The land of Zebulun and the land of Naphtali...Galilee of the Gentiles!

These territories describe the same area.

toward the sea (ULT) by the road going to the Sea (UST)

This is the Sea of Galilee.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Gentiles](#)
- [Jordan](#)
- [Galilee](#)
- [of Zebulun](#)
- [of Naphtali](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [many non-Israelites](#)
- [Jordan River](#)
- [regions in Galilee](#)
- [Zebulun](#)
- [Naphtali...regions](#)

ULT

¹⁵ "The land [of Zebulun](#) and the land [of Naphtali](#), toward the sea, beyond the [Jordan](#), [Galilee](#) of the [Gentiles](#)!

UST

¹⁵ "The regions of [Zebulun](#) and [Naphtali](#), [regions](#) by the road going to the Sea, on the eastern side of the [Jordan River](#), [regions in Galilee](#), home of [many non-Israelites](#)!

Matthew 4:16

The people who sat

These words can be combined with the sentence beginning with "The land of Zebulun" (verse 15). Alternate translation: "In the territory of Zebulun and Naphtali...where many Gentiles live, the people who sat"

The people who sat in darkness have seen a great light (ULT)

Those people do not know God, as if they were in darkness, but they will learn the truth, as if a bright light had shone on them. Yes, they have been very (UST)

Here "darkness" is a metaphor for not knowing the truth about God. And "light" is a metaphor for God's true message that saves people from their sin. (See: [Metaphor](#))

**to those who sat in the region and shadow of death, upon them has a light arisen (ULT)
darkness...but they will learn...truth, as if...bright light had shone on them...Yes, they have been very...afraid of dying, But a brilliant light has shone upon them (UST)**

This basically has the same meaning as the first part of the sentence. Here "those who sat in the region and shadow of death" is a metaphor. It represents those who did not know God. These people were in danger of dying and being separated from God forever. (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [shadow](#)
- [people](#)
- [darkness](#)
- [a...light](#)
- [a light](#) (2)
- [of death](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [afraid](#)
- [Those people do not know God, as if they were in](#)
- [darkness...but they will learn...truth, as if...bright light had shone on them...Yes, they have been very](#)
- [darkness...but they will learn...truth, as if...bright light had shone on them...Yes, they have been very](#)
- [light](#) (2)
- [of dying](#)

ULT

¹⁶ The [people](#) who sat in [darkness](#) have seen a great [light](#), and to those who sat in the region and [shadow of death](#), upon them has [a light](#) arisen."

UST

¹⁶ [Those people do not know God, as if they were in darkness, but they will learn the truth, as if a bright light had shone on them. Yes, they have been very afraid of dying, But a brilliant light has shone upon them!"](#)

Matthew 4:17

**has come near...the kingdom of heaven (ULT)
is near...from heaven...and he will judge you when he
rules (UST)**

The phrase “the kingdom of heaven” refers to God ruling as king. This phrase is only in the book of Matthew. If possible, include a word that means “heaven” in your translation. See how you translated this in [Matthew 3:2](#). Alternate translation: “our God in heaven will soon show himself to be king” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [kingdom of heaven](#)
- [Repent](#)
- [to preach](#)
- [that time](#)
- [kingdom](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [from heaven...and he will judge you](#)
- [while Jesus was in](#)
- [from heaven...and he will judge you...when he rules](#)
- [So stop sinning](#)
- [to preach to the people, “The rule of God](#)
- [that time](#)
- [when he rules](#)

ULT

¹⁷ From [that time Jesus](#) began [to preach](#) and say, “[Repent](#), for the [kingdom](#) of [heaven](#) has come near.”

UST

¹⁷ At [that time, while Jesus was in](#) the city of Capernaum, he began [to preach to the people, “The rule of God from heaven](#) is near, [and he will judge you when he rules. So stop sinning!”](#)

Matthew 4:18

General Information:

This begins a new scene within the part of the story about Jesus' ministry in Galilee. Here he begins to gather men to be his disciples.

casting a net into the sea (ULT)

They were casting their fishing net into the water (UST)

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "throwing a net into the water to catch fish" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [who is called](#)
- [brothers](#)
- [brother](#)
- [Andrew](#)
- [of Galilee](#)
- [Simon](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [Sea of Galilee](#)
- [sea \(2\)](#)
- [fishermen](#)
- [As he was walking](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [who was later called](#)
- [men](#)
- [younger brother](#)
- [Andrew](#)
- [of Galilee](#)
- [Simon](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [Sea of Galilee](#)
- [water \(2\)](#)
- [caught and sold fish](#)
- [Jesus was walking](#)

ULT

¹⁸ [As he was walking](#) by the [Sea of Galilee](#), he saw two [brothers](#), [Simon who is called Peter](#), and [Andrew](#) his [brother](#), casting a net into the [sea](#), for they were [fishermen](#).

UST

¹⁸ One day while [Jesus was walking](#) by the [Sea of Galilee](#), he saw two [men](#), [Simon, who was later called Peter](#), and [Andrew](#), his [younger brother](#). They were casting their fishing net into the [water](#) because they [caught and sold fish](#).

Matthew 4:19

Come, follow after me (ULT)

Come with me (UST)

Jesus invites Simon and Andrew to follow him, live with him, and become his disciples. Alternate translation: "Be my disciples"

I will make you fishers of men (ULT)

I will teach you how to gather people to become my disciples. I will make your work fishing for people (UST)

This metaphor means Simon and Andrew will teach people God's true message, so others will also follow Jesus. Alternate translation: "I will teach you to gather men to me like you used to gather fish" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [fishers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [how to gather people to become my disciples. I will make your work fishing](#)

ULT

¹⁹ Jesus said to them, "Come, follow after me, and I will make you [fishers](#) of men."

UST

¹⁹ Jesus said to them, "Come with me and I will teach you [how to gather people to become my disciples. I will make your work fishing](#) for people."

Matthew 4:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

²⁰ Immediately they left the nets and followed him.

UST

²⁰ They immediately left the work that they were doing and went with him.

Matthew 4:21

Connecting Statement:

Jesus calls more men to be his disciples.

**He called...them (ULT)
them that they should leave their work...and go with
him (UST)**

"Jesus called John and James." This phrase also means that Jesus invited them to follow him, live with him, and become his disciples.

Translation Words - ULT

- He called
- brothers
- brother
- of Zebedee
- Zebedee (2)
- John
- James
- father

Translation Words - UST

- and go with him
- the three of them...James
- the younger brother
- the three of them...James
- Zebedee (2)
- John
- the three of them...James
- their father

ULT

²¹ As Jesus was going on from there, he saw two other [brothers](#), [James](#) the son of [Zebedee](#), and [John](#) his [brother](#). They were in the boat with [Zebedee](#) their [father](#) mending their nets. [He called](#) them,

UST

²¹ As [the three of them](#) walked on from there, Jesus saw two other men, [James](#) and [John](#), [the younger brother](#) of James. They were in their boat with [Zebedee](#), [their father](#), mending their fishing nets. Jesus told them that they should leave their work [and go with him](#).

Matthew 4:22

they...immediately left (ULT)

Immediately...Immediately...they also left (UST)

“at that moment they left”

left the boat...and followed him (ULT)

they also left their boat...went with Jesus (UST)

It should be clear that this is a life change. These men are no longer going to be fishermen and are leaving the family business to follow Jesus for the rest of their lives.

Translation Words - ULT

- [father](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [father and](#)

ULT

²² and they immediately left the boat and their [father](#) and followed him.

UST

²² Immediately they also left their boat and their [father and](#) went with Jesus.

Matthew 4:23

Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the part of the story about the beginning of Jesus' ministry in Galilee. These verses summarize what he did and how the people responded. (See: [End of Story](#))

in...teaching...their synagogues (ULT)
those four men...throughout...He was teaching the people...the synagogues (UST)

"teaching in the synagogues of the Galileans" or "teaching in the synagogues of those people"

preaching the gospel of the kingdom (ULT)
He was preaching...the good news...God is ruling (UST)

Here "kingdom" refers to God's reign as king. Alternate translation: "preaching the good news that God will show himself as king" (See: [Metonymy](#))

every kind of disease and every sickness

The words "disease" and "sickness" are closely related but should be translated as two different words if possible. "Disease" is what causes a person to be sick.

sickness (ULT)
all...sick (UST)

is the physical weakness or affliction that results from having a disease.

Translation Words - ULT

- [synagogues](#)
- [gospel](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [of Galilee](#)
- [teaching](#)
- [healing](#)
- [people](#)
- [preaching](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [synagogues](#)
- [good news](#)
- [God is ruling](#)
- [district of Galilee](#)
- [He was teaching the people](#)
- [He was...healing](#)
- [people who were](#)
- [He was preaching](#)

ULT

²³ Then Jesus went about in all [of Galilee](#), [teaching](#) in their [synagogues](#), and [preaching](#) the [gospel](#) of the [kingdom](#), and [healing](#) every kind of disease and every sickness among the [people](#).

UST

²³ Jesus led those four men throughout all of the [district of Galilee](#). [He was teaching the people](#) in the [synagogues](#). [He was preaching](#) the [good news](#) about how [God is ruling](#). [He was](#) also [healing](#) all the [people who were](#) sick.

Matthew 4:24

those possessed by demons (ULT)

who were controlled by demons, people (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “those whom demons controlled” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the epileptic (ULT)

who were epileptics (UST)

This refers to anyone there who had epilepsy, not to a particular epileptic. Alternate translation: “those who sometimes had seizures” or “those who sometimes became unconscious and moved uncontrollably” (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

and paralytic (ULT)

and people who were paralyzed (UST)

This refers to anyone there who was paralyzed, not to a particular paralytic. Alternate translation: “and any who were paralyzed” or “and those who could not walk” (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [those possessed by demons](#)
- [of Syria](#)
- [Jesus healed](#)
- [oppressed by](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [who were controlled by demons, people](#)
- [district of Syria](#)
- [Jesus healed](#)
- [severe](#)

ULT

²⁴ The news about him went out into all [of Syria](#), and the people brought to him all those who were sick with various diseases and [oppressed by](#) pains, and [those possessed by demons](#), and the epileptic and paralytic. [Jesus healed](#) them.

UST

²⁴ When people who lived in other parts of the [district of Syria](#) heard what he was doing, they brought to him people who suffered from illnesses, people who suffered from many kinds of diseases, people who suffered from [severe](#) pains, people [who were controlled by demons, people](#) who were epileptics, and people who were paralyzed. And [Jesus healed](#) them.

Matthew 4:25

the Decapolis (ULT)

the Ten Towns, from (UST)

This name means “the Ten Towns.” This is the name of a region to the southeast of the Sea of Galilee. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)
- [Jordan](#)
- [Galilee](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [province of Judea](#)
- [the Jordan River](#)
- [Galilee, from](#)
- [the city of Jerusalem, from other parts of the](#)

ULT

²⁵ Large crowds followed him from [Galilee](#), and the Decapolis, and [Jerusalem](#), and [Judea](#), and from beyond the [Jordan](#).

UST

²⁵ Then large crowds started to go with him. They were people from [Galilee](#), [from](#) the Ten Towns, from [the city of Jerusalem, from other parts of the province of Judea](#), and from areas east of [the Jordan River](#).

Matthew 5

Matthew 5 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Many people call the words in Matthew 5-7 the Sermon on the Mount. This is one long lesson that Jesus taught. Bibles divide this lesson into three chapters, but this can sometimes confuse the reader. If your translation divides the text into sections, be sure that the reader understands that the whole sermon is one large section.

Matthew 5:3-10, known as the Beatitudes or Blessings, has been set apart by being set farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text, with each line beginning with the word “blessed.” This way of placing the words on the page highlights the poetic form of this teaching.

Jesus spoke about many different subjects in this sermon, so you may wish to help the reader by putting an empty line into the text whenever Jesus changed the subject.

Special concepts in this chapter

“His disciples”

It is possible to refer to anyone who followed Jesus as a follower or disciple. Jesus selected twelve of his followers to become his closest disciples, “the twelve disciples.” They would later become known as the apostles.

Matthew 5:1

General Information:

In verse 3, Jesus begins to describe the characteristics of people who are blessed.

Connecting Statement:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story in which Jesus begins to teach his disciples. This part continues through the end of chapter 7 and is frequently called the Sermon on the Mount.

Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [followers](#)

ULT

¹ When Jesus saw the crowds, he went up on the mountain. After he had sat down, his [disciples](#) came to him.

UST

¹ When Jesus saw the crowds, he went up on a mount. He sat down there and taught his [followers](#). They came near to him to listen to him.

Matthew 5:2

He opened...his mouth (ULT)
he began to teach (UST)

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "Jesus began to speak" (See: [Idiom](#))

and taught them (ULT)
he began to teach...them (UST)

The word "them" refers to his disciples.

Translation Words - ULT

- [and taught](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [he began to teach](#)

ULT

² He opened his mouth [and taught](#) them, saying,

UST

² Then [he began to teach](#) them by saying,

Matthew 5:3

the poor in spirit (ULT)
people who admit that they need him; he will agree (UST)

This means someone who is humble. Alternate translation: “those who know they need God” (See: [Idiom](#))

for theirs is the kingdom of heaven (ULT)
to rule over them from heaven (UST)

Here “kingdom of heaven” refers to God’s rule as king. This phrase is only in the book of Matthew. If possible, keep “heaven” in your translation. Alternate translation: “for God in heaven will be their king” (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

³ “[Blessed are](#) the poor [in spirit](#), for theirs is the [kingdom of heaven](#).”

UST

³ “[God is pleased with people who admit that they need him; he will agree to rule over them from heaven](#).”

Translation Words - ULT

- [of heaven](#)
- [Blessed are](#)
- [in spirit](#)
- [kingdom of heaven](#)
- [kingdom](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#)
- [God is pleased with](#)
- [people who admit that they need him...he will agree](#)
- [to rule over them from...heaven](#)
- [to rule over them from](#)

Matthew 5:4

those who mourn (ULT)

people who mourn because of this sinful world (UST)

Possible reasons they are sad are 1) the sinfulness of the world or 2) their own sins or 3) the death of someone. Do not specify the reason for mourning unless your language requires it.

they will be comforted (ULT)

he will encourage...them (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will comfort them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Blessed are](#)
- [those who mourn](#)
- [will be comforted](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God is pleased with](#)
- [people who mourn because of this sinful world](#)
- [he will encourage](#)

ULT

⁴ [Blessed are those who mourn](#), for they [will be comforted](#).

UST

⁴ [God is pleased with people who mourn because of this sinful world; he will encourage](#) them.

Matthew 5:5

the meek (ULT)

people who are humble (UST)

“the gentle” or “those who do not rely on their own power”

they will inherit the earth (ULT)

they will inherit the earth (UST)

“God will give them the entire earth”

Translation Words - ULT

- Blessed are
- will inherit
- earth
- meek

Translation Words - UST

- God is pleased with
- will inherit
- earth
- people who are humble

ULT

⁵ [Blessed are](#) the [meek](#), for they [will inherit](#) the [earth](#).

UST

⁵ [God is pleased with people who are humble](#); they [will inherit](#) the [earth](#) that God will make new.

Matthew 5:6

**those who hunger and thirst for righteousness (ULT)
people who desire to live righteously just as someone
might wish to eat and drink; he will make...live
righteously (UST)**

This metaphor describes people who strongly desire to do what is right. Alternate translation: "those who desire to live right as much as they desire food and drink" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**they will be filled (ULT)
them...able to (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will fill them" or "God will satisfy them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [for righteousness](#)
- [Blessed are](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [live righteously](#)
- [God is pleased with](#)

ULT

⁶ [Blessed are](#) those who hunger and thirst [for righteousness](#), for they will be filled.

UST

⁶ [God is pleased with](#) people who desire to live righteously just as someone might wish to eat and drink; he will make them able to [live righteously](#).

Matthew 5:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Blessed are
- merciful
- will obtain mercy

Translation Words - UST

- God is pleased with
- people who act mercifully toward others
- he will act mercifully toward

ULT

⁷ Blessed are the merciful, for they will obtain mercy.

UST

⁷ God is pleased with people who act mercifully toward others; he will act mercifully toward them.

Matthew 5:8

the pure in heart (ULT)
people who try to do only that which pleases him (UST)

“people whose hearts are pure.” Here “heart” is a metonym for a person’s inner being or intentions. Alternate translation: “those who only want to serve God” (See: [Metonymy](#))

they will see God (ULT)
some day...they...will be where God is and will see him (UST)

Here “see” means they will be able to live in God’s presence. Alternate translation: “God will allow them to live with him”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Blessed are](#)
- [God](#)
- [in heart](#)
- [pure](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God is pleased with](#)
- [some day...will be where God is and will see him](#)
- [people who try to do only that which pleases him](#)
- [people who try to do only that which pleases him](#)

ULT

⁸ [Blessed are](#) the [pure in heart](#), for they will see [God](#).

UST

⁸ [God is pleased with people who try to do only that which pleases him; some day](#) they [will be where God is and will see him](#).

Matthew 5:9

the peacemakers (ULT)

people who help other people to live peacefully (UST)

These are the people who help others to have peace with one another.

for they will be called sons of God (ULT)

he will regard them as his own children (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “for God will call them his children” or “they will be children of God” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

sons of God (ULT)

he will regard them as his own children (UST)

It is best to translate “sons” with the same word your language would naturally use to refer to a human son or child.

Translation Words - ULT

- [will be called](#)
- [Blessed are](#)
- [sons](#)
- [of God](#)
- [sons of God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [he will regard them as his own children](#)
- [God is pleased with](#)
- [he will regard them as his own children](#)
- [he will regard them as his own children](#)
- [he will regard them as his own children](#)

ULT

⁹ [Blessed are](#) the peacemakers, for they [will be called sons of God](#).

UST

⁹ [God is pleased with](#) people who help other people to live peacefully; [he will regard them as his own children](#).

Matthew 5:10

those who have been persecuted (ULT)
people who live righteously; he is honored when their
righteous lives are the reason why (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "those people whom others treat unfairly" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

for righteousness' sake (ULT)
people who live righteously; he is honored when their
righteous lives are the reason why (UST)

"because they do what God wants them to do"

theirs is the kingdom of heaven (ULT)
evil people insult and treat them badly...God rules over
these righteous people from heaven (UST)

Here "kingdom of heaven" refers to God's rule as king. This phrase is only in the book of Matthew. If possible, keep "heaven" in your translation. See how you translated this in [Matthew 5:3](#). Alternate translation: "for God in heaven will be their king" (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

¹⁰ [Blessed are those who have been persecuted](#) for [righteousness'](#) sake, for theirs is the [kingdom of heaven](#).

UST

¹⁰ [God is pleased with people who live righteously; he is honored when their righteous lives are the reason why evil people insult and treat them badly. God rules over these righteous people from heaven.](#)

Translation Words - ULT

- [of heaven](#)
- [righteousness](#)
- [Blessed are](#)
- [kingdom of heaven](#)
- [those who have been persecuted](#)
- [kingdom](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [evil people insult and treat them badly...God rules over these righteous people from heaven](#)
- [people who live righteously; he is honored when their righteous lives are the reason why](#)
- [God is pleased with](#)
- [evil people insult and treat them badly...God rules over these righteous people from heaven](#)
- [people who live righteously; he is honored when their righteous lives are the reason why](#)
- [evil people insult and treat them badly...God rules over these righteous people from heaven](#)

Matthew 5:11

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes describing the characteristics of people who are blessed.

Blessed are you (ULT)

God is pleased with you (UST)

The word “you” is plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

say all kinds of evil things against you falsely (ULT)

tell lies about you, saying that you are evil (UST)

“say all kinds of evil lies about you” or “say bad things about you that are not true”

for my sake (ULT)

tell lies (UST)

“because you follow me” or “because you believe in me”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Blessed](#)
- [evil things](#)
- [people insult](#)
- [persecute you](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God is pleased with](#)
- [are evil](#)
- [other people insult](#)
- [when they do evil things to you](#)

ULT

¹¹ [Blessed](#) are you when [people insult](#) you and [persecute you](#), and say all kinds of [evil things](#) against you falsely for my sake.

UST

¹¹ [God is pleased with](#) you when [other people insult](#) you, and he is honored [when they do evil things to you](#) and when they tell lies about you, saying that you [are evil](#).

Matthew 5:12

Rejoice and be very glad (ULT)

When that happens, rejoice and be glad (UST)

“Rejoice” and “be very glad” mean almost the same thing. Jesus wanted his hearers not merely to rejoice but to do even more than rejoice if possible. (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [people persecuted](#)
- [Rejoice](#)
- [reward](#)
- [be very glad](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#)
- [prophets who lived long ago](#)
- [they persecuted](#)
- [When that happens, rejoice](#)
- [reward](#)
- [be glad](#)

ULT

¹² [Rejoice](#) and [be very glad](#), for great is your [reward](#) in [heaven](#). For in this way [people persecuted](#) the [prophets](#) who lived before you.

UST

¹² [When that happens, rejoice](#) and [be glad](#), because God will give you a great [reward](#) in [heaven](#). Remember, that is how [they persecuted](#) the [prophets who lived long ago](#).

Matthew 5:13

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to teach about how his disciples are like salt and light.

You are the salt of the earth (ULT)

What salt does...food, this is what you will do...the world (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) just as salt makes food good, disciples of Jesus influence the people of the world so that they will be good. Alternate translation: "You are like salt for the people of the world" or 2) just as salt preserves food, disciples of Jesus keep people from becoming totally corrupt. Alternate translation: "As salt is for food, you are for the world" (See: [Metaphor](#))

if...the salt has lost its taste (ULT)

if...salt loses its power (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) "if the salt has lost its power to do things that salt does" or 2) "if the salt has lost its flavor." (See: [Metaphor](#))

with what can it be made salty again (ULT)

for...good (UST)

"how can it be made useful again?" Jesus uses a question to teach the disciples. Alternate translation: "there is no way for it to become useful again." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Metaphor](#))

except to be thrown out and trampled under people's feet (ULT)

again...People just throw it out and walk over it (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "except for people to throw it out into the road and walk on it" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [good](#)
- [and trampled](#)
- [earth](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [can make it](#)
- [walk over it](#)
- [world](#)

ULT

13 You are the salt of the [earth](#). But if the salt has lost its taste, with what can it be made salty again? It is not any longer [good](#) for anything except to be thrown out [and trampled](#) under people's feet.

UST

13 What salt does for food, this is what you will do for the [world](#). But if salt loses its power, no one [can make it](#) good again. People just throw it out and [walk over it](#).

Matthew 5:14

You are the light of the world (ULT)

What light does for people in the dark, this is what you will do for the world (UST)

This means Jesus' followers bring the message of God's truth to all the people who do not know God. Alternate translation: "You are like a light for the people of the world" (See: [Metaphor](#))

A city set on a hill cannot be hidden (ULT)

All people will see you, just as they see a city built on a hillside (UST)

At night when it is dark, people can see the city lights shining. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "During the night, no one can hide the lights that shine from a city on a hill" or "Everyone sees the lights of a city on a hill" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [world](#)
- [light](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [world](#)
- [What light does for people](#)

ULT

¹⁴ You are the [light](#) of the [world](#). A city set on a hill cannot be hidden.

UST

¹⁴ [What light does for people](#) in the dark, this is what you will do for the [world](#). All people will see you, just as they see a city built on a hillside.

Matthew 5:15

Neither do people light a lamp (ULT)

No one lights a lamp (UST)

“People do not light a lamp”

put it under a basket (ULT)

puts it under a basket (UST)

“place the lamp under a basket.” This is saying it is foolish to create light only to hide it so people do not see the light of the lamp.

Translation Words - ULT

- a lamp
- a basket
- lampstand
- house

Translation Words - UST

- a lamp
- basket
- lampstand
- house

ULT

¹⁵ Neither do people light [a lamp](#) and put it under [a basket](#), but rather on the [lampstand](#), and it shines for everyone in the [house](#).

UST

¹⁵ No one lights [a lamp](#) and puts it under a [basket](#). Instead, they put it on a [lampstand](#) so it can give light to everyone in the [house](#).

Matthew 5:16

**Let your light shine before people (ULT)
you need...what is right in such a way...other people
(UST)**

This means a disciple of Jesus should live in such a way that others can learn about God's truth. Alternate translation: "Let your lives be like a light that shines before people" (See: [Metaphor](#))

your Father who is in heaven

It is best to translate "Father" with the same word your language would naturally use to refer to a human father.

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [good deeds](#)
- [praise](#)
- [Father](#)
- [good deeds](#)
- [light](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#)
- [do](#)
- [they will praise](#)
- [Father](#)
- [do](#)
- [you need...what is right in such a way](#)

ULT

¹⁶ Let your [light](#) shine before people in such a way that they see your [good deeds](#) and [praise](#) your [Father](#) who is in [heaven](#).

UST

¹⁶ Similarly, [you need](#) to do [what is right in such a way](#) that other people can see what you [do](#). When they see it, [they will praise](#) your [Father](#) who is in [heaven](#)."

Matthew 5:17

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to teach about how he has come to fulfill the Old Testament law.

the prophets (ULT)

what the prophets wrote (UST)

This refers to what the prophets wrote in the scriptures. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- prophets
- law
- to fulfill them

Translation Words - UST

- prophets wrote
- laws that God gave Moses
- I came to cause to happen what those things said would happen

ULT

17 Do not think that I have come to destroy the [law](#) or the [prophets](#). I have come not to destroy them, but [to fulfill them](#).

UST

17 "You should not suppose that I have come to you in order to do away with the [laws that God gave Moses](#) or what the [prophets wrote](#). Instead, [I came to cause to happen what those things said would happen](#).

Matthew 5:18

truly...I say to you (ULT)

This is a true...saying: God may (UST)

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

that until heaven and earth pass away (ULT)

remove the heaven and the earth, but God will (UST)

Here "heaven" and "earth" refer to the entire universe. Alternate translation: "as long as the universe lasts" (See: [Merism](#))

one jot or one tittle...certainly not (ULT)

not...not even the smallest details or a tiny dot used to end a sentence (UST)

The jot was the smallest Hebrew letter, and the tittle was a small mark that was the difference between two Hebrew letters. Alternate translation: "not even the smallest written letter or the smallest part of a letter" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

all things have been accomplished (ULT)

everything he put in the law...happen, just as he said it would (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "all things have happened" or "God causes all things to happen" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

all things (ULT)

everything he put in the law (UST)

The phrase "all things" refers to everything in the law. Alternate translation: "everything in the law" or "all that is written in the law" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [law](#)
- [truly](#)
- [earth](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#)
- [laws](#)
- [This is a true](#)
- [earth, but God will](#)

ULT

¹⁸ For [truly](#) I say to you that until [heaven](#) and [earth](#) pass away, one jot or one tittle will certainly not pass away from the [law](#), until all things have been accomplished.

UST

¹⁸ [This is a true](#) saying: God may remove the [heaven](#) and the [earth, but God will](#) not remove anything from those [laws](#), not even the smallest details or a tiny dot used to end a sentence, until God makes everything he put in the law happen, just as he said it would.

Matthew 5:19

whoever...breaks (ULT)

if...break (UST)

“whoever disobeys” or “whoever ignores”

the least one of these commandments

“any of these commandments, even the least important one”

whoever...teaches others to do so...will be called (ULT)

if...and you teach others to do so, you...the...person...

least important (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “if anyone... teaches others to do so, God will call that person” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

least...in the kingdom of heaven (ULT)

least important...under God’s rule from heaven...in (UST)

The phrase “kingdom of heaven” refers to God’s rule as king. This phrase is found only in Matthew. If possible use “heaven” in your translation. Alternate translation: “the least important in his heavenly kingdom” or “the least important under the rule of our God in heaven” (See: [Metonymy](#))

and teaches...keeps them (ULT)

and you teach others to do so, you...keep all those commands (UST)

“obeys all these commandments and teaches others to do the same”

great (ULT)

will become very important (UST)

most important

Translation Words - ULT

- of heaven
- of heaven (2)
- will be called
- will be called (2)
- of...commandments
- kingdom of heaven
- kingdom of heaven
- teaches
- teaches them (2)
- kingdom
- kingdom (2)

ULT

¹⁹ Therefore whoever breaks the least one of these [commandments](#) and [teaches](#) others to do so [will be called](#) least in the [kingdom of heaven](#). But whoever keeps them and [teaches them](#), that one [will be called](#) great in the [kingdom of heaven](#).

UST

¹⁹ Because that is true, if you break the [commands](#) that are the least important, [and you teach others to do so, you](#) will be the [least important](#) person [under God’s rule from heaven](#). But if you keep all those commands and [teach](#) others to obey God as you are obeying him, you [will become very important](#) in [God’s rule from heaven](#).

Translation Words - UST

- under God's rule from heaven
- God's rule from heaven (2)
- least important
- will become very important (2)
- commands
- under God's rule from heaven
- God's rule from heaven
- and you teach others to do so, you
- teach (2)
- under God's rule from heaven
- God's rule from heaven (2)

Matthew 5:20

For I say to you (ULT)

I tell you (UST)

This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

to you...your (ULT)

you...you (UST)

These are plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**that unless your righteousness overflows...you will
certainly not enter (ULT)**

**that you must obey those laws...from your heart...will
never come (UST)**

This can be stated in a positive form. Alternate translation: “that your righteousness must exceed...Pharisees in order to enter” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of heaven
- scribes
- righteousness
- kingdom of heaven
- Pharisees
- overflows
- kingdom

Translation Words - UST

- rule of God from heaven
- teachers of the law, and you must do what is right
- obey those laws
- rule of God from heaven
- the Pharisees or you
- must
- rule of God from heaven

ULT

²⁰ For I say to you that unless your [righteousness overflows](#)—even beyond the righteousness of the [scribes](#) and [Pharisees](#)—you will certainly not enter into the [kingdom of heaven](#).

UST

²⁰ I tell you that you [must obey those laws](#) better than the [teachers of the law](#), [and you must do what is right](#) from your heart. And you must do better than [the Pharisees or you](#) will never come under the [rule of God from heaven](#).

Matthew 5:21

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. The “you” is plural in “you have heard” and “I say to you.” The understood “you” is singular in “Do not kill,” but in some languages it may need to be plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach about how he has come to fulfill the Old Testament law. Here he begins to speak about murder and anger.

it was said to them in ancient times (ULT)
God said to our ancestors, ‘You must (UST)

This can be expressed with an active verb. Alternate translation: “God said to those who lived long ago” or “Moses said to your ancestors long ago” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

and, ‘Whoever...and...Whoever...kills will be in danger of the judgment (ULT)
anyone...kill...the members of a governing council might sentence you (UST)

Here “the judgment” implies that a judge will condemn the person to die. Alternate translation: “A judge will condemn anyone who kills another person” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

kill...kills (ULT)
kill anyone...kill (UST)

This word refers to murder, not to all forms of killing.

will be in danger of the judgment (ULT)
the members of a governing council might sentence you (UST)

It seems here Jesus is not referring to a human judge but rather to God condemning the person who is angry with his brother. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [judgment](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sentence you](#)

ULT

21 You have heard that it was said to them in ancient times, ‘Do not kill,’ and, ‘Whoever kills will be in danger of the [judgment](#).’

UST

21 “Others have told you what God said to our ancestors, ‘You must not kill anyone,’ and, ‘If you kill anyone, the members of a governing council might [sentence you](#).’

Matthew 5:22

But I say (ULT)

But I tell (UST)

Jesus agrees with God and his word, but he does not agree with the way the religious leaders have applied God's word. The "I" is emphatic. This indicates that what Jesus says is equally important to the original commands from God. Try to translate this phrase in a way that shows that emphasis.

with...brother (ULT)

are angry with (UST)

This refers to a fellow believer, not to a literal brother or a neighbor.

You worthless person...You fool (ULT)

You are worthless...fool,' God will throw you (UST)

These are insults for people who cannot think correctly. "Worthless person" is close to "brainless," where "fool" adds the idea of disobedience to God.

council (ULT)

a governing council will judge you. If you (UST)

This was likely a local council, not the main Sanhedrin in Jerusalem.

Translation Words - ULT

- You fool
- with...brother
- to...brother (2)
- of hell
- judgment
- fire
- council

Translation Words - UST

- fool,' God will throw you
- are angry with
- someone (2)
- hell
- judge you. If
- fire
- a governing council will judge you. If you

ULT

²² But I say to you that everyone who is angry with his [brother](#) will be in danger of the [judgment](#); and whoever says to his [brother](#), 'You worthless person!' will be in danger of the [council](#); and whoever says, '[You fool!](#)' will be in danger of the [fire of hell](#).

UST

²² But I tell you that if you [are angry with](#) anyone, God himself will [judge you](#). [If](#) you say to [someone](#), 'You are worthless,' [a governing council will judge you](#). [If you](#) say to someone, 'You are a [fool](#),' [God will throw you](#) into the [fire](#) in [hell](#).

Matthew 5:23

you are offering (ULT)
take (UST)

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. All occurrences of “you” and “your” are singular, but in some languages they may need to be plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

you are offering your gift (ULT)
you take your gift for God (UST)

“giving your gift” or “bringing your gift”

at the altar (ULT)
to the altar (UST)

It is implied that this is God’s altar at the temple in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “to God at the altar in the temple” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

and there remember (ULT)
if you remember (UST)

“while you are standing at the altar you remember”

your...brother has something against you (ULT)
you...you have offended someone (UST)

“another person is angry with you because of something you did”

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- gift
- brother

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- your gift for God
- you have offended someone

ULT

²³ Therefore if you are offering your [gift](#) at the [altar](#) and there remember that your [brother](#) has something against you,

UST

²³ So when you take [your gift for God](#) to the [altar](#), if you remember that [you have offended someone](#),

Matthew 5:24

first and be reconciled with your brother (ULT)
first...the person you have offended. Tell that person
that you are sorry for what you have done, and ask
that person to forgive you (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "First make peace with the person" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- gift
- gift (2)
- with...brother
- and be reconciled

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- gift
- gift to God (2)
- person
- Tell that person that you are sorry for what you have done, and ask that person to forgive you

ULT

²⁴ leave your [gift](#) there in front of the [altar](#). Go first [and be reconciled](#) with your [brother](#), and then come and offer your [gift](#).

UST

²⁴ leave your [gift](#) by the [altar](#), and first go to the [person](#) you have offended. [Tell that person that you are sorry for what you have done, and ask that person to forgive you.](#) Then go back and offer your [gift to God](#).

Matthew 5:25

Agree with your accuser (ULT)

If a fellow citizen takes you to court in order to...you of doing something wrong, come to an agreement (UST)

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. All occurrences of “you” and “your” are singular, but in some languages they may need to be plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

with your accuser (ULT)

If a fellow citizen takes you to court in order to...you of doing something wrong (UST)

This is a person who blames someone for doing something wrong. He takes the wrongdoer to court to accuse him before a judge.

may hand you over...to the judge (ULT)

you...hand...over...the judge (UST)

Here “hand you over” means to give someone into the control of someone else. Alternate translation: “will let the judge deal with you” (See: [Idiom](#))

the judge to the officer (ULT)

because the judge might say you are guilty...the prison guard...prison guard (UST)

Here “hand you over” means to give someone into the control of someone else. Alternate translation: “the judge will give you over to the officer” (See: [Idiom](#))

with...accuser...officer (ULT)

If a fellow citizen takes you to court in order to...prison guard (UST)

a person who has authority to carry out the decisions of a judge

you may be thrown into prison (ULT)

will put you in prison (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the officer might put you in prison” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [prison](#)
- [with...accuser](#)
- [accuser](#)
- [judge](#)
- [judge](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [prison](#)

ULT

²⁵ Agree with your [accuser](#) quickly while you are with him on the way to court, or your [accuser](#) may hand you over to the [judge](#), and the [judge](#) to the officer, and you may be thrown into [prison](#).

UST

²⁵ [If a fellow citizen takes you to court in order to accuse](#) you of doing something wrong, come to an agreement quickly with that person, while you are still walking with that person to court. Do that while there still is time so that he will not take you to the [judge](#), because the [judge might say you are guilty](#) and hand you over to the prison guard, and the prison guard will put you in [prison](#).

- If a fellow citizen takes you to court in order to
- accuse
- judge
- judge might say you are guilty

Matthew 5:26

Truly I say to you (ULT)

Keep this in mind...you (UST)

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

from there (ULT)

to prison (UST)

"from prison"

Translation Words - ULT

- Truly

Translation Words - UST

- Keep this in mind

ULT

²⁶ Truly I say to you, you will certainly not come out from there until you have paid the last bit of money you owe.

UST

²⁶ Keep this in mind: If you go to prison, you will never get out because you will never be able to pay all that the judge says that you owe. So remember also to be at peace with your brothers."

Matthew 5:27

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. The “you” is plural in “you have heard” and “I say to you.” The understood “you” is singular in “Do not commit adultery,” but in some languages it may need to be plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach about how he has come to fulfill the Old Testament law. Here he begins to speak about adultery and lust.

that it was said (ULT)

that God said to our ancestors (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that God said” or “that Moses said” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

commit adultery (ULT)

Do...commit adultery (UST)

This word means to act out or do something.

Translation Words - ULT

- [commit adultery](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Do...commit adultery](#)

ULT

27 You have heard that it was said, ‘Do not [commit adultery](#).’

UST

27 “You have heard that God said to our ancestors, ‘Do not [commit adultery](#).’

Matthew 5:28

But I say (ULT)

But what I say (UST)

Jesus agrees with God and his word, but he does not agree with the way the religious leaders have applied God's word. The "I" is emphatic. This indicates that what Jesus says is equally important to the original commands from God. Try to translate this phrase in a way that shows that emphasis. See how you translated this in [Matthew 5:22](#).

everyone who looks on a woman to lust after her has already committed adultery with her in his heart (ULT)
this: If a man even just looks at a woman desiring to sleep with her, God considers...has already committed adultery with her in his mind (UST)

This metaphor indicates that a man who lusts after a woman is as guilty of adultery as a man who actually commits the act of adultery. (See: [Metaphor](#))

to lust after her (ULT)

desiring to sleep with her, God considers (UST)

"and lusts after her" or "and desires to sleep with her"

in his heart (ULT)

in his mind (UST)

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's thoughts. Alternate translation: "in his mind" or "in his thoughts" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [has...committed adultery](#)
- [lust after](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [his mind](#)
- [committed adultery](#)
- [desiring to sleep with](#)

ULT

²⁸ But I say to you that everyone who looks on a woman to [lust after](#) her has already [committed adultery](#) with her in his [heart](#).

UST

²⁸ But what I say to you is this: If a man even just looks at a woman [desiring to sleep with](#) her, God considers that he has already [committed adultery](#) with her in [his mind](#).

Matthew 5:29**If...your (ULT)****If...your (UST)**

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. All instances of “you” and “your” are singular, but in some languages they may need to be plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

If...your right eye causes you to stumble (ULT)**If...you want to sin...you...your eyes, do (UST)**

Here “eye” refers to what a person sees. And, “stumble” is a metaphor for “sin.” Alternate translation: “if what you see causes you to stumble” or “if you want to sin because of what you see” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

eye...right (ULT)**eyes, do...you want to sin (UST)**

This means the most important eye, as opposed to the left eye. You may need to translate “right” as “better” or “stronger.” (See: [Idiom](#))

pluck it out (ULT)**stop looking at them...it if (UST)**

This is an exaggerated command for a person to do whatever he needs to do to stop sinning. It means “forcefully remove it” or “destroy it.” If the right eye is not specifically mentioned, you may need to translate this “destroy your eyes.” If eyes have been mentioned, you may need to translate this “destroy them.” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

throw it away from you (ULT)**you have looked at certain...of...to be blind (UST)**

“get rid of it”

your...one of...body parts should perish (ULT)**have to destroy both...your...and stop sinning, than for God to...while you can still see (UST)**

“you should lose one part of your body”

so that your whole body should not be thrown into hell (ULT)**things...throw you into hell (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “than for God to throw your whole body into hell” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [should perish](#)
- [hell](#)
- [body](#)
- [it is better](#)

ULT

²⁹ If your right eye [causes](#) you [to stumble](#), pluck it out and throw it away from you. For [it is better](#) for you that one of your [body parts should perish](#) so that your whole [body](#) should not be thrown into [hell](#).

UST

²⁹ If [you want to sin](#) because you have looked at certain things, then stop looking at them. Even if you [have to destroy both](#) of your eyes, do it if that would make you able to avoid sinning. [It would be better](#) to be blind [and stop sinning, than for God to](#) throw [you](#) into [hell while you can still see](#).

- causes...to stumble
- of...body parts

Translation Words - UST

- have to destroy both
- hell
- you
- It would be better
- you want to sin
- and stop sinning, than for God to...while you can still see

Matthew 5:30

If...your right hand causes you to stumble (ULT)
if...your hands causes you to sin, stop using your hand (UST)

In this metonymy, the hand stands for the actions of the whole person. (See: [Metonymy](#))

your right hand (ULT)
your hands...your hand (UST)

This means the most important hand, as opposed to the left hand. You may need to translate “right” as “better” or “stronger.” (See: [Idiom](#))

cut it off (ULT)
cut your hand off...it (UST)

This is an exaggerated command for a person to do whatever he needs to do to stop sinning. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [should perish](#)
- [hell](#)
- [body](#)
- [your right hand](#)
- [cut...off](#)
- [it is better](#)
- [causes...to stumble](#)
- [of...body parts](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to lose](#)
- [hell](#)
- [body](#)
- [your hands](#)
- [cut your hand off](#)
- [It would be better](#)
- [causes...to sin, stop using](#)
- [a part of...body than for God](#)

ULT

³⁰ If [your right hand causes](#) you [to stumble](#), [cut it off](#) and throw it away from you. For [it is better](#) for you that one of your [body parts should perish](#) and that your whole [body](#) should not go into [hell](#).

UST

³⁰ And if one of [your hands causes](#) you [to sin, stop using](#) your hand. Even if you have to [cut your hand off](#) and throw it away, do it if that would make you able to avoid sinning. [It would be better to lose a part of](#) your [body than for God](#) to throw your whole [body](#) into [hell](#).”

Matthew 5:31

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach about how he has come to fulfill the Old Testament law. Here he begins to speak about divorce.

It was also said (ULT)

God has said in the scriptures, 'If a man (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God also said" or "Moses also said" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

sends his wife away (ULT)

is divorcing his wife (UST)

This is a euphemism for divorce. (See: [Euphemism](#))

let him give (ULT)

should write (UST)

"he must give"

Translation Words - ULT

- [sends...away](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [is divorcing](#)

ULT

³¹ It was also said, 'Whoever [sends](#) his wife [away](#), let him give her a certificate of divorce.'

UST

³¹ "God has said in the scriptures, 'If a man [is divorcing](#) his wife, he should write a document on which he states that he is divorcing her.'

Matthew 5:32

But I say (ULT)

But now listen to...I say (UST)

Jesus agrees with God and his word, but he does not agree with the way the religious leaders have applied God's word. The "I" is emphatic. This indicates that what Jesus says is equally important to the original commands from God. Try to translate this phrase in a way that shows that emphasis. See how you translated this in [Matthew 5:22](#).

makes her an adulteress (ULT)

she...commits adultery (UST)

It is the man who divorces the woman improperly who "causes her to commit adultery." In many cultures it would be normal for her to remarry, but if the divorce is improper, such a remarriage is adultery.

after she has been divorced (ULT)

marries her also (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "her after her husband has divorced her" or "the divorced woman" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [an adulteress](#)
- [commits adultery](#)
- [makes](#)
- [who divorces](#)
- [after she has been divorced](#)
- [of sexual immorality](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [commits adultery](#)
- [commits adultery](#)
- [she](#)
- [may divorce](#)
- [marries her also](#)
- [has committed adultery. If a man divorces his wife for any other reason, she](#)

ULT

³² But I say to you that everyone [who divorces](#) his wife, except for the cause [of sexual immorality](#), [makes](#) her [an adulteress](#). Whoever marries her [after she has been divorced](#) [commits adultery](#).

UST

³² But now listen to what I say to you: A man [may divorce](#) his wife only if [she has committed adultery](#). [If a man divorces his wife for any other reason, she commits adultery](#) if she marries someone else. And the man who [marries her also commits adultery](#)."

Matthew 5:33

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. The “you” is plural in “you have heard” and “I say to you.” The “you” and “your” are singular in “Do not swear” and “carry out your oaths,” but in some languages they may need to be plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach about how he has come to fulfill the Old Testament law. Here he begins to speak about swearing oaths.

Again, you have heard (ULT)

You have also heard (UST)

“Also, you” or “Here is another example. You”

it was said to those in ancient times (ULT)

long ago people were told (UST)

This can be expressed with an active verb. Alternate translation: “God said to those who lived long ago” or “Moses said to your ancestors long ago” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Do not swear a false oath, but carry out your oaths to the Lord (ULT)

You should never swear an oath by making up a lie! Instead, you should make your promises as you would if the Lord himself were standing before you (UST)

“Do not swear that you will do something and then not do it. Instead do whatever you have sworn to the Lord that you will do”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)
- [oaths](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Lord himself were standing before](#)
- [promises as you would if](#)

ULT

33 Again, you have heard that it was said to those in ancient times, ‘Do not swear a false oath, but carry out your [oaths](#) to the [Lord](#).’

UST

33 “You have also heard that long ago people were told, ‘You should never swear an oath by making up a lie! Instead, you should make your [promises as you would if the Lord himself were standing before](#) you.’

Matthew 5:34

But I say (ULT)

But now I will say (UST)

Jesus agrees with God and his word, but he does not agree with the way the religious leaders have applied God's word. The "I" is emphatic. This indicates that what Jesus says is equally important to the original commands from God. Try to translate this phrase in a way that shows that emphasis. See how you translated this in [Matthew 5:22](#).

swear not at all (ULT)

Do not swear an oath for any reason (UST)

"Do not swear at all" or "Do not swear by anything"

it is the throne of God (ULT)

God...where his great seat of power is and from where he rules over all things (UST)

Because God reigns from heaven, Jesus speaks of heaven as if it were a throne. Alternate translation: "it is from here that God rules" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [of God](#)
- [the throne](#)
- [swear](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [place where...lives...heaven to guarantee what you promised](#)
- [God](#)
- [where his great seat of power...and from where he rules over all things](#)
- [Do...swear an oath](#)

ULT

³⁴ But I say to you, [swear](#) not at all, neither by [heaven](#), for it is [the throne of God](#);

UST

³⁴ But now I will say to you something more: Do not [swear an oath](#) for any reason! Do not ask the [place where God lives](#) in [heaven to guarantee what you promised](#). That is [where his great seat of power is and from where he rules over all things](#).

Matthew 5:35

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes his words from verse 34, telling the people not to swear.

nor by the earth...it is the city of the great King (ULT)
And do not swear any oath on the promise that the earth would witness it. Do not do this...Jerusalem is the city that belongs to God, our great King (UST)

Here Jesus means that when people make a promise or when they say that something is true, they must not swear by anything. Some people were teaching that if a person swears by God that he will do something, then he must do it, but if he swears by something else, such as by heaven or earth, then it is less offensive if he does not do what he swore to do. Jesus says that swearing by heaven or earth or Jerusalem is just as serious as swearing by God because those things all belong to God.

it is the footstool for his feet (ULT)
the earth is where God rests his feet (UST)

This metaphor means the earth also belongs to God. Alternate translation: "it is like a footstool where a king rests his feet" (See: [Metaphor](#))

for...it is the city of the great King (ULT)
because...Jerusalem is the city that belongs to God, our great King (UST)

"for it is the city that belongs to God, the great King"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [the footstool](#)
- [for...feet](#)
- [King](#)
- [earth](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the city of Jerusalem](#)
- [the earth is where God rests...feet](#)
- [the earth is where God rests...feet](#)
- [God, our...King](#)
- [earth would witness it. Do not do this](#)

ULT

³⁵ nor by the [earth](#), for it is [the footstool](#) for his [feet](#); nor by [Jerusalem](#), for it is the city of the great [King](#).

UST

³⁵ And do not swear any oath on the promise that the [earth would witness it](#). [Do not do this](#), because [the earth is where God rests](#) his [feet](#). Never swear an oath by [the city of Jerusalem](#), because Jerusalem is the city that belongs to [God, our](#) great [King](#).

Matthew 5:36

General Information:

Previously Jesus told his hearers that God's throne, footstool, and earthly home are not theirs to swear by. Here he says that they may not swear even by their own heads.

your (ULT)

your (UST)

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. All occurrences of these words are singular, but you may have to translate them as plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

swear (ULT)

Also, do...promise that you will do something and then say that they should cut off (UST)

This refers to taking an oath. See how you translated this in [Matthew 5:34](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [head](#)
- [swear](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [head](#)
- [Also, do...promise that you will do something and then say that they should cut off](#)

ULT

³⁶ Neither [swear](#) by your [head](#), for you cannot make one hair white or black.

UST

³⁶ [Also, do](#) not [promise that you will do something and then say that they should cut off](#) your [head](#) if you do not do it. How could you promise something so important, when you are not even able to change the color of one hair on your head.

Matthew 5:37

let...be...your speech...Yes, yes,' or 'No, no (ULT)
talk about doing something, just say...If you...talk
about doing something, just say...Yes, I will do it,' or
'No, I will not do it.' If you say anything (UST)

"if you mean 'yes,' say 'yes,' and if you mean 'no,' say 'no.'"

Translation Words - ULT

- [evil one](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Evil One](#)

ULT

³⁷ But let your speech be 'Yes, yes,' or 'No, no.' But anything that is more than this is from the [evil one](#).

UST

³⁷ If you talk about doing something, just say 'Yes, I will do it,' or 'No, I will not do it.' If you say anything more than that, it is Satan, the [Evil One](#), who has suggested that you talk this way."

Matthew 5:38

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. The “you” is plural in “you have heard” and “I say to you.” The “you” in “whoever strikes you” and the understood “you” in “turn to him” are both singular, but in some languages they may need to be plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach about how he has come to fulfill the Old Testament law. Here he begins to speak about retaliating against an enemy.

that it was said (ULT)

that our ancestors were told (UST)

This can be stated in active form. See how you translated this in [Matthew 5:27](#). Alternate translation: “that God said” or “that Moses said” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

eye for an eye, and a tooth for a tooth

The law of Moses allowed a person to harm a person in the same way he had harmed him, but he could not harm him worse.

ULT

38 You have heard that it was said, ‘An eye for an eye, and a tooth for a tooth.’

UST

38 “You have heard that our ancestors were told, ‘If someone harms one of your eyes, then they should harm one of that person’s eyes. And if someone harms one of your teeth, then they should harm one of that person’s teeth.’

Matthew 5:39

But I say (ULT)

But now listen to...I say (UST)

Jesus agrees with God and his word, but he does not agree with the way the religious leaders have applied God's word. The "I" is emphatic. This indicates that what Jesus says is equally important to the original commands from God. Try to translate this phrase in a way that shows that emphasis.

the evil person (ULT)

try to stop him (UST)

"an evil person" or "someone who harms you"

strikes...your right cheek (ULT)

by striking you...what...cheek (UST)

To strike the side of a man's face was an insult in Jesus' culture. As with the eye and the hand, the right cheek is the more important one, and striking that cheek was a terrible insult.

strikes (ULT)

by striking you (UST)

hits with the back of an open hand

your...turn to him...other also (ULT)

what...turn your...other cheek toward that person so he can strike...it also (UST)

"let him hit your other cheek also"

Translation Words - ULT

- evil person
- turn

Translation Words - UST

- try to stop him
- turn your

ULT

³⁹ But I say to you, do not resist the [evil person](#). Instead, whoever strikes you on your right cheek, [turn](#) to him the other also.

UST

³⁹ But now listen to what I say to you: Far from taking revenge on someone who harms you, do not even [try to stop him](#). Instead, if someone insults you by striking you on one cheek, [turn your](#) other cheek toward that person so he can strike it also.

Matthew 5:40

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. All occurrences of “you” and “your” are singular, including the understood “you” in the commands “let,” “go,” “give,” and “do not turn away.” In some languages they may need to be plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

coat...cloak (ULT)

tunic...outer garment, too, which is even of more worth to you (UST)

The “coat” was worn close to the body, like a heavy shirt or a sweater.

The “cloak,” the more valuable of the two, was worn over the “coat” for warmth and also used as a blanket for warmth at night.

If anyone wishes...let that person...your cloak (ULT)

If someone wants...let that person...it...outer garment, too, which is even of more worth to you (UST)

“give also to that person”

Translation Words - ULT

- [to go to court](#)
- [coat](#)
- [cloak](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to sue...in a court to get](#)
- [tunic](#)
- [outer garment, too, which is even of more worth to you](#)

ULT

⁴⁰ If anyone wishes [to go to court](#) with you and takes away your [coat](#), let that person also have your [cloak](#).

UST

⁴⁰ If someone wants [to sue](#) you [in a court to get](#) your [tunic](#), let that person have both it and your [outer garment, too, which is even of more worth to you](#).

Matthew 5:41

Whoever (ULT)

And if a Roman soldier (UST)

“Anyone who.” The context implies that he is speaking about a Roman soldier. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

one mile (ULT)

one mile and carry his gear, carry it for (UST)

This is one thousand paces, which is the distance a Roman soldier could legally force someone to carry something for him. If “mile” is confusing, it can be translated as “one kilometer” or “a distance.”

with him (ULT)

with him (UST)

This refers to the one who compels you to go.

go with him two (ULT)

to go with him...two miles (UST)

“go the mile he forces you to go, and then go another mile.” If “mile” is confusing, you can translate it as “two kilometers” or “twice as far.”

ULT

⁴¹ Whoever compels you to go one mile, go with him two.

UST

⁴¹ And if a Roman soldier forces you to go with him one mile and carry his gear, carry it for two miles.

Matthew 5:42

do not turn away (ULT)

lend him something, go ahead (UST)

“do not refuse to lend to.” This can be stated in a positive form.
Alternate translation: “lend to”

Translation Words - ULT

- [turn away](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [lend him something, go ahead](#)

ULT

⁴² Give to anyone who asks you, and do not [turn away](#) from anyone who wishes to borrow from you.

UST

⁴² Also, if someone asks you for something, give it to him. If someone asks you to [lend him something, go ahead](#) and lend it to him.”

Matthew 5:43

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. The “you” is plural in “you have heard” and “I say to you.” The “you” and “your” are singular in “You must love your neighbor and hate your enemy,” but in some languages they may need to be plural. All occurrences of “you” and “your” after that are plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach about how he has come to fulfill the Old Testament law. Here he begins to speak about loving enemies.

that it was said (ULT)

that God said to our ancestors (UST)

This can be stated in active form. See how you translated this in [Matthew 5:27](#). Alternate translation: “that God said” or “that Moses said” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

your neighbor (ULT)

your fellow Israelites (UST)

Here the word “neighbor” does not refer to a specific neighbor, but to any members of one’s community or people group. These are people whom one usually desires to treat kindly or at least believes he ought to treat kindly. Alternate translation: “your countrymen” or “those who belong to your people group” (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [You must love](#)
- [enemy](#)
- [neighbor](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Love](#)
- [enemies](#)
- [fellow Israelites](#)

ULT

⁴³ You have heard that it was said, ‘[You must love](#) your [neighbor](#) and hate your [enemy](#).’

UST

⁴³ “You have heard that God said to our ancestors, ‘[Love](#) your [fellow Israelites](#) and hate foreigners, for they are your [enemies](#).’

Matthew 5:44

But I say (ULT)

But now listen to what I say (UST)

Jesus agrees with God and his word, but he does not agree with the way the religious leaders have applied God's word. The "I" is emphatic. This indicates that what Jesus says is equally important to the original commands from God. Try to translate this phrase in a way that shows that emphasis. See how you translated this in [Matthew 5:22](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [love](#)
- [pray](#)
- [enemies](#)
- [those who persecute](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Love](#)
- [pray](#)
- [enemies as well as your friends](#)
- [those who cause...to suffer](#)

ULT

⁴⁴ But I say to you, [love](#) your [enemies](#) and [pray](#) for [those who persecute](#) you, ^[1]

UST

⁴⁴ But now listen to what I say to you: [Love](#) your [enemies as well as your friends](#), and [pray](#) for [those who cause you to suffer](#).

Matthew 5:45

you may be sons of your Father (ULT)

**Do this in order to be like God...your Father who is...
people (UST)**

It is best to translate "sons" with the same word your language would naturally use to refer to human sons or children.

of...Father (ULT)

Father who is (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [the just](#)
- [the unjust](#)
- [be sons](#)
- [be sons of...Father](#)
- [of...Father](#)
- [the good](#)
- [the evil](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven. He acts kindly to all](#)
- [people who obey his law](#)
- [people who do not](#)
- [people](#)
- [Father who is...people](#)
- [Father who is](#)
- [good people](#)
- [wicked people](#)

ULT

⁴⁵ so that you may [be sons of](#) your [Father](#) who is in [heaven](#). For he makes his sun to rise on [the evil](#) and [the good](#), and sends rain on [the just](#) and [the unjust](#).

UST

⁴⁵ Do this in order to be like God, your [Father who is](#) in [heaven. He acts kindly to all people](#). For example, he causes the sun to shine equally on [wicked people](#) and on [good people](#), and he sends rain both on [people who obey his law](#) and on [people who do not](#).

Matthew 5:46

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. All instances of “you” and “your” are plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes teaching about how he has come to fulfill the Old Testament law. This section began in [Matthew 5:17](#).

what reward do you get (ULT)
reward you...who do terrible...love those who love them (UST)

Jesus uses this question to teach the people that loving those who love them is not something special that God will reward them for. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternative translation: “you will get no reward.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Do not even the tax collectors do the same thing (ULT)
at all! Even people...things, such as tax collectors...You must act better than they do (UST)

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternative translation: “Even the tax collectors do the same thing.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [you love](#)
- [those who love](#)
- [tax collectors](#)
- [reward](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [you love only](#)
- [love](#)
- [such as tax collectors](#)
- [reward you](#)

ULT

⁴⁶ For if [you love those who love](#) you, what [reward](#) do you get? Do not even the [tax collectors](#) do the same thing?

UST

⁴⁶ If [you love only](#) the people who [love](#) you, do not expect God to [reward you](#) at all! Even people who do terrible things, [such as tax collectors](#), love those who love them. You must act better than they do!

Matthew 5:47

what do you do more than others (ULT)
acting any better than other people. Even (UST)

This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "you do nothing more than others." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

you greet (ULT)
greet (UST)

This is a general term for showing a desire for the well-being of the hearer.

Do not even the Gentiles do the same thing (ULT)
and ask God to bless them, you are not...non-Jews, who do not obey God's law, do the same thing (UST)

This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Even the Gentiles do the same thing." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [Gentiles](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [friends](#)
- [non-Jews, who do not obey God's law](#)

ULT

⁴⁷ If you greet only your [brothers](#), what do you do more than others? Do not even the [Gentiles](#) do the same thing?

UST

⁴⁷ Yes, and if you greet only your [friends](#) and ask God to bless them, you are not acting any better than other people. Even [non-Jews, who do not obey God's law](#), do the same thing!

Matthew 5:48

Father (ULT)

Father (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heavenly](#)
- [Father](#)
- [perfect](#)
- [perfect](#)
- [as](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [in heaven](#)
- [Father](#)
- [completely faithful to God](#)
- [he...completely faithful to you](#)
- [just as](#)

ULT

⁴⁸ Therefore you must be [perfect](#), [as](#) your [heavenly Father](#) is [perfect](#).
5:44 ^[1] The best ancient copies do not have *Bless those who curse you, do good to those who hate you* .

UST

⁴⁸ So you must be [completely faithful to God](#) your [Father in heaven, just as he](#) is [completely faithful to you](#)."

Matthew 6

Matthew 6 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Matthew 6 continues Jesus' extended teaching known as "The Sermon on the Mount."

You may wish to set apart the prayer in 6:9-11 by placing it farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text.

Jesus spoke about many different subjects in this sermon, so you may wish to help the reader by putting an empty line into the text whenever Jesus changed the subject.

Matthew 6:1

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. All occurrences of “you” and “your” are plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach his disciples in his Sermon on the Mount, which began in [Matthew 5:3](#). In this section, Jesus addresses the “acts of righteousness” of alms, prayer, and fasting.

before people to be seen by them (ULT) them so people will see what you do (UST)

It is implied that those who see the person will honor him. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “in front of people just so that they can see you and give you honor for what you have done” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Father (ULT)

God...Father (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [acts of righteousness](#)
- [Father](#)
- [a reward](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#)
- [do good deeds](#)
- [God...Father](#)
- [will...you...reward](#)

ULT

¹ Now take heed that you do not do your [acts of righteousness](#) before people to be seen by them, otherwise you will not have [a reward](#) with your [Father](#) who is in [heaven](#).

UST

¹ “Make certain that when you [do good deeds](#) you are not doing them so people will see what you do. If that is your reason for doing what is good, [God](#), your [Father](#) who is in [heaven](#), will not give you any [reward](#).”

Matthew 6:2

**do not sound a trumpet before yourself (ULT)
you...not make other people notice it...playing a
trumpet. That is what the (UST)**

This metaphor means to do something that purposefully gets people's attention. Alternate translation: "do not draw attention to yourself like someone who plays a loud trumpet in a crowd" (See: [Metaphor](#))

**Truly I say to you (ULT)
them. Certainly, I want you to understand that (UST)**

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

Translation Words - ULT

- [synagogues](#)
- [hypocrites](#)
- [Truly](#)
- [they may have the praise](#)
- [they have received](#)
- [alms](#)
- [reward](#)
- [sound a trumpet](#)
- [as](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [synagogues](#)
- [hypocrites](#)
- [Certainly](#)
- [might praise](#)
- [is the only](#)
- [give something to the poor](#)
- [reward](#)
- [playing a trumpet. That is what the](#)
- [as if](#)

ULT

² So when you give [alms](#), do not [sound a trumpet](#) before yourself [as](#) the [hypocrites](#) do in the [synagogues](#) and in the streets, so that [they may have the praise](#) of people. [Truly](#) I say to you, [they have received](#) their [reward](#).

UST

² So whenever you [give something to the poor](#), do not make other people notice it [as if playing a trumpet. That is what the hypocrites](#) do in the [synagogues](#) and in the main roads in order that people [might praise](#) them. [Certainly](#), I want you to understand that [is the only reward](#) the hypocrites will receive!

Matthew 6:3

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. All occurrences of “you” and “your” are plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach his disciples about alms.

do not let your left hand know what your right hand is doing (ULT)

not let other people know what you are doing (UST)

This is a metaphor for total secrecy. Just as hands usually work together and each can be said to “know” what the other is doing at all times, you should not let even those closest to you know when you are giving to the poor. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [right hand](#)
- [alms](#)
- [let...know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [what...are doing](#)
- [give something to the poor](#)
- [let other people know](#)

ULT

³ But when you give [alms](#), do not let your left hand [know](#) what your [right hand](#) is doing,

UST

³ Instead of doing as they do, when you [give something to the poor](#), do not [let other people know what](#) you [are doing](#).

Matthew 6:4

your gift may be in secret (ULT)

In...you will be giving to the poor secretly (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you can give to the poor without other people knowing" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Father](#)
- [gift](#)
- [will reward](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Father](#)
- [will be giving to the poor](#)
- [will reward](#)

ULT

⁴ so that your [gift](#) may be in secret. Then your [Father](#) who sees in secret [will reward](#) you.

UST

⁴ In that way, you [will be giving to the poor](#) secretly. As a result God, your [Father](#) who observes you while no one else sees you, [will reward](#) you.

Matthew 6:5

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. All occurrences of "you" and "your" in verses 5 and 7 are plural; in verse 6 they are singular, but in some languages they may need to be plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to teach about prayer.

so that they may be seen by people (ULT)
in order that other people will see them and think highly of (UST)

It is implied that those who see them will give them honor. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so that people will see them and give them honor" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Truly I say to you (ULT)
them. Certainly, I want you to understand that (UST)

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

Translation Words - ULT

- [synagogues](#)
- [they love](#)
- [hypocrites](#)
- [Truly](#)
- [you pray](#)
- [and pray](#)
- [they have received](#)
- [reward](#)
- [like](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [synagogues](#)
- [They like](#)
- [hypocrites](#)
- [Certainly](#)
- [you pray](#)
- [to pray](#)
- [is the only...will get](#)
- [reward](#)
- [do...what...do](#)

ULT

⁵ When [you pray](#), do not be [like](#) the [hypocrites](#), for [they love](#) to stand [and pray](#) in the [synagogues](#) and on the corners of the street, so that they may be seen by people. [Truly](#) I say to you, [they have received](#) their [reward](#).

UST

⁵ "Also when [you pray](#), do not do [what](#) the [hypocrites do](#). [They like](#) to stand in the [synagogues](#) and on the corners of the main streets [to pray](#), in order that other people will see them and think highly of them. [Certainly](#), I want you to understand that [is the only reward](#) they [will get](#).

Matthew 6:6

enter into your inner chamber, and having shut your door

“go to a private place” or “go where you can be alone”

your Father who is in secret

Possible meanings are 1) no one can see God. Alternate translation: “Father, who is invisible” or 2) God is in that private place with the praying person. Alternate translation: “Father, who is with you in private”

to...Father (ULT)

God...Father (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

your Father who sees in secret

“your Father will see what you do in private and”

Translation Words - ULT

- [to...Father](#)
- [Father](#)
- [you pray](#)
- [pray](#)
- [will reward](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God...Father](#)
- [Your Father](#)
- [pray](#)
- [order to pray](#)
- [will reward](#)

ULT

⁶ But you, when [you pray](#), enter into your inner chamber, and having shut your door, [pray](#) to your [Father](#) who is in secret. Then your [Father](#) who sees in secret [will reward](#) you.

UST

⁶ But as for you, when you [pray](#), go into your private room and close the door in [order to pray](#) to [God](#), your [Father](#), whom no one can see. [Your Father](#) observes you and [will reward](#) you.

Matthew 6:7

do not make useless repetitions (ULT)

do not repeat words many times (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) the repetitions are useless. Alternate translation: “do not keep uselessly saying things over and over again” or 2) the words or sentences are meaningless. Alternate translation: “do not keep repeating meaningless words”

they will be heard (ULT)

their gods will listen to them and give them what they ask for (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “their false gods will hear them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [When you pray](#)
- [as...do](#)
- [Gentiles](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [When you pray](#)
- [as](#)
- [people who do not know God do when they pray](#)

ULT

⁷ [When you pray](#), do not make useless repetitions as the [Gentiles do](#), for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.

UST

⁷ [When you pray](#), do not repeat words many times [as](#) the [people who do not know God do when they pray](#). They think that if they use many words, their gods will listen to them and give them what they ask for.

Matthew 6:8

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about how they as individuals should pray. The words “you” and “your” are plural in the first sentence. Within the prayer, the words “you” and “your” are singular and refer to God, “Our Father in heaven.” (See: [Forms of You](#))

Father (ULT)

God...Father (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Father](#)
- [be like](#)
- [knows](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God...Father](#)
- [as...do](#)
- [knows](#)

ULT

⁸ Therefore, do not [be like](#) them, for your [Father knows](#) what you need before you ask him.

UST

⁸ Do not repeat words as they [do](#), because [God](#) your [Father knows](#) what you need before you ask him.

Matthew 6:9

Our Father who is in heaven (ULT)

Our Father...who are in heaven (UST)

This is the beginning of the prayer and how Jesus teaches the people to address God.

may your name be honored as holy (ULT)

May everyone honor you (UST)

Here "your name" refers to God himself. Alternate translation: "make everyone honor you" (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

⁹ Therefore [pray](#) like this: 'Our [Father](#) who is in [heaven](#), may your [name be honored as holy](#).

UST

⁹ So [pray](#) things like this: 'Our [Father](#), you who are in [heaven](#), [May everyone honor you](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [may...be honored as holy](#)
- [Father](#)
- [name](#)
- [pray](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#)
- [May everyone honor](#)
- [Father](#)
- [you](#)
- [pray](#)

Matthew 6:10

May your kingdom come (ULT)

May you rule over everyone and everything completely (UST)

Here "kingdom" refers to God's rule as king. Alternate translation: "May you rule over everyone and everything completely" (See: [Metonymy](#))

May your will also be done on earth as it is in heaven (ULT)

May everything happen on earth just as you desire, just as it happens in heaven (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "May everything on earth happen in accordance with your will as everything in heaven does" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

¹⁰ May your [kingdom](#) come. May your [will](#) also be done on [earth as it is](#) in [heaven](#).

UST

¹⁰ May you [rule over everyone and everything completely](#). May everything happen on [earth just as](#) you [desire, just as it happens](#) in [heaven](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [your...will](#)
- [earth](#)
- [as it is](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#)
- [rule over everyone and everything completely](#)
- [you...desire](#)
- [earth just as](#)
- [just as it happens](#)

Matthew 6:11

General Information:

This is part of a prayer that Jesus was teaching the people. All instances of "we," "us," and "our" refer only to those who would pray this prayer. Those words do not also refer to God, to whom they would be praying. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

bread...daily (ULT)

the food that...each day (UST)

Here "bread" refers to food in general. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bread](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [food that](#)

ULT

11 Give us today our daily [bread](#).

UST

11 Give us each day the [food that](#) we need for that day.

Matthew 6:12

debts (ULT)

sins (UST)

A debt is what one person owes another. This is a metaphor for sins. (See: [Metaphor](#))

our debtors (ULT)

the people who have sinned against us (UST)

A debtor is a person who owes a debt to another person. This is a metaphor for those who have sinned against us. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Forgive](#)
- [have forgiven](#)
- [as](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Forgive](#)
- [forgive](#)
- [in the same way](#)

ULT

¹² [Forgive](#) us our debts, [as](#) we also [have forgiven](#) our debtors.

UST

¹² [Forgive](#) us our sins [in the same way](#) that we [forgive](#) the people who have sinned against us.

Matthew 6:13

Do not...bring us into temptation (ULT)

Do not let us do wrong things when we are tempted... to (UST)

The word "temptation," an abstract noun, can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: "Do not let anything tempt us" or "Do not let anything cause us to desire to sin" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [temptation](#)
- [the evil one](#)
- [deliver](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [are tempted](#)
- [harm us](#)
- [rescue](#)

ULT

¹³ Do not bring us into [temptation](#), but [deliver](#) us from [the evil one](#).^[1]

UST

¹³ Do not let us do wrong things when we [are tempted](#), and [rescue](#) us when Satan tries to [harm us](#).'

Matthew 6:14

General Information:

All instances of “you” and “your” are plural. However, Jesus is telling them what will happen to them as individuals if each person does not forgive others. (See: [Forms of You](#))

their trespasses (ULT) who sin against...you (UST)

The abstract noun “trespasses” can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: “when they trespass against you” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Father (ULT) God...Father (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heavenly](#)
- [trespasses](#)
- [you forgive](#)
- [will...forgive](#)
- [Father](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [in heaven](#)
- [who sin against](#)
- [Forgive...you...do](#)
- [will forgive](#)
- [God...Father](#)

ULT

¹⁴ For if [you forgive](#) people their [trespasses](#), your [heavenly Father](#) will also [forgive](#) you.

UST

¹⁴ [Forgive](#) the people [who sin against](#) you, because, if you [do](#), [God](#), your [Father](#) who is [in heaven](#), [will forgive](#) your sins.

Matthew 6:15

their trespasses...your trespasses (ULT) other people...your sins (UST)

The abstract noun “trespasses” can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: “when they trespass against you...when you trespass against God” or “when they do things that harm you...when you do things that make your Father angry” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [trespasses](#)
- [you...forgive](#)
- [will...forgive](#)
- [Father](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sins](#)
- [do...forgive](#)
- [will...forgive](#)
- [your Father](#)

ULT

¹⁵ But if you do not [forgive](#) their trespasses, neither will your [Father](#) [forgive](#) your [trespasses](#).

UST

¹⁵ But if you do not [forgive](#) other people, neither will [your Father](#) [forgive](#) your [sins](#).

Matthew 6:16

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. In verse 16 all occurrences of “you” are plural. In verses 17 and 18 where Jesus teaches them how to behave when they fast, all occurrences of “you” and “your” are singular. In some languages those occurrences of “you” may also need to be plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to teach about fasting.

they disfigure...their faces (ULT)

They make...appear sad...their faces (UST)

The hypocrites would not wash their faces or comb their hair. They did this purposely to draw attention to themselves so that people would see them and give them honor for fasting.

Truly I say to you (ULT)

Keep in mind (UST)

“I tell you the truth.” This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

Translation Words - ULT

- [hypocrites](#)
- [Truly](#)
- [they have received](#)
- [reward](#)
- [faces](#)
- [as](#)
- [you fast](#)
- [as fasting](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [hypocrites](#)
- [Keep in mind](#)
- [that is the only](#)
- [reward](#)
- [faces](#)
- [as](#)
- [you keep from eating food in order to please God](#)
- [they are not eating food](#)

ULT

16 When [you fast](#), do not have a mournful face [as](#) the [hypocrites](#) do, for they disfigure their [faces](#) so that they may appear to people [as fasting](#). [Truly](#) I say to you, [they have received](#) their [reward](#).

UST

16 When [you keep from eating food in order to please God](#), do not look sad [as](#) the [hypocrites](#) look. They make their [faces](#) appear sad in order that people will see that [they are not eating food](#). [Keep in mind that is the only reward](#) those people will get!

Matthew 6:17

anoint your head (ULT)

comb your hair (UST)

“put oil in your hair” or “groom your hair.” To “anoint” the head here is to take normal care of one’s hair. It has nothing to do with “Christ” meaning “anointed one.” Jesus means that people should look the same whether they are fasting or not.

Translation Words - ULT

- [anoint](#)
- [head](#)
- [face](#)
- [when you fast](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [comb your hair](#)
- [comb your hair](#)
- [face](#)
- [when you keep from eating food, should](#)

ULT

¹⁷ But you, [when you fast](#), [anoint](#) your [head](#) and wash your [face](#),

UST

¹⁷ Instead, each of you, [when you keep from eating food, should comb your hair](#) and wash your [face](#) as usual,

Matthew 6:18

your Father who is in secret

Possible meanings are 1) no one can see God. Alternate translation: "Father, who is invisible" or 2) God is with that person who fasts secretly. Alternate translation: "Father, who is with you in private" See how you translated this in [Matthew 6:6](#).

to...Father (ULT)

God...Father (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

to...Father...in...secret...Father...sees (ULT)

God...Father...no one can see...will observe...that...are not eating food (UST)

"who sees what you do in private." See how you translated this in [Matthew 6:6](#).

ULT

¹⁸ so that it would not appear to others [that you are fasting](#), but only to your [Father](#) who is in secret; and your [Father](#) who sees in secret, [will reward](#) you.

UST

¹⁸ in order that other people will not notice that you [are fasting](#). But [God](#), your [Father](#), whom no one can see, will observe that you are not eating food. [He](#) sees you even though no one else sees you, and he [will reward](#) you.

Translation Words - ULT

- [to...Father](#)
- [Father](#)
- [will reward](#)
- [that you are fasting](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God...Father](#)
- [He](#)
- [will reward](#)
- [are fasting](#)

Matthew 6:19

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. All occurrences of “you” and “your” are plural, except in verse 21, where they are singular. In some languages these occurrences of “you” and “your” may also need to be plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to teach about money and possessions.

treasures (ULT)

money and material goods (UST)

riches, the things to which a person gives the most value

where moth and rust destroy (ULT)

where everything perishes...moths ruin clothing, rust destroys metals (UST)

“where moth and rust ruin treasures”

moth (ULT)

moths ruin clothing (UST)

a small, flying insect that destroys cloth

rust (ULT)

rust destroys metals (UST)

a brown substance that forms on metals

Translation Words - ULT

- [thieves](#)
- [earth](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [thieves](#)
- [earth, because the earth is](#)

ULT

19 Do not store up for yourselves treasures on the [earth](#), where moth and rust destroy, and where [thieves](#) break in and steal.

UST

19 Do not selfishly accumulate large quantities of money and material goods for yourselves on this [earth, because the earth is](#) where everything perishes —where moths ruin clothing, rust destroys metals, and [thieves](#) steal what belongs to other people.

Matthew 6:20

**store up...for yourselves treasures in heaven (ULT)
do deeds that will please God so that...you store up
treasures in heaven. Nothing (UST)**

This is a metaphor that means do good things on earth so God will reward you in heaven. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [thieves](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven. Nothing](#)
- [no thieves who could](#)

ULT

²⁰ Instead, store up for yourselves treasures in [heaven](#), where neither moth nor rust destroys, and where [thieves](#) do not break in nor steal.

UST

²⁰ Instead, do deeds that will please God so that you store up treasures in [heaven. Nothing](#) perishes in heaven. In heaven no moths can ruin clothing, there is no rust, and there are [no thieves who could](#) steal.

Matthew 6:21

there will your heart be also (ULT)
that is what you will be thinking about (UST)

Here “heart” means a person’s thoughts and interests. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [you will be thinking about](#)

ULT

²¹ For where your treasure is, there will your [heart](#) be also.

UST

²¹ Remember that whatever is most important to you, that is what [you will be thinking about](#).

Matthew 6:22

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. The instances of “you” and “your” are all singular, but in some languages they may need to be plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

The eye is the lamp of the body...is filled with light (ULT)

Your eyes are like a lamp for...body, because they enable you to...things...were full of light (UST)

This compares healthy eyes that allow a person to see to diseased eyes that cause a person to be blind. This is a metaphor referring to spiritual health. Often Jewish people used the phrase “bad eye” to refer to greed. The meaning is that if a person is completely devoted to God and sees or considers things the way God does, then he is doing what is right. If a person is greedy for more, then he is doing what is evil. (See: [Metaphor](#))

The eye is the lamp of the body (ULT)

Your eyes are like a lamp for...body, because they enable you to...things (UST)

This metaphor means the eyes allow a person to see just as a lamp helps a person see in the dark. Alternate translation: “Like a lamp, the eye allows you to see things clearly” (See: [Metaphor](#))

eye (ULT)

Your eyes (UST)

You may have to translate this as plural, “eyes.”

Translation Words - ULT

- [body](#)
- [body](#)
- [lamp](#)
- [filled with light](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [body, because they enable you to...things](#)
- [whole body](#)
- [a lamp for](#)
- [full of light](#)

ULT

²² The eye is the [lamp](#) of the [body](#). Therefore, if your eye is good, your whole [body](#) is [filled with light](#).

UST

²² “Your eyes are like [a lamp for](#) your [body, because they enable you to](#) see [things](#). So if you see things as God sees them, it will be as if your [whole body](#) were [full of light](#).”

Matthew 6:23

But if your eye...is actually...how great is that darkness (ULT)

But if your eyes...about involves your greedily desiring material possessions, all that you do will be evil (UST)

This compares healthy eyes that allow a person to see to diseased eyes that cause a person to be blind. This is a metaphor referring to spiritual health. Often Jewish people used the phrase "bad eye" to refer to greed. The meaning is that if a person is completely devoted to God and sees or considers things the way God does, then he is doing what is right. If a person is greedy for more, then he is doing what is evil. (See: [Metaphor](#))

if...your eye is bad (ULT)

if...your eyes are bad, you are (UST)

This does not refer to magic. Jewish people often used this as a metaphor for someone who is greedy. (See: [Metaphor](#))

if the light that is in you is actually darkness, how great is that darkness!

"if that which is supposed to cause light in your body causes darkness, then your body is in complete darkness"

Translation Words - ULT

- [body](#)
- [bad](#)
- [full of](#)
- [darkness](#)
- [darkness](#) (2)
- [light](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [are bad, you are](#)
- [are bad, you are](#)
- [in complete darkness. Similarly, if you continue to be greedy](#)
- [spiritual darkness. If all that your eyes can see and your mind can think](#)
- [your greedily desiring material possessions, all that you do will be evil](#) (2)
- [things well. And if that continues, the time will come](#)

ULT

²³ But if your eye is [bad](#), your whole [body](#) is [full of](#) darkness. Therefore, if the [light](#) that is in you is actually [darkness](#), how great is that [darkness](#)!

UST

²³ But if your eyes [are bad, you are](#) not able to see [things well. And if that continues, the time will come](#) when you will not be able to see at all. You will be [in complete darkness. Similarly, if you continue to be greedy](#), you will be in [spiritual darkness. If all that your eyes can see and your mind can think](#) about involves [your greedily desiring material possessions, all that you do will be evil.](#)"

Matthew 6:24

for either he will hate the one and love the other, or else he will be devoted to one and despise the other (ULT)

that, he would hate one of them and love the other one, or he would be loyal to one of them and despise the other one. Similarly, you (UST)

Both of these phrases mean basically the same thing. They emphasize that a person cannot love and be devoted both to God and money at the same time. (See: [Parallelism](#))

serve...and...You cannot...God...wealth (ULT)
to serve...and...cannot...God...money at the same time (UST)

"You cannot love God and money at the same time"

Translation Words - ULT

- [masters](#)
- [love](#)
- [God](#)
- [serve](#)
- [serve](#) (2)

Translation Words - UST

- [masters at the same time. If he tried to do](#)
- [love](#)
- [God](#)
- [to serve](#)
- [worship](#) (2)

ULT

²⁴ No one can [serve](#) two [masters](#), for either he will hate the one and [love](#) the other, or else he will be devoted to one and despise the other. You cannot [serve](#) [God](#) and wealth.

UST

²⁴ "No one is able [to serve](#) two different [masters at the same time. If he tried to do](#) that, he would hate one of them and [love](#) the other one, or he would be loyal to one of them and despise the other one. Similarly, you cannot [worship God](#) and money at the same time."

Matthew 6:25

General Information:

Here the instances of “you” and “your” are all plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

I say to you (ULT)

I tell you that you (UST)

This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

to you (ULT)

you that you (UST)

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do.

Is not life more than food, and the body more than clothes (ULT)

in order to live. Do not worry about...food...enough clothes to wear. The way you conduct your lives is much more important than those things (UST)

Jesus uses a question to teach the people. Alternate translation: “obviously life is more than what you eat, and your body is more than what you wear.” or “clearly there are things in life that are more important than food, and there are things concerning the body that are more important than clothes.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [about...life](#)
- [life](#)
- [about...body](#)
- [body](#)
- [you will](#)
- [more than clothes](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [worry about things](#)
- [way you conduct your lives](#)
- [in order to live. Do not worry about](#)
- [than those things](#)
- [in order to live. Do not worry about](#)
- [enough clothes to wear](#)

ULT

²⁵ Therefore I say to you, do not worry [about](#) your [life](#), what you will eat or what you will drink—or [about](#) your [body](#), what [you will](#) wear. Is not [life](#) more than food, and the [body more than clothes](#)?

UST

²⁵ That is why I tell you that you should not [worry about things](#) that you need [in order to live. Do not worry about](#) whether you will have enough food to eat and things to drink, or [enough clothes to wear](#). The [way you conduct your lives](#) is much more important [than those things](#).

Matthew 6:26

barns (ULT)

barns. They always have (UST)

places to store crops

Father (ULT)

God...Father (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Are you not more valuable than they are (ULT)

And you are certainly worth a lot more than birds! So you can be assured that God will supply what you need (UST)

Jesus uses a question to teach the people. Alternate translation: "Obviously you are more valuable than birds." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- air
- heavenly
- Father
- They...sow
- reap

Translation Words - UST

- birds
- is in heaven
- God...Father
- They do...plant seeds
- they do...harvest crops

ULT

²⁶ Look at the birds in the [air](#). [They](#) do not [sow](#) or [reap](#) or gather into barns, but your [heavenly Father](#) feeds them. Are you not more valuable than they are?

UST

²⁶ Think about the [birds](#). [They do](#) not [plant seeds](#), and [they do](#) not [harvest crops](#) or gather produce into barns. They always have food to eat because [God](#), your [Father](#) who [is in heaven](#), provides food for them. And you are certainly worth a lot more than birds! So you can be assured that God will supply what you need!

Matthew 6:27

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. All instances of “you” and “your” are plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

But which one of you by being anxious can add one cubit to his lifespan (ULT)

None of you can, just by worrying, add years to your life. You cannot add even one minute to your life! So you should not worry about things you need (UST)

Jesus uses a question to teach the people. Here to “add one cubit to his lifespan” is a metaphor for adding time to how long a person will live. Alternate translation: “None of you can, just by worrying, add years to your life. You cannot add even one minute to your life! So you should not worry about things you need.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Metaphor](#))

one cubit (ULT)

one minute to your life (UST)

A cubit is a measure of a little less than half a meter. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

ULT

27 But which one of you by being anxious can add one cubit to his lifespan?

UST

27 None of you can, just by worrying, add years to your life. You cannot add even one minute to your life! So you should not worry about things you need.

Matthew 6:28

Why are you anxious...about...clothing (ULT)
worry about whether you will have enough clothes to wear (UST)

Jesus uses a question to teach the people. Alternate translation: "You should not be worried about what you will wear." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Think about (ULT)
Think about (UST)

"Consider"

the lilies...they grow. They do not work, and they do not spin cloth (ULT)
flowers...grow...not work to earn money, and they do not make their own clothes (UST)

Jesus speaks about the lilies as if they were people who wore clothes. The lilies being clothed is a metaphor for the plants having beautiful and colorful flowers. (See: [Personification](#) and [Metaphor](#))

lilies (ULT)
flowers (UST)

A lily is a kind of wild flower. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [They...work](#)
- [clothing](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [work to earn money](#)
- [clothes to wear](#)

ULT

²⁸ Why are you anxious about [clothing](#)? Think about the lilies in the fields, how they grow. [They](#) do not [work](#), and they do not spin cloth.

UST

²⁸ You should also not worry about whether you will have enough [clothes to wear](#). Think about the way flowers grow in the fields. They do not [work to earn money](#), and they do not make their own clothes.

Matthew 6:29

not even...Solomon in all his glory was clothed like one of these (ULT)

even though King Solomon, who lived long ago, wore very beautiful clothes, his clothes were not as beautiful as one of those flowers (UST)

Jesus speaks about the lilies as if they were people who wore clothes. The lilies being clothed is a metaphor for the plants having beautiful and colorful flowers. (See: [Personification](#) and [Metaphor](#))

I say...to you (ULT)

I tell...you (UST)

This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

was clothed like one of these (ULT)

clothes were...as beautiful as one of those flowers (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “did not wear clothes that are as beautiful as these lilies” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [glory](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [like](#)
- [was clothed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [who lived long ago, wore very beautiful clothes](#)
- [King Solomon](#)
- [as beautiful as](#)
- [clothes were](#)

ULT

²⁹ Yet I say to you, not even [Solomon](#) in all his [glory was clothed like](#) one of these.

UST

²⁹ But I tell you that even though [King Solomon, who lived long ago, wore very beautiful clothes](#), his [clothes were](#) not [as beautiful as](#) one of those flowers.

Matthew 6:30

the grass in the fields...so clothes (ULT)

**God makes the wild plants very beautiful...in the field...
than wild plants (UST)**

Jesus continues to speak about the lilies as if they were people who wore clothes. The lilies being clothed is a metaphor for the plants having beautiful and colorful flowers. (See: [Personification](#) and [Metaphor](#))

grass (ULT)

wild plants very beautiful (UST)

If your language has a word that includes “grass” and the word you used for “lilies” in the previous verse, you can use it here.

is thrown into the oven (ULT)

**people will throw them into an oven to burn them
(UST)**

The Jews at that time used grass in their fires to cook their food. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “someone throws it into a fire” or “someone burns it” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

will he not clothe you much more, you of little faith (ULT)

**more important...are, and you live much longer. So trust in God, you who have so little faith
(UST)**

Jesus uses this question to teach the people that God will provide what they need. Alternate translation: “he will certainly clothe you...faith.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

you of little faith (ULT)

you who have so little faith (UST)

“you who have such little faith.” Jesus addresses the people this way because their anxiety about clothing shows they have little faith in God.

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [of little faith](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to God](#)
- [who have so little faith](#)

ULT

³⁰ But if [God](#) so clothes the grass in the fields, which exists today and tomorrow is thrown into the oven, will he not clothe you much more, you [of little faith](#)?

UST

³⁰ God makes the wild plants very beautiful, but they grow in the field for only a short time. One day they grow, and the next day people will throw them into an oven to burn them. But you are more important [to God](#) than wild plants are, and you live much longer. So trust in God, you [who have so little faith](#)!

Matthew 6:31

Therefore (ULT)

So (UST)

“Because of all of this”

What clothes will we wear (ULT)

Will we have clothes to wear (UST)

In this sentence, “clothes” is a synecdoche for material possessions.

Alternate translation: “What possessions will we have” (See:

[Synecdoche](#))

ULT

³¹ Therefore do not be anxious and say, ‘What will we eat?’ or, ‘What will we drink?’ or, ‘What clothes will we wear?’

UST

³¹ So do not worry and say, ‘Will we have anything to eat?’ or ‘Will we have anything to drink?’ or ‘Will we have clothes to wear?’

Matthew 6:32

For the Gentiles seek...these things (ULT)
Those who do not know God are...always...worrying
about things like that. But (UST)

“for the Gentiles are concerned about what they will eat, drink, and wear”

your heavenly Father knows that you need all of them

Jesus is implying that God will make sure their basic needs are met.

Father (ULT)
God...Father (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heavenly](#)
- [Gentiles](#)
- [Father](#)
- [seek](#)
- [knows](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [in heaven](#)
- [do not know God](#)
- [God...Father](#)
- [are...worrying about](#)
- [knows](#)

ULT

³² For the [Gentiles seek](#) all these things, for your [heavenly Father knows](#) that you need all of them.

UST

³² Those who [do not know God](#) are always [worrying about](#) things like that. But [God](#), your [Father](#) who is [in heaven](#), [knows](#) that you need all those things.

Matthew 6:33

**seek...first his kingdom and his righteousness (ULT)
make it...the most important thing that God should
rule over the entire world and that everyone should do
what he requires (UST)**

Here "kingdom" refers to God's rule as king. Alternate translation: "concern yourselves with serving God, who is your king, and doing what is right" (See: [Metonymy](#))

**and all these things will be given to you (ULT)
If you do that, he will give you all the things that you
need (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will provide all these things for you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [righteousness](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [seek](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [everyone should do what...requires](#)
- [God should rule over the entire world](#)
- [make it](#)

ULT

³³ But [seek](#) first his [kingdom](#) and his [righteousness](#) and all these things will be given to you.

UST

³³ Instead, [make it](#) the most important thing that [God should rule over the entire world](#) and that [everyone should do what](#) he [requires](#). If you do that, he will give you all the things that you need.

Matthew 6:34

Therefore (ULT)

So (UST)

“Because of all this”

for tomorrow...for tomorrow...will be anxious for itself (ULT)

because...when that day comes, you will have enough to be concerned about (UST)

Jesus speaks of “tomorrow” as if it were a person who could worry. Jesus means that a person will have enough to worry about when the next day comes. (See: [Personification](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- evil
- Each day

Translation Words - UST

- So do not worry ahead of time
- So do not worry ahead of time

ULT

34 Therefore, do not be anxious for tomorrow, for tomorrow will be anxious for itself. [Each day](#) has enough [evil](#) of its own.

6:13 ^[1] The best ancient copies do not have *For yours is the kingdom and the power and the glory forever. Amen* .

UST

34 So do not be worried about what will happen to you the next day, because when that day comes, you will have enough to be concerned about. [So do not worry ahead of time.](#)”

Matthew 7

Matthew 7 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Jesus spoke about many different subjects in this sermon, so you may wish to help the reader by putting an empty line into the text whenever Jesus changed the subject.

Special concepts in this chapter

Matthew 5-7

Many people call the words in Matthew 5-7 the Sermon on the Mount. This is one long lesson that Jesus taught. Bibles divide this lesson into three chapters, but this can sometimes confuse the reader. If your translation divides the text into sections, be sure that the reader understands that the whole sermon is one large section.

“By their fruits you will know them”

Fruit is a common image in the scriptures. It is used to describe the results of either good or bad actions. In this chapter, good fruit is the result of living as God commands. (See: [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [unfruitful](#))

Matthew 7:1

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. The instances of “you” and the commands are plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach his disciples in his Sermon on the Mount, which began in [Matthew 5:3](#).

ULT

¹ Do not [judge](#), so that [you will not be judged](#).

UST

¹ Do not [talk about how sinfully others have acted](#), in order that [God will](#) not [say how sinfully you have acted](#).

Do not judge (ULT)

Do not talk about how sinfully others have acted (UST)

It is implied here that “judge” has the strong meaning of “condemn harshly” or “declare guilty.” Alternate translation: “Do not condemn people harshly” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

you will not be judged (ULT)

God will not say how sinfully you have acted (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God will not condemn you harshly” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [judge](#)
- [you will not be judged](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Do...talk about how sinfully others have acted](#)
- [God will...say how sinfully you have acted](#)

Matthew 7:2

For (ULT)

condemn other people (UST)

Be sure the reader understands the statement in 7:2 is based on what Jesus said in 7:1.

with the...judgment you judge, you will be judged (ULT)

If you condemn other people...condemn other people...

God will condemn you. To...that...will be condemned (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will condemn you in the same way you condemn others" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the...measure (ULT)

condemn other people...the same extent (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) this is the amount of punishment given or 2) this is the standard used for judgment.

it will be measured out to you (ULT)

you condemn others...you (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will measure it out to you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- judgment
- you judge
- you will be judged

Translation Words - UST

- condemn other people
- God will condemn you
- To...that...will be condemned

ULT

² For with the [judgment you judge, you will be judged](#), and with the measure that you measure, it will be measured out to you.

UST

² If you [condemn other people, God will condemn you](#). To the same extent that you condemn others, you [will be condemned](#).

Matthew 7:3

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. The instances of “you” and “your” are all singular, but in some languages they may need to be plural.

But why do you look at the tiny piece of straw...but you do not notice the log that is in your own eye (ULT)

None of you should be concerned about someone else's small faults! That would be like noticing a speck of straw...because you do...that...But...not notice a huge wooden plank in your own eye (UST)

Jesus uses this question to rebuke the people for paying attention to other people's sins and ignoring their own. Alternate translation:

“You look...brother's eye, but you do not notice the log that is in your own eye.” or “Do not look...brother's eye and ignore the log that is in your own eye.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

the tiny piece of straw that is in the eye of your brother (ULT)

be concerned about someone else's small faults! That would be like...a speck of straw in... person's eye...you should be concerned about your own big faults (UST)

This is a metaphor that refers to the less important faults of a fellow believer. (See: [Metaphor](#))

tiny piece of straw (ULT)

a speck of straw (UST)

“speck” or “splinter” or “bit of dust.” Use a word for the smallest thing that commonly falls into a person's eyes.

of...brother (ULT)

person's (UST)

All occurrences of “brother” in 7:3-5 refer to a fellow believer, not to a literal brother or a neighbor.

that...the log...is in your own eye (ULT)

that...a huge wooden plank in your own eye (UST)

This is a metaphor for a person's most important faults. A log could not literally go into a person's eye. Jesus is exaggerating to emphasize that a person should pay attention to his own more important faults before he deals with another person's less important faults. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

the log (ULT)

a huge wooden plank (UST)

the largest part of a tree that someone has cut down

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)

ULT

³ But why do you look at the tiny piece of straw that is in the eye of your [brother](#), but you do not notice the log that is in your own eye?

UST

³ None of you should be concerned about someone else's small faults! That would be like noticing a speck of straw in that [person's](#) eye. But you should be concerned about your own big faults because you do not notice a huge wooden plank in your own eye.

Translation Words - UST

- [person's](#)

Matthew 7:4

Or how can you say...your own eye (ULT) should not say...your own eye (UST)

Jesus asks this question to challenge the people to pay attention to their own sins before they pay attention to another person's sins. Alternate translation: "You should not say...your own eye." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to...brother](#)
- [me take out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [people](#)
- [me remove](#)

ULT

⁴ Or how can you say to your [brother](#), 'Let [me take out](#) the piece of straw from your eye,' while behold, the log is in your own eye?

UST

⁴ You should not say to other [people](#) about their minor faults, 'Let [me remove](#) the speck from your eye!' while you still have a wooden plank in your own eye.

Matthew 7:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- of...brother
- You hypocrite
- take out
- to take out

Translation Words - UST

- someone else's
- hypocrite! You should
- remove
- to get

ULT

⁵ You hypocrite! First take out the log from your own eye, and then you will see clearly to take out the piece of straw from the eye of your brother.

UST

⁵ If you do that, you are a hypocrite! You should first remove the plank out of your own eye before trying to get the speck out of someone else's eye."

Matthew 7:6

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. The instances of "you" and "your" are all plural.

to the dogs...the hogs (ULT)

to dogs that would attack you...hogs, because (UST)

Jews considered these animals dirty, and God told the Jews not to eat them. They are metaphors for wicked people who do not value holy things. It would be best to translate these words literally. (See: [Metaphor](#))

pearls (ULT)

valuable pearls (UST)

These are similar to round, valuable stones or beads. They are a metaphor for the knowledge of God or precious things in general. (See: [Metaphor](#))

they may trample (ULT)

just walk on (UST)

"the pigs may trample"

and then turn and tear you to pieces (ULT)

And...they...do evil things...to you...in return (UST)

"the dogs will then turn and tear"

Translation Words - ULT

- [what is holy](#)
- [hogs](#)
- [turn](#)
- [they may trample](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [belong to God](#)
- [hogs, because](#)
- [And...they...do evil things...in return](#)
- [just walk on](#)

ULT

⁶ Do not give [what is holy](#) to the dogs, and do not throw your pearls in front of the [hogs](#). Otherwise [they may trample](#) them under their feet, and then [turn](#) and tear you to pieces.

UST

⁶ "You do not give things that [belong to God](#) to dogs that would attack you. And you do not throw valuable pearls in front of [hogs, because they](#) would [just walk on](#) them. In the same way, do not tell wonderful things about God to people who you know will [do evil things](#) to you [in return](#)."

Matthew 7:7

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. The instances of "you" and "your" are all plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Ask...Seek...Knock (ULT)

Keep asking God for what...you need...keep expecting him to give it to...you need...keep expecting him to give it to (UST)

These are metaphors for praying to God. The verb form shows that we are to keep praying until he answers. If your language has a form for continuing to do something over and over, use it here. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Ask (ULT)

Keep asking God for what (UST)

request things from someone, in this case God

it will be given to you (ULT)

you need...keep expecting him to give it to (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will give you what you need" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Seek (ULT)

you need...keep expecting him to give it to (UST)

look for someone, in this case God

Knock (ULT)

you need...keep expecting him to give it to (UST)

To knock on a door was a polite way to request that the person inside the house or room open the door. If knocking on a door is impolite or not done in your culture, use the word that describes how people politely ask for doors to be opened. Alternate translation: "Tell God you want him to open the door"

it will be opened to you (ULT)

you need...keep expecting him to give it to...you (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will open it for you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Seek](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [you need...keep expecting him to give it to](#)

ULT

⁷ Ask, and it will be given to you. [Seek](#), and you will find. Knock, and it will be opened to you.

UST

⁷ "Keep asking God for what [you need](#), and [keep expecting him to give it to](#) you.

Matthew 7:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [receives](#)
- [the one who seeks](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [receive it](#)
- [expects him to give it to him, will](#)

ULT

⁸ For everyone who asks, [receives](#); and [the one who seeks](#), finds; and to the person who knocks, it will be opened.

UST

⁸ For everyone who asks God for something, and who [expects him to give it to him, will receive it](#).

Matthew 7:9

Or what man is there among...of...but he will give him a stone (ULT)

If your...one among you would...no...give him a stone, would (UST)

Jesus uses a question to teach the people. Alternate translation: "There is not one person among you...a stone." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

for a loaf of bread (ULT)
bread (UST)

This refers to food in general. Alternate translation: "some food" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

a stone (ULT)
a stone, would (UST)

This noun should be translated literally.

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [for a loaf of bread](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [bread](#)

ULT

⁹ Or what man is there among you, of whom his [son](#) will ask [for a loaf of bread](#), but he will give him a stone?

UST

⁹ If your [son](#) asked you for [bread](#), no one among you would give him a stone, would he?

Matthew 7:10

fish...snake

These nouns should be translated literally.

Or he will also ask for a fish, but he will give him a snake (ULT)

If your son asked you for a fish, certainly no one among you would give him a snake (UST)

Jesus asks another question to teach the people. It is understood that Jesus is still referring to a man and his son. Alternate translation:

“And there is not one person among you, if his son asks for a fish, will give him a snake.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

ULT

¹⁰ Or he will also ask for a fish, but he will give him [a snake](#)?

UST

¹⁰ If your son asked you for a fish, certainly no one among you would give him [a snake](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [a snake](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [a snake](#)

Matthew 7:11

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. The instances of "you" and "your" are plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

how much more will your Father who is in heaven give...him (ULT)

God, your Father who is in heaven, will even more certainly give...him (UST)

Jesus uses a question to teach the people. Alternate translation: "then your Father in heaven will most certainly give...him." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Father (ULT)

God...Father (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [gifts](#)
- [Father](#)
- [to...children](#)
- [good](#)
- [good things](#) (2)
- [evil](#)
- [know how](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven, will even](#)
- [things](#)
- [God...Father](#)
- [children, even though](#)
- [good](#)
- [good things to](#) (2)
- [evil](#)
- [know how](#)

ULT

¹¹ Therefore, if you who are [evil](#) [know how](#) to give [good gifts](#) to your [children](#), how much more will your [Father](#) who is in [heaven](#) give [good things](#) to those who ask him?

UST

¹¹ You [know how](#) to give [good things](#) to your [children, even though](#) you are [evil](#). So [God](#), your [Father](#) who is in [heaven](#), [will even](#) more certainly give [good things to](#) those who ask him.

Matthew 7:12

whatever you would want that people would do to you (ULT)

in whatever way you want others to act toward you... them (UST)

“whatever way you want others to act toward you”

**for this is the law and the prophets (ULT)
toward...because that is the meaning of God’s law and
of everything that the prophets wrote long ago (UST)**

Here “law” and “prophets” refer to what Moses and the prophets wrote. Alternate translation: “for this is what Moses and the prophets teach in the scriptures” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [prophets](#)
- [law](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [prophets wrote long ago](#)
- [God’s law](#)

ULT

¹² In everything, therefore, whatever you would want that people would do to you, you should also do the same to them, for this is the [law](#) and the [prophets](#).

UST

¹² So in whatever way you want others to act toward you, that is the way you should act toward them, because that is the meaning of [God’s law](#) and of everything that the [prophets wrote long ago](#).

Matthew 7:13

General Information:

This image of walking through a wide gate to destruction or a narrow gate to life represents how people live and the results of how they live. When you translate, use appropriate words for “wide” and “broad” that are as different as possible from “narrow” in order to emphasize the differences between the two sets of gates and ways.

Enter through the narrow gate...there are many people who go through it (ULT)

This is an image of people traveling on a road and going through a gate into a kingdom. One kingdom is easy to enter; the other is hard to enter. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Enter through the narrow gate (ULT)

You may need to move this to the end of verse 14: “Therefore, enter through the narrow gate.”

the...gate...is the...way (ULT)

Possible meanings are 1) “the way” refers to the road that leads to the gate of a kingdom, or 2) the “the gate” and “the way” both refer to the entrance to the kingdom.

to destruction (ULT)

This abstract noun can be translated with a verb. Alternate translation: “to the place where people die” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [gate](#)
- [gate](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [gate](#), [gate bars](#), [gatekeeper](#), [gateposts](#), [gateway](#)
- [gate](#), [gate bars](#), [gatekeeper](#), [gateposts](#), [gateway](#)

ULT

13 Enter through the narrow [gate](#). For wide is the [gate](#) and broad is the way that leads to destruction, and there are many people who go through it.

UST

13-14 “Going to live forever with God in heaven is difficult; it is like a difficult road that you should take. There is another road, one that most people take. That road is wide; they walk on until they reach a wide gate, but when they go through it, they will die. So I am telling you to take the difficult road and enter the narrow gate to live forever with God in heaven.”

Matthew 7:14

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to speak of people choosing how they are going to live as if they are choosing whether to go on one path or another.

to life (ULT)

The abstract noun "life" can be translated using the verb "live."

Alternate translation: "to the place where people live" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [life](#)
- [gate](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)
- [gate](#), [gate bars](#), [gatekeeper](#), [gateposts](#), [gateway](#)

ULT

14 For the [gate](#) is narrow and the way is difficult that leads to [life](#), and there are few who find it.

UST

13-14 "Going to live forever with God in heaven is difficult; it is like a difficult road that you should take. There is another road, one that most people take. That road is wide; they walk on until they reach a wide gate, but when they go through it, they will die. So I am telling you to take the difficult road and enter the narrow gate to live forever with God in heaven."

Matthew 7:15

Beware of (ULT)

Watch out for (UST)

“Be on guard against”

who come to you in sheep’s clothing, but inwardly they are ravenous wolves (ULT)

people who come to you and...They are like wolves that have covered themselves with sheepskins to appear harmless but will attack you (UST)

This metaphor means that false prophets will pretend they are good and want to help people, but they are really evil and will do people harm. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [false prophets](#)
- [sheep’s](#)
- [wolves](#)
- [clothing](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [say falsely that they are telling you what God has said](#)
- [that have covered themselves...sheepskins to appear harmless](#)
- [They are like wolves...but will attack you](#)
- [that have covered themselves...sheepskins to appear harmless](#)

ULT

¹⁵ Beware of [false prophets](#), who come to you in [sheep’s clothing](#), but inwardly they are ravenous [wolves](#).

UST

¹⁵ Watch out for people who come to you and [say falsely that they are telling you what God has said](#). [They are like wolves that have covered themselves with sheepskins to appear harmless but will attack you](#).

Matthew 7:16

By their fruits you will know them (ULT)

By seeing the fruit that plants produce you know what kind of plants they are (UST)

This metaphor refers to a person's actions. Alternate translation: "Just as you know a tree by the fruit that grows on it, you will know false prophets by how they act" (See: [Metaphor](#))

People do not gather...do they...or figs from thistles (ULT)

one thinks of picking grapes...and thistles cannot produce figs, so no...from...or figs...thistles (UST)

Jesus uses a question to teach the people. The people would have known that the answer is no. Alternate translation: "People do not gather...thistles." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

¹⁶ By their [fruits you will know](#) them. People do not gather [grapes](#) from [a thornbush](#) or [figs](#) from thistles, do they?

UST

¹⁶ By seeing the [fruit](#) that plants produce [you know](#) what kind of plants they are. [Thornbushes cannot produce grapes](#) and thistles [cannot produce figs](#), [so no](#) one thinks of picking grapes from thorns or figs from thistles.

Translation Words - ULT

- [fruits](#)
- [a thornbush](#)
- [figs](#)
- [grapes](#)
- [you will know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [fruit](#)
- [Thornbushes](#)
- [cannot produce figs, so no](#)
- [cannot produce grapes](#)
- [you know](#)

Matthew 7:17

every good tree produces good fruit (ULT)

All good fruit trees produce good fruit (UST)

Jesus continues to use the metaphor of fruit to refer to good prophets who produce good works or words. (See: [Metaphor](#))

the...bad tree produces bad fruit (ULT)

but all...rotten trees produce worthless fruit (UST)

Jesus continues to use the metaphor of fruit to refer to bad prophets who produce evil works. (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

¹⁷ In the same way, every [good](#) tree produces [good fruit](#), but the [bad](#) tree produces [bad fruit](#).

UST

¹⁷ Here is another example: All [good](#) fruit trees produce [good fruit](#), but all [rotten](#) trees produce [worthless fruit](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [good](#)
- [good](#)
- [bad](#)
- [fruit](#)
- [fruit](#) (2)
- [bad](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [good](#)
- [good](#)
- [worthless](#)
- [fruit](#)
- [fruit](#) (2)
- [rotten](#)

Matthew 7:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- good
- good
- bad
- fruit
- fruit (2)
- bad

Translation Words - UST

- good
- good fruit
- worthless
- fruit
- fruit (2)
- rotten tree

ULT

¹⁸ A [good](#) tree cannot produce [bad fruit](#), nor can a [bad](#) tree produce [good fruit](#).

UST

¹⁸ No [good fruit](#) tree is able to produce [worthless fruit](#), and no [rotten tree](#) is able to produce [good fruit](#).

Matthew 7:19

Every tree that does not produce good fruit is cut down and thrown into the fire (ULT)

Workers chop down and burn up all the trees that do not produce good fruit (UST)

Jesus continues to use fruit trees as a metaphor to refer to false prophets. Here, he only states what will happen to the bad trees. It is implied that the same thing will happen to the false prophets. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

is cut down and thrown into the fire (ULT)

Workers chop down and burn up (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people cut down and burn" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [good](#)
- [fruit](#)
- [is cut down](#)
- [the fire](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [good](#)
- [fruit](#)
- [Workers chop down and burn up](#)
- [Workers chop down and burn up](#)

ULT

¹⁹ Every tree that does not produce [good fruit is cut down](#) and thrown into [the fire](#).

UST

¹⁹ [Workers chop down and burn up](#) all the trees that do not produce [good fruit](#).

Matthew 7:20

you will recognize them by their fruits (ULT)

By...seeing what plants produce, you know what kind of plants they are. Similarly, when you see what the people who come to you do, you will know if they truly produce good or not (UST)

The word “their” can refer to either the prophets or the trees. This metaphor implies that the fruit of trees and the deeds of prophets both reveal whether they are good or bad. If possible, translate this in a way so that it can refer to both trees and prophets. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [fruits](#)
- [you will recognize](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [seeing what plants produce](#)
- [you know what kind of plants](#)

ULT

²⁰ So then, [you will recognize](#) them by their [fruits](#).

UST

²⁰ By [seeing what plants produce](#), [you know what kind of plants](#) they are. Similarly, when you see what the people who come to you do, you will know if they truly produce good or not.

Matthew 7:21

**will enter into the kingdom of heaven (ULT)
that they have my authority, God will...rule from
heaven over some (UST)**

Here "kingdom of heaven" refers to God's rule as king. The phrase "kingdom of heaven" is used only in the book of Matthew. If possible, keep "heaven" in your translation. Alternate translation: "will live with God in heaven when he shows himself to be king" (See: [Metonymy](#))

those who do the will of my Father who is in heaven

"whoever does what my Father in heaven desires"

**Father (ULT)
of them, because they do not do what he desires...
Father will agree (UST)**

This is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of heaven](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Lord \(2\)](#)
- [Father](#)
- [kingdom of heaven](#)
- [will...Father](#)
- [kingdom](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven over some](#)
- [to rule over only those](#)
- [Lord, pretending](#)
- [Lord, pretending \(2\)](#)
- [Father will agree](#)
- [rule from heaven over some](#)
- [of them, because they do not do what he desires...Father will agree...he wants](#)
- [rule](#)

ULT

²¹ Not everyone who says to me, '[Lord](#), [Lord](#),' will enter into the [kingdom of heaven](#), but only those who do the will of my [Father](#) who is in [heaven](#).

UST

²¹ Even though many people habitually call me [Lord, pretending](#) that they have my authority, God will not agree to [rule](#) from [heaven over some of them](#), [because they do not do what he desires](#). My [Father will agree to rule over only those](#) who do what [he wants](#).

Matthew 7:22

in that day (ULT)

On the day that God judges everyone (UST)

Jesus said “that day” knowing his hearers would understand he was referring to the day of judgment. You should include “the day of judgment” only if your readers would not understand otherwise. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

did we...prophecy...drive out demons...do many mighty deeds (ULT)

we spoke God’s message...we drove out demons from people...many times we performed mighty deeds (UST)

The people use a question to emphasize that they did these things. Alternate translation: “we prophesied...we drove out demons...we did many mighty deeds.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

did we...prophecy (ULT)

we spoke God’s message (UST)

This “we” does not include Jesus. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

in your name (ULT)

as your representatives (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “by your authority” or “by your power” or 2) “because we were doing what you wanted us to do” or 3) “because we asked you for the power to do it” (See: [Metonymy](#))

mighty deeds (ULT)

we performed (UST)

“miracles”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)
- [Lord](#) (2)
- [mighty deeds](#)
- [did we...prophecy](#)
- [in your name](#)
- [in your name](#) (2)
- [in your name](#) (3)
- [demons](#)
- [drive out](#)
- [day](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Lord](#)
- [Lord](#) (2)

ULT

²² Many people will say to me in that [day](#), ‘[Lord](#), [Lord](#), [did we](#) not [prophecy in your name](#), and [in your name drive out demons](#), and [in your name](#) do many [mighty deeds](#)?’

UST

²² [On the day that God judges everyone](#), many people will say to me, ‘[Lord](#), [we spoke God’s message as your representatives](#)! [As your representatives we drove out demons from people](#)! And [as your representatives](#), many times [we performed](#) mighty deeds!’

- we performed
- we spoke God's message
- as your representatives
- As your representatives (2)
- as your representatives (3)
- demons
- we drove out...from people
- On the day that God judges everyone

Matthew 7:23

I...never...knew you (ULT)

I have never admitted that you belonged to me (UST)

This means the person does not belong to Jesus. Alternate translation: "You are not my follower" or "I have nothing to do with you" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [you who practice](#)
- [evil](#)
- [will I openly declare](#)
- [I...knew](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [do](#)
- [is evil](#)
- [I will publicly say](#)
- [I have...admitted that...belonged to me](#)

ULT

²³ Then [will I openly declare](#) to them, 'I never [knew](#) you! Get away from me, [you who practice evil](#)!'

UST

²³ Then [I will publicly say](#) to them, 'I [have](#) never [admitted that](#) you [belonged to me](#). Go away from me, you who [do](#) what [is evil](#)!'

Matthew 7:24

Therefore (ULT)

So then (UST)

“For that reason”

these words of mine (ULT)

who hears...what...I say...I command (UST)

Here “words” refers to what Jesus says. (See: [Metonymy](#))

will be like a wise man who built his house upon a rock (ULT)

will be like a wise man who built his house on rock (UST)

Jesus compares those who obey his words to a person who builds his house where nothing can harm it. (See: [Simile](#))

a rock (ULT)

rock (UST)

This is the bedrock below the topsoil and clay, not a large stone or boulder above the ground.

Translation Words - ULT

- [wise](#)
- [will be like](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [wise](#)
- [will be like](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

²⁴ Therefore, everyone who hears these words of mine and obeys them [will be like](#) a [wise](#) man who built his [house](#) upon a rock.

UST

²⁴ So then, anyone who hears what I say and does what I command [will be like](#) a [wise](#) man who built his [house](#) on rock.

Matthew 7:25

it was built (ULT)

it had been built (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he built it"
(See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- it was built
- house

Translation Words - UST

- it had been built
- house

ULT

²⁵ The rain came down, and the floods came, and the winds blew and beat upon that [house](#), but it did not fall down, for [it was built](#) on the rock.

UST

²⁵ Even though the rain came down and the river flooded, and the winds blew and beat against that [house](#), it did not fall down because [it had been built](#) on solid rock.

Matthew 7:26

Connecting Statement:

This is the end of Jesus' Sermon on the Mount, which began in [Matthew 5:3](#).

will be like a foolish man who built his house upon the sand (ULT)

will be like a foolish man who built his house on sand (UST)

Jesus continues the simile from the previous verse. He compares those who do not obey his words to foolish house-builders. Only a fool would build a house on a sandy place where rain, floods, and wind can sweep the sand away. (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [foolish](#)
- [will be like](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [foolish](#)
- [will be like](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

²⁶ But everyone who hears these words of mind and does not obey them [will be like](#) a [foolish](#) man who built his [house](#) upon the sand.

UST

²⁶ On the other hand, anyone who hears what I say but does not obey me [will be like](#) a [foolish](#) man who built his [house](#) on sand.

Matthew 7:27

it fell (ULT)

it crashed down (UST)

Use the general word in your language that describes what happens when a house falls down.

The...its...destruction...was complete (ULT)

the...broke...completely...apart...it was built on sand. So

you should obey what I have told you (UST)

The rain, floods, and wind completely destroyed the house.

Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [house](#)

ULT

²⁷ The rain came down, and the floods came, and the winds blew and struck that [house](#), and it fell, and its destruction was complete.”

UST

²⁷ When the rain fell, and the river flooded, and the winds blew and beat against that [house](#), it crashed down and broke completely apart because it was built on sand. So you should obey what I have told you.”

Matthew 7:28

General Information:

These verses describe how the people in the crowds reacted to Jesus' teaching in the Sermon on the Mount. (See: [End of Story](#))

It came about that when (ULT) When (UST)

This phrase shifts the story from Jesus' teachings to what happened next. Alternate translation: "When" or "After"

were astonished...by his teaching (ULT) were amazed...by how he taught (UST)

It is clear in 7:29 that they were amazed not just at what Jesus taught but also the way he taught it. Alternate translation: "were amazed by the way he taught"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [teaching](#)
- [were astonished](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [taught](#)
- [were amazed](#)

ULT

²⁸ It came about that when [Jesus](#) finished speaking these words, the crowds [were astonished](#) by his [teaching](#),

UST

²⁸ When [Jesus](#) finished teaching all those things, the crowds who had heard him [were amazed](#) by how he [taught](#).

Matthew 7:29

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- scribes
- as one who had authority
- for he taught
- as one who had authority
- as (2)

Translation Words - UST

- those who taught the Jewish laws, who repeated the different things that other men had taught
- a teacher who
- taught
- like
- like (2)

ULT

²⁹ for he taught them as one who had authority, and not as their scribes.

UST

²⁹ He taught like a teacher who relies on what he himself knows. He did not teach like those who taught the Jewish laws, who repeated the different things that other men had taught.

Matthew 8

Matthew 8 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins a new section.

Special concepts in this chapter

Miracles

Jesus performed miracles to show that he could control things that no other people could control. He also showed that it is proper to worship him because he performed miracles. (See: [authority](#))

Matthew 8:1

General Information:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story that contains several accounts of Jesus healing people. This theme continues through [Matthew 9:35](#). (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

Now when Jesus had come down from the hill, large crowds followed him (ULT)

When Jesus went down from the hillside, large crowds followed him (UST)

ULT

¹ Now when Jesus had come down from the hill, large crowds followed him.

UST

¹ When Jesus went down from the hillside, large crowds followed him.

“After Jesus came down from the hill, a large crowd followed him.” The crowd may have included both people who had been with him on the mountain and people who had not been with him.

Matthew 8:2

Behold (ULT)

After Jesus left the crowds (UST)

The word “behold” alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

a leper (ULT)

a man who had a skin disease (UST)

“a man who had leprosy” or “a man who had a skin disease”

and bowed before him (ULT)

knelt before him (UST)

This is a sign of humble respect before Jesus. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

if you are willing (ULT)

if you are willing to (UST)

“if you want to” or “if you desire.” The leper knew that Jesus had the power to heal him, but he did not know if Jesus would want to touch him.

you can make me clean (ULT)

you are able to heal me (UST)

Here “clean” means to be healed and to be able to live in the community again. Alternate translation: “you can heal me” or “please heal me” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- make...clean
- and bowed before
- a leper

Translation Words - UST

- Lord, please heal me, because I know
- to heal
- knelt before
- a man who had a skin disease

ULT

² Behold, [a leper](#) came to him [and bowed before](#) him, saying, “[Lord](#), if you are willing, you can [make](#) me [clean](#).”

UST

² After Jesus left the crowds, [a man who had a skin disease](#) came and [knelt before](#) him. He said to Jesus, “[Lord](#), [please heal me, because I know](#) you are able [to heal](#) me if you are willing to.”

Matthew 8:3

Be clean (ULT) to heal you (UST)

By saying this, Jesus healed the man. (See: [Imperatives - Other Uses](#))

Immediately...he was cleansed (ULT) Immediately...was healed (UST)

"At that moment he was cleansed"

he was cleansed of his leprosy (ULT) the man was healed from his sickness (UST)

The result of Jesus saying "Be clean" was that the man was healed. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he was well" or "the leprosy left him" or "the leprosy ended" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Be clean](#)
- [he was cleansed](#)
- [hand](#)
- [leprosy](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to heal you](#)
- [was healed](#)
- [his hand and](#)
- [from...sickness](#)

ULT

³ Jesus reached out his [hand](#) and touched him, saying, "I am willing. [Be clean.](#)" Immediately [he was cleansed](#) of his [leprosy](#).

UST

³ Then Jesus stretched out [his hand and](#) touched the man. He said to him, "I am willing [to heal you](#), and I heal you now!" Immediately the man [was healed](#) from his [sickness](#).

Matthew 8:4**to him (ULT)****to him (UST)**

This refers to the man that Jesus just healed.

See that you tell no one (ULT)**Make sure that now you do not report about my healing you to anyone other than (UST)**

“do not say anything to anyone” or “do not tell anyone I healed you”

and show yourself to the priest (ULT)**report about my healing you...the priest. Then (UST)**

Jewish law required that the person show his healed skin to the priest, who would then allow him or her to return to the community, to be with other people. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

offer the gift that Moses commanded, for a testimony to them (ULT)**give the offering that Moses commanded so people will know about it (UST)**

The law of Moses required that someone healed of leprosy give a thanksgiving offering to the priest. When the priest accepted the gift, people would know that the man had been healed. Lepers were ostracized, banned from the community, until they had proof of their healing. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

to them (ULT)**it (UST)**

This can possibly refer to 1) the priests or 2) all the people or 3) the critics of Jesus. If possible, use a pronoun that could refer to any of these groups. (See: [Pronouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [gift](#)
- [commanded](#)
- [a testimony](#)
- [priest](#)
- [Moses](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [give](#)
- [commanded](#)
- [people will know about](#)
- [priest. Then](#)
- [Moses](#)

ULT

⁴ Then [Jesus](#) said to him, “See that you tell no one. But go and show yourself to the [priest](#) and offer the [gift](#) that [Moses commanded](#), for [a testimony](#) to them.”

UST

⁴ Then [Jesus](#) said to him, “Make sure that now you do not report about my healing you to anyone other than the [priest](#). [Then](#) go to the temple in Jerusalem and [give](#) the offering that [Moses commanded](#) so [people will know about](#) it.”

Matthew 8:5

Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts to a different time and place and tells of Jesus healing another person.

came to him...and asked him (ULT)

came to him...He begged Jesus to help him (UST)

Here "him" refers to Jesus.

Translation Words - ULT

- [a centurion](#)
- [Capernaum](#)
- [and asked](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [a Roman officer who commanded one hundred soldiers](#)
- [the city of Capernaum](#)
- [He begged...help him](#)

ULT

⁵ Now when Jesus had entered into [Capernaum](#), [a centurion](#) came to him [and asked](#) him,

UST

⁵ When Jesus went to [the city of Capernaum](#), [a Roman officer who commanded one hundred soldiers](#) came to him. [He begged](#) Jesus to [help him](#).

Matthew 8:6

paralyzed (ULT)
and is paralyzed (UST)

unable to move because of disease or stroke

Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- and in...pain
- servant
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- pain
- servant
- bed at home

ULT

⁶ and saying, “[Lord](#), my [servant](#) lies in the [house](#) paralyzed [and in](#) terrible [pain](#).”

UST

⁶ He said to him, “[Lord](#), my [servant](#) is lying in [bed at home](#) and is paralyzed, and he has severe [pain](#).”

Matthew 8:7

Jesus said...to him (ULT)

Jesus said...to him (UST)

"Jesus said to the centurion"

I will come and heal him (ULT)

I will go to your house and heal him (UST)

"I will come to your house and make your servant well"

Translation Words - ULT

- [and heal](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to your house and heal](#)

ULT

⁷ Jesus said to him, "I will come [and heal](#) him."

UST

⁷ Jesus said to him, "I will go [to your house and heal](#) him."

Matthew 8:8

under my roof (ULT)

my house (UST)

This is an idiom that refers to inside the house. Alternate translation: “into my house” (See: [Idiom](#))

say the word (ULT)

say (UST)

Here “word” represents a command. Alternate translation: “give the command” (See: [Metonymy](#))

will be healed (ULT)

is healed (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “will become well” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [worthy](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [centurion](#)
- [will be healed](#)
- [servant](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [worthy](#)
- [the officer said to him...I](#)
- [the officer said to him...I](#)
- [is healed](#)
- [servant](#)

ULT

⁸ But the [centurion](#) answered and said, “[Lord](#), I am not [worthy](#) that you should enter under my roof, but only say the word and my [servant will be healed](#).”

UST

⁸ But [the officer said to him](#), “[I](#) am not [worthy](#) for you to come into my house. Instead, just say that my [servant is healed](#), and he will be healed.”

Matthew 8:9

who is placed under authority (ULT)

I have to obey my commanders...I command (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “who is under the authority of someone else” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

under authority...under me (ULT)

I have to obey my commanders...I command (UST)

To be “under” someone means to be less important and to obey the commands of someone more important. (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [authority](#)
- [who is placed](#)
- [soldiers](#)
- [to...servant](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [I have to obey my commanders](#)
- [I command](#)
- [have soldiers](#)
- [to...slave](#)

ULT

⁹ For I also am a man [who is placed](#) under [authority](#), and I have [soldiers](#) under me. I say to this one, ‘Go,’ and he goes, and to another one, ‘Come,’ and he comes, and to my [servant](#), ‘Do this,’ and he does it.”

UST

⁹ It is the same way with me. I am a soldier; [I have to obey my commanders](#), and I also [have soldiers](#) that [I command](#). When I say to one of them ‘Go!’ he goes. When I say to another ‘Come!’ he comes. When I say to my [slave](#), ‘Do this!’ he does it.”

Matthew 8:10

Truly I say to you (ULT)

Listen to this: I have (UST)

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

I have not found such great faith in anyone in Israel (ULT)

never before found anyone who trusts in me as much this non-Jewish man. Not...in Israel, where I would expect people to believe in me, have I found anyone who trusts so much in me (UST)

Jesus' hearers would have thought that the Jews in Israel, who claim to be children of God, would have greater faith than anyone. Jesus is saying they are wrong and that the centurion's faith was greater. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Truly](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [faith](#)
- [he was amazed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [Listen to this: I have](#)
- [Israel, where I would expect people to believe in me](#)
- [trusts in me](#)
- [this, he marveled](#)

ULT

¹⁰ But when [Jesus](#) heard this, [he was amazed](#) and said to those who were following him, "[Truly](#) I say to you, I have not found such great [faith](#) in anyone in [Israel](#)."

UST

¹⁰ When [Jesus](#) heard [this, he marveled](#). He said to the crowd that was walking with him, "[Listen to this: I have](#) never before found anyone who [trusts in me](#) as much this non-Jewish man. Not even in [Israel, where I would expect people to believe in me](#), have I found anyone who trusts so much in me!"

Matthew 8:11

you (ULT)

you truly (UST)

Here “you” is plural and refers to “those who were following him” in [Matthew 8:10](#). (See: [Forms of You](#))

from the east and the west (ULT)

from distant countries, including those far to the east and far to the west (UST)

Using the opposites “east” and “west” is a way of saying “everywhere.” Alternate translation: “from everywhere” or “from far away in every direction” (See: [Merism](#))

they will recline (ULT)

they will sit down to feast (UST)

People in that culture would lie down beside the table while eating. This phrase indicates that all those at the table are family and close friends. The joy in the kingdom of God is frequently spoken of as if the people there were feasting. Alternate translation: “live as family and friends” (See: [Metonymy](#))

in the kingdom of heaven (ULT)

when God will rule from heaven over everything completely (UST)

Here “kingdom of heaven” refers to God’s rule as king. The phrase “kingdom of heaven” is used only in the book of Matthew. If possible, keep “heaven” in your translation. Alternate translation: “when our God in heaven shows that he is king” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of heaven](#)
- [kingdom of heaven](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [Jacob](#)
- [kingdom](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#)
- [God will rule...from heaven...over everything completely](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [Jacob](#)
- [God will rule...over everything completely](#)

ULT

11 But I tell you, many will come from the east and the west, and they will recline with [Abraham](#), and [Isaac](#), and [Jacob](#), in the [kingdom of heaven](#).

UST

11 I tell you truly that many other non-Jewish people will believe in me also, and they will come from distant countries, including those far to the east and far to the west, and they will sit down to feast with [Abraham](#), [Isaac](#), and [Jacob](#) when [God will rule from heaven over everything completely](#).

Matthew 8:12

the...sons of the kingdom will be thrown (ULT)
the...Jews whom God intended to rule—he will throw them (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God will throw the sons of the kingdom” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

But the sons of the kingdom (ULT)
But as for the Jews whom God intended to rule (UST)

The phrase “sons of” is a metonym, referring to the unbelieving Jews of the kingdom of Judea. There is also irony here because the “sons” will be thrown out while the strangers will be welcomed. Alternate translation: “those who should have allowed God to rule over them” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Irony](#))

the outer darkness (ULT)
hell...total darkness. There they (UST)

Here “outer darkness” is a metonym for the place where God sends those who reject them. This is a place that is completely separated from God forever. Alternate translation: “the dark place away from God” (See: [Metonymy](#))

weeping and grinding of teeth (ULT)
will weep because of their suffering, and they will grind their teeth because they will have severe pain (UST)

“Grinding of teeth” here is a symbolic act, representing extreme sadness and suffering. Alternate translation: “weeping and showing their extreme suffering” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sons](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [will be thrown](#)
- [darkness](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jews whom God intended](#)
- [rule](#)
- [he will throw them](#)
- [hell...darkness. There they](#)

ULT

¹² But the [sons](#) of the [kingdom will be thrown](#) into the outer [darkness](#), where there will be weeping and grinding of teeth.”

UST

¹² But as for the [Jews whom God intended to rule—he will throw them](#) into [hell](#), where there is total [darkness](#). [There they](#) will weep because of their suffering, and they will grind their teeth because they will have severe pain.”

Matthew 8:13

so may it be done for you (ULT)
you...will happen (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so I will do it for you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the servant was healed (ULT)
servant had become well (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Jesus healed the servant" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

at that very hour (ULT)
at the exact time that Jesus told him that he would heal him (UST)

"at the exact time Jesus said he would heal the servant"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [centurion](#)
- [you have believed](#)
- [was healed](#)
- [As](#)
- [hour](#)
- [servant](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [officer](#)
- [believed](#)
- [had become well](#)
- [What](#)
- [exact time](#)
- [servant](#)

ULT

¹³ Then [Jesus](#) said to the [centurion](#), "Go! [As you have believed](#), so may it be done for you." And the [servant was healed](#) at that very [hour](#).

UST

¹³ Then [Jesus](#) said to the [officer](#), "Go home. [What](#) you [believed](#) will happen." Then the officer went home and found out that his [servant had become well](#) at the [exact time](#) that Jesus told him that he would heal him.

Matthew 8:14

Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts to a different time and place and tells of Jesus healing another person.

When...Jesus...had come (ULT)

Jesus...went (UST)

The disciples were probably with Jesus, but the focus of the story is on what Jesus said and did, so introduce the disciples only if needed to avoid wrong meaning.

house...Peter's...mother-in-law (ULT)

and some of his disciples...the...Peter's mother-in-law (UST)

"the mother of Peter's wife"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Peter's](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [home of](#)

ULT

¹⁴ When [Jesus](#) had come into [Peter's house](#), he saw Peter's mother-in-law was laid down and had a fever.

UST

¹⁴ When [Jesus](#) and some of his disciples went to the [home of Peter](#), Jesus saw Peter's mother-in-law. She was lying on a bed because she had a fever.

Matthew 8:15

the fever left her (ULT)
she no longer had a fever (UST)

If your language would understand this personification to mean that the fever could think and act on its own, this can be translated as "she became better" or "Jesus healed her." (See: [Personification](#))

Then she got up (ULT)
she got up (UST)

"got out of bed"

Translation Words - ULT

- [started serving](#)
- [hand](#)
- [Then she got up](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [served...some food](#)
- [hand](#)
- [she got up](#)

ULT

¹⁵ Jesus touched her [hand](#), and the fever left her. [Then she got up](#) and [started serving](#) him.

UST

¹⁵ He touched her [hand](#), and immediately she no longer had a fever. Then [she got up](#) and [served](#) them [some food](#).

Matthew 8:16

General Information:

In verse 17, Matthew quotes the prophet Isaiah to show that Jesus' healing ministry was a fulfillment of prophecy.

Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts to later that evening and tells of Jesus healing more people and casting out demons.

Now when evening had come (ULT)

That evening when the Sabbath ended, the crowd (UST)

Because Jews did not work or travel on the Sabbath, "evening" may imply after the Sabbath. They waited until evening to bring people to Jesus. You do not need to mention the Sabbath unless you need to avoid wrong meaning. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

many who were possessed by demons (ULT)

many people whom demons controlled (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "many people whom demons possessed" or "many people whom demons controlled" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

He drove out...the spirits with a word (ULT)

made the demons leave just by speaking to them (UST)

Here "word" stands for a command. Alternate translation: "He commanded the spirits to leave" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [who were possessed by demons](#)
- [spirits](#)
- [He drove out](#)
- [healed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [whom demons controlled](#)
- [by speaking to them](#)
- [made the demons leave just](#)
- [he healed](#)

ULT

16 Now when evening had come, the people brought to Jesus many [who were possessed by demons](#). [He drove out](#) the [spirits](#) with a word and [healed](#) all those who were sick.

UST

16 That evening when the Sabbath ended, the crowd brought to Jesus many people [whom demons controlled](#), and other people who were sick. He [made the demons leave just by speaking to them](#), and [he healed](#) all the people who were sick.

Matthew 8:17

was fulfilled that which had been spoken by Isaiah the prophet (ULT)

When he did this, he made come true what...the prophet Isaiah (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Jesus fulfilled the prophecy that the prophet Isaiah had spoken to the people of Israel" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

took our sickness and bore our diseases (ULT)
freed people from being sick, and he made them well (UST)

Matthew is quoting the prophet Isaiah. These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that he healed all of our diseases. Alternate translation: "healed those who were sick and made them well" (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [prophet](#)
- [was fulfilled](#)
- [Isaiah](#)
- [took](#)
- [bore](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [prophet](#)
- [When he did this, he made come true what](#)
- [Isaiah](#)
- [freed people from being sick](#)
- [he made them well](#)

ULT

¹⁷ In this way [was fulfilled](#) that which had been spoken by [Isaiah](#) the [prophet](#), saying, "He himself [took](#) our sickness and [bore](#) our diseases."

UST

¹⁷ [When he did this, he made come true what](#) the [prophet Isaiah](#) had written, 'He [freed people from being sick](#), and [he made them well](#).'

Matthew 8:18

Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts and tells about Jesus' response to some people who wanted to follow him.

Now (ULT)

saw (UST)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Matthew starts to tell a new part of the story.

he gave instructions (ULT)

told his disciples (UST)

"he told his disciples"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [he gave instructions](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [told his disciples](#)

ULT

18 Now when [Jesus](#) saw the crowd around him, [he gave instructions](#) to leave for the other side of the Sea of Galilee.

UST

18 [Jesus](#) saw the crowd around him he [told his disciples](#) to take him by boat to the other side of the lake.

Matthew 8:19

Then (ULT) and (UST)

This means after Jesus “gave instructions” but before he could get into the boat.

wherever (ULT) wherever (UST)

to any place

Translation Words - ULT

- [scribe](#)
- [Teacher](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [man who taught the Jewish laws](#)
- [Teacher](#)

ULT

¹⁹ Then a [scribe](#) came to him and said, “[Teacher](#), I will follow you wherever you go.”

UST

¹⁹ As they were walking toward the boat, a [man who taught the Jewish laws](#) came to him and said, “[Teacher](#), I will go with you wherever you go.”

Matthew 8:20

Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests (ULT)

Foxes have holes in...in which to live, and birds have nests (UST)

Jesus answers with this proverb. This means even wild animals have somewhere to rest. (See: [Proverbs](#))

Foxes (ULT)

Foxes (UST)

Foxes are animals like dogs. They eat nesting birds and other small animals. If foxes are unknown in your area, use a general term for dog-like creatures or other furry animals. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

holes (ULT)

holes in (UST)

Foxes make holes in the ground to live in. Use the appropriate word for the place where the animal you use for "foxes" lives.

the...Son of Man (ULT)

the...Son of Man, I (UST)

Jesus is speaking about himself. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

has no place to lay his head (ULT)

do not have a home where I can sleep (UST)

This refers to a place to sleep. Alternate translation: "no place of his own to sleep" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sky](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [head](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [nests](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [Son of Man, I](#)
- [I can](#)

ULT

²⁰ [Jesus](#) said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the [sky](#) have nests, but the [Son of Man](#) has no place to lay his [head](#)."

UST

²⁰ [Jesus](#) answered him, "Foxes have holes in the ground in which to live, and birds have [nests](#), but even though I am the [Son of Man, I](#) do not have a home where [I can](#) sleep."

Matthew 8:21

allow me first to go and bury my father (ULT)
permit me first to go home. After my father dies I will
bury him, and (UST)

It is unclear whether the man's father has died and he will bury him immediately, or if the man wants to stay for a longer amount of time until his father dies so he can bury him then. The main point is that the man wants to do something else first before he follows Jesus.

Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- disciples
- father
- bury

Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- of Jesus' disciples
- father dies
- I will bury him

ULT

²¹ Another of the [disciples](#) said to him, "[Lord](#), allow me first to go and [bury](#) my [father](#)."

UST

²¹ Another man who was one [of Jesus' disciples](#) said to him, "[Lord](#), permit me first to go home. After my [father dies I will bury him](#), and then I will come with you."

Matthew 8:22

leave the dead to bury their own dead (ULT)

The people who are as good as dead...let them wait for...their own people to die (UST)

Jesus does not mean literally that dead people will bury other dead people. Possible meanings of "the dead": 1) it is a metaphor for those who will soon die, or 2) it is a metaphor for those who do not follow Jesus and are spiritually dead. The main point is that a disciple must not let anything delay him from following Jesus. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [But Jesus](#)
- [to bury](#)
- [dead](#)
- [dead](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [people who are as good as dead](#)
- [people who are as good as dead](#)
- [to die](#)

ULT

²² [But Jesus](#) said to him, "Follow me, and leave the [dead to bury](#) their own [dead](#)."

UST

²² But [Jesus](#) said to him, "Come with me now. The [people who are as good as dead](#), let them wait for their own people [to die](#)."

Matthew 8:23

Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts to the account of Jesus calming a storm as he and his disciples cross the Sea of Galilee.

When he had entered into a boat (ULT)

Then Jesus got into the boat and (UST)

“got onto a boat”

he...his disciples followed (ULT)

Jesus...his disciples followed (UST)

Try to use the same words for “disciple” and “follow” that you used in ([Matthew 8:21-22](#)).

Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [disciples](#)

ULT

²³ When he had entered into a boat, his [disciples](#) followed him.

UST

²³ Then Jesus got into the boat and his [disciples](#) followed him.

Matthew 8:24

Behold (ULT)

Suddenly (UST)

This marks the beginning of another event in the larger story. Your language may have a way of showing this. Alternate translation: “Suddenly” or “Without warning”

a great storm arose on the sea (ULT)

strong winds blew on the water, and (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “a powerful storm arose on the sea” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

so that the boat was covered with the waves (ULT)

very high waves were splashing into the boat and filling it (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “so that the waves covered the boat” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sea](#)
- [was asleep](#)
- [arose](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [water](#)
- [was sleeping](#)
- [blew](#)

ULT

²⁴ Behold, a great storm [arose](#) on the [sea](#), so that the boat was covered with the waves. But Jesus [was asleep](#).

UST

²⁴ Suddenly strong winds [blew](#) on the [water](#), and very high waves were splashing into the boat and filling it. But Jesus [was sleeping](#).

Matthew 8:25

and woke him up, saying, "Save us, Lord (ULT)
woke him up, and said to him, "Lord, rescue us (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) they first woke Jesus and then they said, "Save us" or 2) as they were waking Jesus up, they were saying "Save us."

Save us...we are about to die (ULT)
rescue us...We are about to drown (UST)

If you need to translate these words as inclusive or exclusive, then inclusive is best. The disciples probably meant they wanted Jesus to save the disciples and himself from drowning. (See: [Inclusive and Exclusive "We"](#))

we are about to die (ULT)
We are about to drown (UST)

"we are going to die"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Save us](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [we are about to die](#)
- [and woke...up](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [rescue us](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [We are about to drown](#)
- [woke...up, and](#)

ULT

²⁵ Then the disciples came to him [and woke](#) him [up](#), saying, "[Save us, Lord; we are about to die!](#)"

UST

²⁵ They went and [woke](#) him [up, and](#) said to him, "[Lord, rescue us! We are about to drown!](#)"

Matthew 8:26

to them (ULT)

to them (UST)

“to the disciples”

Why are you afraid, you of little faith (ULT)

You should not be terrified! You do not believe very much that I can rescue you (UST)

Jesus was rebuking the disciples with this rhetorical question.
Alternate translation: “You should not be afraid...faith!” or “There is nothing for you to be afraid of...faith!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

you of little faith (ULT)

You do not believe very much that I can rescue you (UST)

“you who have such little faith.” Jesus addresses his disciples this way because their anxiety about the storm shows they have little faith in him to control it. See how you translated this in [Matthew 6:30](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [afraid](#)
- [you of little faith](#)
- [sea](#)
- [he got up](#)
- [and rebuked](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [You should not be terrified](#)
- [You do not believe very much that I can rescue you](#)
- [water](#)
- [he got up](#)
- [and rebuked](#)

ULT

²⁶ Jesus said to them, “Why are you [afraid, you of little faith?](#)” Then [he got up and rebuked](#) the winds and the [sea](#). Then there was a great calm.

UST

²⁶ He said to them, “[You should not be terrified! You do not believe very much that I can rescue you.](#)” Then [he got up and rebuked](#) the wind and told the waves to calm down. Immediately the wind stopped blowing and the [water](#) became calm.

Matthew 8:27

What sort of man is this, that even the winds and the sea obey him (ULT)

This man is certainly an extraordinary person! All things are under his control! Even the winds and the waves obey him (UST)

“Even the winds and the sea obey him! What sort of man is this?” This rhetorical question shows that the disciples were surprised.

Alternate translation: “This man is unlike any man we have ever seen! Even the wind and the waves obey him!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

even the winds and the sea obey him (ULT)

Even the winds and the waves obey him (UST)

For people or animals to obey or disobey is not surprising, but for wind and water to obey is very surprising. This personification describes the natural elements as being able to hear and respond like people. (See: [Personification](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sea](#)
- [obey](#)
- [marveled](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [waves](#)
- [obey](#)
- [were amazed, and](#)

ULT

²⁷ But the men [marveled](#), saying, “What sort of man is this, that even the winds and the [sea obey](#) him?”

UST

²⁷ The men [were amazed, and](#) they said to each other, “This man is certainly an extraordinary person! All things are under his control! Even the winds and the [waves obey](#) him!”

Matthew 8:28

Connecting Statement:

Here the author returns to the theme of Jesus healing people. This begins an account of Jesus healing two demon-possessed men.

to the other side (ULT)

to the east side of the lake, they arrived (UST)

“to the other side of the Sea of Galilee”

the country of the Gadarenes (ULT)

in the...region where the Gadarenes lived. Then (UST)

The Gadarenes were named after the town of Gadara. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

two men who were possessed by demons (ULT)

two men whom demons controlled (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “two men whom demons possessed” or “two men whom demons were controlling” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

They were coming...and were very violent, so that no one could pass by on that road (ULT)
came...were extremely violent and attacked people, no one dared to travel on the road there (UST)

The demons that were controlling these two men were so dangerous that no one could go through that area.

Translation Words - ULT

- [who were possessed by demons](#)
- [could](#)
- [tombs](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [men whom demons controlled](#)
- [were extremely violent and attacked people, no](#)
- [burial caves](#)

ULT

28 When Jesus had come to the other side and to the country of the Gadarenes, two men [who were possessed by demons](#) met him. They were coming out of the [tombs](#) and were very violent, so that no one [could](#) pass by on that road.

UST

28 When they came to the east side of the lake, they arrived in the region where the Gadarenes lived. Then two [men whom demons controlled](#) came out of the [burial caves](#) where they were living. Because they [were extremely violent and attacked people, no](#) one dared to travel on the road there.

Matthew 8:29**Behold (ULT)****Suddenly (UST)**

This marks the beginning of another event in the larger story. Your language may have a way of showing this.

What do we have to do with you, Son of God (ULT)
You are the Son of God! Because you have nothing in common with us, leave us alone! Have you (UST)

The demons use a question but they are being hostile toward Jesus. Alternate translation: "Do not bother us, Son of God!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Son of God (ULT)**Son of God (UST)**

This is an important title for Jesus, which describes his relationship to God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Have you come here to torment us before the set time (ULT)
come here to torture us before the time God has appointed to punish us (UST)

Again, the demons use a question in a hostile way. Alternate translation: "You should not disobey God by punishing us before the specific time God has set when he will punish us!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of God](#)
- [Son of God](#)
- [the set time](#)
- [to torment](#)
- [they cried out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Son of God](#)
- [the time God has appointed](#)
- [to punish](#)
- [they shouted to](#)

ULT

²⁹ Behold, [they cried out](#), saying, "What do we have to do with you, [Son of God](#)? Have you come here [to torment](#) us before [the set time](#)?"

UST

²⁹ Suddenly [they shouted to](#) Jesus, "You are the [Son of God](#)! Because you have nothing in common with us, leave us alone! Have you come here to torture us before [the time God has appointed to punish](#) us?"

Matthew 8:30

Now (ULT)

There was (UST)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Matthew tells background information about a herd of pigs that had been there before Jesus arrived. (See: [Background Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of...pigs

Translation Words - UST

- pigs

ULT

³⁰ Now a herd of many [pigs](#) was there feeding, not too far away from them.

UST

³⁰ There was a large herd of [pigs](#) grazing not far away.

Matthew 8:31

If you cast us out (ULT)

drive us out of these men, so (UST)

It is implied that the demons knew that Jesus was going to cast them out. Alternate translation: "Because you are going to cast us out" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

us (ULT)

us (UST)

This is exclusive, meaning the demons only. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [demons](#)
- [you cast...out](#)
- [of pigs](#)
- [kept imploring](#)
- [send...away](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [demons](#)
- [drive...out of these men, so](#)
- [those pigs](#)
- [begged](#)
- [send](#)

ULT

³¹ The [demons kept imploring](#) Jesus and saying, "If [you cast](#) us [out](#), [send](#) us [away](#) into that herd [of pigs](#)."

UST

³¹ So the [demons begged](#) Jesus and said, "You are going to [drive](#) us [out of these men, so send](#) us into [those pigs](#)!"

Matthew 8:32

to them (ULT)

to them (UST)

This refers to the demons inside the men.

the demons...came out and went into the pigs (ULT)
So the demons...If that is what you want...left the men...entered the pigs (UST)

"The demons left the man and entered the pigs"

behold (ULT)

Suddenly (UST)

This alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

rushed...down the steep hill (ULT)

rushed...down the steep bank (UST)

"ran quickly down the steep slope"

they died in the water (ULT)

drowned (UST)

"they fell into the water and drowned"

Translation Words - ULT

- [they died](#)
- [sea](#)
- [pigs](#)
- [water](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [drowned](#)
- [water](#)
- [pigs](#)
- [drowned](#)

ULT

³² Then Jesus said to them, "Go!" So the demons came out and went into the [pigs](#); and behold, the whole herd rushed down the steep hill into the [sea](#) and [they died](#) in the [water](#).

UST

³² Jesus said to them, "If that is what you want, go!" So the demons left the men and entered the [pigs](#). Suddenly the whole herd of pigs rushed down the steep bank into the [water](#) and [drowned](#).

Matthew 8:33

Connecting Statement:

This concludes the account of Jesus healing two demon-possessed men.

But those who had been tending the pigs...But those who had been tending the pigs (ULT)

The...men who were tending the pigs (UST)

“taking care of the pigs”

what had happened to the men who had been possessed by demons (ULT)

what had happened to the two men whom demons had controlled (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “what Jesus did to help the men whom demons had controlled” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [men who had been possessed by demons](#)
- [and reported](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [two men whom demons had controlled](#)
- [reported](#)

ULT

33 But those who had been tending the pigs ran away and went into the city [and reported](#) everything, including what had happened to the [men who had been possessed by demons](#).

UST

33 The men who were tending the pigs became afraid and ran into the town and [reported](#) everything that had happened, including what had happened to the [two men whom demons had controlled](#).

Matthew 8:34

Behold (ULT)

it seemed as if (UST)

This marks the beginning of another event in the larger story. It may involve different people than the previous events. Your language may have a way of showing this.

all the city (ULT)

all the people who lived in that town (UST)

The word “city” is a metonym for the people of the city. The word “all” is probably an exaggeration to emphasize how very many people came out. Not necessarily every person came out. (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

their region (ULT)

their...region (UST)

“their area”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [they begged him](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [they pleaded with Jesus](#)

ULT

³⁴ Behold, all the city came out to meet [Jesus](#). When they saw him, [they begged him](#) to depart from their region.

UST

³⁴ Then it seemed as if all the people who lived in that town went to meet [Jesus](#). When they saw him and the two men whom demons had controlled, [they pleaded with Jesus](#) to leave their region.

Matthew 9

Matthew 9 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

“Sinners”

When the people of Jesus’ time spoke of “sinners,” they were talking about people who did not obey the law of Moses and instead committed sins like stealing or sexual sins. When Jesus said that he came to call “sinners,” he meant that only people who believe that they are sinners can be his followers. This is true even if they are not what most people think of as “sinners.” (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Passive voice

Many sentences in this chapter tell that a person had something happen to him without saying who caused that something to happen. You may have to translate the sentence so that it tells the reader who performed the action. (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Rhetorical questions

Speakers in this chapter asked questions to which they already knew the answer. They asked the questions to show that they were not happy with the hearers or to teach them or to get them to think. Your language may have another way of doing this. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Proverbs

Proverbs are very short sentences that use words that are easy to remember to tell about something that is generally true. People who understand proverbs usually have to know much about the language and culture of the speaker. When you translate the proverbs in this chapter, you may have to use many more words than the speakers used so that you can add information that the hearers knew but your reader do not know. (See: [Proverbs](#))

Matthew 9:1

Connecting Statement:

Matthew returns to the theme, which he began in [Matthew 8:1](#), of Jesus healing people. This begins an account of Jesus healing a paralyzed man.

Jesus entered into a boat

It is implied that the disciples were with Jesus. (See: [Active or Passive](#))

a boat (ULT)

the boat. They (UST)

This is probably the same boat as in [Matthew 8:23](#). You only need to specify this if needed to avoid confusion.

into...his own city (ULT)

got into...the city where he was staying (UST)

"to the town where he lived." This refers to Capernaum.

ULT

¹ Then Jesus entered into a boat, crossed over, and came into his own city.

UST

¹ Jesus and his disciples got into the boat. They sailed over the lake and went to Capernaum, the city where he was staying.

Matthew 9:2

Behold (ULT)

Some people brought (UST)

This marks the beginning of another event in the larger story. It may involve different people than the previous events. Your language may have a way of showing this.

they brought (ULT)

Some people brought (UST)

"some men from the city"

their faith (ULT)

that they believed that he could heal (UST)

This refers to the faith of the men and may also include the faith of the paralyzed man.

Child (ULT)

to him, "Young man (UST)

The man was not Jesus' real son. Jesus was speaking to him politely. If this is confusing, it can also be translated "My friend" or "Young man" or even omitted.

Your sins have been forgiven (ULT)

I forgive your sins (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I have forgiven your sins" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [sins](#)
- [Child](#)
- [have been forgiven](#)
- [faith](#)
- [be encouraged](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [sins](#)
- [to him, "Young man](#)
- [I forgive](#)
- [believed that he could heal](#)
- [be encouraged](#)

ULT

² Behold, they brought to him a paralyzed man lying on a mat. When [Jesus](#) saw their [faith](#), he said to the paralyzed man, "[Child](#), [be encouraged](#). Your [sins have been forgiven](#)."

UST

² Some people brought to him a man who was paralyzed and who was lying on a sleeping pad. When [Jesus](#) perceived that they [believed that he could heal](#) the paralyzed man, he said [to him, "Young man, be encouraged! I forgive your sins."](#)

Matthew 9:3

behold (ULT)

Some of (UST)

This marks the beginning of another event in the larger story. It may involve different people than the previous events. Your language may have a way of doing this.

among themselves (ULT)

among themselves (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) each one was thinking to himself, or 2) they were speaking among themselves.

is blaspheming (ULT)

thinks he is God; he cannot forgive sins (UST)

Jesus was claiming to be able to do things the scribes thought only God can do.

Translation Words - ULT

- [scribes](#)
- [is blaspheming](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [men who taught the Jewish laws](#)
- [thinks he is God; he cannot forgive sins](#)

ULT

³ Then behold, some of the [scribes](#) said among themselves, "This man [is blaspheming](#)."

UST

³ Some of the [men who taught the Jewish laws](#) said among themselves, "This man [thinks he is God; he cannot forgive sins!](#)"

Matthew 9:4

knew...their thoughts (ULT)

knew...what they were thinking (UST)

Jesus knew what they were thinking either supernaturally or because he could see them talking to each other.

For what reason are you thinking evil in your hearts (ULT)

so...You should not think evil thoughts (UST)

Jesus used this question to rebuke the scribes. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

evil (ULT)

evil thoughts (UST)

This is moral evil or wickedness, not simply error in fact.

in your hearts (ULT)

evil thoughts (UST)

Here "hearts" refers to their minds or their thoughts. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [hearts](#)
- [evil](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [evil thoughts](#)
- [evil thoughts](#)

ULT

⁴ But [Jesus](#) knew their thoughts and said, "For what reason are you thinking [evil](#) in your [hearts](#)?"

UST

⁴ [Jesus](#) knew what they were thinking, so he said, "You should not think [evil thoughts](#)!"

Matthew 9:5

For which is easier, to say, 'Your sins are forgiven,' or to say, 'Get up and walk (ULT)

What is easier, to tell him that his sins are forgiven or to tell him to get up and walk (UST)

Jesus uses this question to make the scribes think about what might prove whether or not he could really forgive sins. Alternate translation: "I just said 'Your sins are forgiven.' You may think that it is harder to say 'Get up and walk,' because the proof of whether or not I can heal the man will be shown by whether or not he gets up and walks." or "You may think that it is easier to say 'Your sins are forgiven' than it is to say 'Get up and walk.'" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

⁵ For which is easier, to say, 'Your [sins are forgiven](#),' or to say, '[Get up](#) and [walk](#) '?

UST

⁵ What is easier, to tell him that his [sins are forgiven](#) or to tell him [to get up](#) and [walk](#)?

which...is easier, to say, 'Your sins are forgiven,' or to say, 'Get up and walk (ULT)

What...is easier, to tell him that his sins are forgiven or to tell him to get up and walk (UST)

The quotes can be translated as indirect quotes. Alternate translation: "which is easier, to tell someone that his sins are forgiven, or to tell him to get up and walk?" or "you may think that it is easier to tell someone that his sins are forgiven than to tell him to get up and walk." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Your sins are forgiven (ULT)

sins are forgiven (UST)

Here "your" is singular. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I have forgiven your sins" (See: [Forms of You](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sins](#)
- [are forgiven](#)
- [Get up](#)
- [walk](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sins](#)
- [are forgiven](#)
- [to get up](#)
- [walk](#)

Matthew 9:6

But in order that you may know (ULT)
So I am going to do something...order that you may know (UST)

"I will prove to you." The "you" is plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

your mat...your house (ULT)
your sleeping pad...home (UST)

Here "you" is singular. (See: [Forms of You](#))

your...go to...house (ULT)
your...go home (UST)

Jesus is not forbidding the man to go elsewhere. He is giving the man the opportunity to go home.

Translation Words - ULT

- [sins](#)
- [to forgive](#)
- [authority](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [Get up](#)
- [earth](#)
- [house](#)
- [you may know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sins](#)
- [to forgive](#)
- [has authorized me](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [Get up](#)
- [to forgive](#)
- [home](#)
- [know](#)

ULT

⁶ But in order that [you may know](#) that the [Son of Man](#) has [authority](#) on the [earth to forgive sins](#),... " he then said to the paralytic, "[Get up](#), pick up your mat, and go to your [house](#)."

UST

⁶ So I am going to do something in order that you may [know](#) that God [has authorized me](#), the [Son of Man](#), to [forgive sins](#)." Then he said to the paralyzed man, "[Get up](#), pick up your sleeping pad, and go [home](#)!"

Matthew 9:7

Connecting Statement:

This concludes the account of Jesus healing a paralyzed man. Jesus then calls a tax collector to be one of his disciples.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the man got up](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [got up](#)
- [home](#)

ULT

⁷ Then [the man got up](#) and went away to his [house](#).

UST

⁷ Immediately the man [got up](#), picked up his sleeping pad, and went [home](#)!

Matthew 9:8

God...who had given (ULT)

God for giving (UST)

"because he had given"

such authority (ULT)

such authority (UST)

This refers to the authority to declare sins forgiven.

Translation Words - ULT

- they were amazed
- God
- authority
- praised

Translation Words - UST

- were awestruck. They
- God for
- authority
- praised

ULT

⁸ When the crowds saw this, [they were amazed](#) and [praised God](#), who had given such [authority](#) to people.

UST

⁸ When the crowds saw this, they [were awestruck](#). [They praised God for](#) giving such [authority](#) to people.

Matthew 9:9

As Jesus passed by from there (ULT)

As Jesus was going away from there (UST)

This phrase marks the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

As...passed by (ULT)

was going away (UST)

"was leaving" or "was going"

Matthew...to him...to him (ULT)

Matthew...to him...to him (UST)

Church tradition says that this Matthew is the author of this Gospel, but the text gives no reason to change the pronouns from "him" and "He" to "me" and "I."

He said...to him (ULT)

Jesus said...to him (UST)

"Jesus said to Matthew"

to him...he got up and followed (ULT)

to him...Matthew got up and went with (UST)

"Matthew got up and followed Jesus." This means Matthew became Jesus' disciple.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Matthew](#)
- [tax collection office](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [Matthew](#)
- [table where he collected taxes for the Roman government](#)

ULT

⁹ As [Jesus](#) passed by from there, he saw a man named [Matthew](#), who was sitting at the [tax collection office](#). He said to him, "Follow me." And he got up and followed him.

UST

⁹ As [Jesus](#) was going away from there, he saw a man named [Matthew](#). He was sitting at a [table where he collected taxes for the Roman government](#). Jesus said to him, "Come with me and be my disciple!" So Matthew got up and went with him.

Matthew 9:10

General Information:

These events occur at the house of Matthew the tax collector.

the house (ULT)

a house for a meal. While they were eating (UST)

This is probably Matthew's house, but it could also be Jesus' house. Specify only if needed to avoid confusion.

behold (ULT)

many (UST)

This marks the beginning of another event in the larger story. It may involve different people than the previous events. Your language may have a way of doing this.

sinners (ULT)

tax collectors and (UST)

people who did not obey the law of Moses but committed what others thought were very bad sins

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [sinners](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [tax collectors](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [tax collectors and](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [tax collectors and](#)
- [a house for a meal. While they were eating](#)

ULT

¹⁰ It happened that as Jesus reclined to eat in the [house](#), behold, many [tax collectors](#) and [sinners](#) also came and dined with [Jesus](#) and his [disciples](#).

UST

¹⁰ [Jesus](#) and his [disciples](#) sat down in [a house for a meal. While they were eating](#), many [tax collectors and](#) other persons came and ate with them.

Matthew 9:11

When the Pharisees saw it, they (ULT)

When the Pharisees saw...and (UST)

"When the Pharisees saw that Jesus was eating with the tax collectors and sinful people"

Why does your teacher eat with tax collectors and sinners (ULT)

that...that your teacher eats and associates with tax collectors and other people like them (UST)

The Pharisees use this question to criticize what Jesus is doing. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sinners](#)
- [to...disciples](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [tax collectors](#)
- [teacher](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [other people like them](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [tax collectors](#)
- [teacher](#)

ULT

¹¹ When the [Pharisees](#) saw it, they said to his [disciples](#), "Why does your [teacher](#) eat with [tax collectors](#) and [sinners](#)?"

UST

¹¹ When the [Pharisees](#) saw that, they went up to the [disciples](#) and said, "It is disgusting that your [teacher](#) eats and associates with [tax collectors](#) and [other people like them](#)."

Matthew 9:12

General Information:

These events occur at the house of Matthew the tax collector.

When Jesus heard this

Here “this” refers to the question the Pharisees asked about Jesus eating with tax collectors and sinners.

People who are strong in body do not need a physician, but only those who are sick (ULT)
this parable: “It is people who are sick who need a doctor, not people who are well (UST)

Jesus answers with a proverb. He means that he eats with these kinds of people because he has come to help sinners. (See: [Proverbs](#))

People who are strong in body...a physician (ULT)
a doctor...people who...well (UST)

“People who are healthy”

a physician (ULT)
a doctor (UST)

doctor

those who are sick (ULT)
people who...are sick who...are (UST)

The phrase “need a physician” is understood. Alternate translation: “people who are sick need a physician” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [People who are strong in body](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [people who...well](#)

ULT

¹² When Jesus heard this, he said, “[People who are strong in body](#) do not need a physician, but only those who are sick.

UST

¹² Jesus heard what they said, so he told them this parable: “It is people who are sick who need a doctor, not [people who are well](#).

Matthew 9:13

But you should go and learn what this means (ULT)
You need to learn what these words that God said mean...you to act mercifully to people (UST)

Jesus is about to quote the scriptures. Alternate translation: "You should learn the meaning of what God said in the scriptures"

you should go (ULT)
You need to learn (UST)

Here "you" is plural and refers to the Pharisees. (See: [Forms of You](#))

I desire mercy and not sacrifice (ULT)
I want...you to act mercifully to people...and not just to offer sacrifices (UST)

Jesus is quoting what the prophet Hosea wrote in the scriptures. Here, "I" refers to God.

not...For I...come (ULT)
not...Keep in mind that I came to you (UST)

Here "I" refers to Jesus.

the righteous (ULT)
people who think that they are righteous to turn away (UST)

Jesus is using irony. He does not think there are any people who are righteous and do not need to repent. Alternate translation: "those who think they are righteous" (See: [Irony](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the righteous](#)
- [to call](#)
- [sinners](#)
- [mercy](#)
- [sacrifice](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [people who think that they are righteous to turn away](#)
- [to invite](#)
- [people who know they are sinners](#)
- [you to act mercifully to people](#)
- [just to offer sacrifices](#)

ULT

¹³ But you should go and learn what this means: 'I desire [mercy](#) and not [sacrifice](#).' For I did not come [to call the righteous](#), but [sinners](#)."

UST

¹³ You need to learn what these words that God said mean: 'I want [you to act mercifully to people](#) and not [just to offer sacrifices](#).' Keep in mind that I came to you, not to invite [people who think that they are righteous to turn away](#) from their sinful lives and come to me, but [to invite people who know they are sinners](#)."

Matthew 9:14

Connecting Statement:

The disciples of John the Baptist question the fact that Jesus' disciples do not fast.

do not fast (ULT)

do that...not (UST)

"continue to eat regularly"

Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [but...disciples](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [of John](#)
- [fast](#)
- [fast](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [disciples](#)
- [disciples do not](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [of John the Baptizer](#)
- [abstain from food because we want to please God](#)
- [do that](#)

ULT

14 Then the [disciples of John](#) came to him, saying, "Why do we and the [Pharisees](#) often [fast](#), [but](#) your [disciples](#) do not [fast](#)?"

UST

14 Then the [disciples of John the Baptizer](#) came to Jesus and asked him, "We and the [Pharisees](#) often [abstain from food because we want to please God](#), but your [disciples do not do that](#). Why do they not?"

Matthew 9:15

Can wedding attendants be sorrowful while the bridegroom is still with them (ULT)

When the bridegroom is with his friends when he gets married, those people do not mourn, do they? No, because they are not sad at that time...the (UST)

Jesus uses a question to answer John's disciples. They all knew that people do not mourn and fast at a wedding celebration. Jesus uses this proverb to show that his disciples do not mourn because he is still there with them. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Proverbs](#))

But the days will come when (ULT)

But when (UST)

This is a way of referring to some time in the future. Alternate translation: "the time will come when" or "someday"

the bridegroom will be taken away from them (ULT)
bridegroom has to leave them (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the bridegroom will not be able to be with them any longer" or "someone will take the bridegroom away from them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

will be taken away (ULT)

to leave (UST)

Jesus is probably referring to his own death, but this should not be made explicit here in the translation. To maintain the imagery of a wedding, it is best to just state that the bridegroom will not be there any longer.

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- wedding attendants
- be sorrowful
- they will fast
- bridegroom
- bridegroom (2)
- the days

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus answered
- When the...gets married, those people
- mourn, do
- they will abstain from food
- bridegroom
- bridegroom has (2)
- But

ULT

¹⁵ Jesus said to them, "Can [wedding attendants be sorrowful](#) while the [bridegroom](#) is still with them? But [the days](#) will come when the [bridegroom](#) will be taken away from them, and then [they will fast](#)."

UST

¹⁵ Jesus answered, "When the [bridegroom](#) is with his friends when he [gets married, those people](#) do not [mourn, do](#) they? No, because they are not sad at that time. [But](#) when the [bridegroom has](#) to leave them, [they will abstain from food](#), because they will be sad."

Matthew 9:16

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to answer the question that the disciples of John had asked. He did this by giving two examples of old things and new things that people do not put together.

No man puts a piece of new cloth on an old garment (ULT)

People do not sew a patch of unshrunk cloth on an old garment...when (UST)

“No one sews a piece of new cloth on an old garment” or “People do not sew a piece of new cloth as a patch on an old garment”

an old garment...the garment (ULT)
old garment...the garment (UST)

“old clothing...the clothing”

will tear away...the patch...from the garment (ULT)

tear...to mend a hole. If they did...they washed the garment, the patch would shrink and...the garment (UST)

If someone were to wash the garment, the patch of new cloth would shrink, but the old garment would not shrink. This would tear the patch off the garment and leave a bigger hole.

the patch (ULT)

they washed the garment, the patch would shrink and (UST)

“the piece of new cloth.” This is the piece of cloth used to cover a hole in the old garment.

a worse tear will happen (ULT)

hole would become bigger (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “this will make the tear worse” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- an...garment
- garment

Translation Words - UST

- garment
- garment

ULT

16 No man puts a piece of new cloth on an old [garment](#), for the patch will tear away from the [garment](#), and a worse tear will happen.

UST

16 People do not sew a patch of unshrunk cloth on an old [garment](#) to mend a hole. If they did that, when they washed the garment, the patch would shrink and tear the [garment](#), and the hole would become bigger.

Matthew 9:17

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to answer the question that disciples of John had asked.

Neither do people put new wine into old wineskins (ULT)

Neither does anyone pour fresh grape juice into old skin bags to store it (UST)

Jesus uses another proverb to answer John's disciples. This means the same as the proverb in [Matthew 9:16](#).

Neither do people put (ULT)

Neither does anyone pour (UST)

"Neither does anyone pour" or "People never put"

new wine (ULT)

fresh grape juice (UST)

This refers to wine that has not fermented yet. If grapes are unknown in your area, use the general term for fruit. Alternate translation: "grape juice" (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

old wineskins (ULT)

old skin bags to store it (UST)

This refers to wineskins that have stretched and dried out because they were already used for fermenting wine.

wineskins (ULT)

skin bags to store it (UST)

"wine bags" or "skin bags." These were bags made out of animal skins.

the...wine will be spilled, and the wineskins will be destroyed (ULT)

those...bags would be ruined...the wine would be spilled on the ground...and the bags will stretch when the wine ferments (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "and this will ruin the wineskins and spill the wine" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the skins will burst (ULT)

skin bags would...tear...when the juice became wine. The (UST)

When the new wine ferments and expands, the skins tear open because they can no longer stretch out.

ULT

17 Neither do people put new [wine](#) into old [wineskins](#). Otherwise, the [skins](#) will burst, the [wine](#) will be spilled, and the [wineskins will be destroyed](#). Instead, they put new [wine](#) into fresh [wineskins](#), and both will be preserved."

UST

17 Neither does anyone pour fresh [grape juice](#) into old [skin bags to store it](#). If anyone did that, those [skin bags](#) [would](#) tear when the juice became wine. The [bags would be ruined](#), and the [wine](#) would be spilled on the ground. Instead, people put new [wine](#) into new [skin bags](#), and the bags will stretch when the wine ferments. In this way, both the wine and the bags will be safe."

wineskins...fresh (ULT)
skin bags to store it...new (UST)

“new wineskins” or “new wine bags.” This refers to wineskins that no one has used.

both will be preserved (ULT)
both the wine and the bags will be safe (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “this will keep safe both the wineskins and the wine” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- will be destroyed
- wine
- wineskins
- skins
- wine
- wineskins
- wine (2)
- wineskins (2)

Translation Words - UST

- would be ruined
- grape juice
- skin bags to store it
- skin bags would
- wine
- bags
- wine (2)
- skin bags (2)

Matthew 9:18

Connecting Statement:

This begins an account of Jesus bringing to life the daughter of a Jewish official after she had died.

these things (ULT)

While Jesus was saying that (UST)

This refers to the answer Jesus gave John's disciples about fasting.

behold (ULT)

a leader (UST)

The word "behold" alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

and bowed down to him (ULT)

bowed down before him (UST)

This is a way someone would show respect in Jewish culture. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

come and lay your hand on her, and she will live (ULT)

in the city...if you come and lay your hand on her, she will live again (UST)

This shows that the Jewish official believed Jesus had the power to bring his daughter back to life.

Translation Words - ULT

- [she will live](#)
- [hand](#)
- [a...official](#)
- [has...died](#)
- [and bowed down](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [she will live again](#)
- [hand](#)
- [a leader](#)
- [has...died](#)
- [bowed down before](#)

ULT

18 While he was saying these things to them, behold, a certain [official](#) came [and bowed down](#) to him. He said, "My daughter has just now [died](#), but come and lay your [hand](#) on her, and [she will live](#)."

UST

18 While Jesus was saying that, [a leader](#) in the city came and [bowed down before](#) him. Then he said, "My daughter has just now [died](#)! But if you come and lay your [hand](#) on her, [she will live again](#)!"

Matthew 9:19

his disciples (ULT)

he and the disciples (UST)

“Jesus’ disciples”

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- disciples
- Then...got up

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- disciples
- got up

ULT

¹⁹ Then [Jesus got up](#) and followed him, and so did his [disciples](#).

UST

¹⁹ So [Jesus got up](#), and he and the [disciples](#) went with the man.

Matthew 9:20

Connecting Statement:

This describes how Jesus healed another woman while he was on the way to the Jewish official's house.

Behold (ULT)

a woman (UST)

The word "Behold" alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

who suffered from a discharge of blood (ULT)

who had been suffering constant bleeding (UST)

"who had been bleeding" or "who frequently had a flow of blood."

She was probably bleeding from her womb even when it was not the normal time for it. Some cultures may have a polite way of referring to this condition. (See: [Euphemism](#))

for twelve years (ULT)

for twelve years (UST)

"12 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

the...of...his...garment (ULT)

the...his garment (UST)

"his robe" or "what he was wearing"

Translation Words - ULT

- [years](#)
- [of...garment](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [years](#)
- [garment](#)

ULT

²⁰ Behold, a woman who suffered from a discharge of blood for twelve [years](#) came up behind Jesus and touched the edge of his [garment](#).

UST

²⁰ Then a woman who had been suffering constant bleeding for twelve [years](#) came near Jesus. She came behind him and touched the edge of his [garment](#).

Matthew 9:21

For she had said to herself, “If only I touch his clothes, I will be made well (ULT)

She was saying to herself, “If I just touch his garment, I will be healed (UST)

She said this to herself before she touched Jesus’ garment. This tells why she touched Jesus’ garment. (See: [Order of Events](#) and [Verse Bridges](#))

If only I touch his clothes (ULT)

If I just touch his garment (UST)

According to Jewish law, because she was bleeding she was not supposed to touch anyone. She touches his clothes so that Jesus’ power would heal her and yet (she thought) he would not know that she touched him. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [I will be made well](#)
- [clothes](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [I will be healed](#)
- [garment](#)

ULT

²¹ For she had said to herself, “If only I touch his [clothes](#), [I will be made well](#).”

UST

²¹ She was saying to herself, “If I just touch his [garment](#), [I will be healed](#).”

Matthew 9:22

But Jesus (ULT)

Then Jesus...to see who had touched him (UST)

"The woman was hoping she could touch him secretly, but Jesus"

Daughter (ULT)

dear woman. Because you (UST)

The woman was not Jesus' real daughter. Jesus was speaking to her politely. If this is confusing, it can also be translated "Young woman" or even omitted.

your faith has made you well (ULT)

believed...I could heal you, I have healed you (UST)

"because you believed in me, I will heal you"

the woman was healed from that hour (ULT)

The woman was healed at that very moment (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Jesus healed her at that moment" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- But Jesus
- faith
- has made...well
- was healed
- turned
- take courage
- hour

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- believed
- I could heal...have healed
- was healed
- turned around
- Be encouraged
- moment

ULT

²² But Jesus turned, and seeing her, said, "Daughter, take courage; your faith has made you well." And the woman was healed from that hour.

UST

²² Then Jesus turned around to see who had touched him. And when he saw the woman, he said to her, "Be encouraged, dear woman. Because you believed that I could heal you, I have healed you." The woman was healed at that very moment.

Matthew 9:23

Connecting Statement:

This returns to the account of Jesus bringing the daughter of the Jewish official back to life.

**When...came...the flute players...the crowds making much noise (ULT)
came...the flute players playing funeral music; there were...many mourners who were wailing loudly because the girl had died (UST)**

This was a common way to mourn for someone who has died.

**the flute players (ULT)
the flute players playing funeral music; there were (UST)**

“people who play flutes”

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- official's
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- man's house
- man's house

ULT

²³ When [Jesus](#) came into the [official's house](#), he saw the flute players and the crowds making much noise.

UST

²³ [Jesus](#) came to the [man's house](#) and saw the flute players playing funeral music; there were also many mourners who were wailing loudly because the girl had died.

Matthew 9:24

Go away (ULT)

Go away and stop this funeral music (UST)

Jesus was speaking to many people, so use the plural command form if your language has one.

not...the girl is...dead, but she is asleep (ULT)

not...the girl is...dead! She is just sleeping!" The people (UST)

Jesus is using a play on words. It was common in Jesus' day to refer to a dead person as one who "sleeps." But here the dead girl will get up, as though she had only been sleeping. (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [is...dead](#)
- [she is asleep](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [dead](#)
- [She is just sleeping...The people](#)

ULT

²⁴ He said, "Go away, for the girl is not [dead](#), but [she is asleep](#)." But they laughed at him in mockery.

UST

²⁴ He said to them, "Go away and stop this funeral music and wailing, because the girl is not [dead](#)! [She is just sleeping](#)!" [The people](#) laughed at him, because they knew that she was dead.

Matthew 9:25

General Information:

Verse 26 is a summary statement that describes the result of Jesus raising this girl from the dead.

Connecting Statement:

This completes the account of Jesus bringing the daughter of the Jewish official back to life.

When the crowd had been put outside (ULT) But Jesus told them to get out of the house. Then (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “After Jesus had sent the crowd outside” or “After the family had sent the people outside” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

got up (ULT)

got up (UST)

“got out of bed.” This is the same meaning as in [Matthew 8:15](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [had been put outside](#)
- [got up](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [to get out of the house](#)
- [got up](#)

ULT

²⁵ When the crowd [had been put outside](#), he entered the room and took her by the [hand](#), and the girl [got up](#).

UST

²⁵ But Jesus told them [to get out of the house](#). Then he went into the room where the girl was lying. He took hold of her [hand](#) and she became alive again and [got up](#).

Matthew 9:26

**The news about this spread into all that region (ULT)
And the people of that whole region heard about it (UST)**

“The people of that whole region heard about it” or “The people who saw that the girl was alive started telling everyone in the whole area about it”

Translation Words - ULT

- [news](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [whole region heard about it](#)

ULT

²⁶ The [news](#) about this spread into all that region.

UST

²⁶ And the people of that [whole region heard about it](#).

Matthew 9:27

Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of Jesus healing two blind men.

As Jesus passed by from there (ULT)
As Jesus went away from there (UST)

As Jesus was leaving the region

As...passed by (ULT)
went away from (UST)

"was leaving" or "was going"

followed him (ULT)
followed him (UST)

This means they were walking behind Jesus, not necessarily that they had become his disciples.

Have mercy on us (ULT)
Have mercy on us and heal us, you (UST)

It is implied that they wanted Jesus to heal them. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Son of David (ULT)
Descendant of King David (UST)

Jesus was not David's literal son, so this may be translated as "Descendant of David." However, "Son of David" is also a title for the Messiah, and the men were probably calling Jesus by this title.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Son](#)
- [Have mercy](#)
- [of David](#)
- [They kept shouting](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [Descendant](#)
- [Have mercy on](#)
- [of King David](#)
- [and shouted](#)

ULT

²⁷ As [Jesus](#) passed by from there, two blind men followed him. [They kept shouting](#) and saying, "[Have mercy](#) on us, [Son of David](#)!"

UST

²⁷ As [Jesus](#) went away from there, two blind men followed him [and shouted](#), "[Have mercy on](#) us and heal us, you [Descendant of King David](#)!"

Matthew 9:28

When he had come into the house (ULT) went into the house, and then (UST)

This could be either Jesus' own house or the house in [Matthew 9:10](#).

Yes, Lord (ULT)

Yes, Lord (UST)

The full content of their answer is not stated, but it is understood.
Alternate translation: "Yes, Lord, we believe you can heal us" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [I can](#)
- [Do you believe](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [I am able](#)
- [Do you believe](#)
- [house, and](#)

ULT

²⁸ When he had come into the [house](#), the blind men came to him. [Jesus](#) said to them, "[Do you believe](#) that [I can](#) do this?" They said to him, "Yes, [Lord](#)."

UST

²⁸ Jesus went into the [house, and](#) then the blind men went in, too. [Jesus](#) said to them, "[Do you believe](#) that [I am able](#) to heal you?" They said to him, "Yes, [Lord](#)!"

Matthew 9:29

he touched their eyes, saying (ULT)

he touched their eyes and he said to them (UST)

It is not clear whether he touched both men's eyes at the same time or used only his right hand to touch one then the other. As the left hand was customarily used for unclean purposes, it is most likely that he used only his right hand. It is also not clear whether he spoke as he was touching them or touched them first and then spoke to them.

Let it be done to you according to your faith (ULT)

Because you believe that I can heal your eyes, I am healing them right now (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will do as you have believed" or "Because you believe, I will heal you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [faith](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [you believe](#)

ULT

²⁹ Then he touched their eyes, saying, "Let it be done to you according to your [faith](#),"

UST

²⁹ Then he touched their eyes and he said to them, "Because [you believe](#) that I can heal your eyes, I am healing them right now!"

Matthew 9:30

their eyes were opened (ULT)
they were able to see (UST)

This means they were able to see. This can be stated in active form.
 Alternate translation: "God healed their eyes" or "the two blind men were able to see" (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

See that no one knows about this (ULT)
Be sure that you do not tell anybody what I have done for you (UST)

Here "See" means "be sure." Alternate translation: "Be sure no one finds out about this" or "Do not tell anyone that I healed you" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [strictly commanded](#)
- [knows about this](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [sternly](#)
- [Be sure that you do not tell anybody what I have done for you](#)

ULT

³⁰ and their eyes were opened. Then [Jesus strictly commanded](#) them, saying, "See that no one [knows about this](#)."

UST

³⁰ And they were able to see! Then [Jesus](#) told them [sternly](#), "[Be sure that you do not tell anybody what I have done for you!](#)"

Matthew 9:31

But they (ULT)

But (UST)

“The two men did not do what Jesus told them to do. They”

and spread the news (ULT)

and spread the news (UST)

“told many people what had happened to them”

Translation Words - ULT

- [and spread the news](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and spread the news](#)

ULT

³¹ But they went out [and spread the news](#) about this throughout that region.

UST

³¹ But they went out [and spread the news](#) in that whole region.

Matthew 9:32

Connecting Statement:

This is the account of Jesus healing a demon-possessed man who could not speak and how people responded.

behold (ULT)

brought (UST)

The word “behold” alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

a mute man...was brought to him (ULT)

some people...brought...to Jesus a man who was unable to speak (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “someone brought a mute man...to Jesus” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

mute (ULT)

a man who was unable to speak (UST)

not able to talk

possessed by a demon (ULT)

because a demon controlled him (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “whom a demon had possessed” or “whom a demon was controlling” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [possessed by a demon](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [because a demon controlled him](#)

ULT

³² As those two men were going away, behold, a mute man [possessed by a demon](#) was brought to him.

UST

³² Just when those two men were leaving, some people brought to Jesus a man who was unable to speak [because a demon controlled him](#).

Matthew 9:33

When the demon had been driven out (ULT)

After Jesus had driven out the demon...and (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "After Jesus had forced the demon out" or "After Jesus had commanded the demon to leave" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the mute man spoke (ULT)

the man began to speak (UST)

"the mute man began to speak" or "the man who had been mute spoke" or "the man, who was no longer mute, spoke"

When...had been driven out...The crowds...were astonished (ULT)

The crowds saw this...they were astonished and (UST)

"The people were amazed"

This has never been seen before (ULT)

Never before have we seen anything as marvelous as this happen (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "This has never happened before" or "No one has ever done anything like this before" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [demon](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [When...had been driven out](#)
- [were astonished](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [demon](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [After Jesus had driven out](#)
- [they were astonished](#)

ULT

³³ [When](#) the [demon had been driven out](#), the mute man spoke. The crowds [were astonished](#), saying, "This has never been seen before in [Israel](#)!"

UST

³³ [After Jesus had driven out](#) the [demon](#), the man began to speak! The crowds saw this and [they were astonished](#) and said, "Never before have we seen anything as marvelous as this happen in [Israel](#)!"

Matthew 9:34

he drives out the demons (ULT)
to drive out demons (UST)

"he forces demons to leave"

he drives out (ULT)
to drive out (UST)

The pronoun "he" refers to Jesus.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the demons](#)
- [demons](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [he drives out](#)
- [ruler](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [demons](#)
- [demons](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [to drive out](#)
- [who rules](#)

ULT

³⁴ But the [Pharisees](#) were saying, "By the [ruler](#) of [the demons](#), [he drives out](#) the [demons](#)."

UST

³⁴ But the [Pharisees](#) said, "It is Satan, [who rules](#) the [demons](#), who enables this man [to drive out demons](#) from people."

Matthew 9:35

General Information:

Verse 36 begins a new part of the story where Jesus teaches his disciples and sends them to preach and heal as he has done.

Connecting Statement:

Verse 35 is the end of the part of the story that began in [Matthew 8:1](#) about Jesus' healing ministry in Galilee. (See: [End of Story](#))

all the cities (ULT)

many of the cities (UST)

The word "all" is an exaggeration to emphasize how very many cities Jesus went to. He did not necessarily go to every one of them.

Alternate translation: "many of the cities" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

cities...villages (ULT)

cities...towns (UST)

"large villages...small villages" or "large towns...small towns"

the gospel of the kingdom (ULT)

the good news about how God will rule from heaven. He (UST)

Here "kingdom" refers to God's rule as king. See how you translated this in [Matthew 4:23](#). Alternate translation: "preaching the good news that God will show himself as king" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

every disease and every sickness

"every disease and every sickness." The words "disease" and "sickness" are closely related but should be translated as two different words if possible. "Disease" is what causes a person to be sick. "Sickness" is the physical weakness or affliction that results from having a disease.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [synagogues](#)
- [gospel](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [He continued teaching](#)
- [healing](#)
- [preaching](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [synagogues](#)
- [good news](#)
- [God will rule from heaven. He](#)
- [teaching](#)

ULT

³⁵ [Jesus](#) went about all the cities and the villages. [He continued teaching](#) in their [synagogues](#), [preaching](#) the [gospel](#) of the [kingdom](#), and [healing](#) every disease and every sickness.

UST

³⁵ Then [Jesus](#) and his disciples went through many of the cities and towns in the district of Galilee. He was [teaching](#) in the [synagogues](#) and [preaching](#) the [good news](#) about how [God will rule from heaven](#). He also [was healing the](#) people who had various diseases and illnesses.

- was healing the
- preaching

Matthew 9:36**like sheep not having a shepherd (ULT)****like sheep that do not have a shepherd (UST)**

This simile means they did not have a leader to take care of them.

Alternate translation: "The people did not have a leader" (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [he had compassion](#)
- [a shepherd](#)
- [troubled](#)
- [sheep](#)
- [like](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [he pitied](#)
- [a shepherd](#)
- [upset](#)
- [sheep that](#)
- [like](#)

ULT

³⁶ When he saw the crowds, [he had compassion](#) for them, because they were [troubled](#) and discouraged, [like sheep](#) not having [a shepherd](#).

UST

³⁶ When he saw the crowds of people, [he pitied](#) them because they were [upset](#) and worried. They were [like sheep that](#) do not have [a shepherd](#).

Matthew 9:37

General Information:

Jesus uses a proverb about harvesting to tell his disciples how they should respond to the needs of the crowds mentioned in the previous section.

The harvest is plentiful, but the laborers are few (ULT)
The people who are ready to receive my message are like a field where the crops are ready to harvest. But there are not many people who go to gather the crops (UST)

Jesus uses a proverb to respond to what he is seeing. Jesus means there are a lot of people who are ready to believe God but only few people to teach them God's truth. (See: [Proverbs](#))

The harvest is plentiful (ULT)

The people who are ready to receive my message are like a field where the crops are ready to harvest (UST)

"There is plenty of ripe food for someone to collect"

laborers (ULT)

people who go to gather the crops (UST)

"workers"

Translation Words - ULT

- [to...disciples](#)
- [laborers](#)
- [harvest](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [disciples](#)
- [people who go to gather the crops](#)
- [crops are ready to harvest](#)

ULT

³⁷ Then he said to his [disciples](#), "The [harvest](#) is plentiful, but the [laborers](#) are few.

UST

³⁷ Then he said to his [disciples](#): "The people who are ready to receive my message are like a field where the [crops are ready to harvest](#). But there are not many [people who go to gather the crops](#).

Matthew 9:38

urgently pray to the Lord of the harvest

“pray to God, because he is in charge of the harvest”

Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- urgently pray
- laborers
- he may send out
- harvest
- harvest

Translation Words - UST

- Lord God
- pray and ask
- people to gather
- to send many more
- to send many more
- crops

ULT

³⁸ Therefore [urgently pray](#) to the [Lord](#) of the [harvest](#), so that [he may send out laborers](#) into his [harvest](#).”

UST

³⁸ So [pray and ask](#) the [Lord God to send many more people to gather](#) in his [crops](#).”

Matthew 10

Matthew 10 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

The sending of the twelve disciples

Many verses in this chapter describe how Jesus sent the twelve disciples out. He sent them to tell his message about the kingdom of heaven. They were to tell his message only in Israel and not to share it with the Gentiles.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

The twelve disciples

The following are the lists of the twelve disciples:

In Matthew:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James son of Zebedee, John son of Zebedee, Philip, Bartholomew, Thomas, Matthew, James son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the Zealot and Judas Iscariot.

In Mark:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James the son of Zebedee and John the son of Zebedee (to whom he gave the name Boanerges, that is, sons of thunder), Philip, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James the son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the Zealot, and Judas Iscariot.

In Luke:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James, John, Philip, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James the son of Alphaeus, Simon (who was called the Zealot), Judas the son of James, and Judas Iscariot.

Thaddaeus is probably the same person as Jude, the son of James.

“The kingdom of heaven has come near”

No one knows for sure whether the “kingdom of heaven” was present or still coming when John spoke these words. English translations often use the phrase “at hand,” but these words can be difficult to translate. Other versions use the phrases “is coming near” and “has come near.”

Matthew 10:1

Connecting Statement:

This begins an account of Jesus sending out his twelve disciples to do his work.

Then he called his twelve disciples together (ULT)
Jesus told his twelve disciples to come to him. Then... the (UST)

“summoned his 12 disciples” (See: [Numbers](#))

and gave them authority (ULT)
he gave them...power (UST)

Be sure that the text clearly communicates that this authority was 1) to drive out unclean spirits and 2) to heal disease and sickness.

to drive them out (ULT)
to drive out...enabled them (UST)

“to make the unclean spirits leave”

every disease and every sickness.

“every disease and every sickness.” The words “disease” and “sickness” are closely related but should be translated as two different words if possible. “Disease” is what causes a person to be sick. “Sickness” is the physical weakness or affliction that results from having a disease.

Translation Words - ULT

- [he called...together](#)
- [twelve disciples](#)
- [unclean](#)
- [authority](#)
- [over...spirits](#)
- [twelve disciples](#)
- [drive...out](#)
- [to heal](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus told...to come to him](#)
- [twelve disciples](#)
- [evil](#)
- [power](#)
- [spirits that controlled people. He](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [to drive out](#)
- [to heal people who had](#)

ULT

¹ Then [he called](#) his [twelve disciples together](#) and gave them [authority over unclean spirits](#), to [drive](#) them [out](#), and [to heal](#) every disease and every sickness.

UST

¹ [Jesus told](#) his [twelve disciples to come to him](#). Then he gave them the [power to drive out evil spirits that controlled people](#). He also enabled them [to heal people who had](#) all kinds diseases or who were sick in all kinds of ways.

Matthew 10:2

General Information:

Here the author provides the names of the twelve apostles as background information.

Now (ULT)

Here is a list of the (UST)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Matthew tells background information about the twelve apostles. (See: [Background Information](#))

of the...twelve apostles (ULT)

Here is a list of the...twelve disciples, whom he... apostles (UST)

This is the same group as the “twelve disciples” in [Matthew 10:1](#).

The first (ULT)

new (UST)

This is first in order, not in rank. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [whom he also called](#)
- [brother](#)
- [brother](#) (2)
- [twelve apostles](#)
- [apostles](#)
- [names](#)
- [Andrew](#)
- [Simon](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [son of Zebedee](#)
- [John](#)
- [James](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [he gave the...name](#)
- [brother](#)
- [younger brother](#) (2)
- [twelve disciples, whom he...apostles](#)
- [apostles](#)
- [called](#)
- [Andrew, Peter's younger](#)
- [Simon](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [Zebedee](#)
- [John](#)

ULT

² Now the [names](#) of the [twelve apostles](#) were these. The first, [Simon \(whom he also called Peter\)](#), and [Andrew](#) his [brother](#); [James son of Zebedee](#), and [John](#) his [brother](#);

UST

² Here is a list of the [twelve disciples, whom he called apostles](#). They were [Simon](#), to whom [he gave the new name Peter](#); [Andrew, Peter's younger brother](#); [James](#) the son of [Zebedee](#); [John](#), the [younger brother](#) of James;

- [James](#)

Matthew 10:3

Matthew the tax collector (ULT)

Matthew...the tax collector (UST)

"Matthew, who was a tax collector"

Translation Words - ULT

- Bartholomew
- Philip
- James son of Alphaeus
- Thomas
- Matthew
- the tax collector

Translation Words - UST

- Bartholomew
- Philip
- James the son of Alphaeus
- Thomas
- Matthew
- tax collector

ULT

³ [Philip](#), and [Bartholomew](#); [Thomas](#), and [Matthew the tax collector](#); [James son of Alphaeus](#), and Thaddaeus;

UST

³ [Philip](#); [Bartholomew](#); [Thomas](#); [Matthew](#), the [tax collector](#); [James the son of Alphaeus](#); Thaddaeus;

Matthew 10:4

the Zealot (ULT)

the Zealot (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “the Zealot” is a title that shows that he was part of the group of people who wanted to free the Jewish people from Roman rule. Alternate translation: “the patriot” or “the nationalist” or 2) “the Zealot” is a description that shows that he was zealous for God to be honored. Alternate translation: “the zealous one” or “the passionate one”

the...and...would...betray him (ULT)

the...and...was disloyal...to...Jesus and pointed...him out to the authorities so they could arrest him (UST)

“who would betray Jesus”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Simon the Zealot](#)
- [Judas Iscariot](#)
- [would...betray](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Simon the Zealot](#)
- [Judas Iscariot](#)
- [was disloyal...Jesus and pointed](#)

ULT

⁴ [Simon the Zealot](#), and [Judas Iscariot](#), who would also [betray](#) him.

UST

⁴ [Simon the Zealot](#); and [Judas Iscariot](#), who [was disloyal](#) to [Jesus and pointed](#) him out to the authorities so they could arrest him.

Matthew 10:5

General Information:

Although verse 5 begins by saying that he sent out the twelve, Jesus gave these instructions before he sent them out. (See: [Order of Events](#))

Connecting Statement:

Here Jesus begins to give instructions to his disciples about what they should do and expect when they go to preach.

These twelve Jesus sent out (ULT)
Jesus was about to send his twelve apostles to tell the good news...the (UST)

"Jesus sent out these twelve men" or "It was these twelve men whom Jesus sent out"

sent out (ULT)
apostles to tell (UST)

Jesus sent them out for a particular purpose.

He instructed them (ULT)
he gave them these instructions (UST)

"He told them what they needed to do" or "He commanded them"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [He instructed](#)
- [twelve](#)
- [to the Gentiles](#)
- [of the Samaritans](#)
- [sent out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus was about to send his](#)
- [he gave them these instructions](#)
- [twelve](#)
- [non-Jews live](#)
- [the Samaritans live](#)
- [apostles to tell](#)

ULT

⁵ These [twelve Jesus sent out](#). [He instructed](#) them, saying, "Do not go on the path [to the Gentiles](#), and do not enter into any town [of the Samaritans](#)."

UST

⁵ When [Jesus was about to send his twelve apostles to tell](#) the good news to people in various places, [he gave them these instructions](#): "Do not go where the [non-Jews live](#) or into the towns where [the Samaritans live](#)."

Matthew 10:6

the lost sheep of the house of Israel (ULT)
the people of Israel; they are like sheep who have
strayed away from their shepherd (UST)

This is a metaphor comparing the entire nation of Israel to sheep who have strayed from their shepherd. (See: [Metaphor](#))

of the house of Israel (ULT)
the people of Israel; they are like (UST)

This refers to the nation of Israel. Alternate translation: “people of Israel” or “descendants of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [lost](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [sheep](#)
- [of the house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [strayed away from their shepherd](#)
- [of Israel; they are like](#)
- [sheep](#)
- [the people](#)

ULT

⁶ Go instead to the [lost sheep of the house of Israel](#);

UST

⁶ Instead, go to [the people of Israel](#); [they are like sheep](#) who have [strayed away from their shepherd](#).

Matthew 10:7

as you go (ULT)

When you go to them (UST)

Here “you” is plural and refers to the twelve apostles. (See: [Forms of You](#))

The kingdom of heaven...has come near (ULT)

God will soon rule from heaven (UST)

The phrase “kingdom of heaven” refers to God ruling as king. This phrase is only in the book of Matthew. If possible, use the word “heaven” in your translation. See how you translated this in [Matthew 3:2](#). Alternate translation: “Our God in heaven will soon show himself to be king” (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

⁷ and as you go, [preach](#) and say, ‘The [kingdom of heaven](#) has come near.’

UST

⁷ When you go to them, [proclaim to them](#) that [God will](#) soon [rule from heaven](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [of heaven](#)
- [kingdom of heaven](#)
- [preach](#)
- [kingdom](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#)
- [God will...rule...from heaven](#)
- [proclaim to them](#)
- [God will...rule](#)

Matthew 10:8

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about what they should do when they go to preach.

Heal...raise...cleanse...and cast out...you have received...give (ULT)

Heal...cause...to become alive...heal...cause...to leave those whom they control...because God did not charge you anything...for helping you (UST)

These verbs and pronouns are plural and refer to the twelve apostles. (See: [Forms of You](#))

raise the dead (ULT)

cause dead people to become alive (UST)

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “cause the dead to live again” (See: [Idiom](#))

Freely you have received, freely give (ULT)

Do not charge any money for helping people, because God did not charge you anything for helping you (UST)

Jesus did not state what the disciples had received or were to give. Some languages may require this information in the sentence. Here “freely” means that there was no payment. Alternate translation: “Freely you have received these things, freely give them to others” or “You received these things without paying, so give them to others without making them pay” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Freely you have received, freely give (ULT)

Do not charge any money for helping people, because God did not charge you anything for helping you (UST)

Here “received” is a metaphor that represents being made able to do things, and “give” is a metaphor that represents doing things for others. Alternate translation: “Freely you have received the ability to do these things, freely do them for others” or “Freely I have made you able to do these things, freely do them for others” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [cleanse](#)
- [demons](#)
- [you have received](#)
- [and cast out](#)
- [Heal](#)
- [the lepers](#)
- [the dead](#)
- [raise](#)
- [Freely](#)
- [freely](#) (2)

ULT

⁸ [Heal](#) the sick, [raise the dead](#), [cleanse the lepers](#), and [cast out demons](#). [Freely you have received](#), [freely](#) give.

UST

⁸ [Heal](#) sick people, [cause dead people to become alive](#), [heal people with leprosy and bring them back into society](#), and [cause demons to leave those whom they control](#). [Do not charge any money for helping people](#), because God did not [charge you anything for helping you](#).

Translation Words - UST

- heal
- demons
- because God did not charge you anything
- cause...to leave those whom they control
- Heal
- people with leprosy and bring them back into society, and
- dead people
- cause...to become alive
- Do not charge any money for helping people
- for helping you (2)

Matthew 10:9

your (ULT)

you (UST)

This refers to the twelve apostles and so is plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

any gold, or silver, or copper (ULT)

money with (UST)

These are metals out of which coins were made. This list is a metonym for money, so if the metals are unknown in your area, translate the list as “money.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

purses (ULT)

money with (UST)

This means “belts” or “money belts,” but it can refer to whatever might be used to carry money. A belt is a long strip of cloth or leather worn around the waist. It was often wide enough that it could be folded and used to carry money.

Translation Words - ULT

- [silver](#)
- [any gold](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [money with](#)
- [money with](#)

ULT

⁹ Do not carry [any gold](#), or [silver](#), or copper in your purses.

UST

⁹ Do not take any [money with](#) you,

Matthew 10:10

a traveling bag (ULT)

a bag (UST)

This could either be any bag used to carry things on a journey, or a bag used by someone to collect food or money.

two tunics (ULT)

take an extra tunic (UST)

Use the same word you used for “tunic” in [Matthew 5:40](#).

a laborer (ULT)

Every worker...the people for whom (UST)

worker

his food (ULT)

he works...to receive food from the people to whom you go (UST)

Here “food” refers to anything a person needs. Alternate translation: “what he needs” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [deserves](#)
- [laborer](#)
- [a staff](#)
- [sandals](#)
- [tunics](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [deserves to get pay from](#)
- [Every worker](#)
- [a walking stick](#)
- [sandals in addition to what you are wearing](#)
- [tunic](#)

ULT

¹⁰ Do not take a traveling bag for your journey, or two [tunics](#), or [sandals](#), or [a staff](#), for a [laborer deserves](#) his food.

UST

¹⁰ nor a bag for what belongs to you. Do not take an extra [tunic](#), nor [sandals in addition to what you are wearing](#), nor [a walking stick](#). [Every worker deserves to get pay from](#) the people for whom he works, so you deserve to receive food from the people to whom you go.

Matthew 10:11

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about what they should do when they go out to preach.

Whatever city or village you enter into (ULT)

In any town or village that you enter (UST)

“Whenever you enter a city or village” or “When you go into any city or village”

city...village (ULT)

town...village that you (UST)

“large village...small village” or “large town...small town.” See how you translated this in [Matthew 9:35](#).

you enter (ULT)

enter (UST)

This is plural and refers to the twelve apostles. (See: [Forms of You](#))

worthy (ULT)

wants you to (UST)

A “worthy” person is a person who is willing to welcome the disciples.

and stay there until you leave (ULT)

wants you to...stay (UST)

The full meaning of the statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “stay in that person’s house until you leave the town or village” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [worthy](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [wants you to](#)

ULT

11 Whatever city or village you enter into, find someone who is [worthy](#) in it, and stay there until you leave.

UST

11 In any town or village that you enter, find a person who [wants you to](#) stay in his home.

Matthew 10:12

As you enter into the house, greet it (ULT)

As you go into that house, call upon God to do good to the people who live there. Stay in that home until you leave that town or village (UST)

The phrase “greet it” means greet the house. A common greeting in those days was “Peace be to this house!” Here “house” represents the people who live in the house. Alternate translation: “As you enter the house, greet the people who live in it” (See: [Metonymy](#))

As you enter (ULT)

As you go (UST)

This is plural and refers to the twelve apostles. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [house](#)

ULT

¹² As you enter into the [house](#), greet it.

UST

¹² As you go into that [house](#), call upon God to do good to the people who live there. Stay in that home until you leave that town or village.

Matthew 10:13

your...your (ULT)

God will indeed do good to them...God will indeed do good to them (UST)

These are plural and refer to the twelve apostles. (See: [Forms of You](#))

the house is worthy...it is not worthy (ULT)

If the people who live in that...house receive you well...do not receive you well, then your prayer will not help them, and God will not do them good (UST)

Here "the house" represents those who live in the house. A "worthy" person is a person who is willing to welcome the disciples. Jesus compares this person to one who is "not worthy," a person who does not welcome the disciples. Alternate translation: "the people who live in that house receive you well" or "the people who live in that house treat you well" (See: [Metonymy](#))

let your peace come upon it (ULT)

God will indeed do good to them (UST)

The word "it" refers to the house, which represents the people who live in the house. Alternate translation: "let them receive your peace" or "let them receive the peace that you greeted them with" (See: [Metonymy](#))

if...it is not worthy (ULT)

But if they...do not receive you well, then your prayer will not help them, and God will not do them good (UST)

The word "it" means the house. Here "house" refers to the people who live in the house. Alternate translation: "if they do not receive you well" or "if they do not treat you well" (See: [Metonymy](#))

the...your...peace...let...come back to you (ULT)

house receive...God will indeed do good to them...your prayer will not help them, and God will not do them good (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) if the household was not worthy, then God would hold back peace or blessings from that household or 2) if the household was not worthy, then the apostles were supposed to do something, such as asking God not to honor their greeting of peace. If your language has a similar meaning of taking back a greeting or its effects, that should be used here.

Translation Words - ULT

- [worthy](#)
- [worthy](#) (2)
- [let...come back](#)
- [peace](#)
- [peace](#) (2)
- [house](#)

ULT

¹³ If the [house](#) is [worthy](#), let your [peace](#) come upon it. But if it is not [worthy](#), let your [peace come back](#) to you.

UST

¹³ If the people who live in that [house](#) [receive you well](#), [God will indeed do good to them](#). But if they do not receive you well, then [your prayer will not help them, and God will not do them good](#).

Translation Words - UST

- you well
- your prayer will not help them, and God will not do them good (2)
- your prayer will not help them, and God will not do them good
- God will indeed do good to them
- your prayer will not help them, and God will not do them good (2)
- house receive

Matthew 10:14

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about what they should do when they go to preach.

**As for those who do not receive you or listen to (ULT)
If the people who live in any...not welcome you, nor
listen (UST)**

"If no people in that house or city will receive you or listen"

you...your (ULT)

you...your (UST)

This is plural and refers to the twelve apostles. (See: [Forms of You](#))

listen to your words (ULT)

listen to your message (UST)

Here "words" refers to what the disciples say. Alternate translation: "listen to your message" or "listen to what you have to say" (See: [Metonymy](#))

city (ULT)

town do (UST)

You should translate this the same way you did in [Matthew 10:11](#).

shake off the dust from your feet (ULT)

place. As you leave, shake off the dust from your feet. By doing that, you will warn them (UST)

"shake the dust off your feet as you leave." This is a sign that God has rejected the people of that house or city. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [receive](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [welcome](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

14 As for those who do not [receive](#) you or listen to your words, when you depart from that [house](#) or city, shake off the dust from your feet.

UST

14 If the people who live in any [house](#) or town do not [welcome](#) you, nor listen to your message, leave that place. As you leave, shake off the dust from your feet. By doing that, you will warn them that God will reject them as they rejected what you said.

Matthew 10:15

Truly I say to you (ULT)
Note this carefully (UST)

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

it shall be more tolerable (ULT)
he will punish the wicked people who lived in Sodom (UST)

"the suffering shall be less"

for the land of Sodom and Gomorrah (ULT)
he will punish the wicked people who lived in Sodom... and Gomorrah (UST)

This refers to the people who lived in Sodom and Gomorrah. Alternate translation: "the people who lived in the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah" (See: [Metonymy](#))

for that city (ULT)
But if the people of any...city reject you, God will punish them even more severely (UST)

This refers to the people in the city that does not receive the apostles or listen to their message. Alternate translation: "the people of the city that does not receive you" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Truly
- of judgment
- Gomorrah
- of Sodom
- the day

Translation Words - UST

- Note this carefully
- God judges all people
- Gomorrah
- he will punish the wicked people who lived in Sodom
- the time when

ULT

¹⁵ Truly I say to you, it shall be more tolerable for the land [of Sodom](#) and [Gomorrah](#) in [the day of judgment](#) than for that city.

UST

¹⁵ [Note this carefully](#): At [the time when God judges all people](#), [he will punish the wicked people who lived in Sodom](#) and [Gomorrah](#). But if the people of any city reject you, God will punish them even more severely.

Matthew 10:16

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples. Here he begins to tell them about the persecution they will endure when they go out to preach.

See, I send...out (ULT)

Take note: When I send...out, you will be (UST)

The word "See" here adds emphasis to what follows. Alternate translation: "Look, I send" or "Listen, send" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you. I send"

I send you out (ULT)

When I send you out, you will be (UST)

Jesus is sending them out for a particular purpose.

as sheep in the midst of wolves (ULT)

as defenseless as sheep, among people who are as dangerous as wolves (UST)

Sheep are defenseless animals that wolves often attack. Jesus is stating that people may harm the disciples. Alternate translation: "as sheep among people who are like dangerous wolves" or "as sheep among people who act the way dangerous animals act" (See: [Simile](#))

be...wise as the serpents and harmless as the doves (ULT)

be...careful like snakes are careful and be harmless to them like pigeons are harmless (UST)

Jesus is telling the disciples they must be cautious and harmless among the people. If comparing the disciples to serpents or doves is confusing, it might be better not to state the similes. Alternate translation: "act with understanding and caution, as well as with innocence and virtue" (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [harmless](#)
- [wise](#)
- [send...out](#)
- [doves](#)
- [sheep](#)
- [as](#)
- [as](#) (2)
- [as](#) (3)
- [serpents](#)
- [of wolves](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [be harmless to them](#)
- [careful](#)
- [send...out, you will be](#)
- [pigeons are harmless](#)
- [as defenseless as sheep](#)

ULT

¹⁶ See, I [send](#) you [out as sheep](#) in the midst [of wolves](#), so be [wise as the serpents](#) and [harmless as the doves](#).

UST

¹⁶ "Take note: When I [send](#) you [out, you will be as defenseless as sheep](#), among [people who are as dangerous as wolves](#). So be [careful like snakes are careful](#) and [be harmless to them like pigeons are harmless](#).

- as defenseless as sheep
- like (2)
- like (3)
- snakes are careful
- people who are as dangerous as wolves

Matthew 10:17

Watch out for people! For they will deliver you up (ULT)
Also, be on guard against such people, because they
will arrest you...you (UST)

You can translate with “because” to show how these two statements relate. Alternate translation: “Watch out for people because they will” (See: [Connecting Words and Phrases](#))

they will deliver...up...you...to (ULT)
they will arrest...you...you...take you to (UST)

“will put you under the control of”

councils (ULT)
the members of the governing councils to put...on trial (UST)

local religious leaders or elders who together keep peace in the community

you...they will whip (ULT)
you...They will whip (UST)

“beat you with a whip”

Translation Words - ULT

- [synagogues](#)
- [councils](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [synagogues](#)
- [the members of the governing councils to put...on trial](#)

ULT

¹⁷ Watch out for people! For they will deliver you up to [councils](#), and they will whip you in their [synagogues](#).

UST

¹⁷ Also, be on guard against such people, because they will arrest you and take you to [the members of the governing councils to put](#) you [on trial](#). They will whip you in their [synagogues](#).

Matthew 10:18

you will be brought (ULT)

they may put you on trial and punish you (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they will bring you” or “they will drag you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

for my sake (ULT)

about me (UST)

“because you belong to me” or “because you follow me”

before...to them...to the Gentiles (ULT)

And because you belong to me, they will take you...to those rulers...to other non-Jews (UST)

The pronoun “them” refers either to the “governors and kings” or to the Jewish accusers.

Translation Words - ULT

- [a testimony](#)
- [Gentiles](#)
- [kings](#)
- [governors](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [But you will testify](#)
- [non-Jews](#)
- [kings in order that](#)
- [governors](#)

ULT

¹⁸ Then you will be brought before [governors](#) and [kings](#) for my sake, as [a testimony](#) to them and to the [Gentiles](#).

UST

¹⁸ And because you belong to me, they will take you before [governors](#) and [kings in order that](#) they may put you on trial and punish you. [But you will testify](#) to those rulers and to other [non-Jews](#) about me.

Matthew 10:19

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about the persecution they will endure when they go out to preach.

When they deliver you up (ULT)

When those people arrest you (UST)

“When people take you to the councils.” The “people” here are the same “people” as in [Matthew 10:17](#).

you...to you (ULT)

you...you will say to them, because the words that you should say will come to you (UST)

These are plural and refer to the twelve apostles. (See: [Forms of You](#))

do not be anxious about (ULT)

do not be worried (UST)

“do not worry”

how or what you will speak (ULT)

about what you will say to them, because the words that you should say will come to you (UST)

“how you are to speak or what you are to say.” The two ideas may be combined: “what you are to say” (See: [Hendiadys](#))

for...will be given to you...what to say (ULT)

you will say to them, because the words that you should say will come to you...you will say to them, because the words that you should say will come to you (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “for the Holy Spirit will tell you what to say” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

in that hour (ULT)

you will say to them, because the words that you should say will come to you (UST)

Here “hour” means “right then.” Alternate translation: “right then” or “at that time” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [hour](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [you will say to them, because the words that you should say will come to you](#)

ULT

19 When they deliver you up, do not be anxious about how or what you will speak, for what to say will be given to you in that [hour](#).

UST

19 When those people arrest you, do not be worried about what [you will say to them, because the words that you should say will come to you](#).

Matthew 10:20

you...your...you (ULT)

you...your...you (UST)

These are plural and refer to the twelve apostles. (See: [Forms of You](#))

the Spirit of your Father (ULT)

the Spirit of your heavenly Father (UST)

If necessary, this can be translated as “the Spirit of God your heavenly Father” or a footnote can be added to make it clear that this refers to God the Holy Spirit and not to the spirit of an earthly father.

of...Father (ULT)

of...heavenly Father (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

in you (ULT)

you (UST)

“through you”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Spirit](#)
- [of...Father](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Spirit](#)
- [heavenly Father](#)

ULT

²⁰ For it is not you who will speak, but the [Spirit](#) of your [Father](#) who will speak in you.

UST

²⁰ It is not that you will decide what to say. Instead, you will say what the [Spirit](#) of your [heavenly Father](#) tells you to say.

Matthew 10:21

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about the persecution they will endure when they go out to preach.

Brother will deliver up brother to death (ULT)
They will take you to the authorities to die because you believe in me. For example, people will do that to their brothers (UST)

“One brother will deliver up his brother to death” or “Brothers will deliver up their brothers to death.” Jesus speaks of something that will happen many times.

will deliver up...brother to death (ULT)
They will take you to the authorities...to die because you believe in me. For example...people will do that to their brothers (UST)

The abstract noun “death” can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: “hand brother over to authorities who will execute him” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

a father his child (ULT)
fathers will do that to their children (UST)

These words can be translated as a complete sentence. Alternate translation: “fathers will deliver up their children to death” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

will rise up...against (ULT)
Children will rebel against their parents...Children will rebel against their parents (UST)

“rebel against” or “turn against”

cause them to be put to death (ULT)
cause them to be killed (UST)

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “have them put to death” or “have the authorities execute them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Brother
- brother
- his child
- Children
- a father
- death
- cause...to be put to death

ULT

²¹ [Brother](#) will deliver up [brother](#) to [death](#), and [a father his child](#). [Children](#) will rise up against their parents and [cause](#) them [to be put to death](#).

UST

²¹ They will take you to the authorities to [die because you believe in me. For example, people will do that to their brothers](#), and [fathers will do that to their children. Children will rebel against their parents](#) and [cause](#) them [to be killed](#).

Translation Words - UST

- people will do that to their brothers
- people will do that to their brothers
- fathers will do that to their children
- Children will rebel against their parents
- fathers will do that to their children
- die because you believe in me. For example
- cause...to be killed

Matthew 10:22

You will be hated by everyone (ULT)
Many people will hate you because you trust in me (UST)

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "Everyone will hate you" or "All people will hate you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

You will be (ULT)
Many people will hate you because you trust in me (UST)

This is plural and refers to the twelve disciples. (See: [Forms of You](#))

because of my name (ULT)
Many people will hate you because you trust in me (UST)

Here "name" refers to the entire person. Alternate translation: "because of me" or "because you trust in me" (See: [Metonymy](#))

But whoever endures...But whoever endures (ULT)
anyone who...faithfully trusts in me (UST)

"whoever stays faithful"

to the end (ULT)
until...die, those people (UST)

It is not clear whether the "end" means when a person dies, when the persecution ends, or the end of the age when God shows himself to be king. The main point is that they endure as long as necessary.

that person will be saved (ULT)
they...God will save (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will deliver that person" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [will be saved](#)
- [name](#)
- [But whoever endures](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God will save](#)
- [Many people will hate you because you trust in me](#)
- [faithfully trusts in me](#)

ULT

²² You will be hated by everyone because of my [name](#). [But whoever endures](#) to the end, that person [will be saved](#).

UST

²² [Many people will hate you because you trust in me](#). But anyone who [faithfully trusts in me](#) until they die, those people [God will save](#).

Matthew 10:23

in this city (ULT)

in one city (UST)

Here “this” does not refer to a specific city. Alternate translation: “in one city”

flee to the next (ULT)

escape to another city (UST)

“flee to the next city”

truly...I say to you (ULT)

Note this...Note this (UST)

“I tell you the truth.” This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

Son of Man (ULT)

I, the Son...of Man (UST)

Jesus is speaking about himself. (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

comes (ULT)

return to earth (UST)

“arrives”

Translation Words - ULT

- [truly](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [they persecute](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Note this](#)
- [I, the Son...of Man](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [cause...to suffer](#)

ULT

²³ When [they persecute](#) you in this city, flee to the next, for [truly](#) I say to you, you will certainly not finish going through the cities [of Israel](#) before the [Son of Man](#) comes.

UST

²³ When people in one city [cause](#) you [to suffer](#), escape to another city. [Note this](#): [I, the Son of Man](#), will certainly return to earth before you have finished going from one town to another town throughout [Israel](#) and telling people about me.

Matthew 10:24

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about the persecution they will endure when they go out to preach.

A disciple is not greater than his teacher, nor a servant above his master (ULT)

A disciple should not expect to be greater than his teacher, and servants are not superior to their master (UST)

ULT

²⁴ [A disciple](#) is not greater than his [teacher](#), nor [a servant](#) above his [master](#).

UST

²⁴ [A disciple should](#) not expect to be greater [than his teacher](#), [and servants](#) are not superior to their [master](#).

Jesus is using a proverb to teach his disciples a general truth. Jesus is emphasizing that the disciples should not expect people to treat them any better than the people treat Jesus. (See: [Proverbs](#))

A disciple is not greater than his teacher (ULT)

A disciple should not expect to be greater than his teacher (UST)

“A disciple is always less important than his teacher” or “A teacher is always more important than his disciple”

greater than his...nor a servant...his...master (ULT)

greater than his teacher, and servants...not...to...their...master (UST)

“and a servant is always less important than his master” or “and a master is always more important than his servant”

Translation Words - ULT

- [master](#)
- [A disciple](#)
- [teacher](#)
- [a servant](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to...master](#)
- [A disciple should](#)
- [than his teacher](#)
- [and servants](#)

Matthew 10:25

It is enough for the disciple that he should be like his teacher (ULT)

You do not expect that people will treat...student better than they treat...that they will treat a...his master. Similarly, because I am your teacher...have mistreated me. I am (UST)

“The disciple should be satisfied to become like his teacher”

he should be like his teacher (ULT)

You do not expect that people will treat...a...his master. Similarly, because I am your teacher...have mistreated me. I am (UST)

If necessary, you can make explicit how the disciple becomes like the teacher. Alternate translation: “know as much as his teacher knows” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the servant like his master (ULT)

a...his teacher, or...servant better than they treat...master, you can expect that people will mistreat you, because they...like (UST)

If necessary, you can make explicit how the servant becomes like the master. Alternate translation: “the servant should be satisfied to become only as important as his master” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

If...his...they have called...how much worse the members of...household (ULT)

If they act that badly toward...his master. Similarly, because I am your...whom they call...me, how do you think they will act toward you (UST)

Again Jesus is emphasizing that since people have mistreated him, his disciples should expect people to treat them the same or worse.

his...how much worse the members of...household (ULT)

his master. Similarly, because I am your...me, how do you think they will act toward you (UST)

“the names that they call the members of his household will certainly be much worse” or “they will certainly call the members of his household much worse names”

If...they have called (ULT)

If they act that badly toward...whom they call (UST)

“Since people have called”

ULT

²⁵ It is enough for the [disciple](#) that he should be [like](#) his [teacher](#), and the [servant like](#) his [master](#). If [they have called](#) the [master of the house Beelzebul](#), how much worse the [members of](#) his [household](#)!

UST

²⁵ You do not expect that people will treat a [student better than they treat](#) his teacher, or that they will treat a [servant better than they treat](#) his master. Similarly, because I am your [teacher](#) and [master, you can expect that people will mistreat you, because they have mistreated me. I am like](#) the [ruler of a household, whom they call Satan](#). If they act that badly toward [me, how do you think they will act toward you?](#)”

the master of the house (ULT)
the ruler of a household (UST)

Jesus is using this as a metaphor for himself. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Beelzebul (ULT)
Satan (UST)

This name can either be 1) transcribed directly as "Beelzebul" or 2) translated with its original, intended meaning of "Satan."

the members of his household (ULT)
me, how do you think they will act toward you (UST)

This is a metaphor for Jesus' disciples. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- they have called
- master
- master of the house
- disciple
- Beelzebul
- members of...household
- teacher
- like
- like (2)
- servant

Translation Words - UST

- whom they call
- master, you can expect that people will mistreat you, because they
- ruler of a household
- student better than they treat
- Satan
- me, how do you think they will act toward you
- teacher
- have mistreated me. I am
- like (2)
- servant better than they treat

Matthew 10:26

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about the persecution they will endure when they go out to preach.

do not...fear them (ULT)

not...Do...be afraid...of those people (UST)

Here “them” refers to the people who mistreat followers of Jesus.

**nothing...there is...concealed that will not be revealed,
and nothing hidden that will not be made known (ULT)
is...Everything that...is...covered up will be uncovered,
and every secret will be made known (UST)**

Both of these statements mean the same thing. Being concealed or hidden represents being kept secret, and being revealed represents being made known. Jesus is emphasizing that God will make all things known. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God will reveal the things that people hide” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [will...be revealed](#)
- [fear](#)
- [will...be made known](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [will be uncovered](#)
- [Do...be afraid](#)
- [will be made known](#)

ULT

²⁶ Therefore do not [fear](#) them, for there is nothing concealed that will not [be revealed](#), and nothing hidden that will not [be made known](#).

UST

²⁶ “Do not [be afraid](#) of those people. Everything that is covered up [will be uncovered](#), and every secret [will be made known](#).”

Matthew 10:27

What I tell you in the darkness, say in the daylight, and what you hear softly in your ear, proclaim upon the housetops (ULT)

So, instead of being afraid, what I say to you secretly as people do at night, tell it publicly as people do during the daytime. What I say to you privately as people do when they whisper to you, proclaim it publicly (UST)

Both of these statements mean the same thing. Jesus is emphasizing that the disciples should tell everyone what he tells the disciples in private. Alternate translation: "Tell people in the daylight what I tell you in the darkness, and proclaim upon the housetops what you hear softly in your ear" (See: [Parallelism](#))

ULT

²⁷ What I tell you in the [darkness](#), say in the [daylight](#), and what you hear softly in your ear, [proclaim](#) upon the housetops.

UST

²⁷ [So, instead of being afraid, what I say to you secretly as people do at night, tell it publicly as people do during the daytime.](#) What I say to you privately as people do when they whisper to you, [proclaim](#) it publicly.

What I tell you in the darkness, say in the daylight (ULT)

So, instead of being afraid, what I say to you secretly as people do at night, tell it publicly as people do during the daytime (UST)

Here "darkness" is a metonym for "night" which is a metonym for "private." Here "daylight" is a metonym for "public." Alternate translation: "What I tell you privately at night, say in public in the day light" (See: [Metonymy](#))

what you hear softly in your ear (ULT)

What I say to you privately as people do (UST)

This is a way of referring to whispering. Alternate translation: "what I whisper to you" (See: [Idiom](#))

proclaim upon the housetops (ULT)

proclaim it publicly (UST)

Housetops where Jesus lived were flat, and people far away could hear anyone speaking with a loud voice. Here "housetops" refers to any place where all people can hear. Alternate translation: "speak loudly in a public place for all to hear" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [proclaim](#)
- [darkness](#)
- [daylight](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [proclaim](#)
- [So, instead of being afraid, what I say to you secretly as people do at night](#)
- [tell it publicly as people do during the daytime](#)

Matthew 10:28

General Information:

Here Jesus also begins to give reasons why his disciples should not be afraid of the persecution they might experience.

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about the persecution they will endure when they go to preach.

Do not be afraid of those who kill the body but are not able to kill the soul (ULT)

This is not distinguishing between people who cannot kill the soul and people who can kill the soul. No person can kill the soul.

Alternate translation: "Do not be afraid of people. They can kill the body, but they cannot kill the soul" (See: [Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding](#))

those who kill the body (ULT)

This means to cause physical death. If these words are awkward, they can be translated as "kill you" or "kill other people."

the body (ULT)

the part of a person that can be touched, as opposed to the soul or spirit

the...soul...to kill (ULT)

This means to harm people after they have physically died.

the...soul (ULT)

the part of a person that cannot be touched and that lives on after the physical body dies

fear...him who is able (ULT)

fear God...he is able (UST)

You can add "because" to clarify why people should fear God. Alternate translation: "fear God because he is able" (See: [Connecting Words and Phrases](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [be afraid](#)
- [fear](#) (2)
- [to destroy](#)
- [hell](#)
- [body](#)
- [body](#) (2)
- [soul](#)
- [soul](#) (2)

ULT

²⁸ Do not [be afraid](#) of those who kill the [body](#) but are not able to kill the [soul](#). But instead, [fear](#) him who is able [to destroy](#) both [soul](#) and [body](#) in [hell](#).

UST

²⁸ Do not [be afraid](#) of people who are able to kill your [body](#) but are not able to destroy your [soul](#). Instead, [fear God](#), because he is able [to destroy](#) both your [body](#) and your [soul](#) in [hell](#).

Translation Words - UST

- Do...be afraid
- fear God (2)
- to destroy
- hell
- body
- body (2)
- soul
- soul (2)

Matthew 10:29

Are not two sparrows sold for a small coin (ULT)
Think about the sparrows. They have so little value
that you can buy two of them for only one small coin
(UST)

Jesus states this proverb as a question to teach his disciples.
 Alternate translation: "Think about the sparrows. They have so little value that you can buy two of them for only one small coin." (See: [Proverbs](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

sparrows (ULT)
Think about the sparrows (UST)

These are very small, seed-eating birds. Alternate translation: "small birds" (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

for a small coin (ULT)
for only one small coin (UST)

This is often translated as the least valuable coin available in your country. It refers to a copper coin worth about one-sixteenth of a day's wage for a laborer. Alternate translation: "very little money"

not one of them falls to the ground without your Father's knowledge (ULT)
when any sparrow falls to the ground and dies, God, your heavenly Father, knows it, because
he knows everything (UST)

This can be stated in a positive form. Alternate translation: "your Father knows when even one sparrow dies and falls to the ground" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

Father's (ULT)
heavenly Father, knows it, because he knows everything (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Father's](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heavenly Father, knows it, because he knows everything](#)

ULT

²⁹ Are not two sparrows sold for a small coin? Yet not one of them falls to the ground without your [Father's](#) knowledge.

UST

²⁹ Think about the sparrows. They have so little value that you can buy two of them for only one small coin. But when any sparrow falls to the ground and dies, God, your [heavenly Father, knows it, because he knows everything](#).

Matthew 10:30

your...even the hairs of...head are all numbered (ULT)
He knows everything about you...too. He even knows
how many hairs you have on your head (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God knows even how many hairs are on your head" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

numbered (ULT)
He even knows how many (UST)

"counted"

Translation Words - ULT

- [of...head](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [head](#)

ULT

³⁰ But even the hairs of your [head](#) are all numbered.

UST

³⁰ He knows everything about you, too. He even knows how many hairs you have on your [head](#)!

Matthew 10:31

You are more valuable than many sparrows (ULT)
God values you much more than he values sparrows (UST)

"God values you more than many sparrows"

Translation Words - ULT

- [fear](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [do...be afraid of people who threaten to kill you](#)

ULT

³¹ Therefore do not [fear](#). You are more valuable than many sparrows.

UST

³¹ God values you much more than he values sparrows. So, do not [be afraid of people who threaten to kill you!](#)

Matthew 10:32

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about the reasons why they should not be afraid of the persecution that they might experience.

everyone...who confesses me...me before...I...also...

him...my Father (ULT)

If people...are willing to tell...they belong to me...are willing to tell...belong to me...I...also...my Father...they belong to me (UST)

“whoever confesses me...I will also confess before my Father” or “if anyone confesses me...I will also confess him before my Father”

confesses me before men (ULT)

are willing to tell others that...belong to me (UST)

“tells others that he is my disciple” or “acknowledges before other people that he is loyal to me”

I will also confess him before my Father who is in heaven (ULT)

I will also acknowledge before my Father who is in heaven that they belong to me (UST)

You can make explicit the information that is understood. Alternate translation: “I will also acknowledge before my Father who is in heaven that that person belongs to me” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

my Father who is in heaven

“my heavenly Father”

my Father (ULT)

my Father (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [confesses](#)
- [will...confess](#)
- [Father](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven that](#)
- [are willing to tell...belong to me](#)
- [will...acknowledge](#)
- [Father](#)

ULT

³² Therefore everyone who [confesses](#) me before men, I will also [confess](#) him before my [Father](#) who is in [heaven](#).

UST

³² If people [are willing to tell](#) others that they [belong to me](#), I will also [acknowledge](#) before my [Father](#) who is in [heaven that](#) they belong to me.

Matthew 10:33

whoever...denies me...before...I will also deny him...my Father (ULT)
they...are afraid to say...me...in front...I will tell my Father...they are not mine (UST)

“whoever denies me...I will also deny before my Father” or “if anyone denies me...I will also deny him before my Father”

denies me before men (ULT)
are afraid to say in front of others that they belong to me (UST)

“denies to other people that he is loyal to me” or “refuses to acknowledge to others that he is my disciple”

I will also deny him before my Father who is in heaven (ULT)
I will tell my Father, who is in heaven, that they are not mine (UST)

You can make explicit the information that is understood. Alternate translation: “I will deny before my Father who is in heaven that this person belongs to me” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [Father](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven, that](#)
- [Father](#)

ULT

³³ But whoever denies me before men, I will also deny him before my [Father](#) who is in [heaven](#).

UST

³³ But if they are afraid to say in front of others that they belong to me, I will tell my [Father](#), who is in [heaven, that](#) they are not mine.”

Matthew 10:34

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about the reasons why they should not be afraid of the persecution that they might experience.

Do not think (ULT)

Do not think (UST)

“Do not suppose” or “You must not think”

upon the earth (ULT)

to earth (UST)

This refers to the people who live on the earth. Alternate translation: “to the people of the earth” or “to people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

a sword (ULT)

will die (UST)

This refers to division, fighting, and killing among people. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [a sword](#)
- [peace](#)
- [peace](#) (2)
- [earth](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [will die](#)
- [in peace](#)
- [Because I have come, some of those who follow me](#) (2)
- [to earth](#)

ULT

³⁴ Do not think that I came to bring [peace](#) upon the [earth](#). I did not come to bring [peace](#), but [a sword](#).

UST

³⁴ “Do not think that I came [to earth](#) to cause people to live together [in peace](#). [Because I have come, some of those who follow me will die](#).

Matthew 10:35

to set a man against (ULT)
will be against those who do believe in me. For
example, some sons will oppose (UST)

“to cause...to fight against”

a man against his father (ULT)
sons will oppose their fathers, some (UST)

“a son against his father”

Translation Words - ULT

- father

Translation Words - UST

- fathers, some

ULT

³⁵ For I came to set a man against his [father](#), and a daughter against her mother, and a daughter-in-law against her mother-in-law.

UST

³⁵ Because I came to earth, people who do not believe in me will be against those who do believe in me. For example, some sons will oppose their [fathers, some](#) daughters will oppose their mothers, and some daughters-in-law will oppose their mothers-in-law.

Matthew 10:36

A man's enemies (ULT)

This shows that sometimes a person's enemies (UST)

"A person's enemies" or "A person's worst enemies"

will be those of his own household (ULT)

will be members of his own household (UST)

"members of his own family"

Translation Words - ULT

- [enemies](#)
- [will be those of...own household](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [enemies](#)
- [will be members of...household](#)

ULT

³⁶ A man's [enemies will be those of](#) his [own household](#).

UST

³⁶ This shows that sometimes a person's [enemies will be members of](#) his own [household](#).

Matthew 10:37

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about the reasons why they should not be afraid of the persecution that they might experience.

He who loves...is not worthy of me (ULT)

People who love their...are not worthy to belong to me (UST)

Here "he" means any person in general. Alternate translation: "Those who love...are not worthy" or "If you love...you are not worthy" (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

He who loves (ULT)

People who love their (UST)

The word for "love" here refers to "brotherly love" or "love from a friend." Alternate translation: "cares for" or "is devoted to" or "is fond of"

worthy of me (ULT)

worthy to belong to me (UST)

"deserve to belong to me" or "worthy to be my disciple"

Translation Words - ULT

- [worthy](#)
- [worthy](#) (2)
- [He who loves](#)
- [he who loves](#) (2)
- [son](#)
- [father](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [worthy to belong](#)
- [worthy to belong](#) (2)
- [love their](#)
- [love their](#) (2)
- [sons](#)
- [fathers](#)

ULT

³⁷ [He who loves father](#) or mother more than me is not [worthy](#) of me; and [he who loves son](#) or daughter more than me is not [worthy](#) of me.

UST

³⁷ People who [love their fathers](#) or mothers more than they love me are not [worthy to belong](#) to me. And people who [love their sons](#) or daughters more than they love me are not [worthy to belong](#) to me.

Matthew 10:38

pick up his cross and follow after me (ULT)

If you are not ready to die...to me, then you are not (UST)

“carry his cross and follow me.” The cross represents suffering and death. Taking up the cross represents being willing to suffer and die. Alternate translation: “obey me even to the point of suffering and dying” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

pick up (ULT)

If you are not ready to die (UST)

“take up” or “pick up and carry”

Translation Words - ULT

- [worthy](#)
- [cross](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [worthy to belong](#)
- [If you are not ready to die](#)

ULT

³⁸ He who does not pick up his [cross](#) and follow after me is not [worthy](#) of me.

UST

³⁸ [If you are not ready to die](#) because you belong to me, then you are not [worthy to belong](#) to me.

Matthew 10:39

He who finds his life will lose it. But he who loses...will find it (ULT)

People who deny that they believe in me in order to escape dying will not live with God eternally, but people who are willing to lose...will live with God eternally (UST)

Jesus uses a proverb to teach his disciples. This should be translated with as few words as possible. Alternate translation: "Those who find their lives will lose them. But those who lose their lives...will find them" or "If you find your life you will lose it. But if you lose your life...you will find it" (See: [Proverbs](#))

ULT

³⁹ He who finds his [life will lose](#) it. But [he who loses](#) his [life](#) for my sake will find it.

UST

³⁹ People who [deny that they believe in me in order to escape dying will not live with God eternally](#), but people who [are willing to lose](#) their [lives](#) because they trust in me will live with God eternally."

He who finds (ULT)

People who deny that they believe in me in order to escape dying (UST)

This is a metaphor for "keeps" or "saves." Alternate translation: "tries to keep" or "tries to save" (See: [Metaphor](#))

will lose it (ULT)

will not live with God eternally (UST)

This does not mean the person will die. It is a metaphor that means the person will not experience spiritual life with God. Alternate translation: "will not have true life" (See: [Metaphor](#))

he who loses his life (ULT)

people who are willing to lose their lives (UST)

This does not mean to die. It is a metaphor that means a person considers obeying Jesus more important than his own life. Alternate translation: "who denies himself" (See: [Metaphor](#))

for my sake (ULT)

because they trust in me (UST)

"because he trusts me" or "on my account" or "because of me." This is the same idea as "for my sake" in [Matthew 10:18](#).

will find it (ULT)

will live with God eternally (UST)

This metaphor means the person will experience spiritual life with God. Alternate translation: "will find true life" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [life](#)
- [life](#) (2)
- [will lose](#)
- [he who loses](#)

Translation Words - UST

- deny that they believe in me in order to escape dying
- lives (2)
- will not live with God eternally
- are willing to lose

Matthew 10:40

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about the reasons why they should not be afraid of the persecution that they might experience.

He who welcomes (ULT)

God considers that everyone who welcomes (UST)

The word "He" refers to anyone in general. Alternate translation: "Whoever" or "Anyone who" or "The one who" (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

He who welcomes (ULT)

God considers that everyone who welcomes (UST)

This means to receive someone as a guest.

you (ULT)

you (UST)

This is plural and refers to the twelve apostles to whom Jesus is speaking. (See: [Forms of You](#))

He who welcomes you welcomes me (ULT)

God considers that everyone who welcomes you welcomes me (UST)

Jesus means that when someone welcomes you, it is like welcoming him. Alternate translation: "When someone welcomes you, it is like he is welcoming me" or "If someone welcomes you, it is as if he were welcoming me"

He who welcomes...welcomes me...him who sent me (ULT)

God considers that everyone who welcomes...welcomes me...the one who sent me (UST)

This means that when someone welcomes Jesus, it is like welcoming God. Alternate translation: "When someone welcomes me, it is like he is welcoming God the Father who sent me" or "If someone welcomes me, it is as if he were welcoming God the Father who sent me"

Translation Words - ULT

- [He who welcomes](#)
- [welcomes](#)
- [he who welcomes me](#) (2)
- [also welcomes](#) (2)
- [him who sent](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [welcomes](#)
- [welcomes](#)
- [welcomes](#) (2)
- [welcomes him](#) (2)
- [one who sent](#)

ULT

⁴⁰ [He who welcomes](#) you [welcomes](#) me, and [he who welcomes me also welcomes him who sent](#) me.

UST

⁴⁰ "God considers that everyone who [welcomes](#) you [welcomes](#) me, and he considers that everyone who [welcomes](#) me [welcomes him](#), the [one who sent](#) me.

Matthew 10:41

because he is a prophet (ULT)

because they know that...is a prophet (UST)

Here “he” does not refer to the person who is welcoming. It refers to the person being welcomed.

a prophet...a...reward (ULT)

because they know that...is a prophet...the same reward (UST)

This refers to the reward that God gives the prophet, not to the reward that a prophet gives to another person.

because he is...a righteous man (ULT)

because they know that...is a prophet...is...righteous (UST)

Here “he” does not refer to the person who is welcoming. It refers to the person being welcomed.

a...reward...a righteous man (ULT)

the same reward...is...righteous (UST)

This refers to the reward God gives to a righteous person, not a reward that a righteous person gives to another person.

Translation Words - ULT

- a righteous man
- a righteous man
- righteous man's (2)
- a prophet
- a prophet
- prophet's (2)
- because he is
- because he is (2)
- He who welcomes
- will receive
- he who welcomes (2)
- will receive (2)
- a...reward
- a...reward (2)

Translation Words - UST

- righteous
- is...righteous
- that...people receive from God (2)
- because they know that...is a prophet
- because they know that...is a prophet
- that prophets receive from God (2)

ULT

⁴¹ He who welcomes a prophet because he is a prophet will receive a prophet's reward, and he who welcomes a righteous man because he is a righteous man will receive a righteous man's reward.

UST

⁴¹ Those who welcome someone because they know that person is a prophet—they will receive the same reward that prophets receive from God. Likewise, those who welcome a person because they know that person is righteous—they will receive the reward that righteous people receive from God.

- because they know that...is a prophet
- know that person (2)
- welcome someone...person
- they will receive
- welcome a person because they (2)
- they will receive (2)
- the same reward
- the reward (2)

Matthew 10:42

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes instructing his disciples about what they should do and expect when they go to preach.

Whoever gives...to drink (ULT)

Note this: Suppose people see that you are thirsty and give you a drink...if (UST)

"Anyone who gives"

to one of these little ones (ULT)

of cold water because they know that you are one of my disciples, even...you are not an (UST)

"one of these lowly ones" or "the least important of these." The phrase "one of these" here refers to one of Jesus' disciples.

because he is a disciple (ULT)

important person at all. God (UST)

"because he is my disciple." Here "he" does not refer to the one giving but to the unimportant one.

truly I say to you (ULT)

important person at all. God (UST)

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

he will certainly not lose his reward (ULT)

important person at all. God...will certainly reward people who do that (UST)

Here "he" and "his" refer to the one who is giving.

he will certainly not lose (ULT)

important person at all. God...will certainly reward (UST)

"God will not deny him." This has nothing to do with having a possession taken away. It can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "God will certainly give him"

Translation Words - ULT

- he will...lose
- truly
- a disciple
- because he is
- reward

Translation Words - UST

- will certainly reward
- important person at all. God

ULT

⁴² Whoever gives to one of these little ones a cup of cold water to drink only because he is a disciple, truly I say to you, he will certainly not lose his reward."

UST

⁴² Note this: Suppose people see that you are thirsty and give you a drink of cold water because they know that you are one of my disciples, even if you are not an important person at all. God will certainly reward people who do that."

- important person at all. God
- important person at all. God
- will certainly reward

Matthew 11

Matthew 11 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULT does this with the quoted material in 11:10.

Some scholars believe that Matthew 11:20 begins a new stage in the ministry of Christ because of Israel's rejection of him.

Special concepts in this chapter

Hidden revelation

After Matthew 11:20, Jesus begins to reveal information about himself and about the plans of God the Father, while hiding this information from those who reject him (Matthew 11:25).

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"The kingdom of heaven is near"

No one knows for sure whether the "kingdom of heaven" was present or still coming when John spoke these words. English translations often use the phrase "at hand," but these words can be difficult to translate. Other versions use the phrases "is coming near" and "has come near."

Matthew 11:1

General Information:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story where Matthew tells of how Jesus responded to disciples of John the Baptist. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

It came about that when (ULT) had finished...Then he (UST)

This phrase shifts the story from Jesus' teachings to what happened next. Alternate translation: "Then" or "After"

had finished...instructing (ULT) had finished...instructing (UST)

"had finished teaching" or "had finished commanding."

his twelve disciples (ULT) his twelve disciples about (UST)

This refers to the twelve chosen apostles of Jesus. (See: [Numbers](#))

in their cities (ULT) in other Israelite towns in that area (UST)

Here "their" refers to all the Jews in general.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [instructing](#)
- [twelve disciples](#)
- [twelve disciples](#)
- [to teach](#)
- [preach](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [When Jesus](#)
- [instructing](#)
- [twelve...disciples about](#)
- [disciples about](#)
- [to teach](#)
- [preach](#)

ULT

¹ It came about that when [Jesus](#) had finished [instructing](#) his [twelve disciples](#), he departed from there [to teach](#) and [preach](#) in their cities.

UST

¹ [When Jesus](#) had finished [instructing](#) his [twelve disciples about](#) what they should do, he sent them to various Israelite towns. Then he went [to teach](#) and [preach](#) in other Israelite towns in that area.

Matthew 11:2

Now...John (ULT)

While (UST)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Matthew starts to tell a new part of the story.

Now...John...Now...when...John...heard in the prison about (ULT)

While...John the Baptizer was in prison, he heard what (UST)

“When John, who was in prison, heard about” or “When someone told John, who was in prison, about.” Even though Matthew has not yet told the readers that King Herod put John the Baptist in jail, the original audience would have been familiar with the story and understood the implicit information here. Matthew will give more information later about John the Baptist, so it is probably best not to make it explicit here.

he sent a message by his disciples (ULT)

So he sent some of his disciples to him (UST)

John the Baptist sent his own disciples with a message to Jesus.

Translation Words - ULT

- [deeds](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [Now...John](#)
- [prison](#)
- [he sent a message](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [was doing](#)
- [disciples to him](#)
- [Messiah](#)
- [John the Baptizer was](#)
- [prison](#)
- [he sent some of](#)

ULT

² [Now](#) when [John](#) heard in the [prison](#) about the [deeds](#) of the [Christ](#), [he sent a message](#) by his [disciples](#)

UST

² While [John the Baptizer was](#) in [prison](#), he heard what the [Messiah was doing](#). So [he sent some of](#) his [disciples to him](#)

Matthew 11:3

and said to him (ULT)
to ask him (UST)

The pronoun "him" refers to Jesus.

Are you the one who is coming (ULT)
Are you the Messiah whom the prophets said would come (UST)

"Are you the one whom we are expecting to come." This is another way to refer to the Messiah or Christ.

should we look for another (ULT)
someone else that we should expect to come (UST)

"should we be expecting someone else." The pronoun "we" refers to all Jews, not only John's disciples.

ULT

³ and said to him, "Are you the one who is coming, or should we look for another?"

UST

³ to ask him, "Are you the Messiah whom the prophets said would come, or is it someone else that we should expect to come?"

Matthew 11:4

and report to John (ULT)
report to John (UST)

“tell John”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [to John](#)
- [and report](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus answered John's disciples](#)
- [to John](#)
- [report](#)

ULT

⁴ [Jesus](#) answered and said to them, “Go [and report to John](#) what you see and hear.

UST

⁴ [Jesus answered John's disciples](#), “Go back and [report to John](#) what you hear me telling people and what you see me doing.

Matthew 11:5

lepers are being cleansed (ULT)

I am healing people who have leprosy (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I am healing lepers" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the dead...are being raised back to life (ULT)

dead people to become alive again (UST)

Here to raise up is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people who have died are being caused to live again" or "I am causing those who have died to become alive again" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Idiom](#))

and...the gospel is being preached...to the poor (ULT)

I am telling the poor people...God's good news (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I am preaching good news to the poor" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

and...to the poor (ULT)

I am telling the poor people (UST)

This nominalized adjective can be translated as a noun phrase. Alternate translation: "poor people" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- are being cleansed
- the gospel is being preached
- lepers
- the dead
- are being raised back to life
- are walking

Translation Words - UST

- I am healing
- God's good news
- people who have leprosy
- dead people
- to become alive again
- to walk

ULT

⁵ The blind are receiving sight, the lame [are walking](#), [lepers are being cleansed](#), the deaf are hearing, [the dead are being raised back to life](#), and [the gospel is being preached](#) to the poor.

UST

⁵ I am making blind people to see again and lame people [to walk](#). [I am healing people who have leprosy](#). I am making deaf people to hear again and [dead people to become alive again](#). I am telling the poor people [God's good news](#).

Matthew 11:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Blessed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [that God is pleased with people who do](#)

ULT

⁶ [Blessed](#) is anyone who is not offended by me.”

UST

⁶ Also tell John [that God is pleased with people who do](#) not stop believing in me because what I do is not what they expected the Messiah to do.”

Matthew 11:7

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to talk to the crowds about John the Baptist.

**What did you go out in the desert to see—a reed being shaken by the wind (ULT)
you went out into the wilderness to see John, what was it you expected to see? You did not go there just to look at the tall grass blowing in the wind, did you (UST)**

Jesus uses a question to cause the people to think about what kind of person John the Baptist is. Alternate translation: “Surely you did not go out to the desert to see a reed...wind!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**a reed being shaken by the wind (ULT)
You did not go there just to look at the tall grass blowing in the wind, did you (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus mean the literal plants by the Jordan River or 2) Jesus is using a metaphor to mean a kind of person. Alternate translation: “a man who easily changes his mind and is like a reed blowing back and forth in the wind” (See: [Metaphor](#))

**being shaken by the wind (ULT)
blowing in the wind, did you (UST)**

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “swaying in the wind” or “blowing in the wind” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [John](#)
- [desert](#)
- [a reed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [When John's disciples had](#)
- [wilderness](#)
- [You did not go there just to look at the tall grass](#)

ULT

⁷ As these men went on their way, [Jesus](#) began to say to the crowds about [John](#), “What did you go out in the [desert](#) to see—a [reed](#) being shaken by the wind?”

UST

⁷ [When John's disciples had](#) gone away, [Jesus](#) began to talk to the crowd of people about John. He said to them, “When you went out into the [wilderness](#) to see John, what was it you expected to see? [You did not go there just to look at the tall grass](#) blowing in the wind, did you?”

Matthew 11:8

But what did you go out to see—a man dressed in soft clothing (ULT)

So what kind of person did you expect to see? Surely not a man who was wearing expensive clothes...and not in the wilderness (UST)

Jesus uses a question to cause the people to think about what kind of person John the Baptist is. Alternate translation: And, surely you did not go out to the desert to see a man...clothing!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

dressed in soft clothing (ULT)
was wearing expensive clothes...and not in the wilderness (UST)

"wearing expensive clothing." Rich people wore this kind of clothing.

Really (ULT)

No! You know very well (UST)

This word adds emphasis to what follows. Alternate translation: "Indeed"

kings' houses (ULT)

kings' palaces (UST)

"kings' palaces"

Translation Words - ULT

- [kings](#)
- [houses](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [kings](#)
- [palaces](#)

ULT

⁸ But what did you go out to see—a man dressed in soft clothing? Really, those who wear soft clothing live in [kings' houses](#).

UST

⁸ So what kind of person did you expect to see? Surely not a man who was wearing expensive clothes. No! You know very well that people who wear clothes like that reside in [kings' palaces](#) and not in the wilderness.

Matthew 11:9

General Information:

In verse 10, Jesus quotes the prophet Malachi to show that the life and ministry of John the Baptist fulfilled prophecy.

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to talk to the crowds about John the Baptist.

But what did you go out to see—a prophet (ULT)
So really, what kind of person did you expect to see? A prophet (UST)

Jesus uses a question to make the people think about what kind of man John the Baptist is. Alternate translation: "But surely you went out to the desert to see a prophet!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Yes, I say to you (ULT)
Oh, yes...let me tell you this (UST)

"I say to you yes,"

much more than a prophet (ULT)
John is not just any ordinary prophet (UST)

This can be translated as a complete sentence. Alternate translation: "he is not an ordinary prophet" or "he is more important than a normal prophet" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [a prophet](#)
- [a prophet](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [A prophet](#)
- [prophet](#)

ULT

⁹ But what did you go out to see—a [prophet](#)? Yes, I say to you, and much more than [a prophet](#).

UST

⁹ So really, what kind of person did you expect to see? [A prophet](#)? Oh, yes! But let me tell you this: John is not just any ordinary [prophet](#).

Matthew 11:10

This is he of whom it was written (ULT)
He is the one to whom God was referring when someone wrote in the scriptures and said (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "This is what the prophet Malachi wrote long ago about John the Baptist" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

I am sending my messenger (ULT)
I am sending my messenger (UST)

The pronouns "I" and "my" refer to God. Malachi is quoting what God said.

before your face (ULT)
to go ahead of you (UST)

Here "your" is singular, because God was speaking to the Messiah in the quotation. Also, "face" refers to the whole person. Alternate translation: "in front of you" or "to go ahead of you" (See: [Forms of You](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

will prepare your way before you (ULT)
to prepare...the people for your coming (UST)

This is a metaphor that means the messenger will prepare the people to receive the Messiah's message. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- messenger
- am sending
- face
- it was written

Translation Words - UST

- messenger
- am sending
- to go ahead of
- when someone wrote in the scriptures and said

ULT

¹⁰ This is he of whom [it was written](#), 'See, I [am sending](#) my [messenger](#) before your [face](#), who will prepare your way before you.'

UST

¹⁰ He is the one to whom God was referring [when someone wrote in the scriptures and said](#), 'Notice this! I [am sending](#) my [messenger to go ahead of](#) you to prepare the people for your coming.'

Matthew 11:11

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to talk to the crowds about John the Baptist.

Truly I say to you (ULT)

Note this (UST)

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

among those born of women (ULT)

people who have ever lived (UST)

Even though Adam was not born of a women, this is a way of referring to all humans. Alternate translation: "out of all people who have ever lived" (See: [Idiom](#))

one who is greater than John the Baptist (ULT)

greater than John the Baptizer (UST)

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "John the Baptist is the greatest" or "John the Baptist is the most important"

the...least important person in the kingdom of heaven (ULT)

Of all the...God does...not important in the kingdom he rules from heaven to (UST)

Here "kingdom of heaven" refers to God's rule as king. The phrase "kingdom of heaven" is used only in Matthew. If possible, try to keep "heaven" in your translation. Alternate translation: "the least important person under the rule of our God in heaven" (See: [Metonymy](#))

one who is greater...than he is (ULT)

greater than...be...than John (UST)

"is more important than John is"

Translation Words - ULT

- of heaven
- Truly
- kingdom of heaven
- than John the Baptist
- there has...arisen
- kingdom

Translation Words - UST

- from heaven to
- Note this
- kingdom he rules from heaven to
- John the Baptizer
- people who have ever lived

ULT

¹¹ Truly I say to you, among those born of women [there has](#) not [arisen](#) one who is greater [than John the Baptist](#). Yet the least important person in the [kingdom of heaven](#) is greater than he is.

UST

¹¹ [Note this](#): Of all the [people who have ever lived](#), God does not consider any of them to be greater than [John the Baptizer](#). At the same time, God considers those that are not important in the [kingdom he rules from heaven to](#) be greater than John.

- [kingdom he rules](#)

Matthew 11:12

From the days of John the Baptist (ULT)

From the time that John the Baptizer preached (UST)

"From the time John began preaching his message." The word "days" probably refers here to a period of months or even years.

the...the kingdom...of heaven...suffers violence, and men of violence take it by force (ULT)

the...some people have been trying to make God rule...heaven in their own way, and they have been using force for this purpose (UST)

There are various possible interpretations of this verse. The UST assumes that it means that some people want to use God's kingdom for their own selfish purposes, and that they are willing to use force against other people to accomplish this. Other versions assume a positive interpretation, that the call to enter the kingdom of God has become so urgent, that people must act in an extreme manner in order to answer that call and to resist the temptation to sin further. A third interpretation is that violent people are harming God's people and trying to stop God from ruling.

ULT

¹² From the [days of John the Baptist](#) until now, the [kingdom of heaven](#) suffers violence, and men of violence [take](#) it [by force](#).

UST

¹² From the [time that John the Baptizer preached](#) until now, [some people have been trying to make God rule from heaven](#) in their own way, and [they have been using force for this purpose](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [of heaven](#)
- [kingdom of heaven](#)
- [of John the Baptist](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [days](#)
- [take...by force](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#)
- [some people have been trying to make God rule...from heaven](#)
- [John the Baptizer preached](#)
- [some people have been trying to make God rule](#)
- [time that](#)
- [they have been using force for this purpose](#)

Matthew 11:13

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to talk to the crowds about John the Baptist.

all...the prophets and the law have been prophesying until John (ULT)

Everything...about John is just what you can read in what the prophets have written and what the law has been saying until the time of John the Baptizer (UST)

Here “prophets and the law” refer to the things that the prophets and Moses wrote in scripture. Alternate translation: “for these are the things that the prophets and Moses have prophesied through the scriptures until the time of John the Baptist” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [prophets](#)
- [have been prophesying](#)
- [law](#)
- [John](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [prophets](#)
- [about John is just what you can read in what...have written](#)
- [the law has been saying](#)
- [John the Baptizer](#)

ULT

¹³ For all the [prophets](#) and the [law have been prophesying](#) until [John](#);

UST

¹³ Everything that I am saying [about John is just what you can read in what the prophets have written](#) and what [the law has been saying](#) until the time of [John the Baptizer](#).

Matthew 11:14

if you are willing (ULT)

if you are willing (UST)

Here “you” is plural and refers to the crowd. (See: [Forms of You](#))

he is Elijah who was going to come (ULT)

John is in fact the second Elijah, the prophet who was to come in the future (UST)

The word “he” refers to John the Baptist. This does not mean John the Baptist is literally Elijah. Jesus means John the Baptist fulfills the prophecy about “Elijah, who is to come” or the next Elijah. Alternate translation: “when the prophet Malachi said that Elijah would return, he was speaking about John the Baptist”

ULT

¹⁴ and if you are willing [to accept it](#), he is [Elijah](#) who was going to come.

UST

¹⁴ Not only that, but if you are willing [to try to understand this, I will tell you that](#) John is in fact the second [Elijah, the prophet](#) who was to come in the future.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Elijah](#)
- [to accept it](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Elijah, the prophet](#)
- [to try to understand this, I will tell you that](#)

Matthew 11:15

He who has ears to hear, let him hear (ULT)
If you want to understand this, you must think carefully about what I have just said (UST)

Jesus is emphasizing that what he has just said is important and may take some effort to understand and put into practice. The phrase “ears to hear” here is a metonym for the willingness to understand and obey. Alternate translation: “Let the one who is willing to listen, listen” or “The one who is willing to understand, let him understand and obey” (See: [Metonymy](#))

He who has...let him hear (ULT)
If you want to understand this...you must think carefully about what I have just said (UST)

Since Jesus is speaking directly to his audience, you may prefer to use the second person here. Alternate translation: “If you are willing to listen, listen” or “If you are willing to understand, then understand and obey” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

ULT

¹⁵ He who has ears to hear, let him hear.

UST

¹⁵ If you want to understand this, you must think carefully about what I have just said.

Matthew 11:16

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to talk to the crowds about John the Baptist.

To what should I compare this generation (ULT)
But you and the other people who are alive now, you are like (UST)

Jesus uses a question to introduce a comparison between the people of that day and what children might say in the marketplace.

Alternate translation: "This is what this generation is like" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

this generation (ULT)
you and the other people who are alive now (UST)

"the people living now" or "these people" or "you people of this generation"

the marketplace (ULT)
the marketplace. Some of them (UST)

a large, open-air area where people buy and sell items

Translation Words - ULT

- [who call out](#)
- [children](#)
- [should I compare](#)
- [like](#)
- [generation](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [call to](#)
- [children who are](#)
- [you are like](#)
- [alive now](#)
- [you and the other people who are](#)

ULT

16 To what [should I compare](#) this [generation](#)? It is [like children](#) sitting in the marketplace, [who call out](#) to one another

UST

16 But [you and the other people who are alive now](#), [you are like children who are](#) playing games in the marketplace. Some of them [call to](#) their friends,

Matthew 11:17

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues the parable that begins with the words “It is like” in verse 16.

and say...and you did not weep (ULT)
We played happy music on the flute...but you refused to cry (UST)

Jesus uses a parable to describe the people who were alive at that time. He compares them to a group of children who are trying to get the other children to play with them. However, no matter way they do, the other children will not join them. Jesus means that it does not matter if God sends someone like John the Baptist, who lives in the desert and fasts, or someone like Jesus, who celebrates with sinners and does not fast. The people, most specifically the Pharisees and religious leaders, still remain stubborn and refuse to accept God’s truth. (See: [Parables](#) and [Simile](#))

We played a flute for you (ULT)
We played happy music on the flute...for you (UST)

“We” refers to the children sitting in the marketplace. Here “you” is plural and refers to the other group of children. (See: [Forms of You](#))

and you did not dance (ULT)
but you refused to dance (UST)

“but you did not dance to the happy music”

We mourned (ULT)
Then we sang sad funeral songs for you (UST)

This means they sang sad songs like women did at funerals. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

and...did not...you...weep (ULT)
but you refused...you...to cry (UST)

“but you did not cry with us”

Translation Words - ULT

- [We played a flute](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [We played happy music on the flute](#)

ULT

17 and say, '[We played a flute](#) for you, and you did not dance. We mourned, and you did not weep.'

UST

17 '[We played happy music on the flute](#) for you, but you refused to dance! Then we sang sad funeral songs for you, but you refused to cry!'

Matthew 11:18

Connecting Statement:

Jesus concludes talking to the crowds about John the Baptist.

not eating or drinking (ULT)
he did not eat good food and did not drink wine, like most people do (UST)

Here “bread” refers to food. It does not mean that John never ate food. It means he fasted often, and when he ate, he did not eat good, expensive food. Alternate translation: “frequently fasting and not drinking alcohol” or “not eating fancy food and not drinking wine” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

they say, ‘He has a demon (ULT)
said, ‘A demon is controlling him (UST)

This can be translated as an indirect quote. Alternate translation: “they say that he has a demon” or “they accuse him of having a demon” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

they say (ULT)
said (UST)

All occurrences of “they” refer to the people of that generation, and most specifically to the Pharisees and religious leaders.

Translation Words - ULT

- [a demon](#)
- [John](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [A demon](#)
- [both John and me! When John](#)

ULT

18 For [John](#) came not eating or drinking, and they say, ‘He has [a demon](#).’

UST

18 I say this because you are dissatisfied with [both John and me! When John](#) came and preached to you, he did not eat good food and did not drink wine, like most people do. But you rejected him and said, ‘[A demon](#) is controlling him!’

Matthew 11:19

The Son of Man came (ULT)

I, the Son of Man, was not like John (UST)

Jesus is referring to himself. Alternate translation: “I, the Son of Man, came” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

came...eating and drinking (ULT)

I, the Son...I eat the same food and drink wine as other people do (UST)

This is the opposite of John’s behavior. This means more than just consuming the normal amount of food and drink. It means Jesus celebrated and enjoyed good food and drink like other people did.

they say, ‘Look, he is a gluttonous man and a drunkard...sinners (ULT)

say, ‘Look! This man eats too much food and drinks too much wine, and...sinners (UST)

This can be translated as an indirect quote. Alternate translation: “they say that he is a gluttonous man and a drunkard...sinners.” or “they accuse him of eating and drinking too much and of being...sinners.” If you translated “The Son of Man” as “I, the Son of man,” you can state this as an indirect statement and use the first person. Alternate translation: “they say that I am a gluttonous man and a drunkard...sinners.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#) and [First, Second or Third Person](#))

he is a gluttonous man (ULT)

This man eats too much food (UST)

“he is a greedy eater” or “he continually eats too much food”

a drunkard (ULT)

drinks too much wine, and (UST)

“a drunk” or “he continually drinks too much alcohol”

But wisdom is justified by her children (ULT)

But anyone who is truly wise will show it by doing good deeds (UST)

This is a proverb that Jesus applies to this situation, because the people who rejected both him and John were not being wise. Jesus and John the Baptist are the wise ones, and the results of their deeds prove it. (See: [Proverbs](#))

wisdom is justified by her children (ULT)

anyone who is truly wise will show it by doing good deeds (UST)

Here “wisdom” is described as a woman who is proven to be right by what she does. Jesus means that the results of a wise person’s actions prove that he is truly wise. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the results of a wise person’s deeds prove that he is wise” (See: [Personification](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

¹⁹ The [Son of Man](#) came eating and drinking and they say, ‘Look, he is a gluttonous man and [a drunkard](#), a friend [of tax collectors](#) and [sinners](#)!’ But [wisdom is justified](#) by her [children](#).”

UST

¹⁹ [I, the Son of Man, was not like John](#). I eat the same food and drink wine as other people do. But you also reject me and say, ‘Look! This man eats too much food and [drinks too much wine, and](#) he is friends with [tax collectors](#) and other [sinners](#)!’ But [anyone who is truly wise will show](#) it by [doing good deeds](#).”

Translation Words - ULT

- sinners
- wisdom
- Son of Man
- children
- is justified
- of tax collectors
- a drunkard

Translation Words - UST

- sinners
- anyone who is truly wise
- I, the Son...of Man, was not like John
- doing good deeds
- will show
- tax collectors
- drinks too much wine, and

Matthew 11:20

General Information:

Jesus begins to rebuke the people of the cities where he previously did miracles.

to rebuke the cities (ULT)
the towns where Jesus...to rebuke them by saying to them (UST)

Here "the cities" refers to the people who live there. Alternate translation: "rebuke the people of the cities" (See: [Metonymy](#))

cities (ULT)
towns where Jesus (UST)

"towns"

in which most of his mighty deeds were done (ULT)
In...had performed most of his miracles, the people there still (UST)

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "in which he did most of his mighty deeds" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

most of his mighty deeds (ULT)
most of his miracles, the people there still (UST)

"mighty works" or "works of power" or "miracles"

Translation Words - ULT

- [most of...mighty deeds](#)
- [they had...repented](#)
- [to rebuke](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [miracles, the people there still](#)
- [to turn to God](#)
- [to rebuke them by saying to them](#)

ULT

²⁰ Then Jesus began [to rebuke](#) the cities in which [most of](#) his [mighty deeds](#) were done, because [they had](#) not [repented](#).

UST

²⁰ In the towns where Jesus had performed most of his [miracles, the people there still](#) refused [to turn to God](#). So he began [to rebuke them by saying to them](#),

Matthew 11:21

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida (ULT)
You people who live in the city of Chorazin and you in the city of Bethsaida, how terribly you will suffer (UST)

Jesus speaks as if the people of the cities of Chorazin and Bethsaida were there listening to him, but they were not. (See: [Apostrophe](#))

Woe to you (ULT)
how terribly you (UST)

"How terrible it will be for you." Here "you" is singular and refers to the city. If it is more natural to refer to the people instead of a city, you could translate with a plural "you." (See: [Forms of You](#))

Chorazin...Bethsaida...Tyre...Sidon (ULT)
You people who live in the city of Chorazin...and...in the city of Bethsaida...Tyre...Sidon (UST)

The names of these cities are used as metonyms for the people living in these cities. (See: [Metonymy](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))

If...the mighty deeds...in...in sackcloth and ashes (ULT)
If I...miracles in your cities, but...you did not stop sinning...would have put on rough clothing and sat in the cold ashes of their fires (UST)

Jesus is describing a hypothetical situation that could have happened in the past, but it did not. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

If...the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you (ULT)
I did great miracles in your cities, but you did not stop sinning...If I...had done these things in the cities of Tyre and Sidon (UST)

This can be translated with active forms. Alternate translation: "If I had done the mighty deeds among the people of Tyre and Sidon that I have done among you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

which were done in you (ULT)
you did not stop sinning...had done these things (UST)

Here the "you" is plural and refers to Chorazin and Bethsaida. If it is more natural for your language, you could use a dual "you" to refer to the two cities, or a plural "you" to refer to the people of the cities. (See: [Forms of You](#))

long ago...they would have repented (ULT)
of long ago, those wicked people would certainly have stopped sinning; they...so sorry they would have been (UST)

The pronoun "they" refers to the people of Tyre and Sidon.

ULT

²¹ "Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes.

UST

²¹ "You people who live in the city of Chorazin and you in the city of Bethsaida, how terribly you will suffer! I did great miracles in your cities, but you did not stop sinning. If I had done these things in the cities of Tyre and Sidon of long ago, those wicked people would certainly have stopped sinning; they would have put on rough clothing and sat in the cold ashes of their fires, so sorry they would have been.

they would have repented (ULT)
so sorry they would have been (UST)

“would have shown they were sorry for their sins”

Translation Words - ULT

- mighty deeds
- Woe
- Woe (2)
- they would have repented
- Sidon
- Tyre
- sackcloth
- ashes

Translation Words - UST

- miracles in your cities, but
- how terribly
- will suffer (2)
- so sorry they would have been
- Sidon
- Tyre
- would have put on rough clothing
- sat in the cold ashes of their fires

Matthew 11:22

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (ULT)
who lived in the cities of Tyre and Sidon, but he will punish you even more severely on the final day when he judges all people (UST)

Here "Tyre and Sidon" refers to the people who live there. Alternate translation: "God will show more mercy to the people of Tyre and Sidon in the day of judgment than to you" or "God will punish you more severely at the day of judgment than the people of Tyre and Sidon" (See: [Metonymy](#))

than for you (ULT)

but he will punish you even more severely on the final day when he judges all people (UST)

Here the "you" is plural and refers to Chorazin and Bethsaida. If it is more natural for your language, you could use a dual "you" to refer to the two cities, or a plural "you" to refer to the people of the cities. The implied information can be made explicit. AT "than for you, because you did not repent and believe in me, even though you saw me do miracles" (See: [Forms of You](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

²² But I say to you, it will be more tolerable [for Tyre](#) and [Sidon](#) at [the day of judgment](#) than for you.

UST

²² Let me tell you this: God will punish the wicked people [who lived in the cities of Tyre](#) and [Sidon](#), [but he will punish you even more severely on the final day when he judges all people](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [of judgment](#)
- [Sidon](#)
- [for Tyre](#)
- [the day](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [but he will punish you even more severely on the final day when he judges all people](#)
- [Sidon](#)
- [who lived in the cities of Tyre](#)
- [but he will punish you even more severely on the final day when he judges all people](#)

Matthew 11:23

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to rebuke the people of the cities where he previously did miracles.

You...Capernaum (ULT) you people who live in the city of Capernaum (UST)

Jesus now speaks to the people in the city of Capernaum as if they were listening to him, but they were not. The pronoun “you” is singular and refers to Capernaum throughout these two verses. (See: [Apostrophe](#))

You (ULT) you people who live (UST)

All occurrences of “you” are singular. If it is more natural to refer to the people of the city, you could translate with a plural “you.” (See: [Forms of You](#))

Capernaum...Sodom (ULT) in the city of Capernaum...Sodom of long ago, those wicked people would certainly have stopped sinning (UST)

The names of these cities refer to the people living in Capernaum and in Sodom. (See: [Metonymy](#))

you will not be exalted to heaven, will you (ULT) I also have something to say to...Do you think that others will praise you so much that you will go right up to heaven? That will not happen (UST)

“do you think you will be raised up to heaven?” Jesus uses a rhetorical question to rebuke the people of Capernaum for their pride. It can be stated in active form: Alternate translation: “you cannot raise yourself up to heaven!” or “the praise of other people will not raise you up to heaven!” or “God will not bring you up to heaven like you think he will!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

You will be brought down to Hades (ULT) On the contrary, you will go down to where God punishes people after they die (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God will send you down to Hades” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

For if in Sodom...it would have remained until today (ULT) If...in Sodom of long ago, those wicked people would certainly have stopped sinning...their city would have been here even today (UST)

Jesus is describing a hypothetical situation that could have happened in the past, but it did not. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

ULT

²³ You, [Capernaum](#), you will not [be exalted](#) to [heaven](#), will you? You will be brought down to [Hades](#). For if in [Sodom](#) there had been done the [mighty deeds](#) that were done in you, it would have remained until [today](#).

UST

²³ I also have something to say to you people who live [in the city of Capernaum](#). [Do you think that others will praise you so much that you will go right up to heaven?](#) That will not happen! On the contrary, you will go down to [where God punishes people after they die](#)! If [I had done these same miracles](#) in [Sodom of long ago](#), [those wicked people would certainly have stopped sinning](#), and their city would have been here [even today](#). But you have not stopped sinning.

if in Sodom there had been done the mighty deeds that were done in you (ULT)
If...I had done these same miracles in Sodom of long ago, those wicked people would certainly have stopped sinning...But you have not stopped sinning (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "if I had done the mighty deeds among the people of Sodom that I have done among you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

mighty deeds (ULT)
I had done these same miracles (UST)

"mighty works" or "works of power" or "miracles"

it would have remained (ULT)
their city would have been here (UST)

The pronoun "it" refers to the city of Sodom.

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [mighty deeds](#)
- [Hades](#)
- [you will...be exalted](#)
- [Capernaum](#)
- [Sodom](#)
- [today](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#)
- [I had done these same miracles](#)
- [where God punishes people after they die](#)
- [Do you think that others will praise you so much that you will go right up to](#)
- [in the city of Capernaum](#)
- [Sodom of long ago, those wicked people would certainly have stopped sinning](#)
- [even today](#)

Matthew 11:24

I say to you (ULT)

Let me tell you this (UST)

This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

it shall be easier for the land of Sodom in the day of judgment than for you (ULT)
in Sodom, but he will punish you even more severely on the final day when he judges all people (UST)

Here "land of Sodom" refer to the people who lived there. Alternate translation: "God will show more mercy to the people of Sodom in the day of judgment than to you" or "God will punish you more severely in the day of judgment than the people of Sodom" (See: [Metonymy](#))

than for you (ULT)

but he will punish you even more severely on the final day...when he judges all people (UST)

The implicit information can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "than for you, because you did not repent and believe in me, even though you saw me do miracles" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of judgment
- of Sodom
- the day

Translation Words - UST

- when he judges all people
- Sodom
- when he judges all people

ULT

²⁴ But I say to you that it shall be easier for the land [of Sodom](#) in [the day of judgment](#) than for you."

UST

²⁴ Let me tell you this: God will punish the wicked people who lived in [Sodom](#), but he will punish you even more severely on the final day [when he judges all people](#)."

Matthew 11:25

General Information:

In verses 25 and 26, Jesus prays to his heavenly Father while still in the presence of the crowd. In verse 27, he begins to address the people again.

Father (ULT)

Father (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Lord of heaven and earth (ULT)

rule over everything in heaven and on the earth (UST)

"Lord who rules over heaven and earth." The phrase "heaven and earth" is a merism that refers to all people and things in the universe. Alternate translation: "Lord who rules over the whole universe" (See: [Merism](#))

you concealed these things...and...revealed them (ULT)

you have prevented...knowing these things...and...you have revealed them (UST)

It is not clear what is meant by "these things." If your language needs to specify what is meant, an alternative translation might be best. Alternate translation: "you concealed these truths...and revealed them"

you concealed these things from (ULT)

you have prevented...from knowing these things (UST)

"you hid these things from" or "you have not made these things known to." This verb is the opposite of "revealed."

from the wise and understanding (ULT)

people who think that they are wise and well educated from (UST)

These nominal adjectives can be translated as adjectives. Alternate translation: "from people who are wise and understanding" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

the wise and understanding (ULT)

people who think that they are wise and well educated (UST)

Jesus is using irony. He does not think these people are really wise. Alternate translation: "people who think they are wise and understanding" (See: [Irony](#))

revealed them (ULT)

you have revealed them (UST)

"made them known." The pronoun "them" refers to "these things" earlier in this verse.

ULT

²⁵ At that [time Jesus](#) answered and said, "[I praise](#) you, [Father](#), [Lord of heaven](#) and [earth](#), because you concealed these things from [the wise](#) and [understanding](#), and [revealed](#) them [to little children](#)."

UST

²⁵ At that [time Jesus prayed](#), "[Father](#), you [rule over everything](#) in [heaven](#) and on the [earth](#). I thank you that you have prevented [people who think that they are wise](#) and [well educated](#) from knowing these things. Instead, [you have revealed](#) them [to people who accept your truth just as little children believe what an adult tells them](#)."

to little children (ULT)**to people who accept your truth just as little children believe what an adult tells them (UST)**

Jesus compares ignorant people to little children. Jesus is emphasizing that many of those who believe him either are not well educated or do not think of themselves as wise. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- revealed
- of heaven
- Jesus
- Lord
- the wise
- Father
- to little children
- time
- I praise
- earth
- understanding

Translation Words - UST

- you have revealed
- heaven
- Jesus
- rule over everything
- people who think that they are wise
- Father
- to people who accept your truth just as little children believe what an adult tells them
- time
- prayed
- earth
- well educated

Matthew 11:26

**for so it was well-pleasing in your sight (ULT)
you have done that because it seemed good to you to
do so (UST)**

The phrase "in your sight" is a metonym that stands for how a person considers something. Alternate translation: "for you considered it good to do this" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Father](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Father](#)

ULT

²⁶ Yes, [Father](#), for so it was well-pleasing in your sight.

UST

²⁶ Yes, [Father](#), you have done that because it seemed good to you to do so."

Matthew 11:27

All things have been entrusted to me from my Father (ULT)

said to the people, "God, my Father, has revealed to me all the things that I need to know in order to do my work...my (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "My Father has entrusted all things to me" or "My Father has given everything over to me" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

All things (ULT)

all the things that I need to know in order to do my work (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) God the Father has revealed everything about himself and his kingdom to Jesus or 2) God has given all authority to Jesus.

my Father (ULT)

said to the people...God, my...Father...my (UST)

This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

no one knows the Son except the Father (ULT)

Only...Father knows who...really am. Furthermore...I (UST)

"only the Father knows the Son"

no one knows (ULT)

Only...knows...I (UST)

The word "knows" here means more than just being acquainted with someone. It means knowing someone intimately because of having a special relationship with him.

the Son (ULT)

Only...knows...I (UST)

Jesus was referring to himself in the third person. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

the Son (ULT)

Only...knows...I (UST)

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

knows the...except the...and no one...Father...Son (ULT)

Only...knows...who...I...really am. Furthermore, only...I...those people (UST)

"only the Son knows the Father"

ULT

²⁷ All things have been entrusted to me from my [Father](#); and no one [knows](#) the [Son](#) except the [Father](#) and no one [knows](#) the [Father](#) except the [Son](#), and anyone to whom the [Son](#) chooses [to reveal him](#).

UST

²⁷ Then Jesus said to the people, "God, my [Father](#), has revealed to me all the things that I need to know in order to do my work. [Only](#) my [Father knows](#) who [I](#) really am. Furthermore, [only I](#) and [those people](#) to whom [I](#) wish [to reveal him really know him](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- to reveal him
- Son
- Son
- Son (2)
- Father
- Father
- Father
- knows
- knows (2)

Translation Words - UST

- to reveal him really know him
- Only...knows...I
- I
- I (2)
- Father
- Father
- only...those people
- Only...knows...I
- only...those people (2)

Matthew 11:28

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes speaking to the crowd.

all you (ULT)

all (UST)

All occurrences of “you” are plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

who labor and are heavy burdened (ULT)

you people who are very weary of trying to obey all the laws your leaders say you should (UST)

Jesus speaks of people being discouraged in their attempts to obey all the laws as if those laws were heavy burdens and the people were laboring to carry them. Alternate translation: “who are discouraged from trying so hard” or “Who are discouraged from trying so hard to obey the laws perfectly” (See: [Metaphor](#))

and I will give you rest (ULT)

I will let you rest from all that (UST)

“I will allow you to rest from your labor and burden”

Translation Words - ULT

- [are heavy burdened](#)
- [who labor](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [you people...very weary of trying to obey all the laws your leaders say you should](#)
- [you people...very weary of trying to obey all the laws your leaders say you should](#)

ULT

²⁸ Come to me, all you [who labor](#) and [are heavy burdened](#), and I will give you rest.

UST

²⁸ Come to me, all [you people](#) who are [very weary of trying to obey all the laws your leaders say you should](#). I will let you rest from all that.

Matthew 11:29

Take my yoke on you (ULT)

Submit to me, like an ox to its yoke (UST)

Jesus continues the metaphor. Jesus is inviting the people to become his disciples and follow him. (See: [Metaphor](#))

I am meek and lowly in heart (ULT)

I am...gentle...and humble, and...will truly rest (UST)

Here “meek” and “lowly in heart” mean basically the same thing. Jesus combines them to emphasize that he will be much kinder than the religious leaders. Alternate translation: “I am gentle and humble” or “I am very gentle” (See: [Doublet](#))

lowly in heart (ULT)

humble, and...will truly rest (UST)

Here “heart” is a metonym for a person’s inner being. The phrase “lowly in heart” is an idiom that means “humble.” Alternate translation: “humble” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

you will find rest for your souls (ULT)

and...you...will truly rest (UST)

Here “soul” refers to the entire person. Alternate translation: “you will find rest for yourselves” or “you will be able to rest” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [in heart](#)
- [lowly](#)
- [for...souls](#)
- [yoke](#)
- [meek](#)
- [rest](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and...will truly rest](#)
- [humble](#)
- [and...will truly rest](#)
- [yoke](#)
- [gentle](#)
- [and...will truly rest](#)

ULT

²⁹ Take my [yoke](#) on you and learn from me, for I am [meek](#) and [lowly in heart](#), and you will find [rest](#) for your [souls](#).

UST

²⁹ Submit to me, like an ox to its [yoke](#), and learn what I have to teach you. I am [gentle](#) and [humble](#), and you [will truly rest](#).

Matthew 11:30

For my yoke is easy and my burden is light (ULT)
For the load I will give you is light. I will not place a heavy burden on you (UST)

Both of these phrases mean the same thing. Jesus is emphasizing that it is easier to obey him than it is the Jewish law. Alternate translation: "For what I place on you, you will be able to carry because it is light" (See: [Parallelism](#))

my...burden is light (ULT)
I will give you...I will not...place a heavy...burden on you (UST)

The word "light" here is the opposite of heavy, not the opposite of dark.

Translation Words - ULT

- [burden](#)
- [For...yoke](#)
- [is easy](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [I will not...burden on you](#)
- [load](#)
- [is light](#)

ULT

³⁰ For my [yoke is easy](#) and my [burden](#) is light."

UST

³⁰ For the [load](#) I will give you [is light](#). [I will not](#) place a heavy [burden on you](#)."

Matthew 12

Matthew 12 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 12:18-21, which are words from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

The Sabbath

This chapter has much to say about how God's people are to obey the Sabbath. Jesus said that the rules that the Pharisees made up did not help people obey the Sabbath the way God wanted them to. (See: [Sabbath](#))

"Blasphemy against the Spirit"

No one knows for sure what actions people perform or what words they say when they commit this sin. However, they probably insult the Holy Spirit and his work. Part of the Holy Spirit's work is to make people understand that they are sinners and that they need to have God forgive them. Therefore, anyone who does not try to stop sinning is probably committing blasphemy against the Spirit. (See: [blasphemy](#), [blaspheme](#), [blasphemous](#) and [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [Spirit](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Brothers and sisters

Most people call those who have the same parents "brother" and "sister" and think of them as the most important people in their lives. Many people also call those with the same grandparents "brother" and "sister." In this chapter Jesus says that the most important people to him are those who obey his Father in heaven. (See: [brother](#))

Matthew 12:1

General Information:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story where Matthew tells of growing opposition to Jesus' ministry. Here, the Pharisees criticize his disciples for picking grain on the Sabbath.

At that time (ULT)

at that time (UST)

This marks a new part of the story. Alternate translation: "A little later"

the grainfields (ULT)

some grain fields (UST)

a place to plant grain. If wheat is unknown and "grain" is too general, then you can use "fields of the plant they made bread from." (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

and...to pluck heads of grain...eat them (ULT)

they began to pick some of the heads of grain...eat them, something that (UST)

Picking grain in others' fields and eating it was not considered stealing. The question was whether one could do this otherwise lawful activity on the Sabbath.

and...to pluck heads of grain...eat them (ULT)

they began to pick some of the heads of grain...eat them, something that (UST)

"to pick some of the wheat and eat it" or "to pick some of the grain and eat it"

heads of grain (ULT)

heads of grain (UST)

This is the topmost part of the wheat plant. It holds the mature grain or seeds of the plant.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [Sabbath day](#)
- [time](#)
- [heads of grain](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus and the disciples](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [On a Sabbath](#)
- [time](#)
- [heads of grain](#)

ULT

¹ At that [time](#) [Jesus](#) went on the [Sabbath day](#) through the grainfields. His [disciples](#) were hungry and began to pluck [heads of grain](#) and eat them.

UST

¹ [On a Sabbath](#) at that [time](#), [Jesus and the disciples](#) were walking past some grain fields. Because his [disciples](#) were hungry, they began to pick some of the [heads of grain](#) and eat them, something that the law of Moses allowed.

Matthew 12:2

do what is not lawful to do on the Sabbath (ULT)
are doing work on our day of rest. The law does not allow that (UST)

Picking grain in others' fields and eating it was not considered stealing. The question was whether one could do this otherwise lawful activity on the Sabbath.

the...Pharisees (ULT)
Some...Pharisees (UST)

This does not mean all of the Pharisees. Alternate translation: "some Pharisees"

the...See, your...disciples (ULT)
Some...Look! Your...disciples (UST)

"Look, your disciples." The Pharisees use this word to draw attention to what the disciples are doing.

Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [the Sabbath](#)
- [lawful](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [disciples](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [day of rest](#)
- [law does...allow that](#)

ULT

² But when the [Pharisees](#) saw that, they said to Jesus, "See, your [disciples](#) do what is not [lawful](#) to do on [the Sabbath](#)."

UST

² Some [Pharisees](#) saw them doing that, so they said to Jesus, "Look! Your [disciples](#) are doing work on our [day of rest](#). The [law does](#) not [allow that](#)!"

Matthew 12:3

Connecting Statement:

Jesus responds to the Pharisees' criticism.

to them (ULT)

It (UST)

"to the Pharisees"

Have you never read...with him (ULT)

written...with him (UST)

Jesus uses a question to respond to the criticism of the Pharisees.

Jesus is challenging them to think about the meaning of the

scriptures they have read. Alternate translation: "I know you have read about...with him" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [King David](#)

ULT

³ But Jesus said to them, "Have you never read what [David](#) did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?

UST

³ But Jesus answered, "It is written in the scriptures what our ancestor [King David](#) did when he and the men with him were hungry.

Matthew 12:4

the house of God (ULT)

the sacred tent where they worshiped...God...of Moses (UST)

During the time of David there was no temple yet. Alternate translation: "the tabernacle" or "the place for worshiping God"

the bread of the presence (ULT)

the bread...had been on display before God. But according to the law (UST)

This is sacred bread that priests placed before God in the tabernacle. Alternate translation: "bread that the priest placed before God" or "the sacred bread" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

for those who were with him (ULT)

the...who were...with him (UST)

"the men who were with David"

for those who were...but only...priests (ULT)

only priests...but David and...the...who were (UST)

"but, according to the law, only the priest could eat it"

Translation Words - ULT

- of God
- house of God
- priests
- bread
- lawful
- house

Translation Words - UST

- God
- the sacred tent where they worshiped...God...of Moses
- only priests
- bread
- were permitted to eat that bread
- the sacred tent where they worshiped

ULT

⁴ He went into the [house of God](#) and ate the [bread](#) of the presence, which was not [lawful](#) for him to eat, nor for those who were with him, but only for the [priests](#).

UST

⁴ King David entered [the sacred tent where they worshiped God](#) and ate the [bread](#) that had been on display before God. But according to the law [of Moses](#), [only priests were permitted to eat that bread](#), but David and the men who were with him ate it.

Matthew 12:5

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to respond to the Pharisees.

have you not read in the law that...are guiltless (ULT)
surely you have read what Moses wrote, when he said
that...are not guilty (UST)

Jesus uses a question to respond to the criticism of the Pharisees. Jesus is challenging them to think about the meaning of what they have read in the scriptures. Alternate translation: "Surely you have read in the law of Moses that...but are guiltless." or "You should know that the law teaches that...but are guiltless." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

profane the Sabbath (ULT)
are not obeying the Jewish day of rest laws, they (UST)

"do on the Sabbath what they would do on any other day"

are guiltless (ULT)
are not guilty (UST)

"God will not punish them" or "God does not consider them guilty"

Translation Words - ULT

- [law](#)
- [guiltless](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [temple](#)
- [priests](#)
- [profane](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [what Moses wrote, when he said](#)
- [not guilty](#)
- [Sabbath day](#)
- [Jewish day of rest laws, they](#)
- [temple](#)
- [priests, by working](#)
- [are not obeying](#)

ULT

⁵ Or have you not read in the [law](#) that on the [Sabbath](#) the [priests](#) in the [temple](#) [profane](#) the [Sabbath](#) but are [guiltless](#)?

UST

⁵ Also, surely you have read [what Moses wrote, when he said](#) that even though the [priests, by working](#) in the [temple](#) on our [Sabbath day, are not obeying](#) the [Jewish day of rest laws, they](#) are [not guilty](#).

Matthew 12:6

I say...to you (ULT)

Let me tell you what this means...Let me tell you what this means (UST)

This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

one greater than the temple is (ULT)

am more important than the temple (UST)

"someone who is more important than the temple." Jesus was referring to himself as the one greater. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [temple](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [temple](#)

ULT

⁶ But I say to you that one greater than the [temple](#) is here.

UST

⁶ Let me tell you what this means: I have come to you, and I am more important than the [temple](#).

Matthew 12:7

General Information:

In verse 7, Jesus quotes the prophet Hosea to rebuke the Pharisees.

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to respond to the Pharisees.

If you had known what this meant, 'I desire mercy and not sacrifice,' you would not have condemned the guiltless (ULT)

You should think about these words of God in the scriptures: 'I want you to act mercifully toward people, and not just offer sacrifices.' If you understood what that means, you would not condemn my disciples, who have done no wrong (UST)

Here Jesus quotes scripture. Alternate translation: "The prophet Hosea wrote this long ago: 'I desire mercy and not sacrifice.' If you had understood what this meant, you would not have condemned the guiltless" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

I desire mercy and not sacrifice (ULT)

I want you to act mercifully toward people, and not just offer sacrifices.' If you understood (UST)

In the law of Moses, God did command the Israelites to offer sacrifices. This means God considers mercy more important than the sacrifices.

I desire (ULT)

I want you (UST)

The pronoun "I" refers to God.

the guiltless (ULT)

have done no wrong (UST)

This can be translated as an adjective. Alternate translation: "those who are not guilty" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [you would...have condemned](#)
- [guiltless](#)
- [mercy](#)
- [sacrifice](#)
- [you had known](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [condemn my disciples, who](#)
- [have done no wrong](#)

ULT

⁷ If [you had known](#) what this meant, 'I desire [mercy](#) and not [sacrifice](#),' [you would](#) not [have condemned](#) the [guiltless](#).

UST

⁷ [You should think about these words of God in the scriptures](#): 'I want you [to act mercifully toward people](#), and not [just offer sacrifices](#).' [If you understood](#) what that means, you would not [condemn my disciples, who have done no wrong](#).

- to act mercifully toward people
- just offer sacrifices.' If you understood
- You should think about these words of God in the scriptures

Matthew 12:8

the Son of Man (ULT)

the Son of Man, and I (UST)

Jesus is referring to himself. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Lord...is...of the Sabbath (ULT)

have the authority to tell people what they can do on...

I am...the Sabbath day (UST)

“rules over the Sabbath” or “makes the laws about what people can do on the Sabbath”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [Sabbath](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [have the authority to tell people what they can do on](#)
- [Son of Man, and I](#)
- [Sabbath day](#)

ULT

⁸ For the [Son of Man](#) is [Lord](#) of the [Sabbath](#).”

UST

⁸ I am the [Son of Man, and I have the authority to tell people what they can do on](#) the [Sabbath day](#).”

Matthew 12:9

General Information:

Here the scene shifts to a later time when the Pharisees criticize Jesus for healing a man on the Sabbath.

Then Jesus left from there (ULT)

After Jesus left there that day (UST)

“Jesus left the grainfields” or “Then Jesus left”

their synagogue (ULT)

he...a synagogue (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) the word “their” refers to the Jews of that town. Alternate translation: “the synagogue” or 2) the word “their” refers to the Pharisees that Jesus had just spoken to, and this was the synagogue that they and other Jews in that town attended. The word “their” does not mean that the Pharisees owned the synagogue. Alternate translation: “the synagogue that they attended”

Translation Words - ULT

- [synagogue](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [a synagogue](#)

ULT

⁹ Then Jesus left from there and went into their [synagogue](#).

UST

⁹ After Jesus left there that day, he went into [a synagogue](#).

Matthew 12:10

Behold (ULT)

There he saw (UST)

The word "Behold" alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

there was a man who had a withered hand (ULT)
a man with a withered hand. The Pharisees kept wanting to debate with (UST)

"a man who had a paralyzed hand" or "a man with a crippled hand"

Behold...The Pharisees asked...Jesus, saying, "Is it lawful to heal on the Sabbath?" so that they might accuse him (ULT)

There he saw...asked him, "Does God permit us to heal people on our day of rest?" They were hoping that Jesus would commit a sin by saying something wrong (UST)

"The Pharisees wanted to accuse Jesus of sinning, so they asked him, 'Is it lawful to heal on the Sabbath?'"

Is it lawful to heal on the Sabbath (ULT)

Does God permit us to heal people on our day of rest (UST)

"According to the law of Moses, may a person heal another person on the Sabbath"

so that they might accuse him (ULT)

They were hoping that Jesus would commit a sin by saying something wrong (UST)

They did not just want to accuse Jesus in front of the people. The Pharisees wanted Jesus to give an answer that contradicted the law of Moses so they could take him before a judge and legally charge him with breaking the law. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Sabbath
- a...hand
- to heal
- lawful
- they might accuse

Translation Words - UST

- day of rest
- a...hand. The Pharisees kept wanting to debate
- to heal people
- God permit us
- hoping that Jesus would commit a sin by saying something wrong

ULT

¹⁰ Behold, there was a man who had a withered [hand](#). The Pharisees asked Jesus, saying, "Is it [lawful to heal](#) on the [Sabbath](#)?" so that [they might accuse](#) him.

UST

¹⁰ There he saw a man with a withered [hand](#). [The Pharisees kept wanting to debate](#) with Jesus about the Sabbath, so one of them asked him, "Does [God permit us to heal people](#) on our [day of rest](#)?" They were [hoping that Jesus would commit a sin by saying something wrong](#).

Matthew 12:11

Connecting Statement:

Jesus responds to the Pharisees' criticism.

What man would there be among you, who, if he had just one sheep...would not grasp hold of it and lift it out (ULT)

Suppose that one of you had just one sheep...Certainly not! You would take hold of it and lift it out right away (UST)

Jesus uses a question to respond to the Pharisees. He is challenging them to think about what kind of work they do on the Sabbath. Alternate translation: "Every one of you, if you only had one sheep... would grab the sheep and lift it out." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Sabbath](#)
- [a deep hole](#)
- [lift it out](#)
- [sheep](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Sabbath day. Would you just leave it there](#)
- [a deep hole](#)
- [lift it out right away](#)
- [sheep](#)

ULT

11 Jesus said to them, "What man would there be among you, who, if he had just one [sheep](#), and if this sheep fell into [a deep hole](#) on the [Sabbath](#), would not grasp hold of it and [lift it out](#)?"

UST

11 He replied to them, "Suppose that one of you had just one [sheep](#), and that it fell into [a deep hole](#) on the [Sabbath day](#). [Would you just leave it there?](#) Certainly not! You would take hold of it and [lift it out right away](#)!"

Matthew 12:12

How much more valuable, then, is a man than a sheep (ULT)

But a person is much more valuable than a sheep (UST)

The phrase "how much more" adds emphasis to the statement.
Alternate translation: "Obviously, a man is much more valuable than a sheep!" or "Just think about how much more important a man is than a sheep"

it is lawful to do good on the Sabbath (ULT)

it is certainly right for us to do good by healing another person any day, even on our day of rest (UST)

"those who do good on the Sabbath are obeying the law"

Translation Words - ULT

- good
- Sabbath
- it is lawful
- than a sheep

Translation Words - UST

- good
- day of rest
- it is certainly right for us
- than a sheep

ULT

¹² How much more valuable, then, is a man [than a sheep](#)! Therefore [it is lawful](#) to do [good](#) on the [Sabbath](#)."

UST

¹² But a person is much more valuable [than a sheep](#). So [it is certainly right for us](#) to do [good](#) by healing another person any day, even on our [day of rest](#)!"

Matthew 12:13

Then Jesus said to the man, "Stretch out your hand (ULT)

Then he said to the man, "Stretch out your hand!" The (UST)

This can be translated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "Then Jesus commanded the man to stretch out his hand" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

to the man (ULT)

to the man (UST)

"to the man with the paralyzed hand" or "to the man with the crippled hand"

Stretch out your hand (ULT)

Stretch out your hand!" The (UST)

"Hold out your hand" or "Extend your hand"

He stretched it out (ULT)

man stretched out his withered hand (UST)

"The man stretched"

it was restored to health (ULT)

it became healthy (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "it was healthy again" or "it became well again" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [just like](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [like](#)

ULT

¹³ Then Jesus said to the man, "Stretch out your [hand](#)." He stretched it out, and it was restored to health, [just like](#) the other hand.

UST

¹³ Then he said to the man, "Stretch out your [hand](#)!" The man stretched out his withered hand, and it became healthy [like](#) the other hand!

Matthew 12:14

and plotted against him (ULT)

They began to plan together how they could (UST)

“planned to harm Jesus”

as to how they might put him to death (ULT)

how they could...kill Jesus (UST)

“were discussing how they might kill Jesus”

Translation Words - ULT

- Pharisees
- and plotted

Translation Words - UST

- Pharisees
- They began to plan together

ULT

¹⁴ But the [Pharisees](#) went out [and plotted](#) against him as to how they might put him to death.

UST

¹⁴ Then the [Pharisees](#) left the synagogue. [They began to plan together](#) how they could kill Jesus.

Matthew 12:15

General Information:

This account explains how the actions of Jesus fulfilled one of the prophecies of Isaiah.

As Jesus perceived this, he withdrew (ULT)
Because Jesus knew that the Pharisees were plotting to kill him, he took the disciples...went away from (UST)

"Jesus was aware of what the Pharisees were planning, so he"

he withdrew from there (ULT)
went away from there. Large crowds, including (UST)

"departed from" or "left"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [he healed](#)
- [As...perceived this](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [he healed](#)
- [knew that](#)

ULT

¹⁵ As [Jesus perceived this](#), he withdrew from there. Many people followed him, and [he healed](#) them all.

UST

¹⁵ Because [Jesus knew that](#) the Pharisees were plotting to kill him, he took the disciples and went away from there. Large crowds, including many sick people, followed him, and [he healed](#) them all.

Matthew 12:16

they not make him known (ULT)

they should not tell other people about him (UST)

“not to tell anyone else about him”

Translation Words - ULT

- known
- He commanded

Translation Words - UST

- tell other people
- he told...firmly

ULT

¹⁶ He commanded them that they not make him known,

UST

¹⁶ But he told them firmly that they should not tell other people about him.

Matthew 12:17

that it might come true, what had been said (ULT)
By doing this he fulfilled what...had written long ago.
He (UST)

The phrase "that it might come true" can be translated as the beginning of a new sentence. Alternate translation: "This was to fulfill what"

what had been said through Isaiah the prophet, saying (ULT)
what Isaiah the prophet had written long ago. He wrote (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what God had said long ago through the prophet Isaiah"

Translation Words - ULT

- prophet
- it might come true
- Isaiah

Translation Words - UST

- prophet
- he fulfilled
- Isaiah

ULT

¹⁷ that [it might come true](#), what had been said through [Isaiah](#) the [prophet](#), saying,

UST

¹⁷ By doing this [he fulfilled](#) what [Isaiah](#) the [prophet](#) had written long ago. He wrote,

Matthew 12:18

Connecting Statement:

Here Matthew quotes the prophet Isaiah to show that Jesus' ministry fulfilled scripture.

See (ULT)

Here is (UST)

"Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

my...I have chosen...I will put (ULT)

my...I have chosen...I will put (UST)

All occurrences of these words refer to God. Isaiah is quoting what God said to him.

my beloved one, in whom my soul is well pleased

"he is my beloved one, and I am very pleased with him"

in whom my soul is well pleased (ULT)

and who pleases me (UST)

Here "soul" refers to the whole person. Alternate translation: "with whom I am very pleased" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

he will proclaim justice to the Gentiles (ULT)

he will bring justice and salvation to the non-Jews (UST)

This means that God's servant will tell the Gentiles that there will be justice. It can be stated clearly that God is the one who will bring about justice, and the abstract noun "justice" can be expressed as "what is right." Alternate translation: "he will announce to the nations that God will do for them what is right" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Spirit
- Gentiles
- I have chosen
- soul
- beloved one
- justice
- is well pleased
- servant
- he will proclaim

Translation Words - UST

- Spirit
- non-Jews
- I have chosen
- me

ULT

18 "See, my [servant](#) whom [I have chosen](#); my [beloved one](#), in whom my [soul is well pleased](#). I will put my [Spirit](#) upon him, and [he will proclaim justice](#) to the [Gentiles](#).

UST

18 "Here is my [servant](#) whom [I have chosen](#), the one whom I [love](#) and who [pleases me](#). I will put my [Spirit](#) in him, and [he will bring justice and salvation](#) to the [non-Jews](#)."

- whom...love
- justice and salvation
- pleases
- servant
- he will bring

Matthew 12:19

Connecting Statement:

Matthew continues to quote the prophet Isaiah.

neither will anyone hear...his voice (ULT)
will he shout...not...in...And he will...shout (UST)

Here people not hearing his voice represents him not speaking loudly. Alternate translation: "he will not speak loudly" (See: [Metonymy](#))

He will not strive...his (ULT)
He will not quarrel with people...And he will (UST)

All occurrences of these words refer to God's chosen servant.

in the streets (ULT)
in...the streets (UST)

This is an idiom that means "publicly." Alternate translation: "in the cities and towns" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [voice](#)
- [cry aloud](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [shout](#)
- [will he shout...not](#)

ULT

19 He will not strive nor [cry aloud](#); neither will anyone hear his [voice](#) in the streets.

UST

19 He will not quarrel with people, neither [will he shout](#). And he will [not shout](#) in the streets.

Matthew 12:20

He will not break (ULT)
he will not kill him. And (UST)

All occurrences of “he” refer to God’s chosen servant.

He will not break a bruised reed; he will not quench a smoking flax

Both of these statements mean the same thing. They are metaphors emphasizing that God’s servant will be gentle and kind. Both “bruised reed” and “smoking flax” represent weak and hurting people. If the metaphor is confusing, you could translate the literal meaning. Alternate translation: “He will be kind to weak people, and he will be gentle to those who are hurting” (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Metaphor](#))

a bruised reed (ULT)
He will be gentle with the weak people; If a person is barely alive (UST)

“damaged plant”

not...he will...quench a smoking flax (ULT)
he will...not...kill him...And (UST)

“he will not put out any smoking flax” or “he will not stop any smoking flax from burning”

a smoking flax (ULT)
he will...kill him...And (UST)

This refers to a lamp wick after the flame has gone out and when it is only smoking.

a...flax...until (ULT)
he will...kill him...And...and declare that they are not guilty (UST)

This can be translated with a new sentence: “flax. This is what he will do until”

he leads justice to victory (ULT)
he will judge the people with justice...and declare that they are not guilty (UST)

Leading someone to victory represents causing him to be victorious. Causing justice to be victorious represents making things right that had been wrong. Alternate translation: “he makes everything right” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [justice](#)
- [he leads](#)
- [he will...quench](#)
- [a...reed](#)

ULT

²⁰ He will not break a bruised [reed](#); [he will](#) not [quench](#) a smoking flax, until [he leads justice](#) to victory,

UST

²⁰ He will be gentle with the weak people; If a person is barely alive, [he will](#) not [kill him](#). [And he will judge the people with justice and declare that they are not guilty](#).

Translation Words - UST

- he will judge the people with justice
- and declare that they are not guilty
- he will...kill him...And
- He will be gentle with the weak people; If a person is barely alive

Matthew 12:21

in his name (ULT)

in him (UST)

Here “name” refers to the whole person. Alternate translation: “in him” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Gentiles](#)
- [in...name](#)
- [will have certain hope](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [non-Jews](#)
- [him](#)
- [will confidently trust](#)

ULT

²¹ and in his [name](#) [the Gentiles](#) [will have certain hope](#).”

UST

²¹ So the [non-Jews](#) [will confidently trust](#) in [him](#).”

Matthew 12:22

General Information:

Here the scene shifts to a later time when the Pharisees accuse Jesus of healing a man by the power of Satan.

Then someone blind and mute, possessed by a demon, was brought to Jesus (ULT)

One day some men brought to Jesus a man who was blind and unable to speak because he had a demon. Jesus drove out the demon (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Then someone brought to Jesus a man who was blind and mute because a demon was controlling him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

someone...was brought...blind and mute (ULT)

some men brought...a man who was blind and unable to speak (UST)

"someone who could not see and could not talk"

Translation Words - ULT

- [possessed by a demon](#)
- [He healed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [because he had a demon. Jesus drove out the demon](#)
- [healed](#)

ULT

²² Then someone blind and mute, [possessed by a demon](#), was brought to Jesus. [He healed](#) him, with the result that the mute man spoke and saw.

UST

²² One day some men brought to Jesus a man who was blind and unable to speak [because he had a demon. Jesus drove out the demon](#) and [healed](#) him. Then the man began to talk and was able to see.

Matthew 12:23

All the crowds were amazed (ULT)

All the crowds who saw it marveled (UST)

"All the people who had seen Jesus heal the man were greatly surprised"

the Son of David (ULT)

the Messiah, the descendant of King David, whom we have been expecting (UST)

This is a title for the Christ or Messiah.

Son (ULT)

the Messiah...descendant of (UST)

Here this means "descendant of."

Translation Words - ULT

- Son
- of David
- were amazed

Translation Words - UST

- the Messiah...descendant of
- King David, whom we have been expecting
- marveled

ULT

²³ All the crowds [were amazed](#) and said, "Is not this man the [Son of David](#)?"

UST

²³ All the crowds who saw it [marveled](#). They began asking each other, "Could this man be [the Messiah](#), the [descendant of King David, whom we have been expecting](#)?"

Matthew 12:24

General Information:

In verse 25, Jesus begins to respond to the Pharisees' accusation that he healed the man by the power of Satan.

when...heard of this (ULT) heard about this miracle (UST)

This refers to the miracle of the healing of a blind, deaf, and demon-possessed man.

This man does not cast out demons except by Beelzebul (ULT)

It is not God, but Beelzebul...who enables this man to drive demons from people (UST)

This can be stated in a positive form. "This man is only able to cast out the demon because he is a servant of Beelzebul" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

This man (ULT) this man (UST)

The Pharisees avoid calling Jesus by name to show they reject him.

the prince of the demons (ULT) the ruler of the demons (UST)

"the chief of the demons"

Translation Words - ULT

- [demons](#)
- [demons](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [Beelzebul](#)
- [cast out](#)
- [the prince](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [demons](#)
- [demons](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [Beelzebul](#)
- [to drive...from people](#)
- [the ruler](#)

ULT

²⁴ But when the [Pharisees](#) heard of this, they said, "This man does not [cast out demons](#) except by [Beelzebul, the prince](#) of the [demons](#)."

UST

²⁴ Because the [Pharisees](#) heard about this miracle, they said, "It is not God, but [Beelzebul, the ruler](#) of the [demons](#), who enables this man [to drive demons from people](#)!"

Matthew 12:25

Every kingdom divided against itself is made desolate, and every city or house divided against itself will not stand

Jesus uses a proverb to respond to the Pharisees. Both of these statements mean the same thing. They emphasize that it would not make sense for Beelzebul to use his power to fight other demons. (See: [Proverbs](#) and [Parallelism](#))

Every kingdom divided against itself is made desolate (ULT)

If the people in one nation fight against each other, they will destroy their nation (UST)

Here “kingdom” refers to those who live in the kingdom. This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “A kingdom will not last when its people fight among themselves” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

against...every city or house divided...itself will not stand (ULT)
against...they will destroy their nation...If people who live in the same city or house fight each other, they will certainly not remain as one group or family (UST)

Here “city” refers to the people who live there, and “house” refers to a family. Being “divided against itself” represents its people fighting each other. Alternate translation: “it ruins a city or a family when the people fight each other” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [is made desolate](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [house](#)
- [Jesus knew](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [they will destroy their nation](#)
- [nation](#)
- [house](#)
- [knew](#)

ULT

²⁵ But [Jesus knew](#) their thoughts and said to them, “Every [kingdom](#) divided against itself [is made desolate](#), and every city or [house](#) divided against itself will not stand.

UST

²⁵ But Jesus [knew](#) what the Pharisees were thinking. So he said to them, “If the people in one [nation](#) fight against each other, [they will destroy their nation](#). If people who live in the same city or [house](#) fight each other, they will certainly not remain as one group or family.

Matthew 12:26

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to respond to the Pharisees' accusation that he healed the man by the power of Satan.

If Satan drives out Satan (ULT)

In the same way, if Satan were driving out his own demons (UST)

The second use of Satan refers to the demons that serve Satan.
Alternate translation: "If Satan works against his own demons" (See: [Metonymy](#))

How then will his kingdom stand (ULT)

He will not be able to continue to rule over his servants (UST)

Jesus uses this question to show the Pharisees that what they were saying was illogical. Alternate translation: "If Satan were divided against himself, his kingdom would not be able to stand!" or "If Satan were to fight against his own demons, his kingdom would not last!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

²⁶ If [Satan drives out Satan](#), he is divided against himself. How then will his [kingdom](#) stand?

UST

²⁶ In the same way, if [Satan were driving out his own demons](#), he would be fighting against himself. He will not be able to continue [to rule over](#) his servants!

Translation Words - ULT

- [Satan](#)
- [Satan](#)
- [drives out](#)
- [kingdom](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Satan](#)
- [his own demons](#)
- [were driving out](#)
- [to rule over](#)

Matthew 12:27

Beelzebul (ULT)

Satan (UST)

This name refers to the same person as “Satan” (verse 26).

by whom do your sons drive them out (ULT)
your disciples who drive them out do so by Satan’s power? No! So (UST)

Jesus uses another question to challenge the Pharisees. Alternate translation: “then you must say your followers also drive out demons by the power of Beelzebul. But, you know this is not true.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

your sons (ULT)

your disciples (UST)

Jesus was speaking to the Pharisees. The phrase “your sons” refers to their followers. This was a common way of referring to those who follow teachers or leaders. Alternate translation: “your followers” (See: [Metaphor](#))

your...For this reason they will be...judges (ULT)

your...they will judge...for saying that Satan’s power was behind their work (UST)

“Because your followers cast out demons by the power of God, they prove that you are wrong about me.”

Translation Words - ULT

- [sons](#)
- [demons](#)
- [Beelzebul](#)
- [drive out](#)
- [do...drive them out](#)
- [judges](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [disciples](#)
- [demons, is it also true that](#)
- [Satan](#)
- [to drive out](#)
- [who drive them out do so](#)
- [will judge](#)

ULT

²⁷ And if I [drive out demons](#) by [Beelzebul](#), by whom do your [sons drive them out](#)? For this reason they will be your [judges](#).

UST

²⁷ Furthermore, if it is true that [Satan](#) enables me [to drive out demons, is it also true that](#) your [disciples who drive them out do so](#) by Satan’s power? No! So they [will judge](#) you for saying that Satan’s power was behind their work.

Matthew 12:28

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to respond to the Pharisees.

But if...I (ULT)

But because...who enables me (UST)

Here “if” does not mean Jesus is questioning how he drives out demons. Here Jesus uses the word to introduce a true statement. Alternate translation: “But because I”

then the kingdom of God has come upon you (ULT)
that proves that the rule of God from heaven is already here (UST)

“then the kingdom of God has arrived among you.” Here “kingdom” refers to God’s rule as king. Alternate translation: “this means God is establishing his rule among you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

has come upon you (ULT)
is already here (UST)

Here “you” is plural and refers to the people of Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of God
- of God (2)
- the Spirit of God
- demons
- kingdom of God
- drive out
- kingdom

Translation Words - UST

- God’s
- God (2)
- God’s Spirit
- demons
- rule of God from heaven
- to drive out
- rule...from heaven

ULT

²⁸ But if I [drive out demons](#) by [the Spirit of God](#), then the [kingdom of God](#) has come upon you.

UST

²⁸ But because it is [God’s Spirit](#) who enables me [to drive out demons](#), that proves that the [rule of God from heaven](#) is already here.

Matthew 12:29

how can anyone enter into the house...he will steal his belongings from his house (ULT)

I will show you why I am able to drive out demons. A person...cannot...go into the house...he will be able to take his possessions (UST)

Jesus uses a parable to continue his response to the Pharisees. Jesus means he can drive out demons because he is more powerful than Satan. (See: [Parables](#))

how can anyone enter...without tying up the strong man first (ULT)

I will show you why I am able to drive out demons. A person...cannot...go...if he does not first tie up that strong man (UST)

Jesus uses a question to teach the Pharisees and the crowd.

Alternate translation: "No one can enter...without tying up the strong man first." or "If a person wants to enter...he must first tie up the strong man." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

without tying up the strong man first (ULT)

if he does not first tie up that strong man (UST)

"without taking control of the strong man first"

the house...his...Then...he will steal his belongings (ULT)

the house...his...then he will be able to take (UST)

"The he can steal" or "Then he will be able to steal"

Translation Words - ULT

- [tying up](#)
- [strong man](#)
- [strong man](#)
- [steal](#)
- [house](#)
- [from...house](#) (2)

Translation Words - UST

- [tie up](#)
- [a strong man like Satan](#)
- [strong man](#)
- [carry off](#)
- [house](#)
- [possessions](#) (2)

ULT

²⁹ Or how can anyone enter into the [house](#) of the [strong man](#) and [steal](#) his belongings without [tying up](#) the [strong man](#) first? Then he will steal his belongings from his [house](#).

UST

²⁹ I will show you why I am able to drive out demons. A person cannot go into the [house](#) of [a strong man like Satan](#) and [carry off](#) his possessions if he does not first [tie up](#) that [strong man](#). But if he ties him up, then he will be able to take his [possessions](#).

Matthew 12:30

The one who is not with me (ULT)
Those who do not acknowledge that the Holy Spirit enables me to expel demons are (UST)

“who does not support me” or “who does not work with me”

me is against (ULT)
No one can be neutral...me to expel demons are opposing (UST)

“opposes me” or “works against me”

with...the one who does not gather...me scatters (ULT)
acknowledge that the Holy Spirit enables...those who do not gather people to become my disciples are causing those people to go away from me (UST)

Jesus is using a metaphor that refers to a person either gathering the flock of sheep to a shepherd or making them scatter away from the shepherd. Jesus means that a person is either helping to make people become disciples of Jesus or he is making people reject Jesus. (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

³⁰ The one who is not with me is against me, and the one who does not gather with me scatters.

UST

³⁰ No one can be neutral. Those who do not acknowledge that the Holy Spirit enables me to expel demons are opposing me, and those who do not gather people to become my disciples are causing those people to go away from me.

Matthew 12:31

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to respond to the Pharisees.

I say to you (ULT)

I will say...to you (UST)

This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

I say to you (ULT)

I will say...to you (UST)

Here "you" is plural. Jesus is speaking directly to the Pharisees, but he is also teaching the crowd. (See: [Forms of You](#))

every sin and blasphemy will be forgiven men (ULT)
If those who offend and insult other people in any way are then sorry and ask God to forgive them, God will forgive them...people (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will forgive every sin that people commit and every evil thing they say" or "God will forgive every person who sins or says evil things" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

but the blasphemy against the Spirit...but the blasphemy against the Spirit...will not be forgiven (ULT)
the...he will not forgive...who insult...Holy Spirit (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will not forgive the person who speaks evil things about the Holy Spirit" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#)
- [but the blasphemy against the Spirit](#)
- [will be forgiven](#)
- [will...be forgiven](#) (2)
- [blasphemy](#)
- [but the blasphemy against the Spirit](#) (2)

Translation Words - UST

- [If those who offend and insult other people in any way are then sorry](#)
- [Holy Spirit](#)
- [and ask God to forgive them, God will forgive them](#)
- [he will...forgive](#) (2)
- [If those who offend and insult other people in any way are then sorry](#)
- [who insult](#) (2)

ULT

³¹ Therefore I say to you, every [sin](#) and [blasphemy will be forgiven](#) men, [but the blasphemy against the Spirit](#) will not [be forgiven](#).

UST

³¹ You are saying that it is not the Holy Spirit who is enabling me to expel demons. So I will say this to you: [If those who offend and insult other people in any way are then sorry and ask God to forgive them, God will forgive them](#). But [he will](#) not [forgive](#) people [who insult](#) the [Holy Spirit](#).

Matthew 12:32

Whoever speaks a word against the Son of Man (ULT)
people who criticize me, the Son of Man...that (UST)

Here “word” refers to what someone says. Alternate translation: “If a person says anything bad about the Son of Man” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the Son of Man (ULT)
the Son of Man (UST)

Jesus is speaking about himself. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

that will be forgiven him (ULT)
God is willing...forgive (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God will forgive a person for that” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

that will be forgiven him...not (ULT)
God is willing...forgive...not forgive (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God will not forgive that person”

neither in this age, nor in the one that is coming (ULT)
to...not...now, nor in the coming world (UST)

Here “this world” and “that which is to come” refer to the present life and the next life. Alternate translation: “in this life or in the next life” or “now or ever” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Holy](#)
- [the...Holy...Spirit](#)
- [that will be forgiven](#)
- [that will...be forgiven](#) (2)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [age](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Holy](#)
- [what the Holy...Spirit does. God will](#)
- [forgive](#)
- [he will...forgive](#) (2)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [world](#)

ULT

³² Whoever speaks a word against the [Son of Man, that will be forgiven](#) him. But whoever speaks against the [Holy Spirit, that will](#) not [be forgiven](#) him, neither in this [age](#), nor in the one that is coming.

UST

³² God is willing to [forgive](#) people who criticize me, the [Son of Man](#). But I warn you that [he will](#) not forgive those who say evil things about [what the Holy Spirit does. God will](#) not [forgive](#) them now, nor in the coming [world](#).”

Matthew 12:33

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to respond to the Pharisees.

Either make a tree good and its fruit good, or make the tree bad and its fruit bad

Possible meanings are 1) "If you make a tree good, its fruit will be good, and if you make the tree bad, its fruit will be bad" or 2) "If you consider a tree to be good, it will be because its fruit is good, and if you consider it tree to be bad, it will be because its fruit is bad." This was a proverb. People were to apply its truth to how they can know whether a person is good or bad.

good...bad (ULT)

good...bad. If it is (UST)

"healthy...diseased"

for the tree is recognized by its fruit (ULT)

from...doing good things, then you should know whether or not I am good (UST)

"Fruit" here is a metaphor for what a person does. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people know whether a tree is good or bad by looking at its fruit" or "people know whether a person is good or bad by looking at the results of that person's activities" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- good
- good
- fruit
- fruit (2)
- fruit
- bad
- bad
- is recognized

Translation Words - UST

- good
- good
- When you see some
- fruit is (2)
- doing good things, then you
- bad. If it is
- that its
- should know whether or not I am good

ULT

³³ Either make the tree [good](#) and its [fruit good](#), or make the tree [bad](#) and its [fruit bad](#), for the tree [is recognized](#) by its [fruit](#).

UST

³³ "[When you see some](#) fruit from a tree, you decide whether the [fruit is good](#) or [bad](#). [If it is good](#), then you know [that its](#) tree is also good. If I am [doing good things, then you should know whether or not I am good](#).

Matthew 12:34

You offspring of vipers (ULT) children of poisonous snakes! You cannot (UST)

Here “offspring” means “having the characteristic of.” Vipers are poisonous snakes that are dangerous and represent evil. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Matthew 3:7](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

You offspring...you say...since you are (ULT) children...say...you are (UST)

These are plural and refer to the Pharisees. (See: [Forms of You](#))

how can you say good things (ULT) of poisonous snakes! You cannot...say anything good (UST)

Jesus uses a question to rebuke the Pharisees. Alternate translation: “you cannot say good things.” or “you can only say evil things.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

out...of the abundance of the heart the mouth speaks (ULT) because...You are like the...says shows what is inside him (UST)

Here “heart” is a metonym for the thoughts in a person’s mind. Here “mouth” is a synecdoche that represents a person as a whole. Alternate translation: “what a person says with his mouth reveals what is in his mind” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [You offspring](#)
- [good things](#)
- [evil](#)
- [of vipers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [You are like the](#)
- [children](#)
- [anything good](#)
- [evil. What a person](#)
- [of poisonous snakes! You cannot](#)

ULT

³⁴ [You offspring of vipers](#), since you are [evil](#), how can you say [good things](#)? For out of the abundance of the [heart](#) the mouth speaks.

UST

³⁴ [You are like the children of poisonous snakes! You cannot](#) say [anything good](#), because you are [evil](#). [What a person](#) says shows what is inside him.

Matthew 12:35

The good man from the good treasure of his heart produces good things, and the evil man from the evil treasure of his heart produces evil things (ULT)
Good people speak good things. That is because it is like they have stored up all these good things in a safe place and can bring them out at any time. But evil people speak evil things. That is because it is like they have stored up all these evil things and bring them out at any time from the place where they store them (UST)

Jesus speaks about the "heart" as if it were a container that a person fills with good or evil things. This is a metaphor that means what a person says reveals what the person is truly like. If you want to keep this imagery, see the UST. You can also translate the literal meaning. Alternate translation: "A man who is truly good will speak good things, and the man who is truly evil will speak evil things" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [good](#)
- [good...things](#)
- [good](#)
- [evil](#)
- [evil](#)
- [evil things](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Good](#)
- [good](#)
- [good things in a safe place](#)
- [evil](#)
- [evil](#)
- [evil](#)

ULT

³⁵ The [good](#) man from the [good](#) treasure of his heart produces [good things](#), and the [evil](#) man from the [evil](#) treasure of his heart produces [evil things](#).

UST

³⁵ [Good](#) people speak [good](#) things. That is because it is like they have stored up all these [good things in a safe place](#) and can bring them out at any time. But [evil](#) people speak [evil](#) things. That is because it is like they have stored up all these [evil](#) things and bring them out at any time from the place where they store them.

Matthew 12:36

Connecting Statement:

Jesus concludes his response to the Pharisees' accusation that he healed the man by the power of Satan.

I say...to you (ULT)

I tell...you (UST)

This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

will...people...give...of (ULT)

he will make people recall (UST)

"God will ask people about" or "people will have to explain to God"

for every idle word that they...speak...will (ULT)

every useless word they have spoken, and he will judge the people by what they have said (UST)

Here "word" refers to something that someone says. Alternate translation: "every harmful thing they will have said" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of judgment
- the day

Translation Words - UST

- God judges
- the day when

ULT

³⁶ I say to you that for every idle word that they will speak, people will give an account of it in [the day of judgment](#).

UST

³⁶ I tell you that on [the day when God judges](#), he will make people recall every useless word they have spoken, and he will judge the people by what they have said.

Matthew 12:37

you will be justified...you will be condemned (ULT)
God will either declare...are righteous...he will condemn you (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will justify you...God will condemn you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [you will be condemned](#)
- [you will be justified](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [he will condemn you](#)
- [God will either declare...are righteous](#)

ULT

³⁷ For by your words [you will be justified](#), and by your words [you will be condemned](#)."

UST

³⁷ [God will either declare](#) that you [are righteous](#) based on the words that you have spoken, or else [he will condemn you](#) based on what you have said."

Matthew 12:38

General Information:

In verse 39, Jesus begins to rebuke the scribes and Pharisees.

Connecting Statement:

The dialogue in these verses happens immediately after Jesus responded to the Pharisees' accusation that he healed a man by the power of Satan.

we wish (ULT)

we want (UST)

"we want"

to see a sign from you (ULT)

to see you perform a miracle that will convince us that God sent you (UST)

You can make explicit why they want to see a sign. Alternate translation: "to see a sign from you that proves what you say is true" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [scribes](#)
- [a sign](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [Teacher](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [teachers of the Jewish laws](#)
- [perform a miracle that will convince us that God sent you](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [Teacher](#)

ULT

38 Then certain [scribes](#) and [Pharisees](#) answered Jesus, saying, "[Teacher](#), we wish to see [a sign](#) from you."

UST

38 Then some of the [Pharisees](#) and [teachers of the Jewish laws](#) responded to Jesus, "[Teacher](#), we want to see you [perform a miracle that will convince us that God sent you](#)."

Matthew 12:39

An evil and adulterous generation seeks for a sign...will be given to it (ULT)

You people have already seen me perform miracles, but you are evil, and you do not faithfully worship God! You want me to prove that God sent me...God will show...you (UST)

Jesus is speaking to his present generation. Alternate translation: "You are an evil and adulterous generation who demands signs from me...given to you" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

An...generation...adulterous (ULT)

You people have already seen me perform...you do not faithfully worship God (UST)

Here "adulterous" is a metaphor for people who are not faithful to God. Alternate translation: "unfaithful generation" or "godless generation" (See: [Metaphor](#))

no sign will be given to it (ULT)

God will show you...It will be like what happened to (UST)

Jesus would not give them a sign because, though he had already performed many miracles, they refused to believe him. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will not give it a sign" or "God will not give you a sign" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

a sign...except the...of Jonah the prophet (ULT)

miracles, but you...only one miracle...Jonah the prophet (UST)

"except the same sign God gave to Jonah the prophet"

Translation Words - ULT

- [a sign](#)
- [sign](#) (2)
- [sign](#) (3)
- [prophet](#)
- [adulterous](#)
- [evil](#)
- [of Jonah](#)
- [seeks for](#)
- [An...generation](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [miracles, but you](#)
- [It will be like what happened to](#) (2)
- [miracle](#) (3)
- [prophet](#)
- [you do not faithfully worship God](#)

ULT

³⁹ But Jesus answered and said to them, "An [evil](#) and [adulterous generation](#) [seeks for a sign](#). But no [sign](#) will be given to it except the [sign of Jonah](#) the [prophet](#)."

UST

³⁹ Then Jesus said to them, "[You people have already seen me perform miracles, but you are evil](#), and [you do not faithfully worship God! You want me to prove that God sent me](#), but God will show you only one [miracle. It will be like what happened to Jonah](#) the [prophet](#)."

- are evil
- Jonah
- You want me to prove that God sent me
- You people have already seen me perform

Matthew 12:40

three days and three nights (ULT)

three days and nights before God caused him to come out (UST)

Here “day” and “night” mean complete 24-hour periods. Alternate translation: “three complete days” (See: [Merism](#))

the Son of Man (ULT)

the Son of Man (UST)

Jesus is speaking about himself. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

in the heart of the earth (ULT)

deep in the earth, and then God will cause me to live again (UST)

This means inside a physical grave. (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [Jonah](#)
- [earth](#)
- [as](#)
- [days](#)
- [days](#) (2)

Translation Words - UST

- [deep](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [Jonah](#)
- [earth, and then God will cause me to live again](#)
- [for](#)
- [three days and](#)
- [three days and](#) (2)

ULT

⁴⁰ For [as Jonah](#) was three [days](#) and three nights in the stomach of the big fish, so will the [Son of Man](#) be three [days](#) and three nights in the [heart](#) of the [earth](#).

UST

⁴⁰ [Jonah](#) was in the stomach of a huge fish [for three days and](#) nights before God caused him to come out. Similarly, for [three days and](#) nights I, the [Son of Man](#), will be [deep](#) in the [earth, and then God will cause me to live again](#).

Matthew 12:41

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to rebuke the scribes and Pharisees.

The men of Nineveh (ULT)
everyone, the people who lived in the city of Nineveh (UST)

“The citizens of Nineveh”

at the judgment (ULT)
When God judges...in front of him (UST)

“on judgment day” or “when God judges people”

this generation (ULT)
you people (UST)

This refers to the people living during the time Jesus was preaching.

and will condemn it (ULT)
but you have not stopped sinning. So God will judge you (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “condemn” here represents accusing. Alternate translation: “and will accuse this generation of people” or 2) God will condemn this generation of people because they did not repent as the people of Nineveh had. Alternate translation: “and God will condemn this generation” (See: [Metonymy](#))

and...see (ULT)
Now I have come to you...but you have not stopped sinning. So (UST)

“and look.” This emphasizes what Jesus says next.

someone greater (ULT)
and I am far more important than Jonah was (UST)

“someone more important”

someone greater (ULT)
and I am far more important than Jonah was (UST)

Jesus is speaking about himself. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

than Jonah is here (ULT)
and I am far more important than Jonah was (UST)

You can make explicit the implicit meaning of Jesus’ statement. Alternate translation: “than Jonah is here, yet you still have not repented, which is why God will condemn you” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

⁴¹ The men [of Nineveh](#) will stand up at the [judgment](#) with this [generation](#) and [will condemn](#) it. For [they repented](#) at the [preaching of Jonah](#), and see, someone greater [than Jonah](#) is here.

UST

⁴¹ [When God judges](#) everyone, [the people who lived in the city of Nineveh](#) will stand in front of him beside [you people](#). [But they stopped sinning](#) when [Jonah warned them](#). Now I have come to you, [and I am far more important than Jonah was](#), but you have not stopped sinning. So [God will judge](#) you.

Translation Words - ULT

- will condemn
- they repented
- judgment
- of Nineveh
- of Jonah
- than Jonah (2)
- preaching
- generation

Translation Words - UST

- God will judge
- But they stopped sinning
- When God judges
- the people who lived in the city of Nineveh
- Jonah
- and I am far more important than Jonah was (2)
- warned them
- you people

Matthew 12:42

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to rebuke the scribes and Pharisees.

The Queen of the South (ULT)

The queen from Sheba, south of Israel, who lived long ago (UST)

This refers to the Queen of Sheba. Sheba is a land south of Israel.
(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

will rise up at the judgment (ULT)

in...when God judges everyone...will stand in front of him (UST)

“will stand up at the judgment”

at the judgment (ULT)

in...when God judges everyone (UST)

“on judgment day” or “when God judges people.” See how you translated this in [Matthew 12:41](#).

this generation (ULT)

you people (UST)

This refers to the people living during the time Jesus was preaching.

and condemn it (ULT)

and she will condemn you (UST)

See how you translated a similar statement in [Matthew 12:41](#). Possible meanings are 1) “condemn” here represents accusing. Alternate translation: “and will accuse this generation of people” or 2) God will condemn this generation of people because they did not listen to wisdom as the Queen of the South had. Alternate translation: “and God will condemn this generation” (See: [Metonymy](#))

She came...from the ends of the earth (ULT)

came...from a distant region (UST)

Here “ends of the earth” is an idiom that means “far away.” Alternate translation: “She came from very far away” (See: [Idiom](#))

She came...from the ends of the earth to hear the wisdom of Solomon (ULT)

came...from a distant region...order to listen to King Solomon teach many wise things...the queen of Sheba (UST)

This statement explains why the Queen of the South will condemn the people of Jesus’ generation. Alternate translation: “For she came” (See: [Connecting Words and Phrases](#))

ULT

⁴² [The Queen](#) of the South [will rise up](#) at the [judgment](#) with this [generation](#) and [condemn](#) it. She came from the ends of the [earth](#) to hear the [wisdom of Solomon](#), and see, someone greater [than Solomon](#) is here.

UST

⁴² [The queen](#) from Sheba, south of Israel, who lived long ago, came from [a distant region](#) in order to listen to [King Solomon teach many wise things](#). Now I have come to you, and I am far more important than [Solomon was, but you have not stopped sinning. So when God judges everyone](#), the queen of Sheba [will stand in front of him](#) beside [you people](#), and [she will condemn](#) you.”

and...see (ULT)

Now I have come to you...and (UST)

"and look." This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

someone greater (ULT)

I am far more important than (UST)

"someone more important"

someone greater (ULT)

I am far more important than (UST)

Jesus is speaking about himself. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

than Solomon is here (ULT)

Solomon was, but you have not stopped sinning. So (UST)

You can make explicit the implicit meaning of Jesus' statement. Alternate translation: "than Solomon is here, yet you do not listen. That is why God will condemn you" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [condemn](#)
- [wisdom](#)
- [judgment](#)
- [of Solomon](#)
- [than Solomon](#) (2)
- [The Queen](#)
- [will rise up](#)
- [earth](#)
- [generation](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [she will condemn](#)
- [teach many wise things](#)
- [when God judges everyone](#)
- [King Solomon](#)
- [Solomon was, but you have not stopped sinning. So](#) (2)
- [The queen](#)
- [will stand in front of him](#)
- [a distant region](#)
- [you people](#)

Matthew 12:43

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to rebuke the scribes and Pharisees. He begins to tell a parable.

waterless places (ULT)

desolate areas (UST)

“dry places” or “places where no people live”

does not find it (ULT)

If he does...not...find anyone (UST)

Here “it” refers to rest.

Translation Words - ULT

- [unclean](#)
- [spirit](#)
- [unclean spirit](#)
- [and looks for](#)
- [rest](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [an evil](#)
- [spirit](#)
- [an evil...spirit](#)
- [seeking](#)
- [someone in whom he can rest](#)

ULT

⁴³ When an [unclean spirit](#) has gone away from a man, it passes through waterless places [and looks for rest](#), but does not find it.

UST

⁴³ “Sometimes when [an evil spirit](#) leaves a person, it wanders around in desolate areas, [seeking someone in whom he can rest](#). If he does not find anyone,

Matthew 12:44

Then it says, 'I will return to my house from which I came (ULT)

he says to itself, 'I will return to the person in whom I used to live (UST)

This can be translated as a statement rather than a quotation.

Alternate translation: "So, the unclean spirit decides to return to the house from which it came"

to my house...from which I came (ULT)

to itself...to the person in whom I used to live (UST)

This is a metaphor for the person in whom the unclean spirit was living. Alternate translation: "to the place I left" (See: [Metaphor](#))

it finds it empty and swept out and put in order (ULT)

and finds that the Spirit of God is not in control of that

person's life. The person's life is like a house that has been swept clean and everything put in order, but it is empty (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the unclean spirit finds that someone has swept the house clean and has put everything in the house where it belongs" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

empty and swept out and put in order (ULT)

and finds that the Spirit of God is not in control of that person's life...The person's life is like a house that has been swept clean and everything put in order, but it is empty (UST)

Again, "house" is a metaphor for the person in whom the unclean spirit was living. Here, "swept out and put in order" suggests that no one is living in the house. Jesus means when an unclean spirit leaves a person, the person must invite the Holy Spirit to live in him or else the demon will come back. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and swept out](#)
- [I will return](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The person's life is like a house that has been swept clean](#)
- [I will return](#)
- [itself](#)

ULT

⁴⁴ Then it says, '[I will return](#) to my [house](#) from which I came.' Having returned, it finds it empty [and swept out](#) and put in order.

UST

⁴⁴ he says to [itself](#), '[I will return](#) to the person in whom I used to live.' So he goes back and finds that the Spirit of God is not in control of that person's life. [The person's life is like a house that has been swept clean](#) and everything put in order, but it is empty.

Matthew 12:45

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes the parable that he began with the words "When an unclean spirit" in verse 43.

Then it goes...with this evil generation also (ULT)
Then this evil spirit goes...are even...you wicked people who have heard me teach will experience (UST)

Jesus tells a parable to warn the people of the danger of not believing him. (See: [Parables](#))

It will be just like that with this evil generation also

This means that if the people of Jesus' generation do not believe him and become his disciples, they will be in a worse situation than they were before he came.

Translation Words - ULT

- [spirits](#)
- [more evil](#)
- [evil](#)
- [with...generation](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [spirits](#)
- [more evil](#)
- [wicked](#)
- [you...people who have heard me teach will experience](#)

ULT

⁴⁵ Then it goes and takes along with it seven other [spirits more evil](#) than itself, and they all come in to live there. Then the final condition of that man becomes worse than the first. It will be just like that with this [evil generation](#) also."

UST

⁴⁵ Then this evil spirit goes and gets seven other [spirits](#) that are even [more evil](#), and they all enter that person and begin living there. So although that person's condition was bad before, it becomes much worse. That is what you [wicked people who have heard me teach will experience](#)."

Matthew 12:46

General Information:

The arrival of Jesus' mother and brothers becomes an opportunity for him to describe his spiritual family.

behold (ULT)

his mother (UST)

The word "behold" alerts us to a new people in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

his mother (ULT)

his mother (UST)

This is Mary, Jesus' human mother.

Jesus...brothers (ULT)

Jesus...younger brothers arrived. They (UST)

These are probably other children born to Mary, but it is possible that the word "brothers" here refers to Jesus' cousins.

seeking...to speak (ULT)

they wanted...to speak (UST)

"wanting to speak"

Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [seeking](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [younger brothers arrived. They](#)
- [they wanted](#)

ULT

⁴⁶ While Jesus was still speaking to the crowds, behold, his mother and his [brothers](#) stood outside, [seeking](#) to speak to him.

UST

⁴⁶ While Jesus was still speaking to the crowd, his mother and his [younger brothers arrived. They](#) stood outside the house, and [they wanted](#) to speak with him.

Matthew 12:47

**Someone said to him, "Look, your mother and your brothers stand outside, seeking to speak to you (ULT)
Someone said to him, "Your mother and your younger brothers are standing outside the house, and they want to talk to you (UST)**

This can be translated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "Someone told Jesus that his mother and brothers were outside and wanted to speak to him" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [seeking](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [younger brothers](#)
- [and they want](#)

ULT

⁴⁷ Someone said to him, "Look, your mother and your [brothers](#) stand outside, [seeking](#) to speak to you."

UST

⁴⁷ Someone said to him, "Your mother and your [younger brothers](#) are standing outside the house, [and they want](#) to talk to you."

Matthew 12:48

Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the part of the story that began in [Matthew 12:1](#), where Matthew tells of growing opposition to Jesus' ministry.

to the one who told him (ULT)

to the person who told him that, "I will tell you (UST)

The details of the message the person told Jesus are understood and not repeated here. Alternate translation: "who told Jesus that his mother and brothers wanted to speak to him" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Who is my mother and who are my brothers (ULT)

who are really my mother and brothers (UST)

Jesus uses these questions to teach the people. Alternate translation: "I will tell you who are really my mother and brothers" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brothers](#)

ULT

48 But Jesus answered and said to the one who told him, "Who is my mother and who are my [brothers](#)?"

UST

48 Then Jesus said to the person who told him that, "I will tell you who are really my mother and [brothers](#)."

Matthew 12:49

See (ULT)

These are ones who take the place of (UST)

“Look” or “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

here are my mother and my brothers (ULT)

my mother and my brothers (UST)

This is a metaphor that means Jesus’ disciples belong to Jesus’ spiritual family. This is more important than belonging to his physical family. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [brothers](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [He then pointed toward](#)

ULT

⁴⁹ Then he stretched out his [hand](#) toward his [disciples](#) and said, “See, here are my mother and my [brothers](#)!”

UST

⁴⁹ [He then pointed toward](#) his [disciples](#) and said, “These are ones who take the place of my mother and my [brothers](#).”

Matthew 12:50

For whoever...does (ULT)

Those who...do (UST)

“anyone who does”

of...Father (ULT)

God...Father (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

that person is my brother, and sister, and mother (ULT)
take the place of my brother, my sister, or my mother (UST)

This is a metaphor meaning that those who obey God belong to Jesus’ spiritual family. This is more important than belonging to his physical family. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [brother](#)
- [of...Father](#)
- [will of...Father](#)
- [sister](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#)
- [brother](#)
- [God...Father](#)
- [what...God...Father...wants](#)
- [my sister](#)

ULT

⁵⁰ For whoever does the [will of](#) my [Father](#) who is in [heaven](#), that person is my [brother](#), and [sister](#), and mother.”

UST

⁵⁰ Those who do [what God](#) my [Father](#) who is in [heaven wants](#) take the place of my [brother](#), [my sister](#), or my mother.”

Matthew 13

Matthew 13 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 13:14-15, which are words from the Old Testament.

This chapter begins a new section. It contains some of Jesus' parables about the kingdom of heaven.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metonymy

Jesus often says the word "heaven" when he wants his hearers to think of God, who lives in heaven (Matthew 13:11).

Implicit information

Speakers usually do not say things that they think their hearers already understand. When Matthew wrote that Jesus "sat beside the sea" (Matthew 13:1), he probably expected his hearers to know that Jesus was about to teach the people. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Metaphor

Speakers often use words for things that can be touched to speak of things that cannot be touched. Jesus spoke of a bird eating a seed to describe how Satan kept people from understanding Jesus' message (Matthew 13:19).

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Passive voice

Many sentences in this chapter tell that a person had something happen to him without saying who caused that something to happen. For example, "they were scorched" (Matthew 13:6). You may have to translate the sentence so that it tells the reader who performed the action. (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Parables

The parables were short stories that Jesus told so that people would easily understand the lesson he was trying to teach them. He also told the stories so that those who did not want to believe in him would not understand the truth ([Matthew 13:11-13](#)).

Matthew 13:1

General Information:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story where Jesus begins to teach the crowds, using parables, about the kingdom of heaven.

On that day (ULT)

That same day (UST)

These events happened on the same day as those in the previous chapter.

went out...of the house (ULT)

left...the house where he was teaching and went to (UST)

It is not mentioned at whose house Jesus was staying.

and sat beside the sea (ULT)

the shore of the Sea of Galilee. He sat down there (UST)

It is implied that he sat down to teach the people. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [sea](#)
- [day](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus, along with the disciples](#)
- [Sea of Galilee](#)
- [That same day](#)
- [house where he was teaching and went to](#)

ULT

¹ On that [day Jesus](#) went out of the [house](#) and sat beside the [sea](#).

UST

¹ [That same day Jesus, along with the disciples](#), left the [house where he was teaching and went to](#) the shore of the [Sea of Galilee](#). He sat down there,

Matthew 13:2

so he got into a boat (ULT)
listen to him teach. In order to have a little room, he
got into a boat (UST)

It is implied that Jesus got into a boat because it would make it easier to teach the people. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

a boat (ULT)
he got (UST)

This was probably an open, wooden fishing boat with a sail. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [gathered](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [gathered around](#)

ULT

² A very large crowd [gathered](#) around him, so he got into a boat and sat in it, while the whole crowd stood on the beach.

UST

² and a very large crowd [gathered around](#) him to listen to him teach. In order to have a little room, he got into a boat and sat down to teach them. The crowd stood on the shore and listened to him.

Matthew 13:3

Connecting Statement:

Jesus describes the kingdom of heaven by telling a parable about a person who sows seeds.

Then he spoke many things to them in parables (ULT) He taught them using many parables (UST)

"Jesus told them many things in parables"

to them (ULT) them (UST)

"to the people in the crowd"

Behold (ULT) Listen (UST)

"Look" or "Listen." This word calls attention to what is to be said next. Alternate translation: "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

a farmer went out to sow seed (ULT) A man went out to his field to sow seeds (UST)

"a farmer went out to scatter seeds in a field"

Translation Words - ULT

- [parables](#)
- [farmer](#)
- [to sow seed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [parables](#)
- [A man...to sow](#)
- [seeds](#)

ULT

³ Then he spoke many things to them in [parables](#), saying, "Behold, a [farmer](#) went out [to sow seed](#)."

UST

³ He taught them using many [parables](#). He said, "Listen! [A man](#) went out to his field [to sow seeds](#)."

Matthew 13:4

As he sowed (ULT)

As he was scattering the seeds over the soil, some of the seeds (UST)

"As the farmer scattered the seed"

beside the road (ULT)

on the path (UST)

This refers to a "path" next to the field. The ground there would have been hard from people walking on it.

devoured them (ULT)

ate those seeds (UST)

"ate all the seeds"

Translation Words - ULT

- [As...sowed](#)
- [devoured](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [was scattering...seeds over the soil, some of the seeds](#)
- [ate](#)

ULT

⁴ As he [sowed](#), some seeds fell beside the road, and the birds came and [devoured](#) them.

UST

⁴ As he [was scattering](#) the [seeds over the soil, some of the seeds](#) fell on the path. But some birds came and [ate](#) those seeds.

Matthew 13:5

the rocky ground (ULT)

the rock (UST)

This is ground full of rocks with just a thin layer of soil on top of the rocks.

Immediately they sprang up (ULT)

Those seeds sprouted very soon (UST)

"The seeds quickly sprouted and grew"

ULT

⁵ Other seeds fell on the rocky ground, where they did not have much soil. Immediately they sprang up, because the soil had no depth.

UST

⁵ Other seeds fell on ground where there was not much soil on top of the rock. Those seeds sprouted very soon, because the sun quickly warmed the shallow soil.

Matthew 13:6

they were scorched (ULT)

they became too hot in the sunlight (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the sun scorched the plants, and they became too hot” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

and they withered away (ULT)

they dried up (UST)

“the plants became dry and died”

ULT

⁶ But when the sun had risen, they were scorched because they had no root, and they withered away.

UST

⁶ But when the young plants came up, they became too hot in the sunlight, and they dried up because they did not have deep roots.

Matthew 13:7

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes telling a parable about a person who sows seeds.

fell among the thorn plants (ULT)

fell...on ground that had thorny weeds (UST)

“fell where plants with thorns grew”

choked them (ULT)

they crowded out the plants (UST)

“choked the new sprouts.” Use your word for the way weeds prevent other plants from growing well.

Translation Words - ULT

- [thorn plants](#)
- [thorn plants](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [ground that had thorny weeds](#)
- [thorny weeds](#)

ULT

⁷ Other seeds fell among the [thorn plants](#). The [thorn plants](#) grew up and choked them.

UST

⁷ Other seeds fell on [ground that had thorny weeds](#). The [thorny weeds](#) grew together with the young plants, and they crowded out the plants.

Matthew 13:8

produced a crop (ULT)

produced...lot of grain (UST)

"grew more seeds" or "gave fruit"

some one hundred times as much, some sixty, and some thirty (ULT)

Some plants produced one hundred times as many seeds as were planted. Some plants produced sixty times as much. Some plants produced thirty times as much (UST)

The words "seeds," "produced," and "crop" are understood from the previous phrase. These can be expressed clearly. Alternate translation: "some seeds produced one hundred times as much crop, some seeds produced sixty times as much crop, and some seeds produced thirty times as much crop" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

one hundred times as much...sixty...thirty (ULT)

one hundred times as many seeds as were planted...Some plants produced sixty times as much...Some plants produced thirty times as much (UST)

"100...60...30" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [good](#)
- [a crop](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [good](#)
- [lot of grain](#)

ULT

⁸ Other seeds fell on [good](#) soil and produced [a crop](#), some one hundred times as much, some sixty, and some thirty.

UST

⁸ But other seeds fell on [good](#) soil, and the plants grew and produced a [lot of grain](#). Some plants produced one hundred times as many seeds as were planted. Some plants produced sixty times as much. Some plants produced thirty times as much.

Matthew 13:9

He who has ears, let him hear (ULT)

If you are able to understand this, you should consider carefully what I have just said (UST)

Jesus is emphasizing that what he has just said is important and may take some effort to understand and put into practice. The phrase “has ears” here is a metonym for the willingness to understand and obey. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Matthew 11:15](#). Alternate translation: “Let the one who is willing to listen, listen” or “The one who is willing to understand, let him understand and obey” (See: [Metonymy](#))

He who has ears, let him hear (ULT)

If you are able to understand this, you should consider carefully what I have just said (UST)

Since Jesus is speaking directly to his audience, you may prefer to use the second person here. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Matthew 11:15](#). Alternate translation: “If you are willing to listen, listen” or “If you are willing to understand, then understand and obey” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

ULT

⁹ He who has ears, let him hear.”

UST

⁹ If you are able to understand this, you should consider carefully what I have just said.”

Matthew 13:10

General Information:

Jesus explains to his disciples why he teaches with parables.

Translation Words - ULT

- [parables](#)
- [disciples](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [parables](#)
- [disciples](#)

ULT

¹⁰ The [disciples](#) came and said to Jesus, "Why do you talk to the crowd in [parables](#)?"

UST

¹⁰ The [disciples](#) approached Jesus later and asked him, "Why do you use [parables](#) when you speak to the crowd?"

Matthew 13:11

To you...has been given to understand the mysteries of the kingdom of heaven, but to them it has not been given (ULT)

God is revealing...to you...what he did not reveal before, about how he is ruling from heaven. But he has not revealed it to these other people (UST)

This can be translated with the active form and with implied information expressed clearly. Alternate translation: “God has given you the privilege of understanding mysteries of the kingdom of heaven, but God has not given it to these people” or “God has made you able to understand mysteries of the kingdom of heaven, but he has not enabled these people to understand” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

To you...has been given to understand (ULT)

God is revealing...to you (UST)

The word “You” is plural here and refers to the disciples. (See: [Forms of You](#))

the mysteries of the kingdom of heaven (ULT)

what he did not reveal before, about how he is ruling from heaven (UST)

Here “kingdom of heaven” refers to God’s rule. The phrase “kingdom of heaven” occurs only in the book of Matthew. If possible, try to keep it in your translation. Alternate translation: “the secrets about our God in heaven and his rule” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of heaven
- kingdom of heaven
- mysteries
- to understand
- kingdom

Translation Words - UST

- heaven
- about how he is ruling...from heaven
- what he did not reveal before
- God is revealing
- about how he is ruling

ULT

¹¹ He answered and said to them, “To you has been given [to understand](#) the [mysteries](#) of the [kingdom of heaven](#), but to them it has not been given.

UST

¹¹ He answered, “[God is revealing](#) to you [what he did not reveal before, about how he is ruling from heaven](#). But he has not revealed it to these other people.

Matthew 13:12

whoever...has (ULT)

Those who are able to think about what I say and understand it...Those who are able to think about what I say and understand it (UST)

“whoever has understanding” or “whoever receives what I teach”

will be given more (ULT)

God will enable them to understand more (UST)

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “God will give him more understanding” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

whoever...has...does not (ULT)

Those who are able to think about what I say and understand it...Those who are able to think about what I say and understand it...But those who are not able think carefully about what I say (UST)

“whoever does not have understanding” or “whoever does not receive what I teach”

even what he has will be taken away from him (ULT)

will forget even what they already know (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God will take away even what he has” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

¹² For whoever has, to him will be given more, and he will have an abundance. But whoever does not have, even what he has will be taken away from him.

UST

¹² Those who are able to think about what I say and understand it, God will enable them to understand more. But those who are not able think carefully about what I say will forget even what they already know.

Matthew 13:13

General Information:

In verse 14, Jesus quotes the prophet Isaiah to show that the people's failure to understand Jesus' teaching is a fulfillment of prophecy.

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to explain to his disciples why he teaches in parables.

to them...they...see (ULT)
when I speak to people...they do...understand what it means (UST)

All occurrences of "them" and "they" refer to the people in the crowd.

Though they are seeing, they do not see; and though they are hearing, they do not hear, or understand.

Jesus uses this parallelism to tell and emphasize to the disciples that the crowd refuses to understand God's truth. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Though they are seeing (ULT)
they see what I do (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) this refers to them seeing what Jesus does. Alternate translation: "Though they see what I do" or 2) this refers to their ability to see. Alternate translation: "Though they are able to see"

they do not see (ULT)
they do not understand what it means (UST)

Here "see" represents understanding. Alternate translation: "they do not understand" (See: [Metaphor](#))

though they are hearing (ULT)
they hear what I say (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) this refers to them hearing what Jesus teaches. Alternate translation: "Though they hear what I say" or 2) this refers to their ability to hear. Alternate translation: "Though they are able to hear"

they do not hear (ULT)
they do not really learn what it means (UST)

Here "hear" represents listening well. Alternate translation: "they do not listen well" or "they do not pay attention" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [parables](#)
- [understand](#)

ULT

¹³ This is why I talk to them in [parables](#): Though they are seeing, they do not see; and though they are hearing, they do not hear, or [understand](#).

UST

¹³ That is why [I use parables](#) when I speak to people, because although they see what I do, they do not understand what it means, and although they hear what I say, [they do](#) not [really learn what it means](#).

Translation Words - UST

- I use parables
- they do...really learn what it means

Matthew 13:14

To them the prophecy of Isaiah is fulfilled, that which says

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "They are fulfilling what God said long ago through the prophet Isaiah"

You will indeed hear, but you will certainly not understand; you will indeed see, but you will certainly not perceive (ULT)

You will hear what I say, but you will not understand it. You will see what I do, but you will not learn what it means (UST)

This begins a quote from the prophet Isaiah about the unbelieving people of Isaiah's day. Jesus uses this quote to describe the very crowd that was listening to him. These statements are again parallel and emphasize that the people refused to understand God's truth. (See: [Parallelism](#))

You will indeed hear, but you will certainly not understand (ULT)

You will hear what I say, but you will not understand it (UST)

"You will hear things, but you will not understand them." You can make explicit what the people will hear. Alternate translation: "You will hear what God says through the prophets, but you will not understand its true meaning" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

you will indeed see...but you will certainly not perceive (ULT)

You will see what I do...but you will not learn what it means (UST)

You can make explicit what the people will see. Alternate translation: "you will see what God does through the prophets, but you will not understand it" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [prophecy](#)
- [is fulfilled](#)
- [of Isaiah](#)
- [you will...understand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [prophet](#)
- [do completely fulfills](#)
- [Isaiah](#)
- [you will...understand it](#)

ULT

¹⁴ To them the [prophecy of Isaiah is fulfilled](#), that which says, 'You will indeed hear, but [you will](#) certainly not [understand](#); you will indeed see, but you will certainly not perceive.

UST

¹⁴ What these people [do completely fulfills](#) what God told the [prophet Isaiah](#) to say long ago, You will hear what I say, but [you will](#) not [understand it](#). You will see what I do, but you will not learn what it means.

Matthew 13:15

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes quoting the prophet Isaiah.

For this people's heart has become dull...I would heal them (ULT)
said to Isaiah, "These people...the message. They have eyes that can see, but they will...so they cannot see. They cannot see with their eyes...I would heal them (UST)

In 13:15 God describes the people of Israel as if they have physical diseases that cause them to be unable to learn, to see, and to hear. God wants them to come to him so he will heal them. This is all a metaphor describing the people's spiritual condition. It means the people are stubborn and refuse to receive and understand God's truth. If they would, then they would repent and God would forgive them and welcome them back as his people. If the meaning is clear, keep the metaphor in your translation. (See: [Metaphor](#))

For this people's heart has become dull (ULT)
said to Isaiah, "These people...the message. They have eyes that can see, but they will...so they cannot see. They cannot see with their eyes (UST)

Here "heart" refers to the mind. Alternate translation: "these people's minds are slow to learn" or "these people can no longer learn" (See: [Metonymy](#))

they are hard of hearing (ULT)
are able to hear what I say, but they will never understand (UST)

They are not physically deaf. Here "hard of hearing" means they refuse to listen and learn God's truth. Alternate translation: "they refuse to use their ears to listen" (See: [Metonymy](#))

they have closed their eyes (ULT)
never see clearly what it is they are looking at. They have closed...their eyes (UST)

They have not literally closed their eyes. This means they refuse to understand. Alternate translation: "they refuse to use their eyes to see" (See: [Metonymy](#))

so they should not see with their eyes, or hear with their ears, or understand with their hearts, so they would turn again

"so that they are not able to see with their eyes, hear with their ears, or understand with their heart, and as a result turn again"

ULT

¹⁵ For this [people's heart](#) has become dull, and they are hard of hearing, and they have closed their eyes, so they should not see with their eyes, or hear with their ears, or [understand](#) with their [hearts](#), so [they would turn again](#), and [I would heal](#) them.'

UST

¹⁵ God also said to Isaiah, "These [people](#) are able to hear what I say, but they will never understand [the message](#). [They have eyes that can see, but they will](#) never see clearly what it is they are looking at. They have closed their eyes so they cannot see. They cannot see with their eyes, and they cannot hear with their ears, and they cannot understand. If they could see and hear and [understand](#), then [they would turn to me](#)," [God says](#), "and [I would heal](#) them."

understand with their hearts (ULT)**understand (UST)**

The word “hearts” here is a metonym for people’s innermost being. You may need to use the word in your language for the source of people’s thinking and feelings. Alternate translation: “understand with their minds” (See: [Metonymy](#))

they would turn again (ULT)**they would turn to me,” God says (UST)**

“turn back to me” or “repent”

I would heal them (ULT)**I would heal them (UST)**

“have me heal them.” This means God would heal them spiritually by forgiving their sins and receiving them again as his people. Alternate translation: “have me receive them again” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [hearts](#)
- [I would heal](#)
- [people’s](#)
- [they would turn again](#)
- [understand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the message...They have eyes that can see, but they will](#)
- [understand](#)
- [I would heal](#)
- [people](#)
- [they would turn to me,” God says](#)
- [understand](#)

Matthew 13:16

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes explaining to his disciples why he teaches with parables.

But blessed are your eyes, for they see; and your ears, for they hear (ULT)

But as for you, God has made you able because you realize what I have done and because you understand what I say (UST)

Both of these statements mean the same thing. Jesus is emphasizing that they have pleased God because they have believed what Jesus has said and done. (See: [Parallelism](#))

But blessed are your eyes, for they see (ULT)

But as for you, God has made you able because you realize (UST)

Here "eyes" refers to the whole person. Alternate translation: "You are blessed because your eyes are able to see" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

your...your (ULT)

as for you, God has...as for you, God has (UST)

All occurrences of these words are plural and refer to the disciples. (See: [Forms of You](#))

your ears, for they hear (ULT)

what I have done...because you understand what I say (UST)

Here "ears" refer to the whole person. You can also make clear the understood information. Alternate translation: "you are blessed because your ears are able to hear" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [blessed are](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [made you able](#)

ULT

¹⁶ But [blessed are](#) your eyes, for they see; and your ears, for they hear.

UST

¹⁶ But as for you, God has [made you able](#) because you realize what I have done and because you understand what I say.

Matthew 13:17

For truly I say to you (ULT)

Note this: Many (UST)

"I tell you the truth." This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

to you (ULT)

Note this: Many (UST)

All occurrences of this word are plural and refer to the disciples. (See: [Forms of You](#))

the things that you see (ULT)

what you are seeing me do (UST)

You can make explicit what they have seen. Alternate translation: "the things you have seen me do" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the things that you hear (ULT)

the things that you have been hearing me say (UST)

You can make explicit what they have heard. Alternate translation: "the things you have heard me say" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [righteous men](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [truly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [righteous people who lived long ago](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [Note this: Many](#)

ULT

¹⁷ For [truly](#) I say to you that many [prophets](#) and [righteous men](#) desired to see the things that you see, and did not see them. They desired to hear the things that you hear, and did not hear them.

UST

¹⁷ [Note this: Many prophets](#) and [righteous people who lived long ago](#) longed to see what you are seeing me do, but they did not see it. They longed to hear the things that you have been hearing me say, but they did not hear what you hear me say."

Matthew 13:18

Connecting Statement:

Here Jesus begins to explain to his disciples the parable about a person who sows seeds, which he began in [Matthew 13:3](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [parable](#)
- [of the farmer who sowed his seed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the parable](#)
- [parable about the man who sowed seeds in various kinds of soil](#)

ULT

18 Listen then to the [parable of the farmer who sowed his seed](#).

UST

18 Now listen to me explain [the parable parable about the man who sowed seeds in various kinds of soil](#).

Matthew 13:19

the word of the kingdom (ULT)

Some people hear...about how God is ruling (UST)

“the message about God’s rule as king”

the evil one comes and snatches away what has been sown in his heart (ULT)

Satan, the evil one, comes and causes...to forget what they have heard (UST)

Jesus speaks of Satan causing the person to forget what he has heard as if Satan were a bird snatching the seed from the ground. Alternate translation: “The evil one causes him to forget the message that he has heard just as a bird snatches away seed from the ground” (See: [Metaphor](#))

the evil one (ULT)

Satan, the evil one (UST)

This refers to Satan. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

snatches away (ULT)

to forget what they have heard (UST)

Try to use a word that means to grab something away from someone who is the rightful owner.

what has been sown in his heart (ULT)

to forget what they have heard (UST)

This can be translated in active form: Alternate translation: “the message that God sowed in his heart” or “the message that he heard” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

in his heart (ULT)

to forget what they have heard (UST)

Here “heart” refers to the mind of the hearer. (See: [Metonymy](#))

the...This is...that was sown beside the road (ULT)

They are...the path where some of the seeds fell. Satan, the evil one...these people (UST)

“This is the meaning of the seed that was sown beside the road” or “The road where seed was sown represents this person”

beside the road (ULT)

the path where (UST)

See how you translated this in [Matthew 13:4](#).

ULT

¹⁹ When anyone hears the word of the [kingdom](#) but does not [understand it](#), the [evil one](#) comes and [snatches away what has been sown](#) in his [heart](#). This is the seed [that was sown](#) beside the road.

UST

¹⁹ Some people hear [about how God is ruling](#) but do not [understand it](#). They are like the path where [some of the seeds fell](#). [Satan, the evil one](#), comes and causes these people [to forget what they have heard](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- evil one
- kingdom
- that was sown
- what has been sown
- understand it
- snatches away

Translation Words - UST

- to forget what they have heard
- Satan, the evil one
- about how God is ruling
- some of the seeds fell
- to forget what they have heard
- do...understand it
- to forget what they have heard

Matthew 13:20

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to explain to his disciples the parable about a person who sows seeds.

That which was sown on rocky ground (ULT) **rocky places where some seeds fell (UST)**

The phrase “what was sown” refers to seed that fell. Alternate translation: “The seed that fell on rocky ground” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

That which was sown on rocky ground, this is (ULT) **They are...rocky places where some seeds fell (UST)**

“The rocky ground where seed was sown represents” or “The rocky ground where seed fell represents”

That which...hears the word (ULT) **Some people hear God’s message...the rocky places where some seeds fell (UST)**

In the parable, the seed represents the word.

the word (ULT) **God’s message...the (UST)**

This represents God’s message. Alternate translation: “the message” or “God’s teaching” (See: [Metonymy](#))

receives it with joy (ULT) **accept it joyfully (UST)**

Believing the word is spoken of as receiving it. Alternate translation: “joyfully believes it” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [receives](#)
- [was sown](#)
- [joy](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [accept](#)
- [rocky places where some seeds fell](#)
- [joyfully](#)

ULT

²⁰ That which [was sown](#) on rocky ground, this is the person who hears the word and immediately [receives](#) it with [joy](#).

UST

²⁰ Some people hear God’s message and immediately [accept](#) it [joyfully](#). They are like the [rocky places where some seeds fell](#).

Matthew 13:21

But he has no root in himself, so he only endures a short time (ULT)

But because it does not penetrate deeply into their hearts, they believe it for only a short time. They are like...plants that did not have deep roots (UST)

“Yet he has shallow roots and only lasts for a little while.” The root represents what makes a person continue to believe God’s message. Alternate translation: “But like a plant that does not grow deep roots, he only endures for a little while” (See: [Metaphor](#))

he soon falls away (ULT)

they sin by refusing to believe in it any longer (UST)

Here “falls away” means stops believing. Alternate translation: “immediately he falls away” or “he quickly stops believing the message” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [persecution](#)
- [tribulation](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [make them suffer](#)
- [When others treat them badly](#)

ULT

²¹ But he has no root in himself, so he only endures a short time. When [tribulation](#) or [persecution](#) arises because of the word, he soon falls away.

UST

²¹ But because it does not penetrate deeply into their hearts, they believe it for only a short time. They are like the plants that did not have deep roots. [When others treat them badly](#) and [make them suffer](#) because they believe in what I have told them, they sin by refusing to believe in it any longer.

Matthew 13:22

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to explain to his disciples the parable about a person who sows seeds.

That which...was sown (ULT) **thorny weeds in it...soil that had the roots of (UST)**

This refers to seed that was sown or that fell. Alternate translation: "The seed that was sown" or "The seed that fell" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

That which was sown among the thorn plants (ULT) **soil that had the roots of thorny weeds in it (UST)**

"The ground with the thorn plants where seed was sown"

That which...this is (ULT) **These people are...thorny weeds in it (UST)**

"this represents the person"

the word (ULT) **God's message...the (UST)**

"the message" or "God's teaching"

the cares of this age and the deceitfulness of riches choke the word (ULT) **desire to be rich, so they worry only about money and what they can buy with money. As a result, they forget God's message (UST)**

Jesus speaks about the cares of the world and the deceitfulness of riches distracting a person from obeying God's word as if they were weeds that could wind around a plant and keep it from growing. Alternate translation: "as weeds prevent good plants from growing, the cares of the world and the deceitfulness of riches keep this person from listening to God's word" (See: [Metaphor](#))

cares of this age (ULT) **so they worry only about money and what they can buy with money (UST)**

"the things in this world that people worry about"

the deceitfulness of riches (ULT) **desire to be rich (UST)**

Jesus describes "riches" as if it were a person who could deceive someone. This means people think having more money will make them happy, but it will not. Alternate translation: "the love of money" (See: [Personification](#))

ULT

²² That which [was sown](#) among the [thorn plants](#), this is the person who hears the word, but the cares of this [age](#) and the [deceitfulness](#) of riches choke the word, and it becomes [unfruitful](#).

UST

²² Some people hear God's message, but they [desire to be rich, so they worry only about money and what they can buy with money](#). As a result, they forget God's message and [they do not do the things that God wants them to do](#). These people are like the [soil that had the roots of thorny weeds in it](#).

it becomes unfruitful (ULT)**they do not do the things that God wants them to do (UST)**

The person is spoken of as if he were a plant. Being unfruitful represents being unproductive. Alternate translation: "he becomes unproductive" or "he does not do what God wants" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- was sown
- unfruitful
- thorn plants
- deceitfulness
- of...age

Translation Words - UST

- soil that had the roots of
- they do not do the things that God wants them to do
- thorny weeds in it
- desire to be rich
- so they worry only about money and what they can buy with money

Matthew 13:23

That which...was sown on the good soil (ULT)
But...good...But...good...soil where some of the seeds fell (UST)

"The good soil where seeds were sown"

He indeed bears fruit...yielding (ULT)
and...do...things that please God (UST)

The person is spoken of as if he were a plant. Alternate translation: "Like a healthy plant that bears a crop of fruit, he is productive" (See: [Metaphor](#))

some...one hundred times as much as was planted, some sixty, and some thirty (ULT)
Some of them do many things that please God, some do even more things that please God...some...very many (UST)

The phrase "as much as was planted" is understood following each of these numbers. See how you translated this in [Matthew 13:8](#). Alternate translation: "Some people produce 100 times as much as was planted, some produce 60 times as much, and some produce 30 times as much" (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [good](#)
- [was sown](#)
- [He...bears fruit](#)
- [understands](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [But...good](#)
- [where some of the seeds fell](#)
- [things that please God](#)
- [understand it](#)

ULT

²³ That which [was sown](#) on the [good](#) soil, this is the person who hears the word and [understands](#) it. [He](#) indeed [bears fruit](#), some yielding one hundred times as much as was planted, some sixty, and some thirty."

UST

²³ [But](#) some people hear my message and [understand it](#). Some of them do many things that please God, some do even more things that please God, and some do very many [things that please God](#). They are like the [good](#) soil [where some of the seeds fell](#)."

Matthew 13:24

Connecting Statement:

Here Jesus describes the kingdom of heaven by telling a parable about a field with both wheat and weeds growing in it. (See: [Parables](#))

The kingdom of heaven is like a man (ULT) **When God rules from heaven, it will be like a landowner who sent his servants (UST)**

The translation should not equate the kingdom of heaven to a man, but rather the kingdom of heaven is like the situation described in the parable. (See: [Simile](#))

The kingdom of heaven is like (ULT) **When God rules from heaven, it will be like a landowner (UST)**

Here “kingdom of heaven” refers to God’s rule as king. The phrase “kingdom of heaven” is used only in Matthew. If possible, use “heaven” in your translation. Alternate translation: “When our God in heaven shows himself to be king, it will be like” (See: [Metonymy](#))

good seed (ULT) **good seed (UST)**

“good food seeds” or “good grain seeds.” The audience probably thought that Jesus was talking about wheat. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of heaven
- parable
- kingdom of heaven
- good
- who sowed
- seed
- is like
- kingdom

Translation Words - UST

- from heaven
- parable
- When God rules...from heaven
- good
- to sow
- seed
- it will be like a landowner
- When God rules

ULT

²⁴ Jesus presented another [parable](#) to them. He said, “The [kingdom of heaven is like](#) a man [who sowed good seed](#) in his field.

UST

²⁴ Jesus also told the crowd another [parable](#). He said, “[When God rules from heaven, it will be like a landowner](#) who sent his servants [to sow good seed](#) in his field.

Matthew 13:25

his enemy came (ULT)

an enemy of the landowner came (UST)

“his enemy came to the field”

weeds (ULT)

weed seeds (UST)

These weeds look like food plants when they are young, but their grain is poison. Alternate translation: “bad seed” or “weed seeds”

Translation Words - ULT

- [sowed](#)
- [enemy](#)
- [slept](#)
- [wheat](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [scattered](#)
- [an enemy of the landowner](#)
- [While those servants were sleeping and not guarding the field](#)
- [wheat](#)

ULT

²⁵ But while people [slept](#), his [enemy](#) came and [sowed](#) weeds among the [wheat](#) and went away.

UST

²⁵ [While those servants were sleeping and not guarding the field, an enemy of the landowner](#) came and [scattered](#) weed seeds in the midst of the [wheat](#). Then he left.

Matthew 13:26

When the blades sprouted (ULT)

After the seeds sprouted...the green plants grew (UST)

“When the wheat seeds sprouted” or “When the plants came up”

produced a crop (ULT)

the heads of grain began (UST)

“produced grain” or “produced the wheat crop”

and...then the weeds appeared (ULT)

and...to form. But the weeds...grew (UST)

“then people could see there were weeds in the field also”

Translation Words - ULT

- a crop

Translation Words - UST

- the heads of grain

ULT

²⁶ When the blades sprouted and produced [a crop](#), then the weeds appeared also.

UST

²⁶ After the seeds sprouted and the green plants grew, [the heads of grain](#) began to form. But the weeds also grew.

Matthew 13:27

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to tell a parable about a field with both wheat and weeds growing in it.

of the landowner (ULT)

of the landowner (UST)

This is the same person who sowed good seed in his field.

did you not sow good seed in your field (ULT)
certainly...good seeds and those are the ones we sowed in your field (UST)

The servants used a question to emphasize their surprise. Alternate translation: "you sowed good seed in your field!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

did...not...you...sow (ULT)

certainly...sowed (UST)

The landowner probably had his servants plant the seeds. Alternate translation: "did we not sow" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [landowner](#)
- [Sir](#)
- [good](#)
- [you...sow](#)
- [seed](#)
- [servants](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [landowner](#)
- [Sir, you...gave us](#)
- [good](#)
- [sowed](#)
- [seeds](#)
- [servants](#)

ULT

²⁷ The [servants](#) of the [landowner](#) came and said to him, '[Sir](#), did you not [sow good seed](#) in your field? How then does it have weeds?'

UST

²⁷ So the [servants](#) of the [landowner](#) came and said to him, '[Sir, you](#) certainly [gave us good seeds](#) and those are the ones we [sowed](#) in your field. So where did the weeds come from?'

Matthew 13:28

He said to them (ULT)

The landowner said to them, 'My (UST)

"The landowner said to the servants"

So do you want us to go (ULT)

Do you want us to pull up (UST)

The word "us" refers to the servants.

Translation Words - ULT

- [An enemy](#)
- [servants](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [enemy](#)
- [His servants](#)

ULT

²⁸ He said to them, '[An enemy](#) has done this.' The [servants](#) said to him, 'So do you want us to go and pull them out?'

UST

²⁸ The landowner said to them, 'My [enemy](#) did this.' [His servants](#) said to him, 'Do you want us to pull up the weeds?'

Matthew 13:29

Connecting Statement:

Jesus concludes the parable about a field with both wheat and weeds growing in it.

But he said (ULT)

He said to them (UST)

“The landowner said to his servants”

Translation Words - ULT

- [wheat](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [wheat at the same time](#)

ULT

²⁹ But he said, ‘No. Because while you are pulling out the weeds, you might uproot the [wheat](#) with them.

UST

²⁹ He said to them, ‘No, do not do that, because you might pull up some of the [wheat at the same time](#).

Matthew 13:30

I will say to the reapers, "First pull out the weeds and tie them in bundles to burn them, but gather the wheat into my barn (ULT)

I will say to those who will reap, 'First gather the weeds, tie them into bundles to be burned. Then gather the wheat and put it into my barns (UST)

You can translate this as an indirect quote (AT): "I will tell the reapers to first gather up the weeds and tie them in bundles to burn them, and then gather the wheat into my barn" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

barn (ULT)

barns (UST)

a farm building that can be used for storing grain

Translation Words - ULT

- [tie](#)
- [the time](#)
- [harvest](#)
- [harvest](#) (2)
- [reapers](#)
- [wheat](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [tie](#)
- [that time](#)
- [harvest time](#)
- [that time](#) (2)
- [who will reap](#)
- [the wheat](#)

ULT

³⁰ Let both grow together until the [harvest](#). At [the time](#) of the [harvest](#) I will say to the [reapers](#), "First pull out the weeds and [tie](#) them in bundles to burn them, but gather the [wheat](#) into my barn.""

UST

³⁰ Let the wheat and the weeds grow together until [harvest time](#). At [that time](#) I will say to those [who will reap](#), 'First gather the weeds, [tie](#) them into bundles to be burned. Then gather [the wheat](#) and put it into my barns.""

Matthew 13:31

Connecting Statement:

Jesus describes the kingdom of heaven by telling a parable about a very small seed that grows into a very big plant. (See: [Parables](#))

The kingdom of heaven is like (ULT)

When God rules from heaven, it is like (UST)

Here “kingdom of heaven” refers to God’s rule as king. The phrase “kingdom of heaven” is used only in Matthew. If possible, use “heaven” in your translation. See how you translated this in [Matthew 13:24](#). Alternate translation: “When our God in heaven shows himself to be king, it will be like” (See: [Metonymy](#))

a mustard seed (ULT)

mustard seeds (UST)

a very small seed that grows into a large plant (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of heaven
- parable
- kingdom of heaven
- and sowed
- kingdom
- a...seed

Translation Words - UST

- from heaven, it
- this parable
- When God rules...from heaven, it
- plants them
- When God rules
- seeds

ULT

³¹ Then Jesus presented another [parable](#) to them. He said, “The [kingdom of heaven](#) is like a mustard [seed](#) which a man took [and sowed](#) in his field.

UST

³¹ Jesus also told [this parable](#): “[When God rules from heaven, it](#) is like mustard [seeds](#) that grow after a man [plants them](#) in his field.

Matthew 13:32

It is indeed the smallest of all seeds

Mustard seeds were the smallest seeds known to the original hearers. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

But when it has grown (ULT)

When the plants have fully grown (UST)

“But when the plant has grown”

greater than...it is (ULT)

they...larger...are (UST)

“it is larger than”

It becomes...a tree (ULT)

They become shrubs as big as...trees (UST)

A mustard plant can grow about 2 to 4 meters tall.

the birds of the air (ULT)

and they are large enough for the birds to (UST)

“birds”

Translation Words - ULT

- [air](#)
- [seeds](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and they are large enough for the birds to](#)
- [seeds](#)

ULT

³² It is indeed the smallest of all the [seeds](#). But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants. It becomes a tree, so that the birds of the [air](#) come and nest in its branches.”

UST

³² Although mustard seeds are among the smallest of all the [seeds](#) that people plant, here in Israel they become large plants. When the plants have fully grown, they are larger than the other garden plants. They become shrubs as big as trees, [and they are large enough for the birds to](#) build nests in their branches.”

Matthew 13:33

Connecting Statement:

Jesus describes the kingdom of heaven by telling a parable about the effect that yeast has on flour. (See: [Parables](#))

The kingdom of heaven is like yeast (ULT) When God rules from heaven, it is like...yeast (UST)

The kingdom is not like the yeast, but the spread of the kingdom is like the spreading of the yeast. (See: [Simile](#))

The kingdom of heaven is like (ULT) When God rules from heaven, it is like (UST)

Here "kingdom of heaven" refers to God's rule as king. The phrase "kingdom of heaven" is used only in Matthew. If possible, use "heaven" in your translation. See how you translated this in [Matthew 13:24](#). Alternate translation: "When our God in heaven shows himself to be king, it will be like" (See: [Metonymy](#))

three measures of flour (ULT) about forty liters of flour and (UST)

Say "a large amount of flour" or use a term that your culture uses for measuring large amounts of flour. (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

until all the dough had risen (ULT) and the bread rose (UST)

The implied information is that the yeast and the three measures of flour were made into dough for baking. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of heaven
- parable
- kingdom of heaven
- yeast
- had risen
- kingdom

Translation Words - UST

- from heaven
- this parable
- When God rules...from heaven
- yeast
- and the bread rose
- When God rules

ULT

³³ Jesus then told them another [parable](#). "The [kingdom of heaven](#) is like [yeast](#) that a woman took and mixed with three measures of flour until all the dough [had risen](#)."

UST

³³ Jesus also told [this parable](#): "[When God rules from heaven](#), it is like a woman who was making bread. She took about forty liters of flour and mixed into it a little bit of [yeast, and the bread rose](#)."

Matthew 13:34

General Information:

Here the author quotes from the Psalms to show that Jesus' teaching in parables fulfilled prophecy.

All these things Jesus spoke to the crowds in parables; and he spoke nothing to them without a parable (ULT) Jesus told the crowd parables to teach them all these things. When he spoke to them he habitually told stories like these (UST)

Both sentences mean the same thing. They are combined to emphasize that Jesus taught the crowds only with parables. (See: [Parallelism](#))

**All these things (ULT)
told...he...like these (UST)**

This refers to what Jesus taught beginning at [Matthew 13:1](#).

**he spoke nothing to them without a parable (ULT)
spoke to them...habitually told stories (UST)**

"he taught them nothing except by parables." The double negative can be expressed in a positive way. Alternate translation: "everything he taught them he said in parables" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [parables](#)
- [a parable](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [parables](#)
- [habitually told stories](#)

ULT

³⁴ All these things [Jesus](#) spoke to the crowds in [parables](#); and he spoke nothing to them without [a parable](#).

UST

³⁴ [Jesus](#) told the crowd [parables](#) to teach them all these things. When he spoke to them he [habitually told stories](#) like these.

Matthew 13:35

what had been said through the prophet might come true, when he said (ULT)
he made come true what God told one of the prophets to write long ago (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what God told one of the prophets to write long ago might come true" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

when he said (ULT)
to write long ago (UST)

"when the prophet said"

I will open...my mouth (ULT)
I will speak...I will tell parables (UST)

This is an idiom that means to speak. Alternate translation: "I will speak" (See: [Idiom](#))

things that were hidden (ULT)
what I have kept secret (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "things that God has kept hidden" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

from the foundation of the world (ULT)
since I created the world (UST)

"since the beginning of the world" or "since God created the world"

Translation Words - ULT

- [prophet](#)
- [parables](#)
- [of the world](#)
- [might come true](#)
- [the foundation](#)
- [the foundation of the world](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [prophets](#)
- [parables](#)
- [the world](#)
- [he made come true](#)
- [I created](#)
- [I created the world](#)

ULT

³⁵ This was in order that what had been said through the [prophet might come true](#), when he said, "I will open my mouth in [parables](#). I will say things that were hidden from [the foundation of the world](#)."

UST

³⁵ By doing that, [he made come true](#) what God told one of the [prophets](#) to write long ago. I will speak in [parables](#); I will tell parables to teach what I have kept secret since [I created the world](#).

Matthew 13:36

Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts to the house where Jesus and his disciples were staying. Jesus begins to explain to them the parable of the field that had both wheat and weeds, which he told beginning in [Matthew 13:24](#).

and went into the house (ULT)

he went into the house (UST)

“went indoors” or “went into the house where he was staying”

Translation Words - ULT

- [parable](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [parable](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

³⁶ Then he left the crowds and went into the [house](#). His [disciples](#) came to him, saying, “Explain to us the [parable](#) of the weeds of the field.”

UST

³⁶ After Jesus sent the crowd away, he went into the [house](#). Then the [disciples](#) approached him and said, “Explain to us the [parable](#) about the weeds that grew in the wheat field.”

Matthew 13:37

He...He who sows...the good seed (ULT)

He answered...sows the good seed (UST)

“The one who sows the good seed” or “The sower of the good seed”

the Son of Man (ULT)

the Son of Man (UST)

Jesus is referring to himself. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Son of Man](#)
- [good](#)
- [He who sows](#)
- [seed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Son of Man](#)
- [good](#)
- [sows](#)
- [seed](#)

ULT

³⁷ He answered and said, “[He who sows](#) the [good seed](#) is the [Son of Man](#).”

UST

³⁷ He answered, “The one who [sows](#) the [good seed](#) represents me, the [Son of Man](#).”

Matthew 13:38

the sons of the kingdom (ULT)

that...the people who have God as their father (UST)

The idiom “sons of” refers to those who belong to or to have the same character as someone or something. Alternate translation: “the people who belong to the kingdom” (See: [Idiom](#))

of the kingdom (ULT)

that...who have God as their father (UST)

Here “kingdom” refers to God the king. Alternate translation: “of God” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the sons of the evil one (ULT)

the people who have the devil as their father (UST)

The idiom “sons of” refers those who belong to or to have the same character as someone or something. Alternate translation: “the people who belong to the evil one” (See: [Idiom](#))

ULT

³⁸ The field is the [world](#); and the [good seed](#), these are the [sons](#) of the [kingdom](#). The weeds are the [sons](#) of the [evil one](#),

UST

³⁸ The field represents this [world, where people live](#). The [seeds](#) that [grew well](#) represent the [people who have God as their father](#). The weeds represent the [people](#) who [have the devil as their father](#)..

Translation Words - ULT

- [sons](#)
- [sons](#) (2)
- [world](#)
- [evil one](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [good](#)
- [seed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [people](#)
- [people](#) (2)
- [world, where people live](#)
- [have the devil as their father](#)
- [who have God as their father](#)
- [seeds...grew well](#)
- [seeds...grew well](#)

Matthew 13:39

the...the enemy...sowed them (ULT)

The...The...enemy...sowed the weed seeds (UST)

“the enemy who sowed the weeds”

Translation Words - ULT

- [angels](#)
- [devil](#)
- [sowed](#)
- [enemy](#)
- [harvest](#)
- [reapers](#)
- [of the age](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The...the angels](#)
- [devil](#)
- [sowed](#)
- [enemy](#)
- [time when the reapers will harvest the grain](#)
- [reapers](#)
- [the world](#)

ULT

³⁹ and the [enemy](#) who [sowed](#) them is the [devil](#). The [harvest](#) is the end [of the age](#), and the [reapers](#) are [angels](#).

UST

³⁹ The [enemy](#) who [sowed](#) the weed seeds represents the [devil](#). The [time when the reapers will harvest the grain](#) represents the time when [the world](#) will end. The [reapers](#) represent [the angels](#).

Matthew 13:40

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes explaining to his disciples the parable of the field with both wheat and weeds.

Therefore, as the weeds are gathered up and burned with fire (ULT)

The weeds are gathered and burned...It will be like this (UST)

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation:
 "Therefore, as people gather up weeds and burn them in the fire"
 (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [with fire](#)
- [as](#)
- [age](#)
- [burned](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [burned](#)
- [It will be like this](#)
- [when the world will end](#)
- [burned](#)

ULT

⁴⁰ Therefore, [as](#) the weeds are gathered up and [burned with fire](#), so will it be at the end of the [age](#).

UST

⁴⁰ The weeds are gathered and [burned](#). That represents what will happen when God judges all people, [when the world will end](#). [It will be like this](#):

Matthew 13:41

The Son of Man will send out his angels (ULT)

I, the Son of Man, will send my angels (UST)

Here Jesus is speaking of himself. Alternate translation: “I, the Son of Man, will send out my angels” (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

angels...who commit iniquity (ULT)

angels...that...all...who violate God’s will (UST)

“those who are lawless” or “evil people”

Translation Words - ULT

- angels
- Son of Man
- kingdom
- who commit
- will send out
- iniquity

Translation Words - UST

- angels
- Son of Man
- among...that I am ruling the things
- all...who violate
- will send
- God’s will

ULT

⁴¹ The [Son of Man will send out](#) his [angels](#), and they will gather out of his [kingdom](#) all the things that cause sin and those [who commit iniquity](#).

UST

⁴¹ I, the [Son of Man, will send](#) my [angels](#), and they will gather from [among](#) all [that I am ruling the things](#) that cause others to sin and [all](#) those [who violate God’s will](#).

Matthew 13:42

the furnace of fire (ULT) **the fires of hell. There (UST)**

This is a metaphor for the fires of hell. If the term “furnace” is not known, “oven” can be used. Alternate translation: “fiery furnace” (See: [Metaphor](#))

weeping and grinding of teeth (ULT) **those people will weep...and grind their teeth because of the great pain that they are suffering (UST)**

“Grinding of teeth” here is a symbolic act, representing extreme sadness and suffering. See how you translated this in [Matthew 8:12](#). Alternate translation: “weeping and showing that they are suffering very much” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of fire](#)
- [furnace](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [fires of hell. There](#)
- [fires of hell. There](#)

ULT

⁴² They will throw them into the [furnace of fire](#), where there will be weeping and grinding of teeth.

UST

⁴² The angels will throw those people into the [fires of hell. There](#) those people will weep and grind their teeth because of the great pain that they are suffering.

Matthew 13:43

will...shine like the sun (ULT)

will shine out as brightly as the sun shines. They will shine out because God (UST)

If this simile is not understandable in your language, you can use: "be as easy to see as the sun." (See: [Simile](#))

of...Father (ULT)

Father (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

He who has ears, let him hear (ULT)

If you are able to understand this, you should think carefully about what I have just said (UST)

Jesus is emphasizing that what he has just said is important and may take some effort to understand and put into practice. The phrase "has ears" here is a metonym for the willingness to understand and obey. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Matthew 11:15](#). Alternate translation: "Let the one who is willing to listen, listen" or "The one who is willing to understand, let him understand and obey" (See: [Metonymy](#))

the...let him hear (ULT)

the...If you are able to understand this (UST)

Since Jesus is speaking directly to his audience, you may prefer to use the second person here. See how you translated this in [Matthew 11:15](#). Alternate translation: "If you are willing to listen, listen" or "If you are willing to understand, then understand and obey" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [righteous people](#)
- [of...Father](#)
- [kingdom of...Father](#)
- [like](#)
- [kingdom](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [people who have lived as he wants them to](#)
- [Father](#)
- [Father...will rule over them](#)
- [as brightly as](#)
- [will rule over them](#)

ULT

⁴³ Then will the [righteous people](#) shine [like](#) the sun in the [kingdom](#) of their [Father](#). He who has ears, let him hear.

UST

⁴³ However, the [people who have lived as he wants them to](#) will shine out [as brightly as](#) the sun shines. They will shine out because God, their [Father](#), [will rule over them](#). If you are able to understand this, you should think carefully about what I have just said."

Matthew 13:44

General Information:

In these two parables, Jesus uses two similes to teach his disciples what the kingdom of heaven is like. (See: [Simile](#))

Connecting Statement:

Jesus describes the kingdom of heaven by telling two parables about people who sold their possessions to purchase something of great value. (See: [Parables](#))

The kingdom of heaven is like (ULT)

God's ruling from heaven is so precious it is like (UST)

Here "kingdom of heaven" refers to God's rule as king. The phrase "kingdom of heaven" is used only in Matthew. If possible, use "heaven" in your translation. See how you translated this in [Matthew 13:24](#). Alternate translation: "When our God in heaven shows himself to be king, it will be like" (See: [Metonymy](#))

is like...a treasure hidden in a field (ULT)

is like...a great treasure that another person had buried in a field (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "a treasure that someone had hidden in a field" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

a treasure (ULT)

a great treasure that another person (UST)

a very valuable and precious thing or collection of things

and hid (ULT)

buried it again (UST)

"covered it up"

sells everything that he possesses, and buys that field (ULT)

sold all...possessions...to buy that field. He then went...bought the field, and so he was able to acquire that treasure (UST)

The implied information is that the person buys the field to take possession of the hidden treasure. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of heaven
- kingdom of heaven
- joy
- like
- kingdom

ULT

⁴⁴ The [kingdom of heaven](#) is [like](#) a treasure hidden in a field, which a man found and hid. Because of his [joy](#) over it, he goes and sells everything that he possesses, and buys that field.

UST

⁴⁴ "God's ruling from heaven is so [precious](#) it is [like](#) a man who found a great treasure that another person had buried in a field. When this man dug it up, he buried it again so no one else would find it. Then he [happily](#) went and sold all his possessions to obtain money to buy that field. He then went and bought the field, and so he was able to acquire that treasure.

Translation Words - UST

- from heaven is so precious it
- God's ruling...from heaven is so precious it
- happily
- like
- God's ruling

Matthew 13:45

like...a man who is a merchant looking for valuable pearls (ULT)
is so precious it...like what...a merchant did who was looking for good quality pearls to buy (UST)

The implied information is that the man was looking for valuable pearls that he could buy. (See: [Simile](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

a man who is a merchant (ULT)
a merchant did who (UST)

a trader or wholesale dealer who often obtains merchandise from distant places

valuable pearls (ULT)
good quality pearls to buy (UST)

A “pearl” is a smooth, hard, shiny, white or light-colored bead formed inside mollusks in the sea and highly prized as a gem or to make into valuable jewelry. Alternate translation: “fine pearls” or “beautiful pearls” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of heaven
- kingdom of heaven
- valuable
- looking for
- like
- kingdom

Translation Words - UST

- from heaven
- God ruling...from heaven
- good quality
- was looking for
- is so precious it...like what
- God ruling

ULT

⁴⁵ Again, the [kingdom of heaven](#) is [like](#) a man who is a merchant [looking for valuable](#) pearls.

UST

⁴⁵ Also, [God ruling from heaven is so precious it](#) is [like what](#) a merchant did who [was looking for good quality](#) pearls to buy.

Matthew 13:46

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- of very great value

Translation Words - UST

- very costly

ULT

⁴⁶ When he found one pearl [of very great value](#), he went and sold everything that he possessed and bought it.

UST

⁴⁶ When he found one [very costly](#) pearl that was for sale, he sold all his possessions to acquire enough money to buy that pearl. Then he went and bought it.

Matthew 13:47

Connecting Statement:

Jesus describes the kingdom of heaven by telling a parable about fishermen who use a large net to catch fish. (See: [Parables](#))

the kingdom of heaven is like a net (ULT)

The kingdom is not like the net, but the kingdom draws all kinds of people like a net catches all kinds of fish. (See: [Simile](#))

the kingdom of heaven is like (ULT)

Here “kingdom of heaven” refers to God’s rule as king. The phrase “kingdom of heaven” is used only in Matthew. If possible, use “heaven” in your translation. See how you translated this in [Matthew 13:24](#). Alternate translation: “When our God in heaven shows himself to be king, it will be like” (See: [Metonymy](#))

like...a net that was cast into the sea (ULT)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “like a net that some fishermen cast into the sea” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

that was cast into the sea (ULT)

“was thrown into the sea”

that gathered fish of every kind (ULT)

They caught all kinds of fish, both useful (UST)

“caught all kinds of fish”

Translation Words - ULT

- [of heaven](#)
- [kingdom of heaven](#)
- [kind](#)
- [like](#)
- [kingdom](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [from heaven](#)
- [When God rules...from heaven](#)
- [kinds](#)
- [it is like what certain fishermen did with](#)
- [When God rules](#)

ULT

⁴⁷ Again, the [kingdom of heaven](#) is [like](#) a net that was cast into the sea, and that gathered fish of every [kind](#).

UST

⁴⁷ [When God rules from heaven, it is like what certain fishermen did with](#) the fish they caught in a lake with a large net. They caught all [kinds](#) of fish, both useful and worthless fish.

Matthew 13:48

the fishermen drew it up on the beach (ULT)
pulled it up onto the shore (UST)

“pulled the net up onto the beach” or “pulled the net ashore”

the good fish (ULT)
the good fish (UST)

“the good ones”

the...worthless things (ULT)
the...worthless ones (UST)

“the bad fish” or “the inedible fish”

they threw (ULT)
away (UST)

“did not keep”

Translation Words - ULT

- [good fish](#)
- [worthless things](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [good fish](#)
- [worthless ones](#)

ULT

⁴⁸ When it was filled, the fishermen drew it up on the beach. Then they sat down and gathered the [good fish](#) into containers, but the [worthless things](#) they threw away.

UST

⁴⁸ When the net was full, the fishermen pulled it up onto the shore. Then they sat there and put the [good fish](#) into buckets, but they threw the [worthless ones](#) away.

Matthew 13:49

Connecting Statement:

Jesus explains the parable about fishermen who use a large net to catch fish.

will come (ULT)

will come to where God is judging people (UST)

“will come out” or “will go out” or “will come from heaven”

the wicked from among the righteous (ULT)

the wicked people from the righteous ones (UST)

These nominal adjectives can be stated as adjectives. Alternate translation: “the wicked people from the righteous people” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [righteous](#)
- [angels](#)
- [wicked](#)
- [age](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [righteous ones](#)
- [angels](#)
- [wicked people](#)
- [world](#)

ULT

⁴⁹ It will be this way at the end of the [age](#). The [angels](#) will come and separate the [wicked](#) from among the [righteous](#).

UST

⁴⁹ This is like what will happen to people when the [world](#) ends. The [angels](#) will come to where God is judging people and will separate the [wicked people](#) from the [righteous ones](#).

Matthew 13:50

They will throw...them (ULT)

They will throw...the wicked people (UST)

“The angels will throw the wicked people”

the furnace of fire (ULT)

the fire in hell (UST)

This is a metaphor for the fires of hell. If the term “furnace” is not known, “oven” can be used. See how you translated this in [Matthew 13:42](#). Alternate translation: “fiery furnace” (See: [Metaphor](#))

weeping and grinding of teeth (ULT)

will weep and gnash their teeth because of the intense pain they (UST)

“Grinding of teeth” here is a symbolic act, representing extreme sadness and suffering. See how you translated this in [Matthew 8:12](#). Alternate translation: weeping and expressing their extreme suffering.” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of fire
- furnace

Translation Words - UST

- the fire in hell
- the fire in hell

ULT

⁵⁰ They will throw them into the [furnace of fire](#), where there will be weeping and grinding of teeth.

UST

⁵⁰ They will throw the wicked people into [the fire in hell](#). And those wicked people will weep and gnash their teeth because of the intense pain they are suffering.”

Matthew 13:51

Connecting Statement:

Jesus describes the kingdom of heaven by telling a parable about a person who manages a household. This is the end of the part of the story about Jesus teaching the crowds about the kingdom of heaven through using parables.

Have you understood all these things?" The disciples said to him, "Yes (ULT)
Then Jesus asked the disciples, "Do you understand all these parables I have told you?" They said to him, "Yes, we understand them (UST)

If necessary, both direct quotations can be translated as indirect quotations. Alternate translation: "Jesus asked them if they had understood all this, and they said that they did understand." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Have you understood](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then Jesus asked the disciples, "Do you understand](#)

ULT

⁵¹ [Have you understood](#) all these things?" The disciples said to him, "Yes."

UST

⁵¹ [Then Jesus asked the disciples, "Do you understand](#) all these parables I have told you?" They said to him, "Yes, we understand them."

Matthew 13:52

who has become a disciple to the kingdom of heaven (ULT)

and interpreters who understand these parables and act accordingly...under the rule of God from heaven (UST)

Here “kingdom of heaven” refers to God’s rule as king. The phrase “kingdom of heaven” is used only in the book of Matthew. If possible, keep “heaven” in your translation. Alternate translation: “has learned the truth about our God in heaven, who is king” or “has submitted himself to God’s rule” (See: [Metonymy](#))

is like a man who is the owner of a house, who draws out new things and old things from his treasure (ULT)
are like a house owner who shares both new things and old things out of his storage room (UST)

Jesus speaks another parable. He compares scribes, who know very well the scriptures that Moses and the prophets wrote, and who also now accept Jesus’ teachings, to a house owner who uses both old and new treasures. (See: [Parables](#))

his treasure (ULT)

his storage room (UST)

A treasure is a very valuable and precious thing or a collection of things. Here it may refer to the place where these things are stored, the “treasury” or “storeroom.”

Translation Words - ULT

- [of heaven](#)
- [scribe](#)
- [who is the owner of a house](#)
- [who has become a disciple](#)
- [kingdom of heaven](#)
- [like](#)
- [kingdom](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [from heaven](#)
- [and interpreters who understand these parables and act accordingly](#)
- [a house owner who shares both](#)
- [and interpreters who understand these parables and act accordingly](#)
- [under the rule of God...from heaven](#)
- [like](#)
- [under the rule of God](#)

ULT

⁵² Then Jesus said to them, “Therefore every [scribe who has become a disciple](#) to the [kingdom of heaven](#) is [like](#) a man [who is the owner of a house](#), who draws out new things and old things from his treasure.”

UST

⁵² Then he said, “Those teachers [and interpreters who understand these parables and act accordingly under the rule of God from heaven](#) are [like a house owner who shares both](#) new things and old things out of his storage room.”

Matthew 13:53

Then it came about that when (ULT) When...had finished telling...and (UST)

This phrase shifts the story from Jesus' teachings to what happened next. Alternate translation: "Then" or "After"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [parables](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [parables, he took](#)

ULT

⁵³ Then it came about that when [Jesus](#) had finished these [parables](#), he departed from that place.

UST

⁵³ When [Jesus](#) had finished telling these [parables, he took](#) the disciples and left that area.

Matthew 13:54

General Information:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story that runs through [Matthew 17:27](#), where Matthew tells of continued opposition to Jesus' ministry and teaching about the kingdom of heaven. Here, the people of Jesus' home town reject him.

his own region (ULT) the hometown of Jesus (UST)

"his hometown." This refers to the town of Nazareth, where Jesus grew up. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

in their synagogue (ULT) in the synagogue (UST)

The pronoun "their" is referring to the people of the region.

the people...were astonished (ULT) On the Sabbath he...were astonished (UST)

"they were amazed"

Where did this man get this wisdom and these miraculous powers (ULT) So how is it that he knows so much and understands so much? And how is it that he is able to do such miracles (UST)

The people believed that Jesus was just an ordinary man. They use this question to express their amazement that he was so wise and was able to do miracles. Alternate translation: "How can an ordinary man like this be so wise and do such great miracles?" or "It is strange that he is able to speak with such wisdom and do these miracles!" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [synagogue](#)
- [miraculous powers](#)
- [wisdom](#)
- [and taught](#)
- [were astonished](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [synagogue](#)
- [miracles](#)
- [knows so much and understands so much](#)
- [began to teach the people](#)
- [were astonished](#)

ULT

⁵⁴ Then Jesus entered into his own region [and taught](#) the people in their [synagogue](#). The result was that they [were astonished](#) and said, "Where did this man get this [wisdom](#) and these [miraculous powers](#)?"

UST

⁵⁴ Then they went to the town of Nazareth, the hometown of Jesus. On the Sabbath he [began to teach the people](#) in the [synagogue](#). The result was that the people there [were astonished](#). But some said, "This man is just an ordinary person like us! So how is it that he [knows so much and understands so much](#)? And how is it that he is able to do such [miracles](#)?"

Matthew 13:55

Is not this man the son of the carpenter? Is not his mother called Mary? Are not his brothers James, Joseph, Simon, and Judas (ULT)

He is just the son of the carpenter. Certainly! His mother is named Mary, and his younger brothers are James, Joseph, Simon and Judas (UST)

The crowd uses these questions to express their belief that they know who Jesus is and that he is just an ordinary man. Alternate translation: "He is just the son of a carpenter. We know his mother Mary, and his brothers James, Joseph, Simon, and Judas." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

the son of the carpenter (ULT)

just the son of the carpenter (UST)

A carpenter is someone who makes things with wood or stone. If "carpenter" is not known, "builder" can be used.

Translation Words - ULT

- Is...called
- Are not...brothers
- son
- Mary
- James

Translation Words - UST

- is named Mary
- younger brothers
- son
- is named Mary
- are James

ULT

⁵⁵ Is not this man the [son](#) of the carpenter? Is not his mother [called Mary](#)? [Are not](#) his [brothers James](#), Joseph, Simon, and Judas?

UST

⁵⁵ He is just the [son](#) of the carpenter. Certainly! His mother [is named Mary](#), and his [younger brothers are James](#), Joseph, Simon and Judas!

Matthew 13:56

Are not all his...sisters...with us (ULT)
all of his sisters also live here in our town (UST)

The crowd uses these questions to express their belief that they know who Jesus is and that he is just an ordinary man. Alternate translation: "And all his sisters are with us, too." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Where then did he get all these things (ULT)
So how is he able to teach and do all these things (UST)

The crowd uses this question to show their understanding that Jesus must have gotten his abilities from somewhere. They were probably expressing their doubt that he got his abilities from God. Alternate translation: "He must have gotten his ability to do these things from somewhere!" or "We do not know where he got these abilities!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

all these things (ULT)
he able to teach and do all these things (UST)

This refers to Jesus' wisdom and ability to do miracles.

Translation Words - ULT

- [sisters](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sisters also](#)

ULT

⁵⁶ Are not all his [sisters](#) with us? Where then did he get all these things?"

UST

⁵⁶ And all of his [sisters also](#) live here in our town. So how is he able to teach and do all these things?"

Matthew 13:57

They were offended...by him (ULT)
refused to accept that Jesus had such authority (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The people of Jesus' hometown took offense at him" or "The people rejected Jesus" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

A prophet is not without honor (ULT)
prophets everywhere...not honored...not honor us (UST)

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "A prophet receives honor everywhere" or "People everywhere honor a prophet" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

his own country (ULT)
hometowns we are (UST)

"his own region" or "his own hometown"

by...his own...his...family (ULT)
Jesus...hometowns we are...our own...families do (UST)

"in his own home"

Translation Words - ULT

- [But Jesus](#)
- [A prophet](#)
- [family](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [prophets everywhere](#)
- [families do](#)

ULT

⁵⁷ They were offended by him. [But Jesus](#) said to them, "[A prophet](#) is not without honor except in his own country and in his own [family](#)."

UST

⁵⁷ The people there refused to accept that Jesus had such authority. So [Jesus](#) said to them, "People honor me and other [prophets everywhere](#) else we go, but in our hometowns we are not honored, and even our own [families do](#) not honor us!"

Matthew 13:58

He did...not do...many miracles there (ULT)

Jesus did not perform many miracles there (UST)

“Jesus did not do many miracles in his own hometown”

Translation Words - ULT

- [miracles](#)
- [unbelief](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [miracles](#)
- [did not believe](#)

ULT

⁵⁸ He did not do many [miracles](#) there because of their [unbelief](#).

UST

⁵⁸ Jesus did not perform many [miracles](#) there because the people [did not believe](#) that he had such authority.

Matthew 14

Matthew 14 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Verses 1 and 2 continue the account from chapter 13. Verses 3-12 stop the account and speak of things that happened earlier, possibly soon after Satan tempted Jesus (see Matthew 4:12). Verse 13 continues the account from verse 2. Be sure to have words in verses 3-12 that tell the reader that Matthew has stopped his account to give new information before he continues. (See: [Background Information](#))

Possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Passive voice

Many sentences in this chapter tell that a person had something happen to him without saying who caused that something to happen. For example, the writer does not tell who brought John's head to Herodias's daughter (Matthew 14:11). You may have to translate the sentence so that it tells the reader who performed the action. (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Matthew 14:1

General Information:

These verses explain Herod's reaction when he heard about Jesus. This event happens some time after the events that follow in the narrative. (See: [Order of Events](#))

About that time (ULT)

During that time (UST)

"In those days" or "While Jesus was ministering in Galilee"

heard...the news about Jesus (ULT)

heard...about...reports...Jesus performing miracles (UST)

"heard reports about Jesus" or "heard about the fame of Jesus"

Translation Words - ULT

- [about Jesus](#)
- [tetrarch](#)
- [Herod](#)
- [time](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus performing miracles](#)
- [ruler](#)
- [Herod Antipas](#)
- [time](#)

ULT

¹ About that [time](#), [Herod](#) the [tetrarch](#) heard the news [about Jesus](#).

UST

¹ During that [time](#) the [ruler Herod Antipas](#) heard reports about [Jesus performing miracles](#).

Matthew 14:2

He said (ULT)

He said to (UST)

"Herod said"

has risen from the dead (ULT)

risen from the dead (UST)

The words "from the dead" speak of all dead people together in the underworld. To rise from the dead speaks of coming alive again.

Therefore...these powers are at work in him (ULT)

that is why he has power to do these miracles (UST)

Some Jews at that time believed if a person came back from the dead he would have powers to do mighty things.

Translation Words - ULT

- powers
- John the Baptist
- dead
- has risen
- to...servants

Translation Words - UST

- he has power to do
- John the Baptizer. He must have
- dead
- risen
- servants

ULT

² He said to his [servants](#), "This is [John the Baptist](#); he [has risen](#) from the [dead](#). Therefore these [powers](#) are at work in him."

UST

² He said to his [servants](#), "That must be [John the Baptizer](#). [He must have risen](#) from the [dead](#), and that is why [he has power to do](#) these miracles."

Matthew 14:3

General Information:

Matthew recounts the story of John the Baptist's death in order to show why Herod reacted the way he did when he heard about Jesus.

Connecting Statement:

Here the author begins to tell about how Herod had executed John the Baptist. These events occur some time before the event in the previous verses. (See: [Order of Events](#))

For Herod had arrested John, bound him, and put him in prison (ULT)

It says that Herod did these things because he ordered others to do them for him. Alternate translation: "Herod ordered his soldiers to arrest and bind John the Baptist and put him in prison" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Philip's wife (ULT)

Philip was Herod's brother. Herod had taken Philip's wife to be his own wife. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- bound
- brother
- For Herod
- John
- Herodias
- prison
- had arrested

Translation Words - UST

- bind, bond, bound
- brother
- Herod, Herod Antipas
- John (the Baptist)
- Herodias
- prison, prisoner, imprison
- seize, seizure

ULT

³ [For Herod](#) [had arrested John](#), [bound](#) him, and put him in [prison](#) because of [Herodias](#), his [brother](#) Philip's wife.

UST

³⁻⁴ This is what happened to make Herod think this. Herod had married Herodias, the wife of his brother Philip, while Philip was still living. So John kept saying to him, "What you have done is against God's law!" Then, to please Herodias, Herod told his soldiers to arrest John. They bound him with chains and put him in prison.

Matthew 14:4

For...had said...John...to have her (ULT)

If needed, you can present the events of 14:3-4 in the order that they happened, as in the UST. (See: [Order of Events](#))

For John had said to him, "It is not lawful for you to have her (ULT)

This can be expressed as an indirect quote, if needed. Alternate translation: "For John had said to Herod that it was not lawful for Herod to have Herodias as his wife." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

For John had said to him (ULT)

"For John had kept saying to Herod"

It is not lawful (ULT)

Philip was still alive when Herod married Herodias. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [John](#)
- [It is...lawful](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [John \(the Baptist\)](#)
- [lawful, unlawful, not lawful, lawless, lawlessness](#)

ULT

⁴ For [John](#) had said to him, "[It is](#) not [lawful](#) for you to have her."

UST

³⁻⁴ This is what happened to make Herod think this. Herod had married Herodias, the wife of his brother Philip, while Philip was still living. So John kept saying to him, "What you have done is against God's law!" Then, to please Herodias, Herod told his soldiers to arrest John. They bound him with chains and put him in prison.

Matthew 14:5

but he feared (ULT)
he was afraid (UST)

“Herod feared”

him...they regarded (ULT)
John...believed (UST)

“they regarded John”

Translation Words - ULT

- [but he feared](#)
- [a prophet](#)
- [as](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [he was afraid](#)
- [a prophet](#)
- [that John was...speaking for God](#)

ULT

⁵ Herod wanted to put him to death, [but he feared](#) the people, because they regarded him [as a prophet](#).

UST

⁵ Herod wanted to order his men to execute John, but [he was afraid](#) of the general public, because they believed [that John was a prophet speaking for God](#).

Matthew 14:6**in their midst (ULT)
for his guests (UST)**

You can make explicit the implicit information. Alternate translation: "in the midst of the guests attending the birthday celebration" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Herod's](#)
- [Herod](#)
- [of Herodias](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [One day, Herod gave a](#)
- [Herod very much](#)
- [Herodias](#)

ULT

⁶ But when [Herod's](#) birthday came, the daughter [of Herodias](#) danced in their midst and pleased [Herod](#).

UST

⁶ [One day, Herod gave a](#) party to celebrate his birthday, and [Herodias'](#) daughter danced for his guests. Her dancing pleased [Herod very much](#),

Matthew 14:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [he promised](#)
- [an oath](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [he promised...he asked God to be a witness that he had made this promise](#)
- [he promised...he asked God to be a witness that he had made this promise](#)

ULT

⁷ In response, [he promised](#) with [an oath](#) to give her whatever she should ask.

UST

⁷ so [he promised](#) to give her whatever she asked, and [he asked God to be a witness that he had made this promise.](#)

Matthew 14:8

After being instructed by her mother (ULT)
So Herodias' daughter went and asked her mother
what to ask for. Her mother told her what to say. So
her daughter went back and (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "After her mother instructed her" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

After being instructed (ULT)
So Herodias' daughter went and asked...to ask for. Her
mother told her what to say. So her daughter went
back and (UST)

"coached" or "told"

she said (ULT)
said to Herod...I want you to...here (UST)

"the daughter of Herodias said to Herod"

a platter (ULT)
a platter to show that he is really dead (UST)

a very large plate

Translation Words - ULT

- [of John the Baptist](#)
- [head](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [John the Baptizer](#)
- [head of](#)

ULT

⁸ After being instructed by her mother, she said, "Give me here, on a platter, the [head of John the Baptist](#)."

UST

⁸ So Herodias' daughter went and asked her mother what to ask for. Her mother told her what to say. So her daughter went back and said to Herod, "I want you to cut off the [head of John the Baptizer](#) and bring it here on a platter to show that he is really dead!"

Matthew 14:9

The king was very upset (ULT)

The king was now very sorry that he had promised to give Herodias' daughter whatever she wanted. But because (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Her request made the king very upset" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

The king (ULT)

The king (UST)

"King Herod"

he ordered that it be granted to her (ULT)

he ordered his servants to do what she wanted (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he ordered his men to do what she said" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [he ordered that](#)
- [king](#)
- [oath](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [he ordered](#)
- [king](#)
- [he had called on God to hear him make that promise](#)

ULT

⁹ The [king](#) was very upset, but because of his [oath](#) and because of those at dinner with him, [he ordered that](#) it be granted to her.

UST

⁹ The [king](#) was now very sorry that he had promised to give Herodias' daughter whatever she wanted. But because [he had called on God to hear him make that promise](#), and because all his guests had heard him do so, he felt that he had to do what he had said. So [he ordered](#) his servants to do what she wanted.

Matthew 14:10

Connecting Statement:

This concludes the account of how Herod executed John the Baptist.

Translation Words - ULT

- [John](#)
- [prison](#)
- [He sent](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [John's head](#)
- [prison](#)
- [He sent soldiers to go](#)

ULT

¹⁰ [He sent](#) and beheaded [John](#) in the [prison](#).

UST

¹⁰ [He sent soldiers to go](#) to the [prison](#) and cut off [John's head](#).

Matthew 14:11

his head was brought on a platter and given to the girl (ULT)

put John's head on a platter and brought it to the girl (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone brought his head on a platter and gave it to the girl" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

a platter (ULT)

a platter (UST)

a very large plate

to the girl (ULT)

to the girl (UST)

Use the word for a young, unmarried girl.

Translation Words - ULT

- [head](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [head](#)

ULT

¹¹ Then his [head](#) was brought on a platter and given to the girl and she took it to her mother.

UST

¹¹ They did that, and they put John's [head](#) on a platter and brought it to the girl. Then the girl took it to her mother.

Matthew 14:12

his disciples (ULT)

Later John's disciples...John's (UST)

"the disciples of John"

the corpse (ULT)

body (UST)

"the dead body"

they went and told Jesus (ULT)

to...they went...told Jesus what had happened (UST)

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "the disciples of John went and told Jesus what had happened to John the Baptist" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [corpse](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [buried](#)
- [and told](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus what had happened](#)
- [body](#)
- [Later John's disciples](#)
- [buried](#)
- [told](#)

ULT

¹² Then his [disciples](#) came, took away the [corpse](#), and [buried](#) it. After this, they went [and told Jesus](#).

UST

¹² [Later John's disciples](#) went to the prison, took John's [body](#) and [buried](#) it. Then they went and [told Jesus what had happened](#).

Matthew 14:13

General Information:

These verses give background information about the miracle that Jesus is about to perform by feeding five thousand people. (See: [Background Information](#))

Connecting Statement:

These verses describe how Jesus reacted when he heard that Herod had executed John the Baptist.

Now (ULT) and (UST)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Matthew starts to tell a new part of the story.

when...heard this (ULT) After...heard that news, he took just (UST)

"heard what happened to John" or "heard the news about John"

he withdrew (ULT) went (UST)

"he left" or "he went away from the crowd." It is implied that Jesus' disciples went with him. Alternate translation: "Jesus and his disciples left" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

from there (ULT) went (UST)

"from that place"

When the crowds heard of it (ULT) After the crowds heard about where they had gone, they...and (UST)

"When the crowds heard where Jesus had gone" or "When the crowds heard that he had left"

the crowds (ULT) After the crowds (UST)

"the crowds of people" or "the huge group of people" or "the people"

on foot (ULT) walking along the shore (UST)

This means that the people in the crowd were walking. (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)

ULT

¹³ Now when [Jesus](#) heard this, he withdrew from there in a boat to an [isolated](#) place by himself. When the crowds heard of it, they followed him on foot from the cities.

UST

¹³ After [Jesus](#) heard that news, he took just the disciples with him and went by boat on the Sea of Galilee to [a place where no one lived](#). After the crowds heard about where they had gone, they left their towns and followed them, walking along the shore.

- isolated

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- a place where no one lived

Matthew 14:14

Then Jesus came and saw the large crowd (ULT)
When...came to the shore, he saw a very large crowd
waiting for him. He (UST)

"When Jesus came ashore, he saw a large crowd"

Translation Words - ULT

- [He had compassion](#)
- [healed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [felt sorry](#)
- [he healed](#)

ULT

14 Then Jesus came and saw the large crowd. [He had compassion](#) on them and [healed](#) their sick.

UST

14 When Jesus came to the shore, he saw a very large crowd waiting for him. He [felt sorry](#) for them, and [he healed](#) the sick people who were among them.

Matthew 14:15

Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of Jesus feeding five thousand people with only five small loaves of bread and two small fish.

the disciples came to him (ULT)

the disciples...came...to Jesus (UST)

"Jesus' disciples came to him"

Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [a deserted](#)
- [hour](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [disciples](#)
- [is a place where nobody lives](#)
- [it is very late](#)

ULT

15 When the evening had come, the [disciples](#) came to him, saying, "This is [a deserted](#) place, and the [hour](#) is already late. Dismiss the crowds, so that they can go into the villages and buy food for themselves."

UST

15 When it was nearly evening, the [disciples](#) came to Jesus and said, "This [is a place where nobody lives](#), and [it is very late](#). Tell the crowds to go away so they can buy food in the towns nearby."

Matthew 14:16

They have no need (ULT)

They do not need (UST)

“The people in the crowd have no need”

You give them something (ULT)

to get food. Instead, you yourselves give them (UST)

The word “You” is plural, referring to the disciples. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [But Jesus](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)

ULT

¹⁶ [But Jesus](#) said to them, “They have no need to go away. You give them something to eat.”

UST

¹⁶ But [Jesus](#) said to his disciples, “They do not need to leave to get food. Instead, you yourselves give them something to eat!”

Matthew 14:17

They said to him (ULT)

The disciples said, "But we (UST)

"The disciples said to Jesus"

five loaves of bread (ULT)

five loaves of bread (UST)

A loaf of bread is a lump of dough that is shaped and baked.

Translation Words - ULT

- [loaves of bread](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [loaves of bread](#)

ULT

¹⁷ They said to him, "We have nothing here except five [loaves of bread](#) and two fish."

UST

¹⁷ The disciples said, "But we have only five [loaves of bread](#) and two cooked fish here!"

Matthew 14:18

Bring them here to me (ULT)

Bring them to me (UST)

“Bring the loaves and fish to me”

ULT

18 He said, “Bring them here to me.”

UST

18 He said, “Bring them to me!”

Matthew 14:19

Connecting Statement:

This concludes the account of Jesus feeding five thousand people.

to recline (ULT)

sit (UST)

“lie down.” Use the verb for the position people in your culture usually are in when they eat.

He took (ULT)

Then he took (UST)

“He held in his hands.” He did not steal them. (See: [Idiom](#))

broke...the...loaves (ULT)

broke them into pieces. Then...the...loaves (UST)

“tore the loaves”

the...loaves (ULT)

the...loaves (UST)

“loaves of bread” or “whole breads”

Looking up (ULT)

He looked (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “While looking up” or 2) “After looking up.”

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [he blessed](#)
- [Then Jesus ordered](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [and the disciples gave them](#)
- [loaves](#)
- [loaves \(2\)](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [toward heaven](#)
- [thanked God for them](#)
- [Jesus told](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [they distributed them](#)
- [loaves](#)
- [pieces \(2\)](#)

ULT

¹⁹ [Then Jesus ordered](#) the crowd to recline on the grass. He took the five [loaves](#) and the two fish. Looking up to [heaven](#), [he blessed](#) and broke the [loaves](#) and gave them to the [disciples](#), [and the disciples gave them](#) to the crowd.

UST

¹⁹ [Jesus told](#) the crowd of people who had gathered there to sit on the grass. Then he took the five [loaves](#) and the two fish. He looked up [toward heaven](#), [thanked God for them](#), and broke them into pieces. Then he gave the [pieces](#) to his [disciples](#), and [they distributed them](#) to the crowd.

Matthew 14:20

and were filled (ULT)

no longer hungry. Then some people (UST)

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “until they were full” or “until they were no longer hungry” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

they took up (ULT)

gathered (UST)

“the disciples gathered up” or “some people gathered up”

twelve baskets full (ULT)

filled twelve baskets with them (UST)

“12 baskets full” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [baskets](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [baskets with them](#)

ULT

²⁰ They all ate and were filled. Then they took up what remained of the broken pieces of food—twelve [baskets](#) full.

UST

²⁰ All the people ate until they were no longer hungry. Then some people gathered the pieces that were left over and filled twelve [baskets with them](#).

Matthew 14:21

Those who ate (ULT)
ate at that time (UST)

“Those who ate the bread and the fish”

men...five thousand (ULT)
men...five thousand (UST)

“5,000 men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [children](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [children](#)

ULT

²¹ Those who ate were about five thousand men, besides women and [children](#).

UST

²¹ About five thousand men ate at that time, not counting the women and [children](#)!

Matthew 14:22

General Information:

These verses give background information about the miracle that Jesus is about to perform of walking on water.

Connecting Statement:

The following verses describe events that happened right after Jesus fed the five thousand people.

Immediately he made (ULT)

Right after that happened, Jesus told (UST)

“As soon as Jesus had finished feeding all the people, he”

Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [disciples](#)

ULT

²² Immediately he made the [disciples](#) get into the boat and go before him to the other side, while he sent away the crowds.

UST

²² Right after that happened, Jesus told the [disciples](#) to get in the boat and to go ahead of him to the other side of the Sea of Galilee. In the meantime, he was going to send the crowd home.

Matthew 14:23

When evening came (ULT)

When it was evening, he was...alone (UST)

“Late in the evening” or “When it became dark”

Translation Words - ULT

- to pray

Translation Words - UST

- to pray

ULT

²³ After he had sent away the crowds, he went up on the mountain by himself [to pray](#). When evening came, he was there alone.

UST

²³ After he sent the crowd away, he went up into the hills [to pray](#) by himself. When it was evening, he was still there alone.

Matthew 14:24

being tossed about by the waves (ULT)

the wind made very large waves...tossing...in (UST)

“and the disciples could not control the boat because of the large waves”

ULT

²⁴ But the boat was now in the middle of the sea, being tossed about by the waves, for the wind was blowing against them.

UST

²⁴ By this time the disciples were a long distance from the shore. The wind was blowing very hard opposite to how the disciples were trying to sail; the wind made very large waves that were tossing the boat back and forth in the water.

Matthew 14:25

In the fourth watch of the night (ULT)

Sometime between three and six o'clock in the morning (UST)

The fourth watch is between 3 a.m. and sunrise. Alternate translation: "Just before dawn"

walking on the sea (ULT)

he walked on the water (UST)

"walking on top of the water"

Translation Words - ULT

- [sea](#)
- [walking](#)
- [watch](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [water](#)
- [he walked](#)
- [Sometime between three and six o'clock in the morning](#)

ULT

²⁵ In the fourth [watch](#) of the night Jesus came to them, [walking](#) on the [sea](#).

UST

²⁵ Then Jesus came down from the hills to the water. [Sometime between three and six o'clock in the morning he walked](#) on the [water](#) toward the boat.

Matthew 14:26

they were terrified (ULT)
terrified (UST)

"they were very afraid"

a ghost (ULT)
a ghost. They were (UST)

a spirit that has left the body of a person who has died

Translation Words - ULT

- fear
- a ghost
- the disciples
- sea
- they were terrified
- they cried out
- walking

Translation Words - UST

- fear
- a ghost. They were
- disciples
- water, they thought
- terrified
- they
- walking

ULT

²⁶ When [the disciples](#) saw him [walking](#) on the [sea](#), [they were terrified](#), saying, "It is [a ghost](#)," and [they cried out](#) in [fear](#).

UST

²⁶ When the [disciples](#) saw him [walking](#) on the [water](#), [they thought](#) that he must be [a ghost](#). [They were terrified](#), and [they](#) screamed in [fear](#).

Matthew 14:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- be afraid
- Be brave

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Do...be afraid
- courage

ULT

²⁷ But [Jesus](#) spoke to them right away, saying, "[Be brave](#)! It is I! Do not [be afraid](#)."

UST

²⁷ Immediately [Jesus](#) said to them, "Take [courage](#)! It is I. Do not [be afraid](#)!"

Matthew 14:28

Peter answered him (ULT)

Peter said to him (UST)

"Peter answered Jesus"

Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- command
- Peter
- water

Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- tell
- Peter said to him
- water

ULT

²⁸ [Peter](#) answered him and said, "[Lord](#), if it is you, [command](#) me to come to you on the [water](#)."

UST

²⁸ [Peter said to him](#), "[Lord](#), if it is you, [tell](#) me to walk on the [water](#) to you!"

Matthew 14:29

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Peter
- water
- and walked

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Peter
- water
- He walked

ULT

²⁹ Jesus said, "Come." So [Peter](#) got out from the boat [and walked](#) on the [water](#) to go to [Jesus](#).

UST

²⁹ Jesus said, "Come!" So [Peter](#) got out of the boat. [He walked](#) on the [water](#) toward [Jesus](#).

Matthew 14:30

when Peter saw...the strong wind (ULT)

Peter paid attention...to the strong wind, he became (UST)

Here "saw the wind" means he became aware of the wind. Alternate translation: "when Peter saw that the wind was tossing the waves back and forth" or "when he realized how strong the wind was" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [save](#)
- [he became afraid](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [he cried out](#)
- [strong](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [rescue](#)
- [afraid](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [cried out](#)
- [strong](#)

ULT

³⁰ But when Peter saw the [strong](#) wind, [he became afraid](#). As he began to sink, [he cried out](#), saying, "[Lord](#), [save](#) me!"

UST

³⁰ But when Peter paid attention to the [strong](#) wind, he became [afraid](#). He began to sink in the water and [cried out](#), "[Lord](#), [rescue](#) me!"

Matthew 14:31**You of little faith, why (ULT)****You only trust a little bit in my power! Why (UST)**

"You who have such little faith." Jesus addressed Peter this way because Peter became afraid. It can also be translated as an exclamation. Alternate translation: "You have so little faith! Why"

why did you doubt (ULT)**in my power! Why did you doubt...I could keep you from sinking (UST)**

Jesus uses a question to tell Peter that he should not have doubted. You can make explicit what Peter should not have doubted. Alternate translation: "you should not have doubted that I could keep you from sinking." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [with his hand and](#)

ULT

³¹ [Jesus](#) immediately stretched out his [hand](#), took hold of Peter, and said to him, "You of little faith, why did you doubt?"

UST

³¹ Right away [Jesus](#) reached out [with his hand and](#) grabbed Peter. He said to him, "You only trust a little bit in my power! Why did you doubt that I could keep you from sinking?"

Matthew 14:32

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

32 Then when Jesus and Peter went into the boat, the wind ceased blowing.

UST

32 Then Jesus and Peter got in the boat, and the wind immediately stopped blowing.

Matthew 14:33

the Son of God (ULT)

the Son of God (UST)

This is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Son](#)
- [the Son of God](#)
- [Truly](#)
- [worshiped](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of God](#)
- [the Son of God](#)
- [really](#)
- [bowed down](#)

ULT

³³ Then the disciples in the boat [worshiped](#) Jesus, saying, "[Truly](#) you are [the Son of God](#)."

UST

³³ All of the disciples who were in the boat [bowed down](#) to Jesus and said, "You are [really the Son of God](#)!"

Matthew 14:34

Connecting Statement:

These verses describe what happened after Jesus walked on the water. They summarize how the people were responding to Jesus' ministry.

When they had crossed over (ULT)

When they had gone further around the lake in the boat, they reached (UST)

"When Jesus and his disciples had crossed over the lake"

Gennesaret (ULT)

Gennesaret (UST)

This is a small town on the northwest shore of the Sea of Galilee. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

34 When they had crossed over, they came to the land at Gennesaret.

UST

34 When they had gone further around the lake in the boat, they reached the shore at the town of Gennesaret.

Matthew 14:35

they sent messages (ULT)

sent people (UST)

“the men of that area sent messages”

Translation Words - ULT

- they sent messages
- When...recognized

Translation Words - UST

- sent people
- recognized

ULT

³⁵ When the men in that place recognized Jesus, they sent messages into all that surrounding area, and they brought to him everyone who was sick.

UST

³⁵ The men of that area recognized Jesus, so they sent people to inform those who lived in the whole region that Jesus had come. So the people brought to Jesus everyone who was sick.

Matthew 14:36

They begged him (ULT)

The sick people kept begging him...even (UST)

“The sick people begged him”

the...of...his...garment (ULT)

only the...his robe (UST)

“his robe” or “what he was wearing”

were healed (ULT)

were healed (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “became well”
(See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [were healed](#)
- [They begged](#)
- [of...garment](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [were healed](#)
- [The sick people kept begging](#)
- [robe](#)

ULT

³⁶ [They begged](#) him that they might just touch the edge of his [garment](#), and as many as touched it [were healed](#).

UST

³⁶ [The sick people kept begging](#) him to allow them to touch him or even only the edge of his [robe](#) so that they would be healed. Everyone who touched him or his robe [were healed](#).

Matthew 15

Matthew 15 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 15:8-9, which are words from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

The “traditions of the elders”

The “traditions of the elders” were oral laws that the Jewish religious leaders developed because they wanted to make sure that everyone obeyed the law of Moses. However, they often worked harder to obey these rules than to obey the law of Moses itself. Jesus rebuked the religious leaders for this, and they became angry as a result. (See: [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [the law](#))

Jews and Gentiles

The Jews of Jesus’ time thought that only Jews could please God by the way they lived. Jesus healed a Canaanite Gentile woman’s daughter to show his followers that he would accept both Jews and Gentiles as his people.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Sheep

The Bible often speaks of people as if they were sheep because sheep need someone to take care of them. This is because they do not see well and they often go to where other animals can kill them easily. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Matthew 15:1

General Information:

The scene shifts to events that occurred some time after events of the previous chapter. Here Jesus responds to the criticisms of the Pharisees. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [scribes](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [men who taught the Jewish laws](#)
- [some Pharisees](#)
- [Jerusalem to talk](#)

ULT

¹ Then [Pharisees](#) and [scribes](#) came to [Jesus](#) from [Jerusalem](#). They said,

UST

¹ Then [some Pharisees](#) and [men who taught the Jewish laws](#) came from [Jerusalem to talk](#) to [Jesus](#). They said,

Matthew 15:2

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders (ULT)

We see that your disciples disobey the traditions of our ancestors! They do (UST)

The Pharisees and scribes use this question to criticize Jesus and his disciples. Alternate translation: "Your disciples do not respect the rules that our ancestors have given us." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

the traditions of the elders (ULT)
traditions of our ancestors! They do (UST)

This is not the same as the law of Moses. This refers to later teachings and interpretations of the law given by religious leaders after Moses.

do not...they...wash their hands (ULT)
not perform the proper ritual of...washing their hands (UST)

This washing is not only to clean hands. This refers to a ceremonial washing according to the tradition of the elders. Alternate translation: "they do not wash their hands properly" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [hands](#)
- [bread](#)
- [traditions](#)
- [elders](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [disciples](#)
- [hands](#)
- [they eat](#)
- [traditions](#)
- [of our ancestors! They do](#)

ULT

² "Why do your [disciples](#) violate the [traditions](#) of the [elders](#)? For they do not wash their [hands](#) when they eat [bread](#)."

UST

² "We see that your [disciples](#) disobey the [traditions of our ancestors! They do](#) not perform the proper ritual of washing their [hands](#) before [they eat!](#)"

Matthew 15:3

**Then why do you also violate the commandment of God for the sake of your traditions (ULT)
And I see that you refuse to obey God's commands just so that you can follow what your ancestors taught you (UST)**

Jesus answers with a question to criticize what the religious leaders do. Alternate translation: "And I see that you refuse to obey God's commands just so that you can follow what your ancestors taught you!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [commandment](#)
- [of God](#)
- [traditions](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [commands just](#)
- [God's](#)
- [can follow what your ancestors taught](#)

ULT

³ He answered and said to them, "Then why do you also violate the [commandment of God](#) for the sake of your [traditions](#)?"

UST

³ Jesus answered them, "And I see that you refuse to obey [God's commands just](#) so that you [can follow what your ancestors taught](#) you!"

Matthew 15:4

General Information:

In verse 4, Jesus quotes twice from Exodus to show how God expects people to treat their parents.

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to respond to the Pharisees.

will surely die (ULT)

must be executed (UST)

“the people will surely execute him”

Translation Words - ULT

- [commanded](#)
- [For God](#)
- [Honor](#)
- [He who speaks evil of](#)
- [father](#)
- [his father](#) (2)
- [will surely die](#)
- [will surely die](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [gave these two commands](#)
- [God](#)
- [Honor your](#)
- [speak evil](#)
- [father](#)
- [about their father](#) (2)
- [must be executed](#)
- [must be executed](#)

ULT

⁴ [For God commanded](#), saying, ‘[Honor](#) your [father](#) and your mother,’ and ‘[He who speaks evil of his father](#) or mother, [will surely die](#).’

UST

⁴ [God gave these two commands](#): ‘[Honor your father](#) and your mother,’ and ‘People who [speak evil about their father](#) or mother [must be executed](#).’

Matthew 15:5

But you say (ULT)

But you tell the people (UST)

Here “you” is plural and refers to the Pharisees and scribes. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [is now a gift given to God](#)
- [father](#)
- [help you would have received](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [I have now promised to give to God](#)
- [your father or](#)
- [to help provide for you](#)

ULT

⁵ But you say, ‘Whoever says to his [father](#) or mother “Whatever [help you would have received](#) from me [is now a gift given to God](#),”’

UST

⁵ But you tell the people, ‘You can say to [your father or](#) mother, “What I was going to give to you [to help provide for you, I have now promised to give to God](#).”’

Matthew 15:6

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to rebuke the Pharisees.

he does not need to honor his father (ULT)
not...give anything to your parents (UST)

The words beginning with “But you say” (verse 5) have a quotation within a quotation. If necessary you can translate them as indirect quotations. “But you teach that a person does not need to honor his parents by giving them something that may help them if the person tells his parents that he has already given it as a gift to God” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

he does not need to honor his father (ULT)
not...give anything to your parents (UST)

It is implied that “his father” means “his parents.” This means the religious leaders taught that a person does not need to show respect to his parents by taking care of them. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

father...In this way you have made void...word of God (ULT)
When you do that, you think that you do...need to...your parents. In that way you ignore what God...commanded, just (UST)

Here “word of God” refers specifically to his commands. Alternate translation: “you have treated the word of God as if it were invalid” or “you have ignored God’s commands”

for the sake of your traditions (ULT)
so that you can follow what your ancestors taught you (UST)

“because you want to follow your traditions”

Translation Words - ULT

- of God
- word of God
- he...need to honor
- father
- traditions

Translation Words - UST

- God
- In that way you ignore what God...commanded, just
- give anything to
- your parents
- you can follow what your ancestors taught

ULT

⁶ [he](#) does not [need to honor](#) his [father](#).
 In this way you have made void the [word of God](#) ^[7] for the sake of your [traditions](#).

UST

⁶ When you do that, you think that you do not need to [give anything to your parents](#). [In that way you ignore what God commanded, just](#) so that [you can follow what your ancestors taught](#) you!

Matthew 15:7

General Information:

In verses 8 and 9, Jesus quotes the prophet Isaiah to rebuke the Pharisees and scribes.

Connecting Statement:

Jesus concludes his response to the Pharisees and scribes.

Well did Isaiah prophesy about you (ULT)
Isaiah also...the truth about you when he spoke God's thoughts about your ancestors (UST)

"Isaiah told the truth in this prophecy about you"

saying (ULT)

told (UST)

It is implied that Isaiah is speaking what God told him. Alternate translation: "when he told what God said" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [did...prophesy](#)
- [You hypocrites](#)
- [Isaiah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [when he spoke God's thoughts about your ancestors](#)
- [You only pretend to be good](#)
- [Isaiah](#)

ULT

⁷ [You hypocrites!](#) Well did [Isaiah prophesy](#) about you, saying,

UST

⁷ [You only pretend to be good!](#) [Isaiah](#) also told the truth about you [when he spoke God's thoughts about your ancestors](#).

Matthew 15:8**This people honors me with their lips (ULT)****These people talk as if they honor me (UST)**

Here “lips” refers to speaking. Alternate translation: “These people say all the right things to me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

me (ULT)**me (UST)**

All occurrences of this word refer to God.

but their heart is far from me (ULT)**but they do not care about me (UST)**

Here “heart” refers to a person’s thoughts or emotions. This phrase is a way of saying the people are not truly devoted to God. Alternate translation: “but they do not really love me” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [but...heart](#)
- [honors](#)
- [people](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [they do not care about me](#)
- [they honor](#)
- [people](#)

ULT

⁸ ‘This [people honors](#) me with their lips, [but](#) their [heart](#) is far from me.

UST

⁸ ‘These [people](#) talk as if [they honor](#) me, but [they do not care about me](#),’

Matthew 15:9

They worship me in vain (ULT)

It is useless for them to worship me, because (UST)

“Their worship means nothing to me” or “They only pretend to worship me”

the commandments of people (ULT)

people...as their authoritative teachings (UST)

“the rules that people make up”

Translation Words - ULT

- the commandments
- They worship
- because they teach
- in vain
- as their doctrines

Translation Words - UST

- as their authoritative teachings
- worship
- they teach
- It is useless for them to
- what...thought up

ULT

⁹ [They worship](#) me [in vain](#), [because they teach as their doctrines the commandments](#) of people.”

UST

⁹ [It is useless for them to worship](#) me, because [they teach what](#) people [thought up as their authoritative teachings](#).”

Matthew 15:10

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to teach the crowd and his disciples about what defiles a person and why the Pharisees and scribes were wrong to criticize him.

Translation Words - ULT

- [he called...to himself](#)
- [and said](#)
- [understand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [called...to come nearer to him](#)
- [He said to them](#)
- [try to understand it](#)

ULT

¹⁰ Then [he called](#) the crowd [to himself](#) [and said](#) to them, "Listen and [understand](#)—

UST

¹⁰ Then Jesus again [called](#) the crowd [to come nearer to him](#). [He said to them](#), "Listen to what I am about to tell you and [try to understand it](#).

Matthew 15:11

that enters...into the mouth...what comes out...of the mouth (ULT)

puts into his mouth to eat...say—the words...come from their mouths (UST)

Jesus is contrasting what a person eats to what a person says. Jesus means that God is concerned with what a person says rather than what a person eats. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [defiles](#)
- [defiles](#) (2)

Translation Words - UST

- [makes him contaminated](#)
- [makes...degraded](#) (2)

ULT

¹¹ Nothing that enters into the mouth [defiles](#) a person. Instead, what comes out of the mouth, this is what [defiles](#) a person."

UST

¹¹ Nothing that a person puts into his mouth to eat [makes him contaminated](#). Instead, it is what people say—the words that come from their mouths—that [makes](#) a person [degraded](#)."

Matthew 15:12

the Pharisees were offended when they heard this statement (ULT)

the Pharisees heard what you said and became angry at you (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “this statement made the Pharisees angry” or “this statement offended the Pharisees” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [Do you know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [disciples](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [Do you know](#)

ULT

¹² Then the [disciples](#) came and said to Jesus, “[Do you know](#) that the [Pharisees](#) were offended when they heard this statement?”

UST

¹² Later the [disciples](#) went to Jesus and said, “[Do you know](#) that the [Pharisees](#) heard what you said and became angry at you?”

Matthew 15:13

Every plant that my heavenly Father has not planted will be rooted up (ULT)

My Father in heaven will get rid of all those who teach things that are against what he says, just like a farmer gets rid of plants that he did not plant by pulling them up by their roots (UST)

This is a metaphor. Jesus means that the Pharisees do not actually belong to God, so God will remove them. (See: [Metaphor](#))

my heavenly Father (ULT)

My Father in heaven will get rid of...like a farmer gets rid of (UST)

This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

will be rooted up (ULT)

by pulling them up by their roots (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “my Father will uproot” or “he will take out of the ground” or “he will remove” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heavenly](#)
- [Father](#)
- [has...planted](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [in heaven will get rid of](#)
- [Father](#)
- [he did...plant](#)

ULT

¹³ Jesus answered and said, “Every plant that my [heavenly Father](#) has not [planted](#) will be rooted up.

UST

¹³ Then Jesus told them this parable. “My [Father in heaven will get rid of](#) all those who teach things that are against what he says, just like a farmer gets rid of plants that [he did](#) not [plant](#) by pulling them up by their roots.

Matthew 15:14

Let them alone (ULT)

Do not pay any attention to the Pharisees. They do not help people to (UST)

The word “them” refers to the Pharisees.

**they are blind guides...both will fall into a pit (ULT)
understand what God commands, just like...guides do
not help...all fall into the same hole (UST)**

Jesus uses another metaphor to describe the Pharisees. Jesus means that the Pharisees do not understand God's commands or how to please him. Therefore, they cannot teach others how to please God. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [a pit](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [hole](#)

ULT

¹⁴ Let them alone, they are blind guides. If a blind person guides another blind person, both will fall into [a pit](#).”

UST

¹⁴ Do not pay any attention to the Pharisees. They do not help people to understand what God commands, just like blind guides do not help blind people to see where they should walk. Instead, they all fall into the same [hole](#).”

Matthew 15:15

Connecting Statement:

Peter asks Jesus to explain the parable that Jesus told in [Matthew 15:13-14](#).

to us (ULT)

us (UST)

“to us disciples”

Translation Words - ULT

- [parable](#)
- [Peter](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [parable about what a person eats](#)
- [Peter said](#)

ULT

¹⁵ [Peter](#) responded and said to him, “Explain this [parable](#) to us.”

UST

¹⁵ [Peter said](#) to Jesus, “Explain to us the [parable about what a person eats](#).”

Matthew 15:16

Connecting Statement:

Jesus explains the parable that he told in [Matthew 15:13-14](#).

**Are you also still without understanding (ULT)
You should certainly understand...disappointed that
you do not (UST)**

Jesus uses a question to rebuke the disciples for not understanding the parable. Also, the word "you" is emphasized. Jesus cannot believe his own disciples do not understand. Alternate translation: "I am disappointed that you, my disciples, still do not understand what I teach!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

¹⁶ Jesus said, "Are you also still without understanding?"

UST

¹⁶ Jesus replied to them, "You should certainly understand what I teach, but I am disappointed that you do not."

Matthew 15:17

Do you not yet see...into the latrine (ULT)
You ought...understand...passes out of their bodies (UST)

Jesus uses a question to rebuke the disciples for not understanding the parable. Alternate translation: "Surely you understand...into the latrine" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

into...passes...the stomach (ULT)
to...stomachs (UST)

"goes into the stomach"

the latrine (ULT)
passes...of their bodies (UST)

This a polite term for the place where people bury body waste.

Translation Words - ULT

- [is then passed out](#)
- [you...see](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [passes...of their bodies](#)
- [You ought...understand](#)

ULT

¹⁷ Do you not yet [see](#) that whatever goes into the mouth passes into the stomach and [is then passed out](#) into the latrine?

UST

¹⁷ [You ought](#) to [understand](#) that whatever food people eat enters their stomachs, and later what remains [passes](#) out [of their bodies](#).

Matthew 15:18

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to explain the parable that he told in [Matthew 15:13-14](#).

**But the things that come out...But the things that come out...of the mouth (ULT)
the evil words that...the mouth speaks are what makes God reject (UST)**

This refers to what a person says. Alternate translation: “words that a person says” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**from the heart (ULT)
in his innermost being (UST)**

Here “heart” refers to a person’s mind or innermost being. Alternate translation: “from inside the person” or “from a person’s mind” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [defile](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [his innermost being](#)
- [the evil things that the person thinks](#)

ULT

18 But the things that come out of the mouth come from the [heart](#). They are the things that [defile](#) a person.

UST

18 Instead, the evil words that the mouth speaks are what makes God reject a person, because they come from [the evil things that the person thinks](#) in [his innermost being](#).

Matthew 15:19

murder (ULT)

to murder people (UST)

the act of killing innocent people

Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- adultery
- evil
- and slander
- false witness
- sexual immorality

Translation Words - UST

- people's innermost beings
- to commit adultery
- evil
- to speak evil about others
- to testify falsely, and
- to commit other sexual sins

ULT

¹⁹ For from the [heart](#) proceed [evil](#) thoughts, murder, [adultery](#), [sexual immorality](#), theft, [false witness](#), and [slander](#).

UST

¹⁹ This is because it is [people's innermost beings](#) that cause them to think things that are [evil](#), to murder people, [to commit adultery](#), [to commit other sexual sins](#), to steal things, [to testify falsely, and to speak evil about others](#).

Matthew 15:20

to eat with unwashed hands (ULT)

to eat with unwashed hands does (UST)

This refers to eating without first ceremonially washing one's hands according to the traditions of the elders. Alternate translation: "eating without first washing one's hands"

Translation Words - ULT

- [hands](#)
- [the things that defile](#)
- [defile](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [hands does](#)
- [cause God to consider...to be unacceptable to him](#)
- [cause God to reject](#)

ULT

²⁰ These are [the things that defile](#) a person. But to eat with unwashed [hands](#) does not [defile](#) a person."

UST

²⁰ It is these actions that [cause God to consider](#) people [to be unacceptable to him](#). But to eat with unwashed [hands](#) [does](#) not [cause God to reject](#) people."

Matthew 15:21

General Information:

This begins an account of Jesus healing the daughter of a Canaanite woman.

Then...went away...Jesus (ULT) left...Jesus took the disciples and (UST)

It is implied that the disciples went with Jesus. Alternate translation: "Jesus and his disciples went away" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Sidon](#)
- [of Tyre](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus took the disciples and](#)
- [Sidon are located](#)
- [of Tyre](#)

ULT

²¹ Then [Jesus](#) went away from there and withdrew toward the regions of the cities [of Tyre](#) and [Sidon](#).

UST

²¹ After [Jesus took the disciples and](#) left the district of Galilee, they all went toward the region where the cities [of Tyre](#) and [Sidon are located](#).

Matthew 15:22

Behold...a Canaanite woman...came out (ULT)

A woman...the group of people called Canaanites, who live in...that...came to Jesus (UST)

The word “behold” alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this. Alternate translation: “There was a Canaanite woman who came”

a Canaanite woman came out from that region (ULT)

A woman...from the group of people called Canaanites, who live in that region, came to Jesus (UST)

“a woman who was from that region and who belonged to the group of people called Canaanites came.” The country of Canaan no longer existed by this time. She was a part of a people group that lived near the cities of Tyre and Sidon.

Have mercy on me (ULT)

Have pity on me (UST)

This phrase implies that she is requesting that Jesus heal her daughter. Alternate translation: “Have mercy and heal my daughter” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Son of David (ULT)

the descendant of King David, you are the Messiah (UST)

Jesus was not David’s literal son, so this may be translated as “Descendant of David.” However, “Son of David” is also a title for the Messiah, and the woman may have been calling Jesus by this title.

My daughter is severely demon-possessed (ULT)

my daughter! She is suffering very much because a demon controls her (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “A demon is controlling my daughter terribly” or “A demon is tormenting my daughter severely” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- Son
- is...demon-possessed
- Have mercy
- Canaanite
- of David
- She shouted out

Translation Words - UST

- to him, “Lord, you are
- the descendant
- a demon controls her

ULT

²² Behold, a [Canaanite](#) woman came out from that region. [She shouted out](#) and said, “[Have mercy](#) on me, [Lord](#), [Son of David](#)! My daughter is severely [demon-possessed](#).”

UST

²² A woman from [the group of people called Canaanites, who live in](#) that region, came to Jesus. [She kept shouting to him, “Lord, you are the descendant of King David, you are the Messiah! Have pity](#) on me and my daughter! She is suffering very much because [a demon controls her](#).”

- Have pity
- the group of people called Canaanites, who live in
- of King David, you are the Messiah
- She kept shouting

Matthew 15:23

did not answer her a word (ULT)

did not answer her at all (UST)

Here “word” refers to what a person says. Alternate translation: “said nothing” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [she is shouting](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The disciples said to him](#)
- [she keeps bothering us by shouting](#)

ULT

²³ But he did not answer her a word. His [disciples](#) came and begged him, saying, “Send her away, for [she is shouting](#) after us.”

UST

²³ But Jesus did not answer her at all. [The disciples said to him](#), “Tell her to leave because [she keeps bothering us by shouting](#) behind us as we go along.”

Matthew 15:24

I was not sent to anyone (ULT) has sent me (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God did not send me to anyone" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

to the lost sheep of the house of Israel (ULT) to the people of Israel...like sheep who have lost their way (UST)

This is a metaphor comparing the entire nation of Israel to sheep who have gone away from their shepherd. See how you translated this in [Matthew 10:6](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [lost](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [I was...sent to anyone](#)
- [sheep](#)
- [of the house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [have lost their way](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [has sent me](#)
- [like sheep](#)
- [the people](#)

ULT

²⁴ But Jesus answered and said, "[I was](#) not [sent to anyone](#) except to the [lost sheep of the house of Israel](#)."

UST

²⁴ Jesus said to her, "God [has sent me](#) only to [the people of Israel](#), because they are [like sheep](#) who [have lost their way](#)."

Matthew 15:25

she...came (ULT)

the woman...came closer to Jesus and (UST)

“the Canaanite woman came”

and bowed down before him (ULT)

knelt down in front of him (UST)

This shows that the woman humbled herself before Jesus. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)
- [and bowed down](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Lord](#)
- [knelt down in front](#)

ULT

²⁵ But she came [and bowed down](#) before him, saying, “[Lord](#), help me.”

UST

²⁵ But the woman came closer to Jesus and [knelt down in front](#) of him. She pled, “[Lord](#), help me!”

Matthew 15:26

It is not right to take the children's bread and throw it to the little dogs (ULT)

It is not good for someone to take food that has been prepared for his children and throw it to the little dogs in the house (UST)

Jesus responds to the woman with a proverb. The basic meaning is that it is not right to take what is supposed to belong to Jews and give it to non-Jews. (See: [Proverbs](#))

the children's bread (ULT)

food that has been prepared for his children (UST)

Here "bread" refers to food in general. Alternate translation: "the children's food" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

to the little dogs (ULT)

to the little dogs in the house (UST)

The Jews considered dogs to be unclean animals. Here they are used as an image for non-Jews.

Translation Words - ULT

- [children's](#)
- [right](#)
- [bread](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [for his children](#)
- [good for someone](#)
- [food that has been prepared](#)

ULT

²⁶ He answered and said, "It is not [right](#) to take the [children's bread](#) and throw it to the little dogs."

UST

²⁶ Then he told her, "It is not [good for someone](#) to take [food that has been prepared for his children](#) and throw it to the little dogs in the house."

Matthew 15:27

even...the little dogs eat some of the crumbs that fall from their masters' tables (ULT)
own tables and eat...the little dogs eat the crumbs that fall to the floor when their masters sit at their (UST)

The woman responds by using the same imagery as Jesus used in the proverb he just spoke. She means non-Jews should be able to have a small amount of the good things Jews are throwing away. (See: [Metaphor](#))

the little dogs (ULT)
the little dogs (UST)

Use words here for dogs of any size that people keep as pets. See how you translated this in [Matthew 15:26](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)
- [masters](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Lord](#)
- [when their masters sit at](#)

ULT

²⁷ She said, "Yes, [Lord](#), but even the little dogs eat some of the crumbs that fall from their [masters'](#) tables."

UST

²⁷ But the woman replied, "[Lord](#), what you say is correct, but even the little dogs eat the crumbs that fall to the floor [when their masters sit at](#) their own tables and eat!"

Matthew 15:28

let it be done (ULT)

believe...in me, I will heal your daughter (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will do"
(See: [Active or Passive](#))

Her daughter...was healed (ULT)

her daughter...she became well (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Jesus healed her daughter" or "Her daughter became well" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

from that hour (ULT)

At that moment the demon left (UST)

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "at exactly the same time" or "immediately" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [faith](#)
- [was healed](#)
- [just as](#)
- [hour](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus said](#)
- [believe...in me, I will heal your daughter](#)
- [she became well](#)
- [as](#)
- [moment the demon left](#)

ULT

²⁸ Then [Jesus](#) answered and said to her, "Woman, great is your [faith](#); let it be done for you [just as](#) you wish." Her daughter [was healed](#) from that [hour](#).

UST

²⁸ Then [Jesus said](#) to her, "O woman, because you [believe](#) firmly [in me, I will heal your daughter as](#) you desire!" At that [moment the demon left](#) her daughter, and [she became well](#).

Matthew 15:29

General Information:

These verses give background information about the miracle that Jesus is about to perform by feeding four thousand people. (See: [Background Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [of Galilee](#)
- [Sea of Galilee](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus and his disciples](#)
- [of Galilee](#)
- [Sea of Galilee](#)

ULT

²⁹ [Jesus](#) left that place and went near to the [Sea of Galilee](#). Then he went up on a hill and sat there.

UST

²⁹ Then [Jesus and his disciples](#) went away from that area, back to the [Sea of Galilee](#). Then Jesus climbed the hill near there and sat down to teach the people.

Matthew 15:30

lame, blind, crippled, and mute people (ULT)

lame, crippled...blind people, those who were unable to talk (UST)

“those who could not walk, those who could not see, those who could not talk, and those whose arms or legs did not function”

They presented...them at his feet (ULT)

They laid them in front of Jesus so that he would heal (UST)

Apparently some of these sick or crippled people were unable to stand up, so when their friends brought them to Jesus, they placed them on the ground in front of him. Alternate translation: “The crowds placed the sick people on the ground in front of Jesus”

Translation Words - ULT

- [he healed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [he healed](#)

ULT

³⁰ Large crowds came to him. They brought with them lame, blind, crippled, and mute people, and many others who were sick. They presented them at his feet, and [he healed](#) them.

UST

³⁰ Large crowds kept coming to him for the next two days and brought lame, crippled, and blind people, those who were unable to talk, and many others who had various sicknesses. They laid them in front of Jesus so that he would heal them. And [he healed](#) them.

Matthew 15:31

the crippled made well (ULT)

crippled people, lame people, and blind people (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the crippled become well” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the crippled...the lame...the blind (ULT)

crippled people...lame people, and blind people...lame people, and blind people (UST)

These nominal adjectives can be stated as adjectives. Alternate translation: “the crippled persons...the lame persons...the blind persons” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [They praised](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [marveled](#)
- [walking](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God who rules over us in](#)
- [They said, “Praise](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [they were amazed](#)
- [lame people, and blind people](#)

ULT

³¹ So the crowd [marveled](#) when they saw the mute persons speak, the crippled made well, the lame [walking](#), and the blind seeing. [They praised](#) the [God of Israel](#).

UST

³¹ The crowd saw him heal people who could not talk, crippled people, [lame people, and blind people](#), and [they were amazed](#). [They said, “Praise God who rules over us in Israel!”](#)

Matthew 15:32

Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of Jesus feeding four thousand people with seven loaves of bread and a few small fish.

**without eating...or they may faint on the way (ULT)
while they are still hungry...because if I did...they
might faint on the way home (UST)**

“without eating because they might faint on the way”

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- called...to him
- I have compassion
- disciples
- for...days

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- called
- I feel sorry
- disciples to him
- for...days

ULT

³² [Jesus called](#) his [disciples to him](#) and said, “[I have compassion](#) on the crowd, because they have stayed with me for three [days](#) already and do not have anything to eat. I do not want to send them away without eating, or they may faint on the way.”

UST

³² Then [Jesus called](#) his [disciples to him](#) and said, “This crowd of people has been with me for three [days](#) and have nothing left to eat. [I feel sorry](#) for them. I do not want to send them away while they are still hungry, because if I did that, they might faint on the way home.”

Matthew 15:33

Where can we get enough loaves of bread in such a deserted place to satisfy so large a crowd (ULT)
In this place where nobody lives, we cannot possibly obtain enough food to feed such a large crowd (UST)

The disciples use a question to state that there is nowhere to get food for the crowd. Alternate translation: "There is nowhere nearby that we can get enough bread for such a large crowd." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [such a deserted place](#)
- [loaves of bread](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [disciples](#)
- [where nobody lives](#)
- [food](#)

ULT

³³ The [disciples](#) said to him, "Where can we get enough [loaves of bread](#) in [such a deserted place](#) to satisfy so large a crowd?"

UST

³³ The [disciples](#) said to him, "In this place [where nobody lives](#), we cannot possibly obtain enough [food](#) to feed such a large crowd!"

Matthew 15:34

Seven, and a few small fish (ULT)

Seven small loaves and a few small cooked fish (UST)

The understood information can be made clear. Alternate translation: "Seven loaves of bread, and a few small fish" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [loaves](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [loaves](#)

ULT

³⁴ [Jesus](#) said to them, "How many [loaves](#) do you have?" They said, "Seven, and a few small fish."

UST

³⁴ [Jesus](#) asked them, "How many [loaves](#) do you have?" They answered him, "Seven small loaves and a few small cooked fish."

Matthew 15:35

to sit down on the (ULT)

to sit on the (UST)

Use your language's word for how people customarily eat when there is no table, whether sitting or lying down.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus commanded](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus told](#)

ULT

³⁵ Then [Jesus commanded](#) the crowd to sit down on the ground.

UST

³⁵ Then [Jesus told](#) the people to sit on the ground.

Matthew 15:36

He took the seven loaves and the fish

"Jesus held the seven loaves and the fish in his hands"

he broke the loaves (ULT)

he broke them into pieces (UST)

"he tore the loaves"

gave them (ULT)

he kept giving them (UST)

"gave the bread and the fish"

Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [The disciples gave them](#)
- [loaves](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to the disciples](#)
- [Then the disciples kept distributing them](#)
- [loaves](#)

ULT

³⁶ He took the seven [loaves](#) and the fish, and after giving thanks, he broke the loaves and gave them to the [disciples](#). [The disciples gave them](#) to the crowd.

UST

³⁶ He took the seven [loaves](#) and the cooked fish. After he had thanked God for them, he broke them into pieces and he kept giving them [to the disciples](#). [Then the disciples kept distributing them](#) to the crowd.

Matthew 15:37

they gathered up (ULT)

the disciples collected (UST)

“the disciples gathered” or “some people gathered”

Translation Words - ULT

- [baskets](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [large baskets with them](#)

ULT

³⁷ The people all ate and were satisfied. Then they gathered up seven [baskets](#) full of the broken pieces that were left over.

UST

³⁷ Because Jesus made the food multiply miraculously, all those people ate and had plenty to satisfy them. Then the disciples collected the pieces of food that were left over, and they filled seven [large baskets with them](#).

Matthew 15:38

Those who ate...Those who ate (ULT)
who...ate (UST)

“The people who ate”

four thousand men (ULT)
four thousand men (UST)

“4,000 men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [children](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the women and the children who also ate](#)

ULT

³⁸ Those who ate were four thousand men, besides women and [children](#).

UST

³⁸ There were four thousand men who ate, but no one counted [the women and the children who also ate](#).

Matthew 15:39

the region (ULT)

the region (UST)

“the area”

of Magadan (ULT)

of Magadan (UST)

This region is sometimes called “Magdala.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

³⁹ Then Jesus sent the crowds away and got into the boat and went into the region of Magadan.

UST

³⁹ After Jesus sent the crowd away, he and the disciples got in a boat and sailed around the lake to the region of Magadan.

Matthew 16

Matthew 16 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Yeast

Jesus spoke of the way people thought about God as if it were bread, and he spoke of what people taught about God as if it were the yeast that makes bread dough become larger and the baked bread taste good. He did not want his followers to listen to what the Pharisees and Sadducees taught. This was because if they did listen, they would not understand who God is and how he wants his people to live. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

Jesus told his people to obey his commands. He did this by telling them to “follow” him. It is as if he were walking on a path and they were walking after him. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Background information

Matthew continues his account from chapter 15 in verses 1-20. The account stops in verse 21 so Matthew can tell the reader that Jesus told his disciples again and again that people would kill him after he arrived in Jerusalem. Then the account continues in verses 22-27 with what happened the first time Jesus told the disciples that he would die.

Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. Jesus uses a paradox when he says, “Whoever wants to save his life will lose it, and whoever loses his life for my sake will find it” (Matthew 16:25).

Matthew 16:1

General Information:

This begins an encounter between Jesus and the Pharisees and Sadducees.

and tested him (ULT) that God has really sent you (UST)

Here “tested” is used in a negative sense. Alternate translation: “challenged him” or “wanted to trap him”

Translation Words - ULT

- sky
- a sign
- and tested him
- Pharisees
- Sadducees

Translation Words - UST

- sky and use his power to convince us
- Do a miracle
- that God has really sent you
- Pharisees
- Sadducees

ULT

¹ The [Pharisees](#) and [Sadducees](#) came [and tested him](#) by asking him to show them [a sign](#) from the [sky](#).

UST

¹ Some [Pharisees](#) and [Sadducees](#) came to Jesus and said to him, “Show us [that God has really sent you](#) to us! [Do a miracle](#) in the [sky and use his power to convince us!](#)”

Matthew 16:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

² But he answered, saying to them, ^[1]
[“When it is evening, you say, ‘It will be
fair weather, for the sky is red.’

UST

² He answered them, ^[1] [“In our
country, if the sky is red in the evening,
we say, ‘It will be good weather
tomorrow.’

Matthew 16:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

³ When it is morning, you say, 'It will be foul weather, for the sky is red and overcast.' You know how to interpret the appearance of the sky, but you cannot interpret the signs of the times.]

UST

³ But if the sky is red in the morning we say, 'It will be stormy weather today.' By looking at the sky, you can tell what the weather will be, but when you see the things that are now happening all around you, you do not understand what God is doing.]

Matthew 16:4

An evil and adulterous generation seeks for a sign... will...be given to it (ULT)

You evil people have seen me perform...not faithfully worship God...miracle...I will do...for you (UST)

Jesus is speaking to his present generation. Alternate translation: "You are an evil and adulterous generation who demands signs from me...given to you" See how you translated this in [Matthew 12:39](#). (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

An evil and adulterous generation (ULT)

You evil people have seen me perform...not faithfully worship God (UST)

Here "adulterous" is a metaphor for people who are not faithful to God. See how you translated this in [Matthew 12:39](#). Alternate translation: "An unfaithful generation" or "A godless generation" (See: [Metaphor](#))

a sign...will not be given to it (ULT)

miracle...I will do no...for you (UST)

Jesus would not give them a sign because, though he had already performed many miracles, they refused to believe him. This can be stated in active form. See how you translated this in [Matthew 12:39](#). Alternate translation: "I will not give it a sign" or "God will not give you a sign" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

a sign...except the...of Jonah (ULT)

miracle...except the miracle that happened to Jonah the prophet, who spent three days (UST)

"except the same sign God gave to Jonah the prophet." See how you translated this in [Matthew 12:39](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- a sign
- a sign (2)
- sign (3)
- adulterous
- evil
- of Jonah
- seeks for
- An...generation

Translation Words - UST

- miracle
- miracles, but you do (2)
- miracle that happened to (3)
- not faithfully worship God
- You evil people have seen me perform

ULT

⁴ "An [evil](#) and [adulterous generation](#) [seeks for a sign](#), but [a sign](#) will not be given to it except the [sign of Jonah](#)." Then Jesus left them and went away.

UST

⁴ [You evil people have seen me perform miracles, but you do not faithfully worship God](#). So I will do no [miracle](#) for you, except the [miracle that happened to Jonah the prophet, who spent three days](#) inside a huge fish but came out again." Then Jesus left them and sailed away, along with his disciples.

- Jonah the prophet, who spent three days
- miracle
- You evil people have seen me perform

Matthew 16:5

Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts to a later time. Jesus uses an opportunity to warn his disciples about the Pharisees and Sadducees.

the other side (ULT)

the other side of the Sea of Galilee (UST)

You can make clear the understood information. Alternate translation: “the other side of the lake” or “the other side of the Sea of Galilee” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [bread](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the disciples realized that they](#)
- [anything to eat](#)

ULT

⁵ When the [disciples](#) came to the other side, they had forgotten to take [bread](#).

UST

⁵ They all sailed to the other side of the Sea of Galilee. Then [the disciples realized that they](#) had forgotten to take [anything to eat](#) with them.

Matthew 16:6

the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees (ULT)
the yeast...the Pharisees and Sadducees want to give you (UST)

Here “yeast” is a metaphor that refers to evil ideas and wrong teaching. Translate as “yeast” here and do not explain its meaning in your translation. This meaning will be made clear in 16:12. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [Sadducees](#)
- [yeast](#)
- [Take heed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [Sadducees want to give you](#)
- [yeast](#)
- [Be careful](#)

ULT

⁶ [Jesus](#) said to them, “[Take heed](#) and beware of the [yeast](#) of the [Pharisees](#) and [Sadducees](#).”

UST

⁶ At that point, [Jesus](#) said to them, “[Be careful](#) not to accept the [yeast](#) that the [Pharisees](#) and [Sadducees want to give you](#).”

Matthew 16:7

reasoned among themselves (ULT)

They tried to make sense...to each other, "He must have said that (UST)

"discussed this with each other" or "thought about this"

Translation Words - ULT

- [bread](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [anything to eat](#)

ULT

⁷ They reasoned among themselves, saying, "It is because we did not take [bread](#)."

UST

⁷ They tried to make sense out of what Jesus had told them, and they said to each other, "He must have said that because we forgot to bring [anything to eat](#)!"

Matthew 16:8

You of little faith (ULT)

You believe only a little what I am able to do for you (UST)

"You who have such little faith." Jesus addresses his disciples this way because their concern about not bringing bread shows they have little faith in Jesus to provide for them. See how you translated this in [Matthew 6:30](#).

why do you reason...you have no bread (ULT) what...think it was because...forgot bring bread that I talked (UST)

Jesus uses a question to rebuke his disciples for not understanding what he just said. Alternate translation: "I am disappointed that you think it was because you forgot to bring bread that I talked about the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [You of little faith](#)
- [bread](#)
- [was aware of this](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [You believe only a little what I am able to do for you](#)
- [bread that I talked](#)
- [knew](#)

ULT

⁸ [Jesus was aware of this](#) and said, "[You of little faith](#), why do you reason among yourselves that it is because you have no [bread](#)?"

UST

⁸ But [Jesus knew](#) what they were saying and answered them, "I am disappointed that you think it was because you forgot bring [bread that I talked](#) about the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees. [You believe only a little what I am able to do for you](#)."

Matthew 16:9

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to warn his disciples about the Pharisees and Sadducees.

Do you not yet perceive or remember...you gathered up (ULT)

Do not think...really forgotten how I fed...gathered up (UST)

Jesus uses a question to rebuke the disciples. Alternate translation: "Surely you remember...you gathered up!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

for the five thousand (ULT)
the five thousand (UST)

"5,000" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [loaves](#)
- [baskets](#)
- [you...perceive](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [I am worried about having food. Have you](#)
- [baskets of leftover food you](#)
- [Do...think](#)

ULT

⁹ Do you not yet [perceive](#) or remember the five [loaves](#) for the five thousand, and how many [baskets](#) you gathered up?

UST

⁹ Do not [think I am worried about having food. Have you](#) really forgotten how I fed the five thousand with five loaves, or how many [baskets of leftover food you](#) gathered up?

Matthew 16:10

for the four thousand (ULT)
about the four thousand people who ate when I
multiplied (UST)

"4,000" (See: [Numbers](#))

Or the seven loaves...you took up (ULT)
Or what...the seven small loaves...gather up then (UST)

"Do you also not remember the seven loaves...you took up?" Jesus uses a question to rebuke his disciples. Alternate translation: "Surely you also remember the seven loaves...you took up!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [loaves](#)
- [baskets](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [small loaves](#)
- [baskets of scraps did you](#)

ULT

¹⁰ Or the seven [loaves](#) for the four thousand, and how many [baskets](#) you took up?

UST

¹⁰ Or what about the four thousand people who ate when I multiplied the seven [small loaves](#)? And how many [baskets of scraps did you](#) gather up then?

Matthew 16:11

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to warn his disciples about the Pharisees and Sadducees.

How is it that you do not understand that I was not speaking to you about bread (ULT)

You should have understood that I was not really speaking about bread. Do not (UST)

Jesus uses this question to rebuke the disciples. Alternate translation: "You should have understood that I was not really speaking about bread." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees (ULT)
yeast...the Pharisees and the Sadducees (UST)

Here "yeast" represents evil ideas and wrong teaching. Translate as "yeast" and do not explain the meaning in your translation. In 16:12 the disciples will understand the meaning. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Pharisees](#)
- [Sadducees](#)
- [yeast](#)
- [bread](#)
- [you...understand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Pharisees](#)
- [the Sadducees](#)
- [yeast](#)
- [bread. Do not](#)
- [have understood](#)

ULT

¹¹ How is it that you do not [understand](#) that I was not speaking to you about [bread](#)? Beware of the [yeast](#) of the [Pharisees](#) and [Sadducees](#)."

UST

¹¹ You should [have understood](#) that I was not really speaking about [bread](#). [Do not](#) accept [yeast](#) from the [Pharisees](#) and [the Sadducees](#)."

Matthew 16:12

they understood (ULT)

the disciples understood (UST)

These refer to the disciples.

Translation Words - ULT

- Pharisees
- Sadducees
- yeast
- teaching
- in bread
- they understood

Translation Words - UST

- Pharisees
- Sadducees
- yeast that is in
- teaching
- bread
- the disciples understood

ULT

¹² Then [they understood](#) that he was not telling them to beware of [yeast in bread](#), but to beware of the [teaching](#) of the [Pharisees](#) and [Sadducees](#).

UST

¹² Then [the disciples understood](#) that Jesus was not talking about the [yeast that is in bread](#). Instead, he was talking about the wrong [teaching](#) of the [Pharisees](#) and [Sadducees](#).

Matthew 16:13

Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts to a later time. Jesus asks his disciples if they understand who he is.

Now (ULT)

When Jesus and (UST)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line or to introduce a new person. Here Matthew starts to tell a new part of the story.

that the Son of Man (ULT)

that I, the Son of Man, really (UST)

Jesus is referring to himself. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [Caesarea](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [When Jesus and](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [Son of Man, really](#)
- [Caesarea](#)

ULT

13 Now when [Jesus](#) came to the regions near [Caesarea](#) Philippi, he asked his [disciples](#), saying, "Who do people say that the [Son of Man](#) is?"

UST

13 [When Jesus and](#) his [disciples](#) entered into the region near the city of [Caesarea](#) Philippi, he asked them, "Who do people say that I, the [Son of Man, really](#) am?"

Matthew 16:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- prophets
- John the Baptist
- Elijah
- Jeremiah

Translation Words - UST

- prophets who lived long ago, who has come back to life
- John...the Baptizer, who has come back to life
- Elijah, who has returned from heaven as God promised
- Still others say that you are the prophet Jeremiah

ULT

¹⁴ They said, "Some say [John the Baptist](#); some, [Elijah](#); and others, [Jeremiah](#), or one of the [prophets](#)."

UST

¹⁴ They answered, "Some people say that you are [John the Baptizer, who has come back to life](#) again. Others say that you are the prophet [Elijah, who has returned from heaven as God promised](#). Still others say that you are the prophet [Jeremiah](#) or one of the other [prophets who lived long ago, who has come back to life](#) again."

Matthew 16:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

15 He said to them, "But who do you say that I am?"

UST

15 Jesus said to them, "What about you? Who do you say that I am?"

Matthew 16:16

the Son of the living God (ULT)

the Son of the all-powerful God (UST)

This is an important title for Jesus that shows his relationship to God.
(See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

the living God

Here “living” contrasts the God of Israel to all the false gods and idols that people worshiped. Only the God of Israel is alive and has power to act.

Translation Words - ULT

- [living](#)
- [God](#)
- [Son of the...God](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [Simon Peter](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [all-powerful](#)
- [God](#)
- [Son of...God](#)
- [Messiah](#)
- [Simon Peter said to him...You are](#)

ULT

¹⁶ Answering, [Simon Peter](#) said, “You are the [Christ](#), the [Son of the living God](#).”

UST

¹⁶ [Simon Peter said to him](#), “[You are](#) the [Messiah](#)! You are the [Son of](#) the [all-powerful God](#).”

Matthew 16:17

Simon Bar Jonah (ULT)

Simon, son of Jonah (UST)

“Simon son of Jonah” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

flesh and blood have not revealed this (ULT) no human has revealed this...who has revealed this (UST)

Here “flesh and blood” refers to a human being. Alternate translation: “a human did not reveal” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

to you (ULT)

to you (UST)

Here “this” refers to Peter’s statement that Jesus is the Christ and the Son of the Living God.

but my Father who is in heaven (ULT)

to you. Instead, it was my Father who lives in heaven (UST)

The understood information can be made clear. Alternate translation: “but it was my Father in heaven who revealed this to you” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

my Father (ULT)

my Father (UST)

This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [have...revealed this](#)
- [in heaven](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [Blessed](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [blood](#)
- [Father](#)
- [Simon Bar Jonah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [who has revealed this](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [Then Jesus said](#)
- [God is pleased](#)
- [human has revealed this](#)
- [human has revealed this](#)
- [Father](#)
- [Simon, son of Jonah](#)

ULT

¹⁷ [Jesus](#) answered and said to him, “[Blessed](#) are you, [Simon Bar Jonah](#), for [flesh](#) and [blood](#) have not [revealed this](#) to you, but my [Father](#) who is [in heaven](#).”

UST

¹⁷ [Then Jesus said](#) to him, “[Simon, son of Jonah](#), [God is pleased](#) with you. What you just said—no [human has revealed this](#) to you. Instead, it was my [Father](#) who lives in [heaven who has revealed this](#) to you.”

Matthew 16:18

I also...say to you (ULT)

I will also...tell you (UST)

This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

you are Peter (ULT)

You...are Peter, which means (UST)

The name Peter means “rock.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

upon this rock I will build my church (ULT)
this...rock.’ You will be the support for the group of those who believe in me (UST)

Here “build my church” is a metaphor for uniting the people who believe in Jesus into a community. Possible meanings are 1) “this rock” represents Peter, or 2) “this rock” represents the truth that Peter had just said in [Matthew 16:16](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

The gates...of Hades will not prevail against it (ULT)

the powers of death will not be strong enough to stand up against it (UST)

Here “Hades” is spoken of as if it were a city surrounded by walls with gates that keep dead people in and other people out. Here “Hades” represents death, and its “gates” represent its power. Possible meanings are 1) “the powers of death will not overcome my church” or 2) “my church will break down the power of death the way an army breaks into a city.” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [church](#)
- [of Hades](#)
- [Peter](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the group of those who believe in me](#)
- [death](#)
- [Peter, which means](#)

ULT

¹⁸ I also say to you that you are [Peter](#), and upon this rock I will build my [church](#). The gates [of Hades](#) will not prevail against it.

UST

¹⁸ I will also tell you this: You are [Peter](#), [which means](#) ‘rock.’ You will be the support for [the group of those who believe in me](#), like a large rock supports a great building. And even the powers of [death](#) will not be strong enough to stand up against it.”

Matthew 16:19

I will give to you (ULT)

said, "I will enable you to open or close the way for people to come under (UST)

Here "you" is singular and refers to Peter. (See: [Forms of You](#))

the keys of the kingdom of heaven (ULT)

said...I will enable you to open or close the way for people to come under...the rule of God from heaven (UST)

Keys are objects that are used to lock or unlock doors. Here they represent authority. (See: [Metaphor](#))

of the kingdom of heaven (ULT)

the rule of God from heaven (UST)

This refers to God's rule as king. The phrase "kingdom of heaven" is used only in the book of Matthew. If possible, use "heaven" in your translation. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Whatever...you shall bind on earth shall be bound in heaven, and whatever you shall loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven (ULT)

Whatever you permit on earth, God will permit in heaven. Whatever you prohibit on earth, God will prohibit in heaven (UST)

Here "bind" is a metaphor meaning to forbid something, and "loose" is a metaphor meaning to allow something. Also, "in heaven" is a metonym that represents God himself. Alternate translation: "God in heaven will approve whatever you forbid or allow on earth" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of heaven
- heaven
- heaven (2)
- you shall bind
- bound
- kingdom of heaven
- earth
- earth (2)
- kingdom

Translation Words - UST

- heaven
- heaven
- heaven (2)
- you prohibit
- God will prohibit
- the...rule of God...from heaven
- earth

ULT

¹⁹ I will give to you the keys of the [kingdom of heaven](#). Whatever [you shall bind](#) on [earth](#) shall be [bound](#) in [heaven](#), and whatever you shall loose on [earth](#) shall be loosed in [heaven](#)."

UST

¹⁹ Then he said, "I will enable you to open or close the way for people to come under the [rule of God from heaven](#). Whatever you permit on [earth](#), God will permit in [heaven](#). Whatever [you prohibit](#) on [earth](#), [God will prohibit](#) in [heaven](#)."

- [earth](#) (2)
- [rule of God](#)

Matthew 16:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus commanded](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [Christ](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus warned...strongly](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [Messiah](#)

ULT

²⁰ Then [Jesus commanded](#) the [disciples](#) that they should tell no one that he was the [Christ](#).

UST

²⁰ Then [Jesus warned](#) the [disciples](#) [strongly](#) not to tell anyone at that time that he was the [Messiah](#).

Matthew 16:21

Connecting Statement:

Jesus tells his disciples for the first time that he will die soon.

suffer many things from the elders and chief priests and scribes (ULT)

There...the ruling elders, the chief priests, and the men who taught the Jewish laws...would cause him to suffer (UST)

Here "hand" refers to power. Alternate translation: "where the elders, chief priests, and scribes will cause him to suffer" (See: [Metonymy](#))

scribes, and be killed, and be raised on the third day (ULT)

the men who taught the Jewish laws...and die. Then on the third day after that, he would come alive again (UST)

Here to raise back to life is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. This can be stated in active form. The elders and chief priests would accuse Jesus so that others would kill him. Alternate translation: "scribes. People will then kill him , and on the third day God will make him become alive again" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

on the third day (ULT)

on the third day (UST)

"Third" is the ordinal form of "three." (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus...Christ](#)
- [scribes](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [that time](#)
- [elders](#)
- [be raised](#)
- [suffer](#)
- [day](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus...the Messiah](#)
- [the men who taught the Jewish laws](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [the Messiah](#)

ULT

²¹ From [that time Jesus Christ](#) started to tell his [disciples](#) that he must go to [Jerusalem](#), and [suffer](#) many things from the [elders](#) and [chief priests](#) and [scribes](#), and be killed, and [be raised](#) on the third [day](#).

UST

²¹ From [that time Jesus, the Messiah](#), began to teach the [disciples](#) that it was necessary for him to go [to the city of Jerusalem](#). [There](#) the [ruling elders, the chief priests](#), and [the men who taught the Jewish laws would cause him to suffer](#) and die. Then on the third [day](#) after that, [he would come alive again](#).

- to the city of Jerusalem
- that time
- ruling elders, the
- he would come alive again
- There...would cause him to suffer
- day

Matthew 16:22

Then Peter took him aside (ULT)

But Peter took Jesus aside and...that (UST)

Jesus tells them for the first time that he will die soon (verse 21). He will tell them the same thing many times after this first time. It is after this first time that Peter takes Jesus aside. (See: [Background Information](#))

Peter took him aside (ULT)

But Peter took Jesus aside...that (UST)

“Peter spoke to Jesus when no one else could hear them”

May this be far from you (ULT)

Lord, may God never permit...to happen (UST)

This is an idiom that means “may this never happen.” Alternate translation: “No” or “Never” or “May God forbid this” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [to rebuke](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Lord](#)
- [But Peter](#)
- [to scold](#)

ULT

²² Then [Peter](#) took him aside and began [to rebuke](#) him, saying, “May this be far from you, [Lord](#); may this never happen to you.”

UST

²² [But Peter](#) took Jesus aside and began [to scold](#) him for saying these things. He said, “[Lord](#), may God never permit that to happen to you! That must certainly not happen!”

Matthew 16:23

Get behind me, Satan! You are a stumbling block to me (ULT)

Get out of my sight...Satan is speaking through you.

You are trying to get me to sin (UST)

Jesus means that Peter is acting like Satan because Peter is trying to prevent Jesus from accomplishing what God sent him to do.

Alternate translation: "Get behind me, because you are acting like Satan! You are a stumbling block to me" or "Get behind me, Satan! I call you Satan because you are a stumbling block to me" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Get behind me (ULT)

Get out of my sight (UST)

"Get away from me"

Translation Words - ULT

- [of God](#)
- [Satan](#)
- [to Peter](#)
- [turned](#)
- [you...care for](#)
- [a stumbling block](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [Satan is speaking through you](#)
- [at Peter, and](#)
- [turned to look](#)
- [You are...thinking](#)
- [to get...to sin](#)

ULT

²³ But Jesus [turned](#) and said [to Peter](#), "Get behind me, [Satan](#)! You are [a stumbling block](#) to me, for you do not [care for](#) the things [of God](#), but for the things of people."

UST

²³ Then Jesus [turned to look at Peter](#), [and](#) he said to him, "Get out of my sight, because [Satan is speaking through you](#). You are trying [to get](#) me [to sin](#). [You are](#) not [thinking](#) what [God](#) thinks, but only what people think!"

Matthew 16:24**to follow me (ULT)****go where I am going (UST)**

Following Jesus here represents being one of his disciples. Alternate translation: “be my disciple” or “be one of my disciples” (See: [Metaphor](#))

he must deny himself (ULT)**he must put away his own desires and purposes...he must (UST)**

“must not give in to his own desires” or “must forsake his own desires”

take up...his cross, and follow me (ULT)**take up his own cross, and go where I go (UST)**

“carry his cross, and follow me.” The cross represents suffering and death. Taking up the cross represents being willing to suffer and die. Alternate translation: “and obey me even to the point of suffering and dying” or “and he must obey me even to the point of suffering and dying” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

and follow me (ULT)**and go where I go (UST)**

Following Jesus here represents obeying him. Alternate translation: “and obey me” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [to...disciples](#)
- [cross](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [cross](#)

ULT

²⁴ Then [Jesus](#) said to his [disciples](#), “If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his [cross](#), and follow me.

UST

²⁴ Then [Jesus](#) said to his [disciples](#), “If anyone wants to trust me and go where I am going, he must put away his own desires and purposes, and he must take up his own [cross](#), and go where I go.

Matthew 16:25

For whoever wants (ULT)

Whoever tries...will find that instead of saving his life, he (UST)

“For anyone who wants”

will lose it (ULT)

will lose it (UST)

This does not mean the person must necessarily die. It is a metaphor that means the person will consider obeying Jesus as being more important than his own life. (See: [Metaphor](#))

for my sake (ULT)

for me (UST)

“because he trusts me” or “on my account” or “because of me”

will find it (ULT)

he will find his life (UST)

This metaphor means the person will experience spiritual life with God. Alternate translation: “will find true life” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to save](#)
- [life](#)
- [life](#) (2)
- [will lose](#)
- [loses](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to save](#)
- [life](#)
- [life](#) (2)
- [will lose](#)
- [loses](#)

ULT

²⁵ For whoever wants [to save](#) his [life](#) [will lose](#) it, and whoever [loses](#) his [life](#) for my sake will find it.

UST

²⁵ Whoever tries [to save](#) his own [life](#), will find that instead of saving his life, he [will lose](#) it. But whoever [loses](#) his [life](#) for me, he will find his life.

Matthew 16:26

For what does it profit a person...for his life (ULT)

What good would it be for a person...his own life (UST)

Jesus uses a question to teach his disciples. Alternate translation: "It does not profit a person...his life." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

if he gains the whole world (ULT)

to get everything he wants in this world (UST)

The words "the whole world" are an exaggeration for great riches. Alternate translation: "if he gains everything he desires" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

but forfeits his life (ULT)

but then for him to lose his life (UST)

"but he loses his life"

What can a person give in exchange for his life (ULT)

What will a man gain in his possessions that would be as valuable as his own life (UST)

Jesus uses a question to teach his disciples. Alternate translation: "There is nothing that a person can give to regain his life." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- world
- but...life
- for...life
- it profit
- he gains

Translation Words - UST

- to get everything he wants in this world
- to lose
- life
- good would it be
- to get everything he wants in this world

ULT

²⁶ For what does [it profit](#) a person if [he gains](#) the whole [world](#) [but](#) forfeits his [life](#)? What can a person give in exchange for his [life](#)?

UST

²⁶ What [good would it be](#) for a person [to get everything he wants in this world](#), but then for him [to lose](#) his life? What will a man gain in his possessions that would be as valuable as his own [life](#)?

Matthew 16:27

the Son of Man...of his Father...Then...he will reward (ULT)

Listen carefully. I, the Son of Man...that my Father has...I will reward (UST)

Here Jesus refers to himself in the third person. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of man...my Father...Then I" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

is going...of Man...to come in the glory...of...his...Father (ULT)

At that time...of...will leave this earth, but I will return, and...I will have the glorious light...my Father has (UST)

"will come, having the same glory as his Father"

with his angels (ULT)

the angels of heaven will accompany me (UST)

"and the angels will be with him." If you translate the first part of the sentence with Jesus speaking in the first person, you can translate this as "and my Father's angels will be with me." (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

of his Father (ULT)

that my Father has (UST)

This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and the Son of Man, Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

his...according to...actions (ULT)

my...according to what they did when they were alive in this world (UST)

"according to what each person has done"

Translation Words - ULT

- [angels](#)
- [actions](#)
- [glory](#)
- [of...Father](#)
- [Son of Man](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [angels of heaven](#)
- [what they did when they were alive in this world](#)
- [glorious light](#)
- [Father has](#)
- [Son of Man](#)

ULT

²⁷ For the [Son of Man](#) is going to come in the [glory](#) of his [Father](#) with his [angels](#). Then he will reward every person according to his [actions](#).

UST

²⁷ Listen carefully. I, the [Son of Man](#), will leave this earth, but I will return, and the [angels of heaven](#) will accompany me. At that time I will have the [glorious light](#) that my [Father has](#), and I will reward everyone according to [what they did when they were alive in this world](#).

Matthew 16:28

Truly I say to you (ULT)

Listen carefully...you (UST)

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

to you (ULT)

Listen carefully...you (UST)

All occurrences of this word are plural and refer to the disciples. (See: [Forms of You](#))

will certainly not taste death (ULT)

before you die (UST)

Here "taste" means to experience. Alternate translation: "will not experience death" or "will not die" (See: [Idiom](#))

until they see the Son of Man coming in his kingdom (ULT)

will see me, the one who came from heaven, when I return as king. You will see this (UST)

Here "his kingdom" represents him being King. Alternate translation: "until they see the Son of Man coming as King" or "until they see the evidence that the Son of Man is King" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Truly
- Son of Man
- kingdom
- death

Translation Words - UST

- Listen carefully...you
- one who came from heaven
- when I return as king
- before you die

ULT

²⁸ Truly I say to you, there are some of you who are standing here who will certainly not taste [death](#) until they see the [Son of Man](#) coming in his [kingdom](#)." 16:2 ^[1] Some ancient manuscripts include the end of verse 2, and verse 3.

UST

²⁸ Listen carefully! Some of you who are here now will see me, the [one who came from heaven](#), [when I return as king](#). You will see this [before you die](#)!" 16:2 ^[1] Some ancient manuscripts include the end of verse 2, and verse 3.

Matthew 17

Matthew 17 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Elijah

The Old Testament prophet Malachi lived many years before Jesus was born. Malachi had said that before the Messiah came a prophet named Elijah would return. Jesus explained that Malachi had been talking about John the Baptist. Jesus said this because John the Baptist had done what Malachi had said that Elijah would do. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) and [Christ](#), [Messiah](#))

“transfigured”

Scripture often speaks of God’s glory as a great, brilliant light. When people see this light, they are afraid. Matthew says in this chapter that Jesus’ body shone with this glorious light so that his followers could see that Jesus truly was God’s Son. At the same time, God told them that Jesus was his Son. (See: [glory](#), [glorious](#), [glorify](#) and [fear](#), [afraid](#), [dread](#))

Matthew 17:1

General Information:

This begins the account of Jesus' transfiguration.

Peter, James, and John his brother

"Peter, James, and James's brother John"

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- brother
- Peter
- John
- James
- days

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- younger brother
- Peter
- John
- James
- A week after...said that

ULT

¹ Six [days](#) later [Jesus](#) took with him [Peter](#), [James](#), and [John](#) his [brother](#), and brought them up onto a high mountain by themselves.

UST

¹ [A week after Jesus said that](#), he took [Peter](#), [James](#), and [John](#), the [younger brother](#) of James, and led them up a high mountain where they were away from other people.

Matthew 17:2

He was transfigured...before them (ULT) the three disciples saw Jesus' appearance change (UST)

When they looked at him, his appearance was different from what it had been.

He was transfigured (ULT) appearance change (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "his appearance had changed" or "he appeared very different" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

before them (ULT) the three disciples saw Jesus (UST)

"in front of them" or "so they could clearly him"

His face...shone...like the sun, and his garments became as brilliant as the light (ULT) His face...shone...like the sun, and his clothing shone and became as brilliant as light (UST)

These are similes that emphasize how bright Jesus' appearance became. (See: [Simile](#))

and...garments...His...and...garments (ULT) and...His...clothing shone (UST)

"what he was wearing"

Translation Words - ULT

- [light](#)
- [face](#)
- [like](#)
- [as](#) (2)
- [and...garments](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [light](#)
- [face](#)
- [like](#)
- [as brilliant as](#) (2)
- [clothing shone](#)

ULT

² He was transfigured before them. His [face](#) shone [like](#) the sun, and his [garments](#) became as brilliant [as](#) the [light](#).

UST

² While they were there, the three disciples saw Jesus' appearance change. His [face](#) shone [like](#) the sun, and his [clothing shone](#) and became [as brilliant as light](#).

Matthew 17:3

Behold (ULT)

Suddenly (UST)

This word alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

to them (ULT)

who were important prophets many years ago, appeared and (UST)

This refers to Peter, James, and John.

with him (ULT)

with him (UST)

“with Jesus”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [Elijah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Moses](#)
- [Elijah](#)

ULT

³ Behold, there appeared to them [Moses](#) and [Elijah](#) talking with him.

UST

³ Suddenly [Moses](#) and [Elijah](#), who were important prophets many years ago, appeared and started talking with him.

Matthew 17:4

answered...and said (ULT)

saw them...said to (UST)

“said.” Peter is not responding to a question.

it is good for us to be here (ULT)

it is excellent for us to be here (UST)

It is not clear whether “us” refers only to Peter, James, and John, or if it refers to everyone there, including Jesus, Elijah, and Moses. If you can translate so that both options are possible, do so. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#) and [Inclusive and Exclusive “We”](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to Jesus](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [good](#)
- [shelters](#)
- [for Moses](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [for Elijah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [excellent](#)
- [tents](#)
- [for Moses](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [for Elijah](#)

ULT

⁴ [Peter](#) answered and said [to Jesus](#), “[Lord](#), it is [good](#) for us to be here. If you desire, I will make here three [shelters](#)—one for you, and one [for Moses](#), and one [for Elijah](#).”

UST

⁴ [Peter](#) saw them and said to [Jesus](#), “[Lord](#), it is [excellent](#) for us to be here! If you want me to, I will set up three [tents](#), one for you, one [for Moses](#), and one [for Elijah](#).”

Matthew 17:5

behold (ULT)

a...cloud (UST)

This alerts the reader to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

overshadowed them (ULT)

came over them (UST)

"came over them"

there was a voice out of the cloud (ULT)

They heard God speaking about Jesus...from inside the cloud (UST)

Here "voice" refers to God speaking. Alternate translation: "God spoke to them from out of the cloud" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Son](#)
- [beloved](#)
- [there was a voice](#)
- [I am well pleased](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Son](#)
- [I love him](#)
- [They heard God speaking about Jesus](#)
- [He pleases me very much](#)

ULT

⁵ While he was still speaking, behold, a bright cloud overshadowed them, and behold, [there was a voice](#) out of the cloud, saying, "This is my [beloved Son](#), in whom [I am well pleased](#). Listen to him."

UST

⁵ While Peter was speaking, a bright cloud came over them. [They heard God speaking about Jesus](#) from inside the cloud. He said to them, "This is my [Son](#). [I love him. He pleases me very much](#). So you must listen to him!"

Matthew 17:6

When the disciples heard it (ULT)

When the three disciples heard God speaking (UST)

“the disciples heard God speak”

they fell on their face (ULT)

they fell facedown on the ground (UST)

Here “fell on their face” here is an idiom. Alternate translation: “they fell forward, with their faces to the ground” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [were...afraid](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [face](#)
- [they fell](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [they were...afraid](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [facedown](#)
- [fell](#)

ULT

⁶ When the [disciples](#) heard it, [they fell](#) on their [face](#) and were very [afraid](#).

UST

⁶ When the three [disciples](#) heard God speaking, [they were](#) exceedingly [afraid](#). As a result, they [fell facedown](#) on the ground.

Matthew 17:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- be afraid
- Get up

Translation Words - UST

- But Jesus
- Do...be afraid anymore
- Stand up

ULT

⁷ Then [Jesus](#) came and touched them and said, "[Get up](#) and do not [be afraid](#)."

UST

⁷ [But Jesus](#) went to them and touched them and said to them, "[Stand up](#)! Do not [be afraid anymore](#)!"

Matthew 17:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)

ULT

⁸ Then they lifted up their eyes, but saw no one except only [Jesus](#) himself.

UST

⁸ And when they looked up, they saw that [Jesus](#) was the only one who was still there.

Matthew 17:9

Connecting Statement:

The following events happen immediately after the three disciples witness Jesus' transfiguration.

As they were coming down (ULT)

While they were walking down (UST)

"As Jesus and the disciples"

the Son of Man (ULT)

the Son...of Man, to (UST)

Jesus is speaking about himself. (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [commanded](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [the dead](#)
- [has risen](#)
- [vision](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [instructed](#)
- [the Son...of Man, to](#)
- [I die](#)
- [become alive again](#)
- [you saw on](#)

ULT

⁹ As they were coming down from the mountain, [Jesus commanded](#) them, saying, "Report this [vision](#) to no one until the [Son of Man has risen](#) from [the dead](#)."

UST

⁹ While they were walking down the mountain, [Jesus instructed](#) them, "Do not tell anyone what [you saw on](#) the mountain top until God has caused me, [the Son of Man, to become alive again](#) after [I die](#)."

Matthew 17:10

Why then do the scribes say that Elijah must come first (ULT)

If what you...is true, why do the men who teach the Jewish laws say that it is necessary for Elijah to come back to earth before the Messiah comes (UST)

The disciples are referring to the belief that Elijah will come back to life and return to the people of Israel before the Messiah comes. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [scribes](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [Elijah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [men who teach the Jewish laws](#)
- [Those three disciples](#)
- [Elijah](#)

ULT

¹⁰ His [disciples](#) asked him, saying, "Why then do the [scribes](#) say that [Elijah](#) must come first?"

UST

¹⁰ [Those three disciples](#) asked Jesus, "If what you say is true, why do the [men who teach the Jewish laws](#) say that it is necessary for [Elijah](#) to come back to earth before the Messiah comes?"

Matthew 17:11

restore all things (ULT)

to prepare many people for the Messiah's coming (UST)

“put things in order” or “get the people ready to receive the Messiah”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Elijah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Elijah](#)

ULT

¹¹ Jesus answered and said, “[Elijah](#) will indeed come and restore all things.

UST

¹¹ Jesus answered them, “It is true that God promised that [Elijah](#) would come to prepare many people for the Messiah's coming.

Matthew 17:12

But I tell you (ULT)

But note this (UST)

This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

they did...them (ULT)

they treated...in the same manner (UST)

All occurrences of these words may mean either 1) the Jewish leaders or 2) all the Jewish people.

the Son of Man will also suffer by them (ULT)

And...will soon treat me, the one who came from heaven, in the same manner (UST)

Here "hands" refers to power. Alternate translation: "they will make the Son of Man suffer" (See: [Metonymy](#))

the Son of Man (ULT)

me, the one who came from heaven (UST)

Jesus is referring to himself. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Son of Man](#)
- [Elijah](#)
- [suffer](#)
- [they...recognize](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [one who came from heaven](#)
- [Elijah](#)
- [treat](#)
- [recognize...as the one who would come before the Messiah](#)

ULT

¹² But I tell you, [Elijah](#) has already come, but [they](#) did not [recognize](#) him. Instead, they did whatever they wanted to him. In the same way, the [Son of Man](#) will also [suffer](#) by them."

UST

¹² But note this: [Elijah](#) has already come and our leaders have seen him, but they did not [recognize](#) him [as the one who would come before the Messiah](#). Instead, they treated him badly, just as they desired. And those same rulers will soon [treat](#) me, the [one who came from heaven](#), in the same manner."

Matthew 17:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [John the Baptist](#)
- [understood](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [disciples](#)
- [John the Baptizer](#)
- [understood](#)

ULT

¹³ Then the [disciples understood](#) that he was speaking to them about [John the Baptist](#).

UST

¹³ Then the three [disciples understood](#) that when he was talking about Elijah, he was referring to [John the Baptizer](#).

Matthew 17:14

Connecting Statement:

This begins an account of Jesus healing a boy who had an evil spirit. These events happen immediately after Jesus and his disciples descend from the mountain.

ULT

14 When they had come to the crowd, a man came to him, knelt before him,

UST

14 When Jesus and the three disciples returned to the rest of the disciples and to the crowd that had gathered, a man approached Jesus and knelt before him.

Matthew 17:15

have mercy on my son (ULT)

have mercy on my son (UST)

It is implied that the man wants Jesus to heal his son. Alternate translation: "have mercy on my son and heal him" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

he is epileptic (ULT)

heal him! He has epilepsy (UST)

This means that he sometimes had seizures. He would become unconscious and move uncontrollably. Alternate translation: "has seizures"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)
- [on...son](#)
- [have mercy](#)
- [water](#)
- [fire](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Sir](#)
- [son](#)
- [have mercy on](#)
- [water](#)
- [fire](#)

ULT

¹⁵ and said, "[Lord](#), [have mercy](#) on my [son](#), for he is epileptic and suffers severely. For he often falls into the [fire](#), and often into the [water](#)."

UST

¹⁵ He said to him, "[Sir](#), [have mercy on](#) my [son](#) and heal him! He has epilepsy and suffers very much. Because of this illness, he has fallen in the [fire](#) and in the [water](#) many times."

Matthew 17:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- they could
- to...disciples
- cure

Translation Words - UST

- they were...able
- disciples
- to heal

ULT

¹⁶ I brought him to your [disciples](#), but [they could](#) not [cure](#) him."

UST

¹⁶ I brought him to your [disciples](#) in order that they might heal him, but [they were](#) not [able to heal](#) him."

Matthew 17:17

Unbelieving and corrupt...generation...how long (ULT)
You people of this time...do not believe at all in God's power. How confused you are! How long (UST)

"This generation does not believe in God and does not know what is right or wrong. How"

how long will I have to stay with you? How long must I bear with you (ULT)

How...you are! How long do I have to be with you before you are able to do what I do (UST)

These questions show Jesus is unhappy with the people. Alternate translation: "I am tired of being with you! I am tired of your unbelief and corruption!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Unbelieving](#)
- [corrupt](#)
- [must I bear with](#)
- [generation](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [do not believe at all in God's power](#)
- [confused](#)
- [before...are able to do what I do](#)
- [You people of this time](#)

ULT

¹⁷ [Jesus](#) answered and said, "[Unbelieving](#) and [corrupt generation](#), how long will I have to stay with you? How long [must I bear with](#) you? Bring him here to me."

UST

¹⁷ [Jesus](#) responded, "[You people of this time do not believe at all in God's power](#). How [confused](#) you are! How long do I have to be with you [before](#) you [are able to do what I do](#)? Bring the boy here to me!"

Matthew 17:18

the boy was healed (ULT)

the boy was healed (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the boy became well” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

from that hour (ULT)

from that time onward (UST)

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “immediately” or “at that moment” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [it](#)
- [was healed](#)
- [hour](#)
- [rebuked](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [demon](#)
- [was healed](#)
- [time onward](#)
- [Jesus spoke severely](#)

ULT

¹⁸ [Jesus rebuked](#) the demon, and [it](#) came out of him, and the boy [was healed](#) from that [hour](#).

UST

¹⁸ When they brought the boy to [Jesus](#), [Jesus spoke severely](#) to the demon that was causing the epilepsy. As a result, the [demon](#) came out of the boy, and the boy [was healed](#) from that [time onward](#).

Matthew 17:19

we (ULT)

we (UST)

Here “we” refers to the speakers but not the hearers and so is exclusive. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

Why could we not cast it out (ULT)

Why were we not able to drive out the demon (UST)

“Why could we not make the demon come out of the boy?”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [could](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [cast...out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [were...able](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [to drive out](#)

ULT

¹⁹ Then the [disciples](#) came to [Jesus](#) privately and said, “Why [could](#) we not [cast](#) it [out](#)?”

UST

¹⁹ Later, some of the [disciples](#) approached [Jesus](#) when he was by himself and asked him, “Why were we not [able to drive out](#) the demon?”

Matthew 17:20

For I truly say to you (ULT)

"I tell you the truth." This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

if you have faith as a mustard seed (ULT)

Jesus compares the size of a mustard seed to the amount of faith needed to do a miracle. A mustard seed is very small, but it grows into a large plant. Jesus means it only takes a small amount of faith to do a great miracle. (See: [Simile](#))

nothing will be impossible for you (ULT)

This can be stated in a positive form. Alternate translation: "you will be able to do anything" (See: [Litotes](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- truly
- faith
- as
- a...seed

Translation Words - UST

- amen, truly
- faith
- like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if
- grain, grainfields

ULT

²⁰ Jesus said to them, "Because of your small faith. For I [truly](#) say to you, if you have [faith as](#) a mustard [seed](#), you will say to this mountain, 'Move from here to there,' and it will move, and nothing will be impossible for you.

UST

²⁰ He answered them, "It is because you did not believe very much in God's power. Think about this: Mustard seeds are very small, but they grow and produce large plants. Similarly, if you believe even a little bit that God will do what you ask him to, you will be able to do anything! You could even say to this mountain, 'Move from here to there!' and it would go where you told it to go."

Matthew 17:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

21^[1] [But this kind of demon does not go out except with prayer and fasting.]

UST

21^[1] [But this kind of demon does not go out except with prayer and fasting.]

Matthew 17:22

Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts momentarily, and Jesus foretells his death and resurrection a second time.

While...stayed...they (ULT)
had gathered together...the disciples (UST)

“Jesus and his disciples stayed”

The Son of Man is about to be delivered (ULT)
Someone will soon hand me, the Son of Man (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Someone will deliver the Son of Man” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

to be delivered into the hands of people (ULT)
hand me...over to the authorities (UST)

The word “hands” here is a metonym for the power that people use hands to exercise. Alternate translation: “taken and put under the power of people” or “taken and given to people who will control him” (See: [Metonymy](#))

The Son of Man (ULT)
the Son of Man (UST)

Jesus is referring to himself in the third person. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

into the hands of people (ULT)
over to the authorities (UST)

Here “hands” refers to power or control. Alternate translation: “to the control of the people” or “to the people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [Galilee](#)
- [the hands](#)
- [to be delivered](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [district of Galilee](#)
- [the authorities](#)
- [hand me](#)

ULT

²² While they stayed in [Galilee](#), [Jesus](#) said to his disciples, “The [Son of Man](#) is about [to be delivered](#) into [the hands](#) of people,

UST

²² When the disciples had gathered together in the [district of Galilee](#), [Jesus](#) said to them, “Someone will soon [hand me](#), the [Son of Man](#), over to [the authorities](#).

Matthew 17:23

him...he will be raised up (ULT)

me...become alive again (UST)

Jesus is referring to himself in the third person. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

the third day (ULT)

on the third day after I am killed (UST)

"Third" is the ordinal form of "three." (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

he will be raised up (ULT)

become alive again (UST)

Here to raise up is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will raise him up" or "God will cause him to become alive again" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [he will be raised up](#)
- [day](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [become alive again](#)
- [day after I am killed](#)

ULT

²³ and they will kill him, and the third [day he will be raised up](#)." The disciples became very upset.

UST

²³ They will kill me, but God will cause me to [become alive again](#) on the third [day after I am killed](#)." When the disciples heard that, they became very sad.

Matthew 17:24

Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts again to a later time when Jesus teaches Peter about paying the temple tax.

When...had come...they (ULT)
came...Jesus and the disciples (UST)

“When Jesus and his disciples”

the two-drachma tax (ULT)
the...taxes...temple (UST)

This was a tax that Jewish men paid to support the temple in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “the temple tax” (See: [Biblical Money](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Capernaum](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [teacher](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the city of Capernaum](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [teacher](#)

ULT

²⁴ When they had come to [Capernaum](#), the men who collected the two-drachma tax came to [Peter](#) and said, “Does not your [teacher](#) pay the two-drachma tax?”

UST

²⁴ When Jesus and the disciples came to [the city of Capernaum](#), the men who collected taxes for the temple approached [Peter](#) and said to him, “Your [teacher](#) pays the temple tax, does he not?”

Matthew 17:25

the house (ULT)

house (UST)

“the place where Jesus was staying”

What do you think, Simon? From whom do the kings of the earth collect tolls or taxes? From their sons or from others (ULT)

Simon, from whom do you think rulers collect revenue or taxes? Do they collect taxes from the citizens of their own country, or from citizens of countries they have conquered (UST)

Jesus asks these questions to teach Simon, not to gain information for himself. Alternate translation: “Listen, Simon. We know that when kings collect taxes, they collect it from people who are not members of their own family” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [sons](#)
- [Simon](#)
- [do...collect](#)
- [tolls](#)
- [taxes](#)
- [kings](#)
- [earth](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [citizens](#)
- [Simon](#)
- [collect](#)
- [revenue](#)
- [taxes...taxes](#)
- [rulers](#)
- [rulers](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

²⁵ He said, “Yes.” When Peter came into the [house](#), [Jesus](#) spoke to him first, saying, “What do you think, [Simon](#)? From whom do the [kings](#) of the [earth](#) [collect tolls](#) or [taxes](#)? From their [sons](#) or from others?”

UST

²⁵ He answered them, “Yes, he does pay it.” When the disciples came into Jesus’ [house](#), before Peter began to speak, [Jesus](#) said to him, “[Simon](#), from whom do you think [rulers collect revenue](#) or [taxes](#)? Do they collect [taxes](#) from the [citizens](#) of their own country, or from citizens of countries they have conquered?”

Matthew 17:26

General Information:

This is the end of the part of the story that began in [Matthew 13:54](#), where Matthew tells of continued opposition to Jesus' ministry and teaching about the kingdom of heaven.

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach Peter about paying the temple tax.

When he said, "From others," Jesus said to him (ULT)
Peter answered him, "From citizens of other countries...Jesus said to him (UST)

If you translated Jesus' questions as statements in [Matthew 17:25](#), you may need to give an alternate response here. You could also state it as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "When Peter said, 'Yes, that is true. Kings collect taxes from foreigners,' Jesus said" or "After Peter agreed with Jesus, Jesus said" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

From others (ULT)

From...citizens of other countries (UST)

In modern times, leaders usually tax their own citizens. But, in ancient times, the leaders often taxed the people they had conquered rather than their own citizens.

the sons (ULT)

citizens of their own country (UST)

people over whom a ruler or king rules

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [sons](#)
- [free](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [citizens of their own country](#)
- [do not need to pay taxes](#)

ULT

²⁶ When he said, "From others," [Jesus](#) said to him, "Then the [sons](#) are [free](#)."

UST

²⁶ Peter answered him, "From citizens of other countries." Then [Jesus](#) said to him, "So [citizens of their own country do not need to pay taxes](#)."

Matthew 17:27

But so that we do not cause the tax collectors to sin, go (ULT)

But go ahead and pay the tax for us so that the temple tax collectors will not become angry with us. In order to get the money to pay it, go (UST)

“But we do not want to make the tax collectors angry. So, go.”

throw in a hook (ULT)

cast your fish line and hook (UST)

Fishermen tied hooks to the end of a line, then threw it in the water to catch fish. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

its mouth (ULT)

its mouth, you (UST)

“the fish’s mouth”

a shekel (ULT)

a silver coin that is worth enough to pay the tax (UST)

a silver coin worth four days’ wages (See: [Biblical Money](#))

Take it (ULT)

Take that coin and (UST)

“Take the shekel”

for me and you (ULT)

for you and me...to the temple tax collectors (UST)

Here “you” is singular and refers to Peter. Each man had to pay a half shekel tax. So one shekel would be enough for Jesus and Peter to pay their taxes. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sea](#)
- [Take](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the Sea of Galilee](#)
- [Take](#)

ULT

²⁷ But so that we do not cause the tax collectors to sin, go to [the sea](#), throw in a hook, and draw in the fish that comes up first. When you have opened its mouth, you will find a shekel. [Take](#) it and give it to the tax collectors for me and you.”

17:21 ^[1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 21.

UST

²⁷ But go ahead and pay the tax for us so that the temple tax collectors will not become angry with us. In order to get the money to pay it, go to [the Sea of Galilee](#), cast your fish line and hook, and take the first fish that you catch. When you open its mouth, you will find a silver coin that is worth enough to pay the tax for you and me. [Take](#) that coin and give it to the temple tax collectors.”

17:21 ^[1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 21.

Matthew 18

Matthew 18 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

What should Jesus' followers do when other followers sin against them?

Jesus taught that his followers must treat each other well and not be angry with each other. They should forgive anyone who is sorry for his sin, even if he has committed the same sin before. If he is not sorry for his sin, Jesus' followers should speak with him alone or in a small group. If he is still not sorry after that, then Jesus' followers can treat him as guilty. (See: [repent](#), [repentance](#) and [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Matthew 18:1

General Information:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story that runs through [Matthew 18:35](#), where Jesus teaches about life in the kingdom of heaven. Here, Jesus uses a little child to teach the disciples.

Who then is greatest (ULT)

Who among us will be...most important (UST)

“Who is the most important” or “Who among us will be the most important”

in the kingdom of heaven (ULT)

the...when God makes you king from heaven (UST)

The phrase “kingdom of heaven” refers to God’s rule as king. This phrase is used only in the book of Matthew. If possible, keep “heaven” in your translation. Alternate translation: “in God’s kingdom” or “when our God in heaven establishes his rule on earth” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of heaven](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [kingdom of heaven](#)
- [time](#)
- [kingdom](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God makes you king from heaven](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [God makes you king from heaven](#)
- [At that precise time](#)
- [God makes you king from heaven](#)

ULT

¹ At that [time](#) the [disciples](#) came to [Jesus](#), saying, “Who then is greatest in the [kingdom of heaven](#)?”

UST

¹ [At that precise time](#) the [disciples](#) approached [Jesus](#) and asked him, “Who among us will be the most important when [God makes you king from heaven](#)?”

Matthew 18:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus called to himself](#)
- [a little child](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus called...to come](#)
- [a child](#)

ULT

² [Jesus called to himself a little child](#), set him among them,

UST

² [Jesus called a child to come](#), and he placed that child in their midst.

Matthew 18:3

Truly I say to you (ULT)

He said...I tell you the truth (UST)

"I tell you the truth." This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

unless you turn...little children, you will certainly not enter (ULT)

If you do not change...little children, surely you will not come (UST)

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "you must change...children in order to enter" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

become like little children (ULT)

become as humble as little children (UST)

Jesus uses a simile to teach the disciples that they should not be concerned with who is most important. They should be concerned with becoming humble like a child. (See: [Simile](#))

you will...enter into the kingdom of heaven (ULT)

will...come under the rule of God from heaven (UST)

The phrase "kingdom of heaven" refers to God's rule as king. This phrase is used only in the book of Matthew. If possible, keep "heaven" in your translation. Alternate translation: "enter God's kingdom" or "belong to our God in heaven when he establishes his rule on earth" (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

³ and said, "[Truly](#) I say to you, unless [you turn](#) and become [like little children](#), you will certainly not enter into the [kingdom of heaven](#)."

UST

³ [He said](#), "[I tell you the truth](#): If [you do](#) not [change](#) and become [as humble as little children](#), surely you will not come under the [rule of God from heaven](#)."

Translation Words - ULT

- [of heaven](#)
- [Truly](#)
- [kingdom of heaven](#)
- [little children](#)
- [you turn](#)
- [like](#)
- [kingdom](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [rule of God from heaven](#)
- [He said...I tell you the truth](#)
- [rule of God from heaven](#)
- [little children](#)
- [you do...change](#)
- [as humble as](#)
- [rule of God from heaven](#)

Matthew 18:4

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues teaching the disciples that they need to be humble like a child if they want to be important in God's kingdom. (See: [Simile](#))

is the greatest (ULT)

will be the most important people (UST)

"is the most important" or "will be the most important"

in the kingdom of heaven (ULT)

among those over whom God will rule from heaven (UST)

The phrase "kingdom of heaven" refers to God's rule as king. This phrase is used only in the book of Matthew. If possible, keep "heaven" in your translation. Alternate translation: "in God's kingdom" or "when our God in heaven establishes his rule on earth" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of heaven](#)
- [humbles](#)
- [kingdom of heaven](#)
- [little child](#)
- [like](#)
- [kingdom](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God will rule from heaven](#)
- [as humble](#)
- [God will rule from heaven](#)
- [child](#)
- [as](#)
- [God will rule from heaven](#)

ULT

⁴ Therefore, whoever [humbles](#) himself [like](#) this [little child](#), he is the greatest in the [kingdom of heaven](#).

UST

⁴ The people who become [as humble as](#) this [child](#) will be the most important people among those over whom [God will rule from heaven](#).

Matthew 18:5

in my name (ULT)

because they love me (UST)

Here “my name” refers to the entire person. Alternate translation: “because of me” or “because he is my disciple” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Whoever...in my name receives me (ULT)

Also, whenever people...because they love me, God considers that they are welcoming me (UST)

Jesus means that it is the same as welcoming him. Alternate translation: “When someone...in my name, it is like he is welcoming me” or “When someone...in my name, it is as if he were welcoming me”

ULT

⁵ Whoever [welcomes](#) a [little child like this](#) in my [name receives](#) me.

UST

⁵ Also, whenever people [welcome a child like this one because they love](#) me, [God considers that they are welcoming](#) me.”

Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [little child](#)
- [welcomes](#)
- [receives](#)
- [like this](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [because they love](#)
- [a child](#)
- [welcome](#)
- [God considers that they are welcoming](#)
- [like this one](#)

Matthew 18:6

a great millstone should be hung about his neck, and that he should be sunk into the depths of the sea (ULT) even if it is someone who people think is...that person...if someone had thrown him into the sea's deep waters with a heavy stone tied to his neck (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "if someone put a great millstone around his neck and threw him into the deep sea" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**a...millstone (ULT)
a heavy stone tied to...neck (UST)**

This is a large, heavy, circular stone used for grinding wheat grain into flour. Alternate translation: "a heavy stone"

Translation Words - ULT

- [who believes](#)
- [it would be better](#)
- [causes...to sin](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [who believes](#)
- [worse than](#)
- [causes...to sin](#)

ULT

⁶ But whoever [causes](#) one of these little ones [who believes](#) in me [to sin](#), [it would be better](#) for him that a great millstone should be hung about his neck, and that he should be sunk into the depths of the sea.

UST

⁶ "If a person [causes](#) someone [who believes](#) in me [to sin](#), even if it is someone who people think is as unimportant as this little child, God will severely punish that person. He will punish that person [worse than](#) if someone had thrown him into the sea's deep waters with a heavy stone tied to his neck!

Matthew 18:7

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to use a little child to teach the disciples and warns against the terrible consequences of causing children to sin.

to the world (ULT)

How terrible it will be (UST)

Here “world” refers to people. Alternate translation: “to the people of the world” (See: [Metonymy](#))

stumbling blocks...those stumbling blocks come...to the person through whom those stumbling blocks come (ULT)

those who cause others to sin...be...temptations to sin...anyone to cause another person to sin (UST)

Here “stumbling” is a metaphor for sin. Alternate translation: “things that cause people to sin...things come that cause people to sin...any person who causes others to sin” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [stumbling blocks](#)
- [Woe](#)
- [woe](#) (2)
- [stumbling blocks](#)
- [world](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [temptations to sin](#)
- [How terrible it will be](#)
- [how terrible it will be for](#) (2)
- [cause others to sin](#)
- [How terrible it will be](#)

ULT

⁷ [Woe](#) to the [world](#) because of [stumbling blocks](#)! For it is necessary that those [stumbling blocks](#) come, but [woe](#) to the person through whom those stumbling blocks come!

UST

⁷ [How terrible it will be](#) for those who [cause others to sin](#). There will always be [temptations to sin](#), but [how terrible it will be for](#) anyone to cause another person to sin.

Matthew 18:8

If your hand or your foot causes you to stumble, cut it off and throw it away from you

Jesus exaggerates here to emphasize that people must do anything necessary to remove from their lives what causes them to sin. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

your...you (ULT)

you...foot! Even if you have to (UST)

All occurrences of these words are singular. Jesus is speaking to all people in general. It may be more natural for your language to translate with a plural "you." (See: [Forms of You](#))

into life (ULT)

lived forever with God (UST)

"into eternal life"

than to be thrown into the eternal fire having two hands or two feet (ULT)

than if you had...both hands and...both feet and God threw...into the eternal fire in hell because of your sin (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "than to have both hands and feet when God throws you into the eternal fire" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [life](#)
- [eternal](#)
- [better](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hands](#)
- [cut...off](#)
- [fire](#)
- [causes...to stumble](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [lived forever with God](#)
- [eternal](#)
- [how much better is that](#)
- [your hands](#)
- [both hands and](#)
- [cut it off](#)
- [fire in hell because of your sin](#)
- [to sin](#)

ULT

⁸ If your [hand](#) or your foot [causes](#) you [to stumble](#), [cut](#) it [off](#) and throw it away from you. It is [better](#) for you to enter into [life](#) maimed or lame than to be thrown into the [eternal fire](#) having two [hands](#) or two feet.

UST

⁸ So if you are wanting to use one of [your hands](#) or feet [to sin](#), stop using that hand or foot! Even if you have to [cut it off](#) so you will not sin! Suppose you had only one hand or one foot and still [lived forever with God](#), [how much better is that](#) than if you had [both hands and](#) both feet and God threw you into the [eternal fire in hell because of your sin](#).

Matthew 18:9

If your eye causes you to stumble, pluck it out and throw it away from you (ULT)

Yes, and if what you see makes you want to sin, stop looking at those things! Even if you have to gouge out one of your eyes and throw it away to keep from sinning! Suppose (UST)

The command to destroy the eye, perhaps the most important part of the body, is probably an exaggeration for his hearers to do anything necessary to remove from their lives anything that causes them to sin. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

causes you to stumble (ULT)
makes you want to sin, stop looking at those things (UST)

Here "stumble" is a metaphor for sin. Alternate translation: "causes you to sin" (See: [Metaphor](#))

your...you (ULT)
you...away to keep from sinning! Suppose (UST)

All occurrences of these words are singular. Jesus is speaking to all people in general. It may be more natural for your language to translate with a plural "you." (See: [Forms of You](#))

into life (ULT)
and still lived forever with God (UST)

"into eternal life"

than to be thrown into fiery hell having two eyes (ULT)
that than if you had both eyes and God threw you into the eternal fire in hell (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "than to have both eyes when God throws you into the eternal fire" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [life](#)
- [hell](#)
- [better](#)
- [fiery](#)
- [causes...to stumble](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and still lived forever with God](#)
- [in hell](#)
- [how much better](#)
- [eternal fire](#)

ULT

⁹ If your eye [causes](#) you [to stumble](#), pluck it out and throw it away from you. It is [better](#) for you to enter into [life](#) with one eye than to be thrown into [fiery hell](#) having two eyes.

UST

⁹ Yes, and if what you see [makes](#) you [want to sin, stop looking at those things!](#) Even if you have to gouge out one of your eyes and throw it away to keep from sinning! Suppose you had only one eye [and still lived forever with God, how much better](#) is that than if you had both eyes and God threw you into the [eternal fire in hell.](#)"

- makes...want to sin, stop looking at those things

Matthew 18:10

See that (ULT)

Be sure (UST)

“Be careful that” or “Be sure that”

you do not despise one of these little ones (ULT)
not to look down on even one of these children (UST)

“you do not think of these little ones as being unimportant.” This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “you show respect to these little ones”

For I say to you (ULT)

I tell you truly (UST)

This add emphasis to what Jesus says next.

that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven (ULT)
that the angels who protect them can always go to my Father and report to him if you mistreat the children (UST)

Jewish teachers taught that only the most important angels could be in God's presence. Jesus means that the most important angels speak to God about these little ones. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

always look on the face of my Father (ULT)
can always go to...my Father and report to him if you mistreat the children (UST)

This is an idiom that means they are in God's presence. Alternate translation: “are always close to my Father” or “are always in the presence of my Father” (See: [Idiom](#))

of my Father (ULT)

my Father and report to him if you mistreat the children (UST)

This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [heaven](#) (2)
- [angels](#)
- [of...Father](#)
- [face](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [can always go to](#)
- [my Father and report to him if you mistreat the children](#) (2)
- [angels](#)
- [my Father and report to him if you mistreat the children](#)
- [my Father and report to him if you mistreat the children](#)

ULT

¹⁰ See that you do not despise one of these little ones. For I say to you that in [heaven](#) their [angels](#) always look on the [face](#) of my [Father](#) who is in [heaven](#).

UST

¹⁰ “Be sure not to look down on even one of these children. I tell you truly that the [angels](#) who protect them [can always go to my Father and report to him if you mistreat the children](#).

Matthew 18:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

11^[1] [For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.]

UST

11^[1] [For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.]

Matthew 18:12

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to use a little child to teach the disciples and tells a parable to explain God's care for people.

What do you think (ULT)

What do you think you would do in the following situation (UST)

Jesus uses this question to get people's attention. Alternate translation: "Think about how people act." or "Think about this." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

you (ULT)

you (UST)

This word is plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

a hundred...ninety-nine (ULT)

one hundred...ninety-nine sheep that were (UST)

"100...99" (See: [Numbers](#))

does he not leave...the one that went astray (ULT)

leave...would you not...for the lost one (UST)

Jesus uses a question to teach his disciples. Alternate translation: "he will always leave...astray." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [seeking](#)
- [sheep](#)
- [goes astray](#)
- [the one that went astray](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and search](#)
- [sheep](#)
- [got lost, you would surely](#)
- [for the lost one](#)

ULT

¹² What do you think? If someone happens to have a hundred [sheep](#), and one of them [goes astray](#), does he not leave the ninety-nine on the hillside and go off [seeking the one that went astray](#)?

UST

¹² What do you think you would do in the following situation? If you had one hundred [sheep](#) and one of them [got lost, you would surely](#) leave the ninety-nine sheep that were on the hillside and go [and search for the lost one](#), would you not?

Matthew 18:13

If he happens to find it...that did not go astray (ULT)
If you found it...but you...did not stray away...would rejoice even more because you had found the sheep that had strayed away (UST)

This is the end of the parable that begins with the words "If anyone" in verse 12. (See: [Parables](#))

it, truly I say to you (ULT)
it, I affirm to you (UST)

"I tell you the truth." This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next. The word "you" is plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [truly](#)
- [he rejoices](#)
- [that did not go astray](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [I affirm](#)
- [you would rejoice](#)
- [did...stray away](#)

ULT

¹³ If he happens to find it, [truly](#) I say to you, [he rejoices](#) over it more than over the ninety-nine [that did not go astray](#).

UST

¹³ If you found it, [I affirm](#) to you that [you would rejoice](#) very much. You would be happy that ninety-nine sheep did not [stray away](#), but you would rejoice even more because you had found the sheep that had strayed away.

Matthew 18:14

it is not the will of your Father in heaven that one of these little ones should perish

“your Father in heaven does not want any of these little ones to die”
or “your Father in heaven does not want even one of these little ones to die”

your (ULT)

your (UST)

This word is plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Father (ULT)

Father (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [should perish](#)
- [Father](#)
- [the will of...Father](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#)
- [to go to hell](#)
- [Father](#)
- [Father...does...want even](#)

ULT

¹⁴ In the same way, it is not [the will of](#) your [Father](#) who is in [heaven](#) that one of these little ones [should perish](#).

UST

¹⁴ In the same way that the shepherd does not want one of his sheep to stray away, so God, your [Father](#) in [heaven](#), does not [want even](#) one of these children [to go to hell](#).”

Matthew 18:15

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to teach his disciples about forgiveness and reconciliation.

your brother (ULT)
a fellow believer...you (UST)

This refers to a fellow believer in God, not a physical brother.
Alternate translation: "your fellow believer"

your...you will have gained...brother (ULT)
you...will be good brothers once more (UST)

"you will have made your relationship with your brother good again"

Translation Words - ULT

- sins
- brother
- brother
- you will have gained
- and tell...his fault

Translation Words - UST

- sins
- a fellow believer
- good brothers
- will be...once more
- reprove

ULT

15 If your [brother sins](#) against you, go [and tell](#) him [his fault](#), between you and him alone. If he listens to you, [you will have gained](#) your [brother](#).

UST

15 "If [a fellow believer sins](#) against you, go to him when you can be alone with him, and [reprove](#) him for sinning against you. If that person listens to you and feels sorry that he has sinned against you, you and he [will be good brothers once more](#).

Matthew 18:16

so that by the mouth of two or three witnesses every word might be verified (ULT)

so that, as the law says, 'there must be two or three witnesses to confirm every accusation (UST)

Here "mouth" and "word" refer to what a person says. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so that two or three witnesses may verify that what you say about your brother is true" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [witnesses](#)
- [might be verified](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [two...witnesses](#)
- [to confirm](#)

ULT

¹⁶ But if he does not listen, take one or two others along with you, so that by the mouth of two or three [witnesses](#) every word [might be verified](#).

UST

¹⁶ If, however, that person does not listen to you, go get one or two other fellow believers. Have them go with you so that, as the law says, 'there must be [two](#) or three [witnesses to confirm](#) every accusation.'

Matthew 18:17

if...he refuses to listen to them (ULT)

If the one who has sinned against you...does not listen to them (UST)

“if your fellow believer refuses to listen to the witnesses who came with you”

the church (ULT)

to the congregation, exclude him from among (UST)

“to the whole community of believers”

let him be to you as a Gentile and a tax collector (ULT)
you, just as you would exclude pagans and tax collectors as hopeless sinners (UST)

“treat him as you would treat a Gentile or tax collector.” This implies that they should remove him from the community of believers. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- church
- church
- tax collector
- as
- Gentile

Translation Words - UST

- entire congregation
- congregation, exclude him from among
- tax collectors as hopeless sinners
- just as you would exclude
- pagans

ULT

¹⁷ And if he refuses to listen to them, tell the matter to the [church](#). If he also refuses to listen to the [church](#), let him be to you [as](#) a [Gentile](#) and a [tax collector](#).

UST

¹⁷ If the one who has sinned against you does not listen to them, tell the matter to the [entire congregation](#) so that they can correct him. And if the person does not listen to the [congregation, exclude him from among you, just as you would exclude pagans](#) and [tax collectors as hopeless sinners](#).

Matthew 18:18

Truly I say to you (ULT)

Keep this...mind (UST)

"I tell you the truth." This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

to you (ULT)

Keep this...mind (UST)

All occurrences of this word are plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

whatever things you bind on earth will be bound in heaven; and whatever you release on earth will be released in heaven (ULT)

in...Whatever you decide on earth about punishing or not punishing a member of your congregation is what has also been decided by God in heaven (UST)

Here "bind" is a metaphor meaning to forbid something, and "release" is a metaphor meaning to allow something. Also, "in heaven" is a metonym that represents God himself. See how you translated similar phrases in [Matthew 16:19](#). Alternate translation: "God in heaven will approve whatever you forbid or allow on earth" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

I say to you (ULT)

Keep this...mind (UST)

This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [heaven](#) (2)
- [you bind](#)
- [bound](#)
- [Truly](#)
- [earth](#)
- [earth](#) (2)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#)
- [decided by God](#) (2)
- [you decide...about punishing or](#)
- [has also been](#)
- [Keep this...mind](#)
- [earth](#)
- [not punishing a member of your congregation...in](#) (2)

ULT

¹⁸ [Truly](#) I say to you, whatever things [you bind](#) on [earth](#) will be [bound](#) in [heaven](#); and whatever you release on [earth](#) will be released in [heaven](#).

UST

¹⁸ [Keep this](#) in [mind](#): Whatever [you decide](#) on [earth about punishing or not punishing a member of your congregation](#) is what [has also been decided by God in heaven](#).

Matthew 18:19**if...two...of you (ULT)****If at least...two...of you (UST)**

It is implied that Jesus means “if at least two of you” or “if two or more of you.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

if...they might ask...for them (ULT)**If at least...you ask...you what you ask for (UST)**

These refer to the “two of you.” Alternate translation: “you...you”

my Father (ULT)**my Father (UST)**

This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [truly](#)
- [Father](#)
- [earth](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#)
- [note this](#)
- [Father](#)
- [earth](#)

ULT

¹⁹ Again I [truly](#) say to you, if two of you agree on [earth](#) about any matter that they might ask, it will be done for them by my [Father](#) who is in [heaven](#).

UST

¹⁹ Also [note this](#): If at least two of you who live here on [earth](#) agree together about whatever you ask for, my [Father](#) who is in [heaven](#), will give you what you ask for.

Matthew 18:20

two or three (ULT)

two...or three of you (UST)

It is implied that Jesus means “two or more” or “at least two.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

gathered together (ULT)

assemble (UST)

“meet”

in my name (ULT)

because you believe in me (UST)

Here “name” refers to the entire person. Alternate translation: “because of me” or “because they are my disciples” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [my name](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [because you believe in me](#)

ULT

²⁰ For where two or three are gathered together in [my name](#), there I am in their midst.”

UST

²⁰ This is true, because wherever at least two or three of you assemble [because you believe in me](#), I am with you.”

Matthew 18:21

seven times (ULT)

seven times (UST)

“7 times” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- will...sin
- brother
- I forgive
- Peter

Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- keeps on sinning
- a fellow believer who
- I forgive
- Peter

ULT

²¹ Then [Peter](#) came and said to Jesus, “[Lord](#), how often will my [brother sin](#) against me and [I forgive](#) him? Until seven times?”

UST

²¹ Then [Peter](#) approached Jesus and said to him, “[Lord](#), how many times must I forgive [a fellow believer who keeps on sinning](#) against me? If he keeps asking me to forgive him, must [I forgive](#) him as many as seven times?”

Matthew 18:22

seventy times seven (ULT)

seventy...seven...times (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) "70 times 7" or 2) "77 times." If using a number would be confusing, you can translate it as "more times than you can count" or "you must always forgive him." (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)

ULT

²² [Jesus](#) said to him, "I do not tell you up to seven times, but up to seventy times seven."

UST

²² [Jesus](#) said to him, "I tell you that the number of times you must forgive someone is not just up to seven, but you must forgive him seventy-seven times."

Matthew 18:23

Connecting Statement:

Jesus uses a parable to teach about forgiveness and reconciliation.

the kingdom of heaven is similar (ULT) God's rule from heaven...is like (UST)

This introduces a parable. See how you translated a similar parable introduction in [Matthew 13:24](#). (See: [Parables](#))

of heaven...to settle accounts with his...servants (ULT) from...and his officials...his...officials...to pay what they owed him (UST)

"his servants to pay him what they owed"

Translation Words - ULT

- of heaven
- kingdom of heaven
- to a certain king
- is similar
- kingdom
- servants

Translation Words - UST

- heaven
- God's rule...from heaven
- a king
- is like
- God's rule
- officials

ULT

²³ Therefore the [kingdom of heaven is similar to a certain king](#) who wanted to settle accounts with his [servants](#).

UST

²³ [God's rule from heaven is like a king](#) and his officials. He wanted his [officials](#) to pay what they owed him.

Matthew 18:24

one servant was brought to him (ULT)

One of the officials brought to the king (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “someone brought one of the king’s servant” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ten thousand talents (ULT)

that was worth the value of more than three metric tons of gold (UST)

“10,000 talents” or “more money than the servant could ever repay” (See: [Biblical Money](#) and [Numbers](#))

ULT

²⁴ As he began the settling, one servant was brought to him who owed him ten thousand talents.

UST

²⁴ So those officials came to the king to settle their accounts with him. One of the officials brought to the king owed him a debt that was worth the value of more than three metric tons of gold.

Matthew 18:25

his master commanded him to be sold...and payment to be made (ULT)
the king demanded that he...be sold to someone else... and...be repaid with the money that was paid for them (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the king commanded his servants to sell the man...and to pay the debt with the money from the sale" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [master](#)
- [commanded](#)
- [children](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [king](#)
- [demanded that](#)
- [his children](#)

ULT

²⁵ But since he did not have the means to repay him, his [master commanded](#) him to be sold, together with his wife and [children](#) and everything that he had, and payment to be made.

UST

²⁵ But because he did not have enough money to pay what he owed, the [king demanded that](#) he, his wife, [his children](#) and all he possessed be sold to someone else and that the king be repaid with the money that was paid for them.

Matthew 18:26

So...fell down...bowed down before (ULT)
Then...fell on his knees...in front of the (UST)

This shows that the servant approached the king in the most humble way possible. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

bowed down before him (ULT)
he did...in front of the (UST)

“before the king”

Translation Words - ULT

- Master
- bowed down before
- have patience
- servant
- fell down

Translation Words - UST

- king
- in front of the
- Be patient
- that official, knowing that
- fell on his knees

ULT

²⁶ So the [servant fell down, bowed down before](#) him, saying, ‘[Master, have patience](#) with me, and I will pay you everything.’

UST

²⁶ Then [that official, knowing that](#) he did not have the money to pay that huge debt, [fell on his knees in front of the king](#) and he begged him, ‘[Be patient](#) with me, and I will pay you all of it, eventually.’

Matthew 18:27

since he was moved with compassion (ULT)
felt sorry for him (UST)

“he felt compassion for the servant”

released him (ULT)
and released him (UST)

“let him go”

Translation Words - ULT

- master
- since he was moved with compassion
- forgave
- of...servant

Translation Words - UST

- king, knowing that
- felt sorry for him
- canceled
- official

ULT

²⁷ So the [master](#) of that [servant](#), [since he was moved with compassion](#), released him and [forgave](#) him the debt.

UST

²⁷ The [king, knowing that](#) the [official](#) could never pay all that huge debt, [felt sorry for him](#). So he [canceled](#) his debt and released him.

Matthew 18:28

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling a parable to his disciples. (See: [Parables](#))

one hundred denarii (ULT)

a bit less than a year's wages (UST)

"100 denarii" or "one hundred days' wages" (See: [Biblical Money](#) and [Numbers](#))

He grasped...him (ULT)

He grabbed...him...by the throat (UST)

"The first servant grasped his fellow servant"

He grasped (ULT)

He grabbed...by the throat (UST)

"took hold of" or "grabbed"

Translation Words - ULT

- [servant](#)
- [of...fellow servants](#)
- [He grasped](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [official](#)
- [officials](#)
- [He grabbed...by the throat](#)

ULT

28 But that [servant](#) went out and found one of his [fellow servants](#), who owed him one hundred denarii. [He grasped](#) him, choked him, saying, 'Pay me what you owe.'

UST

28 Then this same [official](#) went to another one of the king's [officials](#) who owed him a bit less than a year's wages. [He grabbed](#) him [by the throat](#), started choking him, and said to him, 'Pay back what you owe me!'

Matthew 18:29

fell down (ULT)

fell on his knees (UST)

This shows that the fellow servant approached the first servant in the most humble way possible. See how you translated this in [Matthew 18:26](#). (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

and implored him (ULT)

and begged him (UST)

“and begged him”

Translation Words - ULT

- [and implored](#)
- [Have patience](#)
- [fellow servant](#)
- [fell down](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and begged](#)
- [Be patient](#)
- [That official](#)
- [fell on his knees](#)

ULT

²⁹ Then his [fellow servant](#) [fell down and implored](#) him, saying, ‘[Have patience](#) with me, and I will repay you.’

UST

²⁹ [That official](#) [fell on his knees and begged](#) him saying, ‘[Be patient](#) with me, and I will pay you all of it, eventually.’

Matthew 18:30

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling a parable to his disciples. (See: [Parables](#))

he went and threw him into prison (ULT)
he put that official into prison and (UST)

“the first servant went and threw his fellow servant into prison”

Translation Words - ULT

- [prison](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [prison and](#)

ULT

30 But the first servant was not willing to do that. Instead, he went and threw him into [prison](#) until he would pay him what he owed.

UST

30 But the first official kept refusing to cancel that small debt that the man owed him. Instead, he put that official into [prison and](#) to stay there until he could pay back all the money that he owed him.

Matthew 18:31

his fellow servants (ULT)

the other officials of the king (UST)

“other servants”

and told their master (ULT)

to the king and reported in detail what (UST)

“told the king”

Translation Words - ULT

- [master](#)
- [and told](#)
- [fellow servants](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [king and](#)
- [reported in detail](#)
- [other officials](#)

ULT

³¹ Therefore when his [fellow servants](#) saw what had happened, they were very upset. They came [and told](#) their [master](#) everything that had happened.

UST

³¹ When the [other officials](#) of the king learned that this had happened, they were very distressed. So they went to the [king and reported in detail](#) what had happened.

Matthew 18:32

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling a parable to his disciple. (See: [Parables](#))

Then his master called him (ULT)

Then the king summoned the official who had owed him a debt worth more (UST)

“Then the king called the first servant”

you implored me (ULT)

you begged me to do so (UST)

“you begged me”

Translation Words - ULT

- [called](#)
- [master](#)
- [I forgave](#)
- [wicked](#)
- [you implored](#)
- [You...servant](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [summoned](#)
- [the king...the official who had owed him a debt worth more](#)
- [I canceled](#)
- [You wicked](#)
- [you begged](#)
- [servant](#)

ULT

32 Then his [master called](#) him, and said to him, ‘You [wicked servant](#), [I forgave](#) you all that debt because [you implored](#) me.

UST

32 Then [the king summoned the official who had owed him a debt worth more](#) than three metric tons of gold. He said to him, ‘[You wicked servant! I canceled](#) that huge debt that you owed me because [you begged](#) me to do so!

Matthew 18:33

Should you not also have had mercy...had mercy on you (ULT)

You should have been merciful and canceled...was merciful to you and canceled your debt (UST)

The king uses a question to scold the first servant. Alternate translation: "You should have...you!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [have had mercy](#)
- [had mercy](#)
- [as](#)
- [on...fellow servant](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [have been merciful](#)
- [was merciful](#)
- [just like](#)
- [fellow official's debt](#)

ULT

³³ Should you not also [have had mercy](#) on your [fellow servant](#), [as](#) I [had mercy](#) on you?

UST

³³ You should [have been merciful](#) and canceled your [fellow official's debt](#), [just like](#) I [was merciful](#) to you and canceled your debt!

Matthew 18:34

General Information:

This is the end of the part of the story that began in [Matthew 18:1](#), where Jesus teaches about life in the kingdom of heaven.

Connecting Statement:

Jesus concludes his parable about forgiveness and reconciliation.

His master (ULT)

The king...He (UST)

“The king”

and handed him over (ULT)

handed this official (UST)

“gave him over.” Most likely the king himself did not take the first servant to the torturers. Alternate translation: “he ordered his servants to give him over” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

to the torturers (ULT)

over to some jailers who would torture him severely (UST)

“to those who would torture him”

that was owed (ULT)

the debt...he owed (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that the first servant owed the king” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [master](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [king](#)

ULT

34 His [master](#) was angry and handed him over to the torturers until he would pay all that was owed.

UST

34 The [king](#) was very angry. He handed this official over to some jailers who would torture him severely until he paid all of the debt that he owed.”

Matthew 18:35

my heavenly Father (ULT)

my Father in heaven (UST)

This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

to you...your (ULT)

to you...feel merciful...sincerely...you (UST)

All occurrences of these words are plural. Jesus is speaking to his disciples, but this parable teaches a general truth that applies to all believers. (See: [Forms of You](#))

from your heart (ULT)

feel merciful...sincerely...you (UST)

Here “heart” is a metonym for a person’s inner being. The phrase “from your heart” is an idiom that means “sincerely.” Alternate translation: “sincerely” or “completely” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heavenly](#)
- [brother](#)
- [heart](#)
- [forgive](#)
- [my heavenly...Father](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [in heaven](#)
- [a fellow believer](#)
- [feel merciful...sincerely...you](#)
- [forgive](#)
- [my...Father...in heaven](#)

ULT

³⁵ So also [my heavenly Father](#) will do to you, if each of you does not [forgive](#) his [brother](#) from your [heart](#).”

18:11 ^[1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 11.

UST

³⁵ Then Jesus continued by saying, “That is what my [Father in heaven](#) will do to you if you do not [feel merciful](#) and [sincerely forgive a fellow believer](#) who sins against [you](#).”

18:11 ^[1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 11.

Matthew 19

Matthew 19 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Divorce

Jesus taught about divorce because the Pharisees wanted people to think Jesus' teachings about divorce were wrong ([Matthew 19:3-12](#)). Jesus talked about what God had first said about marriage when he created it.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metonymy

Jesus often says the word "heaven" when he wants his hearers to think of God, who lives in heaven (Matthew 1:12).

Matthew 19:1

General Information:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story that runs through [Matthew 22:46](#), which tells of Jesus ministering in Judea. These verses provide background information of how Jesus came to be in Judea. (See: [Background Information](#))

It came about that...when (ULT)

After Jesus had said (UST)

This phrase shifts the story from Jesus' teachings to what happened next. Alternate translation: "When" or "After"

had finished...these words (ULT)

After Jesus had said...After Jesus had said...that (UST)

Here "words" refers to what Jesus taught starting in [Matthew 18:1](#). Alternate translation: "had finished teaching these things" (See: [Metonymy](#))

departed from (ULT)

the part of (UST)

"walked away from" or "left"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [of Judea](#)
- [Jordan River](#)
- [Galilee](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [After Jesus had said](#)
- [of Judea that is](#)
- [Jordan River](#)
- [district of Galilee](#)

ULT

¹ It came about that when [Jesus](#) had finished these words, he departed from [Galilee](#), and came to the region [of Judea](#) that is beyond the [Jordan River](#).

UST

¹ [After Jesus had said](#) that, he took his disciples and left the [district of Galilee](#). They went to the part of the district [of Judea that is](#) east of the [Jordan River](#).

Matthew 19:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [he healed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [he healed](#)

ULT

² Great crowds followed him, and [he](#) [healed](#) them there.

UST

² Large crowds followed him there, and [he healed](#) the sick among them.

Matthew 19:3

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to teach about marriage and divorce.

came to...him (ULT)

approached...him (UST)

“came to Jesus”

came to...testing him...saying (ULT)

approached...said...him...in order to be able to debate with him (UST)

Here “tested” is used in a negative sense. Alternate translation: “and challenged him by asking him” or “and wanted to trap him by asking him”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Pharisees](#)
- [testing](#)
- [lawful](#)
- [to divorce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Some Pharisees](#)
- [in order to be able to debate with him](#)
- [to...Does our Jewish law permit](#)
- [to divorce](#)

ULT

³ [Pharisees](#) came to him, [testing](#) him and saying, “Is it [lawful](#) for a man [to divorce](#) his wife for any cause?”

UST

³ [Some Pharisees](#) approached him and said to him, “[Does our Jewish law permit](#) a man [to divorce](#) his wife for any reason whatever?” They asked that [in order to be able to debate with him](#).

Matthew 19:4

Have you not read that he who made them from the beginning made them male and female (ULT)
You have read...that at the time when God first created people, 'He made one man, and he made one woman (UST)

Jesus uses this question to remind the Pharisees of what the scripture says about men, women, and marriage. Alternate translation: "Surely you have read that in the beginning when God created people he made them male and female." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

⁴ Jesus answered and said, "Have you not read that he who made them from the beginning made them male and female?"

UST

⁴ Jesus said to them, "You have read the scriptures, so you should know that at the time when God first created people, 'He made one man, and he made one woman.'

Matthew 19:5

General Information:

In verse 5, Jesus quotes from Genesis to show that a husband and wife should not divorce.

**He also said, 'For this reason...one flesh (ULT)
That explains why God said, 'That is why...leaves...one person (UST)**

This is part of what Jesus expected the Pharisees to have understood from the scripture. The direct quotation can be expressed as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "And surely you know that God also said that for this reason...flesh" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

**For this reason (ULT)
God said...That is why...leaves (UST)**

This is a part of the quotation from Genesis story about Adam and Eve. In that context the reason a man will leave his father and mother is because God created a woman to be the man's companion.

**join to his wife (ULT)
marries his wife (UST)**

"stay close to his wife" or "live with his wife"

**the two will become one flesh (ULT)
The two of them will live together...as though they were...one person (UST)**

This is a metaphor that emphasizes the unity of a husband and a wife. Alternate translation: "they will become like one person" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [flesh](#)
- [father](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [person](#)
- [his father](#)

ULT

⁵ He also said, 'For this reason a man will leave his [father](#) and mother and join to his wife, and the two will become one [flesh](#).'

UST

⁵ That explains why God said, 'That is why a man leaves [his father](#) and mother and marries his wife. The two of them will live together as though they were one [person](#).'

Matthew 19:6

**So they are no longer two, but one flesh (ULT)
Consequently, although they functioned as two
separate people before, they now become as if they
were one person. Since that is true (UST)**

This is a metaphor that emphasizes the unity of a husband and a wife. Alternate translation: "So a husband and wife are no longer like two persons, but they are like one person" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [flesh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [person. Since that is true](#)

ULT

⁶ So they are no longer two, but one [flesh](#). Therefore what [God](#) has joined together, let man not tear apart."

UST

⁶ Consequently, although they functioned as two separate people before, they now become as if they were one [person. Since that is true](#), a man must not separate from his wife whom [God](#) has joined to him."

Matthew 19:7

They said to him (ULT)
said to him, "If that is true (UST)

"The Pharisees said to Jesus"

command us (ULT)
did...command that a man who wanted to divorce his wife (UST)

"command us Jews"

a certificate of divorce (ULT)
a paper stating his reason for divorcing her (UST)

This is a document that legally ends the marriage.

Translation Words - ULT

- [command us](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [to send...away](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [did...command that a man who wanted to divorce his wife](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [send...away](#)

ULT

⁷ They said to him, "Why then did [Moses](#) [command us](#) to give a certificate of divorce and then [to send](#) her [away](#)?"

UST

⁷ The Pharisees then said to him, "If that is true, why did [Moses](#) [command that a man who wanted to divorce his wife](#) should give her a paper stating his reason for divorcing her, and then [send](#) her [away](#)?"

Matthew 19:8

For your hardness of heart (ULT)

It was because your ancestors stubbornly wanted their own ways (UST)

The phrase “hardness of heart” is a metaphor that means “stubbornness.” Alternate translation: “Because of your stubbornness” or “Because you are stubborn” (See: [Metaphor](#))

your hardness of heart...allowed you...your wives (ULT)
stubbornly wanted their own ways...allowed them...their wives, and you are no different (UST)

Here “you” and “your” are plural. Jesus is speaking to the Pharisees, but Moses gave this command many years earlier to their ancestors. Moses’ command applied to all Jewish men in general. (See: [Forms of You](#))

but from the beginning (ULT)

from them. But when God first created a man and a woman, he did (UST)

Here “beginning” refers to when God first created man and woman. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [to divorce](#)
- [hardness of heart](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Moses](#)
- [to divorce](#)
- [stubbornly wanted...own ways](#)

ULT

⁸ He said to them, “For your [hardness of heart](#), [Moses](#) allowed you [to divorce](#) your wives, but from the beginning it was not that way.

UST

⁸ Jesus said to them, “It was because your ancestors [stubbornly wanted](#) their [own ways](#) that [Moses](#) allowed them [to divorce](#) their wives, and you are no different from them. But when God first created a man and a woman, he did not intend for them to separate from each other.

Matthew 19:9

I say...to you (ULT)

I am telling...you emphatically (UST)

This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

marries another (ULT)

marries another woman is committing adultery (UST)

You can make clear the understood information. Alternate translation: "marries another woman" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

and the man who marries a woman who is divorced commits adultery (ULT)

marries another woman is committing adultery (UST)

Many early texts do not include these words. (See: [Textual Variants](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [commits adultery](#)
- [commits adultery](#) (2)
- [divorces](#)
- [the man who marries a woman who is divorced](#)
- [sexual immorality](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [marries another woman is committing adultery](#)
- [marries another woman is committing adultery](#) (2)
- [divorces](#)
- [marries another woman is committing adultery](#)
- [has committed adultery](#)

ULT

⁹ I say to you, whoever [divorces](#) his wife, except for [sexual immorality](#), and marries another, [commits adultery](#); and [the man who marries a woman who is divorced commits adultery](#)."

UST

⁹ I am telling you emphatically that God considers that any man who [divorces](#) his wife and [marries another woman is committing adultery](#), unless his first wife [has committed adultery](#)."

Matthew 19:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [it is...good](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [disciples](#)
- [better](#)

ULT

¹⁰ The [disciples](#) said to Jesus, "If that is the case of a man with his wife, [it is](#) not [good](#) to marry."

UST

¹⁰ The [disciples](#) said to him, "If that is true, it is [better](#) for men never to marry!"

Matthew 19:11

to whom it is given (ULT)

God enables to accept it (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “whom God allows” or “whom God enables” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [can accept](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [is able to accept](#)

ULT

¹¹ But Jesus said to them, “Not everyone [can accept](#) this teaching, but only those to whom it is given.

UST

¹¹ He answered, “Not every man [is able to accept](#) this teaching, but only the men whom God enables to accept it.

Matthew 19:12

For there are eunuchs who were born that way from their mother's womb (ULT)

There are men who do not marry because their private parts have been defective ever since they were born (UST)

You can make explicit the implicit information. Alternate translation: "For there are different reasons that men do not marry. For instance, there are men who were born eunuchs" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

there are eunuchs who were made eunuchs by men (ULT)

There are other men who do not marry because they have been...there are still other men who decide not to marry (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "there are men whom other men have made eunuchs" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

eunuchs who made themselves eunuchs (ULT)
castrated...there are still other men who decide not to marry...in order to serve God better as (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) "men who have made themselves eunuchs by removing their private parts" or 2) "men who choose to remain unmarried and sexually pure." (See: [Metaphor](#))

for the sake of the kingdom of heaven (ULT)

castrated...in order to serve God better as...he rules from heaven (UST)

Here "kingdom of heaven" refers to God's rule as king. This phrase is found only in the book of Matthew. If possible, keep "heaven" in your translation. Alternate translation: "so they can better serve our God in heaven" (See: [Metonymy](#))

to receive this teaching, let him receive it (ULT)

to understand what I have said about marriage should accept it and obey it (UST)

"accept this teaching...accept it"

Translation Words - ULT

- of heaven
- eunuchs
- eunuchs (2)
- were made eunuchs
- eunuchs (3)
- made...eunuchs
- kingdom of heaven
- to receive this teaching
- let him receive it

ULT

¹² For there are [eunuchs](#) who were born that way from their mother's [womb](#), and there are [eunuchs](#) who [were made eunuchs](#) by men, and there are [eunuchs](#) who [made](#) themselves [eunuchs](#) for the sake of the [kingdom of heaven](#). He who is able [to receive this teaching](#), [let him receive it](#)."

UST

¹² There are [men who do not marry because their private parts have been defective ever since they were born](#). There are [other men who do not marry because they have been castrated](#). Then [there are still other men who decide not to marry in order to serve God better as he rules from heaven](#). You who are able [to understand what I have said about marriage should accept it and obey it](#)."

- womb
- kingdom

Translation Words - UST

- heaven
- men who do not marry because their private parts have been defective ever since
- other men who do not marry because (2)
- they have been
- there are still other men who decide not to marry (3)
- castrated...in order to serve God better as
- he rules...from heaven
- to understand what I have said about marriage
- should accept it and obey it
- they were born
- he rules

Matthew 19:13

Connecting Statement:

Jesus receives and blesses little children.

some little children were brought to him (ULT)
little children were brought to Jesus (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “some people brought little children to Jesus” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [some little children](#)
- [pray](#)
- [hands](#)
- [rebuked](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [disciples](#)
- [little children](#)
- [pray for them](#)
- [his hands](#)
- [scolded](#)

ULT

¹³ Then [some little children](#) were brought to him so that he would lay his [hands](#) on them and [pray](#), but the [disciples rebuked](#) them.

UST

¹³ Then some [little children](#) were brought to Jesus in order that he might lay [his hands](#) on them and [pray for them](#). But the [disciples scolded](#) the people for doing that.

Matthew 19:14

Permit (ULT)

Let (UST)

allow

do not forbid them to come to me (ULT)

come to me...do not stop them (UST)

“do not stop them from coming to me”

for the kingdom of heaven is to such ones (ULT)

It is people who are humble and trusting like they are who belong to the rule of God from heaven (UST)

Here “kingdom of heaven” refers to God’s rule as king. This phrase is found only in the book of Matthew. If possible, keep “heaven” in your translation. Alternate translation: “for when our God in heaven establishes his rule on earth, he will be king over such as these” or “for God will allow such as these into his kingdom” (See: [Metonymy](#))

for...to such ones...for...the kingdom of heaven is...to such ones (ULT)

people who are humble and trusting like they are who belong to...It is...people who are humble and trusting like they are who belong to...the rule of God from heaven (UST)

“belongs to those who are like children.” This is a simile that means those who are humble like children will enter God’s kingdom. (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of heaven](#)
- [But Jesus](#)
- [kingdom of heaven](#)
- [little children](#)
- [kingdom](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the rule of God from heaven](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [the rule of God from heaven](#)
- [children](#)
- [the rule of God from heaven](#)

ULT

¹⁴ But [Jesus](#) said, “Permit the [little children](#), and do not forbid them to come to me, for the [kingdom of heaven](#) is to such ones.”

UST

¹⁴ But [Jesus](#) said, “Let the [children](#) come to me, and do not stop them! It is people who are humble and trusting like they are who belong to [the rule of God from heaven](#).”

Matthew 19:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [hands](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [hands on the children to bless them. Then](#)

ULT

¹⁵ He placed his [hands](#) on the children, and then he went away from there.

UST

¹⁵ Jesus then laid his [hands on the children to bless them. Then](#) he left that place.

Matthew 19:16

Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts to a different time when Jesus explains to a rich man what it will cost to follow him.

Behold (ULT)

As Jesus was walking along, a young man approached (UST)

The word “behold” alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

good thing (ULT)

good deeds (UST)

This means a thing that pleases God.

Translation Words - ULT

- life
- eternal
- good thing
- Teacher

Translation Words - UST

- live with God
- forever
- good deeds
- Teacher

ULT

16 Behold, a man came to Jesus and said, “[Teacher](#), what [good thing](#) must I do that I may have [eternal life](#)?”

UST

16 As Jesus was walking along, a young man approached him and said to him, “[Teacher](#), what [good deeds](#) must I do in order to [live with God forever](#)?”

Matthew 19:17

Why do you ask me about what is good (ULT)

Why are you asking me about...is good? Only (UST)

Jesus uses this rhetorical question to encourage the man to think about his reason for asking Jesus about what is good. Alternate translation: "You ask me about what is good" or "Think about why you ask me about what is good." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Jesus...Only one is...good (ULT)

one being is...good...and really knows what is good.

That being (UST)

"God alone is completely good"

to enter into life (ULT)

to live with God forever, I will tell you (UST)

"to receive eternal life"

Translation Words - ULT

- [life](#)
- [commandments](#)
- [what is good](#)
- [good](#)
- [keep](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to live with God forever, I will tell you](#)
- [commandments that God gave Moses](#)
- [is good? Only](#)
- [good](#)
- [to keep](#)

ULT

¹⁷ Jesus said to him, "Why do you ask me about [what is good](#)? Only one is [good](#), but if you want to enter into [life](#), [keep](#) the [commandments](#)."

UST

¹⁷ Jesus said to him, "Why are you asking me about what [is good](#)? [Only](#) one being is [good](#) and really knows what is good. That being is God. But in order to answer your question about desiring [to live with God forever, I will tell you to keep](#) the [commandments that God gave Moses](#)."

Matthew 19:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [commit adultery](#)
- [bear false witness](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [do...commit adultery](#)
- [do...testify falsely](#)

ULT

¹⁸ The man said to him, "Which commandments?" [Jesus](#) said, "Do not kill, do not [commit adultery](#), do not steal, do not [bear false witness](#),

UST

¹⁸ The man asked Jesus, "Which commandments must I keep?" [Jesus](#) answered him, "Do not murder anyone, do not [commit adultery](#), do not steal things, do not [testify falsely](#),

Matthew 19:19

your...love your...neighbor (ULT)

your father...love...every other person (UST)

The Jewish people believed that their neighbors were only other Jews. Jesus is extending that definition to include all people.

Translation Words - ULT

- love
- honor
- father
- as
- neighbor

Translation Words - UST

- love
- honor
- your father
- as much as
- every other person

ULT

¹⁹ [honor](#) your [father](#) and your mother, and [love](#) your [neighbor as](#) yourself."

UST

¹⁹ [honor your father](#) and your mother, and [love every other person as much as](#) you love yourself."

Matthew 19:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

20 The young man said to him, "All these things I have obeyed. What do I still need?"

UST

20 The young man said to Jesus, "I have always obeyed all those commandments. What else must I do in order to live with God forever?"

Matthew 19:21

If you wish (ULT)

If you desire (UST)

“If you want”

to the poor (ULT)

to poor people. The result will be that (UST)

This nominal adjective can be stated as an adjective. Alternate translation: “to those who are poor” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

you will have treasure in heaven (ULT)

you will be wealthy...in heaven (UST)

The phrase “treasure in heaven” is a metaphor that refers to a reward from God. Alternate translation: “God will reward you in heaven” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [what...have](#)
- [perfect](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [everything that](#)
- [exactly how God wants you to be](#)

ULT

²¹ [Jesus](#) said to him, “If you wish to be [perfect](#), go, sell [what](#) you [have](#), and give to the poor, and you will have treasure in [heaven](#); and come, follow me.”

UST

²¹ [Jesus](#) said to him, “If you desire to be [exactly how God wants you to be](#), go home, sell [everything that](#) you have, and give the money to poor people. The result will be that you will be wealthy in [heaven](#). Then come, follow me, and be my disciple!”

Matthew 19:22

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [possessions](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [rich and did not want to give away everything he owned](#)

ULT

²² But when the young man heard what Jesus said, he went away sorrowful, for he had many [possessions](#).

UST

²² When the young man heard those words, he went away feeling sad, because he was very [rich and did not want to give away everything he owned](#).

Matthew 19:23

Connecting Statement:

Jesus explains to his disciples the rewards of giving up material possessions and relationships to follow him.

Truly I say to you (ULT)

Keep this in mind (UST)

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

to enter into the kingdom of heaven (ULT)

to agree to let God rule their lives (UST)

Here "kingdom of heaven" refers to God's rule as king. This phrase is found only in the book of Matthew. If possible, keep "heaven" in your translation. Alternate translation: "to accept our God in heaven as their king" or "to enter God's kingdom" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of heaven
- Jesus
- Truly
- to...disciples
- kingdom of heaven
- kingdom
- it is hard

Translation Words - UST

- God rule their lives
- Jesus
- Keep this in mind
- disciples
- God rule their lives
- God rule their lives
- It is very difficult

ULT

²³ [Jesus](#) said to his [disciples](#), "[Truly](#) I say to you, [it is hard](#) for a rich man to enter into the [kingdom of heaven](#)."

UST

²³ Then [Jesus](#) said to the [disciples](#), "[Keep this in mind](#): [It is very difficult](#) for rich people to agree to let [God rule their lives](#)."

Matthew 19:24

it is easier...the kingdom of God

Jesus uses an exaggeration to illustrate how very difficult it is for rich people to enter the kingdom of God. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

the eye of a needle (ULT)

the eye of a needle. It is even more difficult for (UST)

the hole near one end of a needle, through which thread is passed

Translation Words - ULT

- [of God](#)
- [kingdom of God](#)
- [for a camel](#)
- [kingdom](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of God](#)
- [rule of God](#)
- [a camel](#)
- [rule](#)

ULT

²⁴ Again I say to you, it is easier [for a camel](#) to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter into the [kingdom of God](#)."

UST

²⁴ Note this also: It is impossible for [a camel](#) to go through the eye of a needle. It is even more difficult for rich people to come under the [rule of God](#)."

Matthew 19:25

they were...astonished (ULT)

they were...astounded. They thought that rich people were the ones whom (UST)

"the disciples were amazed." It is implied that they were astonished because they believed having riches was proof that God approved of someone. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Who then can be saved (ULT)

If that is so, it does not seem likely that anyone will be saved (UST)

The disciples use a question to emphasize their surprise. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Then there is no one whom God will save!" or "Then there is no one who will receive eternal life!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [be saved](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [they were...astonished](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [it does not seem likely that anyone will be saved](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [they were...astounded. They thought that rich people were the ones whom](#)

ULT

²⁵ When the [disciples](#) heard it, [they were](#) very [astonished](#), saying, "Who then can [be saved](#)?"

UST

²⁵ When the [disciples](#) heard this, [they were](#) very [astounded](#). [They thought that rich people were the ones whom](#) God blesses the most. So they said to Jesus, "If that is so, [it does not seem likely that anyone will be saved!](#)"

Matthew 19:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [God](#)

ULT

²⁶ But [Jesus](#) looked at them and said to them, "With people this is impossible, but with [God](#) all things are possible."

UST

²⁶ Then [Jesus](#) looked intently at them and said, "Yes, it is impossible for people to save themselves. But God can save them, because [God](#) is able to do anything!"

Matthew 19:27

we have left everything (ULT)

You know that we...have left everything behind (UST)

“we have left all our wealth” or “we have given up all our possessions”

What then will there be for us (ULT)

So what benefit will we get for doing that (UST)

“What good thing will God give us?”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Peter](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Peter said](#)

ULT

²⁷ Then [Peter](#) answered and said to him, “See, we have left everything and followed you. What then will there be for us?”

UST

²⁷ Then [Peter said](#) to him, “You know that we have left everything behind and we have become your disciples in order to follow you. So what benefit will we get for doing that?”

Matthew 19:28

Truly I say to you (ULT)

Keep this in mind (UST)

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

in the new age (ULT)

the new earth and (UST)

"in the new time." This refers to when God restores all things.

Alternate translation: "at the time when God makes all things new"

(See: [Metonymy](#))

the Son of Man (ULT)

the Son of Man (UST)

Jesus is speaking about himself. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

sits...on his glorious throne (ULT)

I...sit...on my throne in my glory, those of (UST)

Sitting on his throne represents ruling as a king. His throne being glorious represents his rule being glorious.

Alternate translation: "sits as king on his glorious throne" or "rules gloriously as king" (See: [Metonymy](#))

will...sit...upon twelve thrones (ULT)

will each sit...on...the people of the twelve tribes (UST)

Here sitting on thrones refers to ruling as kings. The disciples will not be equal to Jesus who is also on a throne.

They will receive authority from him. Alternate translation: "sit as kings on 12 thrones" (See: [Metonymy](#))

the twelve tribes of Israel (ULT)

the people of the twelve tribes...of Israel (UST)

Here "tribes" refers to people from those tribes. Alternate translation: "the people of the 12 tribes of Israel" (See:

[Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Truly](#)
- [glorious](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [judging](#)
- [new age](#)
- [throne](#)
- [thrones](#)
- [twelve tribes of Israel](#)
- [tribes](#)

ULT

²⁸ [Jesus](#) said to them, "[Truly](#) I say to you, in the [new age](#) when the [Son of Man](#) sits on his [glorious throne](#), you who have followed me, you will also sit upon twelve [thrones](#), [judging](#) the [twelve tribes of Israel](#)."

UST

²⁸ [Jesus](#) said to them, "[Keep this in mind](#): You will get many benefits. When God makes the [new earth and](#) when I, the [Son of Man](#), sit on [my throne](#) in my [glory](#), [those of](#) you who have accompanied me will each sit on a throne, and you will judge [the people of the twelve tribes of Israel](#)."

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Keep this in mind
- in...glory, those of
- Son of Man
- of Israel
- the people of the twelve tribes
- new earth and
- my throne
- the people of the twelve tribes
- the people of the twelve tribes...of Israel
- the people of the twelve tribes

Matthew 19:29

for the sake of my name (ULT) because they were my disciples (UST)

Here “name” refers to the entire person. Alternate translation: “because of me” or “because he believes in me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

will receive one hundred times as much (ULT) God will give them a hundred times as many benefits as they have given up (UST)

“receive from God 100 times as many good things as they gave up” (See: [Numbers](#))

will inherit eternal life (ULT) they will live with God forever (UST)

This is an idiom that means “God will bless them with eternal life” or “God will cause them to live forever.” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life
- eternal
- will inherit
- brothers
- of my name
- children
- father
- will receive
- sisters
- houses

Translation Words - UST

- they will live with God forever
- they will live with God forever
- they will live with God forever
- their brothers
- because they were my disciples
- their children
- their father
- God will give them
- their sisters
- a house

ULT

²⁹ Every one who has left [houses](#), or [brothers](#), or [sisters](#), or [father](#), or mother, or wife, or [children](#), or land for the sake [of my name](#), [will receive](#) one hundred times as much and [will inherit eternal life](#).

UST

²⁹ God will reward those who, [because they were my disciples](#), left behind [a house](#) or a plot of ground, [their brothers](#), [their sisters](#), [their father](#), their mother, [their children](#), or any other family members. [God will give them](#) a hundred times as many benefits as they have given up. And [they will live with God forever](#).

Matthew 19:30

But many who are first will be last, and the last will be first

Here “first” and “last” refer to people’s status or importance. Jesus is contrasting people’s status now with their status in the kingdom of heaven. Alternate translation: “But many who seem to be important now will be the least important, and many who seem to be unimportant now will be very important”

ULT

30 But many who are first will be last, and the last will be first.

UST

30 But many people who are important in this life now will be unimportant at that future time, and many people who are unimportant now will be important at that future time.”

Matthew 20

Matthew 20 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

The parable of the landowner and his vineyard

Jesus tells this parable ([Matthew 20:1-16](#)) to teach his disciples that what God says is right is different from what people say is right.

Matthew 20:1

Connecting Statement:

Jesus tells a parable about a landowner who hires workers, to illustrate how God will reward those who belong to the kingdom of heaven.

For the kingdom of heaven is like (ULT) The way God rules from heaven compares to what (UST)

This is the beginning of a parable. See how you translated the introduction to the parable in [Matthew 13:24](#). (See: [Parables](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of heaven](#)
- [a landowner](#)
- [kingdom of heaven](#)
- [workers](#)
- [vineyard](#)
- [like](#)
- [kingdom](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [way God rules from heaven](#)
- [the owner of an estate did](#)
- [way God rules from heaven](#)
- [laborers to work](#)
- [vineyard](#)
- [compares to what](#)
- [way God rules from heaven](#)

ULT

¹ For the [kingdom of heaven](#) is [like a landowner](#) who went out early in the morning to hire [workers](#) for his [vineyard](#).

UST

¹ "The [way God rules from heaven compares to what the owner of an estate did](#). Early in the morning the owner of the estate went to the marketplace, where people who wanted work gathered. He went there to hire [laborers to work](#) in his [vineyard](#).

Matthew 20:2

After he had agreed (ULT)

He promised...that he would pay them the (UST)

"After the landowner had agreed"

a denarius (ULT)

standard wage for working (UST)

This was the daily wage at that time. Alternate translation: "one day's wages" (See: [Biblical Money](#))

he sent them into his vineyard (ULT)

he sent them to his vineyards (UST)

"he sent them to work in his vineyard"

Translation Words - ULT

- [workers](#)
- [he sent](#)
- [vineyard](#)
- [day](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [men whom he hired](#)
- [sent them](#)
- [vineyards](#)
- [one day](#)

ULT

² After he had agreed with the [workers](#) for a denarius a [day](#), [he sent](#) them into his [vineyard](#).

UST

² He promised the [men whom he hired](#) that he would pay them the standard wage for working [one day](#). Then he [sent them](#) to his [vineyards](#).

Matthew 20:3

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling a parable. (See: [Parables](#))

He went out again (ULT)
he went back (UST)

“The landowner went out again”

the third hour (ULT)
nine o'clock that same morning (UST)

The third hour is around nine in the morning. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

standing idle in the marketplace (ULT)
to the marketplace...who did not have work (UST)

“standing in the marketplace not doing anything” or “standing in the marketplace with no work to do”

the marketplace (ULT)
to the marketplace...who did not have work (UST)

a large, open-air area where people buy and sell food and other items

Translation Words - ULT

- [hour](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [that same morning](#)

ULT

³ He went out again about the third [hour](#) and saw other workers standing idle in the marketplace.

UST

³ At nine o'clock [that same morning](#) he went back to the marketplace. There he saw more men who did not have work.

Matthew 20:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- whatever is right
- vineyard

Translation Words - UST

- whatever wage is right
- my vineyard as other men have done, and work there

ULT

⁴ To them he said, 'You also, go into the [vineyard](#), and [whatever is right](#) I will give you.'

UST

⁴ He said to them, 'Go to [my vineyard as other men have done, and work there](#). I will pay you [whatever wage is right](#).' So they also went to his vineyard and began to work.

Matthew 20:5

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling a parable. (See: [Parables](#))

went. Again he...out (ULT)

he again went to the marketplace and (UST)

“Again the landowner went out”

about the sixth hour and again the ninth hour (ULT)

At noon and at three o'clock (UST)

The sixth hour is around noon. The ninth hour is around three in the afternoon. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

and did the same (ULT)

found other laborers whom he promised to pay a fair wage (UST)

This means the landowner went to the marketplace and hired workers.

Translation Words - ULT

- [hour](#)
- [the same](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [at three o'clock](#)
- [found other laborers whom he promised to pay a fair wage](#)

ULT

⁵ So they went. Again he went out about the sixth hour and again the ninth [hour](#), and did [the same](#).

UST

⁵ At noon and [at three o'clock](#) he again went to the marketplace and [found other laborers whom he promised to pay a fair wage](#).

Matthew 20:6

the eleventh hour (ULT)

five o'clock (UST)

This is about five in the afternoon. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

standing idle (ULT)

standing there who were not working (UST)

"not doing anything" or "not having any work"

Translation Words - ULT

- [day long](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [day and](#)

ULT

⁶ Once more about the eleventh hour he went out and found others standing idle. He said to them, 'Why do you stand here idle all the [day long](#)?''

UST

⁶ At five o'clock he went to the marketplace once again and saw other men standing there who were not working. He said to them, 'Why are you standing here all [day and](#) not working?'

Matthew 20:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [vineyard](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [my vineyard as other men have done](#)

ULT

⁷ They said to him, 'Because no one has hired us.' He said to them, 'You also go into the [vineyard](#).'

UST

⁷ They said to him, 'Because no one has hired us.' He said to them, 'I will hire you. Go to [my vineyard as other men have done](#), and work there.' So they went.

Matthew 20:8

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling a parable. (See: [Parables](#))

beginning from the last to the first

You can make clear the understood information. Alternate translation: “beginning with the workers who started working last, then the workers who started working earlier, and finally the workers who started working first” or “first paying the workers I hired last, then paying the workers I hired earlier in the day, and finally paying the workers I hired first”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Call](#)
- [owner](#)
- [workers](#)
- [vineyard](#)
- [to...manager](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Tell...to come](#)
- [owner of](#)
- [men](#)
- [vineyard](#)
- [to...manager](#)

ULT

⁸ When evening came, the [owner](#) of the [vineyard](#) said to his [manager](#), ‘[Call](#) the [workers](#) and pay them their wages, beginning from the last to the first.’

UST

⁸ When evening came, the [owner of](#) the [vineyard](#) said to his [manager](#), ‘[Tell](#) the [men to come](#) so that you can give them their wages. First, pay the men who started working last, and pay the men last who started working first.’

Matthew 20:9

those who had been hired (ULT) who did not (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “whom the landowner hired” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [received](#)
- [hour](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The manager paid](#)
- [in the afternoon](#)

ULT

⁹ When those who had been hired at the eleventh [hour](#) came, each of them [received](#) a denarius.

UST

⁹ [The manager paid](#) a standard day's wage to each of the men who did not start working until five o'clock [in the afternoon](#).

Matthew 20:10

one denarius (ULT) standard wage (UST)

This was the daily wage at that time. Alternate translation: “one day’s wages” (See: [Biblical Money](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [they would receive](#)
- [received](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [they would receive](#)
- [received only the](#)

ULT

¹⁰ When the first workers came, they thought that [they would receive](#) more, but they also [received](#) one denarius each.

UST

¹⁰ When the men who had begun working early in the morning went to get their wages, they thought that [they would receive](#) more than the standard wage. But they also [received only the](#) standard wage.

Matthew 20:11

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling a parable. (See: [Parables](#))

When they received their wages (ULT) their payment was unfair (UST)

“When the workers who had worked the longest received”

the landowner (ULT) to the...owner of the vineyard because they thought (UST)

“the vineyard owner”

Translation Words - ULT

- [landowner](#)
- [When they received their wages](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [owner of the vineyard because they thought](#)
- [their payment was unfair](#)

ULT

¹¹ [When they received their wages](#), they complained about the [landowner](#).

UST

¹¹ So they complained to the [owner of the vineyard because they thought their payment was unfair](#).

Matthew 20:12

you have made them equal to us (ULT)

You have paid them the same wage as you paid us (UST)

“you have paid them the same amount of money as you paid us”

we who have borne the burden of the day and the scorching heat (ULT)

You have paid them the same wage as you paid us...But we worked hard all day. We even worked through the hottest part (UST)

The phrase “borne the burden of the day” is an idiom that means “worked the entire day.” Alternate translation: “we who have worked the entire day, even during the hottest part” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [burden](#)
- [hour in work](#)
- [day](#)
- [we who have borne](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [But we worked hard](#)
- [hour](#)
- [all day](#)
- [But we worked hard](#)

ULT

¹² They said, ‘These last workers have spent only one [hour in work](#), but you have made them equal to us, [we who have borne](#) the [burden](#) of the [day](#) and the scorching heat.’

UST

¹² They said to him, ‘You are not being fair! The men who started working after all of the rest of us worked for only one [hour](#)! You have paid them the same wage as you paid us! [But we worked hard all day](#). We even worked through the hottest part!’

Matthew 20:13

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling a parable. (See: [Parables](#))

to one of them (ULT)
of those who complained (UST)

“one of the workers who had worked the longest”

Friend (ULT)

Friend (UST)

Use a word that one man would use to address another man whom he is politely rebuking.

Did you not agree with me for a denarius (ULT)

I did not treat you unfairly...You agreed with me to work the whole day for a standard day's wage (UST)

The landowner uses a question to rebuke the workers who were complaining. Alternate translation: “We already agreed that I would give you one denarius.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

for a denarius (ULT)

a standard day's wage (UST)

This was the daily wage at that time. Alternate translation: “one day's wages” (See: [Biblical Money](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [I...do...wrong](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [I did not treat you unfairly](#)

ULT

13 But the owner answered and said to one of them, ‘Friend, I do not do you [wrong](#). Did you not agree with me for a denarius?’

UST

13 The owner of the vineyard said to one of those who complained, ‘Friend, [I did not treat you unfairly](#). You agreed with me to work the whole day for a standard day's wage.’

Matthew 20:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [just the same](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the same wage](#)

ULT

¹⁴ Take what belongs to you and go your way. I choose to give to these last hired workers [just the same](#) as to you.

UST

¹⁴ Stop complaining to me! Take your wages and go! I desire to give [the same wage](#) that I gave you to the men who began working after all of you had begun working.

Matthew 20:15

Connecting Statement:

Jesus concludes his parable about a landowner who hires workers.
(See: [Parables](#))

Or do I not have the right to do as I want with what belongs to me (ULT)

I certainly have a right to spend my money as I desire, do I not (UST)

The landowner uses a question to correct the workers who were complaining. Alternate translation: "I can do what I want with my own possessions." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Or is your eye evil because I am good (ULT)

You should not be envious about my being generous (UST)

The landowner uses a question to rebuke the workers who were complaining. Alternate translation: "Do not be jealous when I am generous to other people." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [good](#)
- [evil](#)
- [have the right](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [being generous](#)
- [You should not...envious about](#)
- [I certainly have a right](#)

ULT

15 Or do I not [have the right](#) to do as I want with what belongs to me? Or is your eye [evil](#) because I am [good](#)?"

UST

15 [I certainly have a right](#) to spend my money as I desire, do I not? [You should not](#) be [envious about](#) my [being generous](#)! "

Matthew 20:16

So the last will be first, and the first last

Here “first” and “last” refer to people’s status or importance. Jesus is contrasting people’s status now with their status in the kingdom of heaven. See how you translated a similar statement in [Matthew 19:30](#). Alternate translation: “So those who seem to be unimportant now will be the most important, and those who seem to be the most important now will be the least important”

So the last will be first (ULT)

Similarly, God will reward well some people who seem to be less important now, and...people who seem to be more important now (UST)

Here the parable has ended and Jesus is speaking. Alternate translation: “Then Jesus said, ‘So the last will be first’”

ULT

16 So the last will be first, and the first last.” ^[1]

UST

16 “Similarly, God will reward well some people who seem to be less important now, and he will not reward some people who seem to be more important now.”

Matthew 20:17

Connecting Statement:

Jesus foretells his death and resurrection a third time as he and his disciples travel to Jerusalem.

As...Jesus...was going up...to Jerusalem (ULT) When Jesus...was walking...up...to Jerusalem along with the (UST)

Jerusalem was on top of a hill, so people had to travel up to get there.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [the twelve disciples](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [When Jesus](#)
- [twelve disciples...them to a place](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [Jerusalem along with the](#)

ULT

¹⁷ As [Jesus](#) was going up to [Jerusalem](#), he took [the twelve disciples](#) aside, and on the way he said to them,

UST

¹⁷ [When Jesus](#) was walking on the road up to [Jerusalem along with the twelve disciples](#), he took [them to a place](#) by themselves in order that he could talk to them privately. Then he said to them,

Matthew 20:18

See, we are going up (ULT)

Listen carefully! We are now going up (UST)

Jesus uses the word "See" to tell the disciples they must pay attention to what he is about to tell them.

we are going up (ULT)

We are now going up (UST)

Here "we" refers to Jesus and the disciples. (See: [Inclusive and Exclusive "We"](#))

the Son of Man will be delivered (ULT)

someone will enable...to seize me...the...Son of Man (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone will deliver the Son of Man" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the Son of Man...him (ULT)

the...Son of Man...me (UST)

Jesus is referring to himself in the third person. If necessary, you can translate these in the first person. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

They will condemn (ULT)

They will condemn...and say (UST)

The chief priests and scribes will condemn Jesus.

Translation Words - ULT

- [They will condemn](#)
- [scribes](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [will be delivered](#)
- [to death](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [They will condemn...and say](#)
- [the men who teach the Jewish laws](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [Jerusalem. While we are there](#)
- [someone will enable...to seize me](#)
- [that I should die](#)

ULT

¹⁸ "See, we are going up to [Jerusalem](#), and the [Son of Man will be delivered](#) to the [chief priests](#) and [scribes](#). [They will condemn](#) him [to death](#)

UST

¹⁸ "Listen carefully! We are now going up to [Jerusalem](#). [While we are there](#), [someone will enable](#) the [chief priests](#) and [the men who teach the Jewish laws to seize me](#), the [Son of Man](#), and they will put me on trial. [They will condemn](#) me [and say that I should die](#).

Matthew 20:19

and will deliver him to the Gentiles for them to mock (ULT)

Then they will put me in the hands of non-Jews so that they can make fun of me (UST)

The chief priests and scribes will deliver Jesus to the Gentiles, and the Gentiles will mock him.

to flog (ULT)

whip me (UST)

“to whip him” or “to beat him with whips”

on the third day (ULT)

on the third day after that (UST)

“Third” is the ordinal form of “three.” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

him...to crucify him...he will be raised up (ULT)

they...kill me by nailing me to a cross...God will cause me to live again (UST)

Jesus is referring to himself in the third person. If necessary, you can translate these in the first person. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

he will be raised up (ULT)

God will cause me to live again (UST)

The words “be raised up” are an idiom for “be made alive again.” This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God will raise him up” or “God will make him alive again” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- to crucify him
- Gentiles
- to mock
- he will be raised up
- day

Translation Words - UST

- kill me by nailing me to a cross
- non-Jews so that
- they can make fun of me
- God will cause me to live again
- day after that

ULT

¹⁹ and will deliver him to the [Gentiles](#) for them [to mock](#), and to flog, and [to crucify him](#). But on the third [day he will be raised up](#).”

UST

¹⁹ Then they will put me in the hands of [non-Jews so that they can make fun of me](#), whip me, and [kill me by nailing me to a cross](#). But on the third [day after that](#), [God will cause me to live again](#).”

Matthew 20:20

Connecting Statement:

In response to the question that the mother of two of the disciples asks, Jesus teaches his disciples about authority and serving others in the kingdom of heaven.

of the sons of Zebedee (ULT) of...the sons of Zebedee (UST)

This refers James and John.

Translation Words - ULT

- sons
- sons (2)
- of Zebedee
- She bowed down before him

Translation Words - UST

- sons
- her two sons (2)
- of Zebedee
- She bowed down

ULT

²⁰ Then the mother of the [sons of Zebedee](#) came to Jesus with her [sons](#). [She bowed down before him](#) and asked for something from him.

UST

²⁰ Then the mother of James and John, the [sons of Zebedee](#), brought [her two sons](#) to Jesus. [She bowed down](#) before Jesus and asked him to do her a favor.

Matthew 20:21

at your right hand...at your left hand (ULT)
on your right hand...on your left (UST)

These refer to having positions of power, authority, and honor. (See: [Metonymy](#))

in your kingdom (ULT)
when you become king (UST)

Here "kingdom" refers to Jesus ruling as king. Alternate translation: "when you are king" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [two sons](#)
- [your right hand](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [left hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sons](#)
- [your right hand](#)
- [become king](#)
- [left](#)

ULT

²¹ Jesus said to her, "What do you wish?" She said to him, "Command that these my [two sons](#) may sit, one at [your right hand](#) and one at your [left hand](#), in your [kingdom](#)."

UST

²¹ Jesus said to her, "What do you want me to do for you?" She said to him, "Permit these two [sons](#) of mine to sit in the places of most honor when you [become king](#), one on [your right hand](#) and the other on your [left](#)."

Matthew 20:22

You do not know (ULT)

You do not understand (UST)

Here “you” is plural and refers to the mother and the sons. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Are you able (ULT)

Can you (UST)

Here “you” is plural, but Jesus is only talking to the two sons. (See: [Forms of You](#))

to drink the cup that I am about to drink (ULT) suffer...I am about to suffer?” James and John (UST)

To “drink the cup” or “drink from the cup” is an idiom that means to experience suffering. Alternate translation: “suffer what I am about to suffer” (See: [Idiom](#))

They said (ULT)

answered (UST)

“The sons of Zebedee said” or “James and John said”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [You...know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [You do...understand](#)

ULT

²² But [Jesus](#) answered and said, “You do not [know](#) what you are asking. Are you able to drink the cup that I am about to drink?” They said to him, “We are able.”

UST

²² [Jesus](#) said to her and her sons, “[You do](#) not [understand](#) what you are asking for. Can you suffer like I am about to suffer?” James and John answered him, “Yes, we are able to do that.”

Matthew 20:23

My cup you will drink (ULT)

Yes, you will suffer as I will suffer (UST)

To “drink a cup” or “drink from a cup” is an idiom that means to experience suffering. Alternate translation: “You will indeed suffer as I will suffer” (See: [Idiom](#))

right hand...my left hand (ULT)

next to me and rule with me...next to me and rule with me (UST)

These refer to having positions of power, authority, and honor. See how you translated this in [Matthew 20:21](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))

it is for those for whom it has been prepared by my Father (ULT)

God, my Father...to the ones whom he appoints (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “my Father has prepared those places, and he will give them to whom he chooses” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

my Father (ULT)

God, my Father (UST)

This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [right hand](#)
- [Father](#)
- [my left hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [next to me and rule with me](#)
- [God...Father](#)
- [next to me and rule with me](#)

ULT

²³ He said to them, “My cup you will drink. But to sit at my [right hand](#) and at [my left hand](#) is not mine to give, but it is for those for whom it has been prepared by my [Father](#).”

UST

²³ Then Jesus said to them, “Yes, you will suffer as I will suffer. But I am not the one who chooses the ones who will sit [next to me and rule with me](#). [God](#), my [Father](#), will give those places to the ones whom he appoints.”

Matthew 20:24

When...heard this (ULT)
other disciples heard what (UST)

“heard what James and John had asked Jesus”

they were very angry with the two brothers (ULT)
James and John had requested, they became angry
with them because they also wanted to rule with Jesus
in the positions of most honor (UST)

If necessary, you can make explicit why the ten disciples were angry.
 Alternate translation: “they were very angry with the two brothers
 because each of them also wanted to sit in a place of honor next to
 Jesus” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [James and John had requested, they](#)

ULT

²⁴ When the other ten disciples heard this, they were very angry with the two [brothers](#).

UST

²⁴ When the ten other disciples heard what [James and John had requested](#), [they](#) became angry with them because they also wanted to rule with Jesus in the positions of most honor.

Matthew 20:25

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes teaching his disciples about authority and serving others.

called them to himself (ULT)

called all of them together (UST)

“called the twelve disciples”

the rulers of the Gentiles subjugate them (ULT)

those who rule the non-Jews enjoy showing them that they are powerful (UST)

“the Gentile kings forcefully rule over their people”

the...important men (ULT)

those who rule...Their chief rulers (UST)

“the important men among the Gentiles”

them...exercise authority over (ULT)

them...enjoy commanding (UST)

“have control over the people”

Translation Words - ULT

- But Jesus
- called...to himself
- subjugate
- Gentiles
- exercise authority over
- rulers
- You know

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- called...together
- enjoy showing...that they are powerful
- non-Jews
- enjoy commanding
- those who rule
- You know

ULT

²⁵ But Jesus called them to himself and said, “You know that the rulers of the Gentiles subjugate them, and their important men exercise authority over them.

UST

²⁵ So Jesus called all of them together and said to them, “You know that those who rule the non-Jews enjoy showing them that they are powerful. Their chief rulers enjoy commanding the people under them.

Matthew 20:26

whoever wishes (ULT)
everyone...who wants (UST)

“whoever wants” or “whoever desires”

Translation Words - ULT

- [servant](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [a servant](#)

ULT

²⁶ But it must not be this way among you. Instead, whoever wishes to become great among you must be your [servant](#),

UST

²⁶ You should not be like them. On the contrary, everyone among you who wants God to consider him great must become [a servant](#) for the rest of you.

Matthew 20:27

to be first (ULT)

to be the most important (UST)

“to be important”

Translation Words - ULT

- [servant](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [a servant for the rest of](#)

ULT

²⁷ and whoever wishes to be first among you must be your [servant](#),

UST

²⁷ Yes, and everyone among you who wants God to consider him to be the most important must become [a servant for the rest of](#) you.

Matthew 20:28

the Son of Man...his life (ULT)

the Son of Man...to allow them to kill me...my dying (UST)

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person. If necessary, you can translate this in the first person. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

did not come to be served (ULT)

I did not come for others to serve me (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “did not come so that other people would serve him” or “did not come so that other people would serve me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

but to serve (ULT)

On the contrary, I came in order to serve them (UST)

You can make clear the understood information. Alternate translation: “but to serve other people” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

and to give his life as a ransom for many (ULT)

and to allow them to kill me, so that my dying would be like a payment to rescue many people from being punished for their sins (UST)

Jesus’ life being a “ransom” is a metaphor for his being punished in order to set people free from being punished for their own sins. Alternate translation: “to give his life as a substitute for many” or “to give his life as a substitute to set many free” (See: [Metaphor](#))

and to give his life (ULT)

and to allow them to kill me...my dying (UST)

To give one’s live is an idiom meaning to die voluntarily, usually in order to help others. Alternate translation: “to die” (See: [Idiom](#))

for many (ULT)

so that...many people from being punished for their sins (UST)

You can make clear the understood information. Alternate translation: “for many people” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [life](#)
- [to be served](#)
- [to serve](#)
- [as a ransom](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [just as](#)

ULT

²⁸ [just as](#) the [Son of Man](#) did not come [to be served](#), but [to serve](#), and to give his [life as a ransom](#) for many.”

UST

²⁸ [You should imitate me. Even though I am](#) the [Son of Man](#), I did not come [for others to serve me](#). On the contrary, [I came in order to serve them](#) and [to allow them to kill me](#), so that [my dying would be like a payment to rescue](#) many people from being punished for their sins.”

Translation Words - UST

- to allow them to kill me...my dying
- for others to serve me
- I came in order to serve them
- would be like a payment to rescue
- Son of Man
- You should imitate me. Even though I am

Matthew 20:29

Connecting Statement:

This begins an account of Jesus healing two blind men.

As...they...went out (ULT)

As...they...were leaving the city (UST)

This refers to the disciples and Jesus.

followed him (ULT)

followed them (UST)

“followed Jesus”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jericho](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jericho](#)

ULT

²⁹ As they went out from [Jericho](#), a great crowd followed him.

UST

²⁹ As they were leaving the city of [Jericho](#), a large crowd of people followed them.

Matthew 20:30

When they heard (ULT)

When they heard (UST)

“When the two blind men heard”

was passing by (ULT)

was passing by (UST)

“was walking by them”

Son of David (ULT)

Descendant of King David (UST)

Jesus was not David’s literal son, so this may be translated as “Descendant of King David.” However, “Son of David” is also a title for the Messiah, and the men were probably calling Jesus by this title.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Son](#)
- [have mercy](#)
- [of David](#)
- [they shouted](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Descendant](#)
- [you are the Messiah! Take pity on](#)
- [of King David](#)
- [they yelled to him](#)

ULT

³⁰ Behold, there were two blind men sitting by the road. When they heard that [Jesus](#) was passing by, [they shouted](#), saying, “[Lord](#), [Son of David](#), [have mercy](#) on us.”

UST

³⁰ As they walked along, they saw two blind men sitting alongside the road. When they heard that [Jesus](#) was passing by, [they yelled to him](#), “[Lord](#), [Descendant of King David](#), [you are the Messiah! Take pity on](#) us!”

Matthew 20:31

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- Son
- have mercy
- of David
- cried out
- rebuked

Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- Descendant of
- Have pity on
- King David
- blind men yelled
- scolded

ULT

³¹ But the crowd [rebuked](#) them, telling them to be quiet, but they [cried out](#) even more loudly, saying, "[Lord, Son of David, have mercy](#) on us."

UST

³¹ People in the crowd [scolded](#) them and told them to be quiet. But the [blind men yelled](#) even louder, "[Lord, Descendant of King David](#), you are the Messiah! [Have pity on](#) us!"

Matthew 20:32

and called to them (ULT)

called them to come to him. Then (UST)

“called to the blind men”

What do you wish (ULT)

What do you want (UST)

“do you want”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [and called](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [called...to come to him. Then](#)

ULT

³² Then [Jesus](#) stood still [and called](#) to them and said, “What do you wish me to do for you?”

UST

³² [Jesus](#) stopped and [called](#) them [to come to him. Then](#) he said to them, “What do you want me to do for you?”

Matthew 20:33

that our eyes may be opened (ULT)
heal our eyes so that we can see (UST)

The men speak of becoming able to see as if their eyes were to be opened. Because of Jesus' previous question, we understand that they were expressing their desire. Alternate translation: "we want you to open our eyes" or "we want to be able to see" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Lord](#)

ULT

³³ They said to him, "[Lord](#), that our eyes may be opened."

UST

³³ They said to him, "[Lord](#), heal our eyes so that we can see!"

Matthew 20:34

being moved with compassion (ULT)
felt sorry for them (UST)

“having compassion” or “feeling compassion for them”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [being moved with compassion](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [felt sorry for them](#)

ULT

³⁴ Then [Jesus](#), [being moved with compassion](#), touched their eyes. Immediately they received their sight and followed him.

20:16 ^[1] The best ancient copies do not have *Many are called, but few are chosen*.

UST

³⁴ [Jesus felt sorry for them](#) and touched their eyes. Immediately they were able to see, and they went after Jesus.

Matthew 21

Matthew 21 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 21:5,16 and 42, which are words from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

The donkey and the colt

Jesus rode into Jerusalem on an animal. In this way he was like a king who came into a city after he had won an important battle. Also, the kings of Israel in the Old Testament rode on a donkeys. Other kings rode on horses. So Jesus was showing that he was the king of Israel and that he was not like other kings.

Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John all wrote about this event. Matthew and Mark wrote that the disciples brought Jesus a donkey. John wrote that Jesus found a donkey. Luke wrote that they brought him a colt. Only Matthew wrote that there were both a donkey and a colt. No one knows for sure whether Jesus rode the donkey or the colt. It is best to translate each of these accounts as it appears in the ULT without trying to make them all say exactly the same thing. (See: Matthew 21:1-7 and Mark 11:1-7 and Luke 19:29-36 and John 12:14-15)

Hosanna

This is what the people shouted to welcome Jesus into Jerusalem. This word meant "Save us," but people used it to praise God.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"The kingdom of God will be taken away from you"

No one knows for sure what this phrase means. No one knows if Jesus meant that God would someday give the kingdom back or not.

Matthew 21:1

Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of Jesus' entry into Jerusalem. Here he gives his disciples instructions about what they are to do.

Bethphage (ULT)

This is a village near Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [Mount of Olives](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [sent](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
- [disciple](#)
- [Mount of Olives](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [send, sent, send out](#)

ULT

¹ As Jesus and his disciples approached [Jerusalem](#) and came to Bethphage, to the [Mount of Olives](#), then [Jesus sent](#) two [disciples](#),

UST

¹⁻² As Jesus and his disciples approached Jerusalem, they came to the village of Bethphage, near the Mount of Olives. Jesus said to two of his disciples, "Go to the village just ahead of you. As soon as you enter it, you will see a donkey and her colt that are tied up. Untie them and bring them here to me.

Matthew 21:2

a donkey tied up there (ULT)

You can state this in active form. Alternate translation: “a donkey that someone has tied up” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

tied up there (ULT)

You can make explicit how the donkey is tied. Alternate translation: “tied up there to a post” or “tied up there to a tree” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

a colt (ULT)

young male donkey

Translation Words - ULT

- a donkey

Translation Words - UST

- donkey, mule

ULT

² saying to them, “Go into the village that is in front of you, and you will immediately find [a donkey](#) tied up there, and a colt with her. Untie them and bring them to me.

UST

¹⁻² As Jesus and his disciples approached Jerusalem, they came to the village of Bethphage, near the Mount of Olives. Jesus said to two of his disciples, “Go to the village just ahead of you. As soon as you enter it, you will see a donkey and her colt that are tied up. Untie them and bring them here to me.

Matthew 21:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)
- [that person will...send...with you](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Lord](#)
- [lead...away](#)

ULT

³ If anyone says anything to you about that, you will say, 'The [Lord](#) has need of them,' and [that person will](#) immediately [send](#) them [with you](#)."

UST

³ If anyone says anything to you about your doing that, tell him, 'The [Lord](#) needs them.' He will then allow you to [lead](#) them [away](#)."

Matthew 21:4

General Information:

Here the author quotes the prophet Zechariah to show that Jesus fulfilled prophecy by riding a donkey into Jerusalem.

Now (ULT)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Matthew explains how Jesus' actions fulfill scripture.

this...came about that what was spoken through the prophet might be fulfilled (ULT)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "this happened so that Jesus would fulfill what God spoke through the prophet long ago" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

through the prophet (ULT)

There were many prophets. Matthew was speaking of Zechariah. Alternate translation: "the prophet Zechariah" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- prophet
- might be fulfilled

Translation Words - UST

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- fulfill, fulfilled, carried out

ULT

⁴ Now this came about that what was spoken through the [prophet might be fulfilled](#). He said,

UST

⁴⁻⁵ When all this happened, what one of the prophets had written came true. That prophet had written, "Tell the people who live in Jerusalem, 'Look! Your king is coming to you! He will come humbly. He will show that he is humble, because he will be riding on a colt, the offspring of a donkey.'"

Matthew 21:5

the daughter of Zion (ULT)

The “daughter” of a city means the people of the city. Alternate translation: “the people of Zion” or “the people who live in Zion”

of Zion (ULT)

This is another name for Jerusalem.

on a donkey—on a colt, the foal of a donkey

The phrase “on a colt, the foal of a donkey” is explaining that the donkey is a young animal. Alternate translation: “on a young, male donkey”

Translation Words - ULT

- the foal
- daughter of Zion
- of Zion
- a donkey
- King

Translation Words - UST

- son
- daughter of Zion
- Zion, Mount Zion
- donkey, mule
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

⁵ “Tell the [daughter of Zion](#), ‘See, your [King](#) is coming to you, Humble and riding on [a donkey](#)— on a colt, [the foal](#) of a donkey.’”

UST

⁴⁻⁵ When all this happened, what one of the prophets had written came true. That prophet had written, “Tell the people who live in Jerusalem, ‘Look! Your king is coming to you! He will come humbly. He will show that he is humble, because he will be riding on a colt, the offspring of a donkey.’”

Matthew 21:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- had instructed
- disciples
- just as

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- told...to do
- two disciples
- what

ULT

⁶ Then the [disciples](#) went and did [just as Jesus had instructed](#) them.

UST

⁶ So the [two disciples](#) went and did [what Jesus told](#) them [to do](#).

Matthew 21:7

cloaks (ULT)

cloaks (UST)

These were outer clothing or long coats.

Translation Words - ULT

- [donkey](#)
- [cloaks](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [donkey](#)
- [cloaks](#)

ULT

⁷ They brought the [donkey](#) and the colt and put their [cloaks](#) on them, and Jesus sat upon them.

UST

⁷ They brought the [donkey](#) and its colt to Jesus. They placed their [cloaks](#) on them to make something for him to sit on. Then Jesus mounted and sat on the cloaks.

Matthew 21:8

crowd spread their cloaks on the road, and others cut branches from the trees and spread them in the road (ULT)

crowd spread some of their outer clothing on the road, and other people cut off branches from palm trees and spread them on the road (UST)

These are ways to show honor to Jesus as he was entering Jerusalem.
(See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [cloaks](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [outer clothing](#)

ULT

⁸ Most of the crowd spread their [cloaks](#) on the road, and others cut branches from the trees and spread them in the road.

UST

⁸ Then a large crowd spread some of their [outer clothing](#) on the road, and other people cut off branches from palm trees and spread them on the road.

Matthew 21:9

Hosanna (ULT)

Praise (UST)

This word means “save us,” but it can also mean “praise God!”

to the son of David (ULT)

the Messiah...descendant of King David (UST)

Jesus was not David’s literal son, so this may be translated as “descendant of king David.” However, “Son of David” is also a title for the Messiah, and the crowd was probably calling Jesus by this title.

in the name of the Lord (ULT)

as God’s representative...with God’s authority (UST)

Here “in the name” means “in the power” or “as a representative.”

Alternate translation: “in the power of the Lord” or “as the representative of the Lord” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Hosanna in the highest (ULT)

Praise God, who is in the highest heaven (UST)

Here “highest” refers to God who rules from the highest heaven. Alternate translation: “Praise God, who is in the highest heaven” or “Praise be to God” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Blessed is](#)
- [of the Lord](#)
- [son](#)
- [the name](#)
- [of David](#)
- [were shouting](#)
- [highest](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [May the Lord God bless](#)
- [with God’s authority](#)
- [descendant of](#)
- [God’s representative](#)
- [King David](#)
- [shouting](#)
- [highest heaven](#)

ULT

⁹ Then the crowds that went before Jesus and those that followed him [were shouting](#), saying, “Hosanna to the [son of David](#)! [Blessed is](#) the one who comes in [the name of the Lord](#)! Hosanna in the [highest](#)!”

UST

⁹ The crowds that walked in front of him and those who walked behind him were [shouting](#), “Praise the Messiah, the [descendant of King David](#)!” “[May the Lord God bless](#) this one who comes as [God’s representative](#) and [with God’s authority](#).” “Praise God, who is in the [highest heaven](#)!”

Matthew 21:10

all the city was stirred (ULT)
many people from all over the city became excited (UST)

Here "city" refers to the people living there. Alternate translation: "many people from all over the city were stirred" (See: [Metonymy](#))

was stirred (ULT)
became excited (UST)

"excited"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jerusalem](#)

ULT

¹⁰ When Jesus had come into [Jerusalem](#), all the city was stirred and said, "Who is this?"

UST

¹⁰ As Jesus entered [Jerusalem](#), many people from all over the city became excited and were saying, "Why are they honoring this man like that?"

Matthew 21:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [prophet](#)
- [from Nazareth](#)
- [in Galilee](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [prophet](#)
- [Nazareth](#)
- [in Galilee](#)

ULT

¹¹ The crowds answered, "This is [Jesus](#) the [prophet from Nazareth in Galilee](#)."

UST

¹¹ The crowd that was already following him answered, "This is [Jesus](#), the [prophet](#) from [Nazareth in Galilee](#)!"

Matthew 21:12

General Information:

In verse 13, Jesus quotes the prophet Isaiah to rebuke the vendors and money changers.

Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of Jesus entering into the temple.

Jesus entered into the temple (ULT)

Jesus went into the temple courtyard (UST)

Jesus did not enter the actual temple. He entered the courtyard around the temple. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Then...those who bought and sold (ULT)

Then...those who were buying...selling things there. He (UST)

Merchants were selling animals and other items that travelers bought to offer the proper sacrifices at the temple.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [temple](#)
- [temple](#)
- [He cast out](#)
- [doves](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [temple courtyard](#)
- [temple](#)
- [chased out](#)
- [pigeons for sacrifices](#)

ULT

¹² Then [Jesus](#) entered into the [temple](#). [He cast out](#) all those who bought and sold in the [temple](#), and turned over the tables of the money changers and the seats of those who sold [doves](#).

UST

¹² Then [Jesus](#) went into the [temple courtyard](#) and [chased out](#) all of those who were buying and selling things there. He also overturned the tables of those who were changing Roman coins for [temple](#) tax money, and he overturned the seats of those who were selling [pigeons for sacrifices](#).

Matthew 21:13

He said...to them (ULT)

he said to them (UST)

"Jesus said to those who were changing money and buying and selling things"

It is written (ULT)

A prophet wrote in the scriptures that God said, 'I want (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The prophets wrote long ago" or "God said long ago" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

My house...will be called (ULT)

my house to be a...people pray to me (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "My house will be" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

My house (ULT)

my house to be a (UST)

Here "My" refers to God and "house" refers to the temple.

a house of prayer (ULT)

place where people pray to me (UST)

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "a place where people pray" (See: [Idiom](#))

a den of robbers (ULT)

a place where robbers gather (UST)

Jesus uses a metaphor to scold the people for buying and selling items in the temple. Alternate translation: "like a place where robbers hide" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- will be called
- of prayer
- of robbers
- It is written
- house
- a house

Translation Words - UST

- people pray to me
- people pray to me
- robbers
- A prophet wrote in the scriptures that God said, 'I want
- house to be a

ULT

¹³ He said to them, "[It is written](#), 'My [house will be called a house of prayer](#),' but you make it a den [of robbers](#)."

UST

¹³ Then he said to them, "[A prophet wrote in the scriptures that God said, 'I want my house to be a place where people pray to me](#),' but you people have made it into a place where [robbers](#) gather!"

- [place where](#)

Matthew 21:14

the blind and the lame (ULT)

many blind people and lame people (UST)

These nominal adjectives can be stated as adjectives. Alternate translation: "those who were blind and those who were lame" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

the lame (ULT)

lame people (UST)

those who have an injured foot or leg that makes walking difficult

Translation Words - ULT

- [temple](#)
- [he healed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [temple](#)
- [he would heal](#)

ULT

¹⁴ Then the blind and the lame came to him in the [temple](#), and [he healed](#) them.

UST

¹⁴ After that, many blind people and lame people came to Jesus in the [temple](#) in order that [he would heal](#) them, and he did so.

Matthew 21:15

General Information:

In verse 16, Jesus quotes from the Psalms to justify how the people had responded to him.

the marvelous things (ULT)

the marvelous deeds (UST)

“the wonderful things” or “the miracles.” This refers to Jesus healing the blind and lame people in [Matthew 21:14](#).

Hosanna (ULT)

We praise the Messiah (UST)

This word means “save us” but can also mean “praise God!” See how you translated this in [Matthew 21:9](#).

the...Son of David (ULT)

the...descendant of King David (UST)

Jesus was not David’s literal son, so this may be translated as “descendant of king David.” However, “Son of David” is also a title for the Messiah, and the children were probably calling Jesus by this title. See how you translated this in [Matthew 21:9](#).

they became very angry (ULT)

They were indignant (UST)

It is implied that they were angry because they did not believe Jesus was the Christ and they did not want other people praising him. Alternate translation: “they became very angry because people were praising him” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [scribes](#)
- [marvelous things](#)
- [Son](#)
- [children](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [temple](#)
- [of David](#)
- [shouting](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [men who taught the people the Jewish laws](#)
- [marvelous deeds](#)
- [descendant](#)
- [children](#)
- [high priests](#)
- [temple](#)
- [of King David](#)

ULT

¹⁵ But when the [chief priests](#) and the [scribes](#) saw the [marvelous things](#) that he did, and the [children shouting](#) in the [temple](#) and saying, “Hosanna to the [Son of David](#),” they became very angry.

UST

¹⁵ The [high priests](#) and the [men who taught the people the Jewish laws](#) saw the [marvelous deeds](#) that Jesus did. They also saw the [children shouting](#) in the [temple](#). “We praise the Messiah, the [descendant of King David](#)!” They were indignant.

- shouting

Matthew 21:16

Do you hear what they are saying (ULT)

Do you hear what these people are shouting (UST)

The chief priests and scribes ask this question to rebuke Jesus because they are angry with him. Alternate translation: "You should not allow them to say these things about you!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

But have you never read...praise (ULT)

Yes, I hear them, but if you remembered what...you have read...to praise you perfectly (UST)

Jesus asks this question to remind the chief priests and scribes of what they have studied in the scriptures. Alternate translation: "Yes, I hear them, but you should remember what you read in the scriptures...praise." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Out of...the mouths of little children and nursing infants you have prepared praise (ULT) in...You have taught infants and other children to praise you perfectly (UST)

The phrase "out of the mouths" refers to speaking. Alternate translation: "You caused little children and nursing infants to prepare to give praise to God" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [of little children](#)
- [you have prepared](#)
- [praise](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [other children](#)
- [You have taught](#)
- [to praise you perfectly](#)

ULT

¹⁶ They said to him, "Do you hear what they are saying?" [Jesus](#) said to them, "Yes! But have you never read, 'Out of the mouths [of little children](#) and nursing infants [you have prepared praise](#)'?"

UST

¹⁶ They asked him, "How can you tolerate this? Do you hear what these people are shouting?" Then [Jesus](#) said to them, "Yes, I hear them, but if you remembered what you have read in the scriptures about children praising me, you would know that God is pleased with them. The psalmist wrote, saying to God, '[You have taught](#) infants and [other children to praise you perfectly](#).'"

Matthew 21:17

Then he left...them (ULT)

Jesus left (UST)

“Jesus left the chief priests and scribes”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Bethany](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the village of Bethany](#)

ULT

17 Then he left them and went out of the city to [Bethany](#) and spent the night there.

UST

17 Then Jesus left the city. The disciples went with him to [the village of Bethany](#), and they stayed there that night.

Matthew 21:18

Connecting Statement:

Jesus uses a fig tree to teach his disciples about faith and prayer.

Now (ULT) when (UST)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Matthew explains that Jesus is hungry and that is why he stops at the fig tree.

Translation Words - ULT

- [as he returned](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [they were returning](#)

ULT

¹⁸ Now in the morning [as he returned](#) to the city, he was hungry.

UST

¹⁸ Early the next morning when [they were returning](#) to the city, Jesus was hungry.

Matthew 21:19

withered (ULT)

dried up (UST)

died and dried up

Translation Words - ULT

- fruit
- fig tree
- fig tree
- ever

Translation Words - UST

- figs
- fig tree
- fig tree
- again

ULT

¹⁹ Seeing one [fig tree](#) along the roadside, he went to it and found nothing on it except leaves only. He said to it, "May there not be [fruit](#) from you [ever](#) again," and immediately the [fig tree](#) withered.

UST

¹⁹ He saw a [fig tree](#) near the road, so he went over to it to pick some figs to eat. But when he got close, he saw that there were no figs on the tree, but only leaves. So he said to the fig tree, "May you never [again](#) produce [figs](#)!" As a result, the [fig tree](#) immediately dried up.

Matthew 21:20

How did the fig tree immediately wither away (ULT)

How did the fig tree dry up so quickly (UST)

The disciples use a question to emphasize how surprised they are.
Alternate translation: "We are astonished that the fig tree has dried up so quickly!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

wither away (ULT)

did...dry up (UST)

"dry up and die"

Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [they marveled](#)
- [fig tree](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [disciples](#)
- [They were astonished](#)
- [fig tree](#)

ULT

²⁰ When the [disciples](#) saw it, [they marveled](#), saying, "How did the [fig tree](#) immediately wither away?"

UST

²⁰ The next day the [disciples](#) saw that the fig tree was completely dead. [They were astonished](#) and said to Jesus, "How did the [fig tree](#) dry up so quickly?"

Matthew 21:21

Truly I say to you (ULT)

Think about this (UST)

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

if you have faith and do not doubt (ULT)

If you believe that God has power to do...and you do not doubt that (UST)

Jesus expresses the same idea both positively and negatively to emphasize that this faith must be genuine. Alternate translation: "if you truly believe" (See: [Doublet](#))

you will even say to this mountain, 'Be taken up and thrown into the sea (ULT)

You will even be able to do marvelous deeds...like saying to that hill over there, 'Uproot yourself and throw yourself into the sea,' and (UST)

You can translate this direct quotation as an indirect quotation. This can also be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you will even be able to tell this mountain to get up and throw itself into the sea" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

and it will be done (ULT)

it will happen (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "it will happen" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Truly](#)
- [faith](#)
- [fig tree](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus said...what you ask him to](#)
- [Think about this](#)
- [you believe that God has power to do](#)
- [fig tree](#)

ULT

²¹ [Jesus](#) answered and said to them, "[Truly](#) I say to you, if you have [faith](#) and do not doubt, you will not only do what was done to this [fig tree](#), but you will even say to this mountain, 'Be taken up and thrown into the sea,' and it will be done.

UST

²¹ [Jesus said](#) to them, "[Think about this](#): If [you believe that God has power to do what you ask him to](#) and you do not doubt that, you will be able to do things like what I have done to this [fig tree](#). You will even be able to do marvelous deeds like saying to that hill over there, 'Uproot yourself and throw yourself into the sea,' and it will happen!

Matthew 21:22

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- believing
- prayer
- you will receive

Translation Words - UST

- you believe that he will give it to you
- you pray to him, if
- you will receive it from him

ULT

²² Whatever you ask for in [prayer](#), [believing](#), [you will receive](#)."

UST

²² In addition to that, whenever you ask God for something when [you pray to him](#), [if you believe that he will give it to you](#), [you will receive it from him](#)."

Matthew 21:23

Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of the religious leaders questioning Jesus' authority.

When...he...had come...into the temple (ULT) Jesus went into the temple courtyard. While (UST)

It is implied that Jesus did not enter the actual temple. He entered the courtyard around the temple. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

these things (ULT) these things (UST)

This refers to Jesus teaching and healing in the temple. It probably also refers to Jesus driving out the buyers and sellers the previous day.

Translation Words - ULT

- [authority](#)
- [authority](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [temple](#)
- [as he was teaching](#)
- [people](#)
- [elders](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [authority](#)
- [authorized](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [temple courtyard. While](#)
- [he was teaching the people](#)
- [people](#)
- [elders](#)

ULT

²³ When he had come into the [temple](#), the [chief priests](#) and the [elders](#) of the [people](#) came to him [as he was teaching](#), saying, "By what [authority](#) do you do these things, and who gave you this [authority](#)?"

UST

²³ After that, Jesus went into the [temple courtyard. While he was teaching the people](#), the [chief priests](#) and the [elders](#) of the [people](#) approached him. They asked, "By what [authority](#) are you doing these things? Who [authorized](#) you to do what you did here yesterday?"

Matthew 21:24

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [authority](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus said](#)
- [who authorized me](#)

ULT

²⁴ [Jesus](#) answered and said to them, "I also will ask you one question. If you tell me that, I will tell you by what [authority](#) I do these things.

UST

²⁴ [Jesus said](#) to them, "I also will ask you a question, and if you answer me, I will tell you [who authorized me](#) to do these things.

Matthew 21:25

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to respond to the religious leaders.

from where was it (ULT)

Where did...It was (UST)

“where did he get the authority to do that?”

**If we say, ‘From heaven,’ he will say to us, ‘Why then did you not believe him (ULT)
those who came to him? Did he get it...about what they should answer...If we say...from God,’ he will say to us, ‘Then you should have believed his message (UST)**

This has quotes within a quote. You could translate the direct quotations as an indirect quotations. Alternate translation: “If we say that we believe John received his authority from heaven, then Jesus will ask us why we did not believe John.” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

From heaven (ULT)

from God (UST)

Here “heaven” refers to God. Alternate translation: “from God in heaven” (See: [Metonymy](#))

**Why then did you not believe him (ULT)
those who came to him? Did he get it...about what they should answer...Then you should have believed his message (UST)**

The religious leaders know that Jesus could scold them with this rhetorical question. Alternate translation: “Then you should have believed John the Baptist” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [heaven](#) (2)
- [baptism](#)
- [you...believe](#)
- [John](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [God](#) (2)
- [Baptizer get his authority to baptize](#)
- [you should have believed](#)
- [John](#)

ULT

²⁵ The [baptism](#) of [John](#)—from where was it? From [heaven](#) or from men?” They discussed among themselves, saying, “If we say, ‘From [heaven](#),’ he will say to us, ‘Why then did you not [believe](#) him?’

UST

²⁵ Where did [John](#) the [Baptizer get his authority to baptize](#) those who came to him? Did he get it from [God](#) or from people?” The chief priests and elders debated among themselves about what they should answer. They said to each other, “If we say, ‘It was from [God](#),’ he will say to us, ‘Then [you should have believed](#) his message!’

Matthew 21:26

But if we say, 'From men (ULT)

But if we say, 'It was from people (UST)

This is a quote within a quote. You could translate the direct quotation as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "But if we say that we believe John received his authority from men" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

we fear the crowd (ULT)

the crowd might react violently against us (UST)

"we fear what the crowd would think or even do to us"

they all...the...regard...John...as a prophet (ULT)

all the people...the...believe that...John...was a prophet whom God had sent (UST)

"they believe John is a prophet"

Translation Words - ULT

- [we fear](#)
- [a prophet](#)
- [John](#)
- [as](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [might react violently against us](#)
- [a prophet whom God had sent](#)
- [John](#)
- [was](#)

ULT

²⁶ But if we say, 'From men,' [we fear](#) the crowd, because they all regard [John as a prophet](#)."

UST

²⁶ But if we say, 'It was from people,' the crowd [might react violently against us](#), because all the people believe that [John was a prophet whom God had sent](#)."

Matthew 21:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [authority](#)
- [We...know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [they answered Jesus](#)
- [who gave me the right](#)
- [We do...know where John got his authority from](#)

ULT

²⁷ Then they answered [Jesus](#) and said, "We do not [know](#)." He also said to them, "Neither will I tell you by what [authority](#) I do these things.

UST

²⁷ So [they answered Jesus](#), "[We do not know where John got his authority from](#)." Then Jesus said to them, "Because you did not answer my question, I will not tell you [who gave me the right](#) to do the things I did here yesterday."

Matthew 21:28

Connecting Statement:

Jesus tells a parable about two sons to rebuke the religious leaders and to illustrate their unbelief. (See: [Parables](#))

But what do you think (ULT)

Tell me what you think about what I am about (UST)

Jesus uses a question to challenge the religious leaders to think deeply about the parable he will tell them. Alternate translation: "Tell me what you think about what I am about to tell you." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sons](#)
- [Son](#)
- [work](#)
- [vineyard](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sons](#)
- [My son](#)
- [work](#)
- [my vineyard](#)

ULT

28 But what do you think? A man had two [sons](#). He went to the first and said, '[Son](#), go [work](#) today in the [vineyard](#).'

UST

28 "Tell me what you think about what I am about to tell you. There was a man who had two [sons](#). He went to his older son and said, '[My son](#), go and [work](#) in [my vineyard](#) today!'

Matthew 21:29

he changed his mind (ULT)

he changed his mind (UST)

This refers to the son reconsidering his thoughts and deciding to act differently from how he had said he would act. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [he changed his mind](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [he changed his mind](#)

ULT

²⁹ The son answered and said, 'I will not,' but afterward [he changed his mind](#) and went.

UST

²⁹ But the son said to his father, 'I will not go!' But later [he changed his mind](#), and he went to the vineyard and worked.

Matthew 21:30

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [sir](#)
- [the same thing](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Sir](#)
- [said what he had said to his older son. That son](#)

ULT

³⁰ Then the man went to the second son and said [the same thing](#). He answered and said, 'I will go, [sir](#),' but he did not go.

UST

³⁰ Then the father approached his younger son and [said what he had said to his older son. That son](#) said, '[Sir](#), I will go and work in the vineyard today.' But he did not go there.

Matthew 21:31

They said (ULT)

They answered (UST)

“The chief priests and elders said”

The...Jesus...said to them (ULT)

The...Then Jesus...said to them (UST)

“Jesus said to the chief priests and elders”

Truly I say to you (ULT)

So think about this (UST)

“I tell you the truth.” This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

the...tax collectors and the prostitutes will enter into the kingdom of God before you (ULT)

God will be kind to the tax collectors and prostitutes by agreeing to rule over them much sooner than he will agree to rule over you. This is true, even though you condemn those people...they ignore the law of Moses (UST)

Here “kingdom of God” refers to God’s rule as king. Alternate translation: “when God establishes his rule on earth, he will agree to bless the tax collectors and prostitutes by ruling over them before he agrees to do that for you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

will enter...before you (ULT)

much sooner...over you. This is true, even though you condemn those people (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) God will accept the tax collectors and prostitutes sooner than he will accept the Jewish religious leaders, or 2) God will accept the tax collectors and prostitutes instead of the Jewish religious leaders.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [of God](#)
- [Truly](#)
- [kingdom of God](#)
- [father](#)
- [tax collectors](#)
- [prostitutes](#)
- [kingdom](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then Jesus](#)
- [God will be kind to](#)
- [So think about this](#)
- [God will be kind to...rule](#)

ULT

³¹ Which of the two sons did the will of his [father](#)?” They said, “The first one.” [Jesus](#) said to them, “[Truly](#) I say to you, the [tax collectors](#) and the [prostitutes](#) will enter into the [kingdom of God](#) before you.

UST

³¹ So which of the man’s two sons did what [their father](#) desired?” They answered, “The older son.” [Then Jesus](#) said to them, “[So think about this: God will be kind to](#) the [tax collectors](#) and [prostitutes by agreeing to rule over them](#) much sooner [than he will agree to rule](#) over you. This is true, even though you condemn those people because they ignore the law of Moses.

- their father
- tax collectors
- prostitutes by agreeing to rule over them...than he will agree
- rule

Matthew 21:32

came...John...to you (ULT)

I say this to you because, even though...John the Baptizer explained to you (UST)

Here "you" is plural and refers to all the people of Israel not just the religious leaders. Alternate translation: "John came to the people of Israel" (See: [Forms of You](#))

in the way of righteousness (ULT)

how to live in the right way (UST)

This is an idiom that means John showed the people the right way to live. Alternate translation: "and told you the way God wants you to live" (See: [Idiom](#))

you did not believe him (ULT)

you did...not...believe his message (UST)

Here "you" is plural and refers to the religious leaders. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of righteousness](#)
- [you...believe](#)
- [believed](#)
- [and believe](#)
- [you...repent](#)
- [John](#)
- [tax collectors](#)
- [prostitutes](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [how to live in the right way](#)
- [you did...believe](#)
- [believed](#)
- [you did not believe](#)
- [you refused to stop sinning, and](#)
- [John the Baptizer explained](#)
- [tax collectors](#)
- [prostitutes](#)

ULT

³² For [John](#) came to you in the way [of righteousness](#), but you did not [believe](#) him. But the [tax collectors](#) and the [prostitutes](#) [believed](#) him. But you, even when you saw this, you did not [repent](#) afterward [and believe](#) him.

UST

³² I say this to you because, even though [John the Baptizer explained](#) to you [how to live in the right way](#), you did not [believe](#) his message. But [tax collectors](#) and [prostitutes](#) [believed](#) his message, and they turned away from their sinful behavior. In contrast, even though you saw that they changed, [you refused to stop sinning, and you did not believe](#) John's message."

Matthew 21:33

Connecting Statement:

To rebuke the religious leaders and illustrate their unbelief, Jesus tells a parable about rebellious servants. (See: [Parables](#))

a landowner (ULT)

a landowner (UST)

“a person who owned a piece of property”

a hedge (ULT)

a fence (UST)

“a wall” or “a fence”

set...about it...dug...a winepress in (ULT)

it...He made...a place to collect the juice that would come out of the grapes (UST)

“dug a hole in the vineyard in which to press the grapes”

rented it out to vine growers (ULT)

He rented the vineyard to some men who would care for it (UST)

The owner still owned the vineyard, but he allowed the vine growers to take care of it. When the grapes became ripe, they were to give some of them to the owner and keep the rest.

to vine growers (ULT)

to some men who would care for it (UST)

These were people who knew how to take care of vines and grapes.

Translation Words - ULT

- [a landowner](#)
- [parable](#)
- [a winepress](#)
- [a vineyard](#)
- [a watchtower](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [a landowner](#)
- [parable that I will tell you. There was](#)
- [a place to collect the juice that would come out of the grapes](#)
- [a vineyard](#)
- [a tower in which someone could sit to guard that vineyard](#)

ULT

33 Listen to another [parable](#). There was a man, [a landowner](#). He planted [a vineyard](#), set a hedge about it, dug [a winepress](#) in it, built [a watchtower](#), and rented it out to vine growers. Then he went into another country.

UST

33 “Listen to another [parable that I will tell you](#). There was [a landowner](#) who planted [a vineyard](#). He built a fence around it. He made [a place to collect the juice that would come out of the grapes](#). He also built [a tower in which someone could sit to guard that vineyard](#). He rented the vineyard to some men who would care for it and give him some of the grapes in return. Then he went away to another country.

Matthew 21:34

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- to get
- fruit harvest
- fruit
- time
- he sent
- some of...servants

Translation Words - UST

- to get
- grapes
- grapes that the vineyard had produced
- time to harvest
- the landowner sent
- some of...servants

ULT

³⁴ When the [time](#) of the [fruit harvest](#) approached, [he sent some of](#) his [servants](#) to the vine growers [to get](#) his [fruit](#).

UST

³⁴ When it was [time to harvest](#) the [grapes](#), [the landowner sent some of](#) his [servants](#) to the men who were caring for the vineyard [to get](#) his share of the [grapes that the vineyard had produced](#).

Matthew 21:35

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling a parable. (See: [Parables](#))

his servants (ULT)

the servants...one of them (UST)

“the landowner’s servants”

Translation Words - ULT

- [stoned](#)
- [servants](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [killed...by throwing stones at him](#)
- [servants](#)

ULT

35 But the vine growers took his [servants](#), beat one, killed another, and [stoned](#) still another.

UST

35 But the renters seized the [servants](#). They beat one of them, they killed another one, and [killed](#) a third one of them [by throwing stones at him](#).

Matthew 21:36

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the owner sent
- in the same way
- servants

Translation Words - UST

- So the landowner sent
- the same way
- servants

ULT

³⁶ Again, [the owner sent](#) other [servants](#), more than the first, but the vine growers treated them [in the same way](#).

UST

³⁶ [So the landowner sent](#) more [servants](#) than he had sent the first time. The renters treated those servants [the same way](#) that they had treated the other servants.

Matthew 21:37

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [own son](#)
- [son](#)
- [the owner sent](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son and give him my share of the grapes](#)
- [the landowner sent](#)

ULT

³⁷ After that, [the owner sent](#) his [own son](#) to them, saying, 'They will respect my [son](#).'

UST

³⁷ After he heard about this, [the landowner sent](#) his own [son](#) to the renters to get his share of the grapes. When he sent him, he said to himself, 'They will certainly respect my [son and give him my share of the grapes](#).'

Matthew 21:38

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling a parable. (See: [Parables](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [inheritance](#)
- [son](#)
- [take over](#)
- [heir](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [property](#)
- [his son arriving](#)
- [divide the...among](#)
- [man who will inherit this vineyard](#)

ULT

³⁸ But when the vine growers saw the [son](#), they said among themselves, 'This is the [heir](#). Come, let us kill him and [take over](#) his [inheritance](#).'

UST

³⁸ But when the renters saw [his son arriving](#), they said to each other, 'This is the [man who will inherit this vineyard](#)! Let us join together and kill him and [divide the property among](#) ourselves.'

Matthew 21:39

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [threw him](#)
- [vineyard](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [dragged him](#)
- [vineyard](#)

ULT

³⁹ So they took him, [threw him](#) out of the [vineyard](#) and killed him.

UST

³⁹ So they grabbed him, [dragged him](#) outside the [vineyard](#), and killed him.

Matthew 21:40

Now (ULT)

Now I ask you, when (UST)

The word “now” does not mean “at this moment,” but it is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

Translation Words - ULT

- owner
- vineyard

Translation Words - UST

- landowner
- to his vineyard

ULT

⁴⁰ Now when the [owner](#) of the [vineyard](#) comes, what will he do to those vine growers?”

UST

⁴⁰ Now I ask you, when the [landowner](#) returns [to his vineyard](#), what do you think he will do to those renters?”

Matthew 21:41

They said to him (ULT)

The people replied (UST)

Matthew does not make clear who answered Jesus. If you need to specify an audience you can translate as "The people said to Jesus."

Translation Words - ULT

- [He will destroy](#)
- [harvest time](#)
- [share of crops](#)
- [vineyard](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [He will thoroughly destroy those wicked men](#)
- [grapes](#)
- [are ripe](#)
- [vineyard](#)

ULT

⁴¹ They said to him, "[He will destroy](#) those miserable men in the most severe way, and will then rent out the [vineyard](#) to other vine growers, men who will give him his [share of crops](#) at the [harvest time](#)."

UST

⁴¹ The people replied, "[He will thoroughly destroy those wicked men!](#) Then he will rent the [vineyard](#) to others. They will give him his share of the [grapes](#) when they [are ripe](#)."

Matthew 21:42

General Information:

Jesus quotes the prophet Isaiah to show that God will honor the one whom the religious leaders reject.

Connecting Statement:

Here Jesus begins to explain the parable of the rebellious servants.

Jesus said to them (ULT)

Jesus said to them, "You need to think carefully about these words that (UST)

It is unclear to whom Jesus asks the following question. If you need to make "them" specific, use the same audience as you did in [Matthew 21:41](#).

Did you never read...our eyes (ULT)

you have read...we...look at it (UST)

Jesus uses a question to make his audience think deeply about what this scripture means. Alternate translation: "Think about what you have read...eyes." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

The stone which the builders rejected, this has become the cornerstone (ULT)

The men who were building a large building rejected a certain stone. But others put that same stone in its proper place, and it has become the most important (UST)

Jesus is quoting from the Psalms. This is a metaphor that means the religious leaders, like builders, will reject Jesus, but God will make him the most important in his kingdom, like the cornerstone in a building. (See: [Metaphor](#))

has become the cornerstone (ULT)

in its proper place, and it has become the most important (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "has become the cornerstone" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

This was from the Lord (ULT)

stone of the building. The Lord has done this (UST)

"The Lord has caused this great change"

it is marvelous in our eyes (ULT)

we marvel as we look at it (UST)

Here "in our eyes" refers to seeing. Alternate translation: "it is wonderful to see" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [the Lord](#)
- [scriptures](#)
- [the cornerstone](#)

ULT

⁴² [Jesus](#) said to them, "Did you never read in the [scriptures](#), 'The stone which the builders [rejected](#), this has become [the cornerstone](#). This was from [the Lord](#), and it is [marvelous](#) in our eyes'?"

UST

⁴² [Jesus](#) said to them, "You need to think carefully about these words that you have read in the [scriptures](#): 'The men who were building a large building [rejected](#) a certain stone. But others put that same stone in its proper place, and it has become the [most important stone of the building](#). [The Lord](#) has done this, and [we marvel as](#) we look at it.'

- the cornerstone
- marvelous
- rejected

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- stone of the building. The Lord
- scriptures
- most important
- most important
- we marvel as
- rejected

Matthew 21:43

I say to you (ULT)

I am telling you (UST)

This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

to you (ULT)

you (UST)

Here “you” is plural. Jesus was speaking to the religious leaders who had rejected him. (See: [Forms of You](#))

the kingdom of God...will be taken away...from you and will be given to a nation (ULT)

God...will no longer let...you be the people who belong to him. Instead, he will take as his own a people (UST)

Here “kingdom of God” refers to God’s rule as king. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God will take his kingdom away from you and will give it to a nation” or “God will reject you and he will be king over people from other nations” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

that produces its fruits (ULT)

who do what he requires them to do (UST)

“Fruits” here is a metaphor for “results” or outcome.” Alternate translation: “that produces good results” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of God
- kingdom of God
- fruits
- to a nation
- kingdom

Translation Words - UST

- God...to him
- God...be the people who belong...to him
- what he requires them to do
- a people
- be the people who belong

ULT

⁴³ Therefore I say to you, the [kingdom of God](#) will be taken away from you and will be given [to a nation](#) that produces its [fruits](#).

UST

⁴³ So I am telling you this: [God](#) will no longer let you [be the people who belong to him](#). Instead, he will take as his own [a people](#) who do [what he requires them to do](#).

Matthew 21:44

Whoever falls...on this stone will be broken to pieces (ULT)

Anyone who falls...on this stone will break into pieces (UST)

Here, “this stone” is the same stone as in [Matthew 21:42](#). This is a metaphor that means the Christ will destroy anyone who rebels against him. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “The stone will break into pieces anyone who falls on it” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

But anyone...whom it falls, it will crush him (ULT)
and the stone will crush anyone...whom it falls (UST)

This means basically the same thing as the previous sentence. It is a metaphor that means the Christ will have the final judgment and will destroy everyone who rebels against him. (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Metaphor](#))

ULT

⁴⁴ Whoever falls on this stone will be broken to pieces. But anyone on whom it falls, it will crush him.”

UST

⁴⁴ Anyone who falls on this stone will break into pieces, and the stone will crush anyone on whom it falls.”

Matthew 21:45

Connecting Statement:

The religious leaders react to the parable that Jesus told.

his parables (ULT)
this parable, they (UST)

“Jesus’ parables”

Translation Words - ULT

- [parables](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [they understood](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [parable](#)
- [elders who were Pharisees](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [realized](#)

ULT

⁴⁵ When the [chief priests](#) and the [Pharisees](#) heard his [parables](#), [they understood](#) that he was speaking about them.

UST

⁴⁵ When the [chief priests](#) and the [elders who were Pharisees](#) heard this [parable](#), they [realized](#) that he was accusing them because they did not believe that he was the Messiah.

Matthew 21:46

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- they were afraid
- a prophet
- Seeking
- to arrest

Translation Words - UST

- they were afraid of
- a prophet
- They wanted
- to seize

ULT

⁴⁶ [Seeking to arrest](#) him, [they were afraid](#) of the crowd, because the people regarded him as [a prophet](#).

UST

⁴⁶ [They wanted to seize](#) him, but they did not do so because [they were afraid of](#) what the crowds would do if they did that, because the crowds considered that Jesus was [a prophet](#).

Matthew 22

Matthew 22 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in verse 44, which are words from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

Wedding Feast

In the parable of the wedding feast ([Matthew 22:1-14](#)), Jesus taught that when God offers to save a person, that person needs to accept the offer. Jesus spoke of life with God as a feast that a king prepares for his son, who has just gotten married. In addition, Jesus emphasized that not everyone whom God invites will properly prepare themselves to come to the feast. God will throw these people out from the feast.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Implicit information

Speakers usually do not say things that they think their hearers already understand. When the king in the parable said, "My oxen and fattened calves have been killed" (Matthew 22:4), he assumed that the hearers would understand that those who had killed the animals had also cooked them.

Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. To the Jews, the ancestors were the masters of the descendants, but in one psalm David calls one of his descendants "Lord." Jesus tells the Jewish leaders that this is a paradox, saying, "If David then calls the Christ 'Lord,' how is he David's son?" (Matthew 22:45).

Matthew 22:1

Connecting Statement:

To rebuke the religious leaders and to illustrate their unbelief, Jesus tells a parable about a marriage feast. (See: [Parables](#))

to them (ULT)

This is (UST)

“to the people”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [parables](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [parables](#)

ULT

¹ [Jesus](#) answered and spoke to them again in [parables](#), saying,

UST

¹ Then [Jesus](#) told the Jewish leaders other [parables](#). This is one of those parables.

Matthew 22:2

The kingdom of heaven is like (ULT)

God ruling from heaven is like (UST)

This is the beginning of a parable. See how you translated this in [Matthew 13:24](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- of heaven
- for...son
- kingdom of heaven
- a marriage feast
- a king
- is like
- kingdom

Translation Words - UST

- God ruling from heaven
- for...son
- God ruling from heaven
- a wedding feast
- a king
- is like
- God ruling from heaven

ULT

² "The [kingdom of heaven is like a king](#) who prepared [a marriage feast](#) for his [son](#).

UST

² "God ruling from heaven is like a king who told his servants that they should make [a wedding feast](#) for his [son](#).

Matthew 22:3

those who had been invited (ULT)
the people whom he had invited that it was time for them (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the people the king had invited" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- to call
- those who had been invited
- marriage feast
- He sent out
- servants

Translation Words - UST

- to tell
- had invited that it was time for them
- wedding feast. The servants went out and told the people
- the feast was ready, the king sent
- servants

ULT

³ He sent out his servants to call those who had been invited to the marriage feast, but they would not come.

UST

³ When the feast was ready, the king sent his servants to tell the people whom he had invited that it was time for them to come to the wedding feast. The servants went out and told the people. But the people who had been invited did not want to come.

Matthew 22:4

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling a parable. (See: [Parables](#))

**servants, saying, 'Tell them who are invited (ULT)
servants...tell those people to come to the feast. He
said to those servants (UST)**

This direct quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation. Also, this can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "servants, ordering them to tell those whom he invited" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**See (ULT)
the (UST)**

"Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

**My oxen and fattened calves have been killed (ULT)
I...The oxen and the fattened calves have been
butchered and cooked (UST)**

It is implied that the animals are cooked and ready to eat. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "My servants have killed and cooked my oxen and my fattened calves" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**my...oxen and fattened calves (ULT)
Say to the people whom I invited to come to the feast...The oxen and the fattened calves
(UST)**

"My best oxen and calves for eating"

Translation Words - ULT

- [marriage feast](#)
- [the king sent](#)
- [servants](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [wedding feast](#)
- [So the king sent](#)
- [servants](#)

ULT

⁴ Again [the king sent](#) other [servants](#), saying, 'Tell them who are invited, "See, I have prepared my dinner. My oxen and fattened calves have been killed, and all things are ready. Come to the [marriage feast](#).'"

UST

⁴ [So the king sent](#) other [servants](#) to again tell those people to come to the feast. He said to those servants, 'Say to the people whom I invited to come to the feast, "This is what the king says to you, 'I have prepared the meal. The oxen and the fattened calves have been butchered and cooked. Everything is ready. It is time now for you to come to the [wedding feast](#)!'"

Matthew 22:5

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling a parable. (See: [Parables](#))

But they paid no attention (ULT)

But when the servants told them...they disregarded what the servants said. Some of them (UST)

“But the guests the king invited ignored the invitation”

ULT

⁵ But they paid no attention and went away, one to his farm, another to his business.

UST

⁵ But when the servants told them that, they disregarded what the servants said. Some of them went to their own fields. Others went to their places of business.

Matthew 22:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [servants](#)
- [seized](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [king's servants](#)
- [seized](#)

ULT

⁶ The others [seized](#) the king's [servants](#), treated them shamefully, and killed them.

UST

⁶ The rest of them [seized](#) the [king's servants](#), mistreated them, and killed them.

Matthew 22:7

and they killed those murderers (ULT) and kill those murderers (UST)

It is implied that the king's soldiers killed the murderers. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and they killed](#)
- [he sent](#)
- [king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and kill](#)
- [He commanded...to go](#)
- [king heard what had happened, he](#)

ULT

⁷ The [king](#) was angry, and [he sent](#) his soldiers [and they killed](#) those murderers and burned their city.

UST

⁷ When the [king heard what had happened, he](#) became furious. [He commanded](#) his soldiers [to go and kill](#) those murderers and burn their city.

Matthew 22:8

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling a parable. (See: [Parables](#))

but those who were invited...but those who were invited (ULT)
the...people who were invited (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "those whom I invited" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [worthy](#)
- [wedding](#)
- [to...servants](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [do...deserve](#)
- [wedding feast](#)
- [servants](#)

ULT

⁸ Then he said to his [servants](#), 'The [wedding](#) is ready, but those who were invited were not [worthy](#).

UST

⁸ After his soldiers had done that, the king said to his other [servants](#), 'I have prepared the [wedding feast](#), but the people who were invited do not [deserve](#) to come to it.

Matthew 22:9

the highway crossings (ULT)

the intersections of the main roads (UST)

“where the main roads of the city cross.” The king is sending the servants to the place where they are most likely to find people.

Translation Words - ULT

- [marriage feast](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [wedding feast](#)

ULT

⁹ Therefore go to the highway crossings and invite as many people to the [marriage feast](#) as you can find.’

UST

⁹ So go to the intersections of the main roads. Tell whomever you find that they should come to the [wedding feast](#).’

Matthew 22:10

went out...both bad...good (ULT)
there, and they...They gathered both bad people and good people (UST)

"both the good people and the bad people"

So the wedding hall was filled with guests (ULT)
where the wedding feast was about to take place. The hall was filled with people (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "So the guests filled the wedding hall" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the wedding hall (ULT)
where the wedding feast was about to take place. The hall (UST)

a large room

Translation Words - ULT

- [good](#)
- [bad](#)
- [and gathered together](#)
- [servants](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [good people](#)
- [bad people](#)
- [gathered](#)
- [servants](#)

ULT

¹⁰ Those [servants](#) went out to the highways [and gathered together](#) all the people they found, both [bad](#) and [good](#). So the wedding hall was filled with guests.

UST

¹⁰ So the [servants](#) went there, and they [gathered](#) everyone they could find. They gathered both [bad people](#) and [good people](#). They brought them into the hall where the wedding feast was about to take place. The hall was filled with people.

Matthew 22:11

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling a parable. (See: [Parables](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [king](#)
- [who was...wearing](#)
- [clothes](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [king](#)
- [wearing clothes](#)
- [that had been provided](#)

ULT

11 But when the [king](#) came in to look at the guests, he saw a man there [who was](#) not [wearing](#) wedding [clothes](#).

UST

11 But when the [king](#) went into the hall to see the guests, he saw someone who was not [wearing clothes that had been provided](#) for the guests to wear at a wedding feast.

Matthew 22:12

how did you come in here without wedding clothes (ULT)

you should never have entered this hall, because you are not wearing the clothes that guests wear at wedding feasts (UST)

The king uses a question to scold the guest. Alternate translation: "you are not wearing proper clothes for a wedding. You should not be here." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

the man...was speechless (ULT)

because he did not know what to say...The man did not say anything (UST)

"the man was silent"

Translation Words - ULT

- [clothes](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the clothes](#)

ULT

¹² The king said to him, 'Friend, how did you come in here without wedding [clothes](#)?' But the man was speechless.

UST

¹² The king said to him, 'Friend, you should never have entered this hall, because you are not wearing [the clothes](#) that guests wear at wedding feasts!' The man did not say anything, because he did not know what to say.

Matthew 22:13

Connecting Statement:

Jesus concludes his parable about a marriage feast.

servants, 'Bind this man hand and foot (ULT)
servants, 'Tie this person's feet and hands (UST)

"Tie him up so that he cannot move his hands or feet"

the outer darkness (ULT)
total darkness, where people...of the pain they are in (UST)

Here "outer darkness" is a metonym for the place where God sends those who reject them. This is a place that is completely separated from God forever. See how you translated this in [Matthew 8:12](#).

Alternate translation: "the dark place away from God" (See: [Metonymy](#))

weeping and the grinding of teeth (ULT)
cry out and gnash their teeth because (UST)

"Grinding of teeth" is symbolic action, representing extreme sadness and suffering. See how you translated this in [Matthew 8:12](#). Alternate translation: "weeping and expressing their extreme suffering" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Bind](#)
- [servants](#)
- [hand](#)
- [and throw](#)
- [darkness](#)
- [king](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Tie](#)
- [servants](#)
- [hands](#)
- [and throw](#)
- [darkness, where people](#)
- [king](#)

ULT

¹³ Then the [king](#) said to the [servants](#), '
[Bind](#) this man [hand](#) and foot, [and throw](#)
 him into the outer [darkness](#), where
 there will be weeping and the grinding
 of teeth.'

UST

¹³ Then the [king](#) said to his [servants](#), '
[Tie](#) this person's feet and [hands and](#)
[throw](#) him outside where there is total
[darkness, where people](#) cry out and
 gnash their teeth because of the pain
 they are in."

Matthew 22:14

**For many people are called, but few are chosen (ULT)
Then Jesus said, "The point of this parable is that God has invited many to come to him, but only a few people are the ones whom he has chosen to be there (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "For God invites many people, but he only chooses a few" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**For (ULT)
many (UST)**

This marks a transition. Jesus has ended the parable and will now explain the point of the parable.

Translation Words - ULT

- [called](#)
- [are chosen](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then Jesus said, "The point of this parable is that God has invited...to come to him](#)
- [chosen to be there](#)

ULT

¹⁴ For many people are [called](#), but few [are chosen](#)."

UST

¹⁴ [Then Jesus said, "The point of this parable is that God has invited many to come to him](#), but only a few people are the ones whom he has [chosen to be there](#)."

Matthew 22:15

Connecting Statement:

This begins an account of the religious leaders trying to trap Jesus with several difficult questions. Here the Pharisees ask him about paying taxes to Caesar.

**how they might entrap him in his own words (ULT)
in order to...could cause him to say something that
would enable them to accuse him (UST)**

“how they could cause Jesus to say something wrong so they could arrest him”

Translation Words - ULT

- Pharisees
- and planned
- they might entrap

Translation Words - UST

- Pharisees
- together...plan how they
- could cause him to say something that would enable them to accuse

ULT

¹⁵ Then the [Pharisees](#) went [and planned](#) how [they might entrap](#) him in his own words.

UST

¹⁵ After Jesus said that, the [Pharisees](#) met [together](#) in order to [plan how they could cause him to say something that would enable them to accuse](#) him.

Matthew 22:16

their disciples...the Herodians (ULT)
some of their disciples along with...those of the
Herodian party (UST)

The disciples of the Pharisees supported paying taxes only to Jewish authorities. The Herodians supported paying taxes to the Roman authorities. It is implied that the Pharisees believed that no matter what Jesus said, he would offend one of these groups. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Herodians (ULT)
Herodian party (UST)

These were officials and followers of the Jewish king Herod. He was friends with Roman authorities. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

does not...for you...look at the appearance of people (ULT)
not...because...what kind of person they are (UST)

“you do not show special honor to anyone” or “you do not consider anyone more important than anyone else”

Translation Words - ULT

- [God's](#)
- [truthful](#)
- [truth](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [you teach](#)
- [at the appearance](#)
- [Then they sent](#)
- [the appearance](#)
- [Teacher](#)
- [we know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#)
- [truthful](#)
- [truth](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [teach](#)
- [what kind of...they are](#)
- [They sent](#)
- [what kind of...they are](#)
- [Teacher](#)
- [we know](#)

ULT

¹⁶ [Then they sent](#) to him their [disciples](#), together with the Herodians. They said, “[Teacher, we know](#) that you are [truthful](#), and that [you teach God's](#) way in [truth](#). Anyone's opinion does not concern you, for you do not look [at the appearance](#) of people.

UST

¹⁶ [They sent](#) to him some of their [disciples](#) along with those of the Herodian party. Those said to Jesus, “[Teacher, we know](#) that you are [truthful](#) and that you teach the [truth](#) about what [God](#) wants us to do. We also know that you do not change what you [teach](#) because of what someone says about you, no matter [what kind of](#) person [they are](#).

Matthew 22:17

to pay taxes to Caesar (ULT) that we pay taxes to the Roman government (UST)

People did not pay taxes directly to Caesar but to one of his tax collectors. Alternate translation: “to pay the taxes that Caesar requires” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- to Caesar
- Is it lawful
- taxes

Translation Words - UST

- to the Roman government
- Is it right
- taxes

ULT

¹⁷ So tell us, what do you think? [Is it lawful](#) to pay [taxes to Caesar](#) or not?”

UST

¹⁷ So tell us what you think about this matter: [Is it right](#) that we pay [taxes to the Roman government](#), or not?”

Matthew 22:18

**Why are you testing me, you hypocrites (ULT)
what...to them, "You are hypocrites; you want me to
say something for which you can accuse me (UST)**

Jesus uses a question to scold those who were trying to trap him.
Alternate translation: "Do not test me, you hypocrites!" or "I know
that you hypocrites are only trying to test me!" (See: [Rhetorical
Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [you hypocrites](#)
- [you testing](#)
- [wickedness](#)
- [understood](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [to them, "You are hypocrites](#)
- [you want me to say something for which you can accuse me](#)
- [really wanted to do was evil. They were wanting him to say something that would get him](#)
- [knew that](#)

ULT

¹⁸ But [Jesus understood](#) their [wickedness](#) and said, "Why are [you testing](#) me, [you hypocrites](#)?"

UST

¹⁸ But [Jesus knew that](#) what they [really wanted to do was evil. They were wanting him to say something that would get him](#) in trouble with either the Jewish authorities or the Roman authorities. So he said [to them, "You are hypocrites; you want me to say something for which you can accuse me.](#)

Matthew 22:19

a denarius (ULT)

a coin called a denarius (UST)

This was a Roman coin worth one day's wages. (See: [Biblical Money](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [tax](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [with which people pay the Roman tax](#)

ULT

¹⁹ Show me the coin for the [tax](#)." Then they brought a denarius to him.

UST

¹⁹ Show me one of the coins [with which people pay the Roman tax](#)." So they showed him a coin called a denarius.

Matthew 22:20

to them (ULT)

to them (UST)

Here “them” refers to the Herodians and the disciples of the Pharisees.

Whose image and name is this (ULT)

Whose picture is on this coin? And whose name is on it (UST)

Jesus uses a question to get the people to think deeply about what he is saying. Alternate translation: “Tell me whose image and name you see on this coin.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

²⁰ Jesus said to them, “Whose [image](#) and name is this?”

UST

²⁰ He said to them, “Whose [picture](#) is on this coin? And whose name is on it?”

Translation Words - ULT

- [image](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [picture](#)

Matthew 22:21

Caesar's (ULT)

Caesar, the head of (UST)

You can make clear the understood information in their response.
Alternate translation: "The coin has Caesar's image and name on it"
(See: [Ellipsis](#))

Caesar's...the things that are Caesar's (ULT)

Caesar, the head of the Roman government (UST)

"things that belong to Caesar"

the things that are Caesar's...the things that are God's (ULT)

the Roman government...to God (UST)

"things that belong to God"

Translation Words - ULT

- [the things that are God's](#)
- [to God](#)
- [Caesar's](#)
- [the things that are Caesar's](#) (2)
- [to Caesar](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to God](#)
- [what he requires](#)
- [Caesar, the head of](#)
- [to the government](#) (2)
- [what they require](#)

ULT

²¹ They said to him, "[Caesar's](#)." Then Jesus said to them, "Then give [to Caesar the things that are Caesar's](#), and [to God the things that are God's](#)."

UST

²¹ They answered, "It has the picture and name of [Caesar, the head of](#) the Roman government." Then he said to them, "So give [to the government what they require](#), and give [to God what he requires](#)."

Matthew 22:22

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- they marveled

Translation Words - UST

- they marveled that his answer did not enable anyone to accuse him

ULT

²² When they heard it, [they marveled](#).
Then they left him and went away.

UST

²² When those men heard Jesus say that, [they marveled that his answer did not enable anyone to accuse him](#). Then they left Jesus.

Matthew 22:23

Connecting Statement:

The Sadducees try to trap Jesus by asking him a difficult question about marriage and the resurrection of the dead.

Translation Words - ULT

- [resurrection](#)
- [some Sadducees](#)
- [day](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [people will become alive again after they die](#)
- [some Sadducees](#)
- [same day](#)

ULT

²³ On that [day some Sadducees](#), who say there is no [resurrection](#), came to him. They asked him,

UST

²³ During that [same day, some Sadducees](#) came to Jesus. They are a Jewish group who do not believe that [people will become alive again after they die](#). They asked Jesus,

Matthew 22:24

Teacher, Moses said, 'If someone dies (ULT)

Teacher...Moses wrote in the scriptures, 'If a man dies who (UST)

The religious leaders were asking Jesus about what Moses had written in the scriptures. If your language does not allow quotes within quotes, this could be stated as an indirect quote. Alternate translation: "Teacher, Moses said that if a man dies" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

his...for...brother...his...wife...his...for...brother (ULT)
his...by him. The child will be considered the descendant of the man who died...his...the...widow...his...by him. The child will be considered the descendant of the man who died (UST)

Here "his" refers to the dead man.

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- for...brother
- children
- have children
- Moses
- dies
- have children
- Teacher

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- him. The child will be considered the descendant of the man who died
- any children
- a child
- Moses
- dies who
- she can have
- Teacher

ULT

²⁴ saying, "[Teacher](#), [Moses](#) said, 'If someone [dies](#), not having [children](#), his [brother](#) must marry his wife and [have children](#) for his [brother](#).'

UST

²⁴ "[Teacher](#), [Moses](#) wrote in the scriptures, 'If a man [dies who](#) did not have [any children](#), his [brother](#) must marry the dead man's widow in order that [she can have a child](#) by [him](#). [The child will be considered the descendant of the man who died](#), and in that way the dead man will have descendants.'

Matthew 22:25

Connecting Statement:

The Sadducees continue asking Jesus a question.

The...first (ULT)

The oldest one (UST)

"The oldest" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [to...brother](#)
- [children](#)
- [and then died](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [seven boys in a family](#)
- [So the second brother](#)
- [any children](#)
- [he died](#)

ULT

²⁵ Now there were among us seven [brothers](#). The first married [and then died](#). Not having [children](#), he left his wife to his [brother](#).

UST

²⁵ There were [seven boys in a family](#). The oldest one married someone. He and his wife did not have [any children](#), and [he died](#). [So the second brother](#) married the widow. But he also died without having a child.

Matthew 22:26

**the second brother...the third...the seventh brother
(ULT)**

**to the third brother, and...to the third brother, and...to
the other four brothers, who one by one married this
same woman (UST)**

“the next oldest...the next oldest...the youngest” or “his oldest
younger brother...that brother’s oldest younger brother...the
youngest” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [did the same thing](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The same thing happened](#)

ULT

²⁶ Then the second brother [did the same thing](#), then the third, all the way to the seventh brother.

UST

²⁶ [The same thing happened](#) to the third brother, and also to the other four brothers, who one by one married this same woman.

Matthew 22:27

After...them all (ULT)

Last...of all (UST)

“After every brother had died”

Translation Words - ULT

- died

Translation Words - UST

- died

ULT

²⁷ After them all, the woman [died](#).

UST

²⁷ Last of all, the woman also [died](#).

Matthew 22:28

Now (ULT)

So (UST)

Here the Sadducees shift from the story about the seven brothers to their actual question.

in the resurrection (ULT)

at the time when God will raise people from the dead

(UST)

“when dead people come back to life”

Translation Words - ULT

- [resurrection](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [time when God will raise people from the dead](#)

ULT

²⁸ Now in the [resurrection](#), whose wife will she be of the seven brothers? For they all had married her.”

UST

²⁸ So, at the [time when God will raise people from the dead](#), which of the seven brothers do you think will be her husband? Keep in mind that they had all been married to her.”

Matthew 22:29

You are mistaken (ULT)

You are certainly wrong in (UST)

It is implied that Jesus means that they are mistaken about what they think about the resurrection. Alternate translation: “You are mistaken about the resurrection” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the power of God (ULT)

know that God has the power to make people alive again (UST)

“what God is able to do”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [of God](#)
- [scriptures](#)
- [power](#)
- [You are mistaken](#)
- [you...know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [know that God has](#)
- [what is written in the scriptures. You also](#)
- [the power to make people alive again](#)
- [You are certainly wrong in](#)
- [You do...know](#)

ULT

²⁹ But [Jesus](#) answered and said to them, “[You are mistaken](#), because you do not [know](#) the [scriptures](#) or the [power of God](#).”

UST

²⁹ [Jesus](#) replied to them, “[You are certainly wrong in](#) what you are thinking. [You do](#) not [know what is written in the scriptures](#). [You also](#) do not [know that God has the power to make people alive again](#).”

Matthew 22:30

in...the resurrection (ULT)

The fact is that the woman will not be the wife of any of them...The fact is that the woman will not be the wife of any of them (UST)

“when dead people rise back to life”

they neither marry (ULT)

because after God causes all dead people to live again, no one will be married (UST)

“people will not marry”

nor are given in marriage (ULT)

will be married (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “nor will people give their children in marriage” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [resurrection](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [angels](#)
- [like](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The fact is that the woman will not be the wife of any of them](#)
- [heaven. They do not marry](#)
- [the angels](#)
- [like](#)

ULT

³⁰ For in the [resurrection](#) they neither marry nor are given in marriage. Instead, they are [like angels](#) in [heaven](#).

UST

³⁰ [The fact is that the woman will not be the wife of any of them](#), because after God causes all dead people to live again, no one will be married. Instead, people will be [like the angels](#) in [heaven](#). [They do not marry](#).

Matthew 22:31

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins asking a question to show that people who have died will live again.

have you not read...God, saying (ULT)
have read it. Long after Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob had died...God...said to Moses (UST)

Jesus scolds the Sadducees by asking a question. He is not looking for an answer. Alternate translation: "I know you have read...God. You know that he said," (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

what was spoken to you by God (ULT)
you...have read it. Long after Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob had died...God (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what God spoke to you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [resurrection](#)
- [God](#)
- [dead](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [becoming alive again, God said something about that. I am sure](#)
- [God](#)
- [dead people](#)

ULT

³¹ But concerning the [resurrection](#) of the [dead](#), have you not read what was spoken to you by [God](#), saying,

UST

³¹ But about [dead people becoming alive again, God said something about that. I am sure](#) you have read it. Long after Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob had died, [God](#) said to Moses,

Matthew 22:32

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes asking the question he began in verse 31.

I am the God...of Jacob (ULT)

I am the God...whom Jacob worships (UST)

This is the end of the question that begins with the words “have you not read” in verse 31. Jesus asks this question to remind the religious leaders of what they know from scripture. “I know you have read it, but you do not seem to understand what...Jacob.” You can translate this direct quotation as an indirect quotation. “God, who said to Moses that he is the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

of the dead, but of the living (ULT)

dead people who worship...It is living people who worship him. So we are sure that their spirits are still alive (UST)

These nominal adjectives can be stated as adjectives. Alternate translation: “of dead people, but he is the God of living people” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of the living](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#) (2)
- [God](#) (3)
- [God](#) (4)
- [of Abraham](#)
- [of Isaac](#)
- [of Jacob](#)
- [of the dead](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [It is living people](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#) (2)
- [God](#) (3)
- [God](#) (4)
- [whom Abraham worships](#)
- [whom Isaac worships](#)
- [whom Jacob worships](#)
- [dead people who worship](#)

ULT

32 'I am the [God of Abraham](#), the [God of Isaac](#), and the [God of Jacob](#)? God is not the [God of the dead](#), but [of the living](#).'

UST

32 'I am the [God whom Abraham worships](#), the [God whom Isaac worships](#), and the [God whom Jacob worships](#).' It is not [dead people who worship God](#). [It is living people](#) who worship him. So we are sure that their spirits are still alive!"

Matthew 22:33

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- teaching
- they were astonished

Translation Words - UST

- teach that
- they were amazed

ULT

³³ When the crowds heard this, [they were astonished](#) at his [teaching](#).

UST

³³ When the crowds of people heard Jesus [teach that](#), [they were amazed](#).

Matthew 22:34

Connecting Statement:

A Pharisee who was an expert in the law tries to trap Jesus by asking him a difficult question about the greatest commandment.

Translation Words - ULT

- Pharisees
- Sadducees
- they gathered themselves together

Translation Words - UST

- Pharisees
- Sadducees in such a way
- to respond to him, the Pharisees gathered

ULT

³⁴ But when the [Pharisees](#) heard that Jesus had silenced the [Sadducees](#), [they gathered themselves together](#).

UST

³⁴ But when the [Pharisees](#) heard that Jesus had answered the [Sadducees in such a way](#) that the Sadducees could not think of anything that they might say [to respond to him, the Pharisees gathered](#) together to plan what they would say to him. Then they approached him.

Matthew 22:35

a lawyer (ULT)

a man who was a lawyer (UST)

“an expert in the law.” This is a Pharisee who had special skill in understanding the law of Moses.

Translation Words - ULT

- [testing](#)
- [a lawyer](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [He wanted to debate](#)
- [a man who was a lawyer](#)

ULT

³⁵ One of them, [a lawyer](#), asked him a question, [testing](#) him—

UST

³⁵ One of them was [a man who was a lawyer](#), who had studied well the laws that God gave Moses. [He wanted to debate](#) Jesus. He asked him,

Matthew 22:36

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [the...commandment](#)
- [law](#)
- [Teacher](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [commandment](#)
- [laws that God gave Moses](#)
- [Teacher](#)

ULT

³⁶ "[Teacher](#), which is the greatest [commandment](#) in the [law](#)?"

UST

³⁶ "[Teacher](#), which [commandment](#) in the [laws that God gave Moses](#) is the most important?"

Matthew 22:37

General Information:

Jesus quotes a verse from Deuteronomy as the greatest commandment.

with all your heart, and with all your soul, and with all your mind (ULT)

as...with all your inner being...in all that you feel, and in all that you think (UST)

These three phrases are used together to mean “completely” or “earnestly.” Here “heart” and “soul” are metonyms for a person’s inner being. (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Doublet](#))

ULT

³⁷ Jesus said to him, “[Love the Lord](#) your [God](#) with all your [heart](#), and with all your [soul](#), and with all your [mind](#).’

UST

³⁷ Jesus quoted the scriptures as he replied, “[You must love the Lord](#) your [God](#) with all your [inner being](#). Show that you love him in all that you desire, in all that you [feel](#), and in all that you [think](#).’

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)
- [Love](#)
- [God](#)
- [heart](#)
- [soul](#)
- [mind](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the Lord](#)
- [You must love](#)
- [God](#)
- [inner being](#)
- [feel](#)
- [think](#)

Matthew 22:38

the great and first commandment (ULT)
the most important commandment in the laws that
God gave Moses (UST)

Here "great" and "first" mean the same thing. They emphasize that this is the most important commandment. (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [commandment](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [commandment](#)

ULT

³⁸ This is the great and first [commandment](#).

UST

³⁸ That is the most important [commandment](#) in the laws that God gave Moses.

Matthew 22:39

General Information:

Jesus quotes a verse from Leviticus as the second greatest commandment.

your neighbor (ULT) the people you come in contact with (UST)

Here “neighbor” means more than just those who live nearby. Jesus means a person must love all people.

Translation Words - ULT

- Love
- is like
- as
- neighbor

Translation Words - UST

- must love
- The next most important commandment that everyone must surely obey is
- as much as
- people you come in contact with

ULT

³⁹ And a second commandment [is like](#) it —‘[Love](#) your [neighbor as](#) yourself.’

UST

³⁹ [The next most important commandment that everyone must surely obey is](#): ‘You [must love](#) the [people you come in contact with as much as](#) you love yourself.’

Matthew 22:40

On these two commandments depend the whole law and the prophets (ULT)

These two commandments are the basis of every law that Moses wrote in the scriptures and also of all that the prophets wrote (UST)

Here the phrase “the whole law and the prophets” refers to all of scripture. Alternate translation: “Everything that Moses and the prophets wrote in the scriptures is based on these two commandments” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [two commandments](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [law](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [commandments](#)
- [prophets wrote](#)
- [law](#)

ULT

⁴⁰ On these [two commandments](#) depend the whole [law](#) and the [prophets](#).”

UST

⁴⁰ These two [commandments](#) are the basis of every [law](#) that Moses wrote in the scriptures and also of all that the [prophets wrote](#).”

Matthew 22:41

Connecting Statement:

Jesus asks the Pharisees a difficult question in order to stop their attempts to trap him.

Now (ULT)

While (UST)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Matthew starts to tell a new part of the story when Jesus asks the religious leaders a question.

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Pharisees
- while...were still gathered together

Translation Words - UST

- near Jesus, he
- Pharisees
- were still gathered together

ULT

⁴¹ Now while the Pharisees were still gathered together, Jesus asked them a question.

UST

⁴¹ While the Pharisees were still gathered together near Jesus, he asked them,

Matthew 22:42

son...the...The son of David (ULT)
descendant...the...descendant of King David (UST)

In both of these "son" means "descendant."

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Christ
- The son of David

Translation Words - UST

- descendant
- Messiah
- descendant of King David

ULT

⁴² He said, "What do you think about the [Christ](#)? Whose [son](#) is he?" They said to him, "[The son of David](#)."

UST

⁴² "What do you think about the [Messiah](#)? Whose [descendant](#) is he?" They said to him, "He is the [descendant of King David](#)."

Matthew 22:43

General Information:

Jesus quotes from the Psalms to show that the Christ is more than just “the son of David.”

How then does David in the Spirit call him Lord (ULT)

Jesus uses a question to make the religious leaders think deeply about the Psalm he is about to quote. Alternate translation: “Then, tell me why David in the Spirit calls him Lord” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

David in the Spirit (ULT)

King David’s descendant...when David...the Holy Spirit told him to say (UST)

“David, whom the Holy Spirit is inspiring.” This means the Holy Spirit is influencing what David says.

call...him (ULT)

should not have called...him (UST)

Here “him” refers to the Christ, who is also the descendant of David.

Translation Words - ULT

- [call](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [the Spirit](#)
- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [should not have called](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [the Holy Spirit told him to say](#)
- [King David’s descendant](#)

ULT

⁴³ Jesus said to them, “How then does [David](#) in [the Spirit call](#) him [Lord](#), saying,

UST

⁴³ Jesus said to them, “If the Messiah is [King David’s descendant](#), then David [should not have called](#) him ‘[Lord](#)’ when David was saying what [the Holy Spirit told him to say](#).

Matthew 22:44

The Lord said (ULT)

David wrote this in the scriptures about the Messiah:

'God said (UST)

Here "Lord" refers to God the Father.

to my Lord (ULT)

to my Lord (UST)

Here "Lord" refers to the Christ. Also, "my" refers to David. This means the Christ is superior to David.

Sit at my right hand (ULT)

Sit here beside me on my right, where I will greatly honor you (UST)

To sit at the "right hand of God" is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. Alternate translation: "Sit in the place of honor beside me" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

until I put your enemies under your footstool (ULT)

while I put your enemies under your feet (UST)

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "until I conquer your enemies" or "until I make your enemies bow down before you" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The Lord](#)
- [to...Lord](#)
- [right hand](#)
- [your footstool](#)
- [your enemies](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [David wrote this in the scriptures about the Messiah](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [right, where I will greatly honor you](#)
- [feet](#)
- [your enemies under](#)

ULT

⁴⁴ [The Lord](#) said to my [Lord](#), "Sit at my [right hand](#), until I put [your enemies](#) under [your footstool](#)!"?

UST

⁴⁴ [David wrote this in the scriptures about the Messiah](#): 'God said to my [Lord](#), "Sit here beside me on my [right](#), [where I will greatly honor you](#), while I put [your enemies under](#) your [feet](#)."

Matthew 22:45

General Information:

This is the end of the part of the story that began in [Matthew 19:1](#), that tells of Jesus ministering in Judea.

Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the account of the religious leaders trying to trap Jesus with several difficult questions.

If David then calls the Christ 'Lord,' how is he David's son (ULT)

So, since King David called the Messiah 'my Lord,' the Messiah cannot be just someone descended from David! He must be much greater than David (UST)

Jesus uses a question to make the religious leaders think deeply about what he is saying. Alternate translation: "David calls him 'Lord,' so the Christ has to be more than just a descendant of David." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

If David then calls the Christ 'Lord,' how is he David's son (ULT)

So, since King David called the Messiah 'my Lord,' the Messiah cannot be just someone descended from David! He must be much greater than David (UST)

David referred to Jesus as "Lord" because Jesus was not only a descendant of David, but he was also superior to him.

Translation Words - ULT

- [calls](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [son](#)
- [David](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [called](#)
- [my Lord](#)
- [someone descended](#)
- [King David](#)

ULT

⁴⁵ If [David](#) then [calls](#) the Christ '[Lord](#),' how is he David's [son](#)?"

UST

⁴⁵ So, since [King David](#) [called](#) the Messiah '[my Lord](#),' the Messiah cannot be just [someone descended](#) from David! He must be much greater than David!"

Matthew 22:46

to answer him a word (ULT)

one word to say to him in response. After that (UST)

Here “word” refers to what people say. Alternate translation: “to answer him anything” or “to answer him” (See: [Metonymy](#))

to question him any longer (ULT)

ever...to ask him another question to try to trap him (UST)

It is implied that no one asked him the kind of questions that were intended to make him say something wrong so the religious leaders could arrest him. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [day on](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [ever...to ask him another question to try to trap him](#)

ULT

⁴⁶ No one was able to answer him a word, and from that [day on](#), no one dared to question him any longer.

UST

⁴⁶ No one who heard what Jesus said was able to think of even one word to say to him in response. After that, no one else [ever](#) dared [to ask him another question to try to trap him](#).

Matthew 23

Matthew 23 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Hypocrites

Jesus calls the Pharisees hypocrites many times (Matthew 23:13) and carefully tells what he means by doing that. The Pharisees made rules that no one could actually obey, and then they persuaded the ordinary people that they were guilty because they could not obey the rules. Also, the Pharisees obeyed their own rules instead of obeying God's original commands in the law of Moses.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Name calling

In most cultures, it is wrong to insult people. The Pharisees took many of the words in this chapter as insults. Jesus called them "hypocrites," "blind guides," "fools," and "serpents" ([Matthew 23:16-17](#)). Jesus uses these words say that God would surely punish them because they were doing wrong.

Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. Jesus uses a paradox when he says, "He who is greatest among you will be your servant" ([Matthew 23:11-12](#)).

Matthew 23:1

General Information:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story that runs through [Matthew 25:46](#), where Jesus teaches about salvation and the final judgment. Here he begins to warn the people about the scribes and Pharisees.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [to...disciples](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [disciples](#)

ULT

¹ Then [Jesus](#) spoke to the crowds and to his [disciples](#).

UST

¹ Then [Jesus](#) said to the crowd and to his [disciples](#),

Matthew 23:2

sit in Moses' seat (ULT)
have made themselves the ones who interpret the laws
that God had given Moses...for (UST)

Here "seat" represents the authority to rule and make judgments.
 Alternate translation: "have authority as Moses had" or "have authority to say what the law of Moses means" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [scribes](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [Moses](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [men who teach our Jewish laws](#)
- [The Pharisees](#)
- [laws that God had given Moses](#)

ULT

² He said, "The [scribes](#) and the [Pharisees](#) sit in [Moses'](#) seat.

UST

² "[The Pharisees](#) and the [men who teach our Jewish laws](#) have made themselves the ones who interpret the [laws that God had given Moses](#) for the people of Israel.

Matthew 23:3

**Therefore whatever...do and observe these things (ULT)
Consequently, you should...whatever they...do...that
you must do (UST)**

“all the things...do them and observe them” or “everything...do it and observe it”

Translation Words - ULT

- [works](#)
- [observe these things](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [do what...do](#)
- [that you must do](#)

ULT

³ Therefore whatever they command you to do, do and [observe these things](#). But do not do according to their [works](#), for they say things, but do not do them.

UST

³ Consequently, you should do whatever they tell you [that you must do](#). But do not [do what](#) they [do](#), because they themselves do not do those things.

Matthew 23:4

They tie up loads that are heavy and difficult to carry, and they put them on people's shoulders. But they themselves are not willing to lift their finger to move them (ULT)

They require you to obey many rules that are difficult to obey. But they themselves do not help anyone obey those rules. It is as if they were tying up very heavy loads and putting them on your shoulders for you to carry. But they will not even move one finger to help you carry them (UST)

Here "bind heavy burdens...put them on people's shoulders" is a metaphor for the religious leaders making many difficult rules and making the people obey them. And "will not move a finger" is an idiom that means the religious leaders will not help the people. Alternate translation: "they make you obey many rules that are difficult to follow. But they do nothing at all to help the people follow the rules" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [They tie up](#)
- [loads](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [they were tying up](#)
- [loads](#)

ULT

⁴ [They tie up loads](#) that are heavy and difficult to carry, and they put them on people's shoulders. But they themselves are not willing to lift their finger to move them.

UST

⁴ They require you to obey many rules that are difficult to obey. But they themselves do not help anyone obey those rules. It is as if [they were tying up](#) very heavy [loads](#) and putting them on your shoulders for you to carry. But they will not even move one finger to help you carry them.

Matthew 23:5

They do all their deeds to be seen by people (ULT)
Whatever they do, they do those things so that other people will see (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "They do all their deeds so that people can see what they do" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

For they make their phylacteries wide, and they enlarge the edges of their garments (ULT)
them and admire them. For example, they make extra wide the tiny boxes containing portions of scripture that they wear on their arms. They enlarge the tassels on their robes to make others think that they honor God (UST)

Both of these are things the Pharisees do to appear as if they honor God more than other people. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

phylacteries (ULT)
tiny boxes containing portions of scripture (UST)

small leather boxes containing paper with scripture written on it

deeds...they enlarge...edges of their garments (ULT)
do...They enlarge...tassels on their robes to make others think that they honor God (UST)

The Pharisees made the tassels on the bottom of their robes especially long to show their devotion to God.

Translation Words - ULT

- [deeds](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [do](#)

ULT

⁵ They do all their [deeds](#) to be seen by people. For they make their phylacteries wide, and they enlarge the edges of their garments.

UST

⁵ Whatever they [do](#), they do those things so that other people will see them and admire them. For example, they make extra wide the tiny boxes containing portions of scripture that they wear on their arms. They enlarge the tassels on their robes to make others think that they honor God.

Matthew 23:6

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to the crowds and disciples about the Pharisees.

the chief places...the chief seats (ULT)
the seats where the most important people sit...they want to sit in the same kind of places (UST)

Both of these are the places where the most important people sit.

Translation Words - ULT

- [synagogues](#)
- [They love](#)
- [feasts](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [synagogues](#)
- [They want](#)
- [dinners they sit](#)

ULT

⁶ [They love](#) the chief places at [feasts](#) and the chief seats in the [synagogues](#),

UST

⁶ [They want](#) other people to honor them. For example, at [dinners they sit](#) in the seats where the most important people sit. In the [synagogues](#) they want to sit in the same kind of places.

Matthew 23:7

the marketplaces (ULT)

the markets (UST)

large, open-air areas where people buy and sell items

to be called 'Rabbi' by people (ULT)

for people to call them 'Teacher' (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for people to call them 'Rabbi.'" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to be called](#)
- [Rabbi](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to call](#)
- [them 'Teacher'](#)

ULT

⁷ and special greetings in the marketplaces, and [to be called 'Rabbi'](#) by people.

UST

⁷ They love for people to greet them with great honor in the markets, and for people [to call them 'Teacher.'](#)

Matthew 23:8

But you must not be called (ULT)

But you, my disciples, should not allow people to call (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "But you must not let anyone call you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

you (ULT)

you (UST)

All occurrences of "you" are plural and refer to all of Jesus' followers. (See: [Forms of You](#))

you...are brothers (ULT)

you...are...brothers (UST)

Here "brothers" means "fellow believers."

Translation Words - ULT

- [must...be called](#)
- [teacher](#)
- [Rabbi](#)
- [brothers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [call](#)
- [teacher](#)
- [you 'Teacher,' as they do other Jewish teachers. I am](#)
- [brothers](#)

ULT

⁸ But you [must](#) not [be called 'Rabbi,'](#) for only one is your [teacher](#), and all you are [brothers](#).

UST

⁸ But you, my disciples, should not allow people to [call you 'Teacher,' as they do other Jewish teachers. I am](#) the only one who is really your [teacher](#). This means that you are all equal to each other, like [brothers](#) and sisters.

Matthew 23:9

do not call any of you on the earth 'father' (ULT)
Do not honor anyone on earth by addressing him...
Father...your (UST)

Jesus is using hyperbole to tell his hearers that they must not allow even the most important people to be more important to them than God is. Alternate translation: "do not call any man on earth your father" or "do not say that any man on earth is your father" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

for you have only one Father (ULT)
because God...Father...is your only true father (UST)

"Father" here is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [who is in heaven](#)
- [call](#)
- [Father](#)
- [father](#)
- [earth](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [in heaven](#)
- [by addressing him](#)
- [Father](#)
- [Father](#)
- [earth](#)

ULT

⁹ And do not [call](#) any of you on the [earth](#) 'father,' for you have only one [Father](#), [who is in heaven](#).

UST

⁹ Do not honor anyone on [earth](#) [by addressing him](#) as 'Father,' because God, your [Father in heaven](#), is your only true father.

Matthew 23:10

Do not be called (ULT)

Do not allow people to call you (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Also, do not let anyone call you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

for your one teacher is the Christ (ULT)

because the Messiah is your only teacher (UST)

When Jesus said "the Christ," he was speaking about himself in the third person. Alternate translation: "I, the Christ, am your only teacher" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [be called](#)
- [teacher](#)
- [teacher](#)
- [Christ](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Do...allow people to call you](#)
- [teacher](#)
- [teacher](#)
- [Messiah](#)

ULT

¹⁰ Do not [be called](#) '[teacher](#),' for your one [teacher](#) is the [Christ](#).

UST

¹⁰ Do not [allow people to call you](#) '[teacher](#),' because the [Messiah](#) is your only [teacher](#).

Matthew 23:11

But he who is greatest...But he who is greatest...among you (ULT)

Instead...everyone among you who wants God to consider them as important (UST)

“the person who is most important among you”

among you (ULT)

among you (UST)

Here “you” is plural and refers to Jesus’ followers. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [servant](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [must serve others as servants do](#)

ULT

¹¹ But he who is greatest among you will be your [servant](#).

UST

¹¹ Instead, everyone among you who wants God to consider them as important [must serve others as servants do](#).

Matthew 23:12

exalts himself (ULT)

try to make themselves important (UST)

“makes himself important”

will be humbled (ULT)

God will humble (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God will humble” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

will be exalted (ULT)

God will make them truly important (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God will make important” or “God will honor” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- will be humbled
- humbles
- exalts
- will be exalted

Translation Words - UST

- God will humble
- humble
- try to make themselves
- God will make them truly important

ULT

¹² Whoever [exalts](#) himself [will be humbled](#), and whoever [humbles](#) himself [will be exalted](#).

UST

¹² [God will humble](#) those who [try to make themselves](#) important. Those who [humble](#) themselves, [God will make them truly important](#).”

Matthew 23:13

General Information:

Jesus speaks of the kingdom of heaven as if it were a house, the door into which the Pharisees have shut from the outside so that neither they nor anyone else can enter the house. If you do not keep the metaphor of the house, be sure to change all instances of “shut” and “enter.” Also, since the words “kingdom of heaven,” which refer to God, who lives in heaven, occur only in Matthew, try to use your language’s word for “heaven” in your translation. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to rebuke the religious leaders because of their hypocrisy.

But woe to you (ULT)

“How terrible it will be for you!” See how you translated this in [Matthew 11:21](#).

You shut...the kingdom of heaven against people. For you do not enter it yourselves, and neither do you allow those about to enter to enter (ULT)

Jesus is speaking of the kingdom of heaven, which is God ruling over his people, as if it were a house, the door into which the Pharisees have shut from the outside so that neither they nor anyone else can enter the house. The phrase “kingdom of heaven” is found only in the book of Matthew. If possible, use your language’s word for “heaven” in your translation. Alternate translation: “You make it impossible for people to enter the kingdom of heaven...you do not enter it...neither do you allow those about to enter to do so” or “You prevent people from accepting God, who lives in heaven, as king...you do not accept him as king...and you make it impossible for those about to accept him as king to do so” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of heaven
- scribes
- woe
- hypocrites
- kingdom of heaven
- Pharisees
- kingdom

Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- scribe
- woe
- hypocrite, hypocrisy
- kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven
- Pharisee
- kingdom

ULT

13 But [woe](#) to you, [scribes](#) and [Pharisees](#), [hypocrites](#)! You shut the [kingdom of heaven](#) against people. For you do not enter it yourselves, and neither do you allow those about to enter to enter.

UST

13 “You teachers of the law and you Pharisees, you are hypocrites! How terribly God will punish you, because you refuse to come under the rule of heaven and also keep others out. You yourselves do not want to go in, and you keep others from entering, too.”

Matthew 23:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

14[1] [Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! For you devour widows' houses, while you make a show of long prayers.] You will therefore receive greater condemnation.

UST

14[1] [Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! For you devour widows' houses, while you make a show of long prayers.] You will therefore receive greater condemnation.

Matthew 23:15

you go over the sea and the dry land (ULT)
to get even one person to believe what you teach. You
even travel across seas and lands (UST)

This is an idiom that means they go to distant places. Alternate translation: "you travel great distances" (See: [Idiom](#))

to make one convert (ULT)
to distant places in order to do...one person believes
what you teach (UST)

"to make one person accept your religion"

a son of hell (ULT)
deserve to go to hell (UST)

Here "son of" is an idiom that means "one belonging to." Alternate translation: "person who belongs in hell" or "person who should go to hell" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [scribes](#)
- [Woe](#)
- [a son](#)
- [of hell](#)
- [hypocrites](#)
- [Pharisees](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [teachers of the law](#)
- [How terribly God will punish you! You work hard](#)
- [deserve to go to](#)
- [hell](#)
- [are hypocrites, you](#)
- [you Pharisees](#)

ULT

¹⁵ [Woe](#) to you, [scribes](#) and [Pharisees](#), [hypocrites](#)! For you go over the sea and the dry land to make one convert, and when he has become one, you make him twice as much [a son of hell](#) as you.

UST

¹⁵ "You [are hypocrites, you teachers of the law](#) and [you Pharisees! How terribly God will punish you! You work hard](#) to get even one person to believe what you teach. You even travel across seas and lands to distant places in order to do that. And as a result, when one person believes what you teach, you make that person [deserve to go to hell](#) much more than you yourselves do."

Matthew 23:16

you blind guides (ULT)

blind people who try to lead others. You (UST)

The Jewish leaders were spiritually blind. Although they thought of themselves as teachers, they were unable to understand God's truth. See how you translated "blind guides" in [Matthew 15:14](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

by the temple, it is nothing (ULT)

the temple to confirm that he will do something as if the temple...does not do what he promised, it means nothing (UST)

"by the temple does not have to keep his oath"

he is bound to his oath (ULT)

then he must do it (UST)

"is tied to his oath." The phrase "bound to his oath" is a metaphor for being required to do what one has said he would do in an oath. Alternate translation: "must do what he promised to do" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Woe](#)
- [he is bound to his oath](#)
- [temple](#)
- [temple](#)
- [gold](#)
- [swears](#)
- [swears](#) (2)

Translation Words - UST

- [how terribly God will punish you! You are like](#)
- [then he must do it](#)
- [temple](#)
- [temple to confirm that he will do something](#)
- [gold](#)
- [asks](#)
- [he asks](#) (2)

ULT

¹⁶ [Woe](#) to you, you blind guides, you who say, 'Whoever [swears](#) by the [temple](#), it is nothing. But whoever [swears](#) by the [gold](#) of the [temple](#), [he is bound to his oath](#).'

UST

¹⁶ "You Jewish leaders, [how terribly God will punish you! You are like](#) blind people who try to lead others. You say, 'If someone [asks](#) the [temple](#) to confirm that he will do something as if the temple were a person, then if he does not do what he promised, it means nothing. But if [he asks](#) the [gold](#) in the [temple to confirm that he will do something, then he must do it](#).'

Matthew 23:17

You fools and blind men (ULT)

You are fools, and you are like people who are blind (UST)

The Jewish leaders were spiritually blind. Although they thought of themselves as teachers, they were unable to understand God's truth. (See: [Metaphor](#))

For which is greater, the gold or the temple that makes the gold holy (ULT)

The gold that is in the temple is important, but the temple is even more important, because it is the Temple that the gold is in that sets the gold apart for a special use for God (UST)

Jesus uses this question to rebuke the Pharisees because they treated the gold as if it were more important than the temple. Alternate translation: "The temple that has dedicated the gold to God is more important than the gold!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

the temple that makes the gold holy

"the temple that makes the gold belong to God alone"

Translation Words - ULT

- [You fools](#)
- [makes...holy](#)
- [temple](#)
- [gold](#)
- [gold](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [You are fools](#)
- [for a special use for God](#)
- [it is...that the gold is in that sets the...apart](#)
- [gold that is in the temple is important, but the temple](#)
- [gold](#)

ULT

¹⁷ [You fools](#) and blind men! For which is greater, the [gold](#) or the [temple](#) that [makes](#) the [gold holy](#)?

UST

¹⁷ [You are fools](#), and you are like people who are blind! The [gold that is in the temple is important, but the temple](#) is even more important, because [it is](#) the Temple [that the gold is in that sets the gold apart for a special use for God..](#)

Matthew 23:18

And (ULT)

Also you say (UST)

The understood information can be made clear. Alternate translation: "And you also say" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

it is nothing (ULT)

then if he does not do what he promised, it means nothing (UST)

"he does not have to do what he has sworn to do" or "he does not have to keep his oath"

the...gift (ULT)

the...gift (UST)

This is an animal or grain that a person would bring to God by putting it on God's altar.

he is bound to his oath (ULT)

then he must do it (UST)

"is tied to his oath." Being required to do what one has said he would do in an oath is spoken of as if he is tied to the oath. Alternate translation: "must do what he promised to do" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- gift
- he is bound to his oath
- swears
- swears (2)

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- gift
- then he must do it
- asks...to confirm that he will do something as if the altar were a person
- asks...to confirm that he will do something (2)

ULT

¹⁸ And, 'Whoever [swears](#) by the [altar](#), it is nothing. But whoever [swears](#) by the [gift](#) that is on it, [he is bound to his oath](#).'

UST

¹⁸ Also you say, 'If someone [asks](#) the [altar to confirm that he will do something as if the altar were a person](#), then if he does not do what he promised, it means nothing. But if he [asks](#) the [gift](#) that he has placed on the altar [to confirm that he will do something, then he must do it](#).'

Matthew 23:19

blind men (ULT)

You are like people who are blind (UST)

The Jewish leaders were spiritually blind. Although they thought of themselves as teachers, they were unable to understand God's truth. (See: [Metaphor](#))

For which is greater, the gift or the altar that makes the gift holy (ULT)

The gift that you put on the altar is important, but the altar is even more important because it is the altar that makes the gift only for God (UST)

Jesus uses this question to rebuke the Pharisees for treating the gift as if it were more important than the altar. Alternate translation: "The altar that makes the gift holy is greater than the gift!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

the altar that makes the gift holy

"the altar that makes the gift special to God"

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- gift
- gift (2)
- You fools
- that makes...holy

Translation Words - UST

- but the altar is even more important...it is the altar
- gift that you put on...is
- gift (2)
- You are like people who are blind
- that makes...only for God

ULT

¹⁹ [You fools](#) and blind men! For which is greater, the [gift](#) or the [altar that makes the gift holy](#)?

UST

¹⁹ [You are like people who are blind](#). The [gift that you put on](#) the altar [is](#) important, [but the altar is even more important](#) because [it is the altar that makes the gift only for God](#).

Matthew 23:20

by...everything that is on it (ULT)
the...everything...on the altar to do the same thing (UST)

“by all the gifts that people have placed on it”

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- Therefore, he who swears
- swears

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- promise to do something and then
- ask...to confirm that they will do

ULT

²⁰ [Therefore, he who swears](#) by the [altar swears](#) by it and by everything that is on it.

UST

²⁰ So those who [promise to do something and then ask](#) the [altar to confirm that they will do](#) it, they are also asking everything on the altar to do the same thing.

Matthew 23:21

the...the one who lives...in it (ULT)

the temple...belongs...the same thing (UST)

God the Father

Translation Words - ULT

- [temple](#)
- [The one who swears](#)
- [swears](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the temple](#)
- [promise to do something and then ask...to confirm that they will do it](#)
- [they are...asking that...will confirm](#)

ULT

²¹ [The one who swears](#) by the [temple](#) [swears](#) by it and by the one who lives in it.

UST

²¹ Yes, and those who [promise to do something and then ask the temple to confirm that they will do it](#), [they are](#) also [asking that](#) God, to whom the temple belongs, [will confirm](#) the same thing.

Matthew 23:22

heaven...him who sits...on it (ULT)
and then...sits on that throne (UST)

God the Father

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [of God](#)
- [throne](#)
- [the one who swears](#)
- [swears](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#)
- [of God](#)
- [throne...to confirm that they will do it](#)
- [promise to do something](#)
- [ask...to confirm that they will do it](#)

ULT

²² And [the one who swears](#) by [heaven swears](#) by the [throne of God](#) and by him who sits on it.

UST

²² And those who [promise to do something](#) and then [ask heaven to confirm that they will do it](#), they are asking the [throne of God to confirm that they will do it](#), and they are also asking God, who sits on that throne, to confirm the same thing."

Matthew 23:23

Woe to you...hypocrites (ULT)

You...how terribly God will punish you...You are hypocrites (UST)

"How terrible it will be for you...hypocrites!" See how you translated this in [Matthew 11:21](#).

mint and dill and cumin (ULT)

of the herbs you produce, such as mint, dill, and cummin (UST)

These are various leaves and seeds people used to make food taste good. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

you have left undone (ULT)

you do not obey (UST)

"you have not obeyed"

the weightier matters (ULT)

that are more important (UST)

"the more important matters"

But these you ought to have done (ULT)

but you should also obey these (UST)

"You ought to have obeyed these more important laws"

and not to have left the other undone (ULT)

other more important laws (UST)

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "while also obeying the less important laws" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [scribes](#)
- [Woe](#)
- [law](#)
- [hypocrites](#)
- [mercy](#)
- [faith](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [justice](#)
- [you tithe](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [teachers of the law](#)

ULT

²³ [Woe](#) to you, [scribes](#) and [Pharisees](#), [hypocrites](#)! For [you tithe](#) mint and dill and cumin, but you have left undone the weightier matters of the [law](#)—[justice](#) and [mercy](#) and [faith](#). But these you ought to have done and not to have left the other undone.

UST

²³ "You [teachers of the law](#) and [you Pharisees](#), [how terribly God will punish you!](#) [You are hypocrites](#) because, [even though you give to God a tenth](#) of the herbs you produce, such as mint, dill, and cummin, you do not obey [God's laws](#) that are more important. For example, you do not [act justly toward others, you do not act mercifully toward people](#), and you take things away from others using force. It is good to give a tenth of your herbs to God, [but you should also obey these](#) other more important laws.

- how terribly God will punish you
- God's laws
- You are hypocrites
- not act mercifully toward people
- but you should also obey these
- you Pharisees
- act justly toward others, you do
- even though you give to God a tenth

Matthew 23:24

You blind guides (ULT)

You leaders are like blind people who are trying to lead others (UST)

Jesus uses this metaphor to describe the Pharisees. Jesus means that the Pharisees do not understand God's commands or how to please him. Therefore, they cannot teach others how to please God. See how you translated this metaphor in [Matthew 15:14](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

you who strain out a gnat but swallow a camel (ULT)

You are careful not to offend God by swallowing even the smallest insect when you drink water, but you act as badly as if you were swallowing a camel (UST)

Being careful to follow the less important laws and ignoring the more important laws is as foolish as being careful not to swallow the smallest unclean animal but eating the meat of the largest unclean animal. Alternate translation: "you are as foolish as a person who strains out a gnat that falls into his drink but swallows a camel" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

you who strain out a gnat (ULT)

You are careful not to offend God by swallowing even the smallest insect when you drink water (UST)

This means to pour a liquid through a cloth to remove a gnat from a drink.

gnat (ULT)

smallest insect when you drink water (UST)

a small flying insect

Translation Words - ULT

- [but...a camel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [a camel](#)

ULT

24 You blind guides, you who strain out a gnat [but](#) swallow [a camel](#)!

UST

24 You leaders are like blind people who are trying to lead others. You are careful not to offend God by swallowing even the smallest insect when you drink water, but you act as badly as if you were swallowing [a camel](#)!

Matthew 23:25

Woe to you...hypocrites (ULT)

how terribly God will punish you! You...You hypocrites, you (UST)

"How terrible it will be for you...hypocrites!" See how you translated this in [Matthew 11:21](#).

For you clean the outside of the cup and of the plate, but inside they are full of greed and self-indulgence (ULT)

make yourselves appear like good people to others. You try to make people think you are righteous, but in fact you sin against them by your greed and taking what belongs to others to delight your own pleasures. You are like dishes that are clean on the outside but are still dirty on the inside (UST)

This is a metaphor that means the scribes and Pharisees appear pure on the outside to others, but on the inside they are wicked. (See: [Metaphor](#))

and...they are full of greed...self-indulgence (ULT)

and...by your greed and taking what belongs to others...to delight your own pleasures. You are like (UST)

"they want what others have, and they act in the interest of the self"

Translation Words - ULT

- [scribes](#)
- [Woe](#)
- [hypocrites](#)
- [you clean](#)
- [Pharisees](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [teachers of the law](#)
- [how terribly God will punish](#)
- [You hypocrites, you](#)
- [are clean on](#)
- [you Pharisees](#)

ULT

²⁵ [Woe](#) to you, [scribes](#) and [Pharisees, hypocrites](#)! For [you clean](#) the outside of the cup and of the plate, but inside they are full of greed and self-indulgence.

UST

²⁵ "[You hypocrites, you teachers of the law](#) and [you Pharisees, how terribly God will punish](#) you! You make yourselves appear like good people to others. You try to make people think you are righteous, but in fact you sin against them by your greed and taking what belongs to others to delight your own pleasures. You are like dishes that [are clean on](#) the outside but are still dirty on the inside.

Matthew 23:26

You blind Pharisee (ULT)

You blind Pharisees (UST)

The Pharisees were spiritually blind. Although they thought of themselves as teachers, they were unable to understand God's truth. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Clean first the inside of the cup and of the plate, so that the outside...may become...also...clean (ULT)
First you must stop doing evil things...to do what is righteous and will be like a dish that is...both outside and inside...clean (UST)

This is a metaphor that means that if they would become pure in their inner being, then the result is that they would be pure on the outside as well. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Clean](#)
- [clean](#)
- [You...Pharisee](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [First you must stop doing evil things](#)
- [clean](#)
- [Pharisees](#)

ULT

²⁶ You blind [Pharisee](#)! [Clean](#) first the inside of the cup and of the plate, so that the outside of it may become [clean](#) also.

UST

²⁶ You blind [Pharisees](#)! [First you must stop doing evil things](#) like stealing from others. Then you will be able to do what is righteous and will be like a dish that is [clean](#) both outside and inside."

Matthew 23:27

you are like whitewashed tombs...unclean (ULT)

You are like...buildings over people's graves, buildings that are painted white...filth (UST)

This is a simile that means the scribes and Pharisees may appear to be pure on the outside, but they are wicked on the inside. (See: [Simile](#))

whitewashed tombs (ULT)

buildings over people's graves, buildings that are painted white (UST)

"tombs that someone has painted white." The Jews would paint tombs white so that people would easily see them and avoid touching them. Touching a tomb would make a person ceremonially unclean. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [scribes](#)
- [Woe](#)
- [hypocrites](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [dead men's](#)
- [tombs](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [men who teach the laws](#)
- [you...how terribly God will punish](#)
- [hypocrites](#)
- [you Pharisees...you](#)
- [dead people's](#)
- [buildings over people's graves](#)

ULT

²⁷ [Woe](#) to you, [scribes](#) and [Pharisees](#), [hypocrites](#)! For you are like whitewashed [tombs](#), which on the outside look beautiful, but on the inside are full of [dead men's](#) bones and everything unclean.

UST

²⁷ "You [hypocrites](#), you [men who teach the laws](#) and [you Pharisees](#), [how terribly God will punish you](#)! You are like [buildings over people's graves](#), buildings that are painted white so that people can see them and avoid touching them. The outside of those tombs are beautiful, but inside they are full of [dead people's](#) bones and filth.

Matthew 23:28

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [righteous](#)
- [of hypocrisy](#)
- [lawlessness](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [are righteous](#)
- [hypocrites](#)
- [you disobey God's commands](#)

ULT

²⁸ In the same way, you also outwardly appear [righteous](#) to men, but on the inside you are full [of hypocrisy](#) and [lawlessness](#).

UST

²⁸ You are like those tombs. When people look at you, they think that you [are righteous](#), but in your inner beings you are [hypocrites](#), because [you disobey God's commands](#)."

Matthew 23:29

of the righteous (ULT)

the...righteous people (UST)

This nominal adjective can be stated as an adjective. Alternate translation: "of the righteous people" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [scribes](#)
- [righteous](#)
- [Woe](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [hypocrites](#)
- [Pharisees](#)
- [tombs](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [men who teach the Jewish laws](#)
- [righteous people](#)
- [How terribly God will punish you](#)
- [prophets whom others killed long ago](#)
- [are hypocrites](#)
- [you Pharisees](#)
- [tombs](#)

ULT

²⁹ [Woe](#) to you, [scribes](#) and [Pharisees](#), [hypocrites](#)! For you build the [tombs](#) of the [prophets](#) and decorate the tombs of the [righteous](#).

UST

²⁹ "You [men who teach the Jewish laws](#) and [you Pharisees are hypocrites](#)! [How terribly God will punish you](#)! You rebuild the [tombs](#) of the [prophets whom others killed long ago](#). You decorate the monuments that honor [righteous people](#).

Matthew 23:30

in the days of our fathers (ULT)
when our ancestors lived (UST)

“during the time of our forefathers”

we had lived...we would not have been participants with them (ULT)

we had lived...we would not have helped those who (UST)

“we would not have joined with them”

in shedding the blood of the (ULT)
killed the (UST)

Here “blood” refers to life. To shed blood means to kill. Alternate translation: “killing” or “murdering” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [prophets](#)
- [blood](#)
- [of...fathers](#)
- [days](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [prophets](#)
- [killed](#)
- [ancestors](#)
- [when...lived](#)

ULT

³⁰ You say, ‘If we had lived in the [days](#) of our [fathers](#), we would not have been participants with them in shedding the [blood](#) of the [prophets](#).’

UST

³⁰ You say, ‘If we had lived [when](#) our [ancestors lived](#), we would not have helped those who [killed](#) the [prophets](#).’

Matthew 23:31

you are sons (ULT)

you are...descendants (UST)

Here “sons” means “descendants.”

Translation Words - ULT

- [sons](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [you testify](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [descendants](#)
- [them](#)
- [admit](#)

ULT

³¹ Therefore [you testify](#) against yourselves that you are [sons](#) of those who killed the [prophets](#).

UST

³¹ In this way you [admit](#) that you are the [descendants](#) of those murderers; so, you are like [them](#)!

Matthew 23:32

**You also fill up the measure of your fathers (ULT)
You are as ready to murder people as your ancestors
were (UST)**

Jesus uses this as a metaphor meaning the Pharisees will complete the wicked behavior that their forefathers started when they killed the prophets. Alternate translation: "You also finish the sins your ancestors began" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of...fathers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [ancestors were](#)

ULT

³² You also fill up the measure of your [fathers](#).

UST

³² You are as ready to murder people as your [ancestors were](#)!

Matthew 23:33

You serpents, you offspring of vipers (ULT)

You people are so wicked! You are as dangerous as poisonous snakes (UST)

Serpents are snakes, and vipers are poisonous snakes. They are dangerous and often symbols of evil. Alternate translation: “You are as evil as dangerous and poisonous snakes” (See: [Doublet](#) and [Metaphor](#))

you offspring of vipers (ULT)

You people are so wicked (UST)

Here “offspring” means “having the characteristic of.” See how you translated a similar phrase in [Matthew 3:7](#).

how will you escape from the judgment of hell (ULT)

You foolishly think that you will escape from God punishing you in hell (UST)

Jesus uses this question as a rebuke. Alternate translation: “there is no way for you to escape the judgment of hell!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [hell](#)
- [you offspring](#)
- [judgment](#)
- [You serpents](#)
- [of vipers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [in hell](#)
- [You people are so wicked](#)
- [God punishing you](#)
- [You are as dangerous as poisonous snakes](#)
- [You people are so wicked](#)

ULT

³³ [You serpents, you offspring of vipers,](#)
how will you escape from the [judgment](#)
of [hell](#)?

UST

³³ [You people are so wicked! You are as](#)
[dangerous as poisonous snakes!](#) You
foolishly think that you will escape from
[God punishing you in hell!](#)

Matthew 23:34

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to rebuke the religious leaders because of their hypocrisy.

I am sending to you prophets and wise men and scribes

Sometimes the present tense is used to show that someone will do something very soon. Alternate translation: "I will send prophets, wise men, and scribes to you"

Translation Words - ULT

- [scribes](#)
- [crucify](#)
- [synagogues](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [wise men](#)
- [drive them out](#)
- [am sending](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [teachers](#)
- [by nailing them to crosses](#)
- [places where...worship](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [wise men](#)
- [you will chase them](#)
- [will send](#)

ULT

³⁴ Therefore, see, I [am sending](#) to you [prophets](#) and [wise men](#) and [scribes](#). Some of them you will kill and [crucify](#), and some of them you will whip in your [synagogues](#) and [drive them out](#) from city to city.

UST

³⁴ Take note that this is why I [will send](#) [prophets](#), [wise men](#), and [teachers](#). You will kill some of them [by nailing them to crosses](#), and you will kill some in other ways. You will whip some of them in the [places where](#) you [worship](#) and [you will chase them](#) from city to city.

Matthew 23:35

upon you will come all the righteous blood that has been shed on the earth (ULT)

God will consider that you and your ancestors are guilty for killing all the righteous people who ever lived on earth, including (UST)

The phrase “upon you will come” is an idiom that means to receive punishment. To shed blood is a metonym meaning to kill people, so “righteous blood that has been shed on the earth” represents righteous people who have been killed. Alternate translation: “God will punish you for the murders of all the righteous people” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#))

from the blood...to the blood (ULT)
killing...righteous people who ever lived on earth, including...who was a righteous man, and...in the holy place (UST)

Here the word “blood” represents a person being killed. Alternate translation: “from the murder...to the murder” (See: [Metonymy](#))

of...Abel...of Zechariah (ULT)
Adam’s son Abel...Zechariah (UST)

Abel was the first righteous victim of murder, and Zechariah, who was murdered by Jews in the temple, was probably thought to be the last. These two men represent all the righteous people who have been murdered. (See: [Merism](#))

of Zechariah (ULT)
Zechariah (UST)

This Zechariah was not the father of John the Baptist.

whom you killed (ULT)
whom your ancestors killed (UST)

Jesus does not mean the people to whom he is speaking actually killed Zechariah. He means their ancestors did.

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- righteous
- righteous
- son
- the...blood
- blood
- blood (2)
- sanctuary
- of...Abel
- earth

ULT

³⁵ The result is that upon you will come all the [righteous blood](#) that has been shed on the [earth](#), from the [blood](#) of [righteous Abel](#), to the [blood](#) of Zechariah [son](#) of Barachiah, whom you killed between the [sanctuary](#) and the [altar](#).

UST

³⁵ So God will consider that you and your ancestors are guilty for [killing](#) all the [righteous people who ever lived on earth, including Adam’s son Abel, who was a righteous man, and](#) Zechariah, [the son of](#) Barachiah, whom your ancestors killed [in the holy place](#) between the [temple](#) and the [altar. You also killed all the prophets who lived between the times that those two men lived](#).

Translation Words - UST

- altar. You also killed all the prophets who lived between the times that those two men lived
- killing...righteous people who ever lived on earth, including
- who was a righteous man, and
- the son of
- killing...righteous people who ever lived on earth, including
- killing...righteous people who ever lived on earth, including
- in the holy place (2)
- temple
- Adam's son Abel
- killing...righteous people who ever lived on earth, including

Matthew 23:36

Truly I say to you (ULT)

Think about this: You people who have observed my ministry (UST)

"I tell you the truth." This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

Translation Words - ULT

- Truly
- generation

Translation Words - UST

- Think about this: You people who have observed my ministry
- you

ULT

³⁶ Truly I say to you, all these things will come upon this [generation](#).

UST

³⁶ [Think about this: You people who have observed my ministry](#), it is [you](#) whom God will punish for killing all those prophets!"

Matthew 23:37

Connecting Statement:

Jesus mourns over the people of Jerusalem because they reject every messenger that God sends to them.

Jerusalem, Jerusalem (ULT)

O people of Jerusalem (UST)

Jesus speaks to the people of Jerusalem as though they were the city itself. (See: [Apostrophe](#) and [Metonymy](#))

those who are sent to you (ULT)

you who...others whom God had sent to you (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "those whom God sends to you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

your children (ULT)

to protect you (UST)

Jesus is speaking to Jerusalem as if it is a woman and the people are her children. Alternate translation: "your people" or "your inhabitants" (See: [Metaphor](#))

just as a hen gathers her chicks under her wings

This is a simile that emphasizes Jesus' love for the people and how he wanted to take care of them. (See: [Simile](#))

a hen (ULT)

a hen (UST)

a female chicken. You can translate with any bird that protects her children under her wing. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- prophets
- stone
- children
- Jerusalem
- Jerusalem
- those who are sent

Translation Words - UST

- prophets who lived long ago
- killed with stones
- protect
- O people of Jerusalem
- O people of Jerusalem
- others whom God had sent

ULT

³⁷ [Jerusalem, Jerusalem](#), you who kill the [prophets](#) and [stone those who are sent](#) to you! How often did I desire to gather your [children](#) together, just as a hen gathers her chicks under her wings, but you were not willing!

UST

³⁷ "[O people of Jerusalem](#), you who killed the [prophets who lived long ago](#), and you who [killed with stones others whom God had sent](#) to you. Many, many times I wanted to gather you together to [protect](#) you, like a hen gathers her young chicks under her wings. But you did not want me to do that.

Matthew 23:38

your house is left to you desolate (ULT)

Your city will become an uninhabited place (UST)

“God will leave your house, and it will be empty”

your house (ULT)

Your...city (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “the city of Jerusalem” or 2) “the temple.”
(See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [desolate](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [an uninhabited place](#)
- [city](#)

ULT

³⁸ See, your [house](#) is left to you [desolate](#).

UST

³⁸ So listen to this: Your [city](#) will become [an uninhabited place](#).

Matthew 23:39

For I say to you (ULT)

Keep this in mind (UST)

This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord (ULT)

God is truly pleased with this man who comes with God's authority (UST)

Here "in the name" means "in the power" or "as a representative." See how you translated this in [Matthew 21:9](#). Alternate translation: "He who comes in the power of the Lord is blessed" or "He who comes as the representative of the Lord will be blessed" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Blessed is he](#)
- [of the Lord](#)
- [the name](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God is truly pleased](#)
- [authority](#)
- [God's](#)

ULT

39 For I say to you, You will certainly not see me from now on until you say, '[Blessed is he](#) who comes in [the name of the Lord!](#)'"

23:14 ^[1] Some ancient manuscripts include the first part of verse 14 (some copies add this phrase after verse 12).

UST

39 Keep this in mind: You will see me again only when I return, when you say about me, '[God is truly pleased](#) with this man who comes with [God's authority.](#)'"

23:14 ^[1] Some ancient manuscripts include the first part of verse 14 (some copies add this phrase after verse 12).

Matthew 24

Matthew 24 General Notes

Structure and formatting

In this chapter, Jesus begins to prophesy about the future from that time until he returns as king of everything.
(See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

“The end of the age”

In this chapter, Jesus gives an answer to his disciples when they ask how they will know when he will come again.
(See: [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

The example of Noah

In the time of Noah, God sent a great flood to punish people for their sins. He warned them many times about this coming flood, but it actually began suddenly. In this chapter, Jesus draws a comparison between that flood and the last days. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“Let”

The ULT uses this word to begin several commands of Jesus, such as “let those who are in Judea flee to the mountains” (24:16), “let him who is on the housetop not go down to take anything out of his house” (24:17), and “let him who is in the field not return to take his cloak” (24:18). There are many different ways to form a command. Translators must select the most natural ways in their own languages.

Matthew 24:1

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to describe events that will happen before he comes again during the end times.

from the temple (ULT)

Jesus left...the temple courtyard (UST)

It is implied that Jesus was not in the temple itself. He was in the courtyard around the temple. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [temple](#)
- [temple](#) (2)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus left](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [temple courtyard](#)
- [temple](#) (2)

ULT

¹ [Jesus](#) went out from the [temple](#) and was going on his way. His [disciples](#) came to him to point out to him the buildings of the [temple](#).

UST

¹ [Jesus left](#) the [temple courtyard](#). As he was walking along, his [disciples](#) came to him and began talking about how beautiful the [temple](#) buildings were.

Matthew 24:2

**Do you not see all these things (ULT)
about these buildings...are seeing: an army will
completely destroy them...every (UST)**

Jesus uses a question to make the disciples think deeply about what he will tell them. Alternate translation: "Let me tell you something about all these buildings." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Truly I say to you (ULT)
truth...you (UST)**

"I tell you the truth." This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

**certainly one stone will not be left on another here,
that will not be torn down (ULT)
that...They will throw down...stone in these buildings.
Not one stone will remain on top of another stone (UST)**

It is implied that enemy soldiers will tear down the stones. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "when the enemy soldiers come, they will tear down every stone in these buildings" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Truly

Translation Words - UST

- truth

ULT

² But he answered and said to them, "Do you not see all these things? [Truly](#) I say to you, certainly one stone will not be left on another here, that will not be torn down."

UST

² He said to them, "I tell you the [truth](#) about these buildings that you are seeing: an army will completely destroy them. They will throw down every stone in these buildings. Not one stone will remain on top of another stone."

Matthew 24:3

**What will be...the sign of your coming and of the end of the age (ULT)
to the buildings of the temple? And what...to show that you are about to come again...to show that this world is about to end (UST)**

Here “your coming” refers to when Jesus will come in power, establishing God’s reign on earth and bringing this age to an end. Alternate translation: “What will be the sign that you are about to come and that the world is about to end” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sign](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [Mount of Olives](#)
- [of Olives](#)
- [age](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to show that](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [slope...the Mount of Olives](#)
- [Mount of Olives](#)
- [world](#)

ULT

³ As he sat on the [Mount of Olives](#), the [disciples](#) came to him privately, saying, “Tell us, when will these things happen? What will be the [sign](#) of your coming and of the end of the [age](#)?”

UST

³ Later, as Jesus was sitting alone on the [slope](#) of [the Mount of Olives](#), the [disciples](#) went to him and asked him, “When will this happen to the buildings of the temple? And what will happen [to show that](#) you are about to come again, and to show that this [world](#) is about to end?”

Matthew 24:4

**Be careful that no one leads you astray (ULT)
be sure that no one deceives you about what will
happen (UST)**

Here "leads you astray" is a metaphor for persuading someone to believe something that is not true. Alternate translation: "Be careful that no one deceives you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [leads...astray](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [deceives...about what will happen](#)

ULT

⁴ [Jesus](#) answered and said to them, "Be careful that no one [leads](#) you [astray](#)."

UST

⁴ [Jesus](#) replied, "All that I will say is, be sure that no one [deceives](#) you [about what will happen](#)!"

Matthew 24:5

many...will come in my name (ULT)

Many people...will come and...are me (UST)

Here “name” refers to “in the authority” or “as the representative” of someone. Alternate translation: “many will claim that they have come as my representative” or “many will say they speak for me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

will lead many astray (ULT)

they will deceive many people (UST)

Here “leads you astray” is a metaphor for persuading someone to believe something that is not true. Alternate translation: “will deceive many people” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [will lead...astray](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [are](#)
- [Messiah](#)
- [they will deceive](#)

ULT

⁵ For many will come in my [name](#). They will say, ‘I am the [Christ](#),’ and [will lead](#) many [astray](#).

UST

⁵ Many people will come and say that they [are](#) me. Yes, they will actually say, ‘I am the [Messiah](#),’ and [they will deceive](#) many people.

Matthew 24:6

See that you are not troubled (ULT)
do not let that trouble you. Keep in mind that (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Do not let these things trouble you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [you are...troubled](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [do...let that trouble you](#)

ULT

⁶ You will hear of wars and reports of wars. See that [you are](#) not [troubled](#), for these things must happen; but the end is not yet.

UST

⁶ You will hear about wars that are close and wars that are far away, but do not [let that trouble you](#). Keep in mind that God has said that those things must happen. But when they happen, it will not mean that the end of the world has come!

Matthew 24:7

For nation will rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom (ULT)

People groups will attack each other, and kings will lead armies against each other (UST)

Both of these mean the same thing. Jesus is emphasizing that people everywhere will fight each other. (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [nation](#)
- [nation](#) (2)
- [will rise](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [famines](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [People groups](#)
- [each other](#) (2)
- [will attack](#)
- [kings](#)
- [will lead armies](#)
- [famines](#)

ULT

⁷ For [nation will rise](#) against [nation](#), and [kingdom](#) against [kingdom](#). There will be [famines](#) and earthquakes in various places.

UST

⁷ [People groups will attack each other](#), and [kings will lead armies](#) against each other. There will be [famines](#) and earthquakes in various places.

Matthew 24:8

**are only the beginning of birth pains (ULT)
first...they will be like when a woman starts to suffer
pain before she gives birth to a child (UST)**

This refers to the pains a woman feels before giving birth to a child. This metaphor means these wars, famines, and earthquakes are just the beginning of the events that will lead to the end of the age. (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

⁸ But all these things are only the beginning of birth pains.

UST

⁸ These things will happen first, but they will be like when a woman starts to suffer pain before she gives birth to a child.

Matthew 24:9

they will deliver you up to tribulation and kill you

“people will give you over to the authorities, who will make you suffer and will kill you.”

You will be...hated by all the nations (ULT)

People who live in all the people groups...will hate (UST)

Here “nations” is a metonym, referring to the people of nations. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “People from every nation will hate you” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metonymy](#))

for my name’s sake (ULT)

because you believe in me (UST)

Here “name” refers to the complete person. Alternate translation: “because you believe in me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [name's](#)
- [tribulation](#)
- [nations](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [you believe in](#)
- [suffer](#)
- [People who live...people groups](#)

ULT

⁹ Then they will deliver you up to [tribulation](#) and kill you. You will be hated by all the [nations](#) for my [name's](#) sake.

UST

⁹ More bad things will happen. People who oppose you will take you away to [suffer](#) and die. [People who live](#) in all the [people groups](#) will hate you because [you believe in](#) me.

Matthew 24:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [betray](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [They will betray](#)

ULT

¹⁰ Then many will stumble, and [betray](#) one another and hate one another.

UST

¹⁰ Also, many people will stop believing because of the way they will suffer. [They will betray](#) their own fellow believers and will hate each other.

Matthew 24:11

will rise up (ULT)

will come (UST)

“Rise” here is an idiom for “become established.” Alternate translation: “will come” (See: [Idiom](#))

and lead many astray (ULT)

and they will deceive many people (UST)

Here “lead...astray” is a metaphor for persuading someone to believe something that is not true. Alternate translation: “and deceive many people” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [false prophets](#)
- [will rise up](#)
- [lead...astray](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [saying that they are prophets](#)
- [will come](#)
- [they will deceive](#)

ULT

¹¹ Many [false prophets will rise up](#) and [lead](#) many [astray](#).

UST

¹¹ Many [will come saying that they are prophets](#), but they will be lying, and [they will deceive](#) many people.

Matthew 24:12

lawlessness will increase (ULT)

more and more people will disobey God's laws (UST)

The abstract noun "lawlessness" can be translated with the phrase "disobeying the law." Alternate translation: "disobeying the law will increase" or "people will disobey God's law more and more" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

the love of many will grow cold (ULT)

many believers will no longer love each other (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) "many people will no longer love other people" or 2) "many people will no longer love God." (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [love](#)
- [will increase](#)
- [lawlessness](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [love](#)
- [more and more people](#)
- [will disobey God's laws](#)

ULT

¹² Because [lawlessness will increase](#), the [love](#) of many will grow cold.

UST

¹² Because [more and more people will disobey God's laws](#), many believers will no longer [love](#) each other.

Matthew 24:13

**But the one who endures...But the one who endures...
to the end, he will be saved (ULT)
those who...keep on believing to the end of their lives,
God will save them (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will save the person who endures to the end" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

**But the one who endures (ULT)
But all those who keep on believing (UST)**

"the person who stays faithful"

**to the end (ULT)
to the end of their lives (UST)**

It is not clear whether the word "end" refers to when a person dies or when the persecution ends or the end of the age when God shows himself to be king. The main point is that they endure as long as necessary.

**the end (ULT)
the end of their lives (UST)**

"the end of the world" or "the end of the age"

Translation Words - ULT

- [will be saved](#)
- [But the one who endures](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God will save](#)
- [keep on believing](#)

ULT

¹³ [But the one who endures](#) to the end, he [will be saved](#).

UST

¹³ But all those who [keep on believing](#) to the end of their lives, [God will save](#) them.

Matthew 24:14

**This good news of the kingdom...will be preached (ULT)
will preach the good news about how God is ruling
(UST)**

Here "kingdom" refers to God's rule as king. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People will tell the good news that God will rule" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

**to all the nations (ULT)
to all people groups (UST)**

Here, "nations" stands for people. Alternate translation: "all people in all places" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [a testimony](#)
- [world](#)
- [good news](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [will be preached](#)
- [nations](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [announce it](#)
- [world](#)
- [good news about how](#)
- [God is ruling](#)
- [will preach](#)
- [people groups](#)

ULT

¹⁴ This [good news](#) of the [kingdom](#) [will be preached](#) in the whole [world](#) as [a testimony](#) to all the [nations](#). Then the end will come.

UST

¹⁴ Furthermore, believers [will preach](#) the [good news about how God is ruling](#) in every part of the [world](#), in order to [announce it](#) to all [people groups](#). Then the end of the world will come."

Matthew 24:15

the abomination of desolation, which was spoken of by Daniel the prophet (ULT)
disgusting person who will defile the holy temple and... cause people to abandon it...Daniel the prophet spoke and wrote about that long ago...because I am warning you (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the shameful one who defiles the things of God, about whom Daniel the prophet wrote" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

let the reader understand (ULT)

May everyone who reads this pay attention (UST)

This is not Jesus speaking. Matthew added this to alert the reader that Jesus was using words that they would need to think about and interpret.

Translation Words - ULT

- [abomination](#)
- [holy](#)
- [prophet](#)
- [the holy place](#)
- [Daniel](#)
- [of desolation](#)
- [let...understand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [disgusting person who will defile the holy temple and](#)
- [the temple](#)
- [prophet](#)
- [the temple](#)
- [Daniel](#)
- [cause people to abandon it](#)
- [pay attention](#)

ULT

¹⁵ Therefore, when you see the [abomination of desolation](#), which was spoken of by [Daniel](#) the [prophet](#), standing in [the holy place](#)" (let the reader [understand](#)),

UST

¹⁵ "But before the world ends, the [disgusting person who will defile the holy temple and cause people to abandon it](#) will stand in [the temple](#). [Daniel](#) the [prophet](#) spoke and wrote about that long ago. May everyone who reads this [pay attention](#), because I am warning you.

Matthew 24:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [region of Judea](#)

ULT

16 "then let those who are in [Judea](#) flee to the mountains,

UST

16 When you see that happen in the temple, those of you who are in the [region of Judea](#) must flee to the higher hills!

Matthew 24:17

him who is on the housetop (ULT)

Those who are outside their houses (UST)

Housetops where Jesus lived were flat, and people could stand on them.

Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [houses](#)

ULT

¹⁷ let him who is on the housetop not go down to take anything out of his [house](#),

UST

¹⁷ Those who are outside their houses must not go back into their [houses](#) to get things before they run away.

Matthew 24:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [let...return](#)
- [cloak](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [turn](#)
- [outer clothing before they flee](#)

ULT

¹⁸ and let him who is in the field not [return](#) to take his [cloak](#).

UST

¹⁸ Those who are working in a field should not [turn](#) back to get their [outer clothing before they flee](#).

Matthew 24:19

to those who are with child (ULT)
pregnant women (UST)

This is a polite way to say “pregnant women.” (See: [Euphemism](#))

to those who are with child...those...days (ULT)
women at that...time (UST)

“at that time”

Translation Words - ULT

- [woe](#)
- [to those who are with child](#)
- [days](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [How terrible it will be for](#)
- [women](#)
- [time](#)

ULT

¹⁹ But [woe to those who are with child](#) and to those who are nursing infants in those [days](#)!

UST

¹⁹ [How terrible it will be for](#) pregnant [women](#) at that [time](#), and for women who will be nursing their babies, because it will be very difficult for them to run away!

Matthew 24:20

that your flight will not occur (ULT)

that you will not have to flee in the (UST)

“that you will not have to flee” or “that you will not have to run away”

in the winter (ULT)

winter (UST)

“the cold season”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Pray](#)
- [on a Sabbath](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Pray](#)
- [Sabbath, the day of rest](#)

ULT

²⁰ [Pray](#) that your flight will not occur in the winter or [on a Sabbath](#).

UST

²⁰ [Pray](#) that you will not have to flee in the winter when it will be hard to travel, or on the [Sabbath, the day of rest](#);

Matthew 24:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- of the world
- a...tribulation

Translation Words - UST

- the world
- people will suffer

ULT

²¹ For then will be a great [tribulation](#), such as has not been from the beginning [of the world](#) until now, nor will ever happen again.

UST

²¹ because [people will suffer](#) very severely when those things happen. People have never suffered that severely since God created [the world](#) until now, and no one will ever suffer like that again.

Matthew 24:22

Unless...those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved (ULT)

If God had not decided to shorten...everyone would die (UST)

This can be stated in positive and active form. Alternate translation: "If God does not shorten the time of suffering, everyone will die" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

flesh (ULT)

everyone would die (UST)

"people." Here, "flesh" is poetic way of saying all people. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

those days will be shortened (ULT)

that time...he has decided to shorten it (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will shorten the time of suffering" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- would be saved
- flesh
- elect
- days
- days (2)

Translation Words - UST

- everyone would die
- everyone would die
- he has chosen
- God had...decided to shorten
- time (2)

ULT

²² Unless those [days](#) are shortened, no [flesh would be saved](#). But for the sake of the [elect](#), those [days](#) will be shortened.

UST

²² If [God had](#) not [decided to shorten](#) that [time](#) when people will suffer so much, [everyone would die](#). But he has decided to shorten it because he is concerned about the people whom [he has chosen](#)."

Matthew 24:23

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to his disciples.

do not believe it (ULT)

do not believe it (UST)

“do not believe the false things they have said to you”

Translation Words - ULT

- [believe it](#)
- [Christ](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [do...believe it](#)
- [Messiah](#)

ULT

²³ Then if anyone says to you, ‘Look, here is the [Christ!](#)’ or, ‘There he is!’ do not [believe it](#).

UST

²³ “At that time, if someone says to you, ‘Look, here is the [Messiah!](#)’ or if someone says, ‘There is the Messiah!’ do not [believe it!](#)”

Matthew 24:24

and...so as to lead astray, if possible...the elect (ULT)
They will perform many kinds of miracles and amazing things...in order to deceive people. They will even try to deceive you people whom God has chosen (UST)

Here “lead astray” is a metaphor for persuading someone to believe something that is not true. This can be translated as two sentences. Alternate translation: “so as to deceive, if possible, even the elect” or “so as to deceive people. If possible, they would even deceive the elect” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [signs](#)
- [elect](#)
- [wonders](#)
- [false prophets](#)
- [will come](#)
- [to lead astray](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [They will perform many kinds of miracles and amazing things](#)
- [whom God has chosen](#)
- [They will perform many kinds of miracles and amazing things](#)
- [They will perform many kinds of miracles and amazing things](#)
- [They will perform many kinds of miracles and amazing things](#)
- [to deceive you people](#)

ULT

²⁴ For false Christs and [false prophets will come](#) and show great [signs](#) and [wonders](#), so as [to lead astray](#), if possible, even the [elect](#).

UST

²⁴ [They will perform many kinds of miracles and amazing things](#), in order to deceive people. They will even try [to deceive you people whom God has chosen](#).

Matthew 24:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

²⁵ See, I have told you ahead of time.

UST

²⁵ Do not forget that I have warned you about all this before it happens.

Matthew 24:26

if...they say to you, 'Look, he is in the wilderness,' do not (ULT)

if...someone says to you, 'Look, the Messiah is in the wilderness...not (UST)

This can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "if someone tells you that the Christ is in the wilderness, do" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Or, 'See, he is in the inner rooms (ULT)

Likewise, if someone says to you, 'Look, he is in a secret room (UST)

This can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "Or, if someone tells you that the Christ is in the inner room," (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

in...the inner rooms (ULT)

in...secret room (UST)

"in a secret room" or "in secret places"

Translation Words - ULT

- [believe it](#)
- [wilderness](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [do...believe that person](#)
- [wilderness](#)

ULT

²⁶ Therefore, if they say to you, 'Look, he is in the [wilderness](#),' do not go out there. Or, 'See, he is in the inner rooms,' do not [believe it](#).

UST

²⁶ So if someone says to you, 'Look, the Messiah is in the [wilderness](#)!' do not go there. Likewise, if someone says to you, 'Look, he is in a secret room!' do not [believe that person](#),

Matthew 24:27

as...the lightning shines out...so will be the coming (ULT)

just like...lightning...from...in the same way, when the... returns again, everyone will see (UST)

This means that the Son of Man will come very quickly and will be easy to see. (See: [Simile](#))

of the Son of Man (ULT)

Son of Man (UST)

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Son of Man](#)
- [as](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Son...of Man](#)
- [just like](#)

ULT

²⁷ For [as](#) the lightning shines out from the east and flashes all the way to the west, so will be the coming of the [Son of Man](#).

UST

²⁷ because [just like](#) lightning flashes from the east to the west and people see it, in the same way, when the [Son of Man](#) returns again, everyone will see.

Matthew 24:28

Wherever a dead animal is, there the vultures will gather (ULT)

It will be clear to everyone just as when you see vultures gathering you know that an animal carcass is there (UST)

This is probably a proverb that the people of Jesus' time understood. Possible meanings are 1) when the Son of Man comes, everyone will see him and know that he has come, or 2) wherever spiritually dead people are, false prophets will be there to tell them lies. (See: [Proverbs](#))

the vultures (ULT)

vultures...that (UST)

birds that eat the bodies of dead or dying creatures

Translation Words - ULT

- [vultures](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [vultures](#)

ULT

²⁸ Wherever a dead animal is, there the [vultures](#) will gather.

UST

²⁸ It will be clear to everyone just as when you see [vultures](#) gathering you know that an animal carcass is there."

Matthew 24:29

immediately...after the tribulation of those days the sun (ULT)

Immediately...after...people have suffered during that time, the sun (UST)

“as soon as the tribulation of those days has finished, the sun”

the tribulation of those days (ULT)
people have suffered during that time (UST)

“that time of suffering”

the sun will be darkened (ULT)
the sun will become dark (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God will make the sun dark” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the powers of the heavens will be shaken (ULT)
God will shake all things in the...sky loose from their place (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God will shake things in the sky and above the sky” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- sky
- heavens
- powers
- will be darkened
- light
- tribulation
- of...days

Translation Words - UST

- sky
- sky
- God will shake all things in the
- will become dark
- shine
- people have suffered during
- time

ULT

²⁹ But immediately after the [tribulation](#) of those [days](#) the sun [will be darkened](#), and the moon will not give its [light](#), and the stars will fall from the [sky](#), and the [powers](#) of the [heavens](#) will be shaken.

UST

²⁹ “Immediately after [people have suffered during](#) that [time](#), the sun [will become dark](#). The moon will not [shine](#). The stars will fall from the [sky](#). And [God will shake all things in the sky](#) loose from their place.

Matthew 24:30

of the Son of Man (ULT)

Son of Man (UST)

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

all the tribes (ULT)

all people groups on earth (UST)

Here “tribes” refers to people. Alternate translation: “all the people of the tribes” or “all the people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the sky
- sky
- sign
- power
- glory
- Son of Man
- Son of Man
- will mourn
- earth
- tribes

Translation Words - UST

- the sky
- clouds
- the...appear
- power
- glory
- Son...of Man
- Son of Man
- will wail
- people groups on earth
- people groups on earth

ULT

³⁰ Then the [sign](#) of the [Son of Man](#) will appear in [the sky](#), and then all the [tribes](#) of the [earth will mourn](#). They will see the [Son of Man](#) coming on the clouds of the [sky](#) with [power](#) and great [glory](#).

UST

³⁰ After that, everyone will see the [Son of Man appear](#) in [the sky](#). Then unbelieving people from all [people groups on earth will wail](#) because they will be afraid. They will see me, the [Son of Man](#), coming on the [clouds](#) with [power](#) and great [glory](#).

Matthew 24:31

He will send...his angels with a great sound of a trumpet (ULT)

He will send...his angels to the...trumpet's loud blast (UST)

"He will have a trumpet sounded and send his angels" or "He will have an angel blow a trumpet, and he will send his angels"

He will send...his (ULT)

He will send...his (UST)

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

they will gather together (ULT)

will gather together (UST)

"his angels will gather"

his angels...elect (ULT)

his angels to the...he has chosen—from (UST)

These are the people whom the Son of Man has chosen.

from the four winds, from one end of the sky to the other end of it (ULT)

earth from everywhere in the heavens...God's people—the ones...across the whole earth (UST)

Both of these mean the same thing. They are idioms that mean "from everywhere." Alternate translation: "from all over the world" (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of the sky](#)
- [angels](#)
- [elect](#)
- [they will gather together](#)
- [He will send](#)
- [a...sound of a trumpet](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [earth from everywhere in the heavens](#)
- [angels to the](#)
- [he has chosen—from](#)
- [will gather together](#)
- [He will send](#)
- [trumpet's](#)

ULT

³¹ [He will send](#) his [angels](#) with a great [sound of a trumpet](#), and [they will gather together](#) his [elect](#) from the four winds, from one end [of the sky](#) to the other end of it.

UST

³¹ [He will send](#) his [angels to the earth from everywhere in the heavens](#). When they hear the [trumpet's](#) loud blast, they [will gather together](#) God's people—the ones [he has chosen—from](#) across the whole earth."

Matthew 24:32

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [parable](#)
- [fig tree](#)
- [you know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [learn something](#)
- [fig trees grow](#)
- [you know](#)

ULT

³² Learn this [parable](#) from the [fig tree](#).
As soon as its branch becomes tender
and it puts out its leaves, [you know](#) that
summer is near.

UST

³² "Now be sure to [learn something](#)
from how [fig trees grow](#). When the
branches of a fig tree become tender
and its leaves begin to sprout, [you know](#)
that summer is near.

Matthew 24:33

he is near (ULT)

the time for him to return is very close (UST)

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person. Alternate translation: “the time for me to come is near” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

at the gates (ULT)

the time for him to return is very close (UST)

“close to the gates.” Jesus uses the imagery of a king or important official getting close to the gates of a walled city. It is a metaphor meaning the time for Jesus to come is soon. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [you should know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [you will know](#)

ULT

³³ So also, when you see all these things, [you should know](#) that he is near, at the gates.

UST

³³ Similarly, when you see all these things happening, [you will know](#) that the time for him to return is very close.

Matthew 24:34

Truly I say to you (ULT)

Keep this in mind (UST)

"I tell you the truth." This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

this generation will...certainly not...pass away (ULT)
all the people have died who have observed...these things (UST)

Here "pass away" is a polite way of saying "die." Alternate translation: "this generation will not all die" (See: [Euphemism](#))

this generation (ULT)

all the people have died who have observed...these things (UST)

Possible interpretations are 1) "all people alive today," referring to the people alive when Jesus was speaking, or 2) "all people alive when these things I have just told you about happen." Try to translate so that both interpretations are possible.

until all these things will have happened (ULT)

All of these events will happen before (UST)

"until God causes all these things to happen"

will...pass away (ULT)

all the people have died who have observed (UST)

"disappear" or "someday no longer exist"

Translation Words - ULT

- Truly
- generation

Translation Words - UST

- Keep this in mind
- all the people have died who have observed

ULT

³⁴ Truly I say to you, this [generation](#) will certainly not pass away until all these things will have happened.

UST

³⁴ [Keep this in mind](#): All of these events will happen before [all the people have died who have observed](#) these things.

Matthew 24:35

Heaven and the earth will pass away (ULT)
You can be certain that these things that I have told you about will happen. The earth and sky will disappear one day (UST)

The words “heaven” and “earth” are a synecdoche that includes everything that God has created, especially those things that seem permanent. Jesus is saying that his word, unlike these things, is permanent. Alternate translation: “Even heaven and the earth will pass away” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

but...words...but...my...words...will never pass away (ULT)
but...what I say will always be true (UST)

Here “words” refers to what Jesus has said. Alternate translation: “what I say will always be true” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Heaven](#)
- [earth](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sky](#)
- [earth](#)

ULT

³⁵ [Heaven](#) and the [earth](#) will pass away, but my words will never pass away.

UST

³⁵ You can be certain that these things that I have told you about will happen. The [earth](#) and [sky](#) will disappear one day, but what I say will always be true.”

Matthew 24:36

that day and hour (ULT)
the day or the hour when these things will happen (UST)

Here “day” and “hour” refer to the exact time that the Son of Man will return. (See: [Metonymy](#))

not even...the Son (ULT)
nor...the Son (UST)

“not even the Son”

Son (ULT)
Son (UST)

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Father (ULT)
Only God the Father knows (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of heaven](#)
- [angels](#)
- [Son](#)
- [Father](#)
- [hour](#)
- [day](#)
- [knows](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#)
- [even any angel](#)
- [Son](#)
- [Only God the Father knows](#)
- [or the hour when these things will happen](#)
- [day](#)
- [knows](#)

ULT

³⁶ But concerning that [day](#) and [hour](#) no one [knows](#), not even the [angels of heaven](#), nor the [Son](#), except the [Father](#) alone.

UST

³⁶ “But no other person, nor [even any angel](#) in [heaven](#), nor even the [Son](#), [knows](#) the [day or the hour when these things will happen](#). [Only God the Father knows](#).

Matthew 24:37

For as the days of Noah were, so will be the coming of the Son of Man

“At the time when the Son of Man comes, it will be like the time of Noah.”

of the Son of Man (ULT)

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Son of Man](#)
- [Noah](#)
- [as...were](#)
- [days](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Son of Man, son of man](#)
- [Noah](#)
- [like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if](#)
- [day](#)

ULT

³⁷ For as the [days](#) of [Noah were](#), so will be the coming of the [Son of Man](#).

UST

³⁷⁻³⁹ It will be like what happened when Noah lived. Until the flood came, the people did not know that anything bad would happen to them. They were eating and drinking as usual. Men were getting married, and parents were giving their daughters to men to marry them. They were doing all this until the day that Noah and his family entered the big boat. And then the flood came and drowned all those who were not in the boat. Similarly, the unbelieving people will not know when the Son of Man will return.

Matthew 24:38

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- ark
- Noah
- flood
- as
- days
- day that

Translation Words - UST

- ark
- Noah
- flood
- like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if
- day
- day

ULT

³⁸ For as in those days before the flood they were eating and drinking, marrying and giving in marriage until the day that Noah entered into the ark,

UST

Matthew 24:39

and they knew nothing (ULT)

This can be translated as a separate sentence. Alternate translation: "The people did not realize anything was happening"

took them all away—so will be the coming of the Son of Man

This can be translated as a separate sentence. Alternate translation: "away. This is how it will be when the Son of Man comes"

Translation Words - ULT

- Son of Man
- flood
- they knew

Translation Words - UST

- Son of Man, son of man
- flood
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

³⁹ and [they knew](#) nothing until the [flood](#) came and took them all away—so also will be the coming of the [Son of Man](#).

UST

³⁷⁻³⁹ It will be like what happened when Noah lived. Until the flood came, the people did not know that anything bad would happen to them. They were eating and drinking as usual. Men were getting married, and parents were giving their daughters to men to marry them. They were doing all this until the day that Noah and his family entered the big boat. And then the flood came and drowned all those who were not in the boat. Similarly, the unbelieving people will not know when the Son of Man will return.

Matthew 24:40

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to tell his disciples to be ready for his return.

Then (ULT)

When that happens not all people will be taken up to heaven. For (UST)

This is when the Son of Man comes.

one will be taken, and one will be left (ULT)

One of them will be taken up to heaven and the other person will be left here to be punished (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) the Son of Man will take one away to heaven and will leave the other on earth for punishment or 2) the angels will take one away for punishment and leave the other for blessing. (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

40 Then two men will be in a field—one will be taken, and one will be left.

UST

40 When that happens not all people will be taken up to heaven. For example, two people will be in the fields. One of them will be taken up to heaven and the other person will be left here to be punished.

Matthew 24:41

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

41 Two women will be grinding with a mill—one will be taken, and one will be left.

UST

41 Similarly, two women will be grinding grain with a handmill. One of them will be taken up to heaven and the other will be left.

Matthew 24:42

Therefore (ULT)

So (UST)

“Because what I have just said is true”

be on your guard (ULT)

you need to be ready all the time (UST)

“pay attention”

Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- be on your guard
- day
- you...know

Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- you need to be ready all the time
- day
- you do...know

ULT

⁴² Therefore [be on your guard](#), for you do not [know](#) on what [day](#) your [Lord](#) will come.

UST

⁴² So, because [you do](#) not [know](#) what [day](#) your [Lord](#) will return to the earth, [you need to be ready all the time](#).

Matthew 24:43

that if the master of the house had known...his house to be broken into (ULT)

that if the owner of a house knew at...the thieves from breaking in. Similarly, the Son of Man will come as unexpectedly as a thief (UST)

Jesus uses a parable of a master and servants to illustrate that his disciples should be prepared for his return. (See: [Parables](#))

the thief (ULT)

thieves (UST)

Jesus is saying he will come when people are not expecting him, not that he will come to steal. (See: [Metaphor](#))

he would have been on guard (ULT)

he would be awake and (UST)

“he would have guarded his house”

would not have allowed his house to be broken into (ULT)

prevent the thieves from breaking in. Similarly, the Son of Man will come as unexpectedly as a thief (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “would not have allowed anyone to get into his house to steal things” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [master of the house](#)
- [thief](#)
- [he would have been on guard](#)
- [house](#)
- [know](#)
- [had known](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [owner of a house](#)
- [thieves](#)
- [he would be awake](#)
- [Similarly, the Son of Man will come as unexpectedly as a thief](#)
- [You know](#)
- [knew at](#)

ULT

⁴³ But [know](#) this, that if the [master of the house had known](#) in what time of night the [thief](#) was coming, [he would have been on guard](#) and would not have allowed his [house](#) to be broken into.

UST

⁴³ [You know](#) that if the [owner of a house knew at](#) what time in the night [thieves](#) would come, [he would be awake](#) and prevent the thieves from breaking in. [Similarly, the Son of Man will come as unexpectedly as a thief.](#)

Matthew 24:44

the Son of Man (ULT)

Son of Man (UST)

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Son of Man](#)
- [at an hour that you do not expect](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Son...of Man](#)
- [at a time](#)

ULT

⁴⁴ Therefore you must also be ready, for the [Son of Man](#) will come [at an hour that you do not expect](#).

UST

⁴⁴ So you need to be ready because the [Son of Man](#) will return to the earth [at a time](#) when you do not expect him to come."

Matthew 24:45

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues his proverb of a master and servants to illustrate that his disciples should be prepared for his return.

So who is the faithful and wise servant whom...at the right time (ULT)

Think about what every faithful and wise servant is like...appoints one servant...at the proper times (UST)

Jesus uses this question to make his disciples think. Alternate translation: "So who is the faithful and wise servant? He is the one whom his master...time." or "Be like the faithful and wise servant, whom his master...time." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

to give them their food (ULT)

to supervise...them food (UST)

"give the people in the master's home their food"

Translation Words - ULT

- [master](#)
- [wise](#)
- [has set](#)
- [faithful](#)
- [household](#)
- [the right time](#)
- [servant](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [house owner](#)
- [wise](#)
- [appoints one servant](#)
- [Think about what every faithful](#)
- [servants. He tells him to give](#)
- [the proper times](#)
- [servant](#)

ULT

⁴⁵ So who is the [faithful](#) and [wise servant](#) whom his [master has set](#) over his [household](#) to give them their food at [the right time](#)?

UST

⁴⁵ "[Think about what every faithful](#) and [wise servant](#) is like. The [house owner appoints one servant](#) to supervise the other [servants. He tells him to give](#) them food at [the proper times](#). Then he leaves on a long trip.

Matthew 24:46

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Blessed is
- master
- servant

Translation Words - UST

- will be very pleased with
- house owner
- servant

ULT

⁴⁶ Blessed is that servant whom his master will find doing that when he comes.

UST

⁴⁶ If the servant is doing that work when the house owner returns, the house owner will be very pleased with him.

Matthew 24:47

Truly I say to you (ULT)

Think about this: The house owner (UST)

"I tell you the truth." This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

Translation Words - ULT

- Truly
- the master will set
- that...owns

Translation Words - UST

- Think about this: The house owner
- will appoint...to be the supervisor
- possessions

ULT

⁴⁷ Truly I say to you that the master will set him over everything that he owns.

UST

⁴⁷ Think about this: The house owner will appoint that one servant to be the supervisor of all his possessions.

Matthew 24:48

Connecting Statement:

Jesus concludes his proverb of a master and servants to illustrate that his disciples should be prepared for his return. (See: [Proverbs](#))

says...in his heart (ULT)

say...to himself (UST)

Here “heart” refers to the mind. Alternate translation: “thinks in his mind” (See: [Metonymy](#))

My master has been delayed (ULT)

The owner has been away for a long time, so he probably will not return soon and find out what I am doing (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “My master is slow to return” or “My master will not return for a long time” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [master](#)
- [heart](#)
- [evil servant](#)
- [evil servant](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [owner](#)
- [to himself](#)
- [a wicked](#)
- [servant](#)

ULT

⁴⁸ But if that [evil servant](#) says in his [heart](#), ‘My [master](#) has been delayed,’

UST

⁴⁸ But [a wicked servant](#) might say [to himself](#), ‘The [owner](#) has been away for a long time, so he probably will not return soon and find out what I am doing.’

Matthew 24:49

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- drunkards
- fellow servants

Translation Words - UST

- are drunk
- other servants

ULT

⁴⁹ and begins to beat his [fellow servants](#), and eats and drinks with [drunkards](#),

UST

⁴⁹ So he will begin to beat the [other servants](#) and eat and drink with those who [are drunk](#).

Matthew 24:50

on a day that the servant does not expect and at an hour that he does not know (ULT)
at a time when...does not expect him (UST)

Both of these statements mean the same thing. They emphasize that the master will come when the servant is not expecting him. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [master](#)
- [an hour](#)
- [a day](#)
- [of...servant](#)
- [that he does not know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [house owner](#)
- [when...does...expect him](#)
- [a time](#)
- [servant](#)
- [when...does...expect him](#)

ULT

⁵⁰ then the [master](#) of that [servant](#) will come on [a day](#) that the servant does not expect and at [an hour that he does not know](#).

UST

⁵⁰ Then the [house owner](#) will come back at [a time when](#) the [servant](#) does not [expect him](#).

Matthew 24:51

He will cut...him...in pieces (ULT)

He will punish...that servant...severely (UST)

This is an idiom that means to make the person suffer terribly. (See: [Idiom](#))

assign his place with the hypocrites

“put him with the hypocrites” or “send him to the place where hypocrites are sent”

there will be weeping and grinding of teeth (ULT)
are put. In that...the people cry and grind their teeth
because they suffer very much (UST)

“Grinding of teeth” here is a symbolic act, representing extreme suffering. See how you translated this in [Matthew 8:12](#). Alternate translation: “people will weep and grind their teeth because of their suffering” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [hypocrites](#)
- [assign](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [hypocrites](#)
- [put](#)

ULT

⁵¹ He will cut him in pieces and [assign](#) his place with the [hypocrites](#), where there will be weeping and grinding of teeth.

UST

⁵¹ He will punish that servant severely and he will [put](#) him where the [hypocrites](#) are put. In that place the people cry and grind their teeth because they suffer very much.”

Matthew 25

Matthew 25 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter continues the teaching of the previous chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

The parable of the ten virgins

Jesus told the parable of the ten virgins ([Matthew 25:1-13](#)) to tell his followers to be ready for him to return. His hearers could understand the parable because they knew Jewish wedding customs.

When the Jews arranged marriages, they would plan for the wedding to take place weeks or months later. At the proper time, the young man would go to his bride's house, where she would be waiting for him. The wedding ceremony would take place, and then the man and his bride would travel to his home, where there would be a feast. (See: [Symbolic Prophecy](#))

Matthew 25:1

Connecting Statement:

Jesus tells a parable about wise and foolish virgins to illustrate that his disciples should be prepared for his return. (See: [Parables](#))

the kingdom of heaven will be like (ULT)

God's rule from heaven...will be like what happened to (UST)

Here "kingdom of heaven" refers to God's rule as king. The phrase "kingdom of heaven" is used only in Matthew. If possible, use "heaven" in your translation. See how you translated this in [Matthew 13:24](#). Alternate translation: "when our God in heaven shows himself to be king, it will be like" (See: [Metonymy](#))

lamps (ULT)

lamps and (UST)

These could have been 1) lamps or 2) torches made by putting cloth around the end of a stick and wetting the cloth with oil.

Translation Words - ULT

- [of heaven](#)
- [kingdom of heaven](#)
- [lamps](#)
- [will be like](#)
- [bridegroom](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [virgins](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#)
- [God's rule...from heaven](#)
- [lamps and](#)
- [will be like what happened to](#)
- [bridegroom to come](#)
- [God's rule](#)
- [unmarried girls](#)

ULT

¹ Then the [kingdom of heaven will be like](#) ten [virgins](#) who took their [lamps](#) and went to meet the [bridegroom](#).

UST

¹ "[God's rule from heaven will be like what happened to](#) ten [unmarried girls](#) who got ready to go to a wedding feast. They were to take their [lamps and](#) go wait for the [bridegroom to come](#).

Matthew 25:2

Five...of them (ULT)

five...of these girls (UST)

“Five of the virgins”

Translation Words - ULT

- foolish
- were wise

Translation Words - UST

- foolish
- were wise

ULT

² Five of them were [foolish](#) and five [were wise](#).

UST

² Now five of these girls were [foolish](#), and five [were wise](#).

Matthew 25:3

they did not take any oil with them (ULT)
not take any extra olive oil for them (UST)

“had with them only the oil in their lamps”

Translation Words - ULT

- foolish virgins
- lamps
- any oil

Translation Words - UST

- foolish girls
- lamps, but they did
- olive oil

ULT

³ For when the [foolish virgins](#) took their [lamps](#), they did not take [any oil](#) with them.

UST

³ The [foolish girls](#) took their [lamps, but they did](#) not take any extra [olive oil](#) for them.

Matthew 25:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [wise virgins](#)
- [lamps](#)
- [oil](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [wise girls](#)
- [in...lamps](#)
- [oil](#)

ULT

⁴ But the [wise virgins](#) took [oil](#) in containers along with their [lamps](#).

UST

⁴ But the [wise girls](#) took [oil](#) in their flasks as well as in their [lamps](#).

Matthew 25:5

Now (ULT)

So (UST)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Jesus starts to tell a new part of the story.

while...was delayed...the bridegroom (ULT)
was taking a long time to come, and it became late at night...The bridegroom (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "while the bridegroom was taking a long time to arrive" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

they all got sleepy (ULT)
all the girls became sleepy (UST)

"all ten virgins got sleepy"

Translation Words - ULT

- [slept](#)
- [bridegroom](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [fell asleep](#)
- [bridegroom](#)

ULT

⁵ Now while the [bridegroom](#) was delayed, they all got sleepy and [slept](#).

UST

⁵ The [bridegroom](#) was taking a long time to come, and it became late at night. So all the girls became sleepy and [fell asleep](#).

Matthew 25:6

there was a cry (ULT)
by shouting, 'Here he is (UST)

"someone shouted"

Translation Words - ULT

- a cry
- bridegroom

Translation Words - UST

- shouting, 'Here he is
- The bridegroom is arriving

ULT

⁶ But in the middle of the night there was [a cry](#), 'Look, the [bridegroom](#)! Go out and meet him.'

UST

⁶ In the middle of the night someone woke them up by [shouting, 'Here he is!](#)
[The bridegroom is arriving!](#) Go outside and meet him!'

Matthew 25:7

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling a parable. (See: [Parables](#))

trimmed their lamps (ULT)

adjusted their lamps for burning (UST)

“adjusted their lamps so they would burn brightly”

Translation Words - ULT

- [lamps](#)
- [rose up](#)
- [virgins](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [lamps for burning](#)
- [got up](#)
- [girls](#)

ULT

⁷ Then all those [virgins rose up](#) and trimmed their [lamps](#).

UST

⁷ So all the [girls got up](#) and adjusted their [lamps for burning](#).

Matthew 25:8

The...foolish said to the wise (ULT)

The...foolish girls...said to the wise ones (UST)

These nominal adjectives can be stated as adjectives. Alternate translation: "The foolish virgins said to the wise virgins" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

our lamps are going out (ULT)

our lamps are about to go out (UST)

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "the fire in our lamps is about to burn out" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [foolish](#)
- [wise](#)
- [lamps](#)
- [oil](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [foolish girls](#)
- [wise ones](#)
- [lamps](#)
- [of...oil](#)

ULT

⁸ The [foolish](#) said to the [wise](#), 'Give us some of your [oil](#) because our [lamps](#) are going out.'

UST

⁸ The [foolish girls](#) said to the [wise ones](#), 'Give us some of your [oil](#), because our [lamps](#) are about to go out!'

Matthew 25:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [wise](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The wise girls replied](#)

ULT

⁹ But the [wise](#) answered and said, 'There will not be enough for us and you. Go instead to those who sell and buy some for yourselves.'

UST

⁹ [The wise girls replied](#), 'No, because there might not be enough oil for our lamps and yours. Go to the sellers and buy some for yourselves!'

Matthew 25:10

Connecting Statement:

Jesus concludes the parable about the ten virgins. (See: [Parables](#))

While they went away (ULT)

But while the foolish girls were on their way (UST)

“the five foolish virgins went away”

to buy (ULT)

to buy oil (UST)

The understood information can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “to buy more oil” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

those who were ready (ULT)

the wise girls, who were ready (UST)

These are the virgins who had extra oil.

the door was shut (ULT)

the door was closed (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the servants shut the door” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [marriage feast](#)
- [bridegroom](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [wedding hall, where the bride was waiting](#)
- [bridegroom](#)

ULT

¹⁰ While they went away to buy, the [bridegroom](#) came, and those who were ready went with him to the [marriage feast](#), and the door was shut.

UST

¹⁰ But while the foolish girls were on their way to buy oil, the [bridegroom](#) arrived. Then the wise girls, who were ready, went with him into the [wedding hall, where the bride was waiting](#). Then the door was closed.

Matthew 25:11

open for us (ULT)

open the door for us (UST)

This implicit information can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "open the door for us so we can come inside" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Master](#)
- [master](#) (2)
- [virgins](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Sir](#)
- [Sir](#) (2)
- [the girls](#)

ULT

¹¹ Afterward the other [virgins](#) also came and said, '[Master](#), [master](#), open for us.'

UST

¹¹ Later, the rest of [the girls](#) came to the wedding hall, and they called to the bridegroom, '[Sir](#), open the door for us!'

Matthew 25:12

Truly I say to you (ULT)

The truth is that (UST)

"I tell you the truth." This adds emphasis to what the master says next.

I do not know you (ULT)

I do not know you, so I will not open the door for you (UST)

"I do not know who you are." This is the end of the parable.

Translation Words - ULT

- Truly
- I...know

Translation Words - UST

- The truth is that
- I do...know

ULT

¹² But he answered and said, 'Truly I say to you, I do not know you.'

UST

¹² But he said to them, 'The truth is that I do not know you, so I will not open the door for you!'

Matthew 25:13

you do not know the day nor the hour (ULT)
you...not know when it will be (UST)

Here “day” and “hour” refer to an exact time. The implied information can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: “you do not know the exact time when the Son of Man will return” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Watch](#)
- [hour](#)
- [day](#)
- [you...know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [stay prepared](#)
- [it will be](#)
- [you...know when](#)
- [you...know when](#)

ULT

¹³ [Watch](#) therefore, for you do not [know](#) the [day](#) nor the [hour](#).

UST

¹³ Then Jesus continued by saying, “So, in order that this does not happen to you, [stay prepared](#) because you do not [know when it will be](#).”

Matthew 25:14

Connecting Statement:

Jesus tells a parable about faithful and unfaithful servants to illustrate that his disciples should remain faithful during his absence and be prepared for his return. (See: [Parables](#))

it is like (ULT)

it will be like (UST)

The word “it” here refers to the kingdom of heaven ([Matthew 13:24](#)).

going on a journey (ULT)

who was about to go on a long journey (UST)

“was ready to go” or “was to go soon”

gave them his wealth (ULT)

gave them each some of his wealth to invest and gain more money for him (UST)

“put them in charge of his wealth”

his wealth (ULT)

some of his wealth to invest and gain more money for him (UST)

“his property”

Translation Words - ULT

- [He called](#)
- [wealth](#)
- [it is like](#)
- [servants](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [He called...together](#)
- [some of...wealth](#)
- [it will be like](#)
- [servants](#)

ULT

14 For [it is like](#) a man going on a journey. [He called](#) his own [servants](#) and gave them his [wealth](#).

UST

14 “When the Son of Man returns from heaven as king, [it will be like](#) a man who was about to go on a long journey. [He called](#) his [servants together](#) and gave them each [some of](#) his [wealth](#) to invest and gain more money for him.

Matthew 25:15

five talents (ULT)

“five talents of gold.” Avoid translating this into modern money. A “talent” of gold was worth twenty years’ wages. The parable is contrasting the relative amounts of five, two, and one, as well as the large amount of wealth involved. Alternate translation: “five bags of gold” or “five bags of gold, each worth 20 years’ wages” (See: [Biblical Money](#))

to another he gave two...he gave one talent (ULT)

The word “talents” is understood from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: “to another he gave two talents of gold...gave one talent of gold” or “to another he gave two bags of gold...gave one bag of gold” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

according to his own ability (ULT)

The implicit information can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: “according to each servant’s skill in managing wealth” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

15 To one of them he gave five talents, to another he gave two, and to yet another he gave one talent. He gave to each one according to his own ability, and right away that man went on his journey.

UST

15 He gave them money according to their ability to use it. For example, he gave one servant five bags of gold weighing about 165 kilograms, he gave another servant two bags weighing about sixty-six kilograms, and he gave another servant one bag weighing about thirty-three kilograms. Then he left on his journey.

Matthew 25:16

The one who received the five talents...made another (ULT)

five...bags of gold...to gain...more (UST)

"out of his investments, he earned another five talents"

Translation Words - ULT

- [The one who received the five talents](#)
- [made](#)
- [and invested](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [who had received](#)
- [to gain](#)
- [used](#)

ULT

¹⁶ [The one who received the five talents](#) went [and invested](#) them and [made](#) another five talents.

UST

¹⁶ The servant [who had received](#) five bags of gold went immediately and [used](#) that money [to gain](#) five more bags.

Matthew 25:17

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling a parable about the servants and the talents.
(See: [Parables](#) and [Biblical Money](#))

the one who had received two talents...gained another (ULT)

two bags of gold...gained...more (UST)

"earned another two talents"

Translation Words - ULT

- [gained](#)
- [Likewise](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [gained](#)
- [Similarly](#)

ULT

¹⁷ [Likewise](#) the one who had received two talents also [gained](#) another two.

UST

¹⁷ [Similarly](#), the servant who had received two bags of gold [gained](#) two bags more.

Matthew 25:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- master's
- But the servant who had received one talent
- money

Translation Words - UST

- bag of gold...to keep it safe
- had received
- bag of gold...to keep it safe

ULT

¹⁸ But the servant who had received one talent went away, dug a hole in the ground, and hid his master's money.

UST

¹⁸ But the servant who had received one bag of gold went and dug a hole in the ground, and he hid it there to keep it safe.

Matthew 25:19

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling the parable about the servants and the talents. (See: [Parables](#) and [Biblical Money](#))

Now (ULT)

what (UST)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Jesus starts to tell a new part of the story.

Translation Words - ULT

- [master](#)
- [a...time](#)
- [of...servants](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the servants' master returned. He called them together to find out...had done with his money](#)
- [time](#)
- [the servants' master returned. He called them together to find out...had done with his money](#)

ULT

¹⁹ Now after a long [time](#) the [master](#) of those [servants](#) came back and settled accounts with them.

UST

¹⁹ After a long [time the servants' master returned. He called them together to find out](#) what they [had done with his money](#).

Matthew 25:20

The servant who had received the five talents...I have made (ULT)

five bags...I have gained (UST)

"I have earned five more talents"

The servant who had received the five talents (ULT)
bags (UST)

A "talent" was worth twenty years' wages. Avoid translating this into modern money. See how you translated this in [Matthew 25:15](#). (See: [Biblical Money](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Master
- The servant who had received the five talents
- I have made

Translation Words - UST

- Master, you gave
- had received
- I have gained

ULT

²⁰ [The servant who had received the five talents](#) came and brought another five talents. He said, '[Master](#), you gave me five talents. But see, [I have made](#) five talents more.'

UST

²⁰ The servant who [had received](#) five bags of gold brought him ten bags. He said, '[Master, you gave](#) me five bags of gold to take care of. Look, [I have gained](#) five more!'

Matthew 25:21

Well done (ULT)

servant (UST)

“You have done well” or “You have done right.” Your culture might have an expression that a master (or someone in authority) would use to show that he approves of what his servant (or someone under him) has done.

Enter into the joy of your master (ULT)

You have...Come...be happy with me (UST)

The phrase “Enter into the joy” is an idiom. Also, the master is speaking about himself in the third person. Alternate translation: “Come and be happy with me” (See: [Idiom](#) and [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- master
- of...master
- I will put...in charge
- faithful
- faithful
- Well done
- good
- joy
- servant

Translation Words - UST

- master
- be happy with me
- of money very well, so I will put...in charge
- been very faithful
- to me. You have managed a small amount
- servant
- very good
- be happy with me
- servant

ULT

²¹ His [master](#) said to him, ‘[Well done](#), [good](#) and [faithful servant](#)! You have been [faithful](#) over a few things. [I will put](#) you [in charge](#) over many things. Enter into the [joy](#) of your [master](#).’

UST

²¹ His [master](#) replied, ‘You are a [very good servant](#)! You have [been very faithful to me](#). [You have managed a small amount of money very well, so I will put](#) you [in charge](#) of a lot of things. Come and [be happy with me](#)!’

Matthew 25:22

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling the parable about the servants and the talents. (See: [Parables](#) and [Biblical Money](#))

The servant who had received two talents...I have made (ULT)

two bags of gold...I have gained (UST)

"I have earned two more talents"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Master](#)
- [I have made](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Master](#)
- [I have gained](#)

ULT

²² The servant who had received two talents also came and said, '[Master](#), you gave me two talents. But see, [I have made](#) two more talents.'

UST

²² The servant who had received two bags of gold also came, and he said, '[Master](#), you gave me two bags of gold to take care of. Look, [I have gained](#) two more!'

Matthew 25:23

Well done (ULT)

a...servant (UST)

“You have done well” or “You have done right.” Your culture might have an expression that a master (or someone in authority) would use to show that he approves of what his servant (or someone under him) has done. See how you translated this in [Matthew 25:21](#).

Enter into the joy of your master (ULT)

You have...Come...be happy with me (UST)

The phrase “Enter into the joy” is an idiom. Also, the master is speaking about himself in the third person. Alternate translation: “Come and be happy with me” See how you translated this in [Matthew 25:21](#). (See: [Idiom](#) and [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- master
- of...master
- I will put...in charge
- faithful
- faithful
- Well done
- good
- joy
- servant

Translation Words - UST

- master
- be happy with me
- I will put...in charge
- been very faithful to me
- You have managed a small amount of money very well, so
- a...servant
- very good
- be happy with me
- a...servant

ULT

²³ His [master](#) said to him, ‘[Well done](#), [good](#) and [faithful servant](#)! You have been [faithful](#) over a few things. [I will put](#) you [in charge](#) over many things. Enter into the [joy](#) of your [master](#).’

UST

²³ His [master](#) replied, ‘You are a [very good servant](#)! You have [been very faithful to me](#). [You have managed a small amount of money very well, so I will put](#) you [in charge](#) of a lot of things. Come and [be happy with me](#)!’

Matthew 25:24

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling the parable about the servants and the talents. (See: [Parables](#) and [Biblical Money](#))

You reap where you did not sow, and you harvest where you did not scatter (ULT)

The words “reap where you did not sow” and “harvest where you did not scatter” mean the same thing. They refer to a farmer who gathers crops that other people have planted. The servant uses this metaphor to accuse the master of taking what rightfully belongs to others. (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Metaphor](#))

you...scatter (ULT)

“scatter seed.” This refers to sowing seed by gently throwing handfuls of it onto the soil.

Translation Words - ULT

- Master
- the servant who had received one talent
- you...sow
- You reap
- strict
- I know

Translation Words - UST

- Master
- had received
- he did...plant
- who tries to harvest
- hard, harden, hardness
- I knew

ULT

²⁴ Then [the servant who had received one talent](#) also came and said, ‘[Master](#), [I know](#) that you are a [strict](#) man. [You reap](#) where you did not [sow](#), and you harvest where you did not scatter.

UST

²⁴ Then the servant who [had received](#) one bag of gold came. He said, ‘[Master](#), I was afraid of you. [I knew](#) that you are a man who expects to make a lot of money even if you invest nothing, like a farmer [who tries to harvest](#) a field [he did](#) not [plant](#).

Matthew 25:25

talent...See, you have here...to you (ULT)
the...ground. Here it is now; please take it back (UST)

“Look, here is what is yours”

Translation Words - ULT

- [I was afraid](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [I was afraid](#)

ULT

²⁵ [I was afraid](#), so I went away and hid your talent in the ground. See, you have here what belongs to you.’

UST

²⁵ [I was afraid](#) of what you might do if I lost the money you lent me to invest, so I hid it in the ground. Here it is now; please take it back!’

Matthew 25:26

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling a parable about the servants and the talents.
(See: [Parables](#))

**You wicked and lazy servant, you knew (ULT)
wicked...lazy...servant...You knew (UST)**

“You are a wicked servant who does not want to work. You knew”

**I reap where I have not sowed and harvest where I
have not scattered (ULT)
farmer who harvests grain from another man's field
where I did not even plant the seeds (UST)**

The words “reap where I have not sowed” and “harvest where I have not scattered” mean the same thing. They refer to a farmer who gathers crops that people who work for him have planted. See how you translated this in [Matthew 25:24](#), where the servant uses these words to accuse the farmer. The readers should understand that the farmer is acknowledging that he does indeed gather what others have planted but is saying that he is right to do so. (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [master](#)
- [You wicked](#)
- [I have...sowed](#)
- [I reap](#)
- [servant](#)
- [you knew](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [boss](#)
- [wicked...servant](#)
- [from another man's field where I did...even plant](#)
- [farmer who harvests grain](#)
- [wicked...servant](#)
- [You knew](#)

ULT

²⁶ But his [master](#) answered and said to him, ‘[You wicked](#) and lazy [servant](#), [you knew](#) that [I reap](#) where [I have](#) not [sowed](#) and harvest where I have not scattered.

UST

²⁶ His [boss](#) replied, ‘You [wicked](#), lazy [servant](#)! [You knew](#) that I take from others money that does not really belong to me, like a [farmer who harvests grain from another man's field where I did](#) not [even plant](#) the seeds!

Matthew 25:27

would have received back my money (ULT)

I would get it back with the interest it earned (UST)

The understood information can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "received back my own money" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

interest (ULT)

with the interest it earned (UST)

payment from the banker for the temporary use of the master's money

Translation Words - ULT

- [would have received back](#)
- [money](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [I would get it back](#)
- [money](#)

ULT

²⁷ Therefore you should have given my [money](#) to the bankers, and when I came I [would have received back](#) my money with interest.

UST

²⁷ So then, you should have at least put my [money](#) on deposit in a bank, so that when I returned [I would get it back](#) with the interest it earned!

Matthew 25:28

Connecting Statement:

Jesus concludes the parable about the servants and the talents. (See: [Parables](#) and [Biblical Money](#))

Therefore take away...the talent (ULT)

Then the master said to his other servants, 'Take...the bag of gold (UST)

The master is speaking to other servants.

the talent (ULT)

the bag of gold (UST)

A "talent" was worth twenty years' wages. Avoid translating this into modern money. See how you translated this in [Matthew 25:15](#). (See: [Biblical Money](#))

ULT

28 Therefore take away the talent from him and give it to the servant who has ten talents.

UST

28 Then the master said to his other servants, 'Take the bag of gold from him and give it to the servant who has the ten bags!

Matthew 25:29

For to everyone who possesses...For to everyone who possesses (ULT)
use well what they have received...use well what they have received (UST)

It is implied that the person who possesses something also uses it wisely. Alternate translation: “who uses well what he has” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

even more abundantly (ULT)
and they will have plenty (UST)

“even much more”

But from anyone who does not possess anything (ULT)
But from those who do not use well what they have received (UST)

It is implied that the person does possess something but he does not use it wisely. Alternate translation: “from anyone does not use well what he has” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

will be taken away (ULT)
they already have will be taken away (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God will take away” or “I will take away” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [more abundantly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [they will have plenty](#)

ULT

²⁹ For to everyone who possesses, more will be given—even [more abundantly](#). But from anyone who does not possess anything, even what he does have will be taken away from him.

UST

²⁹ To those who use well what they have received, God will give more, and [they will have plenty](#). But from those who do not use well what they have received, even what they already have will be taken away.

Matthew 25:30

the outer darkness (ULT) outside...the darkness (UST)

Here “outer darkness” is a metonym for the place where God sends those who reject them. This is a place that is completely separated from God forever. See how you translated this in [Matthew 8:12](#).

Alternate translation: “the dark place away from God” (See: [Metonymy](#))

weeping and grinding of teeth (ULT) with those who are wailing and grinding their teeth in pain (UST)

“Grinding of teeth” is symbolic action, representing extreme sadness and suffering. See how you translated this in [Matthew 8:12](#). Alternate translation: “weeping and expressing their extreme suffering” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Throw](#)
- [darkness](#)
- [servant](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [throw](#)
- [darkness](#)
- [servant](#)

ULT

³⁰ [Throw](#) the worthless [servant](#) into the outer [darkness](#), where there will be weeping and grinding of teeth.'

UST

³⁰ Furthermore, [throw](#) that worthless [servant](#) outside into the [darkness](#), where he will be with those who are wailing and grinding their teeth in pain.'"

Matthew 25:31

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to tell his disciples how he will judge people when he returns at the end time.

the Son of Man (ULT)

the Son of Man (UST)

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [angels](#)
- [glory](#)
- [glorious](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [throne](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [angels](#)
- [brilliant light](#)
- [throne to judge everyone](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [throne to judge everyone](#)

ULT

³¹ When the [Son of Man](#) comes in his [glory](#) and all the [angels](#) with him, then he will sit on his [glorious throne](#).

UST

³¹ "When the [Son of Man](#) comes again in his [brilliant light](#) and brings all his [angels](#), he will sit as king on his [throne to judge everyone](#).

Matthew 25:32

Before him will be gathered all the nations (ULT)
Everyone from all the people groups will be gathered in front of him (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "He will gather all the nations before him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Before him (ULT)
in front of him (UST)

"In front of him"

all the nations (ULT)
Everyone from all the people groups (UST)

Here "nations" refers to people. Alternate translation: "all people from every country" (See: [Metonymy](#))

as a shepherd separates the sheep from the goats (ULT)
as a shepherd separates his sheep from his goats (UST)

Jesus uses a simile to describe how he will separate the people. (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [he will separate the people](#)
- [separates](#)
- [goats](#)
- [shepherd](#)
- [will be gathered](#)
- [nations](#)
- [sheep](#)
- [as](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [he will separate](#)
- [separates](#)
- [his goats](#)
- [a shepherd](#)
- [will be gathered](#)
- [people groups](#)
- [his sheep](#)
- [as](#)

ULT

³² Before him [will be gathered](#) all the [nations](#), and [he will separate the people](#) one from another, [as](#) a [shepherd separates](#) the [sheep](#) from the [goats](#).

UST

³² Everyone from all the [people groups will be gathered](#) in front of him. Then [he will separate](#) the people one from another, [as a shepherd separates his sheep](#) from [his goats](#).

Matthew 25:33

He will place the sheep at his right hand, but the goats at his left (ULT)

He will put the righteous people on his right and the unrighteous ones on his left, just like sheep and goats (UST)

This is a metaphor that means the Son of Man will separate all people. He will put the righteous people at his right side, and he will put the sinners at his left side. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [right hand](#)
- [his left](#)
- [goats](#)
- [sheep](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [right](#)
- [his left](#)
- [goats](#)
- [just like sheep and](#)

ULT

³³ He will place the [sheep](#) at his [right hand](#), but the [goats](#) at [his left](#).

UST

³³ He will put the righteous people on his [right](#) and the unrighteous ones on [his left, just like sheep and goats](#)."

Matthew 25:34

the King...his right hand (ULT)
he will say...his right (UST)

Here, “the King” is another title for the Son of Man. Jesus was referring to himself in the third person. Alternate translation: “I, the King,...my right hand” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Come, you who have been blessed by my Father (ULT)
You people who have been blessed by my Father, come (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Come, you whom my Father has blessed” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

by my Father (ULT)
by my Father (UST)

This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

inherit the kingdom prepared for you (ULT)
Come receive all the good things he will give you, for he is now giving you the blessings of his rule—things he has been preparing (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “inherit the kingdom that God has made ready for you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

inherit the kingdom prepared for you (ULT)
Come receive all the good things he will give you, for he is now giving you the blessings of his rule—things he has been preparing (UST)

Here “kingdom” refers to God’s rule as king. Alternate translation: “receive the blessings of God’s rule that he has planned to give you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

from the foundation of the world (ULT)
since the time he created the world (UST)

“since he first created the world”

Translation Words - ULT

- [you who have been blessed](#)
- [inherit](#)
- [of the world](#)
- [right hand](#)
- [by...Father](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [King](#)
- [the foundation](#)
- [the foundation of the world](#)

ULT

³⁴ Then the [King](#) will say to those at his [right hand](#), ‘Come, [you who have been blessed](#) by my [Father](#), [inherit](#) the [kingdom](#) prepared for you from [the foundation of the world](#).’

UST

³⁴ Then [he will say](#) to those on his [right](#), ‘You people who [have been blessed](#) by my [Father](#), come! [Come receive all the good things he will give](#) you, for he is now giving you the blessings [of his rule—things](#) he has been preparing since [the time he created the world](#).’

Translation Words - UST

- have been blessed
- Come receive all the good things he will give
- the world
- right
- by...Father
- of his rule—things
- he will say
- the time he created
- the time he created the world

Matthew 25:35

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

³⁵ For I was hungry and you gave me something to eat; I was thirsty and you gave me something to drink; I was a stranger and you took me in;

UST

³⁵ These things belong to you, because you gave me something to eat when I was hungry. You gave me something to drink when I was thirsty. When I was a stranger in your town, you invited me to stay in your houses.

Matthew 25:36

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [prison](#)
- [you clothed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [prison](#)
- [you gave...some](#)

ULT

³⁶ I was naked and [you clothed](#) me; I was sick and you cared for me; I was in [prison](#) and you came to me.'

UST

³⁶ When I needed clothes, [you gave](#) me [some](#). When I was sick, you took care of me. When I was in [prison](#), you came to visit me.'

Matthew 25:37

the righteous (ULT)

the people whom God has declared to be good will reply (UST)

This can be stated as an adjective. Alternate translation: “the righteous people” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

Or thirsty (ULT)

were you thirsty (UST)

The understood information can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “Or when did we see you thirsty” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [righteous](#)
- [Lord](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the people whom God has declared to be good will reply](#)
- [Lord](#)

ULT

³⁷ Then the [righteous](#) will answer him and say, ‘[Lord](#), when did we see you hungry and feed you? Or thirsty and give you a drink?’

UST

³⁷ Then [the people whom God has declared to be good will reply](#), ‘[Lord](#), when were you hungry and we saw you and gave you something to eat? When were you thirsty and we gave you something to drink?’

Matthew 25:38

Or naked (ULT)

When did you need clothes (UST)

This is the end of a series of questions that begins in verse 37. The understood information can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "Or when did we see you naked" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [clothe you](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [we gave you some](#)

ULT

³⁸ And when did we see you a stranger and take you in? Or naked and [clothe you](#)?

UST

³⁸ When were you a stranger in our town and we invited you to stay in our houses? When did you need clothes and [we gave you some](#)?

Matthew 25:39

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [prison](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [prison](#)

ULT

³⁹ And when did we see you sick or in [prison](#) and come to you?’

UST

³⁹ When were you sick or in [prison](#) and we went to visit you? We do not remember doing any of these things for you.

Matthew 25:40

the King (ULT)

The King will reply (UST)

This is another title for the Son of Man. Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

and say to them (ULT)

The King will reply (UST)

“say to those at his right hand”

Truly I say to you (ULT)

The truth is that (UST)

“I tell you the truth.” This emphasizes what the King says next.

for one...least...brothers (ULT)

for any one...of your fellow believers...most unimportant one (UST)

“one of the least important”

of these brothers of mine (ULT)

of your fellow believers (UST)

Here “brothers” refers to anyone, male or female, who obeys the King. Alternate translation: “my brothers and sisters here” or “these who are like my brothers and sisters” (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

you did it...for me (ULT)

you did...for me (UST)

“I consider that you did it for me”

Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [Truly](#)
- [King](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of your fellow believers](#)
- [The truth is that](#)
- [The King will reply](#)

ULT

⁴⁰ Then the [King](#) will answer and say to them, ‘[Truly](#) I say to you, to the extent that you did it for one of the least of these [brothers](#) of mine, you did it for me.’

UST

⁴⁰ [The King will reply](#), ‘[The truth is that](#) whatever you did for any one [of your fellow believers](#), even the most unimportant one, you certainly did it for me.’

Matthew 25:41

Then he...will say (ULT)

then he will say (UST)

"Then the King will." Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

you cursed (ULT)

You people whom God has cursed (UST)

"you people whom God has cursed"

the eternal fire that has been prepared (ULT)

the eternal fire that God has prepared (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the eternal fire that God has prepared" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

to those...his...angels (ULT)

to those...his...angels (UST)

his helpers

Translation Words - ULT

- eternal
- angels
- devil
- you cursed
- his left hand
- fire

Translation Words - UST

- eternal
- angels
- devil
- You people whom God has cursed
- his left
- fire

ULT

⁴¹ Then he also will say to those at [his left hand](#), 'Depart from me, [you cursed](#), into the [eternal fire](#) that has been prepared for the [devil](#) and his [angels](#),

UST

⁴¹ But then he will say to those on [his left](#), '[You people whom God has cursed](#), leave me! Go into the [eternal fire](#) that God has prepared for the [devil](#) and his [angels](#)!

Matthew 25:42

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

⁴² because I was hungry, but you did not give me something to eat; I was thirsty, but you did not give me something to drink;

UST

⁴² It is right for you to go there, because you did not give me anything to eat when I was hungry. You did not give me anything to drink when I was thirsty.

Matthew 25:43**naked, but you did not clothe me (ULT)****You did not give me any clothes when I needed them (UST)**

The words "I was" preceding "naked" are understood. Alternate translation: "I was naked, but you did not give me clothes" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

sick and in prison (ULT)**I was sick or in prison (UST)**

The words "I was" preceding "sick" are understood. Alternate translation: "I was sick and in prison" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [prison](#)
- [you...clothe](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [prison](#)
- [You did...give...any clothes](#)

ULT

⁴³ I was a stranger, but you did not take me in; naked, but you did not [clothe](#) me; sick and in [prison](#), but you did not care for me.'

UST

⁴³ You did not invite me into your homes when I was a stranger in your town. [You did](#) not [give](#) me [any clothes](#) when I needed them. You did not take care of me when I was sick or in [prison](#).'

Matthew 25:44

General Information:

This is the end of the part of the story that began in [Matthew 23:1](#), where Jesus teaches about salvation and the final judgment.

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes telling his disciples how he will judge people when he returns at the end time.

they will also answer (ULT)

They will answer (UST)

“those on his left will also answer”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)
- [serve](#)
- [prison](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Lord](#)
- [we did...help](#)
- [prison](#)

ULT

⁴⁴ Then they will also answer and say, ‘[Lord](#), when did we see you hungry, or thirsty, or a stranger, or naked, or sick, or in [prison](#), and did not [serve](#) you?’

UST

⁴⁴ They will answer, ‘[Lord](#), when were you hungry or thirsty or a stranger or needing clothes or sick or in [prison](#), and [we did](#) not [help](#) you?’

Matthew 25:45

for one of the least of these (ULT)
any one of my people, even the most unimportant
person, it was I for whom (UST)

“for any of the least important ones of my people”

you...do it...did not...for me (ULT)
you did...do anything to help...not (UST)

“I consider that you did not do it for me” or “I was really the one
 whom you did not help”

Translation Words - ULT

- Truly

Translation Words - UST

- The truth is

ULT

⁴⁵ Then he will answer them and say, ‘
[Truly](#) I say to you, to the extent that you
 did not do it for one of the least of
 these, you did not do it for me.’

UST

⁴⁵ He will reply, ‘[The truth is](#) that
 whenever you did not do anything to
 help any one of my people, even the
 most unimportant person, it was I for
 whom you did not do it.’

Matthew 25:46

These will go away into eternal punishment (ULT)
Then those people on my left will go away to the place where God will punish them forever (UST)

"The King will send these to a place where they will receive punishment that never ends"

but the righteous into...life (ULT)
but the people good in God's sight will go to where they will live (UST)

The understood information can be made clear. Alternate translation: "but the King will send the righteous to the place where they will live forever with God" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

the...righteous (ULT)
but...the people good in God's sight will go (UST)

This nominative adjective can be stated as an adjective. Alternate translation: "the righteous people" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [life](#)
- [eternal](#)
- [eternal](#) (2)
- [righteous](#)
- [punishment](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [where they will live](#)
- [forever](#)
- [forever with God](#) (2)
- [the people good in God's sight will go](#)
- [the place where God will punish them](#)

ULT

⁴⁶ These will go away into [eternal punishment](#), but the [righteous](#) into [eternal life](#)."

UST

⁴⁶ Then those people on my left will go away to [the place where God will punish them forever](#), but [the people good in God's sight will go](#) to [where they will live forever with God](#)."

Matthew 26

Matthew 26 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 26:31, which is words from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

Sheep

Sheep are a common image used in Scripture to refer to the people of Israel. In Matthew 26:31, however, Jesus used the words “the sheep” to refer to his disciples and to say that they would run away when he was arrested.

Passover

The Passover festival was when the Jews would celebrate the day God killed the firstborn sons of the Egyptians but “passed over” the Israelites and let them live.

The eating of the body and blood

[Matthew 26:26-28](#) describes Jesus’ last meal with his followers. At this time, Jesus told them that what they were eating and drinking were his body and his blood. Nearly all Christian churches celebrate “the Lord’s Supper,” the “Eucharist”, or “Holy Communion” to remember this meal.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Judas’ kiss for Jesus

Matthew 26:49 describes how Judas kissed Jesus so the soldiers would know whom to arrest. The Jews would kiss each other when they greeted each other.

“I am able to destroy the temple of God”

Two men accused Jesus of saying that he could destroy the temple in Jerusalem and then rebuild it “in three days” (Matthew 26:61). They were accusing him of insulting God by claiming that God had given him the authority to destroy the temple and the power to rebuild it. What Jesus actually said was that if the Jewish authorities were to destroy this temple, he would certainly raise it up in three days (John 2:19).

Matthew 26:1

General Information:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story that tells of Jesus' crucifixion, death, and resurrection. Here he tells his disciples how he will suffer and die.

It came about that when (ULT) When (UST)

"After" or "Then, after." This phrase shifts the story from Jesus' teachings to what happened next.

all these words (ULT) all those things (UST)

This refers to all that Jesus taught starting in [Matthew 24:3](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [to...disciples](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [disciples](#)

ULT

¹ It came about that when [Jesus](#) had finished all these words, he said to his [disciples](#),

UST

¹ When [Jesus](#) had finished saying all those things, he said to the [disciples](#),

Matthew 26:2

the Son of Man will be delivered up to be crucified (ULT)
will hand the Son of Man over to those who will nail
him to a cross (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "some men will take the Son of Man to other people who will crucify him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the Son of Man (ULT)
the Son of Man (UST)

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [be crucified](#)
- [Passover](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [will be delivered up](#)
- [days](#)
- [You know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to those who will nail him to a cross](#)
- [Passover festival](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [will hand...over](#)
- [days](#)
- [You know](#)

ULT

² ["You know](#) that after two [days](#) the [Passover](#) is coming, and the [Son of Man](#) [will be delivered up](#) to [be crucified](#)."

UST

² ["You know](#) that two [days](#) from now we will celebrate the [Passover festival](#). At that time someone [will hand](#) the [Son of Man over to those who will nail him to a cross](#)."

Matthew 26:3

Connecting Statement:

These verses give background information about the Jewish leaders' plot to arrest and kill Jesus. (See: [Background Information](#))

were gathered together (ULT) gathered (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "came together" or "met together" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [who was named](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [high priest](#)
- [Caiaphas](#)
- [people](#)
- [were gathered together](#)
- [elders](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [whose name was](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [high priest](#)
- [Caiaphas](#)
- [Jewish elders](#)
- [gathered](#)
- [Jewish elders](#)

ULT

³ Then the [chief priests](#) and the [elders](#) of the [people were gathered together](#) in the palace of the [high priest, who was named Caiaphas](#).

UST

³ At the same time the [chief priests](#) and the [Jewish elders gathered](#) in the home of the [high priest, whose name was Caiaphas](#).

Matthew 26:4

Jesus stealthily (ULT)

Jesus in some tricky way (UST)

“Jesus secretly”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [arrest](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [they could arrest](#)

ULT

⁴ They plotted together to [arrest Jesus](#) stealthily and kill him.

UST

⁴ There they planned how [they could arrest Jesus](#) in some tricky way so that they could have him executed.

Matthew 26:5

Not during the feast (ULT)

We must not do it during the Passover festival (UST)

What the leaders did not want to do during the feast can be made clearer. Alternate translation: "We should not kill Jesus during the feast" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

during the feast (ULT)

during the Passover festival (UST)

This is the yearly Passover feast.

Translation Words - ULT

- [people](#)
- [feast](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the people](#)
- [Passover festival](#)

ULT

⁵ For they were saying, "Not during the [feast](#), so that a riot does not arise among the [people](#)."

UST

⁵ But they said, "We must not do it during the [Passover festival](#), because if we do it then, [the people](#) might riot."

Matthew 26:6

Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of a woman pouring expensive oil on Jesus before his death.

Now...Jesus (ULT)

While (UST)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Matthew starts to tell a new part of the story.

of Simon the leper (ULT)

of Simon, whom Jesus had healed of leprosy (UST)

It is implied that this is a man whom Jesus had healed from leprosy. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Now...Jesus](#)
- [Bethany](#)
- [leper](#)
- [the house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus and his disciples](#)
- [the village of Bethany, they ate](#)
- [leprosy](#)
- [the home](#)

ULT

⁶ [Now](#) while [Jesus](#) was in [Bethany](#) in [the house](#) of Simon the [leper](#),

UST

⁶ While [Jesus and his disciples](#) were in [the village of Bethany, they ate](#) in [the home](#) of Simon, whom Jesus had healed of [leprosy](#).

Matthew 26:7

as he was reclining at table (ULT)
he was eating (UST)

"Jesus was lying on his side." You can use your language's word for the position people usually are in when they eat.

a woman came to him (ULT)
During the meal, a woman came into the house...to Jesus as (UST)

"a woman came to Jesus"

an alabaster jar (ULT)
a beautiful stone jar (UST)

This is a costly container made of soft stone. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

of...ointment (ULT)
containing...perfume (UST)

oil that has a pleasing smell

she poured it upon his head (ULT)
She went up...poured all the perfume on his head (UST)

The woman does this to honor Jesus.

Translation Words - ULT

- [head](#)
- [of...ointment](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [head](#)
- [containing...perfume](#)

ULT

⁷ as he was reclining at table, a woman came to him having an alabaster jar of very expensive [ointment](#), and she poured it upon his [head](#).

UST

⁷ During the meal, a woman came into the house. She was carrying a beautiful stone jar [containing](#) very expensive [perfume](#). She went up to Jesus as he was eating and poured all the perfume on his [head](#).

Matthew 26:8

What is the reason for this waste (ULT) that this perfume was wasted (UST)

The disciples ask this question out of their anger over the woman's actions. Alternate translation: "This woman has done a bad thing by wasting this ointment!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [waste](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [disciples](#)
- [was wasted](#)

ULT

⁸ But when his [disciples](#) saw it, they became angry, saying, "What is the reason for this [waste](#)?"

UST

⁸ When the [disciples](#) saw that, they were very angry. One of them said, "It is terrible that this perfume [was wasted](#)!"

Matthew 26:9

This could have been sold for a large amount and given (ULT)

We could have sold it and gotten a lot of money for it! Then we could have given the money (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "She could have sold this for a large amount of money and given the money" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

to the poor (ULT)

to poor people (UST)

Here "the poor" can be stated as an adjective. Alternate translation: "to poor people" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

ULT

⁹ This could have been sold for a large amount and given to the poor."

UST

⁹ We could have sold it and gotten a lot of money for it! Then we could have given the money to poor people."

Matthew 26:10

**Why are you causing trouble for this woman (ULT)
what they were saying...You should not be bothering
this woman (UST)**

Jesus asks this question as a rebuke of his disciples. Alternate translation: "You should not be troubling this woman!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**are you causing (ULT)
You should not be bothering (UST)**

All occurrences of "you" are plural and refer to the disciples. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [a...work](#)
- [good](#)
- [trouble](#)
- [knowing this](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [She has done](#)
- [a beautiful](#)
- [You should not be bothering](#)
- [knew](#)

ULT

¹⁰ But [Jesus](#), [knowing this](#), said to them, "Why are you causing [trouble](#) for this woman? For she has done a [good work](#) for me.

UST

¹⁰ [Jesus knew](#) what they were saying, so he said to them, "[You should not be bothering](#) this woman! [She has done a beautiful](#) thing to me.

Matthew 26:11

the poor (ULT)

poor people (UST)

This can be stated as an adjective. Alternate translation: “poor people” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

ULT

11 For you always have the poor with you, but you will not always have me.

UST

11 Keep in mind that you will always have poor people among you, so you can help them whenever you want to. But I will not always be with you!

Matthew 26:12

ointment (ULT)

perfume (UST)

This is oil that has a pleasing smell. See how you translated this in [Matthew 26:7](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [body](#)
- [burial](#)
- [ointment](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [body, it was as if she knew that I am going to die soon](#)
- [being buried](#)
- [perfume](#)

ULT

¹² For when she poured this [ointment](#) on my [body](#), she did it for my [burial](#).

UST

¹² When she poured this [perfume](#) on my [body, it was as if she knew that I am going to die soon](#). And it is as if she had anointed my body for [being buried](#).

Matthew 26:13

Truly I say to you (ULT)

I will tell you this (UST)

"I tell you the truth." This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

wherever...good news is preached...this (ULT)

Wherever in...preach the good news about me (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "wherever people preach this good news" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

this...what...woman has done will also be spoken of in memory of her (ULT)

they will tell what this woman has done, and as a result, people will always remember her (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they will remember what this woman has done and will tell others about her" or "people will remember what this woman has done and will tell others about her" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Truly
- world
- good news
- is preached

Translation Words - UST

- I will tell you this
- world people
- good news about me
- preach

ULT

¹³ Truly I say to you, wherever this [good news is preached](#) in the whole [world](#), what this woman has done will also be spoken of in memory of her."

UST

¹³ [I will tell you this](#): Wherever in the entire [world people preach](#) the [good news about me](#), they will tell what this woman has done, and as a result, people will always remember her."

Matthew 26:14

Connecting Statement:

Judas Iscariot agrees to help the Jewish leaders arrest and kill Jesus.

Translation Words - ULT

- who was named
- twelve
- chief priests
- Judas Iscariot

Translation Words - UST

- Judas
- twelve disciples
- chief priests
- Judas...Iscariot, even though he was

ULT

¹⁴ Then one of the [twelve](#), [who was named Judas Iscariot](#), went to the [chief priests](#)

UST

¹⁴ Then [Judas Iscariot, even though he was](#) one of the [twelve disciples](#), went to the [chief priests](#).

Matthew 26:15

if I betray him to you (ULT)

I enable you to arrest Jesus (UST)

“to bring Jesus to you”

thirty pieces of silver (ULT)

thirty silver coins (UST)

Since these words are the same as those in an Old Testament prophecy, keep this form instead of changing it to modern money.

thirty pieces of silver (ULT)

thirty silver coins (UST)

“30 pieces” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [pieces of silver](#)
- [betray](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [silver coins](#)
- [enable...to arrest](#)

ULT

¹⁵ and said, “What are you willing to give me, if I [betray](#) him to you?” They weighed out thirty [pieces of silver](#) for him.

UST

¹⁵ He asked them, “If I [enable](#) you [to arrest](#) Jesus, how much money are you willing to give me?” They agreed to give him thirty [silver coins](#). So they counted out the coins and gave them to him.

Matthew 26:16

to betray him (ULT)
an opportunity...when they could arrest Jesus (UST)

“to give him over to them”

Translation Words - ULT

- [betray](#)
- [he sought](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [when they could arrest Jesus](#)
- [Judas watched for](#)

ULT

¹⁶ From that moment [he sought](#) an opportunity to [betray](#) him.

UST

¹⁶ From that time [Judas watched for](#) an opportunity [when they could arrest Jesus](#).

Matthew 26:17

Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of Jesus celebrating the Passover with his disciples.

Now (ULT) and (UST)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Matthew starts to tell a new part of the story.

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- unleavened bread
- Passover meal
- disciples

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Festival of Bread with No Yeast
- meal for the Passover Celebration so that we can
- disciples

ULT

17 Now on the first day of [unleavened bread](#) the [disciples](#) came to [Jesus](#), saying, "Where do you want us to prepare for you to eat the [Passover meal](#)?"

UST

17 On the first day of the week-long [Festival of Bread with No Yeast](#), the [disciples](#) went to [Jesus](#) and asked, "Where do you want us to prepare the [meal for the Passover Celebration so that we can](#) eat it with you?"

Matthew 26:18

He said, "Go into the city to a certain man and say to him, 'The Teacher says, "My time is near. I will keep the Passover at your house with my disciples (ULT) Jesus instructed two of the disciples about what they should do. He said to them, "Go into the city to a man with whom I have previously arranged this. Tell him that I, the Teacher, say this: 'The time that I told you about is near. I am going to celebrate the Passover meal with my disciples at your house, and I have sent these two to prepare the meal (UST)

This has quotations within quotations. You can state some of the direct quotations as indirect quotations. Alternate translation: "He told his disciples to go into the city to a certain man and tell him that the Teacher says to him, 'My time is at hand. I will keep the Passover at your house with my disciples.'" or "He told his disciples to go into the city to a certain man and say to him that the Teacher's time is at hand and he will keep the Passover with his disciples at that man's house." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

He...My...time (ULT)

Jesus instructed two of the disciples about...time that I told (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) "The time that I told you about" or 2) "The time God has set for me."

is near (ULT)

is near. I am going to (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) "is near" or 2) "has come." (See: [Idiom](#))

I will keep the Passover (ULT)

celebrate the Passover meal (UST)

"eat the Passover meal" or "celebrate the Passover by eating the special meal"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Passover](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [time](#)
- [Teacher](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Passover meal](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [time](#)
- [Teacher](#)

ULT

¹⁸ He said, "Go into the city to a certain man and say to him, 'The [Teacher](#) says, "My [time](#) is near. I will keep the [Passover](#) at your house with my [disciples](#).'"

UST

¹⁸ Jesus instructed two of the disciples about what they should do. He said to them, "Go into the city to a man with whom I have previously arranged this. Tell him that I, the [Teacher](#), say this: 'The [time](#) that I told you about is near. I am going to celebrate the [Passover meal](#) with my [disciples](#) at your house, and I have sent these two to prepare the meal."

Matthew 26:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Passover meal
- disciples
- as

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Passover meal
- two disciples
- as

ULT

¹⁹ The [disciples](#) did [as Jesus](#) directed them, and they prepared the [Passover meal](#).

UST

¹⁹ So the [two disciples](#) did [as Jesus](#) told them. They went and prepared the [Passover meal](#) in that man's house.

Matthew 26:20

he reclined to eat (ULT)
was eating the meal (UST)

Use the word for the position people in your culture usually are in when they eat.

Translation Words - ULT

- [twelve disciples](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [twelve disciples](#)

ULT

²⁰ Now when evening came, he reclined to eat with the [twelve disciples](#).

UST

²⁰ When that evening had come, Jesus was eating the meal with the [twelve disciples](#).

Matthew 26:21

Truly I say to you (ULT)

Listen carefully to this (UST)

"I tell you the truth." This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

Translation Words - ULT

- Truly
- will betray

Translation Words - UST

- Listen carefully to this
- is going to enable my enemies to arrest

ULT

²¹ As they were eating, he said, "[Truly](#) I say to you that one of you [will betray](#) me."

UST

²¹ He said to them, "[Listen carefully to this](#): One of you [is going to enable my enemies to arrest](#) me."

Matthew 26:22

Surely not I, Lord (ULT) Lord, it is surely not I (UST)

“I am surely not the one, am I, Lord?” Possible meanings are 1) this is a rhetorical question since the apostles were sure they would not betray Jesus. Alternate translation: “Lord, I would never betray you!” or 2) this was a sincere question since Jesus’ statement probably troubled and confused them. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Lord](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Lord](#)

ULT

²² They were very sorrowful, and each one began to ask him, “Surely not I, [Lord](#)?”

UST

²² The disciples were very sad. They began to say to him, one after the other, “[Lord](#), it is surely not I!”

Matthew 26:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [will betray](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [dipping bread into the sauce](#)
- [will enable my enemies to arrest](#)

ULT

²³ He answered and said, "The one who dips his [hand](#) with me in the dish, he [will betray](#) me.

UST

²³ He replied, "The one who [will enable my enemies to arrest](#) me is the one of you who is [dipping bread into the sauce](#) in the dish along with me.

Matthew 26:24

The Son of Man (ULT)

It is certain that I, the Son of Man, will die (UST)

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

will go (ULT)

Man, will die (UST)

Here “go” is a polite way to refer to dying. Alternate translation: “will go to his death” or “will die” (See: [Euphemism](#))

just as it is written about him (ULT)

because that is what the scriptures say about me (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “just as the prophets wrote about him in the scriptures” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

to that man by whom the Son of Man is betrayed (ULT)

for the man who enables my enemies to arrest me (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the man who betrays the Son of Man” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- woe
- Son...of Man
- Son of Man
- better
- is betrayed
- just as
- it is written

Translation Words - UST

- there will be terrible punishment
- Son...of Man, will die
- enables my enemies to arrest me
- better for
- enables my enemies to arrest me
- because that is what
- the scriptures say

ULT

²⁴ The [Son of Man](#) will go, [just as it is written](#) about him. But [woe](#) to that man by whom the [Son of Man is betrayed](#)! It would be [better](#) for him if that man had not been born.”

UST

²⁴ It is certain that I, the [Son of Man, will die, because that is what the scriptures say](#) about me. But [there will be terrible punishment](#) for the man who [enables my enemies to arrest me](#)! It would be [better for](#) that man if he had never been born!”

Matthew 26:25

Surely it is not I, Rabbi (ULT)

Teacher, surely it is not I (UST)

“Rabbi, am I the one who will betray you?” Judas may be using a rhetorical question to deny that he is the one who will betray Jesus. Alternate translation: “Rabbi, surely I am not the one who will betray you” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

You have said it yourself (ULT)

Yes, you are admitting it (UST)

This is an idiom that Jesus uses to mean “yes” without being completely clear about what he means. Alternate translation: “You are saying it” or “You are admitting it” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Rabbi](#)
- [Judas](#)
- [who would betray](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Teacher, surely](#)
- [Judas](#)
- [was going to betray](#)

ULT

²⁵ Now [Judas, who would betray](#) him. answered and said, “Surely it is not I, [Rabbi?](#)” He said to him, “You have said it yourself.”

UST

²⁵ Then [Judas, the one who was going to betray](#) him, said, “[Teacher, surely](#) it is not I!” Jesus replied, “Yes, you are admitting it.”

Matthew 26:26

Connecting Statement:

Jesus institutes the Lord's Supper as he celebrates the Passover with his disciples.

took...blessed it...and broke it (ULT)

took...thanked God for it. He broke it into pieces (UST)

See how you translated these words in [Matthew 14:19](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [blessed it](#)
- [body](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [bread](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [thanked God for it. He](#)
- [body](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [a loaf of bread](#)

ULT

²⁶ As they were eating, [Jesus](#) took [bread](#), [blessed it](#), and broke it. He gave it to the [disciples](#) and said, "Take, eat. This is my [body](#)."

UST

²⁶ While they were eating, [Jesus](#) took [a loaf of bread](#) and [thanked God for it. He](#) broke it into pieces, gave it to the [disciples](#), and said, "Take this bread and eat it. It is my [body](#)."

Matthew 26:27

He took (ULT)

Later he took...and (UST)

Translate “took” as you did in [Matthew 14:19](#).

a cup (ULT)

a cup of wine (UST)

Here “cup” refers to the cup and the wine in it. (See: [Metonymy](#))

and gave it to them (ULT)

gave it to them (UST)

“gave it to the disciples”

Drink from it (ULT)

Drink from this cup (UST)

“Drink the wine from this cup”

ULT

²⁷ He took a cup and gave thanks, and gave it to them, saying, “Drink from it, all of you.

UST

²⁷ Later he took a cup of wine and thanked God for it. Then he gave it to them and said, “Drink from this cup, all of you.

Matthew 26:28

For this is my blood (ULT)

The wine in this cup represents my blood (UST)

“For this wine is my blood”

blood...of the covenant (ULT)

blood...body . With my blood I will sign the agreement that God has made (UST)

“blood that shows that the covenant is in effect” or “blood that makes the covenant possible”

is poured out (ULT)

which will soon flow from my (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “will soon flow out of my body” or “will flow out of my wounds when I die” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of sins](#)
- [the forgiveness](#)
- [blood](#)
- [covenant](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the sins of](#)
- [forgive](#)
- [blood](#)
- [that God has made](#)

ULT

²⁸ For this is my [blood](#) of the [covenant](#) that is poured out for many for [the forgiveness of sins](#).

UST

²⁸ The wine in this cup represents my [blood](#), which will soon flow from my body. With my blood I will sign the agreement [that God has made](#) to [forgive the sins of](#) many people.

Matthew 26:29

I say...to you (ULT)

Note this carefully: I will...Note this carefully: I will (UST)

This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

fruit of the vine (ULT)

wine (UST)

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "wine" (See: [Idiom](#))

in my Father's kingdom (ULT)

my Father rules completely (UST)

Here "kingdom" refers to God's rule as king. Alternate translation: "when my Father establishes his rule on earth" (See: [Metonymy](#))

my Father's (ULT)

my Father (UST)

This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Father's](#)
- [Father's...kingdom](#)
- [vine](#)
- [fruit](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [day](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Father](#)
- [Father...rules completely](#)
- [wine](#)
- [wine](#)
- [rules completely](#)
- [time](#)

ULT

²⁹ But I say to you, I will certainly not drink again of this [fruit](#) of the [vine](#), until that [day](#) when I drink it new with you in my [Father's kingdom](#)."

UST

²⁹ Note this carefully: I will not drink [wine](#) in this way anymore until the [time](#) when I drink it with you with a new meaning. That will happen when my [Father rules completely](#)."

Matthew 26:30

General Information:

In verse 31, Jesus quotes the prophet Zechariah to show that in order to fulfill prophecy, all of his disciples will leave him.

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach his disciples as they walk to the Mount of Olives.

When they had sung a hymn (ULT)

After they sang a hymn (UST)

a song of praise to God

Translation Words - ULT

- [Mount of Olives](#)
- [of Olives](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Mount of Olives](#)
- [Olives](#)

ULT

³⁰ When they had sung a hymn, they went out to the [Mount of Olives](#).

UST

³⁰ After they sang a hymn, they started out toward the [Mount of Olives](#).

Matthew 26:31

will fall away (ULT)

will desert (UST)

“leave me”

for it is written (ULT)

because these words that God said are written in the scriptures (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “for the prophet Zechariah wrote long ago in the scriptures” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

I will strike (ULT)

I will cause men to kill (UST)

Here “I” refers to God. It is implied that God will cause or allow people to harm and kill Jesus. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the shepherd...the sheep of the flock (ULT)

the shepherd...all the sheep (UST)

These are metaphors that refer to Jesus and the disciples. (See: [Metaphor](#))

the sheep of the flock will be scattered (ULT)

they will scatter all the sheep (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they will scatter all the sheep of the flock” or “the sheep of the flock will run off in all directions” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [shepherd](#)
- [flock](#)
- [sheep](#)
- [it is written](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [shepherd](#)
- [all](#)
- [sheep](#)
- [these words that God said are written in the scriptures](#)

ULT

31 Then [Jesus](#) said to them, “All of you will fall away tonight because of me, for [it is written](#), ‘I will strike the [shepherd](#) and the [sheep](#) of the [flock](#) will be scattered.’”

UST

31 On the way, [Jesus](#) told them, “This night all of you will desert me because of what will happen to me! This is certain to happen because [these words that God said are written in the scriptures](#): ‘I will cause men to kill the [shepherd](#), and they will scatter [all](#) the [sheep](#).’”

Matthew 26:32**after...I am raised up (ULT)****after I have died and...become alive again, I (UST)**

Here to raise up is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “after God raises me up” or “after God brings me back to life” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Galilee](#)
- [am raised up](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Galilee and meet you there](#)
- [become alive again](#)

ULT

³² But after I [am raised up](#), I will go ahead of you into [Galilee](#).”

UST

³² But after I have died and [become alive again](#), I will go ahead of you to [Galilee and meet you there](#).”

Matthew 26:33

fall away (ULT)

will desert you (UST)

See how you translated this in [Matthew 26:31](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Peter](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Peter](#)

ULT

³³ But [Peter](#) answered and said to him, "Even if all fall away because of you, I will never fall away."

UST

³³ [Peter](#) replied, "Perhaps all the other disciples will desert you when they see what happens to you, but I certainly will never leave you!"

Matthew 26:34

Truly I say to you (ULT)

The truth is that (UST)

"I tell you the truth." This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

before the rooster crows (ULT)

before the rooster crows (UST)

Roosters often crow about the time the sun comes up, so the hearers might have understood these words as a metonym for the sun coming up. However, the actual crowing of a rooster is an important part of the story later on, so keep the word "rooster" in the translation. (See: [Metonymy](#))

the rooster (ULT)

the rooster (UST)

a male chicken, a bird that calls out loudly around the time the sun comes up

crows (ULT)

crows (UST)

This is the common English word for what a rooster does to make his loud call.

you will deny me three times (ULT)

you will say three times that you do not know me (UST)

"you will say three times that you are not my follower"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Truly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [The truth is](#)

ULT

³⁴ [Jesus](#) said to him, "[Truly](#) I say to you, this very night, before the rooster crows, you will deny me three times."

UST

³⁴ [Jesus](#) replied to him, "[The truth is](#) that this very night, before the rooster crows, you will say three times that you do not know me!"

Matthew 26:35

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [die](#)
- [the same thing](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [disciples](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [they kill](#)
- [same thing](#)

ULT

³⁵ [Peter](#) said to him, "Even if I must [die](#) with you, I will certainly not deny you." All the other [disciples](#) said [the same thing](#).

UST

³⁵ [Peter](#) said to him, "Even if [they kill](#) me while I am defending you, I will never say that I do not know you!" All the rest of the [disciples](#) also said the [same thing](#).

Matthew 26:36

Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of Jesus praying in Gethsemane.

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- called
- disciples
- and pray
- Gethsemane

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- that is called
- disciples
- pray
- Gethsemane. There

ULT

³⁶ Then [Jesus](#) went with them to a place [called Gethsemane](#) and said to his [disciples](#), "Sit here while I go over there [and pray](#)."

UST

³⁶ Then [Jesus](#) went with the [disciples](#) to a place [that is called Gethsemane](#). [There](#) he said, "Stay here while I go over there and [pray](#)."

Matthew 26:37

and began to become sorrowful (ULT)
He became extremely distressed (UST)

“he became very sad”

Translation Words - ULT

- [sons](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [of Zebedee](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [James, and John with him](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [James, and John with him](#)

ULT

³⁷ He took [Peter](#) and the two [sons of Zebedee](#) with him and began to become sorrowful and troubled.

UST

³⁷ He took [Peter, James, and John with him](#). He became extremely distressed.

Matthew 26:38

My soul is deeply sorrowful (ULT)

I am very sorrowful, so much so that I feel as if I were (UST)

Here "soul" refers to the whole person. Alternate translation: "I am very sad" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

even to death (ULT)

about to die (UST)

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "and I feel as if I could even die" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [soul](#)
- [death](#)
- [watch](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [I feel as if I were](#)
- [die](#)
- [stay awake](#)

ULT

³⁸ Then he said to them, "My [soul](#) is deeply sorrowful, even to [death](#). Remain here and [watch](#) with me."

UST

³⁸ Then he said to them, "I am very sorrowful, so much so that [I feel as if I were](#) about to [die](#)! Remain here and [stay awake](#) with me!"

Matthew 26:39**fell on his face (ULT)****he threw himself facedown on the ground (UST)**

He purposely lay face down on the ground to pray. (See: [Idiom](#))

My Father (ULT)**My Father (UST)**

This is an important title for God that shows the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

let this cup pass from me (ULT)**do not make me suffer in the way I know I will have to (UST)**

Jesus speaks of the work that he must do, including dying on the cross, as if it were a bitter liquid that God has commanded him to drink from a cup. The word “cup” is an important word in the New Testament, so try to use an equivalent for that in your translation. (See: [Metaphor](#))

this cup (ULT)**do not make me suffer in the way I know I will have to (UST)**

Here “cup” is a metonym that stands for the cup and the contents within it. The contents in the cup are a metaphor for the suffering that Jesus will have to endure. Jesus is asking the Father if it is possible for him not to have to experience the death and suffering that Jesus knows will soon happen. (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Yet, not as I will, but as you will (ULT)**But do not do as I want. Instead, do as you want (UST)**

This can be expressed as a full sentence. Alternate translation: “But do not do what I want; instead, do what you want” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Father](#)
- [and prayed](#)
- [face](#)
- [as](#)
- [as...will](#) (2)
- [fell](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Father](#)
- [He prayed](#)
- [facedown](#)
- [do...as](#)
- [do as](#) (2)
- [he threw...the ground](#)

ULT

³⁹ He went a little farther, [fell](#) on his [face](#), [and prayed](#). He said, “My [Father](#), if it is possible, let this cup pass from me. Yet, not [as](#) I will, but as you [will](#).”

UST

³⁹ After going a little farther, [he threw](#) himself [facedown](#) on [the ground](#). [He prayed](#), “My [Father](#), if it is possible, do not make me suffer in the way I know I will have to. But do not do [as](#) I want. Instead, [do as](#) you want!”

Matthew 26:40

**he said to Peter, "So, could you not...watch (ULT)
Peter...said to him, "I am disappointed that you men
fell asleep and were not able...to stay awake (UST)**

Jesus is speaking to Peter, but the "you" is plural, referring to Peter, James, and John. (See: [Forms of You](#))

**So, could you not watch with me for one hour (ULT)
him, "I am disappointed that you men fell asleep and
were not able to stay awake with me for just a short
time (UST)**

Jesus uses a question to scold Peter, James, and John. Alternate translation: "I am disappointed that you could not stay awake with me for one hour!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [hour](#)
- [sleeping](#)
- [watch](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [three disciples](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [for just a short time](#)
- [were sleeping. He woke](#)
- [to stay awake](#)

ULT

⁴⁰ Then he came to the [disciples](#) and found them [sleeping](#), and he said to [Peter](#), "So, could you not [watch](#) with me for one [hour](#)?"

UST

⁴⁰ Then he returned to the [three disciples](#) and saw that they [were sleeping](#). [He woke Peter](#) and said to him, "I am disappointed that you men fell asleep and were not able [to stay awake](#) with me [for just a short time](#)!"

Matthew 26:41

you do not enter into temptation (ULT)

you can resist when anyone tempts you to sin (UST)

Here the abstract noun “temptation” can be stated as a verb.

Alternate translation: “no one tempts you to sin” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

The spirit indeed is willing, but the flesh is weak (ULT)

You want to do what I tell you, but you are not strong enough to actually do it (UST)

Here “spirit” is a metonym that stands for a person’s desires to do good. “Flesh” stands for the needs and desires of a person’s body. Jesus means that the disciples may have the desire to do what God wants, but as humans they are weak and often fail. (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [flesh](#)
- [temptation](#)
- [spirit](#)
- [pray](#)
- [Watch](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [you are not strong enough to actually do it](#)
- [tempts you to sin](#)
- [You want to do what I tell you](#)
- [pray](#)
- [You must keep alert](#)

ULT

⁴¹ [Watch](#) and [pray](#) that you do not enter into [temptation](#). The [spirit](#) indeed is willing, but the [flesh](#) is weak.”

UST

⁴¹ [You must keep alert](#) and [pray](#) so that you can resist when anyone [tempts you to sin](#). [You want to do what I tell you](#), but [you are not strong enough to actually do it](#).”

Matthew 26:42

He went away (ULT)

He went away (UST)

“Jesus went away”

a second time (ULT)

a second time (UST)

The first time is described in [Matthew 26:39](#). (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

My Father (ULT)

My Father (UST)

This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

if this cannot pass away unless I drink it (ULT)

if it is necessary for me to suffer, may (UST)

“if the only way this can pass away is if I drink it.” Jesus speaks of the work that he must do as if it were a bitter liquid that God has commanded him to drink. (See: [Metaphor](#))

if...this (ULT)

if...it is necessary for me to suffer, may (UST)

Here “this” refers to the cup and the contents within it, a metaphor for suffering, as in [Matthew 26:39](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

unless I drink it (ULT)

it is necessary for me to suffer, may (UST)

“unless I drink from it” or “unless I drink from this cup of suffering.” Here “it” refers to the cup and the contents within it, a metaphor for suffering, as in [Matthew 26:39](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

your will be done (ULT)

what you want happen (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “may what you want happen” or “do what you want to do” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [your...will](#)
- [and prayed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [you want](#)
- [He prayed](#)

ULT

⁴² He went away a second time [and prayed](#) again. He said, “My Father, if this cannot pass away unless I drink it, your [will](#) be done.”

UST

⁴² He went away a second time. [He prayed](#), “My Father, if it is necessary for me to suffer, may what [you want](#) happen!”

Matthew 26:43

were...their eyes...heavy (ULT)

were asleep...They could not keep their eyes open (UST)

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "they were very sleepy" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sleeping](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [were asleep](#)

ULT

⁴³ He came again and found them [sleeping](#), for their eyes were heavy.

UST

⁴³ When he returned to the three disciples, he saw that they [were asleep](#) again. They could not keep their eyes open.

Matthew 26:44

a third time (ULT)

a third time (UST)

The first time is described in [Matthew 26:39](#). (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and prayed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [He prayed](#)

ULT

⁴⁴ So leaving them again, he went away [and prayed](#) a third time, saying the same words again.

UST

⁴⁴ So he left them and went away again. [He prayed](#) a third time, saying the same thing that he had prayed before.

Matthew 26:45

Are you still sleeping and taking your rest (ULT)
I am disappointed that you are still sleeping and resting (UST)

Jesus uses a question to scold the disciples for going to sleep.
 Alternate translation: "I am disappointed that you are still sleeping and resting!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

the hour is approaching (ULT)
Someone is about to (UST)

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "the time has come" (See: [Idiom](#))

the Son of Man is being betrayed (ULT)
enable...to arrest me...the...Son of Man (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone is betraying the Son of Man" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the Son of Man (ULT)
the...Son of Man (UST)

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

is being betrayed into the hands of sinners (ULT)
enable sinful men to arrest me (UST)

Here "hands" refers to power or control. Alternate translation: "betrayed into the power of sinners" or "betrayed so that sinners will have power over him" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Look (ULT)
Look (UST)

"Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

Translation Words - ULT

- [of sinners](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [Son of Man](#)
- [is approaching](#)
- [the hands](#)
- [is being betrayed](#)
- [Are you...sleeping](#)
- [still](#)
- [hour](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sinful men](#)

ULT

⁴⁵ Then Jesus came to the [disciples](#) and said to them, "[Are you still sleeping](#) and taking your rest? Look, the [hour is approaching](#), and the [Son of Man is being betrayed](#) into [the hands of sinners](#)."

UST

⁴⁵ Then he returned to all the [disciples](#). He woke them up and said to them, "[I am disappointed that you are still sleeping](#) and resting! Look! [Someone is about to enable sinful men to arrest me](#), the [Son of Man](#)!"

- disciples
- Son of Man
- Someone is about to
- enable...to arrest me
- enable...to arrest me
- sleeping
- I am disappointed that you are still
- Someone is about to

Matthew 26:46

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the one who is betraying
- Arise

Translation Words - UST

- is enabling them to arrest
- Get up

ULT

⁴⁶ [Arise](#), let us go. Look, [the one who is betraying](#) me is near.”

UST

⁴⁶ [Get up](#)! Let us go to meet them! Here comes the one who [is enabling them to arrest](#) me!”

Matthew 26:47

Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of when Judas betrayed Jesus and the religious leaders arrested him.

While he was still speaking (ULT)

While Jesus was still speaking...arrived. Even though he was (UST)

"While Jesus was still speaking"

clubs (ULT)

clubs was coming (UST)

large pieces of hard wood for hitting people

Translation Words - ULT

- [twelve](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [Judas](#)
- [people](#)
- [elders](#)
- [swords](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [twelve disciples](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [Judas](#)
- [elders had sent them](#)
- [elders had sent them](#)
- [swords](#)

ULT

⁴⁷ While he was still speaking, behold, [Judas](#), one of the [twelve](#), came. With him was a large crowd with [swords](#) and clubs, sent from the [chief priests](#) and [elders](#) of the [people](#).

UST

⁴⁷ While Jesus was still speaking, [Judas](#) arrived. Even though he was one of the [twelve disciples](#), he came to enable Jesus' enemies to arrest him. A large crowd carrying [swords](#) and clubs was coming with him. The [chief priests](#) and [elders had sent them](#).

Matthew 26:48

Now...Seize him (ULT)

Judas had previously arranged to give them a signal...

Arrest him (UST)

Here "Now" is used to mark a break in the main story line. Here Matthew tells background information about Judas and the signal he planned to use to betray Jesus. (See: [Background Information](#))

**saying, "Whoever I kiss, he is the one. Seize him (ULT)
He had told them, "The man whom I will kiss is the one
you want. Arrest him (UST)**

This direct quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation.
Alternate translation: "saying that whoever he kissed was the one they should seize." (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Whoever I kiss (ULT)

The man whom I will kiss (UST)

"The one I kiss" or "The man whom I kiss"

I kiss (ULT)

I will kiss (UST)

This was a respectful way to greet one's teacher.

Translation Words - ULT

- [a signal](#)
- [was going to betray](#)
- [I kiss](#)
- [Seize](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Judas had previously arranged to give them a signal](#)
- [Judas had previously arranged to give them a signal](#)
- [I will kiss](#)
- [Arrest](#)

ULT

⁴⁸ Now the man who [was going to betray](#) Jesus had given them [a signal](#), saying, "Whoever [I kiss](#), he is the one. [Seize](#) him."

UST

⁴⁸ [Judas had previously arranged to give them a signal](#). He had told them, "The man whom [I will kiss](#) is the one you want. [Arrest](#) him!"

Matthew 26:49

he came up to Jesus (ULT)

He...went to Jesus and (UST)

"Judas came up to Jesus"

he kissed him (ULT)

he kissed Jesus (UST)

"met him with a kiss." Good friends would kiss each other on the cheek, but a disciple would probably kiss his master on the hand to show respect. No one knows for sure how Judas kissed Jesus.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Rabbi](#)
- [he kissed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to Jesus and](#)
- [Teacher](#)
- [he kissed](#)

ULT

⁴⁹ Immediately he came up to [Jesus](#) and said, "Greetings, [Rabbi!](#)" and [he kissed](#) him.

UST

⁴⁹ He immediately went [to Jesus and](#) said, "Greetings, [Teacher!](#)" Then [he kissed](#) Jesus.

Matthew 26:50

Then they came (ULT)

Then...stepped forward (UST)

Here "they" refers to the people with clubs and swords that came with Judas and the religious leaders.

laid hands on Jesus, and seized him (ULT)

to...the men who came with Judas...and seized Jesus (UST)

"grabbed Jesus, and arrested him"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [hands](#)
- [seized](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [the men who came with Judas](#)
- [seized](#)

ULT

⁵⁰ [Jesus](#) said to him, "Friend, do what you came to do." Then they came, laid [hands](#) on [Jesus](#), and [seized](#) him.

UST

⁵⁰ [Jesus](#) replied, "Friend, what you are about to do, do it quickly." Then [the men who came with Judas](#) stepped forward and [seized Jesus](#).

Matthew 26:51

Behold (ULT)

Suddenly (UST)

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [high priest](#)
- [hand](#)
- [sword](#)
- [servant](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [high priest](#)
- [pulled...out of its sheath](#)
- [sword](#)
- [servant](#)

ULT

⁵¹ Behold, one of those who was with [Jesus](#) stretched out his [hand](#), drew his [sword](#), and struck the [servant](#) of the [high priest](#), and cut off his ear.

UST

⁵¹ Suddenly, one of the men who was with [Jesus](#) [pulled](#) his [sword out of its sheath](#). He struck the [servant](#) of the [high priest](#) to kill him, but only cut off his ear.

Matthew 26:52

those who take up the sword (ULT)

those who try to kill others with a sword (UST)

The word “sword” is a metonym for the act of killing someone with a sword. The implied information can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: “who pick up a sword to kill others” or “who want to kill other people” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the sword will perish by the sword (ULT)

with a sword—someone else will kill them with a sword (UST)

“sword will die by means of the sword” or “sword—it is with the sword that someone will kill them”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [will perish](#)
- [Put...back](#)
- [sword](#)
- [the sword](#)
- [the sword](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [someone else will kill them](#)
- [Put...back](#)
- [sword](#)
- [with a sword](#)
- [a sword](#)

ULT

⁵² Then [Jesus](#) said to him, “[Put](#) your [sword back](#) in its place, for all those who take up [the sword will perish](#) by [the sword](#).”

UST

⁵² [Jesus](#) said to him, “[Put](#) your [sword back](#) in its sheath! All those who try to kill others [with a sword](#)—[someone else will kill them](#) with [a sword](#)!”

Matthew 26:53

Or do you think that I could not call upon...of angels (ULT)

Do you think that if I asked...not...of angels (UST)

Jesus uses a question to remind the person with the sword that Jesus could stop those who are arresting him. Alternate translation: "Surely you know that I could call...angels" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

you think (ULT)

Do you think that if I asked...not (UST)

Here "you" is singular and refers to the person with the sword. (See: [Forms of You](#))

my Father (ULT)

my Father (UST)

This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

more than twelve legions of angels (ULT)

more than twelve armies of angels (UST)

The word "legion" is a military term that refers to a group of about 6,000 soldiers. Jesus means God would send enough angels to easily stop those who are arresting Jesus. The exact number of angels is not important. Alternate translation: "more than 12 really large groups of angels" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of angels](#)
- [Father](#)
- [he would send](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of angels](#)
- [Father](#)
- [he would...send](#)

ULT

⁵³ Or do you think that I could not call upon my [Father](#), and [he would send](#) me more than twelve legions [of angels](#) at once?

UST

⁵³ Do you think that if I asked my [Father](#), [he would](#) not immediately [send](#) more than twelve armies [of angels](#) to help me?

Matthew 26:54

But how then would the scriptures be fulfilled, that this must happen (ULT)

But if I did that, what the prophets have written in the scriptures about what will happen to the Messiah would not be fulfilled (UST)

Jesus uses a question to explain why he is letting these people arrest him. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "But if I did that, I would not be able to fulfill what God said in the scriptures must happen" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [scriptures](#)
- [would...be fulfilled](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [scriptures](#)
- [would not be fulfilled](#)

ULT

⁵⁴ But how then would the [scriptures be fulfilled](#), that this must happen?"

UST

⁵⁴ But if I did that, what the prophets have written in the [scriptures](#) about what will happen to the Messiah [would not be fulfilled](#)."

Matthew 26:55

Have you come out with swords and clubs to seize me, as against a robber (ULT)

You have come here to seize me with swords and clubs, as if I were a bandit (UST)

Jesus is using this question to point out the wrong actions of those arresting him. Alternate translation: "You know that I am not a robber, so it is wrong for you to come out to me bringing swords and clubs" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

clubs (ULT)

clubs (UST)

large pieces of hard wood for hitting people

in the temple (ULT)

in the temple (UST)

It is implied that Jesus was not in the actual temple. He was in the courtyard around the temple. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- temple
- teaching
- a robber
- swords
- as
- time
- day
- to seize
- you...arrest

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- temple
- courtyard, teaching the people. Why
- a bandit
- swords
- as if I were
- At that time
- Day after day
- to seize
- did you...arrest

ULT

⁵⁵ At that [time Jesus](#) said to the crowd, "Have you come out with [swords](#) and clubs [to seize](#) me, [as](#) against [a robber](#)? Every [day](#) I sat [teaching](#) in the [temple](#), and you did not [arrest](#) me.

UST

⁵⁵ [At that time Jesus](#) said to the crowd that was seizing him, "You have come here [to seize](#) me with [swords](#) and clubs, [as if I were a bandit](#)! [Day after day](#) I sat in the [temple courtyard, teaching the people](#). [Why did you](#) not [arrest](#) me then?"

Matthew 26:56

the writings of the prophets might be fulfilled (ULT)
to fulfill what...the prophets have written in the
scriptures about me (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I would fulfill all that the prophets wrote in the scriptures" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

left him (ULT)
deserted Jesus and (UST)

If your language has a word that means they left him when they should have stayed with him, use it here.

Translation Words - ULT

- [prophets](#)
- [writings](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [might be fulfilled](#)
- [left](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [prophets have written in](#)
- [scriptures about me](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [to fulfill what](#)
- [deserted](#)

ULT

⁵⁶ But all this has happened so that the [writings](#) of the [prophets might be fulfilled](#)." Then all the [disciples left](#) him and fled.

UST

⁵⁶ But all this is happening [to fulfill what the prophets have written in the scriptures about me](#)." Then all of the [disciples deserted](#) Jesus and ran away.

Matthew 26:57

Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of Jesus' trial before the council of Jewish religious leaders.

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- scribes
- high priest
- Caiaphas
- had gathered together
- elders
- Those who had seized

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- men who taught the Jewish laws
- high priest, lived
- Caiaphas
- had already gathered there
- Jewish elders
- had arrested

ULT

⁵⁷ Those who had seized Jesus led him away to Caiaphas the high priest, where the scribes and the elders had gathered together.

UST

⁵⁷ The men who had arrested Jesus took him to the house where Caiaphas, the high priest, lived. The men who taught the Jewish laws and the Jewish elders had already gathered there.

Matthew 26:58

But Peter followed him (ULT)

Peter followed Jesus (UST)

“Peter followed Jesus”

the courtyard of the high priest (ULT)

to the high priest’s courtyard (UST)

an open area near the high priest’s house

He went inside (ULT)

He entered the courtyard and (UST)

“Peter went inside”

Translation Words - ULT

- [high priest](#)
- [But Peter](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [high priest’s](#)
- [Peter](#)

ULT

⁵⁸ [But Peter](#) followed him from a distance to the courtyard of the [high priest](#). He went inside and sat down with the guards to see the outcome.

UST

⁵⁸ [Peter](#) followed Jesus at a distance. He came to the [high priest’s](#) courtyard. He entered the courtyard and sat down with the guards to see what would happen.

Matthew 26:59

Now (ULT)

The (UST)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Matthew starts to tell a new part of the story.

they might put him to death (ULT)

they could condemn him to death (UST)

Here "they" refers to the chief priests and the members of the council.

they might put him to death (ULT)

they could condemn him to death (UST)

"might have a reason to execute him"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [they might put...to death](#)
- [were looking for](#)
- [council](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [they could condemn...to death](#)
- [were trying to find](#)
- [Jewish council](#)

ULT

⁵⁹ Now the [chief priests](#) and the whole [council were looking for](#) false testimony against [Jesus](#) so that [they might put](#) him [to death](#).

UST

⁵⁹ The [chief priests](#) and the rest of the [Jewish council were trying to find](#) persons who would tell lies about [Jesus](#) so that [they could condemn](#) him [to death](#).

Matthew 26:60

two came forward (ULT)

two men came forward (UST)

“two men came forward” or “two witnesses came forward”

Translation Words - ULT

- [false witnesses](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [spoke lies about him](#)

ULT

⁶⁰ They did not find any, even though many [false witnesses](#) came forward. But later two came forward

UST

⁶⁰ But even though many people [spoke lies about him](#), they did not find anyone who said anything that was useful. Finally two men came forward

Matthew 26:61

and said, "This man said, 'I am able to destroy...rebuild it in three days (ULT)

and said, "This man said, 'I am able to destroy...to rebuild it within three days (UST)

If your language does not allow quotes within quotes you can rewrite it as a single quote. Alternate translation: "This man said that he is able to destroy...days." (See: [Quotations and Quote Margins](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

This man said (ULT)

This man said (UST)

"This man Jesus said"

in three days (ULT)

within three days (UST)

"within three days," before the sun goes down three times, not "after three days," after the sun has gone down the third time

Translation Words - ULT

- of God
- I am able
- temple
- days

Translation Words - UST

- God's
- I am able
- temple
- days

ULT

⁶¹ and said, "This man said, '[I am able](#) to destroy the [temple of God](#) and rebuild it in three [days](#).'"

UST

⁶¹ and said, "This man said, '[I am able](#) to destroy [God's temple](#) and to rebuild it within three [days](#).'"

Matthew 26:62

What is it that they are testifying against you (ULT)
What do you say about these things that they are saying to accuse you (UST)

The chief priest is not asking Jesus for information about what the witnesses said. He is asking Jesus to prove what the witnesses said is wrong. Alternate translation: "What is your response to what the witnesses are testifying against you?"

Translation Words - ULT

- [high priest](#)
- [stood up](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [high priest](#)
- [stood up and](#)

ULT

⁶² The [high priest stood up](#) and said to him, "Do you have no answer? What is it that they are testifying against you?"

UST

⁶² Then the [high priest stood up and](#) said to Jesus, "Are you not going to reply? What do you say about these things that they are saying to accuse you?"

Matthew 26:63

the Son of God (ULT)

the Son of God (UST)

This is an important title that describes the relationship between the Christ and God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

the living God

Here “living” contrasts the God of Israel to all the false gods and idols that people worshiped. Only the God of Israel is alive and has power to act. See how you translated this in [Matthew 16:16](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [living](#)
- [But Jesus](#)
- [God](#)
- [of God](#) (2)
- [Son of God](#)
- [high priest](#)
- [Christ](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [all-powerful God is listening to you](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [all-powerful God is listening to you](#)
- [God](#) (2)
- [Son of God](#)
- [high priest](#)
- [Messiah](#)

ULT

⁶³ [But Jesus](#) was silent. The [high priest](#) said to him, “I command you by the [living God](#), that you tell us whether you are the [Christ](#), the [Son of God](#).”

UST

⁶³ But [Jesus](#) remained silent. Then the [high priest](#) said to him, “I command you to tell us the truth; you know that the [all-powerful God is listening to you](#): Are you the [Messiah](#), the [Son of God](#)?”

Matthew 26:64

You have said it yourself (ULT) you say (UST)

This is an idiom that Jesus uses to mean “yes” without being completely clear about what he means. Alternate translation: “You are saying it” or “You are admitting it” (See: [Idiom](#))

But I tell you, from now on you will see (ULT) But I will also say this to all of you: Some day you will see (UST)

Here “you” is plural. Jesus is speaking to the high priest and to the other persons there. (See: [Forms of You](#))

from now on you will see the Son of Man (ULT) you will see the Son of Man (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) the phrase “from now on” is an idiom that means they will see the Son of Man in his power at some time in the future or 2) the phrase “from now on” means that from the time of Jesus’ trial and onward, Jesus is showing himself to be the Messiah who is powerful and victorious.

the Son of Man (ULT) the Son of Man (UST)

Jesus is speaking about himself in third person. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

sitting at the right hand of the Power (ULT) sitting beside Almighty God and ruling. You will also see him (UST)

Here “Power” is metonym that represents God. To sit at the “right hand of God” is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. Alternate translation: “sitting in the place of honor beside the all-powerful God” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Symbolic Action](#))

of Man...coming on the clouds...of heaven (ULT) of...coming on the clouds...from heaven (UST)

“riding to earth on the clouds of heaven”

Translation Words - ULT

- [of heaven](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [Power](#)
- [the right hand](#)
- [Son of Man](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [from heaven](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [Almighty God and ruling. You will also see him](#)

ULT

⁶⁴ [Jesus](#) replied to him, “You have said it yourself. But I tell you, from now on you will see the [Son of Man](#) sitting at [the right hand](#) of the [Power](#), and coming on the clouds [of heaven](#).”

UST

⁶⁴ [Jesus](#) replied, “Yes, it is as you say. But I will also say this to all of you: Some day you will see the [Son of Man](#) sitting [beside Almighty God and ruling](#). [You will also see him](#) coming on the clouds [from heaven](#)!”

- [beside](#)
- [Son of Man](#)

Matthew 26:65

the high priest tore his clothes (ULT)
the high priest was so upset that he tore his outer garment. Then (UST)

Tearing clothing was a sign of anger and sadness. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

He has spoken blasphemy (ULT)
This man has insulted God (UST)

The reason the high priest called Jesus' statement blasphemy is probably that he understood Jesus' words in [Matthew 26:64](#) as a claim to be equal with God. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Why do we still need witnesses (ULT)
He claims to be equal with God! We certainly do not need anyone else to testify against this man (UST)

The high priest uses this question to emphasize that he and the members of the council do not need to hear from any more witnesses. Alternate translation: "We do not need to hear from any more witnesses!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

now you have heard (ULT)
to testify against this man...You heard (UST)

Here "you" is plural and refers to the members of the council. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [witnesses](#)
- [high priest](#)
- [He has spoken blasphemy](#)
- [blasphemy](#)
- [clothes](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to testify against this man](#)
- [high priest was so upset that](#)
- [This man has insulted God](#)
- [what he said](#)
- [outer garment. Then](#)

ULT

⁶⁵ Then the [high priest](#) tore his [clothes](#), saying, "[He has spoken blasphemy](#)! Why do we still need [witnesses](#)? Look, now you have heard the [blasphemy](#)."

UST

⁶⁵ Then the [high priest was so upset that](#) he tore his [outer garment](#). [Then](#) he said, "[This man has insulted God](#)! He claims to be equal with God! We certainly do not need anyone else [to testify against this man](#)! You heard [what he said](#)!"

Matthew 26:66

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- of death

Translation Words - UST

- to be executed

ULT

⁶⁶ What do you think?" They answered and said, "He is worthy [of death](#)."

UST

⁶⁶ What do you think?" The Jewish leaders replied, "According to our laws, he is guilty and deserves [to be executed!](#)"

Matthew 26:67

Then they spit (ULT)

Then some of them spat (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) "Then some of the men" or 2) "Then the soldiers."

they spit in his face (ULT)

some of them spat in his face. Others (UST)

This was done as an insult.

Translation Words - ULT

- [face](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [face](#). [Others](#)

ULT

⁶⁷ Then they spit in his [face](#) and beat him, and some of them slapped him,

UST

⁶⁷ Then some of them spat in his [face](#).
[Others](#) struck him with their fists.
Others slapped him

Matthew 26:68

Prophecy to us (ULT) tell us (UST)

Here “Prophecy to us” means to tell by means of God’s power. It does not mean to tell what will happen in the future.

Christ (ULT) Messiah (UST)

Those hitting Jesus do not really think he is the Christ. They call him this to mock him. (See: [Irony](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Prophecy](#)
- [Christ](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [tell](#)
- [Messiah](#)

ULT

⁶⁸ saying, “[Prophecy](#) to us, [Christ](#). Who is the one who struck you?”

UST

⁶⁸ and said, “Since you claim that you are the [Messiah](#), [tell](#) us who hit you!”

Matthew 26:69

General Information:

These events happen at the same time as Jesus' trial before the religious leaders.

Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of how Peter denies three times that he knows Jesus, as Jesus said he would do.

Now Peter (ULT)

Peter (UST)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Matthew starts to tell a new part of the story.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [of Galilee](#)
- [Now Peter](#)
- [servant girl](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [that man from the district of Galilee](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [servant girl](#)

ULT

⁶⁹ [Now Peter](#) was sitting outside in the courtyard, and a [servant girl](#) came to him and said, "You were also with [Jesus of Galilee](#)."

UST

⁶⁹ [Peter](#) was sitting outside in the courtyard. A [servant girl](#) came up to him and looked at him. She said, "You also were with [Jesus, that man from the district of Galilee!](#)"

Matthew 26:70

I do not know what you are talking about (ULT)

I do not know what you are talking about (UST)

Peter was able to understand what the servant girl was saying. He used these words to deny that he had been with Jesus.

Translation Words - ULT

- I...know

Translation Words - UST

- I do...know

ULT

⁷⁰ But he denied it in front of them all, saying, "I do not [know](#) what you are talking about."

UST

⁷⁰ But while everyone there was listening, he denied it. He said, "[I do](#) not [know](#) what you are talking about!"

Matthew 26:71

When he went out (ULT)

Then he went out (UST)

“When Peter went out”

the gateway (ULT)

the gateway of the courtyard (UST)

opening in the wall around a courtyard

said to those there (ULT)

said to the people who were standing nearby (UST)

“said to the people who were sitting there”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus of Nazareth](#)
- [of Nazareth](#)
- [gateway](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus, the man from Nazareth](#)
- [the man from Nazareth](#)
- [gateway of the courtyard](#)

ULT

⁷¹ When he went out to the [gateway](#), another servant girl saw him and said to those there, “This man was also with [Jesus of Nazareth](#).”

UST

⁷¹ Then he went out to the [gateway of the courtyard](#). Another servant girl saw him and said to the people who were standing nearby, “This man was with [Jesus, the man from Nazareth](#).”

Matthew 26:72

He again denied it with an oath, "I do not know the man (ULT)

But Peter again denied it. He said, "May God punish me if I am lying! I tell you, I do not even know that man (UST)

"he denied it again by swearing, 'I do not know the man!'"

Translation Words - ULT

- [an oath](#)
- [I...know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [May God punish me if I am lying](#)
- [I tell you, I do...know](#)

ULT

⁷² He again denied it with [an oath](#), "I do not [know](#) the man!"

UST

⁷² But Peter again denied it. He said, "[May God punish me if I am lying! I tell you, I do](#) not even [know](#) that man!"

Matthew 26:73

one of them (ULT)

one of those who (UST)

“one of those who were with Jesus”

for...your speech gives you away (ULT)

were with that man. We can tell...from your accent that you are from Galilee (UST)

This can be translated as a new sentence. Alternate translation: “We can tell you are from Galilee because you speak like a Galilean”

Translation Words - ULT

- Surely
- to Peter

Translation Words - UST

- It is certain that
- Peter

ULT

⁷³ After a little while those who were standing by came and said [to Peter](#), “[Surely](#) you are also one of them, for your speech gives you away.”

UST

⁷³ After a little while, the people who were standing there approached [Peter](#) and said to him, “[It is certain that](#) you are one of those who were with that man. We can tell from your accent that you are from Galilee.”

Matthew 26:74

to curse (ULT)

God should curse him if he was lying (UST)

“to call down a curse on himself”

a rooster crowed (ULT)

a rooster crowed (UST)

A rooster is a bird that calls out loudly around the time the sun comes up. The sound a rooster makes is called “crowing.” See how you translated this in [Matthew 26:34](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [to curse](#)
- [swear](#)
- [I...know](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God should curse him if he was lying](#)
- [God in heaven to witness](#)
- [I do...know](#)

ULT

⁷⁴ Then he began [to curse](#) and [swear](#), “I do not [know](#) the man,” and immediately a rooster crowed.

UST

⁷⁴ Then Peter began to proclaim loudly that [God should curse him if he was lying](#). He asked [God in heaven to witness](#) that he was telling the truth and said, “[I do](#) not [know](#) that man!” Immediately a rooster crowed.

Matthew 26:75

Then Peter remembered the words that Jesus had said, “Before the rooster crows you will deny me three times (ULT)

Then Peter remembered the words that Jesus had spoken to him, “Before the rooster crows, you will say three times that you do not know me (UST)

This direct quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation.

Alternate translation: “Peter remembered that Jesus told him that before the rooster crowed, he would deny Jesus three times” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [and wept](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [Peter](#)
- [of the courtyard, crying](#)

ULT

⁷⁵ Then [Peter](#) remembered the words that [Jesus](#) had said, “Before the rooster crows you will deny me three times.” So he went outside [and wept](#) bitterly.

UST

⁷⁵ Then [Peter](#) remembered the words that [Jesus](#) had spoken to him, “Before the rooster crows, you will say three times that you do not know me.” And Peter went out [of the courtyard, crying](#) hard because he was so sad about what he had done.

Matthew 27

Matthew 27 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

“Delivered him to Pilate the governor”

The Jewish leaders needed to get permission from Pontius Pilate, the Roman governor, before they could kill Jesus. This was because Roman law did not allow them to kill Jesus themselves. Pilate wanted to set Jesus free, but they wanted him to free a very bad prisoner named Barabbas.

The tomb

The tomb in which Jesus was buried (Matthew 27:60) was the kind of tomb in which wealthy Jewish families buried their dead. It was an actual room cut into a rock. It had a flat place on one side where they could place the body after they had put oil and spices on it and wrapped it in cloth. Then they would roll a large rock in front of the tomb so no one could see inside or enter.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Sarcasm

The soldiers said, “Hail, King of the Jews!” (Matthew 27:29) to mock Jesus. They did not think that he was the king of the Jews. (See: [Irony](#))

Matthew 27:1

Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of Jesus' trial before Pilate.

Now (ULT)

Very early the next morning (UST)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Matthew starts to tell a new part of the story.

plotted...against Jesus to put him to death (ULT)
decided how to...persuade...Romans to execute Jesus (UST)

The Jewish leaders were planning how they could convince the Roman leaders to kill Jesus. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [people](#)
- [elders](#)
- [put...to death](#)
- [plotted](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [persuade...Romans to execute Jesus](#)
- [chief priests and](#)
- [Jewish elders](#)
- [Jewish elders](#)
- [persuade...Romans to execute Jesus](#)
- [decided how to](#)

ULT

¹ Now when morning came, all the [chief priests](#) and [elders](#) of the [people plotted](#) against [Jesus](#) to [put](#) him [to death](#).

UST

¹ Very early the next morning all the [chief priests and Jewish elders decided how to persuade](#) the [Romans to execute Jesus](#).

Matthew 27:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- They bound
- to Pilate
- governor

Translation Words - UST

- tied...hands
- Pilate
- Roman governor

ULT

² [They bound](#) him, led him away, and delivered him [to Pilate](#) the [governor](#).

UST

² Then they [tied](#) his [hands](#) and took him to [Pilate](#), the [Roman governor](#).

Matthew 27:3

General Information:

This event happened after Jesus' trial in front of the council of Jewish religious leaders, but we do not know if it happened before or during Jesus' trial before Pilate. (See: [Order of Events](#))

Connecting Statement:

The author has stopped telling the story of Jesus' trial so he can tell the story of how Judas killed himself.

Then when Judas...saw (ULT)

Then Judas...realized (UST)

If your language has a way of showing that a new story is starting, you may want to use that here.

that Jesus had been condemned (ULT)

that they had decided that Jesus must die. So was overcome with (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that the Jewish leaders had condemned Jesus" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the thirty pieces of silver (ULT)

the thirty coins (UST)

This was the money that the chief priests had given Judas to betray Jesus. See how you translated it in [Matthew 26:15](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus had been condemned
- he repented
- chief priests
- Judas
- pieces of silver
- who had betrayed
- elders
- and returned

Translation Words - UST

- they had decided that Jesus must die. So was overcome with
- regret about what he had done
- chief priests
- Judas
- coins
- had betrayed
- elders
- He took...back

ULT

³ Then when [Judas, who had betrayed](#) him, saw that [Jesus had been condemned](#), [he repented and returned](#) the thirty [pieces of silver](#) to the [chief priests](#) and [elders](#),

UST

³ Then [Judas](#), the one who [had betrayed](#) Jesus, realized that [they had decided that Jesus must die. So was overcome with regret about what he had done. He took](#) the thirty [coins back](#) to the [chief priests](#) and [elders](#).

Matthew 27:4

innocent blood (ULT)

a man who is innocent (UST)

This is an idiom that refers to the death of an innocent person.
Alternate translation: "a person who does not deserve to die" (See: [Idiom](#))

What is that to us (ULT)

That means nothing to us (UST)

The Jewish leaders use this question to emphasize that they do not care about what Judas said. Alternate translation: "That is not our problem!" or "That is your problem!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

⁴ saying, "[I have sinned by betraying innocent blood.](#)" But they said, "What is that to us? See to that yourself."

UST

⁴ He said, "[I have sinned. I have betrayed a man who is innocent.](#)" They replied, "That means nothing to us! That is your problem!"

Translation Words - ULT

- [I have sinned](#)
- [innocent](#)
- [blood](#)
- [by betraying](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [I have sinned](#)
- [a man who is innocent](#)
- [a man who is innocent](#)
- [I have betrayed](#)

Matthew 27:5

**he threw down the pieces of silver in the temple (ULT)
So Judas took the money...threw it into the temple
courtyard. Then (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) he threw the pieces of silver while in the temple courtyard, or 2) he was standing in the temple courtyard, and he threw the pieces of silver into the temple.

Translation Words - ULT

- [temple](#)
- [pieces of silver](#)
- [and hanged himself](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [temple courtyard. Then](#)
- [money](#)
- [hanged himself](#)

ULT

⁵ Then he threw down the [pieces of silver](#) in the [temple](#), and departed, and went out [and hanged himself](#).

UST

⁵ So Judas took the [money](#) and threw it into the [temple courtyard. Then](#) he went away and [hanged himself](#).

Matthew 27:6

It is not lawful to put this (ULT)
money...not allow us to put money like this (UST)

"Our laws do not allow us to put this"

to put this (ULT)
money...to put money like this (UST)

"put this silver"

the treasury (ULT)
the temple treasury (UST)

This is the place they kept the money they used to provide for things needed for the temple and the priests. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the price of blood (ULT)
we paid for a man to die (UST)

This is an idiom that means money paid to a person who helped kill someone. Alternate translation: "money paid for a man to die" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of blood
- The chief priests
- pieces of silver
- It is...lawful

Translation Words - UST

- a man to die
- high priests
- coins
- allow us

ULT

⁶ [The chief priests](#) took the [pieces of silver](#) and said, "[It is](#) not [lawful](#) to put this into the treasury, because it is the price [of blood](#)."

UST

⁶ The [high priests](#) picked up the [coins](#) and said, "This is money that we paid for [a man to die](#), and our law does not [allow us](#) to put money like this into the temple treasury."

Matthew 27:7

the potter's field (ULT)

a field that was called the Potter's Field. They made that field a...who died in Jerusalem (UST)

This was a field that was bought to bury strangers who died in Jerusalem.

Translation Words - ULT

- a burial place
- They discussed the matter together

Translation Words - UST

- they buried
- they decided

ULT

⁷ [They discussed the matter together](#) and with the money bought the potter's field for [a burial place](#) for strangers.

UST

⁷ So [they decided](#) to use that money to buy a field that was called the Potter's Field. They made that field a place where [they buried](#) strangers who died in Jerusalem.

Matthew 27:8

that field has been called (ULT)
that place...called "The (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people call that field" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

to this day (ULT)
is still (UST)

This means to the time that Matthew is writing this book.

Translation Words - ULT

- [has been called](#)
- [of Blood](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [called "The](#)
- [Blood](#)

ULT

⁸ For this reason that field [has been called](#), "The Field [of Blood](#)" to this day.

UST

⁸ That is why that place is still [called](#) "[The](#) Field of [Blood](#)."

Matthew 27:9

General Information:

The author quotes Old Testament scripture to show that Judas' suicide was a fulfillment of prophecy.

Then that which had been spoken by Jeremiah the prophet was fulfilled (ULT)

By buying that field, they made come true these words that the prophet Jeremiah (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "This fulfilled what the prophet Jeremiah spoke" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the price set on him by the sons of Israel (ULT)
that was what the leaders of Israel decided that he was worth (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the price the people of Israel set on him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the sons of Israel (ULT)
the leaders...of Israel (UST)

This refers to those among the people of Israel who paid to kill Jesus. Alternate translation: "some of the people of Israel" or "the leaders of Israel" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons](#)
- [prophet](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [was fulfilled](#)
- [Jeremiah](#)
- [pieces of silver](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the leaders](#)
- [prophet](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [they made come true](#)
- [Jeremiah](#)
- [silver coins](#)

ULT

⁹ Then that which had been spoken by [Jeremiah](#) the [prophet was fulfilled](#), saying, "They took the thirty [pieces of silver](#), the price set on him by [the sons of Israel](#),

UST

⁹ By buying that field, [they made come true](#) these words that the [prophet Jeremiah](#) had written long ago: "They took the thirty [silver coins](#)—that was what [the leaders of Israel](#) decided that he was worth—

Matthew 27:10

had directed me (ULT)

had commanded me (UST)

Here “me” refers to Jeremiah.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Lord](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Lord](#)

ULT

¹⁰ and they gave it for the potter's field,
as [the Lord](#) had directed me.”

UST

¹⁰ and with that money they bought the
field of the potter. They did that as the
[Lord](#) had commanded me.”

Matthew 27:11

Connecting Statement:

This continues the story of Jesus' trial before Pilate, which began in [Matthew 27:2](#).

Now Jesus (ULT)

Jesus (UST)

If your language has a way of continuing a story after a break from the main story line, you may want to use it here.

the governor (ULT)

the governor (UST)

"Pilate"

It is as you say (ULT)

Yes, it is as you have just said (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) by saying this, Jesus implied that he is the King of the Jews. Alternate translation: "Yes, as you said, I am" or "Yes. It is as you said" or 2) by saying this, Jesus was saying that Pilate, not Jesus, was the one calling him the King of the Jews. Alternate translation: "You yourself have said so" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Now Jesus](#)
- [Jesus \(2\)](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [King of the Jews](#)
- [King](#)
- [governor](#)
- [governor](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [Jesus \(2\)](#)
- [Jews](#)
- [king of the Jews](#)
- [king](#)
- [governor](#)
- [governor](#)

ULT

¹¹ [Now Jesus](#) stood before the [governor](#), and the [governor](#) asked him, saying, "Are you the [King](#) of the [Jews](#)?" [Jesus](#) answered, "It is as you say."

UST

¹¹ Then [Jesus](#) stood in front of the [governor](#). The [governor](#) asked him, "Do you say you are the [king](#) of the [Jews](#)?" [Jesus](#) replied, "Yes, it is as you have just said."

Matthew 27:12

But when he was accused by the chief priests and the elders (ULT)

But when the chief priests and elders accused Jesus of doing various wrong things (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "But when the chief priests and elders accused him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [chief priests](#)
- [elders](#)
- [when...was accused](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [chief priests](#)
- [elders](#)
- [accused](#)

ULT

¹² But [when](#) he [was accused](#) by the [chief priests](#) and the [elders](#), he answered nothing.

UST

¹² But when the [chief priests](#) and [elders](#) [accused](#) Jesus of doing various wrong things, he did not answer.

Matthew 27:13

Do you not hear all the charges they are bringing against you (ULT)

You hear how many things they are accusing you of; are you not going to reply (UST)

Pilate asks this question because he is surprised that Jesus remains silent. Alternate translation: "I am surprised that you do not answer these people who accuse you of doing bad things!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Pilate](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Pilate](#)

ULT

¹³ Then [Pilate](#) said to him, "Do you not hear all the charges they are bringing against you?"

UST

¹³ So [Pilate](#) said to him, "You hear how many things they are accusing you of; are you not going to reply?"

Matthew 27:14

he did not answer him not even to one charge, so that the governor was greatly amazed (ULT) not say anything. He did not reply to any of the things about which they were accusing him. As a result, the governor was very surprised (UST)

“did not say even one word; this greatly amazed the governor.” This is an emphatic way of saying that Jesus was completely silent.

Translation Words - ULT

- [was...amazed](#)
- [governor](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [surprised](#)
- [governor](#)

ULT

14 But he did not answer him not even to one charge, so that the [governor](#) was greatly [amazed](#).

UST

14 But Jesus did not say anything. He did not reply to any of the things about which they were accusing him. As a result, the [governor](#) was very [surprised](#).

Matthew 27:15

Now (ULT)

Now (UST)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line so Matthew can give information to help the reader understand what happens beginning in [Matthew 27:17](#). (See: [Background Information](#))

the feast (ULT)

Passover Celebration (UST)

This is the feast for the Passover celebration.

to the crowd one prisoner whom they chose (ULT)
one person who was in prison. He released whatever prisoner the people wanted (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "prisoner whom the crowd would choose" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- prisoner
- governor
- the feast

Translation Words - UST

- person who was in prison. He released whatever prisoner
- governor's
- Passover Celebration

ULT

¹⁵ Now at [the feast](#) it was the custom of the [governor](#) to release to the crowd one [prisoner](#) whom they chose.

UST

¹⁵ Now it was the [governor's](#) custom each year during the [Passover Celebration](#) to release one [person who was in prison. He released whatever prisoner](#) the people wanted.

Matthew 27:16

they had...a notorious prisoner (ULT)
there was in Jerusalem...a well-known prisoner (UST)

“there was a notorious prisoner”

notorious (ULT)
a well-known (UST)

well known for doing something bad

Translation Words - ULT

- [named](#)
- [Barabbas](#)
- [a...prisoner](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [whose name was](#)
- [Barabbas](#)
- [prisoner](#)

ULT

¹⁶ At that time they had a notorious [prisoner named Barabbas](#).

UST

¹⁶ At that time there was in Jerusalem a well-known [prisoner whose name was Barabbas](#).

Matthew 27:17

when...were gathered together...they (ULT)
gathered...when the crowd (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the crowd gathered" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Jesus who is called Christ (ULT)
Jesus, whom they call the Messiah (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom some people call the Christ" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [who is called](#)
- [Christ](#)
- [Pilate](#)
- [Barabbas](#)
- [when...were gathered together](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [they call](#)
- [the Messiah](#)
- [Pilate](#)
- [Barabbas](#)
- [gathered](#)

ULT

¹⁷ So [when](#) they [were gathered together](#), [Pilate](#) said to them, "Who do you want me to release for you? [Barabbas](#), or [Jesus who is called Christ](#)?"

UST

¹⁷ So when the crowd [gathered](#), [Pilate](#) asked them, "Which prisoner would you like me to release for you: [Barabbas](#), or [Jesus](#), whom [they call the Messiah](#)?"

Matthew 27:18

they had handed Jesus over to him (ULT)
had brought Jesus to him (UST)

“the Jewish leaders had brought Jesus to him.” They had done this so that Pilate would judge Jesus.

Translation Words - ULT

- [envy](#)
- [he knew](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [they were jealous of Jesus. And Pilate thought that the crowd would prefer that he release Jesus](#)
- [he realized](#)

ULT

¹⁸ For [he knew](#) that they had handed Jesus over to him because of [envy](#).

UST

¹⁸ He asked that question because [he realized](#) that the chief priests had brought Jesus to him only because [they were jealous of Jesus. And Pilate thought that the crowd would prefer that he release Jesus.](#)

Matthew 27:19

But while he was sitting (ULT)

While Pilate was sitting (UST)

"While Pilate was sitting"

while...was sitting...on the judgment seat (ULT)

While...was sitting...in the judge's seat (UST)

"sitting on the judge's seat." This is where a judge would sit while making a decision.

sent word (ULT)

sent (UST)

"sent a message"

much...I have suffered...today (ULT)

righteous man...Early this morning I had a bad (UST)

"I have been very upset today"

Translation Words - ULT

- with...innocent man
- sent word
- I have suffered
- of a dream

Translation Words - UST

- righteous man
- sent
- Early this morning I had a bad
- dream

ULT

19 But while he was sitting on the judgment seat, his wife [sent word](#) to him and said, "Have nothing to do with that [innocent man](#). For [I have suffered](#) much today because [of a dream](#) about him."

UST

19 While Pilate was sitting in the judge's seat, his wife [sent](#) him this message: "[Early this morning I had a bad dream](#) because of that man. So do not condemn that [righteous man!](#)"

Matthew 27:20

Now...but have Jesus killed (ULT)

But...and to order...Jesus be executed (UST)

Here “now” is used to mark a break in the main story line. Matthew tells background information about why the crowd chose Barabbas. (See: [Background Information](#))

but have Jesus killed (ULT)

and to order...Jesus be executed (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “have the Roman soldiers kill Jesus” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [but...Jesus](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [for Barabbas](#)
- [elders](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [Barabbas](#)
- [elders](#)

ULT

²⁰ Now the [chief priests](#) and the [elders](#) persuaded the crowd to ask [for](#) [Barabbas](#), [but](#) have [Jesus](#) killed.

UST

²⁰ But the [chief priests](#) and [elders](#) persuaded the crowd to ask Pilate to release [Barabbas](#), and to order that [Jesus](#) be executed.

Matthew 27:21

and said to them (ULT)

So when the governor asked...them (UST)

“asked the crowd”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Barabbas](#)
- [governor](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Barabbas](#)
- [So when the governor asked](#)

ULT

²¹ The [governor](#) answered and said to them, “Which of the two do you want me to release to you?” They said, “[Barabbas](#).”

UST

²¹ [So when the governor asked](#) them, “Which of the two men do you want me to release for you?” They replied, “[Barabbas!](#)”

Matthew 27:22

who is called Christ (ULT)

who some of you say is the Messiah (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom some people call the Christ" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- with Jesus
- who is called
- Crucify him
- Christ
- Pilate

Translation Words - UST

- with Jesus
- some of you say is the
- Command that your soldiers crucify him
- Messiah
- Pilate

ULT

²² [Pilate](#) said to them, "What then should I do [with Jesus who is called Christ](#)?" They all answered, "[Crucify him](#)."

UST

²² [Pilate](#) asked them, "So what should I do [with Jesus](#) who [some of you say is the Messiah](#)?" They all answered, "[Command that your soldiers crucify him](#)!"

Matthew 27:23

has he done (ULT)
crime has he committed...But they shouted even louder...Have (UST)

"has Jesus done"

they...cried out (ULT)
crime has he committed...But they shouted even louder...Have...crime has he committed...But they shouted even louder...Have (UST)

"the crowd cried out"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Crucify him](#)
- [crime](#)
- [cried out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [him crucified](#)
- [crime has he committed?" But they shouted even louder, "Have](#)
- [crime has he committed...But they shouted even louder...Have](#)

ULT

²³ Then he said, "Why, what [crime](#) has he done?" But they [cried out](#) even louder, saying, "[Crucify him.](#)"

UST

²³ Pilate replied, "Why? What [crime has he committed?" But they shouted even louder, "Have him crucified!"](#)

Matthew 27:24

he washed his hands in front of the crowd (ULT)
washed his hands as...crowd was watching (UST)

Pilate does this as a sign that he is not responsible for Jesus' death.
 (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

the blood (ULT)
the...dies (UST)

Here "blood" refers to a person's death. Alternate translation: "the death" (See: [Metonymy](#))

See to it yourselves (ULT)
it is your (UST)

"This is your responsibility"

Translation Words - ULT

- [innocent](#)
- [blood](#)
- [Pilate](#)
- [hands](#)
- [he could...do anything](#)
- [water](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [fault, not mine](#)
- [dies](#)
- [Pilate realized](#)
- [his hands as](#)
- [he was accomplishing](#)
- [So he took a basin of water](#)

ULT

²⁴ So when [Pilate](#) saw that [he could](#) not [do anything](#), but instead a riot was starting, taking [water](#), he washed his [hands](#) in front of the crowd, saying, "I am [innocent](#) of the [blood](#) of this man. See to it yourselves."

UST

²⁴ [Pilate realized](#) that [he was](#) [accomplishing](#) nothing. He saw that instead, the people were starting to riot. [So he took a basin of water](#) and washed [his hands as](#) the crowd was watching. He said, "By washing my hands I am showing you that if this man [dies](#), it is your [fault, not mine!](#)"

Matthew 27:25

May his blood be on us and on our children (ULT)
May we be guilty for causing him to die, and may our children be guilty, too (UST)

Here "blood" is a metonym that stands for a person's death. The phrase "be on us and our children" is an idiom that means they accept the responsibility of what is happening. Alternate translation: "Yes! We and our descendants will be responsible for executing him" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [blood](#)
- [children](#)
- [people](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [for causing...to die](#)
- [children](#)
- [all the people answered](#)

ULT

²⁵ All the [people](#) answered and said, "May his [blood](#) be on us and on our [children](#)."

UST

²⁵ And [all the people answered](#), "May we be guilty [for causing](#) him [to die](#), and may our [children](#) be guilty, too!"

Matthew 27:26

Then he released Barabbas to them (ULT)

Then he ordered the soldiers to release Barabbas for them (UST)

“Then Pilate released Barabbas to the crowd”

but he scourged Jesus and handed him over to be crucified (ULT)

But he ordered that his soldiers whip Jesus. And then he turned Jesus over to the soldiers for them to nail Jesus to a cross (UST)

It is implied that Pilate ordered his soldiers to scourge Jesus.

Hanging Jesus over to be crucified is a metaphor for ordering his soldiers to crucify Jesus. Alternate translation: “he ordered his soldiers to scourge Jesus and to crucify him” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Barabbas...but...he scourged...Jesus (ULT)

Barabbas...he ordered that his soldiers whip Jesus (UST)

“beat Jesus with a whip” or “whipped Jesus”

Translation Words - ULT

- [but...Jesus](#)
- [be crucified](#)
- [Barabbas](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [to nail Jesus to a cross](#)
- [Barabbas](#)

ULT

²⁶ Then he released [Barabbas](#) to them, [but](#) he scourged [Jesus](#) and handed him over to [be crucified](#).

UST

²⁶ Then he ordered the soldiers to release [Barabbas](#) for them. But he ordered that his soldiers whip [Jesus](#). And then he turned Jesus over to the soldiers for them [to nail Jesus to a cross](#).

Matthew 27:27

Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of Jesus' crucifixion and death.

the...company of soldiers (ULT)

The...cohort (UST)

"group of soldiers"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [and gathered](#)
- [soldiers](#)
- [governor](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [gathered](#)
- [soldiers](#)
- [governor's](#)

ULT

²⁷ Then the [soldiers](#) of the [governor](#) took [Jesus](#) into the government headquarters [and gathered](#) before him the whole company of soldiers.

UST

²⁷ Then the [governor's soldiers](#) took [Jesus](#) into the soldiers' barracks. The whole cohort [gathered](#) around him.

Matthew 27:28

They stripped him (ULT)

They pulled off his clothes and (UST)

“pulled off his clothes”

scarlet (ULT)

a bright red (UST)

bright red

Translation Words - ULT

- [a...robe](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [robe](#)

ULT

²⁸ They stripped him and put a scarlet [robe](#) on him.

UST

²⁸ They pulled off his clothes and put a bright red [robe](#) on him, pretending he was a king.

Matthew 27:29

a crown of thorns (ULT)

They took some branches with thorns...crown (UST)

“a crown made of thorny branches” or “a crown made of branches with thorns on them”

his...a staff in...right hand (ULT)

his...in...right hand a reed like a staff that a king would hold (UST)

They gave Jesus a stick to hold to represent a scepter that a king holds. They did this to mock Jesus.

Hail, King of the Jews (ULT)

Greetings to the king of the Jews (UST)

They were saying this to mock Jesus. They were calling Jesus “King of the Jews,” but they did not really believe he was a king. And yet what they were saying was true. (See: [Irony](#))

Hail (ULT)

Greetings to (UST)

“We honor you” or “May you live a long time”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jews](#)
- [right hand](#)
- [King...of the Jews](#)
- [thorns](#)
- [head](#)
- [a staff](#)
- [and mocked](#)
- [King](#)
- [a crown](#)
- [They knelt down](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jews](#)
- [right hand](#)
- [king of the Jews](#)
- [thorns](#)
- [head. They put](#)
- [a reed](#)
- [and made fun](#)
- [king](#)
- [crown](#)
- [they knelt](#)

ULT

²⁹ They made [a crown](#) of [thorns](#) and put it on his [head](#), and placed [a staff](#) in his [right hand](#). [They knelt down](#) before him [and mocked](#) him, saying, “Hail, [King of the Jews](#)!”

UST

²⁹ They took some branches with [thorns](#) and wove them to make a [crown](#) and put it on his [head](#). [They put](#) in his [right hand a reed](#) like a staff that a king would hold. Then [they knelt](#) in front of him [and made fun](#) of him, saying, “Greetings to the [king](#) of the [Jews](#)!”

Matthew 27:30

They spat on him (ULT)

They kept spitting on him (UST)

“using their spit, the soldiers spat on Jesus”

Translation Words - ULT

- [and they took](#)
- [head](#)
- [staff](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [They took](#)
- [head with it](#)
- [staff](#)

ULT

³⁰ They spat on him, [and they took](#) the [staff](#) and kept striking him on his [head](#).

UST

³⁰ They kept spitting on him. [They took](#) the [staff](#) and kept striking him on the [head with it](#).

Matthew 27:31

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- crucify him
- robe
- they had mocked
- put...on
- own garments

Translation Words - UST

- place where they would nail him to a cross
- robe
- they had finished ridiculing
- put
- own clothes

ULT

³¹ When they had mocked him, they took the robe off him and put his own garments on him, and led him away to crucify him.

UST

³¹ When they had finished ridiculing him, they pulled off the robe and put his own clothes on him. Then they led him away to the place where they would nail him to a cross.

Matthew 27:32

As they came out (ULT)

After Jesus carried his cross a short distance, the soldiers (UST)

This means Jesus and the soldiers came out of the city. Alternate translation: "As they came out of Jerusalem" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

they found a man (ULT)

saw a man (UST)

"the soldiers saw a man"

whom they forced to carry his cross (ULT)

They forced him to carry the cross for Jesus (UST)

"whom the soldiers forced to go with them so that he could carry Jesus' cross"

Translation Words - ULT

- [cross](#)
- [named](#)
- [from Cyrene](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [cross](#)
- [named](#)
- [who was from the city of Cyrene](#)

ULT

³² As they came out, they found a man [from Cyrene named](#) Simon, whom they forced to carry his [cross](#).

UST

³² After Jesus carried his cross a short distance, the soldiers saw a man [named](#) Simon, [who was from the city of Cyrene](#). They forced him to carry the [cross](#) for Jesus.

Matthew 27:33

a place called Golgotha (ULT)

a place called Golgotha (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "place that people called Golgotha" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- called
- means
- Golgotha
- of a Skull

Translation Words - UST

- called
- means...the place like a skull
- Golgotha
- means...the place like a skull

ULT

³³ They came to a place [called Golgotha](#), which [means](#) "The Place [of a Skull](#)."

UST

³³ They came to a place [called Golgotha](#). That name [means](#) "[the place like a skull](#)."

Matthew 27:34

him wine to drink mixed with gall (ULT)

When they got there, they mixed with wine something that tasted very bitter...to Jesus to drink so that he would not feel so much pain (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "him wine, which they had mixed with gall" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

gall (ULT)

something that tasted very bitter (UST)

the bitter, yellow liquid that bodies use in digestion

Translation Words - ULT

- [wine](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [wine](#)

ULT

³⁴ They gave him [wine](#) to drink mixed with gall. But when he tasted it, he would not drink it.

UST

³⁴ When they got there, they mixed with [wine](#) something that tasted very bitter. They gave it to Jesus to drink so that he would not feel so much pain when they nailed him on the cross. But when he tasted it, he refused to drink it. Some soldiers took his clothes.

Matthew 27:35

his garments (ULT)

his clothes (UST)

These were the clothes Jesus had been wearing. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [When they had crucified](#)
- [lots](#)
- [garments](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [they nailed...to the cross](#)
- [by gambling with something like dice to decide which piece of clothing each one would get](#)
- [clothes](#)

ULT

³⁵ [When they had crucified](#) him, they divided up his [garments](#) by casting [lots](#),

UST

³⁵ Then [they nailed](#) him [to the cross](#). Afterwards, they divided his [clothes](#) among themselves [by gambling with something like dice to decide which piece of clothing each one would get](#).

Matthew 27:36

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [and kept guard over](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to guard](#)

ULT

³⁶ and they sat [and kept guard over](#) him there.

UST

³⁶ Then the soldiers sat down there [to guard](#) him, to prevent anyone from trying to rescue him.

Matthew 27:37

his...the charge (ULT)

Jesus...why they were nailing...to the cross (UST)

“a written explanation of why he was being crucified”

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Jews
- king of the Jews
- head
- king

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Jews
- King of the Jews
- head a sign on which had been
- King

ULT

³⁷ Above his [head](#) they put the charge against him, which read “This is [Jesus](#), the [king](#) of the [Jews](#).”

UST

³⁷ They fastened to the cross above Jesus’ [head a sign on which had been](#) written why they were nailing him to the cross. But all it said was, ‘This is [Jesus](#), the [King](#) of the [Jews](#).’

Matthew 27:38

Then two robbers were crucified with him (ULT) They also nailed two bandits to crosses (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The soldiers crucified two robbers with Jesus" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [were crucified](#)
- [his right](#)
- [robbers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [nailed...to crosses](#)
- [the right side of Jesus](#)
- [bandits](#)

ULT

³⁸ Then two [robbers were crucified](#) with him, one at [his right](#) and one at his left.

UST

³⁸ They also [nailed](#) two [bandits to crosses](#). They placed one cross on [the right side of Jesus](#) and the other on the left side.

Matthew 27:39

shaking their heads (ULT)

by shaking their heads as if he were an evil man (UST)

They did this to make fun of Jesus. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [insulted](#)
- [heads](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [insulted](#)
- [heads as if he were an evil man](#)

ULT

³⁹ Those who passed by [insulted](#) him, shaking their [heads](#)

UST

³⁹ The people who were passing by [insulted](#) him by shaking their [heads as if he were an evil man](#).

Matthew 27:40

If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross (ULT)

So if you can do that, you should be able to...If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross (UST)

They did not believe that Jesus is the Son of God, so they wanted him to prove it if it was true. Alternate translation: "If you are the Son of God, prove it by coming down from the cross" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the Son...of God (ULT)

Son...the...of God (UST)

This is an important title for the Christ that describes his relationship to God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [save](#)
- [of God](#)
- [the Son](#)
- [cross](#)
- [temple](#)
- [days](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [save](#)
- [of God](#)
- [Son](#)
- [cross](#)
- [temple](#)
- [days](#)

ULT

⁴⁰ and saying, "You who were going to destroy the [temple](#) and rebuild it in three [days](#), [save](#) yourself! If you are [the Son of God](#), come down from the [cross](#)!"

UST

⁴⁰ They said, "You said you would destroy the [temple](#) and then build it again within three [days](#)! So if you can do that, you should be able to [save](#) yourself! If you are the [Son of God](#), come down from the [cross](#)!"

Matthew 27:41

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- scribes
- chief priests
- elders
- were mocking him
- In the same way

Translation Words - UST

- men who taught the Jewish laws
- chief priests
- the elders
- made fun of him
- Similarly

ULT

⁴¹ In the same way also the chief priests were mocking him, along with the scribes and elders, and said,

UST

⁴¹ Similarly, the chief priests, the men who taught the Jewish laws, and the elders made fun of him. They said things like,

Matthew 27:42

He saved others, but he cannot save himself (ULT)
He saved others from their sicknesses, but he cannot help himself!" "He says that (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) the Jewish leaders do not believe that Jesus saved others or that he can save himself, or 2) they believe he did save others but are laughing at him because now he cannot save himself. (See: [Irony](#))

He is the King of Israel (ULT)
he is the King of Israel. So (UST)

The leaders are mocking Jesus. They call him "King of Israel," but they do not really believe he is king. Alternate translation: "He says that he is the King of Israel" (See: [Irony](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [He saved](#)
- [save](#)
- [but he cannot](#)
- [we will](#)
- [cross](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [the King](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [He saved](#)
- [help](#)
- [he cannot](#)
- [we would believe](#)
- [cross](#)
- [of Israel. So](#)
- [the King](#)

ULT

⁴² "[He saved](#) others, [but he cannot save](#) himself. He is [the King of Israel](#)! Let him come down now from the [cross](#), and then [we will](#) believe in him.

UST

⁴² "[He saved](#) others from their sicknesses, but [he cannot help](#) himself!" "He says that he is [the King of Israel. So](#) he should come down from the [cross](#). Then [we would believe](#) him!"

Matthew 27:43

Connecting Statement:

The Jewish leaders continue mocking Jesus.

**For he said, 'I am the Son of God (ULT)
He says that...that he is the man who is also God. So (UST)**

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "For Jesus even said that he is the Son of God." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

ULT

⁴³ [He trusts](#) in [God](#), [let God rescue him](#) now, if God wants him. For he said, 'I am [the Son of God](#).'

UST

⁴³ "He says that [he trusts](#) in [God](#), and that [he is the man who is also God](#). So if God is pleased with him, God [should rescue](#) him now!"

**of God...the Son (ULT)
he is the man who is also God. So...he is the man who is also God. So (UST)**

This is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [of God](#)
- [the Son](#)
- [He trusts](#)
- [let God rescue him](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [God](#), and
- [he is the man who is also God](#). So
- [he is the man who is also God](#). So
- [he trusts](#)
- [should rescue](#)

Matthew 27:44

the robbers who were crucified with him (ULT)
the two bandits who on crosses with him (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the robbers that the soldiers crucified with Jesus” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [who were crucified](#)
- [spoke insults](#)
- [robbers](#)
- [same way](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [on crosses](#)
- [insulted](#)
- [bandits](#)
- [also](#)

ULT

⁴⁴ In the [same way](#) the [robbers who were crucified](#) with him also [spoke insults](#) to him.

UST

⁴⁴ And the two [bandits](#) who [on crosses](#) with him [also insulted](#) him, saying similar things.

Matthew 27:45

Now (ULT)

noon (UST)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Matthew starts to tell a new part of the story.

from...the sixth hour...hour...until...ninth (ULT)

At...noon...noon...until...three o'clock in the afternoon (UST)

“from about noon...for three hours” or “from about twelve o'clock midday...until about three o'clock in the afternoon”

darkness came over the whole land (ULT)

it became dark over the whole land. It stayed dark (UST)

The word “darkness” is an abstract noun. Alternate translation: “it became dark over the whole land” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [darkness](#)
- [hour](#)
- [the...hour](#) (2)

Translation Words - UST

- [dark](#)
- [noon](#)
- [three o'clock in the afternoon](#) (2)

ULT

⁴⁵ Now from the sixth [hour](#) [darkness](#) came over the whole land until the ninth [hour](#).

UST

⁴⁵ At [noon](#) it became [dark](#) over the whole land. It stayed dark until [three o'clock in the afternoon](#).

Matthew 27:46

Jesus cried out (ULT)

Jesus shouted (UST)

"Jesus called out" or "Jesus shouted"

Eli, Eli, lama sabachthani (ULT)

Eli, Eli, lama sabachthani (UST)

These words are what Jesus cried out in his own language.

Translators usually leave these words as is. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#) (2)
- [have you forsaken](#)
- [with a...voice](#)
- [hour](#)
- [cried out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus shouted](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#) (2)
- [have you deserted](#)
- [Jesus shouted](#)
- [three o'clock](#)
- [Jesus shouted](#)

ULT

⁴⁶ About the ninth [hour](#), [Jesus cried out](#) [with a](#) loud [voice](#), saying, "Eli, Eli, lama sabachthani?" which means, "My [God](#), my [God](#), why [have you forsaken](#) me?"

UST

⁴⁶ At about [three o'clock](#) [Jesus shouted](#) loudly, "Eli, Eli, lama sabachthani?" That means, "My [God](#), my [God](#), why [have you deserted](#) me?"

Matthew 27:47

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [is calling](#)
- [for Elijah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [that...was calling for the prophet Elijah](#)
- [that...was calling for the prophet Elijah](#)

ULT

⁴⁷ When some of those who were standing there heard it, they said, "He [is calling for Elijah](#)."

UST

⁴⁷ When some of the people standing there heard the word "Eli," they thought that he [was calling for the prophet Elijah](#).

Matthew 27:48

one of them (ULT)

one of them (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) one of the soldiers or 2) one of those who stood by and watched.

a sponge (ULT)

a sponge (UST)

This is a sea animal that is harvested and used to take up and hold liquids. These liquids can later be pushed out.

and gave it to him to drink (ULT)

held it up in order that Jesus could suck out the wine that was in it (UST)

“gave it to Jesus”

Translation Words - ULT

- [on a reed staff](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [on the tip of a reed and](#)

ULT

⁴⁸ Immediately one of them ran and took a sponge, filled it with sour wine, put it [on a reed staff](#), and gave it to him to drink.

UST

⁴⁸ Immediately one of them ran and got a sponge. He filled it with sour wine. Then he put the sponge [on the tip of a reed and](#) held it up in order that Jesus could suck out the wine that was in it.

Matthew 27:49

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [to save](#)
- [Elijah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to save](#)
- [Elijah](#)

ULT

⁴⁹ The rest of them said, "Leave him alone. Let us see whether [Elijah](#) comes [to save](#) him."

UST

⁴⁹ But the other people there said, "Wait! Let us see if [Elijah](#) comes [to save](#) him!"

Matthew 27:50

and gave up his spirit (ULT)

giving his spirit over to God (UST)

Here “spirit” refers to that which gives life to a person. This phrase is a way of saying that Jesus died. Alternate translation: “he died, giving his spirit over to God” or “he breathed his last breath” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Then Jesus](#)
- [spirit](#)
- [with a...voice](#)
- [cried out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [his spirit](#)
- [shouted out](#)
- [shouted out](#)

ULT

⁵⁰ [Then Jesus cried out](#) again [with a](#) loud [voice](#) and gave up his [spirit](#).

UST

⁵⁰ Then after [Jesus shouted out](#) loudly again, he died, giving [his spirit](#) over to God.

Matthew 27:51

Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of the events that happened when Jesus died.

Behold (ULT)

At that moment (UST)

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

the curtain of the temple was split in two (ULT)
the heavy thick curtain...in the temple split into two pieces (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the curtain of the temple tore in two” or “God caused the curtain of the temple to tear in two” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [temple](#)
- [curtain](#)
- [shook](#)
- [earth](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [temple](#)
- [heavy thick curtain](#)
- [shook...some](#)
- [earth](#)

ULT

51 Behold, the [curtain](#) of the [temple](#) was split in two from the top to the bottom, and the [earth shook](#), and the rocks split apart.

UST

51 At that moment the [heavy thick curtain](#) that closed off the Most Holy Place in the [temple](#) split into two pieces from top to bottom. The [earth shook](#), and [some](#) large rocks split open.

Matthew 27:52

The tombs were opened, and many of the bodies of the saints who had fallen asleep were raised (ULT)

Tombs opened up, and the bodies of many people who had honored God became alive again (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God opened the tombs and raised the bodies of many godly people who had died" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

of the bodies of the saints who had fallen asleep were raised (ULT)

the bodies...who had honored God became alive again (UST)

Here to raise is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "God put life back into to the dead bodies of many godly people who had fallen asleep" (See: [Idiom](#))

who had fallen asleep (ULT)

who had honored God (UST)

This is a polite way of referring to dying. Alternate translation: "died" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [saints](#)
- [of the bodies](#)
- [who had fallen asleep](#)
- [tombs](#)
- [were raised](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [who had honored God](#)
- [the bodies](#)
- [who had honored God](#)
- [Tombs](#)
- [became alive again](#)

ULT

⁵² The [tombs](#) were opened, and many [of the bodies](#) of the [saints who had fallen asleep](#) [were raised](#).

UST

⁵² [Tombs](#) opened up, and [the bodies](#) of many people [who had honored God](#) [became alive again](#).

Matthew 27:53

They came out...appeared to many (ULT)

They came out...and...appeared to many people there (UST)

The order of the events that Matthew describes (beginning with the words "The tombs were opened" in verse 52) is unclear. After the earthquake when Jesus died and the tombs were opened 1) the holy people came back to life, and then, after Jesus came back to life, the holy people entered Jerusalem, where many people saw them, or 2) Jesus came back to life, and then the holy ones came back to life and entered the city, where many people saw them.

Translation Words - ULT

- resurrection
- holy
- holy city
- tombs

Translation Words - UST

- became alive again
- Jerusalem
- Jerusalem
- tombs

ULT

⁵³ They came out of the [tombs](#) after his [resurrection](#), entered into the [holy city](#), and appeared to many.

UST

⁵³ They came out of the [tombs](#), and after Jesus [became alive again](#), they went into [Jerusalem](#) and appeared to many people there.

Matthew 27:54

Now (ULT)

the crosses were also there. When (UST)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Matthew starts to tell a new part of the story.

those who...were watching Jesus (ULT)

who supervised the soldiers who nailed...to the cross...

Jesus...were guarding (UST)

"those who were guarding Jesus." This refers to the other soldiers who were guarding Jesus with the centurion. Alternate translation: "the other soldiers with him who were guarding Jesus" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the Son of God (ULT)

the Son of God (UST)

This is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- they became...afraid
- of God
- the Son of God
- Truly
- centurion
- were watching

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- they were terrified
- of God
- the Son of God
- Truly
- officer
- were guarding

ULT

⁵⁴ Now when the [centurion](#) and those who [were watching Jesus](#) with him saw the earthquake and the things that had happened, [they became](#) very [afraid](#), saying, "[Truly](#) this was [the Son of God](#)."

UST

⁵⁴ The [officer](#) who supervised the soldiers who nailed [Jesus](#) to the cross was standing nearby. His soldiers who [were guarding](#) the crosses were also there. When they felt the earthquake and saw all the other things that happened, [they were terrified](#). They exclaimed, "[Truly](#) he was [the Son of God](#)!"

Matthew 27:55

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [to care for](#)
- [Galilee](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus](#)
- [to provide the things he needed](#)
- [Galilee in order](#)

ULT

⁵⁵ Many women who had followed [Jesus](#) from [Galilee to care for](#) him were there looking on from a distance.

UST

⁵⁵ Many women were there, watching from a distance. They were women who had accompanied [Jesus](#) from [Galilee in order to provide the things he needed](#).

Matthew 27:56

Magdalene...mother...of the sons of Zebedee (ULT)
from...the mother...the mother of James and John (UST)

“the mother of James and John” or “the wife of Zebedee”

Translation Words - ULT

- [sons](#)
- [of Zebedee](#)
- [Mary Magdalene](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the mother of James and John](#)
- [the mother of James and John](#)
- [Mary from Magdala, another](#)

ULT

⁵⁶ Among them were [Mary Magdalene](#), Mary the mother of James and Joseph, and the mother of the [sons of Zebedee](#).

UST

⁵⁶ Among these women were [Mary from Magdala, another](#) Mary who was the mother of James and Joseph, and [the mother of James and John](#).

Matthew 27:57

Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of Jesus' burial.

Arimathea (ULT)

the town of Arimathea (UST)

This is the name of a city in Israel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of Jesus](#)
- [was...a disciple](#)
- [named](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of Jesus](#)
- [was a disciple](#)
- [named](#)

ULT

⁵⁷ When it was evening, there came a rich man from Arimathea, [named](#) Joseph, who was also himself [a disciple of Jesus](#).

UST

⁵⁷ When it was almost evening, a rich man [named](#) Joseph came there. He was from the town of Arimathea. He also [was a disciple of Jesus](#).

Matthew 27:58

**Then Pilate ordered it to be given to him (ULT)
and...Pilate to allow him to take...Pilate ordered his
soldiers to allow him to take the body (UST)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Then Pilate ordered the soldiers to give the body of Jesus to Joseph" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of Jesus
- ordered it
- body
- Pilate
- Pilate

Translation Words - UST

- of Jesus and bury it
- ordered his soldiers to allow him
- body
- to Pilate
- and...Pilate to allow him to take...Pilate

ULT

⁵⁸ He approached [Pilate](#) and asked for the [body of Jesus](#). Then [Pilate ordered it](#) to be given to him.

UST

⁵⁸ He went [to Pilate](#) and asked [Pilate to allow him to take](#) the [body of Jesus and bury it](#). [Pilate ordered his soldiers to allow him](#) to take the body.

Matthew 27:59

in a...linen cloth (ULT)

a...white cloth (UST)

a fine, costly cloth

Translation Words - ULT

- [body](#)
- [clean](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [body and](#)
- [clean](#)

ULT

⁵⁹ Joseph took the [body](#), wrapped it in a [clean](#) linen cloth,

UST

⁵⁹ So Joseph and others took the [body](#) [and](#) wrapped it in a [clean](#) white cloth.

Matthew 27:60

that he had cut into the rock (ULT)
that workers had dug out of a rock cliff...in front of (UST)

It is implied that Joseph had workers who cut the tomb into the rock.
 (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Then he rolled a large stone against (ULT)
They rolled a huge circular flat stone (UST)

Most likely Joseph had other people there to help him roll the stone.
 (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [tomb](#)
- [tomb](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [tomb](#)
- [tomb. Then](#)

ULT

⁶⁰ and laid it in his own new [tomb](#) that he had cut into the rock. Then he rolled a large stone against the door of the [tomb](#) and went away.

UST

⁶⁰ Then they placed it in Joseph's own new [tomb](#) that workers had dug out of a rock cliff. They rolled a huge circular flat stone in front of the entrance to the [tomb. Then](#) they left.

Matthew 27:61

opposite the tomb (ULT)

opposite the tomb, watching (UST)

“across from the tomb”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Mary Magdalene](#)
- [tomb](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Mary from Magdala](#)
- [tomb, watching](#)

ULT

⁶¹ [Mary Magdalene](#) and the other Mary were there, sitting opposite the [tomb](#).

UST

⁶¹ [Mary from Magdala](#) and the other Mary were sitting there opposite the [tomb, watching](#).

Matthew 27:62

the Preparation (ULT)

was Saturday, the Jewish day of rest (UST)

This is the day that people got everything ready for the Sabbath.

were gathered together...with Pilate (ULT)

went...to Pilate (UST)

“met with Pilate”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Pharisees](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [Pilate](#)
- [were gathered together](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [some of...Pharisees](#)
- [chief priests and](#)
- [Pilate](#)
- [went](#)

ULT

⁶² The next day, which was the day after the Preparation, the [chief priests](#) and the [Pharisees were gathered together](#) with [Pilate](#).

UST

⁶² The next day was Saturday, the Jewish day of rest. The [chief priests and some of](#) the [Pharisees went](#) to [Pilate](#).

Matthew 27:63

that deceiver...when...was alive (ULT)

that deceiver...while...was still alive (UST)

“when Jesus, the deceiver, was alive”

he said...After three days will I rise again (ULT)

he said...Three days after I die I will become alive again (UST)

This has a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: “he said that after three days he will rise again.” or “he said that after three day he would rise again.” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [was alive](#)
- [Sir](#)
- [will I rise again](#)
- [deceiver](#)
- [days](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [was still alive](#)
- [Sir](#)
- [I will become alive again](#)
- [deceiver](#)
- [days](#)

ULT

⁶³ They said, “[Sir](#), we remember that when that [deceiver was alive](#), he said, ‘After three [days will I rise again](#).’

UST

⁶³ They said, “[Sir](#), we remember that while that [deceiver was still alive](#), he said, ‘Three [days](#) after I die [I will become alive again](#).’

Matthew 27:64

command that...the tomb be made secure (ULT)
we ask you to order soldiers...to guard the tomb (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "command your soldiers to guard the tomb" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the third day (ULT)
for...three days (UST)

(See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

his disciples may come and steal him (ULT)
his disciples may come and steal the body (UST)

"his disciples may come and steal his body"

his disciples may come...say to the people, 'He has risen from the dead,' and (ULT)
his disciples may come and...they will tell people that he has risen from the dead. If they deceive people by saying...the way he (UST)

This has a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "his disciples may...tell the people that he has risen from the dead, and" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

from the dead (ULT)
from the dead (UST)

From among all those who have died. This expression describes all dead people together in the underworld. To rise from among them speaks of becoming alive again.

and the last deception will be worse than the first (ULT)
that, it will be worse than the way he deceived people before (UST)

The understood information can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "and if they deceive people by saying that, it will be worse than the way he deceived people before when he said that he was the Christ" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command that](#)
- [disciples](#)
- [people](#)
- [dead](#)
- [tomb](#)
- [He has risen](#)
- [deception](#)
- [day](#)

ULT

⁶⁴ Therefore [command that](#) the [tomb](#) be made secure until the third [day](#), otherwise his [disciples](#) may come and steal him and say to the [people](#), '[He has risen](#) from the [dead](#),' and the last [deception](#) will be worse than the first."

UST

⁶⁴ So [we ask you to order soldiers](#) to guard the [tomb](#) for three [days](#). If you do not do that, his [disciples](#) may come and steal the body. Then they will tell [people](#) that [he has risen](#) from the [dead](#). If they deceive people by saying that, it will be worse than the way he [deceived people](#) before."

Translation Words - UST

- we ask you to order soldiers
- disciples
- people
- dead
- tomb
- he has risen
- than...deceived people
- days

Matthew 27:65

a guard (ULT)

take some soldiers (UST)

This consisted of four to sixteen Roman soldiers.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Pilate](#)
- [as](#)
- [you know how](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Pilate](#)
- [as](#)
- [you know how](#)

ULT

⁶⁵ [Pilate](#) said to them, "Take a guard. Go and make it as secure [as you know how](#)."

UST

⁶⁵ [Pilate](#) replied, "You can take some soldiers. Go to the tomb and make it as secure [as you know how](#)."

Matthew 27:66

the...sealing...stone (ULT)

the...by fastening a cord from...stone that was in front of the entrance to (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) they put a cord around the stone and attached it to the rock wall on either side of the entrance to the tomb or 2) they put seals between the stone and the wall.

and placing the guard (ULT)

the rock cliff on each side and sealing it. They also left some soldiers there to guard the tomb (UST)

"telling the soldiers to stand where they could keep people from tampering with the tomb"

Translation Words - ULT

- [sealing](#)
- [tomb](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [by fastening a cord from](#)
- [tomb](#)

ULT

⁶⁶ So they went and made the [tomb](#) secure, [sealing](#) the stone and placing the guard.

UST

⁶⁶ So they went and made the [tomb](#) secure [by fastening a cord from](#) the stone that was in front of the entrance to the rock cliff on each side and sealing it. They also left some soldiers there to guard the tomb.

Matthew 28

Matthew 28 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

The tomb

The tomb in which Jesus was buried (Matthew 28:1) was the kind of tomb in which wealthy Jewish families buried their dead. It was an actual room cut into a rock. It had a flat place on one side where they could place the body after they had put oil and spices on it and wrapped it in cloth. Then they would roll a large rock in front of the tomb so no one could see inside or enter.

“Make disciples”

The last two verses ([Matthew 28:19-20](#)) are commonly known as “The Great Commission” because they contain a very important command given to all Christians. Christians are to “make disciples” by going to people, sharing the gospel with them and training them to live as Christians.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

An angel of the Lord

Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John all wrote about angels in white clothing with the women at Jesus’ tomb. Two of the authors called them men, but that is only because the angels looked human. Two of the authors wrote about two angels, but the other two authors wrote about only one of them. It is best to translate each of these passages as it appears in the ULT without trying to make the passages all say exactly the same thing. (See: Matthew 28:1-2 and Mark 16:5 and Luke 24:4 and John 20:12)

Matthew 28:1

Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of the resurrection of Jesus from the dead.

Now late on the Sabbath, as it began to dawn toward the first day of the week (ULT)
After the Sabbath ended, on Sunday morning at dawn... to (UST)

"After the Sabbath ended, as the sun came up on Sunday morning"

Now (ULT)

After (UST)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Matthew starts to tell a new part of the story.

Mary Magdalene...other (ULT)

Mary from the town of Magdala...the other (UST)

"the other woman named Mary." This is Mary the mother of James and Joseph ([Matthew 27:56](#)).

Translation Words - ULT

- [on the Sabbath](#)
- [Mary Magdalene](#)
- [tomb](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the Sabbath](#)
- [Mary from the town of Magdala](#)
- [tomb of Jesus](#)

ULT

¹ Now late [on the Sabbath](#), as it began to dawn toward the first day of the week, [Mary Magdalene](#) and the other Mary came to see the [tomb](#).

UST

¹ After [the Sabbath](#) ended, on Sunday morning at dawn, [Mary from the town of Magdala](#) and the other Mary went to look at the [tomb of Jesus](#).

Matthew 28:2

Behold (ULT)

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows. Your language may have a way of doing this.

there was a great earthquake, for an angel of the Lord descended...and rolled away the stone (ULT)

Possible meanings are 1) the earthquake happened because the angel came down and rolled away the stone or 2) all these events happened at the same time .

a...earthquake (ULT)

a strong earthquake (UST)

a sudden and violent shaking of the ground

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [of the Lord](#)
- [an angel](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
- [angel, archangel](#)

ULT

² Behold, there was a great earthquake, for [an angel of the Lord](#) descended from [heaven](#), came and rolled away the stone, and sat on it.

UST

² There was a strong earthquake because an angel from God came down from heaven. He went to the tomb and rolled the stone away from the entrance. Then he sat on the stone.

Matthew 28:3

His appearance (ULT)

His body (UST)

“The angel’s appearance”

was...like lightning (ULT)

was...as bright as lightning (UST)

This is a simile that emphasizes how bright in appearance the angel was. Alternate translation: “was bright like lightning” (See: [Simile](#))

his clothing as white as snow (ULT)

his clothes were as white as snow (UST)

This is a simile that emphasizes how bright and white the angel’s clothes were. The verb “was” from the previous phrase can be repeated. Alternate translation: “his clothing was very white, like snow” (See: [Simile](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [snow](#)
- [like](#)
- [as](#) (2)
- [clothing](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [snow](#)
- [as bright as lightning](#)
- [as](#) (2)
- [clothes were as](#)

ULT

³ His appearance was [like](#) lightning, and his [clothing](#) as white [as snow](#).

UST

³ His body was [as bright as lightning](#), and his [clothes were as](#) white [as snow](#).

Matthew 28:4

became like dead men (ULT)

This is a simile that means the soldiers fell down and did not move.
Alternate translation: "fell to the ground and lay there like dead men"
(See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [fear](#)
- [dead men](#)
- [shook](#)
- [like](#)
- [guards](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [afraid](#)
- [dead men](#)
- [trembled](#)
- [like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if](#)
- [guards](#)

ULT

⁴ The [guards shook](#) for [fear](#) of him and became [like dead men](#).

UST

⁴ The [guards trembled](#) because they were very [afraid](#), and then they fell down like [dead men](#).

Matthew 28:5

the women (ULT)

"Mary Magdalene and the other woman named Mary"

who has been crucified (ULT)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom the people and the soldiers crucified" or "whom they crucified" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- be afraid
- who has been crucified
- angel
- seek
- I know

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- should not be afraid
- who was nailed to a cross
- angel, archangel
- are looking
- I know

ULT

⁵ But the [angel](#) spoke and said to the women, "Do not [be afraid](#), for [I know](#) that you [seek Jesus, who has been crucified](#)."

UST

⁵ The angel said to the two women, "You [should not be afraid](#)! [I know](#) that you [are looking](#) for Jesus, [who was nailed to a cross](#)."

Matthew 28:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [but is](#)
- [just as](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [has made him alive again](#)
- [just as](#)

ULT

⁶ He is not here, [but is](#) risen, [just as](#) he said. Come see the place where he lay.

UST

⁶ He is not here! God [has made him alive again](#), [just as](#) Jesus told you he would! Come and see the place where his body lay!

Matthew 28:7

and tell his disciples, 'He has risen from the dead. See, he is going ahead of you to Galilee. There you will see him (ULT)

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "tell his disciples that he has risen from the dead and that Jesus has gone ahead of you to Galilee where you will see him." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

He has risen (ULT)

He has risen (UST)

"He has come back to life"

from the dead (ULT)

From among all those who have died. This expression describes all dead people together in the underworld. To rise from among them speaks of becoming alive again.

he is going ahead of you...you will see him (ULT)

Here "you" is plural. It refers to the women and the disciples. (See: [Forms of You](#))

I have told you (ULT)

Here "you" is plural and refers to the women. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [Galilee](#)
- [dead](#)
- [He has risen](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [disciple](#)
- [Galilee, Galilean](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
- [He has risen](#)

ULT

⁷ Go quickly and tell his [disciples](#), '[He has risen](#) from the [dead](#). See, he is going ahead of you to [Galilee](#). There you will see him.' See, I have told you."

UST

⁷ Then go quickly and tell his disciples, '[He has risen](#) from the dead! He will go ahead of you to the district of Galilee. You will see him there.' Pay attention to what I have told you!"

Matthew 28:8

They...left (ULT)

"Mary Magdalene and the other woman named Mary"

Translation Words - ULT

- fear
- disciples
- to tell
- joy
- tomb

Translation Words - UST

- They were afraid
- the disciples
- tell
- joyful
- grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

ULT

⁸ They quickly left the [tomb](#) with [fear](#) and great [joy](#), and ran [to tell](#) his [disciples](#).

UST

⁸ So the women left the tomb quickly. [They were afraid](#), but they were also very [joyful](#). They ran to [tell the disciples](#) what had happened.

Matthew 28:9

Behold (ULT)

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows. Your language may have a way of doing this.

Greetings (ULT)

Greetings to you (UST)

This is an ordinary greeting, much like “Hello” in English.

took hold of his feet (ULT)

“got down on their knees and held onto his feet”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jesus](#)
- [worshiped](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
- [prostrate, worship](#)

ULT

⁹ Behold, [Jesus](#) met them, saying, “Greetings!” The women came, took hold of his feet and [worshiped](#) him.

UST

⁹ Suddenly, as they were running, Jesus appeared to them. He said, “Greetings to you!” The women came close to him. They knelt down and clasped his feet and worshiped him.

Matthew 28:10

my brothers (ULT)

my disciples (UST)

This refers to Jesus' disciples.

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- be afraid
- brothers
- Galilee
- tell

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Do...be afraid
- disciples
- Galilee
- tell all

ULT

¹⁰ Then [Jesus](#) said to them, "Do not [be afraid](#). Go [tell](#) my [brothers](#) to leave for [Galilee](#). There they will see me."

UST

¹⁰ Then [Jesus](#) said to them, "Do not [be afraid](#)! Go and [tell all](#) my [disciples](#) that they should go to [Galilee](#). They will see me there."

Matthew 28:11

Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of the reaction of the Jewish religious leaders when they heard of Jesus' resurrection.

Now (ULT)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Matthew starts to tell a new part of the story.

they (ULT)

Here this refers to Mary Magdalene and the other Mary.

behold (ULT)

This marks the beginning of another event in the larger story. It may involve different people than the previous events. Your language may have a way of doing this.

Translation Words - ULT

- [chief priests](#)
- [and told](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [high priest, chief priests](#)
- [report, reported, reputation](#)

ULT

11 Now while they were going, behold, some of the guards went into the city [and told](#) the [chief priests](#) all the things that had happened.

UST

11 While the women were going, some of the soldiers who had been guarding the tomb went into the city. They reported to the chief priests everything that had happened.

Matthew 28:12

and discussed the matter with them (ULT)

“decided on a plan among themselves.” The priests and elders decided to give the money to the soldiers.

Translation Words - ULT

- of money
- When they had met
- elders
- soldiers
- and discussed the matter with them

Translation Words - UST

- silver
- met
- elder, older, old
- the soldiers
- They thought of a way

ULT

¹² When they had met with the elders and discussed the matter with them, they gave a large amount of money to the soldiers

UST

¹² So the chief priests and Jewish elders met together. They thought of a way to explain why the tomb was empty. They gave the soldiers a lot of money as a bribe.

Matthew 28:13

Say, 'His disciples...came...while we were sleeping (ULT)

If your language does not allow quotations within quotations you may translate this as a single quote. Alternate translation: "Tell others that Jesus' disciples came...while you were sleeping" (See: [Quotations and Quote Margins](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [disciples](#)
- [while...were sleeping](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [disciple](#)
- [were sleeping](#)

ULT

¹³ and told them, "Say, 'His [disciples](#) came by night and stole his body [while](#) we [were sleeping](#).'

UST

¹³ They said, "Tell people, 'His disciples came during the night and stole his body while we [were sleeping](#).'

Matthew 28:14

If this report reaches to the governor (ULT)

If the governor hears about this...ourselves...to (UST)

"If the governor hears that you were asleep when Jesus' disciples took his body"

the governor (ULT)

the governor (UST)

"Pilate" ([Matthew 27:2](#))

If...we will persuade him...keep you out of trouble (ULT)
we ourselves will make sure that he does...you will not have...worry (UST)

"do not worry. We will talk to him so that he does not punish you."

Translation Words - ULT

- [governor](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [governor](#)

ULT

¹⁴ If this report reaches to the [governor](#), we will persuade him and keep you out of trouble."

UST

¹⁴ If the [governor](#) hears about this, we ourselves will make sure that he does not get angry and punish you. So you will not have to worry."

Matthew 28:15

and did as they had been instructed (ULT)

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "did what the priests had told them to do" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

This report...among the Jews even until today (ULT)

"Many Jews heard this report and continue to tell others about it even today"

even until today (ULT)

This refers to the time Matthew wrote the book.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Jews](#)
- [the money](#)
- [they had been instructed](#)
- [report](#)
- [as](#)
- [today](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jews](#)
- [silver](#)
- [were told](#)
- [story](#)
- [like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if](#)
- [day](#)

ULT

¹⁵ So the soldiers took [the money](#) and did [as they had been instructed](#). This [report](#) spread widely among [the Jews](#) even until [today](#).

UST

¹⁵ So the soldiers took the money and did as they [were told](#). And this [story](#) has been told among the [Jews](#) to this very day.

Matthew 28:16

Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of Jesus meeting with his disciples after his resurrection.

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- eleven disciples
- disciples
- Galilee

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- the twelve, the eleven
- disciple
- Galilee, Galilean

ULT

16 But the [eleven disciples](#) went to [Galilee](#), to the mountain to which [Jesus](#) had directed them.

UST

16 Later the eleven disciples went to the district of Galilee. They went to the mountain where Jesus had told them to go.

Matthew 28:17

they worshiped him, but some doubted (ULT)

Possible meanings are 1) they all worshiped Jesus even though some of them doubted, or 2) some of them worshiped Jesus, but others did not worship him because they doubted.

but some doubted (ULT)

It can be stated explicitly what the disciples doubted. Alternate translation: "some doubted that he was really Jesus and that he had become alive again" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [they worshiped him](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [prostrate, worship](#)

ULT

¹⁷ When they saw him, [they worshiped him](#), but some doubted.

UST

¹⁷ They saw him there and worshiped him. But some doubted that it was really Jesus and that he had become alive again.

Matthew 28:18

All authority has been given to me (ULT)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "My Father has given me all authority" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

in heaven and on the earth (ULT)

Here "heaven" and "earth" are used together to mean everyone and everything in heaven and earth. (See: [Merism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [authority](#)
- [earth](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [Jesus](#)
- [authority over everything and everyone](#)
- [earth](#)

ULT

¹⁸ [Jesus](#) came to them and spoke to them, saying, "All [authority](#) has been given to me in [heaven](#) and on the [earth](#)."

UST

¹⁸ Then [Jesus](#) came close to them and said, "My Father has given me all [authority over everything and everyone](#) in heaven and on [earth](#)."

Matthew 28:19

of all the nations (ULT)

Here “nations” refers to the people. Alternate translation: “of all the people in every nation” (See: [Metonymy](#))

into the name (ULT)

Here “name” refers to authority. Alternate translation: “by the authority” (See: [Metonymy](#))

of the Father...of the Son (ULT)

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: [Translating Son and Father](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Baptize
- Holy
- Son
- Holy Spirit
- and make disciples
- Father
- name
- nations

Translation Words - UST

- Baptize...to be
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- the Son
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit
- teach my message to people of all people groups so that they may become my disciples
- the Father
- authority
- nation

ULT

19 Go therefore [and make disciples](#) of all the [nations](#). [Baptize](#) them into the [name](#) of the [Father](#), and of the [Son](#), and of the [Holy Spirit](#).

UST

19 So go, and use my authority to [teach my message to people of all people groups so that they may become my disciples](#). [Baptize](#) them [to be](#) under the [authority](#) of [the Father](#), of [the Son](#), and of the Holy Spirit.

Matthew 28:20

See (ULT)

remember that (UST)

“Look” or “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

even to the end of the age (ULT)

until...end of this age (UST)

“until the end of this age” or “until the end of the world”

Translation Words - ULT

- I have commanded
- Teach
- to obey
- age
- always

Translation Words - UST

- I have commanded
- Teach
- to obey
- age
- day

ULT

²⁰ [Teach](#) them [to obey](#) all the things that [I have commanded](#) you. See, I am with you [always](#), even to the end of the [age](#).”

UST

²⁰ [Teach](#) them [to obey](#) everything that [I have commanded](#) you. And remember that I will be with you always, until the end of this [age](#).”



unfoldingWord® Translation Academy

Version 12

Abstract Nouns

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **Abstract Nouns** are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. It is a way of giving names to actions or qualities so that people who speak these languages can talk about them as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, they may not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," but they would express the same meaning in other ways. They would say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, "What is its **weight**?" could be expressed as "How much does it **weigh**?" or "How **heavy** is it?"

Examples from the Bible

...from ***childhood*** you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

The abstract noun "purposes" refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

...**from** childhood

you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.

But godliness

with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**.
But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**.
But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.

Today salvation

has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

Today the people in this house **have been saved**...
Today God **has saved** the people in this house...

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness

to be. (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes

of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

(Go back to: [Matthew 6:13](#); [6:14](#); [6:15](#); [7:13](#); [7:14](#); [9:35](#); [10:21](#); [12:18](#); [12:20](#); [24:12](#); [26:41](#); [27:45](#))

Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- ACTIVE: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- PASSIVE: **The house** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

- **ACTIVE:** **My father** built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** **The house** was built by my father in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** **The house** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

Reasons this is a translation issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

Purposes for the passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed**, too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal **was broken down**... (Judges 6:28 ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea (Luke 17:2 ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
3. Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

A loaf of bread was given

him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

The king's servants gave Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

It would be better for him if a millstone were put

around his neck and he were thrown into the sea. (Luke 17:2 ULT)

It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

(3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

A loaf of bread was given

him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Abstract Nouns](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]]

(Go back to: [Matthew 1 General Notes](#); [1:16](#); [1:18](#); [1:20](#); [1:22](#); [2:5](#); [2:16](#); [2:17](#); [2:18](#); [2:23](#); [3:3](#); [3:6](#); [3:10](#); [3:12](#); [3:13](#); [3:16](#); [4:1](#); [4:4](#); [4:6](#); [4:7](#); [4:10](#); [4:12](#); [4:14](#); [4:24](#); [5:4](#); [5:6](#); [5:9](#); [5:10](#); [5:13](#); [5:14](#); [5:18](#); [5:19](#); [5:21](#); [5:24](#); [5:25](#); [5:27](#); [5:29](#); [5:31](#); [5:32](#); [5:33](#); [5:38](#); [5:43](#); [6:1](#); [6:4](#); [6:5](#); [6:7](#); [6:10](#); [6:29](#); [6:30](#); [6:33](#); [7:1](#); [7:2](#); [7:7](#); [7:19](#); [7:25](#); [8:3](#); [8:8](#); [8:9](#); [8:12](#); [8:13](#); [8:16](#); [8:17](#); [8:24](#); [8:28](#); [8:33](#); [Notes](#); [9:1](#); [9:2](#); [9:5](#); [9:15](#); [9:16](#); [9:17](#); [9:22](#); [9:25](#); [9:29](#); [9:30](#); [9:32](#); [9:33](#); [10:18](#); [10:19](#); [10:21](#); [10:22](#); [10:26](#); [10:30](#); [11:5](#); [11:7](#); [11:10](#); [11:19](#); [11:20](#); [11:21](#); [11:23](#); [11:27](#); [12:13](#); [12:22](#); [12:25](#); [12:31](#); [12:32](#); [12:33](#); [12:37](#); [12:39](#); [12:44](#); [Notes](#); [13:6](#); [13:11](#); [13:12](#); [13:19](#); [13:35](#); [13:40](#); [13:44](#); [13:47](#); [13:57](#); [Notes](#); [14:8](#); [14:9](#); [14:11](#); [14:20](#); [14:36](#); [15:12](#); [15:13](#); [15:22](#); [15:24](#); [15:28](#); [15:31](#); [16:4](#); [16:21](#); [17:2](#); [17:18](#); [17:22](#); [17:23](#); [18:6](#); [18:8](#); [18:9](#); [18:16](#); [18:24](#); [18:25](#); [18:34](#); [19:11](#); [19:12](#); [19:13](#); [19:25](#); [20:9](#); [20:18](#); [20:19](#); [20:23](#); [20:28](#); [21:2](#); [21:4](#); [21:13](#); [21:21](#); [21:42](#); [21:43](#); [21:44](#); [22:3](#); [22:4](#); [22:8](#); [22:10](#); [22:14](#); [22:30](#); [22:31](#); [23:5](#); [23:7](#); [23:8](#); [23:10](#); [23:12](#); [23:37](#); [24:2](#); [24:6](#); [24:9](#); [24:13](#); [24:14](#); [24:15](#); [24:22](#); [24:29](#); [24:40](#); [24:43](#); [24:48](#); [25:5](#); [25:10](#); [25:29](#); [25:32](#); [25:34](#); [25:41](#); [26:2](#); [26:3](#); [26:9](#); [26:13](#); [26:24](#); [26:28](#); [26:31](#); [26:32](#); [26:42](#); [26:45](#); [26:54](#); [26:56](#); [27:3](#); [27:8](#); [27:9](#); [27:12](#); [27:15](#); [27:17](#); [27:20](#); [27:22](#); [27:33](#); [27:34](#); [27:38](#); [27:44](#); [27:51](#); [27:52](#); [27:58](#); [27:64](#); [28:5](#); [28:15](#); [28:18](#))

Apostrophe

Definition

An apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him.

Description

He does this to tell his listeners his message or feelings about that person or thing in a very strong way.

Reason this is a translation issue

Many languages do not use apostrophe, and readers could be confused by it. They may wonder who the speaker is talking to, or think that the speaker is crazy to talk to things or people who cannot hear.

Examples from the Bible

Mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on you (2 Samuel 1:21 ULT)

King Saul was killed on Mount Gilboa, and David sang a sad song about it. By telling these mountains that he wanted them to have no dew or rain, he showed how sad he was.

Jerusalem, Jerusalem, who kills the prophets and stones those sent to you. (Luke 13:34 ULT)

Jesus was expressing his feelings for the people of Jerusalem in front of his disciples and a group of Pharisees. By speaking directly to Jerusalem as though its people could hear him, Jesus showed how deeply he cared about them.

He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: **"Altar, altar!** This is what Yahweh says, 'See, ...on you they will burn human bones.'" (1 Kings 13:2 ULT)

The man of God spoke as if the altar could hear him, but he really wanted the king, who was standing there, to hear him.

Translation Strategies

If apostrophe would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. But if this way of speaking would be confusing to your people, let the speaker continue speaking to the people that are listening to him as he tells **them** his message or feelings about the people or thing that cannot hear him. See the example below.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: "Altar

, altar! This is what Yahweh says, 'See,...on you they will burn human bones.'" (1 Kings 13:2 ULT)

He said this about the altar: "This is what Yahweh says **about this altar**. 'See,...they will burn people's bones on **it**.'"

Mountains of Gilboa

, let there not be dew or rain on you (2 Samuel 1:21 ULT)

As for these mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on **them**

This page answers the question: *What is the figure of speech called apostrophe?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:6](#); [11:21](#); [11:23](#); [23:37](#))

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

- **Assumed knowledge** is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.
- When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways:
 - **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
 - **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. **Implicit information** is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this **implicit information** by combining what they already know (**assumed knowledge**) with the **explicit information** that the speaker tells them directly.

Reasons this is a translation issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different than the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the **assumed knowledge** or the **implicit information** is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

Jesus said to him, "**Foxes** have holes

, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes to live in**, and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon

at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.

...it will be more tolerable for **those cities Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, at the day of judgment than for you.
or:
...it will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands

when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19, 20 ULT) - The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, he would have to live like Jesus without a house.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man**, have **no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live.**"

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you.**

or:

At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:18; 1:19; 1:22; 2:7; 2:13; 2:15; 2:16; 3:3; 3:4; 3:9; 4:13; 4:18; 5:14; 5:18; 5:21; 5:23; 5:41; 6:1; 6:5; 7:1; 7:19; 7:22; 8:4; 8:10; 8:16; 8:31; 9:21; 9:27; 10:11; 10:25; 11:17; 11:18; 11:22; 11:24; 12:4; 12:7; 12:10; 12:18; 12:38; 12:41; 12:42; Notes; 13:1; 13:2; 13:11; 13:14; 13:17; 13:19; 13:20; 13:22; 13:24; 13:32; 13:33; 13:44; 13:45; 13:54; 14:4; 14:6; 14:12; 14:13; 14:31; 15:2; 15:6; 15:7; 15:21; 15:22; 16:18; 17:10; 17:15; 17:24; 17:27; 18:10; 18:17; 18:19; 18:20; 18:34; 19:5; 19:12; 19:25; 20:24; 21:2; 21:4; 21:8; 21:12; 21:15; 21:23; 22:4; 22:7; 22:16; 22:17; 22:29; 22:46; 23:5; 23:27; 24:1; 24:2; 24:3; 25:11; 25:13; 25:15; 25:29; 26:6; 26:31; 26:52; 26:55; 26:65; 27:1; 27:6; 27:11; 27:26; 27:32; 27:35; 27:40; 27:54; 27:60; 28:17](#))

Background Information

Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called **background information**. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

This page answers the question: *What is background information, and how can I show that some information is background information?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Order of Events](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

Example - The underlined sentences in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because ***their village was going to have a feast the next day. Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day!*** They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope ***they had brought with them***, and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that ***it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig.***

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are: "their village was going to have a feast the next day;" "He once killed three wild pigs in one day;" "that they had brought with them;" and "Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig."

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were", rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "Peter ***was*** the best hunter in the village" and "it ***was*** his own pig."

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are "because," "once," and "had."

A writer may use background information

- To help their listeners be interested in the story
- To help their listeners understand something in the story
- To help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- To tell the setting of a story
- Setting includes:
 - where the story takes place
 - when the story takes place
 - who is present when the story begins
 - what is happening when the story begins

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- You (the translator) need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- You will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that your own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.

Examples from the Bible

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram **was eighty-six years old** when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

Now Jesus himself, when he began to teach, **was about thirty years of age**. He **was the son** (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus' age and ancestors. The story starts up again in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

Now **it happened on a Sabbath** that Jesus **was going through the grain fields** and his disciples **were picking the heads of grain**, rubbing them between their hands, and eating the grain. But some of the Pharisees said... (Luke 6:1-2a ULT)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the sentence, "But some of the Pharisees said."

Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kind of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

1. Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.
2. Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULT English translations.

Now

Jesus himself, when he began to teach, was about thirty years of age. He was the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

English uses the word "now" to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb "was" shows that it is background information.

With many other exhortations also, he preached good news to the people. John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias

, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The underlined phrases happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb "had" in "had done" shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael.
Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram

. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

"When Abram was eighty-six years old, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael."

John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias

, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20)

The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.

"Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and he did many other evil things, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison."

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Connecting Words and Phrases](#)

[Introduction of a New Event](#)

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:22](#); [3:4](#); [4:12](#); [8:30](#); [10:2](#); [Notes](#); [14:13](#); [15:29](#); [16:22](#); [19:1](#); [26:3](#); [26:48](#); [27:15](#); [27:20](#))

Biblical Distance

Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man's hand.
- The **span** or handspace was the width of a man's hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man's forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **"long" cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as "furlong", which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the lengths and distances that are in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]

The metric values in the table below are close but not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact length from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

| Original Measure | Metric Measure |
|------------------|----------------|
| handbreadth | 8 centimeters |
| span | 23 centimeters |
| cubit | 46 centimeters |
| "long" cubit | 54 centimeters |
| stadia | 185 meters |

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one cubit as ".46 meters" or even as "46 centimeters", readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say "half a meter", "45 centimeters", or "50 centimeters".
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word "about" to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, Luke 24:13 says that Emmaus was sixty stadia from Jerusalem. This can be translated as "about ten kilometers" from Jerusalem.
6. When God tells people how long something should be, and when people make things according to those lengths, do not use "about" in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how long something should be.

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half. (Exodus 25:10 ULT)

- (1) Use the measurements given in the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half kubits** ; its width will be **one kubit and a half** ; and its height will be **one kubit and a half**."

- (2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter** ; its width will be **two thirds of a meter** ; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard meter length, you could translate it as below.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half cubits (one meter)**; its width will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)** ; and its height will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)**."

- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**¹; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**²; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter.**"

The footnotes would look like:

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**¹; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**²; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter.**"

The footnotes would look like:

[1] two and a half cubits
[2] one cubit and a half

(Go back to: [Matthew 6:27](#))

Biblical Money

Description:

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of money in the Bible?*

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals such as silver and gold and would give a certain weight of that metal in order to buy things. Later people started to make coins that each contained a standard amount of a certain metal. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

| Unit in OT | Metal | Weight |
|------------|----------------|--------------|
| daric | gold coin | 8.4 grams |
| shekel | various metals | 11 grams |
| talent | various metals | 33 kilograms |

| Unit in NT | Metal | Day's Wage |
|------------------|-------------|------------|
| denarius/denarii | silver coin | 1 day |
| drachma | silver coin | 1 day |
| mite | copper coin | 1/64 day |
| shekel | silver coin | 4 days |
| talent | silver | 6,000 days |

Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see Biblical Weight. The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)
2. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.
3. Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
4. Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a note.
5. Use the Bible term and explain it in a note.

Translation Strategies

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.

The one owed five hundred denarii, and the other owed fifty denarii. (Luke 7:41 ULT)

(1) Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)

"The one owed **five hundred denali**, and the other owed **fifty denali**."

(2) Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.

"The one owed **five hundred silver coins**, and the other owed **fifty silver coins**."

(3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.

"The one owed **five hundred days' wages**, and the other owed **fifty days' wages**."

(4) Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

"The one owed **five hundred denarii** ¹, and the other owed **fifty denarii**. ²"

The footnotes would look like:

[1] five hundred days's wages
[2] fifty day's wages

(5) Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.

"The one owed **five hundred denarii** ¹, and the other owed **fifty denarii**."
(Luke 7:41 ULT)

[1] A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Copy or Borrow Words](#)
[Translate Unknowns](#)

(Go back to: [Matthew 17:24](#); [17:27](#); [18:24](#); [18:28](#); [20:2](#); [20:10](#); [20:13](#); [22:19](#); [25:15](#); [25:17](#); [25:19](#); [25:20](#); [25:22](#); [25:24](#); [25:28](#))

Biblical Volume

Description

The following terms are the most common units of volume used in the Bible to state how much a certain container could hold. The containers and measurements are given for both liquids (such as wine) and dry solids (such as grain). The metric values are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the measures of volume that are in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal\]\]](#)

| Type | Original Measure | Liters |
|--------|------------------|--------------|
| Dry | omer | 2 liters |
| Dry | ephah | 22 liters |
| Dry | homer | 220 liters |
| Dry | cor | 220 liters |
| Dry | seah | 7.7 liters |
| Dry | letheq | 114.8 liters |
| Liquid | metrete | 40 liters |
| Liquid | bath | 22 liters |
| Liquid | hin | 3.7 liters |
| Liquid | kab | 1.23 liters |
| Liquid | log | 0.31 liters |

Translation Principles

- The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
- Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
- Whatever measures you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kinds of measures in the text or a footnote.
- If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one hin as “3.7 liters”, readers might think that the measurement is exactly 3.7 liters, not 3.6 or 3.8. It would be better to use a more approximate measure such as “three and a half liters” or “four liters”.
- When God tells people how much of something to use, and when people use those amounts in obedience to him, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much they used.

When the unit of measure is stated

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Isaiah 5:10 below.

For four hectares of vineyard will yield only one bath, and one homer of seed will yield only an ephah. (Isaiah 5:10 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)

"For four hektares of vineyard will yield only one **bat**, and one **homer** of seed will yield only an **efa**."

(2) Use the measurements given in the UST. Usually they are metric measurements. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

"For four hectares of vineyard will yield only **twenty-two liters** and **220 liters** of seed will yield only **twenty-two liters**."

"For four hectares of vineyard will yield only **twenty-two liters**, and **ten baskets** of seed will yield only **one basket**."

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

"For four hectares of vineyard will yield only six gallons, and **six and a half bushels** of seed will yield only twenty quarts."

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

"For four hectares of vineyard will yield only **one bath (six gallons)**, and **one homer (six and a half bushels)** of seed will yield only **an ephah (twenty quarts)**."

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in footnotes.

"For four hectares of vineyard will yield only twenty-two liters ¹, and 220 liters ² of seed will yield only twenty-two liters ³."

The footnotes would look like:

- [1] one bath
- [2] one homer
- [3] one ephah

When the unit of measure is implied

Sometimes the Hebrew does not specify a particular unit of volume but only uses a number. In these cases, many English versions, including the ULT and UST, add the word “measure”.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty measures

of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty measures of wine, there were only twenty. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

Translation Strategies

1. Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
2. Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount”.
3. Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.
4. Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Haggai 2:16 below.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty measures

of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty measures of wine, there were only twenty. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

(1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for **twenty** of grain, there were only **ten**, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty** of wine, there were only **twenty**.

(2) Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount”.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for **twenty amounts** of grain, there were only **ten**, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty amounts** of wine, there were only **twenty**.

(3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for **twenty baskets** of grain, there were only **ten**, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty jars** of wine, there were only **twenty**.

(4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for **twenty liters** of grain, there were only **ten liters**, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty liters** of wine, there were only **twenty liters**.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction\]\]](#)
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Matthew 13:33](#))

Connecting Words and Phrases

Description

This page answers the question: *How do connecting words work to connect parts of the text in different ways?*

As humans, we write our thoughts in phrases and sentences.

Usually, we want to communicate a series of thoughts that are connected to each other in different ways. **Connecting Words and Phrases** show how these thoughts are related to each other. For example, we can show how the following thoughts are related by using the underlined Connecting Words:

- It was raining, so I opened my umbrella.
- It was raining, but I did not have an umbrella. So I got very wet.

Connecting Words or Phrases can connect phrases or clauses within a sentence. They can connect sentences to each other. They can also connect entire chunks to one another in order to show how the chunk before relates to the chunk after. Very often, the Connecting Words that connect entire chunks to one another are either conjunctions or adverbs.

It was raining, but I did not have an umbrella. So I got very wet.

Now I must change my clothes. Then I will drink a cup of hot tea and warm myself by the fire.

In the above example, the word "now" connects the two short chunks of text, showing the relationship between them. The speaker must change his clothes, drink hot tea, and warm himself because of something that happened earlier (that is, he got wet in the rain).

Sometimes people might not use a Connecting Word because they expect the readers to understand the relationship between the thoughts because of the context. Some languages do not use Connecting Words as much as other languages do. They might say:

- It was raining. I did not have an umbrella. I got very wet.

You (the translator) will need to use the method that is most natural and clear in the target language. But in general, using Connecting Words whenever possible helps the reader to understand the ideas in the Bible most clearly.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- You need to understand the relationship between paragraphs, between sentences, and between parts of sentences in the Bible, and how Connecting Words and Phrases can help you to understand the relationship between the thoughts that it is connecting.
- Each language has its own ways of showing how thoughts are related.
- You need to know how to help readers understand the relationship between the thoughts in a way that is natural in your language.

Translation Principles

- You need to translate in a way that readers can understand the same relationship between thoughts that the original readers would have understood.
- Whether or not a Connecting Word is used is not as important as readers being able to understand the relationship between the ideas.

The Different Types of Connections

Listed below are different types of connections between ideas or events. These different types of connections can be indicated by using different Connecting Words. When we write or translate something, it is important to use the

right Connecting Word so that these connections are clear for the reader. If you would like additional information simply click the colored word to be directed to a page containing definitions and examples for each type of connection.

- Sequential Clause – a time relationship between two events in which one happens and then the other happens.
- Simultaneous Clause – a time relationship between two or more events that occur at the same time.
- Background Clause – a time relationship in which the first clause describes a long event that is happening at the time when the beginning of the second event happens, which is described in the second clause.
- Exceptional Relationship – one clause describes a group of people or items, and the other clause excludes one or more items or people from the group.
- Hypothetical Condition – the second event will only take place if the first one takes place. Sometimes what takes place is dependent on the actions of other people.
- Factual Condition – a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain or true so that the condition is guaranteed to happen.
- Contrary to Fact Condition – a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain that it is not true. See also: [Hypothetical Statements](#).
- Goal Relationship – a logical relationship in which the second event is the purpose or goal of the first.
- Reason and Result Relationship – a logical relationship in which one event is the reason for the other event, which is the result.
- Contrast Relationship – one item is being described as different or in opposition to another.

Examples from the Bible

I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me, **but** instead I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. **Then** after three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him fifteen days. (Galatians 1:16-18 ULT)

The word “but” introduces something that **contrasts** with what was said before. The **contrast** here is between what Paul did not do and what he did do. The word “then” introduces a **sequence** of events. It introduces something that Paul did after he returned to Damascus.

Therefore whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

The word “Therefore” links this section with the section before it, signalling that the section that came before gave the **reason** for this section. “Therefore” usually links sections larger than one sentence. The word “and” links only two actions within the same sentence, that of breaking commandments and teaching others. In this verse the word “But” **contrasts** what one group of people will be called in God’s kingdom with what another group of people will be called.

We do not place a stumbling block in front of anyone, **for** we do not wish our ministry to be brought into disrepute. **Instead**, we prove ourselves by all our actions, that we are God’s servants. (2 Corinthians 6:3-4 ULT)

Here the word “for” connects what follows as the **reason** for what came before; the reason that Paul does not place stumbling blocks is that he does not want his ministry brought into disrepute. “Instead” **contrasts** what Paul does (proving by his actions that he is God’s servant) with what he said he does not do (placing stumbling blocks).

General Translation Strategies

See each type of Connecting Word above for specific strategies

If the way the relationship between thoughts is shown in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, then consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).
2. Do not use a connecting word if it would be strange to use one and people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.
3. Use a different connecting word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).

Jesus said to them, "Come after me, and I will make you become fishers of men."
Immediately they left the nets and went after him. (Mark 1:17-18 ULT)

They followed Jesus **because** he told them to. Some translators may want to mark this clause with the connecting word "so".

Jesus said to them, "Come after me, and I will make you become fishers of men." **So** immediately they left the nets and went after him.

(2) Do not use a connecting word if it would be odd to use one and people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.

Therefore whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and

teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. But whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Some languages would prefer not to use connecting words here, because the meaning is clear without them and using them would be unnatural. They might translate like this:

Therefore whoever breaks the least one of these commandments, teaching others to do so as well, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. Whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me, but

instead I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. Then after three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him fifteen days. (Galatians 1:16-18 ULT)

Some languages might not need the words "but" or "then" here. They might translate like this:

I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me. Instead I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. After three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him fifteen days.

(3) Use a different connecting word.

Therefore

whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. But whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Instead of a word like “therefore,” a language might need a phrase to indicate that there was a section before it that gave the reason for the section that follows. Also, the word “but” is used here because of the contrast between the two groups of people. But in some languages, the word “but” would show that what comes after it is surprising because of what came before it. So “and” might be clearer for those languages. They might translate like this:

Because of that, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven.
And whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:17](#); [10:28](#); [12:42](#))

Copy or Borrow Words

Description

Sometimes the Bible includes things that are not part of your culture and that your language may not have a word for. It also includes people and places that you may not have names for.

When that happens you can “borrow” the word from the Bible into your own language. This means that you basically copy it from the other language. This page tells how to “borrow” words. (There are also other ways to translate words for things that are not in your language. See [Translate Unknowns](#).)

This page answers the question: *What does it mean to borrow words from another language and how can I do it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Examples from the Bible

He saw a **fig** tree on the roadside (Matthew 21:19 ULT)

If there are no fig trees where your language is spoken, there might not be a name for this kind of tree in your language.

Above him were the **seraphim**; each one had six wings; with two each covered his face, and with two he covered his feet, and with two he flew. (Isaiah 6:2 ULT)

Your language might not have a name for this kind of creature.

The declaration of the word of Yahweh to Israel by the hand of **Malachi**. (Malachi 1:1 ULT)

Malachi might not be a name that people who speak your language use.

Translation Strategies

There are several things to be aware of when borrowing words from another language.

- Different languages use different scripts, such as the Hebrew, Greek, Latin, Cyrillic, Devanagari, and Korean scripts. These scripts use different shapes to represent the letters in their alphabets.
- Languages that use the same script might pronounce the letters in that script differently. For example, when speaking German, people pronounce the letter “j” the same way that people pronounce the letter “y” when speaking English.
- Languages do not all have the same sounds or combinations of sounds. For example, many languages do not have the soft “th” sound in the English word “think,” and some languages cannot start a word with a combination of sounds like “st” as in “stop.”

There are several ways to borrow a word.

1. If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.
2. You can spell the word as the other language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.
3. You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the other language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.

צִפְנִיָּה - A man’s name in Hebrew letters.

“Zephaniah” - The same name in Roman letters

(2) You can spell the word as the other language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.

Zephaniah - This is a man’s name.

“Zephaniah” - The name as it is spelled in English, but you can pronounce it according to the rules of your language.

(3) You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the other language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

Zephaniah - If your language does not have the “z”, you could use “s”. If your writing system does not use “ph” you could use “f”. Depending on how you pronounce the “i” you could spell it with “i” or “ai” or “ay”.

“Sefania”

“Sefanaia”

“Sefanaya”

(Go back to: [Matthew 27:46](#))

Direct and Indirect Quotations

Description

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotation and indirect quotation.

A **direct quotation** occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker's exact words. In the example below, John would have said "I" when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is reporting John's words, uses the word "I" in the quotation to refer to John. To show that these are John's exact words, many languages put the words between quotation marks: "".

- John said, "**I** do not know at what time **I** will arrive."

An **indirect quotation** occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead of from the original person's point of view. This kind of quotation usually features changes in pronouns, and it often features changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as "he" in the quotation and uses the word "would", to replace the future tense indicated by "will".

- John said that **he** did not know at what time **he** would arrive.

Why this is a translation issue

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by either direct or indirect quotations. In other languages, it is more natural to use one rather than the other, or there is a certain meaning implied by using one rather than the other. So for each quotation, translators need to decide whether it is best to translate it as a direct quotation or an indirect quotation.

Examples from the Bible

The verses in the examples below contain both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have underlined the quotations.

He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, "Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them." (Luke 5:14 ULT)

- Indirect quote: He instructed him **to tell no one**,
- Direct quote: but told him, "**Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest...**"

Being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God would come, Jesus answered them and said, "The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, 'Look here!' or, 'Look there!' because the kingdom of God is among you." (Luke 17:20-21 ULT)

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees **when the kingdom of God would come**,
- Direct quote: Jesus answered them and said, "**The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, 'Look here!' or, 'Look there!' because the kingdom of God is among you.**"
- Direct quotes: Neither will they say, '**Look here!**' or, '**Look there!**'

This page answers the question: *What are direct and indirect quotations?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

[Quotations and Quote Margins](#)

Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it. If the kind of quote used in that context is not natural for your language, follow these strategies.

1. If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
2. If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.

He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, “Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.

” (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He instructed him to tell no one, but ***to go on his way, and to show himself to the priest and to offer a sacrifice for his cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.***”

(2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

He instructed him, to tell no one

, but told him, “Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.” (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He instructed him, “***Tell no one.*** Just go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_quotations.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Quotes within Quotes](#)

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:7](#); [2:12](#); [4:3](#); [4:6](#); [9:5](#); [11:18](#); [11:19](#); [12:13](#); [12:47](#); [13:30](#); [13:51](#); [14:4](#); [15:6](#); [17:26](#); [19:5](#); [21:21](#); [21:25](#); [21:26](#); [22:4](#); [22:24](#); [22:32](#); [24:26](#); [26:18](#); [26:48](#); [26:61](#); [26:75](#); [27:43](#); [27:63](#); [27:64](#); [28:7](#); [28:13](#))

Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding

Description

In some languages, phrases that modify a noun can be used with the noun for two different purposes. They can either (1) distinguish the noun from other similar items, or (2) they can give more information about the noun. That information could be new to the reader, or a reminder about something the reader might already know. Other languages use modifying phrases with a noun only for distinguishing the noun from other similar things. When people who speak these languages hear a modifying phrase with a noun, they assume that its function is to distinguish one item from another similar item.

This page answers the question: *When a phrase is used with a noun, what is the difference between phrases that distinguish the noun from others and phrases that simply inform or remind?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

Some languages use a comma to mark the difference between (1) making a distinction between similar items and (2) giving more information about an item. Without the comma, the sentence below communicates that it is making a distinction:

- Mary gave some of the food to **her sister who was very thankful**.
 - If her sister was usually thankful, the phrase “who was thankful” could **distinguish this sister** of Mary’s from another sister who was not usually thankful.

With the comma, the sentence is giving more information:

- Mary gave some of the food to **her sister, who was very thankful**.
 - This same phrase can be used give us more information about Mary’s sister. It tells us about **how Mary’s sister responded** when Mary gave her the food. In this case it does not distinguish one sister from another sister.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Many source languages of the Bible use phrases that modify a noun **both** for distinguishing the noun from another similar item **and also** for giving more information about the noun. You (the translator) must be careful to understand which meaning the author intended in each case.
- Some languages use phrases that modify a noun **only** for distinguishing the noun from another similar item. When translating a phrase that is used for giving more information, translators who speak these languages will need to separate the phrase from the noun. Otherwise, people who read it or hear it will think that the phrase is meant to distinguish the noun from other similar items.

Examples from the Bible

Examples of words and phrases that are used to distinguish one item from other possible items: These usually do not cause any problem in translation.

... The curtain is to separate **the holy place** from **the most holy place**. (Exodus 26:33 ULT)

The words “holy” and “most holy” distinguish two different places from each other and from any other place.

A foolish son is a grief to his father, and bitterness to **the woman who bore him**. (Proverbs 17:25 ULT)

The phrase “who bore him” distinguishes which woman the son is bitterness to. He is not bitterness to all women, but to his mother.

Examples of words and phrases that are used to give added information or a reminder about an item: These are a translation issue for languages that do not use these.

...for **your righteous judgments** are good. (Psalm 119:39 ULT)

The word “righteous” simply reminds us that God’s judgments are righteous. It does not distinguish his righteous judgements from his unrighteous judgements, because all of his judgments are righteous.

Can Sarah, **who is ninety years old**, bear a son? (Genesis 17:17-18 ULT)

The phrase “who is ninety years old” is the reason that Abraham did not think that Sarah could bear a son. He was not distinguishing one woman named Sarah from another woman named Sarah who was a different age, and he was not telling anyone something new about her age. He simply did not think that a woman who was that old could bear a child.

I will wipe away mankind **whom I have created** from the surface of the earth. (Genesis 6:7 ULT)

The phrase “whom I have created” is a reminder of the relationship between God and mankind. It is the reason God had the right to wipe away mankind. There is not another mankind that God did not create.

Translation Strategies

If readers would understand the purpose of a phrase with a noun, then consider keeping the phrase and the noun together. For languages that use words or phrases with a noun only to distinguish one item from another, here are some strategies for translating phrases that are used to inform or remind.

1. Put the information in another part of the sentence and add words that show its purpose.
2. Use one of your language’s ways for expressing that this is just added information. It may be by adding a small word, or by changing the way the voice sounds. Sometimes changes in the voice can be shown with punctuation marks, such as parentheses or commas.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Put the information in another part of the sentence and add words that show its purpose.

I hate those who serve worthless

idols (Psalm 31:6 ULT) - By saying “worthless idols,” David was commenting about all idols and giving his reason for hating those who serve them. He was not distinguishing worthless idols from valuable idols.

Because idols are worthless, I hate those who serve them.

...for **your** righteous

judgments are good. (Psalm 119:39 ULT)

...for your judgments are good **because** they are righteous.

Can Sarah, who is ninety years old

, bear a son? (Genesis 17:17-18 ULT) - The phrase “who is ninety years old” is a reminder of Sarah’s age. It tells why Abraham was asking the question. He did not expect that a woman who was that old could bear a child.

Can Sarah bear a son **even when** she is ninety years old?

I will call on Yahweh, who is worthy to be praised

(2 Samuel 22:4 ULT) - There is only one Yahweh. The phrase “who is worthy to be praised” gives a reason for calling on Yahweh.

I will call on Yahweh, **because** he is worthy to be praised

(2) Use one of your language’s ways for expressing that this is just added information.

You are my Son, whom I love

. I am pleased with you. (Luke 3:22 ULT)

You are my Son. ***I love you*** and I am pleased with you.
Receiving my love, you are my Son. I am pleased with you.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[*Double Negatives*](#)

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:28](#))

Double Negatives

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of “not.” Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

This page answers the question: *What are double negatives?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning “not.” Examples in English are “no,” “not,” “none,” “no one,” “nothing,” “nowhere,” “never,” “nor,” “neither,” and “without.” Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean “not” such as the underlined parts of these words: “**un** happy,” “**im** possible,” and “use**less**.” Some other kinds of words also have a negative meaning, such as “lack” or “reject,” or even “fight” or “evil.”

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each have a negative meaning.

It is **not** that we do **not** have authority... (2 Thessalonians 3:9 ULT)

And this better confidence did **not** happen **without** the taking of an oath,... (Hebrews 7:20 ULT.)

Be sure of this—wicked people will **not** go **unpunished** (Proverbs 11:21 ULT)

Reason this is a translation issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as Spanish, a double negative emphasizes the negative. The following Spanish sentence *No ví a nadie* is literally, “I did not see no one”. It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one”. The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, “I did not see anyone”.
- In some languages, a second negative cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, “He is not unintelligent” means “He is intelligent”.
- In some languages the double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” means, “He is somewhat intelligent”.
- In some languages, such as the languages of the Bible, the double negative can create a positive sentence, and often strengthens the statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” can mean “He is intelligent” or “He is very intelligent”.

To translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know both what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

Examples from the Bible

...in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14 ULT)

This means “so that they will be fruitful”.

All things were made through him and **without** him there was **not** one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

By using a double negative, John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything. The double negative makes a stronger statement than the simple positive.

Translation Strategies

If double negatives are natural and are used to express the positive in your language, consider using them. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

1. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
2. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely” or “absolutely.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

■ **For we do** not

have a high priest who cannot feel sympathy for our weaknesses. (Hebrews 4:15 ULT)

■ “For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses.”

...in order not

to be unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14 ULT)

■ “...so that they may be fruitful.”

(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely” or “absolutely.”

■ **Be sure of this—wicked people will** not

go unpunished... (Proverbs 11:21 ULT)

■ “Be sure of this—wicked people will **certainly** be punished...”

All things were made through him and without

him there was not one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

■ “All things were made through him. He made **absolutely** everything that has been made.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:20](#); [10:29](#); [12:24](#); [13:34](#); [13:57](#); [18:3](#); [23:23](#); [24:22](#))

Doublet

Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike [Hendiadys](#), in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

Examples from the Bible

King David was **old** and **advanced in years**. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean that he was “very old.”

...he attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself... (1 Kings 2:32 ULT)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

...as of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19 ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect--not even one.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words or phrases.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

You have decided to prepare false

and deceptive words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)

“You have decided to prepare **false** things to say.”

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

■ **King David was** old

and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

■ “King David was **very old**.”

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

■ **...a lamb** without blemish

and without spot... (1 Peter 1:19 ULT) - English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

■ “...a lamb **without any blemish at all**...”

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:12](#); [11:29](#); [21:21](#); [22:37](#); [22:38](#); [23:33](#))

Ellipsis

Description

Ellipsis is what happens when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words from a sentence that it normally should have to be a complete sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, ***nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.***
(Psalm 1:5)

There is ellipsis in the second part because “nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would be:

...nor ***will*** sinners ***stand*** in the assembly of the righteous.

There are two types of ellipsis.

1. A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.
2. An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage, or from the nature of the situation.

Reason this is a translation issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

Examples from the Bible

Relative Ellipsis

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf ***and Sirion like a young ox.*** (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and ***he makes*** Sirion ***skip*** like a young ox.

But if we are afflicted, ***for your comfort and salvation;*** if we are comforted, ***for your comfort,***...
(2 Corinthians 1:6)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

But if we are afflicted, **we are afflicted** for your comfort and salvation; if we are comforted, **we are comforted** for your comfort,...

Absolute Ellipsis

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, **that I might receive my sight.**" (Luke 18:40-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

"Lord, **I want you to heal me so** that I might receive my sight."

To Titus...**Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.** (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

To Titus...**May you receive** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our savior.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

...**the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor** sinners in the assembly

of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5)

...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and **sinners will not stand in the assembly** of the righteous

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, that I might receive my sight

." (Luke 18:40-41)

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, **I want you to heal me** that I might receive my sight."

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox

. (Psalm 29:6)

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:2; 1:3; 1:4; 1:5; 1:6; 1:7; 4:7; 7:10; 9:12; 9:28; 10:8; 10:21; 10:32; 10:33; 11:9; 12:48; 13:8; 13:16; 13:23; 15:34; 16:5; 16:17; 19:9; 20:28; 20:33; 22:21; 23:18; 25:10; 25:15; 25:27; 25:37; 25:38; 25:43; 25:46; 26:5; 26:39; 27:64; 28:3](#))

End of Story

Description

There are different types of information that may be given at the end of a story. Often this is background information. This background information is different from the actions that make up the main part of the story. A book of the Bible is often made up of many smaller stories that are part of the larger story of the book itself. For example, the story of Jesus' birth is a smaller story in the larger story of the book of Luke. Each of these stories, whether large or small, can have background information at the end of it.

This page answers the question: *What kinds of information are given at the end of a story?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

[Background Information](#)

Different purposes for end of story information

- To summarize the story
- To give a comment about what happened in the story
- To connect a smaller story to the larger story it is a part of
- To tell the reader what happens to a specific character after the main part of the story ends
- To tell on-going action that continues after the main part of the story ends
- To tell what happens after the story as a result of the events that happened in the story itself

Reasons this is a translation issue

Different languages have different ways of presenting these kinds of information. If you (the translator) do not use your language's ways of doing this, readers may not know these things:

- That this information is ending the story
- What the purpose of the information is
- How the information is related to the story

Principles of translation

- Translate the particular kind of information at the end of a story the way your language expresses that kind of information.
- Translate it so that people will understand how it relates to the story it is part of.
- If possible, translate the end of the story in a way that people will know where that story ends and the next begins.

Examples from the Bible

1. To summarize the story

Then the rest of the men should follow, some on planks, and some on other things from the ship. ***In this way it happened that all of us came safely to land.*** (Acts 27:44 ULT)

1. To give a comment about what happened in the story

Many who practiced magical arts brought their books together and burned them in the sight of everyone. When they counted the value of them, it was fifty thousand pieces of silver. ***So the word of the Lord spread very widely in powerful ways.*** (Acts 19:19-20 ULT)

1. To tell the reader what happens to a specific character after the main part of the story ends

Mary said, "My soul praises the Lord, and my spirit has rejoiced in God my savior..." **Mary stayed with Elizabeth about three months and then returned to her house.** (Luke 1:46-47, 56 ULT)

1. To tell on-going action that continues after the main part of the story ends

All who heard it were amazed at what was spoken to them by the shepherds. **But Mary kept thinking about all the things she had heard, treasuring them in her heart.** (Luke 2:18-19 ULT)

1. To tell what happens after the story as a result of the events that happened in the story itself

"Woe to you teachers of Jewish laws, because you have taken away the key of knowledge; you do not enter in yourselves, and you hinder those who are entering." **After Jesus left there, the scribes and the Pharisees opposed him and argued with him about many things, trying to trap him in his own words.** (Luke 11:52-54 ULT)

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:23](#); [7:28](#); [9:35](#))

Euphemism

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

This page answers the question: *What is a Euphemism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Definition

...they found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULT)

This means that Saul and his sons “were dead”. It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples from the Bible

...where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself...(1 Samuel 24:3 ULT)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

Mary said to the angel, “How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

...where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself

. (1 Samuel 24:3 ULT) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:

“...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave **to dig a hole**”
 “...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave **to have some time alone**”

Mary said to the angel, “How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

Mary said to the angel, "How will this happen, since ***I do not know a man?***" - (This is the euphemism used in the original Greek)

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

they found Saul and his sons fallen

on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULT)

"they found Saul and his sons ***dead*** on Mount Gilboa."

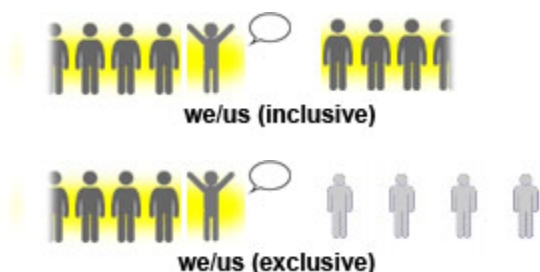
(Go back to: [Matthew 1:18](#); [1:25](#); [2:18](#); [2:20](#); [5:31](#); [9:20](#); [9:24](#); [24:19](#); [24:34](#); [26:24](#); [27:50](#); [27:52](#))

Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but **not you**”. The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us”, “our”, “ours”, and “ourselves”. Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



This page answers the question: *What is exclusive and inclusive “we”?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns](#)

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we”, then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of “we” to use.

Examples from the Bible

They said, “**We** have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish, unless **we** went and bought food for all this crowd of people.” (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the first clause, the disciples are telling Jesus how much food they have among them, so this “we” could be the inclusive form or the exclusive form. In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food, so that “we” would be the exclusive form, since Jesus would not go to buy food.

we have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to **us** (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

...the shepherds said one to each other, “Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us”, they were **including** the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said “us”, he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[When Masculine Words Include Women](#)

(Go back to: [Matthew 6:11](#); [7:22](#); [8:31](#); [17:4](#); [17:19](#))

First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you”. Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than “I” or “you”.

Description

- **First person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we”. (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- **Second person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you”. (Also: your, yours)
- **Third person** - This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he”, “she”, “it” and “they”. (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

This page answers the question: *What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]]

[Pronouns](#)

Reason this is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you”.

Examples from the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and “his”. He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,
“...Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **him**? (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “him”. He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look what I have done, taking it upon myself to speak to **my Lord**, even though I am only dust and ashes! (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you”. He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your”.

Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you”.
2. Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you”.

But David said to Saul, “Your servant

used to keep his father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34)

But David said to Saul, “**I, your servant**, used to keep **my** father’s sheep.”

(2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like God’s

? Can you thunder with a voice like him? (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **mine**? Can you thunder with a voice like **me**?”

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you

does not forgive his brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **your** brother from your heart.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Forms of You](#)

(Go back to: [Matthew 8:20](#); [10:23](#); [11:15](#); [11:19](#); [11:27](#); [12:6](#); [12:8](#); [12:32](#); [12:39](#); [12:40](#); [12:41](#); [12:42](#); [13:9](#); [13:37](#); [13:41](#); [13:43](#); [16:4](#); [16:13](#); [16:27](#); [17:9](#); [17:12](#); [17:22](#); [17:23](#); [19:28](#); [20:18](#); [20:19](#); [20:28](#); [23:10](#); [24:27](#); [24:30](#); [24:31](#); [24:33](#); [24:37](#); [24:44](#); [25:21](#); [25:23](#); [25:31](#); [25:34](#); [25:40](#); [25:41](#); [26:2](#); [26:24](#); [26:45](#); [26:64](#))

Forms of You

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-yousingular]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-youdual]]

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_youform.

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of “You” - Formal or Informal

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:13](#); [3:2](#); [4:10](#); [5:11](#); [5:20](#); [5:21](#); [5:23](#); [5:25](#); [5:27](#); [5:29](#); [5:33](#); [5:36](#); [5:38](#); [5:40](#); [5:43](#); [5:46](#); [6:1](#); [6:3](#); [6:5](#); [6:8](#); [6:14](#); [6:16](#); [6:19](#); [6:22](#); [6:25](#); [6:27](#); [7:1](#); [7:7](#); [7:11](#); [8:11](#); [9:5](#); [9:6](#); [9:13](#); [10:7](#); [10:8](#); [10:9](#); [10:11](#); [10:12](#); [10:13](#); [10:14](#); [10:19](#); [10:20](#); [10:22](#); [10:40](#); [11:10](#); [11:14](#); [11:17](#); [11:21](#); [11:22](#); [11:23](#); [11:28](#); [12:28](#); [12:31](#); [12:34](#); [13:11](#); [13:16](#); [13:17](#); [14:16](#); [15:5](#); [16:19](#); [16:28](#); [17:27](#); [18:8](#); [18:9](#); [18:12](#); [18:13](#); [18:14](#); [18:18](#); [18:35](#); [19:8](#); [20:22](#); [21:32](#); [21:43](#); [23:8](#); [23:11](#); [26:10](#); [26:40](#); [26:53](#); [26:64](#); [26:65](#); [28:7](#))

Generic Noun Phrases

Description

Generic noun phrases refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things. This happens frequently in proverbs, because proverbs tell about things that are true about people in general.

This page answers the question: *What are generic noun phrases and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

Can **a man** walk on hot coals without scorching his feet?

So is **the man who goes into his neighbor's wife**;

the one who has relations with her will not go unpunished. (Proverbs 6:28 ULT)

The underlined phrases above do not refer to a specific man. They refer to any man who does these things.

Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages have different ways of showing that noun phrases refer to something in general. You (the translator) should refer to these general ideas in ways that are natural in your language.

Examples from the Bible

The **one who does what is right** is kept away from trouble and it comes upon **the wicked** instead. (Proverbs 11:8 ULT)

The underlined phrases above do not refer to a specific person but to anyone who does what is right or anyone who is wicked.

People curse **the man who refuses to sell them grain**. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

This does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who refuses to sell grain.

Yahweh gives favor to **a good man**, but he condemns **a man who makes evil plans**. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)

The phrase “a good man” does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who is good. The phrase “a man who makes evil plans” does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who makes evil plans.

Translation Strategies

If your language can use the same wording as in the ULT to refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things, consider using the same wording. If not, here are some strategies you might use.

1. Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.
2. Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.
3. Use the word “any”, as in “any person” or “anyone.”
4. Use the plural form, as in “people.”
5. Use any other way that is natural in your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.

Yahweh gives favor to a good man

, but he condemns a man who makes evil plans. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)

“Yahweh gives favor to **the good man**, but he condemns **the man who makes evil plans.**”
(Proverbs 12:2)

(2) Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.

People curse the man

who refuses to sell them grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **a man** who refuses to sell them grain”

(3) Use the word “any, as in “any person” or “anyone.”

People curse the man

who refuses to sell them grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **any man** who refuses to sell them grain.”

(4) Use the plural form, as in “people” (or in this sentence, “men”).

People curse the man

who refuses to sell them grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **men** who refuse to sell them grain”

(5) Use any other way that is natural in your language.

People curse the man

who refuses to sell them grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse **whoever** refuses to sell them grain.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[When Masculine Words Include Women](#)

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:24; 5:43](#))

Hendiadys

Description

When a speaker expresses a single idea by using two words that are connected with “and,” it is called “hendiadys.” In hendiadys, the two words work together. Usually one of the words is the primary idea and the other word further describes the primary one.

...his own **kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULT)

Though “kingdom” and “glory” are both nouns, “glory” actually tells what kind of kingdom it is: it is a **kingdom of glory** or **a glorious kingdom**.

Two phrases connected by “and” can also be a hendiadys when they refer to a single person, thing, or event.

while we look forward to receiving **the blessed hope and appearing of the glory** of **our great God and Savior Jesus Christ**. (Titus 2:13 ULT)

Titus 2:13 contains two hendiadys. “The blessed hope” and “appearing of the glory” refer to the same thing and serve to strengthen the idea that the return of Jesus Christ is greatly anticipated and wonderful. Also, “our great God” and “Savior Jesus Christ” refer to one person, not two.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Often hendiadys contains an abstract noun. Some languages may not have a noun with the same meaning.
- Many languages do not use hendiadys, so people may not understand that the second word is further describing the first one.
- Many languages do not use hendiadys, so people may not understand that only one person or thing is meant, not two.

Examples from the Bible

...for I will give you **words and wisdom**... (Luke 21:15 ULT)

“Words” and “wisdom” are nouns, but in this figure of speech “wisdom” describes “words.”

...if you are willing and obedient...(Isaiah 1:19 ULT)

“Willing” and “obedient” are adjectives, but “willing” describes “obedient.”

Translation Strategies

If the hendiadys would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.
2. Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.
3. Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.
4. Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.
5. If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

This page answers the question: *What is hendiadys and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.

for I will give you words and wisdom

(Luke 21:15 ULT)

for I will give you *wise words*

that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to his own kingdom and glory

. (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULT)

that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to *his own glorious kingdom*.

(2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.

for I will give you words and wisdom

. (Luke 21:15 ULT)

for I will give you *words of wisdom*.

that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to his own kingdom and glory

. (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULT)

that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to *his own kingdom of glory*.

(3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

if you are willing

and obedient (Isaiah 1:19 ULT)

if you are *willingly obedient*

(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.

if you are willing and obedient

(Isaiah 1:19 ULT)

The adjective "obedient" can be substituted with the verb "obey."

if you *obey willingly*

(4) and (5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

while we look forward to receiving the blessed hope and appearing of the glory

of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ. (Titus 2:13 ULT)

The noun "glory" can be changed to the adjective "glorious" to make it clear that Jesus' appearing is what we hope for. Also, "Jesus Christ" can be moved to the front of the phrase and "great God and Savior" put into a relative clause that describes the one person, Jesus Christ.

while we look forward to receiving ***what we are longing for, the blessed and glorious appearing*** of ***Jesus Christ, who is our great God and Savior.***

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Doublet](#)

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:19](#))

How to Translate Names

Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2 ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title, because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see [Borrow Words](#).
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples from the Bible

You went over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the **Amorites** (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called **Beerlahairoi**; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me”.

She named him **Moses** and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out”.

Saul was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

You went over the Jordan

and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites**

Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because Herod wants to kill you.” (Luke 13:31 ULT)

Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because **King Herod** wants to kill you.

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

She named him Moses

and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)

She named him **Moses (which sounds like ‘drawn out’)**, and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

...she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi

; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULT)

...she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**;

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

...a young man named Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

...a young man named **Paul**¹

The footnote would look like:

^[1] Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But Saul

, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write "Saul" where the source text has "Saul" and "Paul" where the source text has "Paul."

a young man named Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

^[1] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But Saul

, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

It came about in Iconium that Paul

and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul**¹ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:

[1] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Copy or Borrow Words](#)

(Go back to: [Introduction to the Gospel of Matthew](#); [Matthew 1:3](#); [1:23](#); [2:22](#); [2:23](#); [4:25](#); [8:28](#); [11:21](#); [12:42](#); [14:3](#); [14:34](#); [15:39](#); [16:17](#); [21:1](#); [22:16](#); [27:57](#))

Hyperbole

Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

- It rains here every night.
1. The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.
 2. The speaker means this as a **generalization** if he means that it rains here most nights.
 3. The speaker means this as a **hyperbole** if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

Hyperbole: This is a figure of speech that uses **exaggeration**. A speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

They will not leave **one stone upon another** (Luke 19:44 ULT)

- This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

Moses was educated in **all the learning of the Egyptians** (Acts 7:22 ULT)

- This hyperbole means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught, and thus was as educated as any Egyptian.

Generalization: This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

The one who ignores instruction **will have poverty and shame**, but **honor will come** to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

- These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as **the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words**. (Matthew 6:7)

- This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," it does not necessarily mean **exactly** "all," "always," "none," or "never." It simply means "most," "most of the time," "hardly any," or "rarely."

Reason this is a translation issue

1. Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.
2. If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

This page answers the question: *What are hyperboles? What are generalizations? How can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

Examples from the Bible

Examples of Hyperbole

If your hand causes you to stumble, **cut it off**. It is better for you to enter into life maimed... (Mark 9:43 ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should **do whatever extreme things** we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expression the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were **many, many** soldiers in the Philistine army.

But as his anointing teaches you about **all things** and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about **all things that we need to know**. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

They found him, and they said to him, "**Everyone** is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that **many people** were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

Examples of Generalization

Can anything good come out of Nazareth? (John 1:46 ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "**Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies**." (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

A lazy hand causes poverty, but the hand of the diligent makes him rich. (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

Caution

Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

...they saw Jesus **walking on the sea** and coming near the boat... (John 6:19 ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

Do not assume that the word "all" is always a generalization that means "most."

Yahweh is righteous in **all** his ways
and gracious in **all** he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
3. For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
4. For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore

. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and **a great number of troops**.

- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases”.

The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame... (Proverbs 13:18 ULT)

In general, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7)

“And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles **generally** do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.”

- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

The whole

country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5 ULT)

Almost all the country of Judea and **almost all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”
or:
Many of the country of Judea and **many** of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”

- (4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

The whole

country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5 ULT)

■ The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:3](#); [3:5](#); [5:29](#); [5:30](#); [7:3](#); [8:34](#); [9:35](#); [16:26](#); [18:8](#); [18:9](#); [19:24](#); [23:9](#); [23:24](#))

Hypothetical Situations

Consider these phrases: “If the sun stopped shining...,” “What if the sun stopped shining...,” “Suppose the sun stopped shining...,” and “If only the sun had not stopped shining.” We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. These occur often in the Bible. You (the translator) need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen, and that they will understand why the event was imagined.

This page answers the question: *What is a hypothetical situation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions are the phrase that start with “if.”)

- If he had lived to be one hundred years old, he would have seen his grandson's grandson. (But he did not.)
- If he lived to be one hundred years old, he would still be alive today. (But he is not.)
- If he lives to be one hundred years old, he will see his grandson's grandson. (But he probably will not.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

Reason this Is a Translation Issue

- Translators need to recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible and understand that they are unreal.
- Translators need to know their own language's ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

Examples from the Bible

Hypothetical situations in the past

“Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! **If the mighty deeds had been done** in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, **they would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes.”
(Matthew 11:21 ULT)

Here in Matthew 11:21 Jesus said that **if** the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles and they did not repent. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles and yet did not repent.

Martha then said to Jesus, “Lord, ***if you had been here, my brother would not have died.***” (John 11:21 ULT)

Martha said this to express her wish that Jesus had come sooner, so that her brother would not have died. But Jesus did not come sooner, and her brother did die.

Hypothetical situations in the present

Also, no man puts new wine into old wineskins. ***If he did that, the new wine would burst the skins, and the wine would be spilled, and the wineskins would be destroyed.*** (Luke 5:37 ULT)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that there are times when it is unwise to mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

Jesus said to them, “What man would there be among you, who, ***if he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out?***” (Matthew 12:11 ULT)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

Hypothetical situation in the future

Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved; but for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULT)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show about how bad those days will be—so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble, so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

Expressing emotion about a hypothetical situation

People sometimes talk about hypothetical situations in order to express regrets and wishes. Regrets are about the past and wishes are about the present and future.

The Israelites said to them, “***If only we had died by Yahweh’s hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full.*** For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger.” (Exodus 16:3 ULT)

Here the Israelites were afraid that they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining, expressing regret that this had not happened.

I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. ***I wish that you were either cold or hot!*** (Revelation 3:15 ULT)

Jesus wished that the people were either hot or cold, but they are neither. He was rebuking them, expressing anger at this.

Translation Strategies

Find out how people speaking your language show:

- that something could have happened, but did not.

- that something could be true now, but is not.
- that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
- that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
- that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_hypo.

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:21; 11:23](#))

Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are telling me a lie.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he resolutely **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided”.

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you should **enter under my roof**. (Luke 7:6 ULT)

The phrase “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house”.

Let these words **go deeply into your ears**. (Luke 9:44 ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say”.

Purpose: An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples from the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

the children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8 ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3 ULT)

This means, "the one who helps me."

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your flesh and bone."
(1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

...Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

he resolutely set his face

to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof

. (Luke 7:6 ULT)

I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

(2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Let these words go deeply into your ears

(Luke 9:44 ULT)

Be all ears when I say these words to you.

"My eyes grow dim

from grief (Psalm 6:7 ULT)

I am crying my **eyes out**

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:12](#); [5:2](#); [5:3](#); [5:25](#); [5:29](#); [5:30](#); [7:23](#); [8:2](#); [8:8](#); [8:9](#); [8:20](#); [9:30](#); [10:8](#); [10:27](#); [11:5](#); [11:11](#); [11:29](#); [12:19](#); [12:40](#); [12:42](#); [13:35](#); [13:38](#); [14:13](#); [14:19](#); [14:30](#); [15:8](#); [15:28](#); [16:22](#); [16:28](#); [17:6](#); [17:18](#); [17:23](#); [18:10](#); [18:35](#); [19:29](#); [20:12](#); [20:22](#); [20:23](#); [20:28](#); [21:13](#); [21:32](#); [22:44](#); [23:4](#); [23:15](#); [23:35](#); [24:11](#); [24:12](#); [24:31](#); [24:51](#); [25:8](#); [25:21](#); [25:23](#); [26:18](#); [26:25](#); [26:29](#); [26:32](#); [26:38](#); [26:39](#); [26:43](#); [26:45](#); [26:64](#); [27:4](#); [27:6](#); [27:25](#); [27:52](#))

Imperatives - Other Uses

Description

Imperative sentences are mainly used to express a desire or requirement that someone do something. In the Bible, sometimes imperative sentences have other uses.

This page answers the question: *What other uses are there for imperative sentences in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes]]

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use an imperative sentence for some of the functions that they are used for in the Bible.

Examples from the Bible

Speakers often use imperative sentences to tell or ask their listeners to do something. In Genesis 26, God spoke to Isaac and told him not to go to Egypt but to live where God would tell him to live.

Now Yahweh appeared to him and said, “**Do not go down** to Egypt; **live** in the land that I tell you to live in. (Genesis 26:2 ULT)

Sometimes imperative sentences in the Bible have other uses.

Imperatives that make things happen

God can make things happen by commanding that they happen. Jesus healed a man by commanding that the man be healed. The man could not do anything to obey the command, but Jesus caused him to be healed by commanding it. (In this context, the command “Be clean” means to “be healed” so that others around would know that it was safe to touch the man again.)

“I am willing. **Be clean.**” Immediately he was cleansed of his leprosy. (Matthew 8:3 ULT)

In Genesis 1, God commanded that there should be light, and by commanding it, he caused it to exist. Some languages, such as the Hebrew of the Bible, have commands that are in the third person. English does not do that, and so it must turn the third-person command into a general second-person command, as in the ULT:

God said, “**Let there be** light,” and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

Languages that have third-person commands can follow the original Hebrew, which translates into English as something like, “light must be”.

Imperatives that function as blessings

In the Bible, God blesses people by using imperatives. This indicates what his will is for them.

God blessed them and said to them, “**Be fruitful**, and **multiply**. **Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **Have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth.”

Imperatives that function as conditions

An imperative sentence can also be used to tell the **condition** under which something will happen. The proverbs mainly tell about life and things that often happen. The purpose of Proverbs 4:6 below is not primarily to give a command, but to teach what people can expect to happen **if** they love wisdom.

...**do not abandon** wisdom and she will watch over you;
love her and she will keep you safe. (Proverbs 4:6 ULT)

The purpose of Proverbs 22:6 below is teach what people can expect to happen if they teach their children the way they should go.

Teach a child the way he should go,
and when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction. (Proverbs 22:6 ULT)

Translation Strategies

1. If people would not use an imperative sentence for one of the functions in the Bible, try using a statement instead.
2. If people would not understand that a sentence is used to cause something to happen, add a connecting word like "so" to show that what happened was a result of what was said.
3. If people would not use a command as a condition, translate it as a statement with the words "if" and "then."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people would not use an imperative sentence for one of the functions in the Bible, try using a statement instead.

Be clean. (Matthew 8:3 ULT)

"You are now clean."
"I now cleanse you."

God said, "Let there be

light," and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

God said, "**There is now light** " and there was light.

God blessed them and said to them, "Be fruitful

, and multiply. Fill the earth, and subdue it. Have dominion over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth." (Genesis 1:28 ULT)

God blessed them and said to them, "**My will for you is that you be fruitful**, and **multiply**. **Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **I want you to have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth."

(2) If people would not understand that a sentence is used to cause something to happen, add a connecting word like "so" to show that what happened was a result of what was said.

God said, "Let there be light," and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

God said, 'Let there be light,' **so** there was light.
God said, "Light must be;" **as a result**, there was light.

(3) If people would not use a command as a condition, translate it as a statement with the words "if" and "then."

Teach a child the way he should go,
and when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction. (Proverbs 22:6 ULT)

Translated as:

"If you teach a child the way he should go,
then when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction."

(Go back to: [Matthew 8:3](#))

Inclusive and Exclusive "We"

Description

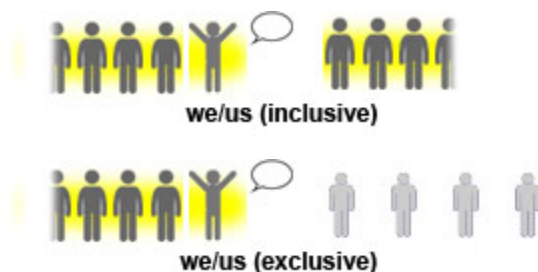
Some languages have more than one form of "we": an **inclusive** form that means "I and you" and an **exclusive** form that means "I and someone else but not you." The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for "us," "our," "ours," and "ourselves." Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

This page answers the question: *What is inclusive and exclusive "we"?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns](#)

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive "we" and the exclusive "we" refer to.



Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for "we." Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of "we" will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of "we" to use.

Examples from the Bible

Inclusive

...the shepherds said one to each other, "Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**." (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said "us," they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, "Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake." Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said "us," he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

Exclusive

we have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to **us** (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

They said, "**We** have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish, unless **we** went and bought food for all this crowd of people." (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the first clause, the disciples are telling Jesus how much food they have among them, so this "we" could be the inclusive form or the exclusive form. In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food, so that "we" would be the exclusive form, since Jesus would not go to buy food.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#)

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:15](#); [8:25](#); [17:4](#); [20:18](#))

Introduction of a New Event

Description

When people tell a story, they tell about an event or a series of events. Often they put certain information at the beginning of the story, such as who the story is about, when it happened, and where it happened. This information that the writer gives before the events of the story begin is called the setting of the story. Some new events in a story also have a setting because they might involve new people, new times, and new places. In some languages people also tell if they saw the event or heard about it from someone else.

This page answers the question: *How do we introduce a new event in a story?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

[Order of Events](#)

When your people tell about events, what information do they give at the beginning? Is there a certain order that they put it in? In your translation, you will need to follow the way your language introduces new information at the beginning of a story or a new event rather than the way the source language did that. In this way your translation will sound natural and communicate clearly in your language.

Examples from the Bible

In the days of Herod, king of Judea, ***there was a certain priest named Zechariah***, from the division of Abijah. ***His wife was*** from the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elizabeth. (Luke 1:5 ULT)

The verses above introduce a story about Zechariah. The first underlined phrase tells when it happened, and the next two underlined phrases introduce the main people. The next two verses go on to explain that Zechariah and Elizabeth were old and did not have any children. All of this is the setting. Then the phrase “One day” in Luke 1:8 helps to introduce the first event in this story:

One day while Zechariah was performing his duties as a priest before God in the order of his division, the priests followed their custom and chose him by lot to enter the temple of the Lord and burn incense. (Luke 1:8-9 ULT)

The birth of Jesus Christ happened in the following way. His mother Mary was engaged to marry Joseph, but before they came together, she was found to be pregnant by the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 1:18 ULT)

The underlined sentence above makes it explicit that a story about Jesus is being introduced. The story will tell about how the birth of Jesus happened.

After Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king, learned men from the east arrived in Jerusalem saying,... (Matthew 2:1 ULT)

The underlined phrase above shows that the events concerning the learned men happened ***after*** Jesus was born.

In those days John the Baptist came preaching in the wilderness of Judea saying,... (Matthew 3:1-22 ULT)

The underlined phrase above shows that John the Baptist came preaching around the time of the previous events. It is probably very general and refers to when Jesus lived in Nazareth.

Then Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan River to be baptized by John. (Matthew 3:13 ULT)

The word “then” shows that Jesus came to the Jordan River some time after the events in the previous verses.

Now there was a ***Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus, a member of the Jewish Council***. This man came to Jesus at night time (John 3:1-2 ULT)

The author first introduced the new person and then told about what he did and when he did it. In some languages it might be more natural to tell about the time first.

⁶ Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. ⁷ Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood.
(Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Verse 6 is a summary of the events that happen in the rest of chapter 7. Chapter 6 already told about how God told Noah that there would be a flood, and how Noah prepared for it. Chapter 7 verse 6 introduces the part of the story that tells about Noah and his family and the animals going into the ship, the rain starting, and the rain flooding the earth. Some languages might need to make it clear that this verse simply introduces the event, or move this verse after verse 7. Verse 6 is not one of the events of the story. The people went into the ship before the flood came.

Translation Strategies

If the information given at the beginning of a new event is clear and natural to your readers, consider translating it as it is in the ULT or UST. If not, consider one of these strategies.

1. Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.
2. If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase to fill in that information, such as: "another time" or "someone."
3. If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.
4. If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event would actually happen later in the story.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.

Now there was a Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus, a member of the Jewish Council

. This man came to Jesus at night time and said to him... (John 3:1,2)

There was a **man whose name was Nicodemus. He was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council.** One night he came to Jesus and said...

One night **a man named Nicodemus, who was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council,** came to Jesus and said...

As he passed by, he saw Levi the son of Alpheus, who was sitting

at the tax collecting place, and he said to him... (Mark 2:14 ULT)

As he passed by, **Levi the son of Alpheus was sitting** at the tax collecting place. Jesus saw him and said to him...

As he passed by, **there was a man sitting** at the tax collecting place. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him...

As he passed by, **there was a tax collector** sitting at the tax collecting place. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him...

(2) If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase such as: another time, someone.

Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT) - If people expect to be told something about when the new event happened, the phrase "after that" can help them see that it happened after the events already mentioned.

After that, when Noah was six hundred years old, the flood came upon the earth.

Again he began

to teach beside the lake. (Mark 4:1 ULT) - In chapter 3 Jesus was teaching at someone's house. Readers may need to be told that this new event happened at another time, or that Jesus actually went to the lake.

Another time Jesus began to teach people again beside the lake.

Jesus went to the lake and **began to teach people again** there.

(3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.

Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT)

Now this is what happened when Noah was six hundred years old and the flood came upon the earth.

This part tells about what happened when the flood came upon the earth. It happened when Noah was six hundred years old.

(4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event will actually happen later in the story.

Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Now this is what happened when Noah was six hundred years old. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because **God had said that the waters of the flood would come.**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Background Information](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-participants]]

(Go back to: [Matthew 8:1](#); [11:1](#); [15:1](#))

Irony

Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which the sense that the speaker intends to communicate is actually the opposite of the literal meaning of the words. Sometimes a person does this by using someone else's words, but in a way that communicates that he does not agree with them. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief about something is wrong or foolish. It is often humorous.

This page answers the question: *What is irony and how can I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Jesus answered them, "People who are in good health do not need a physician, only people who are sick need one. I did not come to call righteous people to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance." (Luke 5:31-32 ULT)

When Jesus spoke of "righteous people," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous, but to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous. By using irony, Jesus communicated that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

Reason this is a translation issue

- If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will understand the passage to mean the opposite of what it was intended to mean.

Examples from the Bible

How well you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9 ULT)

Here Jesus praises the Pharisees for doing something that is obviously wrong. Through irony, he communicates the opposite of praise: He communicates that the Pharisees, who take great pride in keeping the commandments, are so far from God that they do not even recognize that their traditions are breaking God's commandments. The use of irony makes the Pharisee's sin more obvious and startling.

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. ***"Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled."*** (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not do this, but by speaking as if they could, he mocked the idols, making their inability more obvious, and rebuked the people for worshiping them.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?
Can you find the way back to their houses for them?
Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then; "the number of your days is so large!" (Job 38:20, 21 ULT)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two underlined phrases above are irony. They emphasize the opposite of what they say, because they are so obviously false. They emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many, many years later.

Already you have all you could want! Already you have become rich! You began to reign—and that quite apart from us! (1 Corinthians 4:8 ULT)

The Corinthians considered themselves to be very wise, self-sufficient, and not in need of any instruction from the Apostle Paul. Paul used irony, speaking as if he agreed with them, to show how proudly they were acting and how far from being wise they really were.

Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.
2. Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony. The actual meaning of the irony is **not** found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

How well you reject the commandment of God

so you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9 ULT)

You think that you are doing well when you reject God's commandment so you may keep your tradition!

You act like it is good to reject God's commandment so you may keep your tradition!

I did not come to call righteous people

to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance. (Luke 5:32 ULT)

I did not come to call **people who think that they are righteous** to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.

(2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

How well you reject the commandment of God

so you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9 ULT)

You are doing a terrible thing when you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition!

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. "Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen

, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled." (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

'Present your case,' says Yahweh; 'present your best arguments for your idols,' says the King of Jacob. Your idols **cannot bring us their own arguments or come forward to declare to us what will happen** so we may know these things well. We cannot hear them because **they cannot speak** to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?

Can you find the way back to their houses for them?

Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;

the number of your days is so large!" (Job 38:20, 21 ULT)

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? ***You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation, but you are not!***

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Litotes](#)

(Go back to: [Matthew 8:12](#); [9:13](#); [11:25](#); [26:68](#); [Notes](#); [27:29](#); [27:42](#))

Litotes

Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by using two negative words or a negative word with a word that means the opposite of the meaning he intends. A few examples of negative words are “no”, “not”, “none”, and “never”. The opposite of “good” is “bad”. Someone could say that something is “not bad” to mean that it is extremely good.

This page answers the question: *What is litotes?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

Examples from the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was **not useless**, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was **very** useful.

Now when it became day, there was **no small excitement** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a **lot** of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

And you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,
are **not the least** among the leaders of Judah,
for from you will come a ruler
who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULT)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a **very important city**.

Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

1. If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was not useless

. (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

“For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you **did much good**.”

Now when it became day, there was no small excitement

among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

"Now when it became day, there was **great excitement** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter."

"Now when it became day, the soldiers were **very concerned** because of what had happened to Peter."

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:6](#); [17:20](#))

Merism

Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

“I am the Alpha and the Omega,” says the Lord God, “the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8, ULT)

I am the **Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End**. (Revelation 22:13, ULT)

This page answers the question: *What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

Alpha and Omega are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth...**, (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

Heaven and earth is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples from the Bible

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere”.

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of, old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone”.

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth

... (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything...**

From the rising of the sun to its setting

, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

■ ***In all places***, people should praise Yahweh's name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

■ **I praise you, Father, Lord of** heaven and earth

. (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

■ I praise you, Father, Lord of ***everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth.***

He will bless those who honor him, both young and old

. (Psalm 115:13 ULT)

■ He will bless ***all those*** who honor him, regardless of whether they are ***young or old.***

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:18](#); [8:11](#); [11:25](#); [12:40](#); [23:35](#); [28:18](#))

Metaphor

Description

A **metaphor** is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say:

- The girl I love is a red rose.

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer's task is to understand in what way they are alike.

The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about "the girl I love". This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and "a red rose." The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both *beautiful*. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a **metaphor** is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker's **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison (Idea)** between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a "passive" metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being "active." Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these "dead metaphors." Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms "table **leg**", "family **tree**", "book **leaf**" (meaning a page in

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a Bible passage that has one?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[Simile](#)

a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

Patterned Pairs of Concepts acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction UP (the Image) often represents the concepts of MORE or BETTER (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going *up*,” “A *highly* intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The temperature is going *down*,” and “I am feeling very *low*.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat *up*.” MORE is spoken of as UP.
- “Let us *go ahead* with our debate.” DOING WHAT WAS PLANNED is spoken of as WALKING or ADVANCING.
- “You *defend* your theory well.” ARGUMENT is spoken of as WAR.
- “A *flow* of words” WORDS are spoken of as LIQUIDS.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. They make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.
(Malachi 4:2 ULT)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

Jesus said, “Go and tell that fox...,” (Luke 13:32 ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors are the metaphors that need special care to translate correctly. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is "I" (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is "bread." Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is "life." In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

Examples from the Bible

Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1 ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria ("you", the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshipped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay**. **You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are "we" and "you," and the Image(s) are "clay" and "potter." The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter's clay and "us" is that **neither the clay nor God's people have a right to complain about what they are becoming**.

Jesus said to them, “Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees**.” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we took no bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally ***if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible***. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
3. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.” See [Simile](#).
4. If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
5. If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
6. If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.
8. If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, fell at his feet

. (Mark 5:22 ULT)

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, ***immediately bowed down in front of him.***

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally ***if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible***. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

It was because of your hard hearts

that he wrote you this law, (Mark 10:5 ULT)

It was because of your ***hard hearts*** that he wrote you this law,

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as."

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay

. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are *like* clay. You are *like* a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad

. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to *kick against a pointed stick*.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay

. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

"And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *wood*. You are our *carver*; and we all are the work of your hand."

"And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *string*. You are the *weaver*; and we all are the work of your hand."

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

Yahweh lives; may my rock

be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; *He is my rock*. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

Yahweh lives; may my rock

be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock *under which I can hide from my enemies*. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad

. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You *fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick*.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

I will make you become fishers of men

. (Mark 1:17 ULT)

I will make you become **people who gather men**.
Now you gather fish. I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns.

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:6](#); [3:3](#); [3:7](#); [3:8](#); [3:10](#); [3:11](#); [3:12](#); [4:16](#); [4:19](#); [5:6](#); [5:13](#); [5:14](#); [5:16](#); [5:28](#); [5:29](#); [5:34](#); [5:35](#); [6:2](#); [6:3](#); [6:12](#); [6:20](#); [6:22](#); [6:23](#); [6:27](#); [6:28](#); [6:29](#); [6:30](#); [7:3](#); [7:6](#); [7:7](#); [7:13](#); [7:15](#); [7:16](#); [7:17](#); [7:19](#); [7:20](#); [8:22](#); [10:6](#); [10:8](#); [10:25](#); [10:26](#); [10:38](#); [10:39](#); [11:7](#); [11:10](#); [11:25](#); [11:28](#); [11:29](#); [12:20](#); [12:25](#); [12:27](#); [12:30](#); [12:33](#); [12:34](#); [12:35](#); [12:39](#); [12:44](#); [12:49](#); [12:50](#); [13:13](#); [13:15](#); [13:19](#); [13:20](#); [13:21](#); [13:22](#); [13:23](#); [13:42](#); [13:50](#); [Notes](#); [15:13](#); [15:14](#); [15:24](#); [15:27](#); [Notes](#); [16:4](#); [16:6](#); [16:11](#); [16:18](#); [16:19](#); [16:23](#); [16:24](#); [16:25](#); [18:7](#); [18:9](#); [18:18](#); [19:5](#); [19:6](#); [19:8](#); [19:12](#); [19:21](#); [20:28](#); [20:33](#); [21:13](#); [21:29](#); [21:42](#); [21:43](#); [21:44](#); [23:4](#); [23:13](#); [23:16](#); [23:17](#); [23:18](#); [23:19](#); [23:24](#); [23:25](#); [23:26](#); [23:32](#); [23:33](#); [23:37](#); [24:4](#); [24:5](#); [24:8](#); [24:11](#); [24:24](#); [24:33](#); [24:43](#); [25:24](#); [25:26](#); [25:33](#); [26:31](#); [26:39](#); [26:42](#); [27:26](#))

Metonymy

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not used to metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

Immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64 ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

...who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people, and as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "***This cup*** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

"He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "***The wine in this cup*** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."

(2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

The Lord God will give him ***the throne*** of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

"The Lord God will give him ***the kingly authority*** of his father, David."

or:

"The Lord God will ***make him king*** like his ancestor, King David."

who warned you to flee from ***the wrath*** to come? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

"who warned you to flee from God's coming ***punishment?***"

To learn about some common metonymies, see Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies.

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:3](#); [2:11](#); [3:2](#); [3:5](#); [3:7](#); [3:17](#); [4:4](#); [4:17](#); [4:23](#); [5:3](#); [5:8](#); [5:10](#); [5:17](#); [5:19](#); [5:28](#); [5:29](#); [5:30](#); [6:9](#); [6:10](#); [6:21](#); [6:33](#); [7:12](#); [7:21](#); [7:22](#); [7:24](#); [8:8](#); [8:11](#); [8:12](#); [8:16](#); [8:34](#); [9:4](#); [10:6](#); [10:7](#); [10:9](#); [10:12](#); [10:13](#); [10:14](#); [10:15](#); [10:19](#); [10:22](#); [10:27](#); [10:34](#); [10:38](#); [11:11](#); [11:13](#); [11:15](#); [11:20](#); [11:21](#); [11:22](#); [11:23](#); [11:24](#); [11:26](#); [11:29](#); [12:19](#); [12:25](#); [12:26](#); [12:28](#); [12:32](#); [12:34](#); [12:36](#); [12:41](#); [12:42](#); [13:9](#); [13:11](#); [13:15](#); [13:19](#); [13:20](#); [13:24](#); [13:27](#); [13:31](#); [13:33](#); [13:38](#); [13:43](#); [13:44](#); [13:47](#); [13:52](#); [14:3](#); [15:8](#); [15:11](#); [15:18](#); [15:23](#); [16:18](#); [16:19](#); [16:21](#); [16:24](#); [16:28](#); [17:5](#); [17:12](#); [17:22](#); [18:1](#); [18:3](#); [18:4](#); [18:5](#); [18:7](#); [18:16](#); [18:18](#); [18:20](#); [18:35](#); [19:1](#); [19:8](#); [19:12](#); [19:14](#); [19:23](#); [19:28](#); [19:29](#); [20:21](#); [20:23](#); [21:9](#); [21:10](#); [21:16](#); [21:25](#); [21:31](#); [21:42](#); [21:43](#); [22:13](#); [22:37](#); [22:40](#); [22:46](#); [23:2](#); [23:13](#); [23:30](#); [23:35](#); [23:37](#); [23:38](#); [23:39](#); [24:5](#); [24:7](#); [24:9](#); [24:14](#); [24:30](#); [24:35](#); [24:36](#); [24:48](#); [25:1](#); [25:13](#); [25:30](#); [25:32](#); [25:34](#); [26:27](#); [26:29](#); [26:34](#); [26:39](#); [26:41](#); [26:45](#); [26:52](#); [26:64](#); [27:9](#); [27:24](#); [27:25](#); [28:19](#))

Nominal Adjectives

Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word “rich” is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that “rich” is an adjective.

...**The rich man** had huge numbers of flocks and herds...(2 Samuel 12:2 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes before the word “man” and describes “man”.

He will not be rich; his wealth will not last... (Job 15:29 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes after the verb “be” and describes “He”.

Here is a sentence that shows that “rich” can also function as a noun.

...**the rich** must not give more than the half shekel, and **the poor** must not give less. (Exodus 30:15 ULT)

In Exodus 30:15, the word “rich” acts as a noun in the phrase “the rich”, and it refers to rich people. The word “poor” also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
- Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

Examples from the Bible

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3 ULT)

“The righteous” here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

Blessed are **the meek** (Matthew 5:5 ULT)

“The meek” here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of the righteous

. (Psalms 125:3 ULT)

This page answers the question: *How do I translate adjectives that act like nouns?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]

█ The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **righteous people**.

Blessed are the meek

... (Matthew 5:5 ULT)

█ Blessed are **people who are meek**...

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:5](#); [11:25](#); [12:7](#); [13:49](#); [15:31](#); [19:21](#); [21:14](#); [22:32](#); [23:29](#); [25:8](#); [25:37](#); [25:46](#); [26:9](#); [26:11](#))

Numbers

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words ("five") or as numerals ("5"). Some numbers are very large, such as "two hundred" (200), "twenty-two thousand" (22,000), or "one hundred million" (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate numbers?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

Abram was **eighty-six** years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

That day about **three thousand** men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULT)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word "about" shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples from the Bible

When Jared had lived **162** years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived **eight hundred** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived **962** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

Our sister, may you be the mother of **thousands of ten thousands** (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one **hundred thousand (100,000)** talents of gold, **one million (1,000,000)** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **a thousand thousand** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents)**, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULT and UST

The *unfoldingWord® Literal Text* (ULT) and the *unfoldingWord® Simplified Text* (UST) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals "130" instead of "one hundred thirty").

When Adam had lived **130** years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived **eight hundred** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived **930** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:17](#); [2:16](#); [4:2](#); [9:20](#); [10:1](#); [11:1](#); [13:8](#); [13:23](#); [14:20](#); [14:21](#); [15:38](#); [16:9](#); [16:10](#); [18:12](#); [18:21](#); [18:22](#); [18:24](#); [18:28](#); [19:29](#); [26:15](#); [26:53](#))

Order of Events

Description

In the Bible, events are not always told in the order in which they occurred. Sometimes the author wanted to discuss something that happened at an earlier time than the event that he just talked about. This can be confusing to the reader.

Reason this is a translation issue: Readers might think that the events happened in the order that they are told. It is important to help them understand the correct order of events.

This page answers the question: *Why are the events not listed in the order they happened, and how do I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]

Examples from the Bible

But then Herod...had John locked up in prison. Now it came about, while all the people were being baptized by John, that Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULT)

This could sound like John baptized Jesus after John was locked up in prison, but John baptized Jesus before John was locked up in prison.

Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets... But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." (Joshua 6:8-10 ULT)

This could sound like Joshua gave the order not to shout after the army had already started their march, but he had given that order before they started marching.

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2 ULT)

This sounds like a person must first open the scroll and then break its seals, but the seals that lock the scroll must be broken before the scroll can be unrolled.

Translation Strategies

1. If your language uses phrases or time words to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using one of them.
2. If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that. (See the section on "Aspect" of Verbs.)
3. If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occurred, consider reordering the events so they they are in that order. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6). (See [Verse Bridges](#).)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If your language uses phrases, time words or tenses to show that an event happened before the one just mentioned, consider using one of them.

²⁰ But then Herod...had John locked up in prison. ²¹ Now it came about, while all the people were being baptized by John, that Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULT)

²⁰ But then Herod...had John locked up in prison. ²¹ **Before John was put in prison**, while all the people were being baptized by John, Jesus also was baptized.

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2 ULT)

Who is worthy to open the scroll **after** breaking its seals?

(2) If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that.

⁸ Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets... ¹⁰ But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." (Joshua 6:8-10 ULT)

⁸ Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets... ¹⁰ But Joshua **had commanded** the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout.

(3) If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occur, consider reordering the events. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6).

⁸ Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets... ¹⁰ But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." (Joshua 6:8-10 ULT)

⁸⁻¹⁰ Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." Then just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets...

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2 ULT)

Who is worthy to break the seals and open the scroll?

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_events.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Background Information](#)

[Connecting Words and Phrases](#)

[Introduction of a New Event](#)

[Verse Bridges](#)

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:16](#); [9:21](#); [10:5](#); [14:1](#); [14:3](#); [14:4](#); [27:3](#))

Ordinal Numbers

Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

He gave to the church **first** apostles, **second** prophets, **third** teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULT)

This page answers the question: *What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Numbers](#)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

| Numeral | Number | Ordinal Number |
|---------|--------------|----------------|
| 4 | four | fourth |
| 10 | ten | tenth |
| 100 | one hundred | one hundredth |
| 1,000 | one thousand | one thousandth |

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

| Numeral | Number | Ordinal Number |
|---------|--------|----------------|
| 1 | one | first |
| 2 | two | second |
| 3 | three | third |
| 5 | five | fifth |
| 12 | twelve | twelfth |

Reason this is a translation issue:

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

Examples from the Bible

The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim, ... the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

The people cast lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The **first** row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The **second** row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The **third** row

must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The **fourth** row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULT)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

1. Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim,...the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

There were **twenty-four** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **another** to Jedaiah, **another** to Harim,...**another** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.
There were **twenty-four** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **the next** to Jedaiah, **the next** to Harim,...**the next** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became four

rivers. The name of the first is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of the second river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of the third river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The fourth river is the Euphrates. (Genesis 2:10-14 ULT)

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **one** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the next** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the next** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The **last** river is the Euphrates.

- (2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim,...the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

They cast **twenty-four** lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim,...Delaiah, and Maaziah.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:2](#); [16:21](#); [17:23](#); [20:3](#); [20:5](#); [20:6](#); [20:19](#); [22:25](#); [22:26](#); [26:42](#); [26:44](#); [27:64](#))

Parables

A parable is a short story that teaches something(s) that is true, and teaches in such a way that is easy to understand and hard to forget.

Description

A parable is a short story that is told to teach something(s) that is true. Though the events in a parable could happen, they did not actually happen. They are told only to teach the lesson(s) that the listener is meant to learn. Parables rarely contain the names of specific people. (This may help you identify what is a parable and what is an account of a real event.) Parables often have figures of speech such as [simile](#) and [metaphor](#).

This page answers the question: *What is a parable?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

Then he also told them a parable. "Can a blind person guide another blind person? If he did, they would both fall into a pit, would they not?" (Luke 6:39 ULT)

This parable teaches that if a person does not have spiritual understanding, he cannot help someone else to understand spiritual things.

Examples from the Bible

Neither do people light a lamp and put it under a basket, but rather, on the lampstand, and it shines for everyone in the house. Let your light shine before people in such a way that they see your good deeds and praise your Father who is in heaven. (Matthew 5:15-16 ULT)

This parable teaches us not to hide the way we live for God from other people.

Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches." (Matthew 13:31-32 ULT)

This parable teaches that the kingdom of God may seem small at first, but it will grow and spread throughout the world.

Translation Strategies

1. If a parable is hard to understand because it has unknown objects in it, you can replace the unknown objects with objects that people in your culture know. However, be careful to keep the teaching the same. (See [Translate Unknowns](#).)
2. If the teaching of the parable is unclear, consider telling a little about what it teaches in the introduction, such as "Jesus told this story about being generous."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If a parable is hard to understand because it has unknown objects in it, you can replace the unknown objects with objects that people in your culture know. However, be careful to keep the teaching the same.

Jesus said to them, "Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a lampstand

". (Mark 4:21 ULT) - If people do not know what a lampstand is, you could substitute something else that people put a light on so it can give light to the house.

Jesus said to them, "Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on **a high shelf**."

Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed

in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches." (Matthew 13:31-32 ULT) - To sow seeds means to toss them so that they scatter on the ground. If people are not familiar with sowing, you can substitute planting.

Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and **planted** in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches."

(2) If the teaching of the parable is unclear, consider telling a little about what it teaches in the introduction, such as "Jesus told this story about being generous."

Jesus said to them

, "Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a lampstand". (Mark 4:21 ULT)

Jesus told them a parable about why they should witness openly. "Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a lampstand." (Mark 4:21 ULT)

Then Jesus presented another parable to them.

He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches." (Matthew 13:31-32 ULT)

Then Jesus presented another parable to them about how the Kingdom of God grows. He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches."

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:17](#); [12:29](#); [12:45](#); [13:24](#); [13:31](#); [13:33](#); [13:44](#); [13:47](#); [13:52](#); [18:13](#); [18:23](#); [18:28](#); [18:30](#); [18:32](#); [20:1](#); [20:3](#); [20:5](#); [20:8](#); [20:11](#); [20:13](#); [20:15](#); [21:28](#); [21:33](#); [21:35](#); [21:38](#); [22:1](#); [22:4](#); [22:5](#); [22:8](#); [22:11](#); [24:43](#); [25:1](#); [25:7](#); [25:10](#); [25:14](#); [25:17](#); [25:19](#); [25:22](#); [25:24](#); [25:26](#); [25:28](#))

Parallelism

Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.
This is also called synonymous parallelism.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

Synonymous parallelism (the kind in which the two phrases mean the same thing) in the poetry of the original languages has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and above the ordinary way of speaking.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it is confusing, rather than beautiful.

Note: We use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term **Doublet** for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

Examples from the Bible

(1) The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

Your word is a lamp to my feet
and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

(2) The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,
keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULT)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

(3) The second completes what is said in the first.

This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

I lift up my voice to Yahweh,
and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULT)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

(4) The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,
but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULT)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath,
but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULT)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

Until now you have deceived me and told me lies. (Judges 16:13, ULT) - Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

“Until now you have deceived me with your lies.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT) - The phrase “all the paths he takes” is a metaphor for “all he does.”

“Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.”

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2 ULT) - This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

“For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.”

- (2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

“Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.”

(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

you have deceived me and told me lies. (Judges 16:13 ULT)

“All you have done is lie to me.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

“Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Personification](#)

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:3](#); [4:16](#); [6:24](#); [8:17](#); [10:27](#); [11:30](#); [12:20](#); [12:25](#); [13:13](#); [13:14](#); [13:16](#); [13:34](#); [21:44](#); [24:7](#); [24:31](#); [24:50](#); [25:24](#); [25:26](#))

Personification

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

Or sin:

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things, such as wealth, as if they were relationships between people.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples from the Bible

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

1. Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
2. In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

...sin crouches

This page answers the question: *What is personification?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT) - God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

...**sin** is at your door, **waiting to attack you**

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

...**sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULT) - This can be translated with the word “as.”

...sin is crouching at the door, **just as a wild animal does waiting to attack a person**.

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

...**even the** winds and the sea obey him

(Matthew 8:27 ULT) - The men speak of the “wind and the sea” as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

He even **controls the winds and the sea**.

NOTE: We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Apostrophe](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [Matthew 6:28](#); [6:29](#); [6:30](#); [6:34](#); [8:15](#); [8:27](#); [11:19](#); [13:22](#))

Pronouns

Description

Pronouns are words that people might use to refer to someone or something instead of using a noun. Some examples are "I", "you", "he", "it", "this", "that", "himself", "someone", and others. Personal pronouns are the most common type of pronoun.

This page answers the question: *What are pronouns and what kinds of pronouns are in some languages?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]

Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns refer to people or things and show if the speaker is referring to himself, the person he is speaking to, or someone or something else. The following are kinds of information that personal pronouns may give. Other types of pronouns may give some of this information, as well.

Person

- First Person - The speaker and possibly others (I, we)
 - [Exclusive and Inclusive “We”](#)
- Second Person - The person or people that the speaker is talking to and possibly others (you)
 - [Forms of You](#)
- Third Person - Someone or something other than the speaker and those he is talking to (he, she, it, they)

Number

- Singular - one (I, you, he, she, it)
- Plural - more than one (we, you, they)
 - Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups
- Dual - two (Some languages have pronouns for specifically two people or two things.)

Gender

- Masculine - he
- Feminine - she
- Neuter - it

Relationship to other words in the sentence

- Subject of the verb: I, you, he, she, it, we, they
- Object of the verb or preposition: me, you, him, her, it, us, them
- Possessor with a noun: my, your, his, her, its, our, their
- Possessor without a noun: mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs

Other Types of pronouns

Reflexive Pronouns refer to another noun or pronoun in the same sentence: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves.

- **John saw himself**

in the mirror. - The word “himself” refers to John.

Interrogative Pronouns are used to make a question that needs more than just a yes or no for an answer: who, whom, whose, what, where, when, why, how

- Who

built the house?

Relative Pronouns mark a relative clause. They give more information about a noun in the main part of the sentence: that, which, who, whom, where, when

- **I saw the house** that

John built. The clause “that John built” tells which house I saw.

- **I saw the man** who

built the house. The clause “who built the house” tells which man I saw.

Demonstrative Pronouns are used to draw attention to someone or something and to show distance from the speaker or something else: this, these, that, those.

- **Have you seen** this

here?

- **Who is** that over there?

Indefinite pronouns are used when no particular noun is being referred to: any, anyone, someone, anything, something, some. Sometimes a personal pronoun is used in a generic way to do this: you, they, he or it.

- **He does not want to talk to** anyone

.

- Someone fixed it, but I do not know who.
- They say that you should not wake a sleeping dog.

In the last example, “they” and “you” just refer to people in general.

(Go back to: [Matthew 8:4](#))

Proverbs

Description

Proverbs are short sayings that give wise advice or teach something that is generally true about life. People enjoy proverbs because they give a lot of wisdom in few words. Proverbs in the Bible often use metaphor and parallelism. Proverbs should not be understood as absolute and unchangeable laws. Rather, proverbs offer *general advice* to a person about how to live his life.

This page answers the question: *What are proverbs, and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Metaphor](#)

[Parallelism](#)

[\[\[r://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

Hatred stirs up conflicts,
but love covers over all offenses. (Proverbs 10:12 ULT)

Here is another example from the book of Proverbs.

Look at the ant, you lazy person, consider her ways, and be wise.
It has no commander, officer, or ruler,
yet it prepares its food in the summer,
and during the harvest it stores up what it will eat. (Proverbs 6:6-8 ULT)

Reason this is a translation issue

Each language has its own ways of saying proverbs. There are many proverbs in the Bible. They need to be translated in the way that people say proverbs in your language, so that people recognize them as proverbs and understand what they teach.

Examples from the Bible

A good name is to be chosen over great riches,
and favor is better than silver and gold. (Proverbs 22:1 ULT)

This means that it is better to be a good person and to have a good reputation than it is to have a lot of money.

Like vinegar on the teeth and smoke in the eyes,
so is the sluggard to those who send him. (Proverbs 10:26 ULT)

This means that a lazy person is very annoying to those who send him to do something.

The way of Yahweh protects those who have integrity,
but it is destruction for the wicked. (Proverbs 10:29 ULT)

This means that Yahweh protects people who do what is right, but he destroys those who are wicked.

Translation Strategies

If translating a proverb literally would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing that. If not, here are some options:

1. Find out how people say proverbs in your language, and use one of those ways.
2. If certain objects in the proverb are not known to many people in your language group, consider replacing them with objects that people know and that function in the same way in your language.
3. Substitute a proverb in your language that has the same teaching as the proverb in the Bible.
4. Give the same teaching but not in a form of a proverb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Find out how people say proverbs in your language, and use one of those ways.

**A good name is to be chosen over great riches,
and favor is better than silver and gold.** (Proverbs 22:1 ULT)

Here are some ideas for ways that people might say a proverb in their language.

It is better to have a good name than to have great riches, and to be favored by people than to have silver and gold.

Wise people choose a good name over great riches, and favor over silver and gold.

Try to have a good reputation rather than great riches.

Will riches really help you? I would rather have a good reputation.

(2) If certain objects in the proverb are not known to many people in your language group, consider replacing them with objects that people know and that function in the same way in your language.

Like snow in summer

or rain in harvest,

so a fool does not deserve honor. (Proverbs 26:1 ULT)

It is not natural for **a cold wind to blow in the hot season** or for it to rain in the harvest season;
And it is not natural to honor a foolish person.

(3) Substitute a proverb in your language that has the same teaching as the proverb in the Bible.

Do not boast about tomorrow (Proverbs 27:1 ULT)

Do not count your chickens before they hatch.

(4) Give the same teaching but not in a form of a proverb.

**A generation that curses their father and does not bless their mother,
that is a generation that is pure in their own eyes,
but they are not washed of their filth.** (Proverbs 30:11-12 ULT)

People who do not respect their parents think that they are righteous, and they do not turn away from their sin.

(Go back to: [Matthew 8:20](#); [Notes](#); [9:12](#); [9:15](#); [9:37](#); [10:24](#); [10:29](#); [10:39](#); [11:19](#); [12:25](#); [15:26](#); [24:28](#); [24:48](#))

Quotations and Quote Margins

Description

This page answers the question: *What are quote margins and where should I put them?*

When saying that someone said something, we often tell who spoke, whom they spoke to, and what they said. The information about who spoke and whom they spoke to is called the **quote margin**. What the person said is the **quotation**. (This is also called a quote.) In some languages the quote margin may come first, last, or even in between two parts of the quotation.

The quote margins are underlined below.

- ***She said***, "The food is ready. Come and eat."
- "The food is ready. Come and eat," ***she said***.
- "The food is ready," ***she said***. "Come and eat."

Also in some languages, the quote margin may have more than one verb meaning "said".

But his mother ***answered*** and ***said***, "No, instead he will be called John." (Luke 1:60 ULT)

When writing that someone said something, some languages put the quote (what was said) in quotation marks called inverted commas (" "). Some languages use other symbols around the quotation, such as these angle quote marks (« »), or something else.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Translators need to put the quote margin where it is most clear and natural in their language.
- Translators need to decide whether they want the quote margin to have one or two verbs meaning "said".
- Translators need to decide which marks to use around the quotation.

Examples from the Bible

Quote margin before the quote

Zechariah said to the angel, "How will I know this will happen? For I am an old man, and my wife also is very old." (Luke 1:18 ULT)

Then some tax collectors also came to be baptized, and ***they said to him***, "Teacher, what must we do?" (Luke 3:12 ULT)

He said to them, "Do not collect more money than you are supposed to." (Luke 3:13 ULT)

Quote margin after the quote

Yahweh relented concerning this. "It will not happen," ***he said***. (Amos 7:3 ULT)

Quote margin between two parts of the quote

"I will hide my face from them," ***he said***, "and I will see what their end will be; for they are a perverse generation, children who are unfaithful." (Deuteronomy 32:20 ULT)

"Therefore, those who can," ***he said***, "should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him." (Acts 25:5 ULT)

"For look, days are coming"—***this is Yahweh's declaration***—"when I will restore the fortunes of my people, Israel" (Jeremiah 30:3 ULT)

Translation Strategies

1. Decide where to put the quote margin.
2. Decide whether to use one or two words meaning "said."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Decide where to put the quote margin.

“Therefore, those who can,” he said,

“should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him.” (Acts 25:5 ULT)

He said, “Therefore, those who can should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him.”

“Therefore, those who can should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him,” **he said**.

“Therefore, those who can should go there with us,” **he said**. “If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him.”

- (2) Decide whether to use one or two words meaning “said”.

But his mother answered and said

, “No, instead he will be called John.” (Luke 1:60 ULT)

But his mother **replied**, “No, instead he will be called John.”

But his mother **said**, “No, instead he will be called John.”

But his mother **answered** like this, “No, instead he will be called John,” she **said**.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Direct and Indirect Quotations](#)

(Go back to: [Matthew 26:61](#); [28:13](#))

Quotes within Quotes

Description

A quotation may have a quote within it, and quotes that are inside of other quotes can also have quotes within them. When a quote has quotes within it, we say there are "layers" of quotation, and each of the quotes is a layer. When there are many layers of quotes inside of quotes, it can be hard for listeners and readers to know who is saying what. Some languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes to make it easier.

This page answers the question: *What is a quote within a quote, and how can I help the readers understand who is saying what?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Direct and Indirect Quotations](#)

Reasons this is a translation issue

1. When there is a quote within a quote, the listener needs to know who the pronouns refer to. For example: if a quote that is inside a quote has the word "I", the listener needs to know whether "I" refers to the speaker of the inner quote or the outer quote.
2. Some languages make this clear by using different kinds of quotes when there are quotes within quotes. They may use direct quotes for some and indirect quotes for others.
3. Some languages do not use indirect quotes.

Examples from the Bible

A quotation with only one layer

But Paul said, "I was born a Roman citizen." (Acts 22:28 ULT)

Quotations with two layers

Jesus answered and said to them, "Be careful that no one leads you astray. For many will come in my name. They will say, 'I am the Christ,' and will lead many astray." Matthew 24:4-5 ULT

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to his disciples. The second layer is what other people will say.

Jesus answered, "You say that I am a king." (John 18:37 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to Pilate. The second layer is what Pilate said about Jesus.

A quotation with three layers

Abraham said, "...I said to her, 'You must show me this faithfulness as my wife: At every place where we go, say about me, **"He is my brother."**'" (Genesis 20:10-13 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Abraham said to Abimelech. The second layer is what Abraham had told his wife. The third layer is what he wanted his wife to say. (We have underlined the third layer.)

A quotation with four layers

They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: ***'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'***"'" (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

The outermost layer is what the messengers said to the king. The second layer is what the man who had met the messengers told them. The third is what that man wanted the messengers to say to the king. The fourth is what Yahweh said. (We have underlined the fourth layer.)

Translation Strategies

Some languages use only direct quotes. Other languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes. In those languages it might sound strange and perhaps even be confusing if there are many layers of direct quotes.

1. Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes.
2. Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. (See [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#).)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes. In the example below we have underlined the indirect quotes in the ULT and the quotes that we have changed to direct quotes below it.

Festus presented Paul's case to the king; he said, "A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner....I was puzzled about how to investigate this matter, and I asked him if he would go to Jerusalem to be judged there about these things

. But when Paul called to be kept under guard for the Emperor's decision, I ordered him to be kept until I send him to Caesar." (Acts 25:14-21 ULT)

Festus presented Paul's case to the king; he said, "A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner....I was puzzled about how to investigate this matter, and I asked him, **'Will you go to Jerusalem to be judged there about these things?'** But when Paul said, **'I want to be kept under guard for the Emperor's decision,'** I told the guard, **'Keep him under guard until I send him to Caesar.'**

(2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. In English the word "that" can come before indirect quotes. It is underlined in the examples below. The pronouns that changed because of the indirect quote are also underlined.

Then Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, "I have heard the grumbling of the Israelites. Tell them, 'At twilight you will eat meat, and in the morning you will be filled with bread. Then you will know that I am Yahweh your God.' " (Exodus 16:11-12 ULT)

Then Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, "I have heard the grumbling of the Israelites. Tell them **that** at twilight **they** will eat meat, and in the morning **they** will be filled with bread. Then **they** will know that I am Yahweh **their** God."

They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'" (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

They told him **that** a man had come to meet **them** who said to **them**, "Go back to the king who sent you, and tell him **that** Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'"

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-quotemarks]]

(Go back to: [Matthew 15:6](#); [21:25](#); [21:26](#); [22:24](#); [26:18](#); [27:43](#); [27:63](#); [27:64](#); [28:7](#))

Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes]]

Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

Those who stood by said, ***"Is this how you insult God's high priest?"*** (Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking about his way of insulting God's high priest. Rather they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purpose of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

Examples from the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULT)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden...(Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the answer after the question.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?

Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? ***Of course not!*** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? **None of you would do that!**

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?

It is like a mustard seed... (Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed..."

Is this how you insult God's high priest?

(Acts 23:4 ULT)

You should not insult God's high priest!

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?

(Job 3:11 ULT)

I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?

(Luke 1:43 ULT)

How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

Do you not still rule

the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)

You still rule the kingdom of Israel, **do you not?**

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Or what man among you is there who

, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, **would you give him a stone?**

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils

? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:7](#); [3:14](#); [5:13](#); [5:46](#); [5:47](#); [6:25](#); [6:26](#); [6:27](#); [6:28](#); [6:30](#); [7:3](#); [7:4](#); [7:9](#); [7:10](#); [7:11](#); [7:16](#); [7:22](#); [8:26](#); [8:27](#); [8:29](#); [Notes](#); [9:4](#); [9:5](#); [9:11](#); [9:15](#); [10:29](#); [11:7](#); [11:8](#); [11:9](#); [11:16](#); [11:23](#); [12:3](#); [12:5](#); [12:11](#); [12:26](#); [12:27](#); [12:29](#); [12:34](#); [12:48](#); [13:27](#); [13:54](#); [13:55](#); [13:56](#); [14:31](#); [15:2](#); [15:3](#); [15:16](#); [15:17](#); [15:33](#); [16:8](#); [16:9](#); [16:10](#); [16:11](#); [16:26](#); [17:17](#); [17:25](#); [18:12](#); [18:33](#); [19:4](#); [19:17](#); [19:25](#); [20:13](#); [20:15](#); [21:16](#); [21:20](#); [21:25](#); [21:28](#); [21:42](#); [22:12](#); [22:18](#); [22:20](#); [22:31](#); [22:32](#); [22:43](#); [22:45](#); [23:17](#); [23:19](#); [23:33](#); [24:2](#); [24:45](#); [26:8](#); [26:10](#); [26:22](#); [26:25](#); [26:40](#); [26:45](#); [26:53](#); [26:54](#); [26:55](#); [26:65](#); [27:4](#); [27:13](#))

Simile

A simile is an explicit comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than”.

This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than”.

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were **like sheep without a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as serpents** and harmless **as doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

Examples from the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier of Christ Jesus**. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

for **as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky**, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

See, I send **you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

(Matthew 10:16 ULT) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.

See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword

. (Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**

(2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

See, I send **you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

, (Matthew 10:16 ULT) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**,

How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings

, but you did not agree! (Matthew 23:37 ULT)

How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!

If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard

, (Matthew 17:20)

If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

See, I send **you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

, (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

See, I send you out among **people who will want to harm you**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings
, but you did not agree! (Matthew 23:37 ULT)

How often I wanted to **protect you**, but you refused!

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metaphor](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:16](#); [7:24](#); [7:26](#); [9:36](#); [10:16](#); [11:17](#); [13:24](#); [13:33](#); [13:43](#); [13:44](#); [13:45](#); [13:47](#); [17:2](#); [17:20](#); [18:3](#); [18:4](#); [19:14](#); [23:27](#); [23:37](#); [24:27](#); [25:32](#); [28:3](#); [28:4](#))

Symbolic Action

Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their head up and down to mean "Yes" or turn their head from side to side to mean "No". Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

Reason this is a translation issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture, and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means "I am surprised" or "What did you say?" In others cultures it means "Yes".

In the Bible people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

Examples from the Bible

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I stand at the door and **knock**. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come in to his home, and have a meal with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.
2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41)

Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. (Revelation 3:20)

Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT) - Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. (Revelation 3:20 ULT) - Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:11](#); [3:4](#); [4:9](#); [8:2](#); [8:12](#); [9:18](#); [10:14](#); [13:42](#); [13:50](#); [15:25](#); [18:26](#); [18:29](#); [21:8](#); [22:13](#); [22:44](#); [24:51](#); [25:30](#); [26:64](#); [26:65](#); [27:24](#); [27:39](#))

Symbolic Prophecy

Description

Symbolic prophecy is a type of message that God gave to a prophet so that the prophet would tell others. These messages use images and symbols to show what God will do in the future.

The main books that have these prophecies are Isaiah, Ezekiel, Daniel, Zechariah, and Revelation. Shorter examples of symbolic prophecy are also found in other books, such as in Matthew 24, Mark 13, and Luke 21.

The Bible tells both how God gave each message and what the message was. When God gave the messages, he often did so in miraculous ways such as in dreams and visions. (See [Dream](#) and [Vision](#) for help translating “dreams” and “visions”.) When prophets saw these dreams and visions, they often saw images and symbols about God and heaven. Some of these images include a throne, golden lamp stands, a powerful man with white hair and white clothes, and eyes like fire and legs like bronze. Some of these images were seen by more than one prophet.

The prophecies about the world also contain images and symbols. For example, in some of the prophecies strong animals represent kingdoms, horns represent kings or kingdoms, a dragon or serpent represents the devil, the sea represents the nations, and weeks represent longer periods of time. Some of these images were also seen by more than one prophet.

The prophecies tell about the evil in this world, how God will judge the world and punish sin, and how God will establish his righteous kingdom in the new world he is creating. They also tell about things that will happen concerning heaven and hell.

Much of prophecy in the Bible is presented as poetry. In some cultures people assume that if something is said in poetry, then it might not be true or very important. However, the prophecies in the Bible are true and very important, whether they are presented in poetic forms or non-poetic forms.

Sometimes the past tense is used in these books for events that happened in the past. However, sometimes the past tense is used for events that would happen in the future. There are two reasons for this. When prophets told about things that they saw in a dream or vision, they often used the past tense because their dream was in the past. The other reason for using the past tense to refer to future events was to emphasize that those events would certainly happen. The events were so certain to happen, it was as if they had already happened. We call this second use of the past tense “the predictive past”. (See [Predictive Past](#).)

Some of these things happened after the prophets told about them, and some of them will happen at the end of this world.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some of the images are hard to understand because we have never seen things like them before.
- Descriptions of things that we have never seen or that do not exist in this world are hard to translate.
- If God or the prophet used the past tense, readers may have difficulty knowing whether he was talking about something that had already happened or something that would happen later.

Translation Principles

- Translate the images in the text. Do not try to interpret them and translate their meaning.
- When an image appears in more than one place in the Bible, and it is described in the same way, try to translate it the same way in all those places.

This page answers the question: *What is symbolic language and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-symlanguage\]\]](#)

- If either poetic forms or non-poetic forms would imply to your readers that the prophecy is not true or is unimportant, use a form that would not imply those things.
- Sometimes it is difficult to understand in what order the events described in the various prophecies happen. Simply write them as they appear in each prophecy.
- Translate tense in a way that the readers can understand what the speaker meant. If readers would not understand the predictive past, it is acceptable to use the future tense.
- Some of the prophecies were fulfilled after the prophets wrote about them. Some of them have not been fulfilled yet. Do not clarify in the prophecy when these prophecies were fulfilled or how they were fulfilled.

Examples from the Bible

The following passages describe powerful beings that Ezekiel, Daniel, and John saw. Images that come up in these visions include hair that is white as wool, a voice like many waters, a golden belt, and legs or feet like polished bronze. Though the prophets saw various details, it would be good to translate the details that are the same in the same way. The underlined phrases in the passage from Revelation also occur in the passages from Daniel and Ezekiel.

In the middle of the lampstands there was one like a Son of Man, wearing a long robe that reached down to his feet, and a golden belt around his chest. ***His head and hair were as white as wool***— as white as snow, and his eyes were like a flame of fire. ***His feet were like burnished bronze***, like bronze that had been refined in a furnace, and ***his voice was like the sound of many rushing waters***. He had in his right hand seven stars, and coming out of his mouth was a sharp two-edged sword. His face was shining like the sun at its strongest shining. (Revelation 1:13-16 ULT)

As I looked,
thrones were set in place,
and the Ancient of Days took his seat.
His clothing was as white as snow,
and ***the hair of his head was like pure wool***. (Daniel 7:9 ULT)

I looked up and saw a man dressed in linen, with a belt around his waist made of pure gold from Uphaz. His body was like topaz, his face was like lightning, his eyes were like flaming torches, his arms and ***his feet were like polished bronze***, and the sound of his words was like the sound of a great crowd. (Daniel 10:5-6 ULT)

Behold! The glory of the God of Israel came from the east; ***his voice was like the sound of many waters***, and the earth shone with his glory! (Ezekiel 43:2 ULT)

The following passage shows the use of the past tense to refer to past events. The underlined verbs refer to past events.

The vision of Isaiah son of Amoz, that he ***saw*** concerning Judah and Jerusalem, in the days of Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah, kings of Judah.

Hear, heavens, and give ear, earth; for Yahweh ***has spoken***:

"I have nourished and brought up children, but they ***have rebelled*** against me. (Isaiah 1:1-2 ULT)

The following passage shows the future tense and different uses of the past tense. The underlined verbs are examples of the predictive past, where the past tense is used to show that the events certainly will happen.

The gloom will be dispelled from her who was in anguish.
In an earlier time he humiliated
the land of Zebulun and the land of Naphtali,
but in the later time he will make it glorious, the way to the sea, beyond the Jordan, Galilee of the nations.

The people who walked in darkness **have seen** a great light;
those who have lived in the land of the shadow of death, the light **has shone** on them. (Isaiah 9:1-2 ULT)

(Go back to: [Matthew 24 General Notes; Notes](#))

Synecdoche

Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

My soul exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULT)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

the Pharisees said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful...” (Mark 2:24 ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

“My soul

exalts the Lord.” (Luke 1:46 ULT)

“I exalt the Lord.”

...the Pharisees

said to him (Mark 2:24 ULT)

...a representative of the Pharisees said to him...

...I looked on all the deeds that my hands

This page answers the question: *What is a synecdoche, and how can I translate such a thing into my language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

had accomplished... (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

I looked on all the deeds that *I* had accomplished

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metonymy](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part2]]

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:3](#); [6:11](#); [6:31](#); [7:9](#); [10:10](#); [11:10](#); [11:18](#); [11:29](#); [12:18](#); [12:21](#); [12:34](#); [13:16](#); [15:26](#); [16:17](#); [24:22](#); [24:35](#); [26:38](#); [26:41](#))

Textual Variants

Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However, people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, or some mistook a word for another that looked like it. Occasionally they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident, or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles have some of these sentences that were added. In the ULT, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

This page answers the question: *Why does the ULT have missing or added verses, and should I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-source-text\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts\]\]](#)

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULT based the ULT on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULT may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULT translators have sometimes included information about some of the differences between them, either in the ULT footnotes in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULT and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULT. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

Examples from the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULT has a footnote about verse 11.

¹⁰ See that you do not despise any of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. ¹¹ ^[1]

^[1] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11. *For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.*

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULT, but it is marked off with square brackets ([]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

⁵³ [Then every man went to his own house.... ¹¹ She said, "No one, Lord." Jesus said, "Neither do I condemn you. Go your way; from now on sin no more."] ^[2]

^[2] The best earliest manuscripts do not have John 7:53-8:11

Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULT or another version that you have access to.

1. Translate the verses that the ULT does and include the footnote that the ULT provides.
2. Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULT, which has a footnote about verse 16.

¹⁴ He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand.
¹⁵ There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him.
 It is what comes out of the person that defiles him.” ¹⁶[¹]

[¹] The best ancient copies omit v. 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*

(1) Translate the verses that the ULT does and include the footnote that the ULT provides.

¹⁴ He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵
 There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what
 comes out of the person that defiles him.” ¹⁶[¹]

[¹] The best ancient copies omit verse 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let
 him hear.*

(2) Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

¹⁴ He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵
 There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what
 comes out of the person that defiles him. ¹⁶ If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.” [¹]

[¹] Some ancient copies do not have verse 16.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-chapverse\]\]](#)
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts\]\]](#)
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-terms\]\]](#)
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-original\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Introduction to the Gospel of Matthew](#); [Matthew 19:9](#))

Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: "How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?"

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

We have here only five loaves of **bread** and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples from the Bible

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11 ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous **wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **myrrh**. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

to him who made **great lights** (Psalm 136:7 ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

your sins...will be white like **snow** (Isaiah 1:18 ULT)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves

. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but **are truly hungry and dangerous animals**.

"Ravenous wolves" is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See [Translating Metaphors](#).)

We have here only five loaves of bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

We have here only five **loaves of baked grain seeds** and two fish

(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

your sins...will be white like snow

(Isaiah 1:18 ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

your sins...will be white like **milk** your sins...will be white like **the moon**

(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh

. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **a medicine called myrrh**. But he refused to drink it.

We have here only five loaves of bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).

■ We have here only five loaves of ***baked crushed seed bread*** and two fish

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

■ **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for** jackals

(Jeremiah 9:11 ULT)

■ I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for ***wild dogs***

We have here only five loaves of bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

■ We have here only five ***loaves of baked food*** and two fish

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

■ **to him who made** great lights

(Psalm 136:7 ULT)

■ to him who made ***the sun and the moon***

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Copy or Borrow Words](#)

[How to Translate Names](#)

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:12](#); [6:28](#); [8:20](#); [9:17](#); [10:29](#); [12:1](#); [13:2](#); [13:31](#); [13:45](#); [23:23](#); [23:37](#); [26:7](#))

Translating Son and Father

Door43 supports Bible translations that represent these concepts when they refer to God.

Biblical Witness

“Father” and “Son” are names that God calls himself in the Bible.

The Bible shows that God called Jesus his Son:

After he was baptized, Jesus came up immediately from the water, and...a voice came out of the heavens saying, **“This is my beloved Son.** I am very pleased with him.” (Matthew 3:16-17 ULT)

The Bible shows that Jesus called God his Father:

Jesus said, “I praise you **Father**, Lord of heaven and earth,...no one knows the **Son** except the **Father**, and no one knows the **Father** except the **Son**” (Matthew 11:25-27 ULT) (See also: John 6:26-57)

Christians have found that “Father” and “Son” are the ideas that most essentially describe the eternal relationship of the First and Second Persons of the Trinity to each other. The Bible indeed refers to them in various ways, but no other terms reflect the eternal love and intimacy between these Persons, nor the interdependent eternal relationship between them.

Jesus referred to God in the following terms:

Baptize them into **the name of the Father, of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit.** (Matthew 28:19 ULT)

The intimate, loving relationship between the Father and the Son is eternal, just as they are eternal.

The Father **loves** the Son. (John 3:35-36; 5:19-20 ULT)

I **love** the Father, I do what the Father commands me, just as he gave me the commandment. (John 14:31 ULT)

...no one knows who the Son is except the Father, and no one knows who the Father is except the Son. (Luke 10:22 ULT)

The terms “Father” and “Son” also communicate that the Father and the Son are of the same essence; they are both eternal God.

Jesus said, “Father, glorify your Son so that the Son may glorify you...I glorified you on the earth,...Now Father, glorify me...with the glory that **I had with you before the world was created.**” (John 17:1-5 ULT)

But in these last days, he [God the Father] has spoken to us through a Son, whom he appointed to be the heir of all things. It is through him that God also made the universe. He is the brightness of God’s glory, **the very character of his essence.** He even holds everything together by the word of his power. (Hebrews 1:2-3 ULT)

Jesus said to him, “I have been with you for so long and you still do not know me, Philip? **Whoever has seen me has seen the Father.** How can you say, ‘Show us the Father’? (John 14:9 ULT)

This page answers the question: *Why are these concepts important in referring to God?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/guidelines-faithful\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/guidelines-sonofgod\]\]](#)

Human Relationships

Human fathers and sons are not perfect, but the Bible still uses those terms for the Father

and Son, who are perfect.

Just as today, human father-son relationships during Bible times were never as loving or perfect as the relationship between Jesus and his Father. But this does not mean that the translator should avoid the concepts of father and son. The Scriptures use these terms to refer to God, the perfect Father and Son, as well as to sinful human fathers and sons. In referring to God as Father and Son, choose words in your language that are widely used to refer to a human "father" and "son." In this way you will communicate that God the Father and God the Son are of the same divine essence (they are both God), just as a human father and son are of the same human essence (they are both human and share the same human characteristics).

Translation Strategies

1. Think through all the possibilities within your language to translate the words "son" and "father." Determine which words in your language best represent the divine "Son" and "Father."
2. If your language has more than one word for "son," use the word that has the closest meaning to "only son" (or "first son" if necessary).
3. If your language has more than one word for "father," use the word that has the closest meaning to "birth father," rather than "adoptive father."

(See *God the Father* and *Son of God* pages in [unfoldingWord® Translation Words](#) for help translating "Father" and "Son.")

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:17](#); [4:3](#); [4:6](#); [5:45](#); [5:48](#); [6:1](#); [6:6](#); [6:8](#); [6:14](#); [6:18](#); [6:26](#); [6:32](#); [7:11](#); [7:21](#); [8:29](#); [10:20](#); [10:29](#); [10:32](#); [11:25](#); [11:27](#); [12:50](#); [13:43](#); [14:33](#); [15:13](#); [16:16](#); [16:17](#); [16:27](#); [18:10](#); [18:14](#); [18:19](#); [18:35](#); [20:23](#); [23:9](#); [24:36](#); [25:34](#); [26:29](#); [26:39](#); [26:42](#); [26:53](#); [26:63](#); [27:40](#); [27:43](#); [27:54](#); [28:19](#))

Verse Bridges

Description

In some cases, you will see in the unfoldingWord® Simplified Text (UST) that two or more verse numbers are combined, such as 17-18. This is called a verse bridge. This means that the information in the verses was rearranged so that the story or message could be more easily understood.

This page answers the question: *Why are some verse numbers combined in the UST, such as "3-5" or "17-18"?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-bibleorg\]\]](https://en.ta/man/translate/translate-bibleorg)

²⁹ These were the clans of the Horites: Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, and Anah, ³⁰ Dishon, Ezer, Dishan: these are clans of the Horites, according to their clan lists in the land of Seir. (Genesis 36:29-30 ULT)

²⁹⁻³⁰ The people groups who were descendants of Hor lived in Seir land. The names of the people groups are Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah, Dishon, Ezer, and Dishan. (Genesis 36:29-30 UST)

In the ULT text, verses 29 and 30 are separate, and the information about the people living in Seir is at the end of verse 30. In the UST text, the verses are joined, and the information about them living in Seir is at the beginning. For many languages, this is a more logical order of information.

Examples from the Bible

Where the UST has a verse bridge, the ULT will have separate verses.

⁴⁻⁵ Yahweh our God will bless you in the land that he is giving to you. If you obey Yahweh our God and obey all the commandments that I am giving to you today, there will not be any poor people among you. (Deuteronomy 15:4-5 UST)

⁴ However, there should be no poor among you (for Yahweh will surely bless you in the land that he gives you as an inheritance to possess), ⁵ if only you diligently listen to the voice of Yahweh your God, to keep all these commandments that I am commanding you today. (Deuteronomy 15:4-5 ULT)

¹⁶⁻¹⁷ But Yahweh said to him, "You must not eat the fruit of the tree that will enable you to know what actions are evil to do as well as what actions are good to do. If you eat any fruit from that tree, on that day your relationship with me will end. But I will permit you to eat the fruit of any of the other trees in the garden." (Genesis 2:16-17 UST)

¹⁶ Yahweh God commanded the man, saying, "From every tree in the garden you may freely eat. ¹⁷ But from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil you may not eat, for on the day that you eat from it, you will surely die." (Genesis 2:16-17 ULT)

Translation Strategies

Order the information in a way that will be clear to your readers. If the order of information is clear as it is in the ULT, then use that order. But if the order is confusing or gives the wrong meaning, then change the order so that it is more clear.

1. If you put information from one verse before information from an earlier verse, then combine the verses and put a hyphen between the two verse numbers.

See how to mark verses in [translationStudio](#).

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If information from one verse is put before information from an earlier verse, then combine the verses and put the verse numbers before the first verse with a hyphen between them.

² you must select three cities for yourself in the middle of your land that Yahweh your God is giving you to possess. ³ You must build a road and divide the borders of your land into three parts, the land that Yahweh your God is causing you to inherit, so that everyone who kills another person may flee there. (Deuteronomy 19:2-3)

²⁻³ you must divide into three parts the land that he is giving to you. Then select a city in each part. You must make good roads in order that people can get to those cities easily. Someone who kills another person can escape to one of those cities to be safe. (Deuteronomy 19:2-3 UST)

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-chapverse]]

(Go back to: [Matthew 9:21](#))

When Masculine Words Include Women

In the Bible, sometimes the words “men”, “brothers” and “sons” refer only to men. At other times, those words include both men and women. In those places where the writer meant both men and women, you (the translator) need to translate it in a way that does not limit the meaning to men.

Description

In some languages a word that normally refers to men can also be used in a more general way to refer to both men and women. For example, the Bible sometimes says **‘brothers’** when it refers to both brothers and sisters.

Also in some languages, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can be used in a more general way for any person if it is not important whether the person is a man or a woman. In the example below, the pronoun is “his”, but it is not limited to males.

A wise child makes **his** father rejoice
but a foolish child brings grief to **his** mother. (Proverbs 10:1 ULT)

Reason this is a translation issue

- In some cultures words like “man,” “brother,” and “son” can only be used to refer to men. If those words are used in a translation in a more general way, people will think that what is being said does not apply to women.
- In some cultures, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can only refer to men. If a masculine pronoun is used, people will think that what is said does not apply to women.

Translation Principles

When a statement applies to both men and women, translate it in such a way that people will be able to understand that it applies to both.

Examples from the Bible

We want you to know, **brothers**, about the grace of God that has been given to the churches of Macedonia. (2 Corinthians 8:1 ULT)

This verse is addressing the believers in Corinth, not only men, but **men and women**.

Then said Jesus to his disciples, “If anyone wants to follow me, **he** must deny **himself**, take up **his** cross, and follow me.” (Matthew 16:24-26 ULT)

Jesus was not speaking only of men, but of **men and women**.

Caution: Sometimes masculine words are used specifically to refer to men. Do not use words that would lead people to think that they include women. The underlined words below are specifically about men.

Moses said, ‘If a **man** dies, having no children, **his brother** must marry **his** wife and have a child for **his brother**.’ (Mark 22:24 ULT)

This page answers the question: *How do I translate “brother” or “he” when it could refer to anyone, male or female?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns](#)

[Generic Noun Phrases](#)

Translation Strategies

If people would understand that that masculine words like “man,” “brother,” and “he” can include women, then consider using them. Otherwise, here are some ways for translating those words when they include women.

1. Use a noun that can be used for both men and women.
2. Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.
3. Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use nouns that can be used for both men and women.

The wise man

dies just like the fool dies. (Ecclesiastes 2:16 ULT)

“The wise **person** dies just like the fool dies.”
 “Wise **people** die just like fools die.”

(2) Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.

For we do not want you to be ignorant, brothers

, about the troubles we had in Asia. (2 Corinthians 1:8) - Paul was writing this letter to both men and women.

“For we do not want you to be ignorant, **brothers and sisters**, about the troubles we had in Asia.” (2 Corinthians 1:8)

(3) Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me.”
 (Matthew 16:24 ULT) - English speakers can change the masculine singular pronouns, “he,” “himself,” and “his” to plural pronouns that do not mark gender, “they,” “themselves,” and “their” in order to show that it applies to all people, not just men.

“If **people** want to follow me, **they** must deny **themselves**, take up **their** cross, and follow me.”

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:37](#); [10:40](#); [25:40](#))



unfoldingWord® Translation Words

Version 14

Abel

Facts:

Abel was Adam and Eve's second son. He was Cain's younger brother.

- Abel was a shepherd.
- Abel sacrificed some of his animals as an offering to God.
- God was pleased with Abel and his offerings.
- Adam and Eve's firstborn son Cain murdered Abel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Cain, [sacrifice](#), [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 04:02
- Genesis 04:09
- Hebrews 12:24
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 23:35

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1893, G6

(Go back to: [Matthew 23:35](#))

Abijah

Facts:

Abijah was a king of Judah who reigned from 915 to 913 B.C. He was a son of King Rehoboam. There were also several other men named Abijah in the Old Testament:

- Samuel's sons Abijah and Joel were leaders over the people of Israel at Beersheba. Because Abijah and his brother were dishonest and greedy, the people asked Samuel to appoint a king to rule them instead.
- Abijah was one of the temple priests during the time of King David.
- Abijah was one of King Jeroboam's sons.
- Abijah was also a chief priest who returned with Zerubbabel to Jerusalem from the Babylonian captivity.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:03
- 1 Samuel 08:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 13:02
- 2 Chronicles 13:19
- Luke 01:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H29, G7

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:7](#))

abomination, abominable

Definition:

The term “abomination” is used to refer to something that causes disgust or extreme dislike.

- The Egyptians considered the Hebrew people to be an “abomination.” This means that the Egyptians disliked the Hebrews and didn’t want to associate with them or be near them.
- Some of the things that the Bible calls “an abomination to Yahweh” include lying, pride, sacrificing humans, worship of idols, murder, and sexual sins such as adultery and homosexual acts.
- In teaching his disciples about the end times, Jesus referred to a prophecy by the prophet Daniel about an “abomination of desolation” that would be set up as a rebellion against God, defiling his place of worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “abomination” could also be translated by “something God hates” or “something disgusting” or “disgusting practice” or “very evil action.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase “is an abomination to” could include “is greatly hated by” or “is disgusting to” or “is totally unacceptable to” or “causes deep disgust.”
- The phrase “abomination of desolation” could be translated as “defiling object that causes people to be greatly harmed” or “disgusting thing that causes great sorrow.”

(See also: [adultery](#), desecrate, [desolate](#), false god, [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Ezra 09:1-2
- Genesis 46:34
- Isaiah 01:13
- Matthew 24:15
- Proverbs 26:25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H887, H6292, H8251, H8262, H8263, H8441, G946

(Go back to: [Matthew 24:15](#))

Abraham, Abram

Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to "Abraham."

- The name "Abram" means "exalted father."
- "Abraham" means "father of many."
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), Chaldea, Sarah, [Isaac](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 03:08
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:04
- Genesis 22:02
- James 02:23
- Matthew 01:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **05:04** Then God changed **Abram's** name to **Abraham**, which means "father of many."
- **05:05** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's son.
- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham's** faith by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- **06:01** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **06:04** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **21:02** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H87, H85, G11

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:1](#); [1:2](#); [1:17](#); [3:9](#); [8:11](#); [22:32](#))

accuse, accused, accuser, accusation

Definition:

The terms “accuse” and “accusation” refer to blaming someone for doing something wrong. A person who accuses others is an “accuser.”

- A false accusation is when a charge against someone is not true, as when Jesus was falsely accused of wrongdoing by the leaders of the Jews.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Satan is called “the accuser.”

Bible References:

- Acts 19:40
- Hosea 04:04
- Jeremiah 02:9-11
- Luke 06:6-8
- Romans 08:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3198, H6818, G1458, G2147, G2596, G2724

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:25](#); [12:10](#); [27:12](#))

adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress

Definition:

The term “adultery” refers to a sin that occurs when a married person has sexual relations with someone who is not that person’s spouse. Both of them are guilty of adultery. The term “adulterous” describes this kind of behavior or any person who commits this sin.

- The term “adulterer” refers generally to any person who commits adultery.
- Sometimes the term “adulteress” is used to specify that it was a woman who committed adultery.
- Adultery breaks the promises that a husband and wife made to each other in their covenant of marriage.
- God commanded the Israelites to not commit adultery.

Translation Suggestions:

- If the target language does not have one word that means “adultery,” this term could be translated with a phrase such as “having sexual relations with someone else’s wife” or “being intimate with another person’s spouse.”
- Some languages may have an indirect way of talking about adultery, such as “sleeping with someone else’s spouse” or “being unfaithful to one’s wife.” (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: [commit](#), [covenant](#), [sexual immorality](#), sleep with, [faithful](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 20:14
- Hosea 04:1-2
- Luke 16:18
- Matthew 05:28
- Matthew 12:39
- Revelation 02:22

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:06** “Do not commit **adultery**.”
- **28:02** Do not commit **adultery**.
- **34:07** “The religious leader prayed like this, ‘Thank you, God, that I am not a sinner like other men-such as robbers, unjust men, **adulterers**, or even like that tax collector.’”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5003, H5004, G3428, G3429, G3430, G3431, G3432

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:27](#); [5:28](#); [5:32](#); [12:39](#); [15:19](#); [16:4](#); [19:9](#); [19:18](#))

adversary, enemy

Definition:

An "adversary" is a person (or group of people) who is opposed to someone else. The term "enemy" has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose or harm another person.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an "adversary" of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an "adversary" and an "enemy."
- The term "adversary" may be translated as "opponent" or "enemy," but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: [Satan](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:14
- Isaiah 09:11
- Job 06:23
- Lamentations 04:12
- Luke 12:59
- Matthew 13:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G476, G480, G2189, G2190, G5227

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:43](#); [5:44](#); [10:36](#); [13:25](#); [13:28](#); [13:39](#); [22:44](#))

advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels

Definition:

The terms “counsel” and “advice” have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide wisely about what to do in a certain situation. A wise “counselor” or “advisor” is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

- Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
- Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
- Depending on the context, “advice” or “counsel” could also be translated as “help in deciding” or “warnings” or “exhortations” or “guidance.”
- The action, to “counsel” could be translated as to “advise” or to “make suggestions” or to “exhort.”
- Note that “counsel” is a different word than “council,” which refers to a group of people.

(See also: exhort, [Holy Spirit](#), [wise](#))

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H1847, H1875, H1884, H1907, H3272, H3289, H3982, H4156, H4431, H5475, H5779, H6440, H6963, H6098, H7592, H8458, G1011, G1012, G1106, G4823, G4825

(Go back to: [Matthew 12:14](#); [22:15](#); [27:1](#); [27:7](#); [28:12](#))

age, aged

Definition:

The term “age” refers to the number of years a person has lived. It also used to refer generally to a time period.

- Other words used to express an extended period of time include “era” and “season.”
- Jesus refers to “this age” as the present time when evil, sin, and disobedience fill the earth.
- There will be a future age when righteousness will reign over a new heaven and a new earth.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “age” could also be translated as “era” or “number of years old” or “time period” or “time.”
- The phrase “at a very old age” could be translated as “at many years old” or “when he was very old” or “when he had lived a very long time.”
- The phrase “this present evil age” means “during this time right now when people are very evil.”

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:28
- 1 Corinthians 02:07
- Hebrews 06:05
- Job 05:26

Word Data:

- Strong's: G165, G1074

(Go back to: [Matthew 12:32](#); [13:22](#); [13:39](#); [13:40](#); [13:49](#); [21:19](#); [24:3](#); [28:20](#))

Ahaz

Definition:

Ahaz was a wicked king who ruled over the kingdom of Judah from 732 BC to 716 BC. This was about 140 years before the time when many people in Israel and Judah were taken as captives to Babylonia.

- While he was ruling Judah, Ahaz had an altar built for worshiping the false gods of the Assyrians, which caused the people to turn away from the one true God, Yahweh.
- King Ahaz was 20 years old when he started to rule over Judah, and he ruled for 16 years.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 08:35-37
- 2 Chronicles 28:01
- 2 Kings 16:20
- Hosea 01:01
- Isaiah 01:1
- Isaiah 07:04
- Matthew 01:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H271

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:9](#))

alms

Definition:

The term “alms” refers to money, food, or other things that are given to help poor people.

- Often the giving of alms was seen by people as something that their religion required them to do in order to be righteous.
- Jesus said that giving alms should not be done publicly for the purpose of getting other people to notice.
- This term could be translated as “money” or “gifts to poor people” or “help for the poor.”

Bible References:

- Acts 03:1-3
- Matthew 06:01
- Matthew 06:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: G1654

(Go back to: [Matthew 6:2](#); [6:3](#); [6:4](#))

altar

Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, false god, grain offering, [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 08:20
- Genesis 22:09
- James 02:21
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 05:23
- Matthew 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **13:09** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **16:06** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G1041, G2379

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:23](#); [5:24](#); [23:18](#); [23:19](#); [23:20](#); [23:35](#))

amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded

Definition:

All these terms refer to being very surprised because of something extraordinary that happened.

- Some of these words are translations of Greek expressions that mean “struck with amazement” or “standing outside of (oneself).” These expressions show how very surprised or shocked the person was feeling. Other languages might also have ways to express this.
- Usually the event that caused the wonder and amazement was a miracle, something only God could do.
- The meaning of these terms can also include feelings of confusion because what happened was totally unexpected.
- Other ways to translate these words could be “extremely surprised” or “very shocked.”
- Related words include “marvelous” (amazing, wonderful), “amazement,” and “astonishment.”
- In general, these terms are positive and express that the people were happy about what had happened.

(See also: [miracle](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 08:9-11
- Acts 09:20-22
- Galatians 01:06
- Mark 02:10-12
- Matthew 07:28
- Matthew 15:29-31
- Matthew 19:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H926, H2865, H3820, H4159, H6313, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H8074, H8429, H8539, H8540, H8541, G639, G1568, G1569, G1605, G1611, G1839, G2284, G2285, G2296, G2297, G2298, G4023, G4592, G5059

(Go back to: [Matthew 7:28](#); [8:10](#); [8:27](#); [9:33](#); [12:23](#); [13:54](#); [15:31](#); [19:25](#); [21:20](#); [21:42](#); [22:22](#); [22:33](#); [24:24](#); [27:14](#))

amen, truly

Definition:

The term “amen” is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as “truly.”

- When used at the end of a prayer, “amen” communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
- In his teaching, Jesus used “amen” to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by “and I say to you” to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
- When Jesus uses “amen” this way, some English versions (and the ULT) translate this as “verily” or “truly.”
- Another word meaning “truly” is sometimes translated as “surely” or “certainly” and is also used to emphasize what the speaker is saying.

Translation Suggestions:

- Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
- When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, “amen” could be translated as “let it be so” or “may this happen” or “that is true.”
- When Jesus says, “truly I tell you,” this could also be translated as “Yes, I tell you sincerely” or “That is true, and I also tell you.”
- The phrase “truly, truly I tell you” could be translated as “I tell you this very sincerely” or “I tell you this very earnestly” or “what I am telling you is true.”

(See also: [fulfill](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 27:15
- John 05:19
- Jude 01:24-25
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Philemon 01:23-25
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H543, G281

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:18](#); [5:26](#); [6:2](#); [6:5](#); [6:16](#); [8:10](#); [10:15](#); [10:23](#); [10:42](#); [11:11](#); [13:17](#); [16:28](#); [17:20](#); [18:3](#); [18:13](#); [18:18](#); [18:19](#); [19:23](#); [19:28](#); [21:21](#); [21:31](#); [23:36](#); [24:2](#); [24:34](#); [24:47](#); [25:12](#); [25:40](#); [25:45](#); [26:13](#); [26:21](#); [26:34](#))

ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Definition:

The term “father” refers to a person’s male parent.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to a male ancestor(s) of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: [God the Father](#), [son](#), [Son of God](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:02
- Acts 07:32
- Acts 07:45
- Acts 22:03
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 07:4-6
- John 04:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 03:07
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 01:07
- Matthew 03:09
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 04:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1, H2, H25, H369, H539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G540, G1080, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:2](#); [1:3](#); [1:4](#); [1:5](#); [1:6](#); [1:7](#); [1:8](#); [1:9](#); [1:10](#); [1:11](#); [1:12](#); [1:13](#); [1:14](#); [1:15](#); [1:16](#); [2:22](#); [3:9](#); [4:21](#); [4:22](#); [8:21](#); [10:21](#); [10:35](#); [10:37](#); [15:4](#); [15:5](#); [15:6](#); [19:5](#); [19:19](#); [19:29](#); [21:31](#); [23:9](#); [23:30](#); [23:32](#))

Andrew

Facts:

Andrew was one of twelve men whom Jesus chose to be his closest disciples (later called apostles).

- Andrew's brother was Simon Peter. Both of them were fishermen.
- Peter and Andrew were fishing in the Sea of Galilee when Jesus called them to be his disciples.
- Before Peter and Andrew met Jesus, they had been disciples of John the Baptizer.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [disciple](#), [the twelve](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 01:12-14
- John 01:40
- Mark 01:17
- Mark 01:29-31
- Mark 03:17-19
- Matthew 04:19
- Matthew 10:2-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: G406

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:18](#); [10:2](#))

angel, archangel

Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term “archangel” refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word “angel” literally means “messenger.”
- The term “archangel” literally means “chief messenger.” The only angel referred to in the Bible as an “archangel” is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God’s authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, “angel of Yahweh,” has more than one possible meaning: 1) It may mean “angel who represents Yahweh” or “messenger who serves Yahweh.” 2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel’s use of “I” as if Yahweh himself was talking.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “angel” could include “messenger from God” or “God’s heavenly servant” or “God’s spirit messenger.”
- The term “archangel” could be translated as “chief angel” or “head ruling angel” or “leader of the angels.”
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase “angel of Yahweh” should be translated using the words for “angel” and “Yahweh.” This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include “angel from Yahweh” or “angel sent by Yahweh” or “Yahweh, who looked like an angel.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: chief, [head](#), [messenger](#), Michael, [ruler](#), [servant](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 12:23
- Colossians 02:18-19
- Genesis 48:16
- Luke 02:13
- Mark 08:38
- Matthew 13:50
- Revelation 01:20
- Zechariah 01:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:12** God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- **22:03** The **angel** responded to Zechariah, “I was sent by God to bring you this good news.”

- **23:06** Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, "Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you."
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising God.
- **25:08** Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- **38:12** Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- **38:15** "I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H430, H4397, H4398, H8136, G32, G743, G2465

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:20](#); [1:24](#); [2:13](#); [2:19](#); [4:6](#); [4:11](#); [13:39](#); [13:41](#); [13:49](#); [16:27](#); [18:10](#); [22:30](#); [24:31](#); [24:36](#); [25:31](#); [25:41](#); [26:53](#); [28:2](#); [28:5](#))

anoint, anointed, anointing

Definition:

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. In biblical times, there were several reasons for anointing someone with oil.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.
- In biblical times, a woman might anoint herself with perfume to make herself more sexually attractive.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour oil on” or “put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on.”
- To “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil.” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated.”
- In some contexts the term “anoint” could be translated as “appoint.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [consecrate](#), [high priest](#), [King of the Jews](#), [priest](#), [prophet](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:20
- 1 John 02:27
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- Acts 04:27-28
- Amos 06:5-6
- Exodus 29:5-7
- James 05:13-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H430, H1101, H1878, H3323, H4397, H4398, H4473, H4886, H4888, H4899, H5480, H8136, G32, G218, G743, G1472, G2025, G3462, G5545, G5548

(Go back to: [Matthew 6:17](#))

apostle, apostleship

Definition:

The “apostles” were men sent by Jesus to preach about God and his kingdom. The term “apostleship” refers to the position and authority of those who were chosen as apostles.

- The word “apostle” means “someone who is sent out for a special purpose.” The apostle has the same authority as the one who sent him.
- Jesus’ twelve closest disciples became the first apostles. Other men, such as Paul and James, also became apostles.
- By God’s power, the apostles were able to boldly preach the gospel and heal people, and were able to force demons to come out of people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “apostle” can also be translated with a word or phrase that means “someone who is sent out” or “sent-out one” or “person who is called to go out and preach God’s message to people.”
- It is important to translate the terms “apostle” and “disciple” in different ways.
- Also consider how this term was translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [authority](#), [disciple](#), [James \(son of Zebedee\)](#), Paul, [the twelve](#))

Bible References:

- Jude 01:17-19
- Luke 09:12-14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:10** Then Jesus chose twelve men who were called his **apostles**. The **apostles** traveled with Jesus and learned from him.
- **30:01** Jesus sent his **apostles** to preach and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:02** Judas was one of Jesus’ **apostles**. He was in charge of the **apostles’** money bag, but he loved money and often stole from the bag.
- **43:13** The disciples devoted themselves to the **apostles’** teaching, fellowship, eating together, and prayer.
- **46:08** Then a believer named Barnabas took Saul to the **apostles** and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G651, G652, G2491, G5376, G5570

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:2](#))

appoint, appointed

Definition:

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 08:11
- Acts 03:20
- Acts 06:02
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 03:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H561, H977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G322, G606, G1299, G1303, G1935, G2525, G2749, G4287, G4296, G4384, G4929, G5021, G5087

(Go back to: [Matthew 8:9](#); [24:45](#); [24:47](#); [24:51](#); [25:21](#); [25:23](#))

ark

Definition:

The term “ark” literally refers to a rectangular wooden box that is made to hold or protect something. An ark can be large or small, depending on what it is being used for.

- In the English Bible, the word “ark” is first used to refer to the very large, rectangular, wooden boat that Noah built to escape the worldwide flood. The ark had a flat bottom, a roof, and walls.
- Ways to translate this term could include “very large boat” or “barge” or “cargo ship” or “large, box-shaped boat.”
- The Hebrew word that is used to refer to this huge boat is the same word used for the basket or box that held baby Moses when his mother put him in the Nile River to hide him. In that case it is usually translated as “basket.”
- In the phrase “ark of the covenant,” a different Hebrew word is used for “ark.” This could be translated as “box” or “chest” or “container.”
- When choosing a term to translate “ark,” it is important in each context to consider what size it is and what it is being used for.

(See also: ark of the covenant, [basket](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:20
- Exodus 16:33-36
- Exodus 30:06
- Genesis 08:4-5
- Luke 17:27
- Matthew 24:37-39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H727, H8392, G2787

(Go back to: [Matthew 24:38](#))

Asa

Facts:

Asa was a king who ruled over the kingdom of Judah for forty years, from 913 B.C. to 873 B.c.

- King Asa was a good king who removed many idols of false gods and caused the Israelites to start worshiping Yahweh again.
- Yahweh gave King Asa success in his warfare against other nations.
- Later in his reign, however, King Asa stopped trusting Yahweh and became sick with a disease that eventually killed him.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:14-16
- 1 Kings 15:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 14:03
- Jeremiah 41:09
- Matthew 01:07

Word Data:

- Strong's: H609

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:7](#); [1:8](#))

ash, ashes

Facts:

The term “ash” (or “ashes”) refers to the grey powdery substance that is left behind after wood is burned.

- In ancient times, sitting in ashes was a sign of mourning or grieving. When grieving, it was the custom to wear rough, scratchy sackcloth and sit in ashes or put ashes on the head.
- Putting ashes on the head was also a sign of humiliation or embarrassment.
- An “ash heap” is a pile of ashes.
- Sometimes the word "dust" is used with the term "ashes" in the phrase, "dust and ashes." This phrase can be translated as "dust and ashes" or simply as "ashes."
- When translating “ashes,” use the word in the target language that refers to the burned-up remains after wood has burned.

(See also: [fire](#), [sackcloth](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 20:10
- Jeremiah 06:26
- Psalms 102:09
- Psalms 113:07

Word Data:

- Strong's: H80, H665, H1854, H6083, H6368, H7834, G2868, G4700, G5077, G5522

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:21](#))

asleep, fall asleep, sleep, sleeper, sleepless

Definition:

These terms can have figurative meanings relating to death.

- To “sleep” or “be asleep” can be a metaphor meaning to “be dead.” (See: Metaphor)
- The expression “fall asleep” means start sleeping, or, figuratively, die.
- To “sleep with one’s fathers” means to die, as one’s ancestors have, or to be dead, as one’s ancestors are.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “fall asleep” could be translated as to “suddenly become asleep” or to “start sleeping” or to “die,” depending on its meaning.
- Note: It is especially important to keep the figurative expression in contexts where the audience did not understand the meaning. For example, when Jesus told his disciples that Lazarus was “sleeping” they thought he meant that Lazarus was just sleeping naturally. In this context, it would not make sense to translate this as “he died.”
- Some project languages may have a different expression for death or dying which could be used if the expressions “sleep” and “asleep” do not make sense.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:27-29
- 1 Thessalonians 04:14
- Acts 07:60
- Daniel 12:02
- Psalms 044:23
- Romans 13:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1957, H3462, H3463, H7290, H7901, H8139, H8142, H8153, H8639, G879, G1852, G1853, G2518, G2837, G5258

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:24](#); [8:24](#); [9:24](#); [13:25](#); [25:5](#); [26:40](#); [26:43](#); [26:45](#); [27:52](#); [28:13](#))

assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting

Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together for some reason, often to discuss problems, give advice, or make decisions. An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.

Old Testament

- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.

New Testament

- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: [hyperbole](#))
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”

(See also: [council](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:14
- Acts 07:38
- Ezra 10:12-13
- Hebrews 12:22-24
- Leviticus 04:20-21
- Nehemiah 08:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H622, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H6116, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, G1577, G3831, G4863, G4864, G4871, G4905

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:4](#); [13:2](#); [22:10](#); [22:34](#); [22:41](#); [24:31](#); [25:32](#); [26:3](#); [26:57](#); [27:17](#); [27:27](#); [27:62](#); [28:12](#))

astray, go astray, went astray, lead astray, stray

Definition:

The terms “stray” and “go astray” mean to disobey God’s will. People who are “led astray” have allowed other people or circumstances to influence them to disobey God.

- The word “astray” gives a picture of leaving a clear path or a place of safety to go down a wrong and dangerous path.
- Sheep who leave the pasture of their shepherd have “strayed.” God compares sinful people to sheep who have left him and “gone astray.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “go astray” could be translated as “go away from God” or “take a wrong path away from God’s will” or “stop obeying God” or “live in a way that goes away from God.”
- To “lead someone astray” could be translated as “cause someone to disobey God” or “influence someone to stop obeying God” or “cause someone to follow you down a wrong path.”

(See also: disobey, [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:07
- 2 Timothy 03:13
- Exodus 23:4-5
- Ezekiel 48:10-12
- Matthew 18:13
- Matthew 24:05
- Psalms 058:03
- Psalms 119:110

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5080, H7683, H7686, H8582, G4105, G5351

(Go back to: [Matthew 18:12](#); [18:13](#); [22:29](#); [24:4](#); [24:5](#); [24:11](#); [24:24](#))

authority

Definition:

The term “authority” refers to the power of influence and control that someone has over someone else.

- Kings and other governing rulers have authority over the people they are ruling.
- The word “authorities” can refer to people, governments, or organizations that have authority over others.
- The word “authorities” can also refer to spirit beings who have power over people who have not submitted themselves to God’s authority.
- Masters have authority over their servants or slaves. Parents have authority over their children.
- Governments have the authority or right to make laws that govern their citizens.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “authority” can also be translated as “control” or “right” or “qualifications.”
- Sometimes “authority” is used with the meaning of “power.”
- When “authorities” is used to refer to people or organizations who rule people, it could also be translated as “leaders” or “rulers” or “powers.”
- The phrase “by his own authority” could also be translated as, “with his own right to lead” or “based on his own qualifications.”
- The expression, “under authority” could be translated as, “responsible to obey” or “having to obey others’ commands.”

(See also: citizen, [command](#), [obey](#), [power](#), [ruler](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 02:10
- Esther 09:29
- Genesis 41:35
- Jonah 03:6-7
- Luke 12:05
- Luke 20:1-2
- Mark 01:22
- Matthew 08:09
- Matthew 28:19
- Titus 03:01

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8633, G831, G1413, G1849, G1850, G2003, G2715, G5247

(Go back to: [Matthew 7:29](#); [Notes](#); [8:9](#); [9:6](#); [9:8](#); [10:1](#); [20:25](#); [21:23](#); [21:24](#); [21:27](#); [28:18](#))

ax

Definition:

An ax is tool used for cutting or chopping trees or wood.

- An ax usually has a long wooden handle with a large metal blade attached to the end.
- If your culture has a tool that is similar to an ax, the name of that tool could be used to translate “ax.”
- Other ways to translate this term could include “tree-cutting tool” or “wooden tool with blade” or “long-handled wood-chopping tool.”
- In one Old Testament event, the blade of an ax fell into a river, so it is best if the tool that is described has a blade that can come loose from the wooden handle.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:7-8
- 2 Kings 06:05
- Judges 09:48-49
- Luke 03:9
- Matthew 03:10
- Psalm 035:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1631, H4621, H7134, G513

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:10](#))

Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian

Facts:

The city of Babylon was the capital of the ancient region of Babylonia, which was also part of the Babylonian Empire.

- Babylon was located along the Euphrates River, in the same region where the Tower of Babel had been built hundreds of years before.
- Sometimes the word “Babylon” refers to the entire Babylonian Empire. For example, the “king of Babylon” ruled the entire empire, not just the city.
- The Babylonians were a powerful people group who attacked the kingdom of Judah and kept the people in exile in Babylonia for 70 years.
- Part of this region was called “Chaldea” and the people living there were the “Chaldeans.” As a result, the term “Chaldea” was often used to refer to Babylonia. (See: [synecdoche](#))

(See also: Babel, Chaldea, Judah, Nebuchadnezzar)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:01
- 2 Kings 17:24-26
- Acts 07:43
- Daniel 01:02
- Ezekiel 12:13
- Matthew 01:11
- Matthew 01:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:06** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the **Babylonians**, to attack the kingdom of Judah. **Babylon** was a powerful empire.
- **20:07** But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against **Babylon**. So, the **Babylonians** came back and attacked the kingdom of Judah. They captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:09** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to **Babylon**, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.
- **20:11** About seventy years later, Cyrus, the king of the Persians, defeated **Babylon**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3778, H3779, H8152, H894, H895, H896, G897

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:11](#); [1:12](#); [1:17](#))

baptize, baptized, baptism

Definition:

In the New Testament, the terms "baptize" and "baptism" usually refer to ritually bathing a Christian with water to show that he has been cleansed from sin and has been united with Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- Christians have different views about how a person should be baptized with water. It is probably best to translate this term in a general way that allows for different ways of applying the water.
- Depending on the context, the term "baptize" could be translated as "purify," "pour out on," "plunge (or dip) into," "wash." For example, "baptize you with water" could be translated as, "plunge you into water."
- The term "baptism" could be translated as "purification," "a pouring out," "a dipping," "a cleansing."
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [repent](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 02:38
- Acts 08:36
- Acts 09:18
- Acts 10:48
- Luke 03:16
- Matthew 03:14
- Matthew 28:18-19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:03** When people heard John's message, many of them repented from their sins, and John **baptized** them. Many religious leaders also came to be **baptized** by John, but they did not repent or confess their sins.
- **24:06** The next day, Jesus came to be **baptized** by John.
- **24:07** John said to Jesus, "I am not worthy to **baptize** you. You should **baptize** me instead."
- **42:10** So go, make disciples of all people groups by **baptizing** them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be **baptized** in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins."
- **43:12** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were **baptized** and became part of the church at Jerusalem.
- **45:11** As Philip and the Ethiopian traveled, they came to some water. The Ethiopian said, "Look! There is some water! May I be **baptized**?"
- **46:05** Saul immediately was able to see again, and Ananias **baptized** him.
- **49:14** Jesus invites you to believe in him and be **baptized**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G907

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:6](#); [3:7](#); [3:11](#); [3:13](#); [3:14](#); [3:16](#); [21:25](#); [28:19](#))

Barabbas

Facts:

Barabbas was a prisoner in Jerusalem at the time when Jesus was arrested.

- Barabbas was a criminal who had committed crimes of murder and rebellion against the Roman government.
- When Pontius Pilate offered to either release Barabbas or Jesus, the people chose Barabbas.
- So Pilate allowed Barabbas to go free, but condemned Jesus to be killed.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Pilate](#), Rome)

Bible References:

- John 18:40
- Luke 23:19
- Mark 15:07
- Matthew 27:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: G912

(Go back to: [Matthew 27:16](#); [27:17](#); [27:20](#); [27:21](#); [27:26](#))

Bartholomew

Facts:

Bartholomew was one of Jesus' twelve apostles.

- Along with the other apostles, Bartholomew was sent out to preach the gospel and do miracles in Jesus' name.
- He was also one of those who saw Jesus return to heaven.
- A few weeks after that, he was with the other apostles in Jerusalem at Pentecost when the Holy Spirit came upon them.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [good news](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [miracle](#), Pentecost, [the twelve](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 01:12-14
- Luke 06:14-16
- Mark 03:17-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: G918

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:3](#))

basket, basketfuls

Definition:

The term “basket” refers to a container made of woven material.

- In biblical times, baskets were probably woven with strong plant materials, such as wood from peeled tree branches or twigs.
- A basket could be coated with a waterproof substance so that it could float.
- When Moses was a baby, his mother made a waterproof basket to put him in and floated it among the reeds of the Nile River.
- The word translated as “basket” in that story is the same word that is translated as “ark” referring to the boat that Noah built. The common meaning of its use in these two contexts may be “floating container.”

(See also: [ark](#), [Moses](#), Nile River, [Noah](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 11:33
- Acts 09:25
- Amos 08:01
- John 06:13-15
- Judges 06:19-20
- Matthew 14:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H374, H1731, H1736, H2935, H3619, H5536, H7991, G2894, G3426, G4553, G4711

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:15](#); [14:20](#); [15:37](#); [16:9](#); [16:10](#))

bear, bearer, carry

Facts:

The term “bear” literally means “carry” something. There are also many figurative uses of this term.

- When speaking of a woman who will bear a child, this means “give birth to” a child.
- To “bear a burden” means to “experience difficult things.” These difficult things could include physical or emotional suffering.
- A common expression in the Bible is “bear fruit,” which means “produce fruit” or “have fruit.”
- The expression “bear witness” means “testify” or “report what one has seen or experienced.”
- The statement that “a son will not bear the iniquity of his father” means that he “will not be held responsible for” or “will not be punished for” his father’s sins.
- In general, this term could be translated as “carry” or “be responsible for” or “produce” or “have” or “endure,” depending on the context.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [burden](#), [Elisha](#), [endure](#), [fruit](#), [iniquity](#), [report](#), [sheep](#), [strength](#), [testimony](#), [testimony](#))

Bible References:

- Lamentations 03:27

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2232, H3201, H3205, H5375, H5445, H5449, H6030, H6509, H6779, G142, G430, G941, G1080, G1627, G2592, G3140, G4160, G4722, G4828, G5041, G5088, G5342, G5409, G5576

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:21](#); [1:23](#); [3:11](#); [4:6](#); [8:17](#); [17:17](#); [20:12](#))

Beelzebul

Facts:

Beelzebul is another name for Satan, or the devil. It is also sometimes spelled, “Beelzebub.”

- This name literally means “lord of flies” which means, “ruler over demons.” But it is best to translate this term close to the original spelling rather than translate the meaning.
- It could also be translated as “Beelzebul the devil” to make it clear who is being referred to.
- This name is related to the name of the false god “Baal-zebub” of Ekron.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [demon](#), Ekron, [Satan](#))

Bible References:

- Luke 11:15
- Mark 03:22
- Matthew 10:25
- Matthew 12:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: G954

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:25](#); [12:24](#); [12:27](#))

beg, beggar, needy

Definition:

The term “beg” means to urgently ask someone for something. It often refers to asking for money, but it is also commonly used to refer to pleading for something.

- Often people beg or plead when they strongly need something, but don’t know if the other person will give them what they ask for.
- A “beggar” is someone who regularly sits or stands in a public place to ask people for money.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as, “plead” or “urgently ask” or “demand money” or “regularly ask for money.”

(See also: plead)

Bible References:

- Luke 16:20
- Mark 06:56
- Matthew 14:36
- Psalm 045:12-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:04** God sent frogs all over Egypt. Pharaoh **begged** Moses to take away the frogs.
- **29:08** “The king called the servant and said, ‘You wicked servant! I forgave your debt because you **begged** me.”
- **32:07** The demons **begged** Jesus, “Please do not send us out of this region!” There was a herd of pigs feeding on a nearby hill. So, the demons **begged** Jesus, “Please send us into the pigs instead!”
- **32:10** The man who used to have the demons **begged** to go along with Jesus.
- **35:11** His father came out and **begged** him to come and celebrate with them, but he refused.”
- **44:01** One day, Peter and John were going to the Temple. As they approached the Temple gate, they saw a crippled man who was **begging** for money.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H34, H7592, G154, G1871, G4319, G4434

(Go back to: [Matthew 8:5](#); [8:31](#); [8:34](#); [14:36](#); [18:29](#); [18:32](#))

believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief

Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

3. believer

In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
- The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

4. unbelief

The term “unbelief” refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, “unbelief” refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one’s Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an “unbeliever.”

Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”
- Some translations may prefer to say “believer in Jesus” or “believer in Christ.”
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means “person who trusts in Jesus” or “someone who knows Jesus and lives for him.”
- Other ways to translate “believer” could be “follower of Jesus” or “person who knows and obeys Jesus.”
- The term “believer” is a general term for any believer in Christ, while “disciple” and “apostle” were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.
- Other ways to translate “unbelief” could include “lack of faith” or “not believing.”
- The term “unbeliever” could be translated as “person who does not believe in Jesus” or “someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior.”

(See also: [believe](#), [apostle](#), [Christian](#), [disciple](#), [faith](#), [trust](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:06
- Genesis 45:26
- Job 09:16-18
- Habakkuk 01:5-7
- Mark 06:4-6
- Mark 01:14-15
- Luke 09:41
- John 01:12
- Acts 06:05
- Acts 09:42
- Acts 28:23-24
- Romans 03:03
- 1 Corinthians 06:01
- 1 Corinthians 09:05
- 2 Corinthians 06:15
- Hebrews 03:12
- 1 John 03:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:04** Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- **04:08** Abram **believed** God's promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God's promise.
- **11:02** God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- **11:06** But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- **37:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?"
- **43:01** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **43:03** While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the **believers**.
- **43:13** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **46:06** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **46:01** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.
- **46:09** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus. It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called "Christians."
- **47:14** They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H540, G543, G544, G569, G570, G571, G3982, G4100, G4102, G4103, G4135

(Go back to: [Matthew 8:13](#); [9:28](#); [13:58](#); [17:17](#); [18:6](#); [21:22](#); [21:25](#); [21:32](#); [24:23](#); [24:26](#); [27:42](#))

beloved

Definition:

The term “beloved” is an expression of affection that describes someone who is loved and dear to someone else.

- The term “beloved” literally means “loved (one)” or “(who is) loved.”
- God refers to Jesus as his “beloved Son.”
- In their letters to Christian churches, the apostles frequently address their fellow believers as “beloved.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “loved” or “loved one” or “well-loved,” or “very dear.”
- In the context of talking about a close friend, this could be translated as “my dear friend” or “my close friend.” In English it is natural to say “my dear friend, Paul” or “Paul, who is my dear friend.” Other languages may find it more natural to order this in a different way.
- Note that the word “beloved” comes from the word for God’s love, which is unconditional, unselfish, and sacrificial.

(See also: [love](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:14
- 1 John 03:02
- 1 John 04:07
- Mark 01:11
- Mark 12:06
- Revelation 20:09
- Romans 16:08
- Song of Solomon 01:14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H157, H1730, H2532, H3033, H3039, H4261, G25, G27, G5207

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:17](#); [12:18](#); [17:5](#))

Bethany

Facts:

The town of Bethany was located at the base of the eastern slope of the Mount of Olives, about 2 miles east of Jerusalem.

- Bethany was near the road that ran between Jerusalem and Jericho.
- Jesus often visited Bethany where his close friends Lazarus, Martha, and Mary lived.
- Bethany is especially known as the place where Jesus raised Lazarus from the dead.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jericho](#), [Jerusalem](#), Lazarus, Martha, Mary (sister of Martha), [Mount of Olives](#))

Bible References:

- John 01:26-28
- Luke 24:50-51
- Mark 11:01
- Matthew 21:15-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: G963

(Go back to: [Matthew 21:17](#); [26:6](#))

Bethlehem, Ephrathah

Facts:

Bethlehem was a small city in the land of Israel, near the city of Jerusalem. It was also known as “Ephrathah,” which was probably its original name.

- Bethlehem has been called the “city of David,” since King David was born there.
- The prophet Micah said that the Messiah would come from “Bethlehem Ephrathah.”
- Fulfilling that prophecy, Jesus was born in Bethlehem, many years later.
- The name “Bethlehem” means “house of bread” or “house of food.”

(See also: Caleb, [David](#), Micah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 35:16
- John 07:42
- Matthew 02:06
- Matthew 02:16
- Ruth 01:02
- Ruth 01:21

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:02** David was a shepherd from the town of **Bethlehem**.
- **21:09** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin. The prophet Micah said that he would be born in the town of **Bethlehem**.
- **23:04** Joseph and Mary had to make a long journey from where they lived in Nazareth to **Bethlehem** because their ancestor was David whose hometown was **Bethlehem**.
- **23:06** “The Messiah, the Master, has been born in **Bethlehem!**”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H376, H672, H1035, G965

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:1](#); [2:5](#); [2:6](#); [2:8](#); [2:16](#))

betray, betrayer

Definition:

The term “betray” means to act in a way that deceives and harms someone. A “betrayer” is a person who betrays a friend who was trusting him.

- Judas was “the betrayer” because he told the Jewish leaders how to capture Jesus.
- The betrayal by Judas was especially evil because he was an apostle of Jesus who received money in exchange for giving the Jewish leaders information that would result in Jesus’ unjust death.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “betray” could be translated as “deceive and cause harm to” or “turn over to the enemy” or “treat treacherously.”
- The term “betrayer” could be translated as “person who betrays” or “double dealer” or “traitor.”

(See also: [Judas Iscariot](#), Jewish leaders, [apostle](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:52
- John 06:64
- John 13:22
- Matthew 10:04
- Matthew 26:22

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:11** Other prophets foretold that those who killed the Messiah would gamble for his clothes and he would be **betrayed** by a friend. The prophet Zechariah foretold that the friend would be paid thirty silver coins as payment for **betraying** the Messiah.
- **38:02** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in Jerusalem, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to **betray** Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **38:03** The Jewish leaders, led by the high priest, paid Judas thirty silver coins to **betray** Jesus.
- **38:06** Then Jesus said to the disciples, “One of you will **betray** me.” Jesus said, “The person to whom I give this piece of bread is the **betrayer**.”
- **38:13** When he returned the third time, Jesus said, “Wake up! My **betrayer** is here.”
- **38:14** Then Jesus said, “Judas, do you **betray** me with a kiss?”
- **39:08** Meanwhile, Judas, the **betrayer**, saw that the Jewish leaders had condemned Jesus to die. He became full of sorrow and went away and killed himself.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7411, G3860, G4273

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:4](#); [17:22](#); [20:18](#); [24:10](#); [26:2](#); [26:15](#); [26:16](#); [26:21](#); [26:23](#); [26:24](#); [26:25](#); [26:45](#); [26:46](#); [26:48](#); [27:3](#); [27:4](#))

bind, bond, bound

Definition:

The term “bind” means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a “bond.” The term “bound” is the past tense of this term.

- To be “bound” means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be “bound” to a vow, which means he is “required to fulfill” what he promised to do.
- The term “bonds” refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term “bind” can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be “bound” with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term “bond” is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are “bound” or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “bind” could also be translated as “tie” or “tie up” or “wrap (around).”
- Figuratively, it could be translated as to “restrain” or to “prevent” or to “keep from (something).”
- A special use of “bind” in Matthew 16 and 18 means “forbid” or “not permit.”
- The term “bonds” could be translated as “chains” or “ropes” or “shackles.”
- Figuratively the term “bond” could be translated as “knot” or “connection” or “close relationship.”
- The phrase “bond of peace” means “being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other” or “the tying together that peace brings.”
- To “bind up” could be translated as “wrap around” or “put a bandage on.”
- To “bind” oneself with a vow could be translated as “promise to fulfill a vow” or “commit to fulfill a vow.”
- Depending on the context, the term “bound” could also be translated as “tied” or “tied up” or “chained” or “obligated (to fulfill)” or “required to do.”

(See also: [fulfill](#), [peace](#), [prison](#), [servant](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

- Leviticus 08:07

Word Data:

- Strong's: H247, H481, H519, H615, H631, H632, H640, H1366, H1367, H1379, H2280, H2706, H3256, H3533, H3729, H4147, H4148, H4205, H4562, H5650, H5656, H5659, H6029, H6123, H6616, H6696, H6872, H6887, H7194, H7405, H7573, H7576, H8198, H8244, H8379, G254, G331, G332, G1195, G1196, G1198, G1199, G1210, G1397, G1398, G1401, G1402, G2611, G2615, G3734, G3784, G3814, G4019, G4029, G4385, G4886, G4887, G5265

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:12](#); [12:29](#); [13:30](#); [14:3](#); [16:19](#); [18:18](#); [22:13](#); [23:4](#); [23:16](#); [23:18](#); [27:2](#))

blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “blasphemy” refers to speaking in a way that shows a deep disrespect for God or people. To “blaspheme” someone is to speak against that person so that others think something false or bad about him.

- Most often, to blaspheme God means to slander or insult him by saying things that are not true about him or by behaving in an immoral way that dishonors him.
- It is blasphemy for a human being to claim to be God or to claim that there is a God other than the one true God.
- Some English versions translate this term as “slander” when it refers to blaspheming people.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “blaspheme” can be translated as to “say evil things against” or to “dishonor God” or to “slander.”
- Ways to translate “blasphemy” could include “speaking wrongly about others” or “slander” or “spreading false rumors.”

(See also: dishonor, slander)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:12-14
- Acts 06:11
- Acts 26:9-11
- James 02:5-7
- John 10:32-33
- Luke 12:10
- Mark 14:64
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 26:65
- Psalms 074:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1288, H1442, H2778, H5006, H5007, H5344, G987, G988, G989

(Go back to: [Matthew 9:3](#); [Notes](#); [12:31](#); [15:19](#); [26:65](#); [27:39](#))

bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as to “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: [praise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 01:03
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:03
- James 01:25
- Luke 06:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 09:05
- Romans 04:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:07** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **01:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **01:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **04:04** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **04:07** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”
- **07:03** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.

- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H833, H835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G6050

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:3](#); [5:4](#); [5:5](#); [5:6](#); [5:7](#); [5:8](#); [5:9](#); [5:10](#); [5:11](#); [11:6](#); [13:16](#); [14:19](#); [16:17](#); [21:9](#); [23:39](#); [24:46](#); [25:34](#); [26:26](#))

blood

Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body.

- Blood is a metaphor for life, and when it is shed or poured out, it is a metaphor for the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: [flesh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 14:32
- Acts 02:20
- Acts 05:28
- Colossians 01:20
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 04:11
- Psalms 016:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:03** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **10:03** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **11:05** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **13:09** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1818, H5332, G129, G130, G131

(Go back to: [Matthew 16:17](#); [23:30](#); [23:35](#); [26:28](#); [27:4](#); [27:6](#); [27:8](#); [27:24](#); [27:25](#))

Boaz

Facts:

Boaz was an Israelite man who lived during the time when there were judges ruled Israel. He married a Moabite woman named Ruth and became both the great grandfather of King David and an ancestor of Jesus Christ.

- He was a relative of an Israelite woman named Naomi who had returned to Israel after her husband and sons died in Moab.
- Boaz “redeemed” Naomi’s widowed daughter-in-law Ruth by marrying her and giving her a future with a husband and children.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Moab, redeem, [Ruth](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:12
- 2 Chronicles 03:17
- Luke 03:30-32
- Matthew 01:05
- Ruth 02:04

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1162

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:5](#))

body

Definition:

The term “body” literally refers to the physical body of a person or animal. This term is also used figuratively to refer to an object or whole group that has individual members.

- Often the term “body” refers to a dead person or animal. Sometimes this is referred to as a “dead body” or a “corpse.”
- When Jesus said to the disciples at his last Passover meal, “This (bread) is my body,” he was referring to his physical body that would be “broken” (killed) to pay for their sins.
- In the Bible, Christians as a group are referred to as the “body of Christ.”
- Just as a physical body has many parts, the “body of Christ” has many individual members.
- Each individual believer has a special function in the body of Christ to help the whole group work together to serve God and bring him glory.
- Jesus is also referred to as the “head” (leader) of the “body” of his believers. Just as a person’s head tells his body what to do, so Jesus is the one who guides and directs Christians as members of his “body.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The best way to translate this term would be with the word that is most commonly used to refer to a physical body in the project language. Make sure that the word used is not an offensive term.
- When referring collectively to believers, for some languages it may be more natural and accurate to say “spiritual body of Christ.”
- When Jesus says, “This is my body,” it is best to translate this literally, with a note to explain it if needed.
- Some languages may have a separate word when referring to a dead body, such as “corpse” for a person or “carcass” for an animal. Make sure the word used to translate this makes sense in the context and is acceptable.

(See also: [head](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:12
- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- Ephesians 04:04
- Judges 14:08
- Numbers 06:6-8
- Psalm 031:09
- Romans 12:05

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H990, H1320, H1460, H1465, H1472, H1480, H1655, H3409, H4191, H5038, H5085, H5315, H6106, H6297, H7607, G4430, G4954, G4983, G5559

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:29](#); [5:30](#); [6:22](#); [6:23](#); [6:25](#); [10:28](#); [14:12](#); [26:12](#); [26:26](#); [27:52](#); [27:58](#); [27:59](#))

born again, born of God, new birth

Definition:

The term “born again” was first used by Jesus to describe what it means for God to change a person from being dead spiritually to being alive spiritually. The terms “born of God” and “born of the Spirit” also refer to a person being given new spiritual life.

- All humans are born spiritually dead and are given a “new birth” when they accept Jesus Christ as their Savior.
- At the moment of the spiritual new birth, God’s Holy Spirit begins to live in the new believer and empowers him to produce good spiritual fruit in his life.
- It is God’s work to cause a person to be born again and become his child.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “born again” could include “born anew” or “born spiritually.”
- It is best to translate this term literally and use the normal word in the language that would be used for being born.
- The term “new birth” might be translated as “spiritual birth.”
- The phrase “born of God” could be translated as “caused by God to have new life like a newborn baby” or “given new life by God.”
- In the same way, “born of the Spirit” could be translated as “given new life by the Holy Spirit” or “empowered by the Holy Spirit to become God’s child” or “caused by the Spirit to have new life like a newborn baby.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [save](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:09
- 1 Peter 01:03
- 1 Peter 01:23
- John 03:04
- John 03:07
- Titus 03:05

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G313, G509, G1080, G3824

(Go back to: [Matthew 19:28](#))

bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 05:18
- Exodus 20:05
- Genesis 24:26
- Genesis 44:14
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:05
- Matthew 02:11
- Revelation 03:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H86, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G1120, G2578, G2827, G4098

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:11](#); [4:9](#); [9:18](#); [17:6](#); [18:26](#); [18:29](#); [20:20](#); [26:39](#); [27:29](#))

bread

Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means “loaf of bread.”
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast. However, bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. This is called “unleavened bread” in the Bible. The ancient Israelites ate “unleavened bread” during the passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: [Synecdoche](#)) Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”
- The phrase “bread of the presence” refers to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
- The term “bread from heaven” refers to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert. Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”

(See also: [Passover](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [unleavened bread](#), [yeast](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 02:46
- Acts 27:35
- Exodus 16:15
- Luke 09:13
- Mark 06:38
- Matthew 04:04
- Matthew 11:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G106, G740, G4286

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:3](#); [4:4](#); [6:11](#); [7:9](#); [12:4](#); [14:17](#); [14:19](#); [15:2](#); [15:26](#); [15:33](#); [15:34](#); [15:36](#); [16:5](#); [16:7](#); [16:8](#); [16:9](#); [16:10](#); [16:11](#); [16:12](#); [26:26](#))

bridegroom

Definition:

In a marriage ceremony, the bridegroom is the man who will marry the bride.

- In the Jewish culture during Bible times, the ceremony was centered around the bridegroom coming to get his bride.
- In the Bible, Jesus is figuratively called the "Bridegroom" who will someday come for his "Bride," the Church.
- Jesus compared his disciples to the friends of the bridegroom who celebrate while the bridegroom is with them, but who will be sad when he is gone.

(See also: bride)

Bible References:

- Isaiah 62:5
- Joel 02:15-16
- John 03:30
- Luke 05:35
- Mark 02:19
- Mark 02:20
- Matthew 09:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2860, G3566

(Go back to: [Matthew 9:15](#); [25:1](#); [25:5](#); [25:6](#); [25:10](#))

brother

Definition:

The term “brother” refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [God the Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 03:01
- Philippians 04:21
- Revelation 01:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2455, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:2](#); [1:11](#); [4:18](#); [4:21](#); [5:22](#); [5:23](#); [5:24](#); [5:47](#); [7:3](#); [7:4](#); [7:5](#); [10:2](#); [10:21](#); [Notes](#); [12:46](#); [12:47](#); [12:48](#); [12:49](#); [12:50](#); [13:55](#); [14:3](#); [17:1](#); [18:15](#); [18:21](#); [18:35](#); [19:29](#); [20:24](#); [22:24](#); [22:25](#); [23:8](#); [25:40](#); [28:10](#))

burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances

Definition:

A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term “burden” also has several figurative meanings:

- A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be “bearing” or “carrying” a “heavy burden.”
- A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
- A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
- The guilt of a person’s sin is a burden to him.
- The “burden of the Lord” is a figurative way of referring to a “message from God” that a prophet must deliver to God’s people.
- The term “burden” can be translated by “responsibility” or “duty” or “heavy load” or “message,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 03:6-9
- Galatians 06:1-2
- Galatians 06:03
- Genesis 49:15
- Matthew 11:30
- Matthew 23:04

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2960, H3053, H4614, H4853, H4864, H5445, H5447, H5448, H5449, H6006, G4, G916, G922, G2347, G2599, G2655, G5413

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:28](#); [11:30](#); [20:12](#); [23:4](#))

bury, buried, burial

Definition:

The term “bury” refers to putting an object (usually a dead body) into a hole or other burial place and then covering it with dirt or stones, etc. The term “burial” is the act of burying something, or it can be used to describe a place where something has been buried.

- Often people bury a dead body by placing it into a deep hole in the ground and then covering it with dirt.
- Sometimes the dead body is placed in a box-like structure, such as a coffin, before burying it.
- In Bible times, dead people were often buried in a cave or similar place. After Jesus died, his body was wrapped in cloths and placed in a stone tomb that was sealed with a large boulder.
- The terms “burial place” or “burial room” or “burial chamber” or “burial cave” always refer to a place where a dead body is buried.
- Other things can also be buried, such as when Achan buried silver and other things that he had stolen from Jericho.
- The phrase “buried his face” usually means “covered his face with his hands.”
- Sometimes the word “hide” can mean “bury” as when Achan hid things in the ground that he had stolen from Jericho. This meant he buried them in the ground.

(See also: [Jericho](#), [tomb](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 09:9-10
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Jeremiah 25:33
- Luke 16:22
- Matthew 27:07
- Psalm 079:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6900, H6912, H6913, G1779, G1780, G2290, G4916, G5027

(Go back to: [Matthew 8:21](#); [8:22](#); [14:12](#); [26:12](#); [27:7](#))

Caesar

Facts:

The term “Caesar” was the name or title used by many of the rulers of the Roman Empire. In the Bible, this name refers to three different Roman rulers.

- The first Roman ruler named Caesar was “Caesar Augustus,” who was ruling during the time that Jesus was born.
- About thirty years later, at the time when John the Baptist was preaching, Tiberius Caesar was the ruler of the Roman Empire.
- Tiberius Caesar was still ruling Rome when Jesus told the people to pay Caesar what was due him and to give to God what is due him.
- When Paul appealed to Caesar, this referred to the Roman emperor, Nero, who also had the title “Caesar.”
- When “Caesar” is used by itself as a title, it can also be translated as: “the Emperor” or “the Roman Ruler.”
- In names such as Caesar Augustus or Tiberius Caesar, “Caesar” can be spelled close to the way a national language spells it.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [king](#), Paul, Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 25:06
- Luke 02:01
- Luke 20:23-24
- Luke 23:02
- Mark 12:13-15
- Matthew 22:17
- Philippians 04:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2541

(Go back to: [Matthew 22:17](#); [22:21](#))

Caesarea, Caesarea Philippi

Facts:

Caesarea was an important city on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, about 39 km south of Mount Carmel. Caesarea Philippi was a city located in the northeastern part of Israel, near Mount Hermon.

- These cities were named for the Caesars who ruled the Roman empire.
- The coastal Caesarea became the capital city of the Roman province of Judea around the time of the birth of Jesus.
- The apostle Peter first preached to the Gentiles in Caesarea.
- Paul sailed from Caesarea to Tarsus and also passed through this city on two of his missionary journeys.
- Jesus and his disciples traveled in the region surrounding Caesarea Philippi in Syria. Both cities were named after Herod Philip.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Caesar](#), [Gentile](#), the sea, Carmel, Mount Hermon, Rome, Tarsus)

Bible References:

- Acts 09:30
- Acts 10:1-2
- Acts 25:01
- Acts 25:14
- Mark 08:27
- Matthew 16:13-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2542, G5376

(Go back to: [Matthew 16:13](#))

Caiaphas

Facts:

Caiaphas was the high priest of Israel during the time of John the Baptist and Jesus.

- Caiaphas played a major role in the trial and condemnation of Jesus.
- The high priests Annas and Caiaphas were at the trial of Peter and John when they were arrested after healing a crippled man.
- Caiaphas is the one who said that it was better for one man to die for the whole nation than for the whole nation to perish. God caused him to say this as a prophecy about how Jesus would die to save his people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Annas, [high priest](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 04:5-7
- John 18:12
- Luke 03:02
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Matthew 26:57-58

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2533

(**Go back to:** [Matthew 26:3](#); [26:57](#))

call, call out

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” usually mean to speak loudly, but the term “call” can also mean to name or summon a person. There are also some other meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- When God “calls” people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, “His name is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God has specifically chosen that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know you and have chosen you.”

(See also: [pray](#), [cry](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 01:09
- Ephesians 04:01
- Galatians 01:15
- Matthew 02:15
- Philippians 03:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G154, G363, G1458, G1528, G1941, G1951, G2028, G2046, G2564, G2821, G2822, G2840, G2919, G3004, G3106, G3333, G3343, G3603, G3686, G3687, G4316, G4341, G4377, G4779, G4867, G5455, G5537, G5581

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:16](#); [1:21](#); [1:23](#); [1:25](#); [2:7](#); [2:15](#); [2:23](#); [4:18](#); [4:21](#); [5:9](#); [5:19](#); [9:13](#); [10:1](#); [10:2](#); [10:25](#); [11:16](#); [13:55](#); [15:10](#); [15:32](#); [18:2](#); [18:32](#); [20:8](#); [20:25](#); [20:32](#); [21:13](#); [22:3](#); [22:14](#); [22:43](#); [22:45](#); [23:7](#); [23:8](#); [23:9](#); [23:10](#); [25:14](#); [26:3](#); [26:14](#); [26:36](#); [27:8](#); [27:16](#); [27:17](#); [27:22](#); [27:33](#); [27:47](#))

camel

Definition:

A camel is a large, four legged animal with one or two humps on its back. (See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

- In Bible times, the camel was the largest animal found in Israel and the surrounding regions.
- The camel was used mainly for carrying people and burdens.
- Some people groups also used camels for food but not the Israelites because God said that camels were unclean and were not to be eaten.
- Camels were valuable because they could move swiftly in the sand and could live without food and water for several weeks at a time.

(See also: [burden](#), [clean](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:21
- 2 Chronicles 09:1-2
- Exodus 09:1-4
- Mark 10:25
- Matthew 03:04
- Matthew 19:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1581, G2574

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:4](#); [19:24](#); [23:24](#))

Canaan, Canaanite

Facts:

Canaan was the son of Ham, who was one of Noah's sons. The Canaanites were the descendants of Canaan.

- The term "Canaan" or the "land of Canaan" also referred to an area of land between the Jordan River and the Mediterranean Sea. It extended south to the border of Egypt and north to the border of Syria.
- This land was inhabited by the Canaanites, as well as several other people groups.
- God promised to give the land of Canaan to Abraham and his descendants, the Israelites.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ham, Promised Land)

Bible References:

- Acts 13:19-20
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 09:18
- Genesis 10:19-20
- Genesis 13:07
- Genesis 47:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:05** He (Abram) took his wife, Sarai, together with all his servants and everything he owned and went to the land God showed him, the land of **Canaan**.
- **04:06** When Abram arrived in **Canaan** God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **04:09** "I give the land of **Canaan** to your descendants."
- **05:03** "I will give you and your descendants the land of **Canaan** as their possession and I will be their God forever."
- **07:08** After twenty years away from his home in **Canaan**, Jacob returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3667, H3669, G5478

(Go back to: [Matthew 15:22](#))

Capernaum

Facts:

Capernaum was a fishing village on the northwest shore of the Sea of Galilee.

- Jesus lived in Capernaum whenever he was teaching in Galilee.
- Several of his disciples were from Capernaum.
- Jesus also did many miracles in this city, including bringing a dead girl back to life.
- Capernaum was one of three cities that Jesus publicly rebuked because their people rejected him and did not believe his message. He warned them that God would punish them for their unbelief.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Galilee](#), [Sea of Galilee](#))

Bible References:

- John 02:12
- Luke 04:31
- Luke 07:1
- Mark 01:21
- Mark 02:02
- Matthew 04:12-13
- Matthew 17:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2584

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:13](#); [8:5](#); [11:23](#); [17:24](#))

cast out, driving out, throw out

Definition:

To “cast out” or “drive out” someone or something means to force that person or thing to go away.

- The term “cast” means the same thing as “throw.” To cast a net means to throw the net into the water.
- In a figurative sense, “cast out” or “cast away” someone can mean to reject that person and send him away.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include, “force out” or “send away” or “get rid of.”
- To “cast out demons” could be translated as “cause the demons to leave” or “drive the evil spirits out” or “expel the demons” or “command the demon to come out.”
- To “cast out” someone from a synagog or church could be translated as “banish them” or “put them out.”

(See also: [demon](#), [demon-possessed](#), [lots](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:17-19
- Mark 03:13-16
- Mark 09:29
- Matthew 07:21-23
- Matthew 09:32-34
- Matthew 12:24
- Matthew 17:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1272, H1644, H1920, H3423, H7971, H7993, G1544

(Go back to: [Matthew 7:4](#); [7:5](#); [7:22](#); [8:12](#); [8:16](#); [8:31](#); [9:25](#); [9:33](#); [9:34](#); [10:1](#); [10:8](#); [12:20](#); [12:24](#); [12:26](#); [12:27](#); [12:28](#); [15:17](#); [17:19](#); [21:12](#); [21:39](#); [22:13](#); [25:30](#))

centurion

Definition:

A centurion was a Roman army officer who had a group of 100 soldiers under his command.

- This could also be translated with a term that means, “leader of a hundred men” or “army leader” or “officer in charge of a hundred.”
- One Roman centurion came to Jesus to request healing for his servant.
- The centurion in charge of Jesus’ crucifixion was amazed when he witnessed how Jesus died.
- God sent a centurion to Peter so that Peter could explain to him the good news about Jesus.

(See also: Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 10:01
- Acts 27:01
- Acts 27:42-44
- Luke 07:04
- Luke 23:47
- Mark 15:39
- Matthew 08:07
- Matthew 27:54

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G1543, G2760

(Go back to: [Matthew 8:5](#); [8:8](#); [8:13](#); [27:54](#))

chaff

Definition:

Chaff is a dry protective covering of a grain seed. The chaff is not good for food so people separate it from the seed and throw it away.

- Often, the chaff is separated from the seed by throwing the heads of grain up into the air. The wind blows the chaff away and the seed falls on the ground. This process is called “winnowing.”
- In the Bible, this term is also used figuratively to refer to evil people and evil, worthless things.

(See also: [grain](#), [wheat](#), [winnow](#))

Bible References:

- Daniel 02:35
- Job 21:18
- Luke 03:17
- Matthew 03:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2842, H4671, H5784, H8401, G892

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:12](#))

children, child, offspring

Definition:

The term "child" (plural "children") refers to the offspring of a man and woman. The term is often used more generally to refer to anyone who is young in age and is not yet a fully grown adult. The term "offspring" is a general reference to the biological descendants of people or animals.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called "children."
- Often the term "children" is used to refer to a person's descendants.
- Often in the Bible, "offspring" has the same meaning as "children" or "descendants."
- The term "seed" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to offspring.
- The phrase "children of" can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
 - children of the light
 - children of obedience
 - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to the Church. For example, sometimes the New Testament refers to people who believe in Jesus as "children of God."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "children" could be translated as "descendants" when it is referring to a person's great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, "children of" could be translated as, "people who have the characteristics of" or "people who behave like."
- If possible, the phrase, "children of God" should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, "people who belong to God" or "God's spiritual children."
- When Jesus calls his disciples "children," this could also be translated as, "dear friends" or "my beloved disciples."
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as "children," this could also be translated as "dear fellow believers."
- The phrase, "children of the promise" could be translated as, "people who have received what God promised them."

(See also: descendant, [seed](#), [promise](#), [son](#), [spirit](#), [believe](#), [beloved](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:28
- 3 John 01:04
- Galatians 04:19
- Genesis 45:11
- Joshua 08:34-35
- Nehemiah 05:05
- Acts 17:29
- Exodus 13:11-13
- Genesis 24:07
- Isaiah 41:8-9
- Job 05:25
- Luke 03:7
- Matthew 12:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1323, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2138, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3208, H3211, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5209, H5271, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5764, H5768, H5953, H6185, H6363, H6529, H6631, H7908, H7909, H7921, G730, G815, G1025, G1064, G1081, G1085, G1471, G3439, G3515, G3516, G3808, G3812, G3813, G3816, G5040, G5041, G5042, G5043, G5044, G5206, G5207, G5388

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:8](#); [2:9](#); [2:11](#); [2:13](#); [2:14](#); [2:16](#); [2:18](#); [2:20](#); [2:21](#); [3:9](#); [7:11](#); [10:21](#); [11:16](#); [11:19](#); [11:25](#); [12:34](#); [14:21](#); [15:26](#); [15:38](#); [18:2](#); [18:3](#); [18:4](#); [18:5](#); [18:25](#); [19:13](#); [19:14](#); [19:29](#); [21:15](#); [21:16](#); [22:24](#); [22:25](#); [23:33](#); [23:37](#); [27:25](#))

chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect

Definition:

The term “the elect” literally means “chosen ones” or “chosen people” and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. “Chosen One” or “Chosen One of God” is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term “choose” means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be “chosen” means to be “selected” or “appointed” to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called “the chosen (ones)” or “the elect.”
- The term “chosen one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God’s chosen people.
- The phrase “the elect” is an older term that literally means “the chosen ones” or “the chosen people.” This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term “elect” is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for “chosen one(s).” More modern versions use “elect” only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as “chosen ones.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “elect” with a word or phrase that means “chosen ones” or “chosen people.” This could also be translated as “people whom God chose” or “the ones God appointed to be his people.”
- The phrase “who were chosen” could also be translated as “who were appointed” or “who were selected” or “whom God chose.”
- “I chose you” could be translated as “I appointed you” or “I selected you.”
- In reference to Jesus, “Chosen One” could also be translated as “God’s chosen One” or “God’s specially appointed Messiah” or “the One God appointed (to save people).”

(See also: [appoint](#), [Christ](#))

Bible References:

- 2 John 01:01
- Colossians 03:12
- Ephesians 01:3-4
- Isaiah 65:22-23
- Luke 18:07
- Matthew 24:19-22
- Romans 08:33

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H970, H972, H977, H1262, H1305, H4005, H6901, G138, G140, G1586, G1588, G1589, G1951, G3724, G4400, G4401, G4758, G4899, G5500

(Go back to: [Matthew 12:18](#); [22:14](#); [24:22](#); [24:24](#); [24:31](#))

Christ, Messiah

Facts:

The terms “Messiah” and “Christ” mean “Anointed One” and refer to Jesus, God’s Son.

- Both “Messiah” and “Christ” are used in the New Testament to refer to God’s Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning “anointed (one)” is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word “Christ” is often used as a title, as in “the Christ” and “Christ Jesus.”
- “Christ” also came to be used as part of his name, as in “Jesus Christ.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, “the Anointed One” or “God’s Anointed Savior.”
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like “Christ” or “Messiah.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, “Christ, the Anointed One.”
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of “Messiah” and “Christ” work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Son of God](#), [David](#), [Jesus](#), [anoint](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 05:1-3
- Acts 02:35
- Acts 05:40-42
- John 01:40-42
- John 03:27-28
- John 04:25
- Luke 02:10-12
- Matthew 01:16

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:07** The **Messiah** was God’s Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- **17:08** As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.
- **21:01** From the very beginning, God planned to send the **Messiah**.
- **21:04** God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David’s own descendants.
- **21:05** The **Messiah** would start the New Covenant.
- **21:06** God’s prophets also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.
- **21:09** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the **Messiah** would be born from a virgin.
- **43:07** “But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave.’”

- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and **Messiah!**"
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus **Christ** so that God will forgive your sins."
- **46:06** Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4899, G3323, G5547

(Go back to: [Introduction to the Gospel of Matthew](#); [Matthew 1:1](#); [1:16](#); [1:17](#); [1:18](#); [2:4](#); [11:2](#); [16:16](#); [16:20](#); [16:21](#); [Notes](#); [22:42](#); [23:10](#); [24:5](#); [24:23](#); [26:63](#); [26:68](#); [27:17](#); [27:22](#))

church, Church

Definition:

In the New Testament, the term “church” refers to a local group of believers in Jesus who regularly met together to pray and hear God’s word preached. The term “the Church” often refers to all Christians.

- This term literally refers to a “called out” assembly or congregation of people who meet together for a special purpose.
- When this term is used to refer to all believers everywhere in the whole body of Christ, some Bible translations capitalize the first letter (“Church”) to distinguish it from the local church.
- Often the believers in a particular city would meet together in someone’s home. These local churches were given the name of the city such as the “church at Ephesus.”
- In the Bible, “church” does not refer to a building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “church” could be translated as a “gathering together” or “assembly” or “congregation” or “ones who meet together.”
- The word or phrase that is used to translate this term should also be able to refer to all believers, not just one small group.
- Make sure that the translation of “church” does not just refer to a building.
- The term used to translate “assembly” in the Old Testament could also be used to translate this term.
- Also consider how it is translated in a local or national Bible translation. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#).)

(See also: [assembly](#), [believe](#), Christian)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:12
- 1 Thessalonians 02:14
- 1 Timothy 03:05
- Acts 09:31
- Acts 14:23
- Acts 15:41
- Colossians 04:15
- Ephesians 05:23
- Matthew 16:18
- Philippians 04:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **43:12** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were baptized and became part of the **church** at Jerusalem.
- **46:09** Most of the people in Antioch were not Jews, but for the first time, very many of them also became believers. Barnabas and Saul went there to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the **church**.
- **46:10** So the **church** in Antioch prayed for Barnabas and Saul and placed their hands on them. Then they sent them off to preach the good news of Jesus in many other places.
- **47:13** The good news of Jesus kept spreading, and the **Church** kept growing.
- **50:01** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the good news about Jesus the Messiah. The **Church** has been growing.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G1577

(Go back to: [Matthew 16:18](#); [18:17](#))

clean, wash

Definition:

The term "clean" generally refers either to removing dirt or stains from something or to not having any dirt or stain in the first place. The term "wash" refers specifically to action of removing dirt or stains from something.

- "Cleanse" is the process of making something "clean." It could also be translated as "wash" or "purify."
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually "clean" and which ones were "unclean." Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term "clean" means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared "clean" again.
- Sometimes "clean" is used figuratively to refer to moral purity, meaning to be "clean" from sin.

In the Bible, the term "unclean" is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were "clean" and which ones were "unclean." The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be "unclean" until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something "unclean," they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God's commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God's service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an "unclean spirit" refers to an evil spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for "clean" or "pure" (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, "ritually clean" or "acceptable to God."
- "Cleanse" could be translated by "wash" or "purify."
- Make sure that the words used for "clean" and "cleanse" can also be understood in a figurative sense.
- The term "unclean" could also be translated as "not clean" or "unfit in God's eyes" or "physically unclean" or "defiled."
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, "unclean" could be translated as "evil" or "defiled."
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: [defile](#), [demon](#), [holy](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 07:02
- Genesis 07:08
- Deuteronomy 12:15
- Psalms 051:07
- Proverbs 20:30
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Matthew 23:27
- Luke 05:13
- Acts 08:07
- Acts 10:27-29

- Colossians 03:05
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- James 04:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2548, H2834, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H2930, H2931, H2932, H3001, H3722, H5079, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6172, H6565, H6663, H6945, H7137, H8552, H8562, G167, G169, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2839, G2840, G3394, G3689

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:8](#); [8:2](#); [8:3](#); [10:1](#); [10:8](#); [11:5](#); [12:43](#); [23:25](#); [23:26](#); [27:59](#))

clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments

Definition:

When used figuratively in the Bible, “clothed with” means to be endowed or equipped with something. To “clothe” oneself with something means to seek to have a certain character quality.

- In the same way that clothing is external to your body and is visible to all, when you are “clothed” with a certain character quality, others can readily see it. To “clothe yourself with kindness” means to let your actions be so characterized by kindness that it is easily seen by everyone.
- To be “clothed with power from on high” means to have power given to you.
- This term is also used to express negative experiences, such as “clothed with shame” or “clothed with terror.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the literal figure of speech, “clothe yourselves with.” Another way to translate this could be “put on” if this refers to putting on clothes.
- If that does not give the correct meaning, other ways to translate “clothed with” could be “showing” or “manifesting” or “filled with” or “having the quality of.”
- The term “clothe yourself with” could also be translated as “cover yourself with” or “behave in a way that shows.”

Bible References:

- Luke 24:49

Word Data:

- Strong's: H899, H3680, H3736, H3830, H3847, H3848, H4055, H4374, H5497, H8008, H8071, H8516, G294, G1463, G1562, G1737, G1742, G1746, G1902, G2066, G2224, G2439, G2440, G4016, G4749, G5509

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:4](#); [5:40](#); [6:25](#); [6:28](#); [6:29](#); [7:15](#); [9:16](#); [9:20](#); [9:21](#); [14:36](#); [17:2](#); [21:7](#); [21:8](#); [22:11](#); [22:12](#); [24:18](#); [25:36](#); [25:38](#); [25:43](#); [26:65](#); [27:31](#); [27:35](#); [28:3](#))

comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted

Definition:

The terms “comfort” and “comforter” refer to helping someone who is suffering physical or emotional pain.

- A person who comforts someone is called a “comforter.”
- In the Old Testament, the term “comfort” is used to describe how God is kind and loving to his people and helps them when they are suffering.
- In the New Testament, it says that God will comfort his people through the Holy Spirit. Those who receive the comfort are then enabled to give the same comfort to others who are suffering.
- The expression “comforter of Israel” referred to the Messiah who would come to rescue his people.
- Jesus referred to the Holy Spirit as the “Comforter” who helps believers in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “comfort” could also be translated as, “ease the pain of” or “help (someone) overcome grief” or “encourage” or “console.”
- A phrase such as “our comfort” could be translated as “our encouragement” or “our consoling of (someone)” or “our help in times of grieving.”
- The term “comforter” could be translated as “person who comforts” or “someone who helps ease pain” or “person who encourages.”
- When the Holy Spirit is called “the Comforter” this could also be translated as “the Encourager” or “the Helper” or “the One who helps and guides.”
- The phrase “comforter of Israel” could be translated as, “the Messiah, who comforts Israel.”
- An expression like, “they have no comforter” could also be translated as, “No one has comforted them” or “There is no one to encourage or help them.”

(See also: [encourage](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:8-11
- 2 Corinthians 01:04
- 2 Samuel 10:1-3
- Acts 20:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2505, H5150, H5162, H5165, H5564, H8575, G302, G3870, G3874, G3875, G3888, G3890, G3931

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:18](#); [5:4](#))

command, commandment

Definition:

The term “command” means to order someone to do something. The term “commandment” refers to the thing that a person is commanded to do.

- The term “commandment” sometimes refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See decree, statute, [law](#), Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Luke 01:06
- Matthew 01:24
- Matthew 22:38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 01:17-19
- Romans 07:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H560, H565, H1296, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2941, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4662, H4687, H4929, H4931, H4941, H5057, H5713, H5749, H6213, H6310, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7761, H7970, H8269, G1263, G1291, G1296, G1297, G1299, G1690, G1778, G1781, G1785, G2003, G2004, G2008, G2036, G2753, G3056, G3726, G3852, G3853, G4367, G4483, G4487, G5506

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:24](#); [4:6](#); [5:19](#); [8:4](#); [8:18](#); [9:30](#); [10:5](#); [11:1](#); [12:16](#); [14:9](#); [14:19](#); [14:28](#); [15:3](#); [15:4](#); [15:9](#); [15:35](#); [16:20](#); [17:9](#); [18:25](#); [19:7](#); [19:17](#); [21:6](#); [22:36](#); [22:38](#); [22:40](#); [27:58](#); [27:64](#); [28:20](#))

commit, committed, commitment

Definition:

The terms “commit” and “commitment” refers to making a decision or promising to do something.

- A person who promises to do something is also described as being “committed” to doing it.
- To “commit” to someone a certain task means to assign that task to that person. For example, in 2 Corinthians Paul says that God has “committed” (or “given”) to us the ministry of helping people be reconciled to God.
- The terms “commit” and “committed” also often refer to doing a certain wrong action such as “commit a sin” or “commit adultery” or “commit murder.”
- The expression “committed to him the task” could also be translated as “gave him the task” or “entrusted to him the task” or “assigned the task to him.”
- The term “commitment” could be translated by, “task that was given” or “promise that was made.”

(See also: [adultery](#), [faithful](#), [promise](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 28:07
- 1 Peter 02:21-23
- Jeremiah 02:12-13
- Matthew 13:41
- Psalm 058:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H817, H1361, H1497, H1500, H1540, H1556, H2181, H2388, H2398, H2399, H2403, H4560, H4603, H5003, H5753, H5766, H5771, H6213, H6466, H7683, H7760, H7847, G264, G2038, G2716, G3429, G3431, G3860, G3872, G3908, G4102, G4160, G4203

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:32](#); [13:41](#))

compassion, compassionate

Definition:

The term "compassion" refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A "compassionate" person cares about other people and helps them.

- The word "compassion" refers to caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
- The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways of translating "compassion" could include, "deep caring" or "pity" or "helpful mercy."
- The term "compassionate" could also be translated as, "caring and helpful" or "deeply loving and merciful."

Bible References:

- Daniel 01:8-10
- Hosea 13:14
- James 05:9-11
- Jonah 04:1-3
- Mark 01:41
- Romans 09:14-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2550, H7349, H7355, H7356, G1653, G3356, G3627, G4697, G4834, G4835

(Go back to: [Matthew 9:36](#); [14:14](#); [15:32](#); [18:27](#); [20:34](#))

conceive, conception

Definition:

The terms “conceive” and “conception” usually refer to becoming pregnant with a child. It can also be used for animals that become pregnant.

- The phrase “conceive a child” could be translated as, “become pregnant” or some other term that is an acceptable way of referring to this.
- The related term “conception” could be translated as, “beginning of a pregnancy” or “moment of becoming pregnant.”
- These terms can also refer to creating something or thinking of something, such as an idea, a plan, or a task. Ways to translate this could include, “think of” or “plan” or “create,” depending on the context.
- Sometimes this term can be used figuratively as in, “when sin is conceived” which means “when sin is first thought of” or “at the very start of a sin” or “when a sin first begins.”

(See also: [create](#), [womb](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:1-4
- Hosea 02:4-5
- Job 15:35
- Luke 01:24-25
- Luke 02:21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2029, H2030, H2032, H2232, H2254, H2803, H3179, G1080, G1722, G2845, G4815

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:18](#); [1:20](#); [1:23](#))

condemn, condemned, condemnation

Definition:

The terms “condemn” and “condemnation” refer to judging someone for doing something wrong.

- Often the word “condemn” includes punishing that person for what they did wrong.
- Sometimes “condemn” means to falsely accuse someone or to judge someone harshly.
- The term “condemnation” refers to the act of condemning or accusing someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “harshly judge” or “criticize falsely.”
- The phrase “condemn him” could be translated as, “judge that he is guilty” or “state that he must be punished for his sin.”
- The term “condemnation” could be translated as, “harsh judging” or “declaring to be guilty” or “punishment of guilt.”

(See also: [judge](#), [punish](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:20
- Job 09:29
- John 05:24
- Luke 06:37
- Matthew 12:07
- Proverbs 17:15-16
- Psalms 034:22
- Romans 05:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6064, H7034, H7561, H8199, G176, G843, G2607, G2613, G2631, G2632, G2633, G2917, G2919, G2920, G5272, G6048

(Go back to: [Matthew 12:7](#); [12:37](#); [12:41](#); [12:42](#); [20:18](#); [27:3](#))

confess, confession

Definition:

To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A “confession” is a statement or admission that something is true.

- The term “confess” can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
- The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
- James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
- Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confess” could include, “admit” or “testify” or “declare” or “acknowledge” or “affirm.”
- Different ways to translate “confession” could be, “declaration” or “testimony” or “statement about what we believe” or “admitting sin.”

(See also: [faith](#), [testimony](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:8-10
- 2 John 01:7-8
- James 05:16
- Leviticus 05:5-6
- Matthew 03:4-6
- Nehemiah 01:6-7
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Psalms 038:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3034, H8426, G1843, G3670, G3671

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:6](#); [10:32](#))

consume, devour

Definition:

The term “consume” literally means to use up something. It has several figurative meanings.

- In the Bible, the word “consume” often refers to destroying things or people.
- A fire is said to consume things, which means it destroys them by burning them up.
- God is described as a “consuming fire,” which is a description of his anger against sin. His anger results in terrible punishment for sinners who do not repent.
- To consume food means to eat or drink something.
- The phrase, “consume the land” could be translated as “destroy the land.”

Translation Suggestions

- In the context of consuming the land or people, this term could be translated as “destroy.”
- When fire is referred to, “consume” could be translated as “burn up.”
- The burning bush that Moses saw “was not consumed” which could be translated as, “did not get burned up” or “did not burn up.”
- When referring to eating, “consume” could be translated as “eat” or “devour.”
- If someone’s strength is “consumed,” it means his strength is “used up” or “gone.”
- The expression, “God is a consuming fire” could be translated as, “God is like a fire that burns things up” or “God is angry against sin and will destroy sinners like a fire.”

(See also: [devour](#), [wrath](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:38-40
- Deuteronomy 07:16
- Jeremiah 03:23-25
- Job 07:09
- Numbers 11:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H398, H402, H1086, H1104, H1197, H2628, H3615, H3617, H3857, H4529, H5595, H8046, H8552, G355, G2618, G2654, G2719, G5315

(Go back to: [Matthew 13:40](#))

cornerstone

Definition:

The term “cornerstone” refers to a large stone that has been specially cut and placed in the corner of the foundation of a building.

- All the other stones of the building are measured and placed in relation to the cornerstone.
- It is very important for the strength and stability of the whole structure.
- In the New Testament, the Assembly of believers is metaphorically compared to a building which has Jesus Christ as its “cornerstone.”
- In the same way that the cornerstone of a building supports and determines the position of the whole building, so Jesus Christ is the cornerstone on which the Assembly of believers is founded and supported.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “cornerstone” could also be translated as “main building stone” or “foundation stone.”
- Consider whether the target language has a term for a part of a building’s foundation that is the main support. If so, this term could be used.
- Another way to translate this would be, “a foundation stone used for the corner of a building.”
- It is important to keep the fact that this is a large stone, used as a solid and secure building material. If stones are not used for constructing buildings, there may be another word that could be used that means “large stone” (such as “boulder”) but it should also have the idea of being well-formed and made to fit.

Bible References:

- Acts 04:11
- Ephesians 02:20
- Matthew 21:42
- Psalms 118:22

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H68, H6438, H7218, G204, G1137, G2776, G3037

(Go back to: [Matthew 21:42](#))

corrupt witness, false report, false testimony, false witness

Definition:

The terms “false witness” and “corrupt witness” refer to a person who says untrue things about a person or an event, usually in a formal setting such as a court.

- A “false testimony” or “false report” is the actual lie that is told.
- To “bear false witness” means to lie or give a false report about something.
- The Bible gives several accounts in which false witnesses were hired to lie about someone in order to have that person punished or killed.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bear false witness” or “give a false testimony” could be translated as “testify falsely” or “give a false report about someone” or “speak falsely against someone” or “lie.”
- When “false witness” refers to a person, it could be translated as “person who lies” or “one who testifies falsely” or “someone who says things that are not true.”

(See also: [testimony](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:19
- Exodus 20:16
- Matthew 15:18-20
- Matthew 19:18-19
- Proverbs 14:5-6
- Psalms 027:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H6030, H7650, H8267, G1965, G3144, G5571, G5575, G5576, G5577

(Go back to: [Matthew 15:19](#); [19:18](#); [26:60](#))

corrupt, corrupted, corruption, incorruptibility, depraved

Definition:

The terms “corrupt” and “corruption” refer to a state of affairs in which people have become ruined, immoral, or dishonest.

- The term “corrupt” literally means to be “bent” or “broken” morally.
- A person who is corrupt has turned away from truth and is doing things that are dishonest or immoral.
- To corrupt someone means to influence that person to do dishonest and immoral things.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “corrupt” could be translated as to “influence to do evil” or to “cause to be immoral.”
- A corrupt person could be described as a person “who has become immoral” or “who practices evil.”
- This term could also be translated as “bad” or “immoral” or “evil.”
- The term “corruption” could be translated as “the practice of evil” or “evil” or “immorality.”

(See also: [evil](#))

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 20:42-44
- Galatians 06:6-8
- Genesis 06:12
- Matthew 12:33-35
- Psalm 014:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2610, H3891, H4889, H7843, H7844, G861, G1311, G2704, G5351, G5356

(Go back to: [Matthew 7:17](#); [7:18](#); [12:33](#); [13:48](#))

council

Definition:

A council is a group of people who meet to discuss, give advice, and make decisions about important matters.

- A council is usually organized in an official and somewhat permanent way for a specific purpose, such as making decisions about legal matters.
- The “Jewish Council” in Jerusalem, also known as the “Sanhedrin,” had 70 members, which included Jewish leaders such as chief priests, elders, scribes, Pharisees, and Sadducees who met regularly to decide matters of Jewish law. It was this council of religious leaders who put Jesus on trial and decided that he should be killed.
- There were also smaller Jewish councils in other cities.
- The apostle Paul was brought before a Roman council when he was arrested for teaching the gospel.
- Depending on the context, the word “council” could also be translated as “legal assembly” or “political assembly.”
- To be “in council” means to be in a special meeting to decide something.
- Note that this is a different word than “counsel,” which means, “wise advice.”

(See also: [assembly](#), [counsel](#), [Pharisee](#), [law](#), [priest](#), [Sadducee](#), [scribe](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:57-58
- Acts 24:20
- John 03:02
- Luke 22:68
- Mark 13:09
- Matthew 05:22
- Matthew 26:59

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4186, H5475, G1010, G4824, G4892

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:22](#); [10:17](#); [26:59](#))

courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, discouragement

Facts:

The term “courage” refers to boldly facing or doing something that is difficult, frightening, or dangerous.

- The term, “courageous” describes someone who shows courage, who does the right thing even when feeling afraid or pressured to give up.
- A person shows courage when he faces emotional or physical pain with strength and perseverance.
- The expression “take courage” means, “don’t be afraid” or “be assured that things will turn out well.”
- When Joshua was preparing to go into the dangerous land of Canaan, Moses exhorted him to be “strong and courageous.”
- The term “courageous” could also be translated as “brave” or “unafraid” or “bold.”
- Depending on the context, to “have courage” could also be translated as, “be emotionally strong” or “be confident” or “stand firm.”
- To “speak with courage” could be translated as, “speak boldly” or “speak without being afraid” or “speak confidently.”

The terms “encourage” and “encouragement” refer to saying and doing things to cause someone to have comfort, hope, confidence, and courage.

- A similar term is “exhort,” which means to urge someone to reject an activity that is wrong and to instead do things that are good and right.
- The apostle Paul and other New Testament writers taught Christians to encourage one another to love and serve others.

The term “discourage” refers to saying and doing things that cause people to lose hope, confidence, and courage and so to have less desire to keep working hard to do what they know they should do.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “encourage” could include “urge” or “comfort” or “say kind things” or “help and support.”
- The phrase “give words of encouragement” means “say things that cause other people to feel loved, accepted, and empowered.”

(See also: confidence, exhort, [fear](#), [strength](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 01:37-38
- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 1 Chronicles 17:25
- Matthew 09:20-22
- 1 Corinthians 14:1-4
- 2 Corinthians 07:13
- Acts 05:12-13
- Acts 16:40
- Hebrews 03:12-13
- Hebrews 13:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H533, H553, H1368, H2388, H2388, H2428, H3820, H3824, H7307, G2114, G2115, G2174, G2292, G2293, G2294, G3870, G3874, G3954, G4389, G4837, G5111

(Go back to: [Matthew 9:2](#); [9:22](#); [14:27](#))

covenant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "covenant" refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term "new covenant" refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God's "new covenant" was explained in the part of the Bible called the "New Testament."
- This new covenant is in contrast to the "old" or "former" covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people's sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "binding agreement" or "formal commitment" or "pledge" or "contract."
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as "promise" or "pledge."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term "new covenant" could be translated as "new formal agreement" or "new pact" or "new contract."
- The word "new" in these expressions has the meaning of "fresh" or "new kind of" or "another."

(See also: [covenant](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 09:12
- Genesis 17:07
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26
- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12

- Mark 14:24
- Luke 01:73
- Luke 22:20
- Acts 07:08
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 03:06
- Galatians 03:17-18
- Hebrews 12:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:09** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **05:04** "I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac."
- **06:04** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **07:10** The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
- **13:04** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:05** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it."
- **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H2319, H3772, G802, G1242, G4934

(Go back to: [Matthew 26:28](#))

create, created, creation, creator

Definition:

The term “create” means to make something or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a “creation.” God is called the “Creator” because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

- When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
- When human beings “create” something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
- Sometimes “create” is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace, or creating a pure heart in someone.
- The term “creation” can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word “creation” refers more specifically to just the people in the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world “out of nothing” to make sure this meaning is clear.
- The phrase, “since the creation of the world” means, “since the time when God created the world.”
- A similar phrase, “at the beginning of creation” could be translated as, “when God created the world at the beginning of time,” or “when the world was first created.”
- To preach the good news to “all creation” means to preach the good news to “all people everywhere on earth.”
- The phrase “Let all creation rejoice” means “Let everything that God created rejoice.”
- Depending on the context, “create” could be translated as “make” or “cause to be” or “make out of nothing.”
- The term “the Creator” could be translated as “the One who created everything” or “God, who made the whole world.”
- Phrases like “your Creator” could be translated as “God, who created you.”

(See also: [God](#), [good news](#), [world](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 11:9-10
- 1 Peter 04:17-19
- Colossians 01:15
- Galatians 06:15
- Genesis 01:01
- Genesis 14:19-20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3335, H4639, H6213, H6385, H7069, G2041, G2602, G2675, G2936, G2937, G2939, G4160, G5480

(Go back to: [Matthew 13:35](#); [25:34](#))

cross

Definition:

In Bible times, a cross was an upright wooden post stuck into the ground, with a horizontal wooden beam attached to it near the top.

- During the time of the Roman Empire, the Roman government would execute criminals by tying or nailing them to a cross and leaving them there to die.
- Jesus was falsely accused of crimes he did not commit and the Romans put him to death on a cross.
- Note that this is a completely different word from the verb “cross” that means to go over to the other side of something, such as a river or lake.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using a term in the target language that refers to the shape of a cross.
- Consider describing the cross as something on which people were killed, using phrases such as “execution post” or “tree of death.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [crucify](#), Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 01:17
- Colossians 02:15
- Galatians 06:12
- John 19:18
- Luke 09:23
- Luke 23:26
- Matthew 10:38
- Philippians 02:08

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **40:01** After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to crucify him. They made him carry the **cross** on which he would die.
- **40:02** The soldiers brought Jesus to a place called “the Skull” and nailed his arms and feet to the **cross**.
- **40:05** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd mocked Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the **cross** and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the **cross**, he received your punishment.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the **cross** instead of you, and that God raised him to life again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G4716

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:38](#); [16:24](#); [27:32](#); [27:40](#); [27:42](#))

crown, crowned

Definition:

A crown is a decorative, circular headpiece worn on the head of rulers such as kings and queens. The term to “crown” means to put a crown on someone’s head; figuratively it means, to “honor.”

- Crowns are usually made of gold or silver, and are embedded with precious gems such as emeralds and rubies.
- A crown was intended to be a symbol of a king’s power and wealth.
- By contrast, the crown made of thorn branches that the Roman soldiers placed on Jesus’ head was meant to mock him and hurt him.
- In ancient times, winners of athletic contests would be awarded a crown made out of olive branches. The apostle Paul mentions this crown in his second letter to Timothy.
- Used figuratively, to “crown” means to honor someone. We honor God by obeying him and praising him to others. This is like putting a crown on him and acknowledging that he is King.
- Pauls calls fellow believers his “joy and crown.” In this expression, “crown” is used figuratively to mean that Paul has been greatly blessed and honored by how these believers have remained faithful in serving God.
- When used figuratively, “crown” could be translated as “prize” or “honor” or “reward.”
- The figurative use of to “crown” could be translated as to “honor” or to “decorate.”
- If a person is “crowned” this could be translated as “a crown was put on his head.”
- The expression, “he was crowned with glory and honor” could be translated as, “glory and honor were bestowed on him” or “he was given glory and honor” or “he was endowed with glory and honor.”

(See also: [glory](#), [king](#), [olive](#))

Bible References:

- John 19:03
- Lamentations 05:16
- Matthew 27:29
- Philippians 04:01
- Psalms 021:03
- Revelation 03:11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3803, H3804, H5145, H5849, H5850, H6936, G1238, G4735, G4737

(Go back to: [Matthew 27:29](#))

crucify, crucified

Definition:

The term “crucify” means to execute someone by attaching him to a cross and leaving him there to suffer and die in great pain.

- The victim was either tied to the cross or nailed to it. Crucified people died from blood loss or from suffocation.
- The ancient Roman Empire frequently used this method of execution to punish and kill people who were terrible criminals or who had rebelled against the authority of their government.
- The Jewish religious leaders asked the Roman governor to order his soldiers to crucify Jesus. The soldiers nailed Jesus to a cross. He suffered there for six hours, and then died.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “crucify” could be translated as, “kill on a cross” or “execute by nailing to a cross.”

(See also: [cross](#), Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:23
- Galatians 02:20-21
- Luke 23:20-22
- Luke 23:34
- Matthew 20:17-19
- Matthew 27:23-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:11** But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, “**Crucify** him (Jesus)!”
- **39:12** Pilate became afraid that the crowd would begin to riot, so he ordered his soldiers to **crucify** Jesus. played a major role in the crucifixion of Jesus Christ.
- **40:01** After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to **crucify** him. They made him carry the cross on which he would die.
- **40:04** Jesus was **crucified** between two robbers.
- **43:06** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know. But you **crucified** him!”
- **43:09** “You **crucified** this man, Jesus.”
- **44:08** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You **crucified** Jesus, but God raised him to life again!”

Word Data:

- Strong's: G388, G4362, G4717, G4957

(Go back to: [Matthew 20:19](#); [23:34](#); [26:2](#); [27:22](#); [27:23](#); [27:26](#); [27:31](#); [27:35](#); [27:38](#); [27:44](#); [28:5](#))

cry, cry out, outcry

Definition:

The terms “cry” or “cry out” usually mean to say something loudly or urgently. Someone can “cry out” in pain, distress, anger, or fear, often with the intent of asking for help.

- The phrase “cry out” can also mean to shout or to call out with the intent of asking for help.
- This term could also be translated as “exclaim loudly” or “urgently ask for help,” depending on the context.
- An expression such as, “I cry out to you” could be translated as, “I call to you for help” or “I urgently ask you for help.”

(See also: [call](#), plead)

Bible References:

- Job 27:09
- Mark 05:5-6
- Mark 06:48-50
- Psalm 022:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1058, H2199, H2201, H6030, H6463, H6670, H6682, H6817, H6818, H6873, H6963, H7121, H7123, H7321, H7440, H7442, H7723, H7737, H7768, H7771, H7775, H8663, G310, G349, G863, G994, G995, G1916, G2019, G2799, G2805, G2896, G2905, G2906, G2929, G4377, G5455

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:18](#); [3:3](#); [8:29](#); [9:27](#); [12:19](#); [14:26](#); [14:30](#); [15:22](#); [15:23](#); [20:30](#); [20:31](#); [21:9](#); [21:15](#); [25:6](#); [26:75](#); [27:23](#); [27:46](#); [27:50](#))

cure, cured, heal, healed, healing, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy

Definition:

The terms “heal” and “cure” both mean to cause a sick, wounded, or disabled person to be healthy again.

- A person who is “healed” or “cured” has been “made well” or “made healthy.”
- Healing can happen naturally since God gave our bodies the ability to recover from many kinds of wounds and diseases. This kind of healing usually happens slowly.
- However, certain conditions, such as being blind or paralyzed, and certain serious diseases, such as leprosy, however do not heal on their own. When people are healed of these things, it is a miracle that usually happens suddenly.
- For example, Jesus healed many people who were blind or lame or diseased, and they became well right away.
- The apostles also healed people miraculously, such as when Peter caused a crippled man to immediately be able to walk.

(See also: [miracle](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 05:16
- Acts 08:06
- Luke 05:13
- Luke 06:19
- Luke 08:43
- Matthew 04:23-25
- Matthew 09:35
- Matthew 13:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:14** One of the miracles happened to Naaman, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease. He had heard of Elisha so he went and asked Elisha to **heal** him.
- **21:10** He (Isaiah) also predicted that the Messiah would **heal** sick people and those who could not hear, see, speak, or walk.
- **26:06** Jesus continued saying, “And during the time of the prophet Elisha, there were many people in Israel with skin diseases. But Elisha did not **heal** any of them. He only **healed** the skin disease of Naaman, a commander of Israel’s enemies.”
- **26:08** They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and Jesus **healed** them.
- **32:14** She had heard that Jesus had **healed** many sick people and thought, “I’m sure that if I can just touch Jesus’ clothes, then I will be **healed**, too!”
- **44:03** Immediately, God **healed** the lame man, and he began to walk and jump around, and to praise God.
- **44:08** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you **healed** by the power of Jesus the Messiah.”
- **49:02** Jesus did many miracles that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, **healed** many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H724, H1369, H1455, H2280, H2421, H2896, H3545, H4832, H4974, H7495, H7499, H7500, H7725, H7965, H8549, H8585, H8644, H622, G1295, G1743, G2322, G2323, G2386, G2390, G2392, G2511, G3647, G4982, G5198, G5199

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:23](#); [4:24](#); [8:7](#); [8:8](#); [8:13](#); [8:16](#); [9:21](#); [9:22](#); [9:35](#); [10:1](#); [10:8](#); [12:10](#); [12:15](#); [12:22](#); [13:15](#); [14:14](#); [14:36](#); [15:28](#); [15:30](#); [17:16](#); [17:18](#); [19:2](#); [21:14](#))

curse, cursed, cursing

Definition:

The term "curse" means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as "cause bad things to happen to" or "declare that something bad will happen to" or "swear to cause evil things to happen to."
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, "punish by allowing bad things to happen."
- The term "cursed" when used to describe people could be translated as, "(this person) will experience much trouble."
- The phrase "cursed be" could be translated as, "May (this person) experience great difficulties."
- The phrase, "Cursed is the ground" could be translated as, "The soil will not be very fertile."
- However, if the target language has the phrase "cursed be" and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Galatians 03:10
- Galatians 03:14
- Genesis 03:14
- Genesis 03:17
- James 03:10
- Numbers 22:06
- Psalms 109:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:09** God said to the snake, "You are **cursed!**"
- **02:11** "Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food."
- **04:04** "I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you."
- **39:07** Then Peter vowed, saying, "May God **curse** me if I know this man!"
- **50:16** Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H779, H1288, H2763, H2764, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, H8381, G331, G332, G685, G1944, G2551, G2652, G2653, G2671, G2672, G6035

(Go back to: [Matthew 25:41; 26:74](#))

curtain

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “curtain” refers to a very thick, heavy piece of material used in the making of the tabernacle and the temple.

- The tabernacle was built using four layers of curtains for the top and sides. These curtain coverings were made of cloth or animal skins.
- Cloth curtains were also used to form a wall surrounding the tabernacle courtyard. These curtains were made out of “linen” which was a kind of cloth made out of the flax plant.
- In both the tabernacle and temple building, a thick cloth curtain hung between the holy place and the most holy place. It was this curtain that was miraculously torn into two parts when Jesus died.

Translation Suggestions:

- Since modern-day curtains are very different from the curtains used in the Bible, it may be more clear to use a different word or to add words that describe the curtains.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “curtain covering” or “covering” or “piece of thick cloth” or “animal skin covering” or “hanging piece of cloth.”

(See also: [holy place](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- Hebrews 10:20
- Leviticus 04:17
- Luke 23:45
- Matthew 27:51
- Numbers 04:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1852, H3407, H4539, H6532, H7050, G2665

(Go back to: [Matthew 27:51](#))

cut off

Definition:

The expression “be cut off” is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God’s commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God’s people and from his presence.
- God also said he would “cut off” or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression “cut off” is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “be cut off” could be translated as “be banished” or “be sent away” or “be separated from” or “be killed” or “be destroyed.”
- Depending on the context, to “cut off” could be translated as, to “destroy” or to “send away” or to “separate from” or to “destroy.”
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as “were stopped” or “were caused to stop flowing” or “were divided.”
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:14
- Judges 21:06
- Proverbs 23:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H1219, H1438, H1494, H1504, H1629, H1820, H2686, H3582, H3772, H5243, H5352, H6789, H7088, H7096, H7112, H7113, G609, G851, G1581

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:30](#); [7:19](#); [18:8](#))

Cyrene

Facts:

Cyrene was a Greek city on the north coast of Africa on the Mediterranean Sea, directly south of the island of Crete.

- In New Testament times, both Jews and Christians lived in Cyrene.
- Cyrene is probably most well-known in the Bible as the home city of a man named Simon who carried the cross of Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Crete)

Bible References:

- Acts 11:19-21
- Matthew 27:32-34

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2956, G2957

(Go back to: [Matthew 27:32](#))

Daniel

Facts:

Daniel was an Israelite prophet who as a young man was taken captive by the Babylonian king Nebuchadnezzar around 600 BC.

- This was during the time that many other Israelites from Judah were held captive in Babylon for 70 years.
- Daniel was given the Babylonian name Belteshazzar.
- Daniel was an honorable and righteous young man who obeyed God.
- God enabled Daniel to interpret several dreams or visions for the Babylonian kings.
- Because of this ability and because of his honorable character, Daniel was given a high leadership position in the Babylonian empire.
- Many years later, Daniels enemies tricked the Babylonian king Darius into making a law forbidding the worship of anyone except the king. Daniel continued to pray to God, so he was arrested and thrown into a den of lions. But God rescued him and he was not harmed at all.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), Nebuchadnezzar)

Bible References:

- Daniel 01:6-7
- Daniel 05:29
- Daniel 07:28
- Ezekiel 14:12-14
- Matthew 24:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1840, H1841, G1158

(Go back to: [Matthew 24:15](#))

darkness

Definition:

The term “darkness” literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, “darkness” means “impurity” or “evil” or “spiritual blindness.”
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression “dominion of darkness” refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term “darkness” can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- People who do not know God are said to be “living in darkness,” which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as “outer darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, “darkness of night” (as opposed to “light of day”) or “not seeing anything, like at night” or “evil, like a dark place”.

(See also: [corrupt](#), dominion, [kingdom](#), [light](#), redeem, [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:06
- 1 John 02:08
- 1 Thessalonians 05:05
- 2 Samuel 22:12
- Colossians 01:13
- Isaiah 05:30
- Jeremiah 13:16
- Joshua 24:7
- Matthew 08:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H652, H653, H2816, H2821, H2822, H2825, H3990, H3991, H4285, H5890, H6205, G2217, G4652, G4653, G4655, G4656

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:16](#); [6:23](#); [8:12](#); [10:27](#); [22:13](#); [24:29](#); [25:30](#); [27:45](#))

daughter of Zion

Definition:

“Daughter of Zion” is a figurative way of referring to the people of Israel. It is usually used in prophecies.

- In the Old Testament, “Zion” is often used as another name for the city of Jerusalem.
- Both “Zion” and “Jerusalem” are also used to refer to Israel.
- The term “Daughter” is a term of endearment or affection. It is a metaphor for the patience and care that God has for his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate this could include “my daughter Israel, from Zion” or “people from Zion, who are like a daughter to me” or “Zion, my dear people Israel.”
- It is best to keep the term “Zion” in this expression since it is used many times in the Bible. A note could be included in the translation to explain its figurative meaning and prophetic use.
- It is also better to keep the term “Daughter” in the translation of this expression, as long as it is understood correctly.

(See also: [Jerusalem](#), [prophet](#), [Zion](#))

Bible References:

- Jeremiah 06:02
- John 12:15
- Matthew 21:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1323, H6726

(Go back to: [Matthew 21:5](#))

David

Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Goliath, Philistines, Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:34
- 2 Samuel 05:02
- 2 Timothy 02:08
- Acts 02:25
- Acts 13:22
- Luke 01:32
- Mark 02:26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:02** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **17:03** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- **17:04** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul.
- **17:05** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- **17:06** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **17:09** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was. **David** repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1732, G1138

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:1](#); [1:6](#); [1:17](#); [1:20](#); [9:27](#); [12:3](#); [12:23](#); [15:22](#); [20:30](#); [20:31](#); [21:9](#); [21:15](#); [22:42](#); [22:43](#); [22:45](#))

day

Definition:

The term "day" literally refers to a period of time lasting 24 hours beginning at sundown. It is also used figuratively.

- For the Israelites and the Jews, a day began at sunset of one day and ended at sunset of the next day.
- Sometimes the term "day" is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the "day of Yahweh" or "last days."
- Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate "day" nonfiguratively.
- Other translations of "day" could include, "time" or "season" or "occasion" or "event," depending on the context.

(See also: judgment day, last day)

Bible References:

- Acts 20:06
- Daniel 10:04
- Ezra 06:15
- Ezra 06:19
- Matthew 09:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H3118, H6242, G2250

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:1](#); [3:1](#); [4:2](#); [6:34](#); [7:22](#); [9:15](#); [10:15](#); [11:12](#); [11:22](#); [11:23](#); [11:24](#); [12:36](#); [12:40](#); [13:1](#); [15:32](#); [16:21](#); [17:1](#); [17:23](#); [20:2](#); [20:6](#); [20:12](#); [20:19](#); [22:23](#); [22:46](#); [23:30](#); [24:19](#); [24:22](#); [24:29](#); [24:36](#); [24:37](#); [24:38](#); [24:42](#); [24:50](#); [25:13](#); [26:2](#); [26:29](#); [26:55](#); [26:61](#); [27:40](#); [27:63](#); [27:64](#); [28:15](#); [28:20](#))

deceive, deceit, deceiver, deceitful, deception, illusions

Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true. The act of deceiving someone is called “deceit” or “deception.”

- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated as “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:08
- 1 Timothy 02:14
- 2 Thessalonians 02:3-4
- Genesis 03:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:64
- Micah 06:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H3868, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H5558, H6121, H6231, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8582, H8591, H8649, G538, G539, G1386, G1387, G1388, G1818, G3884, G4105, G4106, G4108, G5422, G5423

(Go back to: [Matthew 13:22](#); [27:63](#); [27:64](#))

declare, proclaim, announce

Definition:

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. Other terms with similar meaning include “proclaim,” “proclamation,” “announce,” and “announcement.”

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: [preach](#), decree)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:24
- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- Amos 02:16
- Ezekiel 05:11-12
- Matthew 07:21-23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H262, H559, H816, H874, H1696, H3045, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H7121, H7561, H7878, H8085, G312, G518, G669, G1229, G1344, G1555, G1718, G1834, G2097, G2511, G2605, G2607, G3140, G3670, G3724, G3822, G3870, G3955, G4296

(Go back to: [Matthew 7:23](#); [12:18](#))

defile, defiled

Definition:

The terms “defile” and “be defiled” refer to becoming polluted or dirty. Something can be defiled in a physical, moral, or ritual sense.

- God warned the Israelites to not defile themselves by eating or touching things that he had declared as “unclean” and “unholy.”
- Certain things such as dead bodies and contagious diseases were declared by God to be unclean and would defile a person if they touched them.
- God commanded the Israelites to avoid sexual sins. These would defile them and make them unacceptable to God.
- There were also certain kinds of bodily processes that defiled a person temporarily until he could become ritually pure again.
- In the New Testament, Jesus taught that sinful thoughts and actions are what truly defile a person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “defile” can also be translated as “cause to be unclean” or “cause to be unrighteous” or “cause to be ritually unacceptable.”
- To “be defiled” could be translated as “become unclean” or “be caused to be morally unacceptable (to God)” or “become ritually unacceptable.”

(See also: [clean](#), [clean](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:08
- Exodus 20:24-26
- Genesis 34:27
- Genesis 49:04
- Isaiah 43:27-28
- Leviticus 11:43-45
- Mark 07:14-16
- Matthew 15:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1351, H1352, H1602, H2490, H2491, H2610, H2930, H2931, G2839, G2840, G3392, G3435

(Go back to: [Matthew 15:11](#); [15:18](#); [15:20](#))

delight

Definition:

The term "delight" means great pleasure or great joy.

- To "delight in" something means to "to take pleasure in" or "take joy in" or "be happy about" it. If a person "delights in" something, it means that he enjoys it very much.
- When something is very agreeable or pleasing it is called "delightful."
- The expression "my delight is in the law of Yahweh" could be translated as "the law of Yahweh gives me great joy" or "I love to obey the laws of Yahweh" or "I am happy when I obey Yahweh's commands."
- The phrases "take no delight in" and "have no delight in" could be translated as "not at all pleased by" or "not happy about."
- The phrase "delight himself in" means "he enjoys doing" something or "he is very happy about" something or someone.
- The term "delights" refers to things that a person enjoys. This could be translated as "pleasures" or "things that give joy."
- An expression such as "I delight to do your will" could also be translated as "I enjoy doing your will" or "I am very happy when I obey you."

Bible References:

- Proverbs 08:30
- Psalm 001:02
- Psalms 119:69-70
- Song of Solomon 01:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H2530, H2531, H2532, H2654, H2655, H2656, H2836, H4574, H5276, H5727, H5730, H6026, H6027, H7306, H7381, H7521, H7522, H8057, H8173, H8191, H8588, H8597

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:17](#); [12:18](#); [17:5](#))

deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

Definition:

To “deliver” someone means to rescue that person. The term “deliverer” refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term “deliverance” refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called “judges” and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a “deliverer.” Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
- The term “deliver over to” or “deliver up to” has a very different meaning of handing or turning someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term “deliver” can be translated as “rescue” or “liberate” or “save.”
- When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, “deliver over” can be translated as “betray to” or “hand over” or “give over.”
- The word “deliverer” can also be translated as “rescuer” or “liberator.”
- When the term “deliverer” refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as “governor” or “judge” or “leader.”

(See also: [judge](#), [save](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 01:10
- Acts 07:35
- Galatians 01:04
- Judges 10:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:03** Then God provided a **deliverer** who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- **16:16** They (Israel) finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another **deliverer**.
- **16:17** Over many years, God sent many **deliverers** who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H2020, H2502, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4672, H5337, H5414, H5462, H6299, H6403, H6413, H6475, H6561, H7725, H7804, H8199, G325, G525, G629, G1080, G1325, G1560, G1659, G1807, G1929, G2673, G3086, G3860, G4506, G4991, G5088, G5483

(Go back to: [Matthew 6:13](#); [27:43](#))

demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit

Definition:

All these terms refer to demons, which are spirit beings that oppose God's will.

- God created angels to serve him. When the devil rebelled against God, some of the angels also rebelled and were thrown out of heaven. It is believed that demons and evil spirits are these "fallen angels."
- Sometimes these demons are called "unclean spirits." The term "unclean" means "impure" or "evil" or "unholy."
- Because demons serve the devil, they do evil things. Sometimes they live inside people and control them.
- Demons are more powerful than human beings, but not as powerful as God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "demon" could also be translated as "evil spirit."
- The term "unclean spirit" could also be translated as "impure spirit" or "corrupt spirit" or "evil spirit."
- Make sure that the word or phrase used to translate this term is different from the term used to refer to the devil.
- Also consider how the term "demon" is translated in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [demon-possessed](#), [Satan](#), false god, false god, [angel](#), [evil](#), [clean](#))

Bible References:

- James 02:19
- James 03:15
- Luke 04:36
- Mark 03:22
- Matthew 04:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:09** Many people who had **demons** in them were brought to Jesus. When Jesus commanded them, the **demons** came out of the people, and often shouted, "You are the Son of God!"
- **32:08** The **demons** came out of the man and entered the pigs.
- **47:05** Finally one day when the slave girl started yelling, Paul turned to her and said to the **demon** that was in her, "In the name of Jesus, come out of her." Right away the **demon** left her.
- **49:02** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out **demons**, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2932, H7307, H7451, H7700, G169, G1139, G1140, G1141, G1142, G4190, G4151, G4152, G4189

(Go back to: [Matthew 7:22](#); [8:31](#); [9:33](#); [9:34](#); [10:8](#); [11:18](#); [12:24](#); [12:27](#); [12:28](#); [12:43](#); [12:45](#); [17:18](#))

demon-possessed

Definition:

A person who is demon-possessed has a demon or evil spirit that controls what he does and thinks.

- Often a demon-possessed person will hurt himself or other people because the demon causes him to do that.
- Jesus healed demon-possessed people by commanding the demons to come out of them. This is often called "casting out" demons.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include "demon-controlled" or "controlled by an evil spirit" or "having an evil spirit living inside."

(See also: [demon](#))

Bible References:

- Mark 01:32
- Matthew 04:24
- Matthew 08:16
- Matthew 08:33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:09** Many people who had **demons in them** were brought to Jesus.
- **32:02** When they reached the other side of the lake, a **demon-possessed** man came running up to Jesus.
- **32:06** The man **with the demon** cried out in a loud voice, "What do you want with me, Jesus, Son of the Most High God? Please do not torture me!"
- **32:09** The people from the town came and saw the man who used to **have the demons**.
- **47:03** Every day as they (Paul and Silas) walked there, a slave girl **possessed by a demon** followed them.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G1139

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:24](#); [8:16](#); [8:28](#); [8:33](#); [9:32](#); [12:22](#); [15:22](#))

desert, wilderness

Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as "wilderness."
- "Wilderness" conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as "deserted place" or "remote place" or "uninhabited place."

Bible References:

- Acts 13:16-18
- Acts 21:38
- Exodus 04:27-28
- Genesis 37:21-22
- John 03:14
- Luke 01:80
- Luke 09:12-14
- Mark 01:03
- Matthew 04:01
- Matthew 11:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G2047, G2048

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:1](#); [3:3](#); [4:1](#); [11:7](#); [14:13](#); [14:15](#); [15:33](#); [24:26](#))

desolate, desolation, alone, deserted

Definition:

The terms “desolate” and “desolation” refer to destroying an inhabited region so that it becomes uninhabited.

- When referring to a person, the term “desolate” describes a condition of ruin, loneliness, and grief.
- The term “desolation” is the state or condition of being desolated.
- If a field where crops are growing is made desolate, it means that something has destroyed the crops, such as insects or an invading army.
- A “desolate region” refers to an area of land where few people live because few crops or other vegetation grow there.
- A “desolate land” or “wilderness” was often where outcasts (such as lepers) and dangerous animals lived.
- If a city is “made desolate” it means that its buildings and goods have been destroyed or stolen, and its people have been killed or captured. The city becomes “empty” and “ruined.” This is similar to the meaning of “devastate” or “devastated,” but with more emphasis on the emptiness.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “ruined” or “destroyed” or “laid waste” or “lonely and outcast” or “deserted.”

(See also: [desert](#), devastate, ruin, [waste](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 22:19
- Acts 01:20
- Daniel 09:17-19
- Lamentations 03:11
- Luke 11:17
- Matthew 12:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H490, H816, H910, H1565, H2717, H2720, H2721, H2723, H3173, H3341, H3456, H3582, H4875, H4923, H5352, H5800, H7582, H7701, H7722, H8047, H8074, H8076, H8077, G2048, G2049, G2050, G3443

(Go back to: [Matthew 12:25](#); [23:38](#); [24:15](#))

destroy, destruction, annihilate

Definition:

The term "destroy" means to completely make an end to something, so that it no longer exists.

- The term "destroyer" means, "a person who destroys."
- This term is often used in the Old Testament as a general reference to anyone who destroys other people, such as an invading army.
- When God sent the angel to kill all the firstborn males in Egypt, that angel was referred to as "the destroyer of the firstborn." This could be translated as "the one (or angel) who killed the firstborn males."
- In the book of Revelation about the end times, Satan or some other evil spirit is called "the Destroyer." He is the "one who destroys" because his purpose is to destroy and ruin everything God created.

(See also: [angel](#), [Egypt](#), firstborn, [Passover](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 12:23
- Hebrews 11:28
- Jeremiah 06:26
- Judges 16:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H7, H622, H398, H1104, H1197, H1820, H1826, H1942, H2000, H2015, H2026, H2040, H2254, H2255, H2717, H2718, H2763, H2764, H3238, H3341, H3381, H3423, H3582, H3615, H3617, H3772, H3807, H4191, H4229, H4591, H4658, H4889, H5218, H5221, H5307, H5362, H5420, H5422, H5428, H5595, H5642, H6365, H6789, H6979, H7665, H7667, H7703, H7722, H7760, H7843, H7921, H8045, H8074, H8077, H8316, H8552, G355, G396, G622, G853, G1311, G1842, G2049, G2506, G2507, G2647, G2673, G2704, G3089, G3645, G4199, G5351, G5356

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:13](#))

devour

Definition:

The term “devour” means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term “devour” is often used with a meaning of “completely destroy” as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as “completely consume” or “totally destroy.”

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:08
- Amos 01:10
- Exodus 24:17
- Ezekiel 16:20
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 23:13-15
- Psalms 021:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H399, H400, H402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G2068, G2666, G2719, G5315

(Go back to: [Matthew 13:4](#))

die, dead, deadly, death,

Definition:

The term "death" refers to being physically dead instead of alive.

1. Physical death

- To "die" means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- The expression "put to death" refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Eternal death

- Eternal death is the separation of a person from God.
- This is the kind of death that happened to Adam when he sinned and disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- This same kind of death happens to every person, because we sin. But God gives us eternal life when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, to "die" may be expressed as to "not live." The term "dead" may be translated as "not alive" or "not having any life" or "not living."
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to "pass away" in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, eternal life and eternal death are often compared to physical life and physical death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and eternal death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say "eternal death" when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say "physical death" in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression "the dead" is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as "dead people" or "people who have died." (See: [nominal adjective](#))
- The expression "put to death" could also be translated as "kill" or "murder" or "execute."

(See also: [believe](#), [faith](#), [life](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:21
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Acts 10:42
- Acts 14:19
- Colossians 02:15
- Colossians 02:20
- Genesis 02:15-17
- Genesis 34:27
- Matthew 16:28
- Romans 05:10
- Romans 05:12
- Romans 06:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **02:11** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **07:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:05** "Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **40:08** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:07** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **48:02** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8045, H8546, H8552, G336, G337, G520, G599, G615, G622, G1634, G1935, G2079, G2253, G2286, G2287, G2288, G2289, G2348, G2837, G2966, G3498, G3499, G3500, G4430, G4880, G4881, G5053, G5054

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:15](#); [2:16](#); [2:19](#); [2:20](#); [4:16](#); [8:22](#); [9:18](#); [9:24](#); [10:8](#); [10:21](#); [11:5](#); [14:2](#); [15:4](#); [16:28](#); [17:9](#); [20:18](#); [22:24](#); [22:25](#); [22:27](#); [22:31](#); [22:32](#); [23:27](#); [26:35](#); [26:38](#); [26:59](#); [26:66](#); [27:1](#); [27:64](#); [28:4](#); [28:7](#))

disciple

Definition:

The term “disciple” refers to a person who spends much time with a teacher, learning from that teacher’s character and teaching.

- The people who followed Jesus around, listening to his teachings and obeying them, were called his “disciples.”
- John the Baptist also had disciples.
- During Jesus’ ministry, there were many disciples who followed him and heard his teachings.
- Jesus chose twelve disciples to be his closest followers; these men became known as his “apostles.”
- Jesus’ twelve apostles continued to be known as his “disciples” or “the 12.”
- Just before Jesus went up to heaven, he commanded his disciples to teach other people about how to become Jesus’ disciples, too.
- Anyone who believes in Jesus and obeys his teachings is called a disciple of Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “disciple” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “follower” or “student” or “pupil” or “learner.”
- Make sure that the translation of this term does not refer only to a student who learns in a classroom.
- The translation of this term should also be different from the translation of “apostle.”

(See also: [apostle](#), [believe](#), [Jesus](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [the twelve](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 06:1
- Acts 09:26-27
- Acts 11:26
- Acts 14:22
- John 13:23
- Luke 06:40
- Matthew 11:03
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Matthew 27:64

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **30:08** He (Jesus) gave the pieces to his **disciples** to give to the people. The **disciples** kept passing out the food, and it never ran out!
- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his **disciples** that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:11** Then Jesus went with his **disciples** to a place called Gethsemane. Jesus told his **disciples** to pray that they would not enter into temptation.
- **42:10** Jesus said to his **disciples**, “All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me. So go, make **disciples** of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3928, G3100, G3101, G3102

(**Go back to:** [Introduction to the Gospel of Matthew](#); [Matthew 5:1](#); [8:21](#); [8:23](#); [9:10](#); [9:11](#); [9:14](#); [9:19](#); [9:37](#); [10:1](#); [10:24](#); [10:25](#); [10:42](#); [11:1](#); [11:2](#); [12:1](#); [12:2](#); [12:49](#); [13:10](#); [13:36](#); [13:52](#); [14:12](#); [14:15](#); [14:19](#); [14:22](#); [14:26](#); [15:2](#); [15:12](#); [15:23](#); [15:32](#); [15:33](#); [15:36](#); [16:5](#); [16:13](#); [16:20](#); [16:21](#); [16:24](#); [17:6](#); [17:10](#); [17:13](#); [17:16](#); [17:19](#); [18:1](#); [19:10](#); [19:13](#); [19:23](#); [19:25](#); [20:17](#); [21:1](#); [21:6](#); [21:20](#); [22:16](#); [23:1](#); [24:1](#); [24:3](#); [26:1](#); [26:8](#); [26:17](#); [26:18](#); [26:19](#); [26:26](#); [26:35](#); [26:36](#); [26:40](#); [26:45](#); [26:56](#); [27:57](#); [27:64](#); [28:7](#); [28:8](#); [28:13](#); [28:16](#); [28:19](#))

divorce

Definition:

A divorce is the legal act of ending a marriage. The term to “divorce” means to formally and legally separate from one’s spouse in order to end the marriage.

- The literal meaning of the term to “divorce” is to “send away” or to “formally separate from.” Other languages may have similar expressions to refer to divorce.
- A “certificate of divorce” could be translated as a “paper stating that the marriage has ended.”

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 08:8-11
- Leviticus 21:7-9
- Luke 16:18
- Mark 10:04
- Matthew 05:32
- Matthew 19:03

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1644, H3748, H5493, H7971, G630, G647, G863

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:19](#); [5:31](#); [5:32](#); [19:3](#); [19:7](#); [19:8](#); [19:9](#))

doctrine, teaching, beliefs, instructions, knowledge

Definition:

The word “doctrine” literally means “teaching.” It usually refers to religious teaching.

- In the context of Christian teachings, “doctrine” refers to all teachings about God – Father, Son and Holy Spirit – including all his character qualities and everything he has done.
- It also refers to everything God teaches Christians about how to live holy lives that bring glory to him.
- The word “doctrine” is sometimes also used to refer to false or worldly religious teachings that come from human beings. The context makes the meaning clear.
- This term could also be translated as “teaching.”

(See also: [teach](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:03
- 2 Timothy 03:16-17
- Mark 07:6-7
- Matthew 15:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3948, G1319, G1322, G2085

(Go back to: [Matthew 15:9](#))

donkey, mule

Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:32-34
- 1 Samuel 09:04
- 2 Kings 04:21-22
- Deuteronomy 05:12-14
- Luke 13:15
- Matthew 21:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H860, H2543, H3222, H5895, H6167, H6501, H6505, H6506, G3678, G3688, G5268

(Go back to: [Matthew 21:2](#); [21:5](#); [21:7](#))

dove, pigeon

Definition:

Doves and pigeons are two kinds of small, gray-brown birds that look similar. A dove is often thought of as being lighter in color, almost white.

- Some languages have two different names for them, while others use the same name for both.
- Doves and pigeons were used in sacrifices to God, especially for people who could not afford to buy a larger animal.
- A dove brought the leaf of an olive tree to Noah when the flood waters were going down.
- Doves sometimes symbolize purity, innocence, or peace.
- If doves or pigeons are not known in the language area where the translation is being done, this term could be translated as “a small grayish brown bird called a dove” or “a small gray or brown bird, similar to a (name of local bird)”.
- If both a dove and a pigeon are referred to in the same verse, it is best to use two different words for these birds, if possible.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [olive](#), [innocent](#), [pure](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 08:09
- Luke 02:22-24
- Mark 01:10
- Matthew 03:16
- Matthew 21:12-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1469, H1686, H3123, H8449, G4058

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:16](#); [10:16](#); [21:12](#))

dream

Definition:

A dream is something that people see or experience in their minds while they are sleeping.

- Dreams often seem like they are really happening, but they are not.
- Sometimes God causes people to dream about something so they can learn from it. He may also speak directly to people in their dreams.
- In the Bible, God gave special dreams to certain people to give them a message, often about something that would happen in the future.
- A dream is different from a vision. Dreams happen while a person is asleep, but visions usually happen when a person is awake.

(See also: [vision](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 02:16-17
- Daniel 01:17-18
- Daniel 02:01
- Genesis 37:06
- Genesis 40:4-5
- Matthew 02:13
- Matthew 02:19-21

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:02** Joseph's brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had **dreamed** that he would be their ruler.
- **08:06** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two **dreams** that disturbed him greatly. None of his advisors could tell him the meaning of the **dreams**.
- **08:07** God had given Joseph the ability to interpret **dreams**, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison. Joseph interpreted the **dreams** for him and said, "God is going to send seven years of plentiful harvests followed by seven years of famine."
- **16:11** So that night, Gideon went down to the camp and heard a Midianite soldier telling his friend about something he had **dreamed**. The man's friend said, "This **dream** means that Gideon's army will defeat the Midianite army!"
- **23:01** He (Joseph) did not want to shame her (Mary), so he planned to quietly divorce her. Before he could do that, an angel came and spoke to him in a **dream**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1957, H2472, H2492, H2493, G1797, G1798, G3677

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:20](#); [2:12](#); [2:13](#); [2:19](#); [2:22](#); [27:19](#))

drunk, drunkard

Facts:

The term “drunk” means to be intoxicated from drinking too much of an alcoholic beverage.

- A “drunkard” is a person who is often drunk. This kind of person could also be referred to as an “alcoholic.”
- The Bible tells believers not to be drunk with alcoholic drinks, but to be controlled by God’s Holy Spirit.
- The Bible teaches that drunkenness is unwise and influences a person to sin in other ways.
- Other ways to translate “drunk” could include “inebriated” or “intoxicated” or “having too much alcohol” or “filled with fermented drink.”

(See also: [wine](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:11-13
- 1 Samuel 25:36
- Jeremiah 13:13
- Luke 07:34
- Luke 21:34
- Proverbs 23:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5433, H7301, H7910, H7937, H7941, H7943, H8354, H8358, G3178, G3182, G3183, G3184, G3630, G3632

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:19](#); [24:49](#))

eagle

Definition:

An eagle is a very large, powerful bird of prey that eats small animals such as fish, mice, snakes, and chickens.

- The Bible compares the speed and strength of an army to how fast and suddenly an eagle swoops down to catch its prey.
- Isaiah states that those who trust in the Lord will soar as an eagle does. This is figurative language used to describe the freedom and strength that comes from trusting and obeying God.
- In the book of Daniel, King Nebuchadnezzar's hair length was compared to the length of an eagle's feathers, which can be more than 50 centimeters long.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Daniel](#), [free](#), Nebuchadnezzar, [power](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 01:23
- Daniel 07:04
- Jeremiah 04:13-15
- Leviticus 11:13-16
- Revelation 04:07

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5403, H5404, G105

([Go back to: Matthew 24:28](#))

earth, earthen, earthly

Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- “Earth” can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: [metonymy](#))
- The expressions “let the earth be glad” and “he will judge the earth” are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term “earthly” usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [world](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 02:11-12
- Daniel 04:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 06:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 06:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H127, H772, H776, H778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G1093, G1919, G2709, G2886, G3625, G4578, G5517

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:5](#); [5:13](#); [5:18](#); [5:35](#); [6:10](#); [6:19](#); [9:6](#); [10:34](#); [11:25](#); [12:40](#); [12:42](#); [16:19](#); [17:25](#); [18:18](#); [18:19](#); [23:9](#); [23:35](#); [24:30](#); [24:35](#); [27:51](#); [28:18](#))

Egypt, Egyptian

Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as "Egypt" and "Pathros" in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel's patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Herod the Great](#), [Joseph \(NT\)](#), Nile River, patriarchs)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 04:7-9
- Acts 07:10
- Exodus 03:07
- Genesis 41:29
- Genesis 41:57
- Matthew 02:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:04** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **08:08** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **08:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to *_Egypt_* to buy food.
- **08:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **09:01** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4713, H4714, G124, G125

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:13](#); [2:14](#); [2:15](#); [2:19](#))

elder, older, old

Definition:

The term "elder" or "older" refers to people (in the Bible, usually men) who have grown old enough to become mature adults and leaders within a community. For example, elders might have gray hair, have adult children, or perhaps even have grandchildren or great-grandchildren.

- The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish "elders" continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian "elders" gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers. Elders in these churches sometimes included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 03:1-3
- 1 Timothy 04:14
- Acts 05:19-21
- Acts 14:23
- Mark 11:28
- Matthew 21:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G1087, G3187, G4244, G4245, G4850

(Go back to: [Matthew 15:2](#); [16:21](#); [21:23](#); [26:3](#); [26:47](#); [26:57](#); [27:1](#); [27:3](#); [27:12](#); [27:20](#); [27:41](#); [28:12](#))

Eleazar

Facts:

Eleazar was the name of several men in the Bible.

- Eleazar was the third son of Moses' brother Aaron. After Aaron died, Eleazar became the high priest in Israel.
- Eleazar was also the name of one of David's "mighty men."
- Another Eleazar was one of Jesus' ancestors.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Aaron, [high priest](#), [David](#), [mighty](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 24:03
- Judges 20:27-28
- Numbers 26:1-2
- Numbers 34:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H499, G1648

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:15](#))

Eliakim

Facts:

Eliakim was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- One man named Eliakim was the manager of the palace under King Hezekiah.
- Another man named Eliakim was a son of King Josiah. He was made king of Judah by the Egyptian pharaoh Necho.
- Necho changed Eliakim's name to Jehoiakim.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Hezekiah](#), [Jehoiakim](#), [Josiah](#), [Pharaoh](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:18
- 2 Kings 18:26
- 2 Kings 18:37
- 2 Kings 23:34-35

Word Data:

- Strong's: H471, G1662

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:13](#))

Elijah

Facts:

Elijah was one of the most important prophets of Yahweh. Elijah prophesied during the reigns of several kings of Israel and Judah, including King Ahab.

- God did many miracles through Elijah, including raising a dead boy back to life.
- Elijah rebuked King Ahab for worshiping the false god Baal.
- He challenged the prophets of Baal to a test that proved that Yahweh is the only true God.
- At the end of Elijah's life, God miraculously took him up to heaven while he was still alive.
- Hundreds of years later, Elijah, along with Moses, appeared with Jesus on a mountain, and they talked together about Jesus' coming suffering and death in Jerusalem.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [miracle](#), [prophet](#), Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 17:1
- 2 Kings 01:3-4
- James 05:16-18
- John 01:19-21
- John 01:24-25
- Mark 09:05

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:02 Elijah** was a prophet when Ahab was king over the kingdom of Israel.
- **19:02 Elijah** said to Ahab, "There will be no rain or dew in the kingdom of Israel until I say so."
- **19:03** God told **Elijah** to go to a stream in the wilderness to hide from Ahab who wanted to kill him. Every morning and every evening, birds would bring him bread and meat.
- **19:04** But they took care of **Elijah**, and God provided for them so that their flour jar and their bottle of oil never became empty.
- **19:05** After three and a half years, God told **Elijah** to return to the kingdom of Israel and speak with Ahab because he was going to send rain again.
- **19:07** Then **Elijah** said to the prophets of Baal, "Kill a bull and prepare it as a sacrifice, but do not light the fire."
- **19:12** Then **Elijah** said, "Do not let any of the prophets of Baal escape!"
- **36:03** Then Moses and the prophet **Elijah** appeared. These men had lived hundreds of years before this. They talked with Jesus about his death that would soon happen in Jerusalem.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H452, G2243

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:14](#); [16:14](#); [17:3](#); [17:4](#); [17:10](#); [17:11](#); [17:12](#); [27:47](#); [27:49](#))

endure, endurance

Definition:

The term “endure” means to last a long time or to bear something difficult with patience.

- It also means to stand firm when times of testing come, without giving up.
- The term “endurance” can mean “patience” or “bearing up under a trial” or “persevering when being persecuted.”
- The encouragement to Christians to “endure to the end” is telling them to obey Jesus, even if this causes them to suffer.
- To “endure suffering” can also mean to “experience suffering.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the term “endure” could include “persevere” or “keep believing” or “continue to do what God wants you to do” or “stand firm.”
- In some contexts, to “endure” could be translated as to “experience” or to “go through.”
- With the meaning of lasting for a long time, the term “endure” could also be translated as “last” or “continue.” The phrase “will not endure” could be translated as “will not last” or “will not continue to survive.”
- Ways to translate “endurance” could include “perseverance” or “continuing to believe” or “remaining faithful.”

(See also: persevere)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:11-13
- James 01:03
- James 01:12
- Luke 21:19
- Matthew 13:21
- Revelation 01:09
- Romans 05:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H386, H3201, H3557, H5331, H5375, H5975, G430, G907, G1526, G2005, G2076, G2594, G3306, G4722, G5278, G5281, G5297, G5342

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:22; 24:13](#))

envy, covet

Definition:

The term “envy” refers to being jealous of someone because of what that person possesses or because of that person’s admirable qualities. The term “covet” means to strongly desire to have something.

- Envy is normally a negative feeling of resentment because of another person’s success, good fortune, or possessions.
- Coveting is a strong desire to have someone else’s property, or even someone else’s spouse.

(See also: jealous)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:4-7
- 1 Peter 02:01
- Exodus 20:17
- Mark 07:20-23
- Proverbs 03:31-32
- Romans 01:29

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H183, H1214, H1215, H2530, H3415, H5869, H7065, H7068, G866, G1937, G2205, G2206, G3713, G3788, G4123, G4124, G4190, G5354, G5355, G5366

(Go back to: [Matthew 27:18](#))

eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.

The term “forever” refers to never-ending time.

- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like. It emphasizes that something will always happen or exist. It refers to time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- “Forever” could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: [David](#), [reign](#), [life](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:08
- Genesis 48:04
- Exodus 15:17
- 2 Samuel 03:28-30
- 1 Kings 02:32-33
- Job 04:20-21
- Psalms 021:04
- Isaiah 09:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Daniel 07:18
- Luke 18:18
- Acts 13:46

- Romans 05:21
- Hebrews 06:19-20
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- 1 John 01:02
- 1 John 05:12
- Revelation 01:4-6
- Revelation 22:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?"
- **28:01** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, "Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God's laws."
- **28:10** Jesus answered, "Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name's sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G126, G165, G166, G1336

(Go back to: [Matthew 18:8](#); [19:16](#); [19:29](#); [25:41](#); [25:46](#))

eunuch

Definition:

Usually the term “eunuch” refers to a man who has been castrated. The term later became a general term to refer to any government official, even those without the deformity.

- Jesus said that some eunuchs were born that way, perhaps because of damaged sex organs or because of not being able to function sexually. Others chose to live like eunuchs in a celibate lifestyle.
- In ancient times, eunuchs were often kings’ servants who were set as guards over the women’s quarters.
- Some eunuchs were important government officials, such as the Ethiopian eunuch who met the apostle Philip in the desert.

(See also: Philip)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:27
- Acts 08:36
- Acts 08:39
- Isaiah 39:7-8
- Jeremiah 34:17-19
- Matthew 19:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5631, G2134, G2135

(Go back to: [Matthew 19:12](#))

evil, wicked, unpleasant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, [sin](#), [good](#), [righteous](#), [demon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 06:10
- 3 John 01:10
- Genesis 02:17
- Genesis 06:5-6
- Job 01:01
- Job 08:20
- Judges 09:57
- Luke 06:22-23
- Matthew 07:11-12
- Proverbs 03:07
- Psalms 022:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **04:02** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **08:12** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:01** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:08** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:02** They said, “We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!”
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G92, G113, G459, G932, G987, G988, G1426, G2549, G2551, G2554, G2555, G2556, G2557, G2559, G2560, G2635, G2636, G4151, G4189, G4190, G4191, G5337

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:11](#); [5:37](#); [5:39](#); [5:45](#); [6:23](#); [6:34](#); [7:11](#); [7:17](#); [7:18](#); [9:4](#); [12:34](#); [12:35](#); [12:39](#); [12:45](#); [13:49](#); [15:4](#); [15:19](#); [16:4](#); [18:32](#); [20:15](#); [22:10](#); [22:18](#); [24:48](#); [25:26](#); [27:23](#))

ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [lamb](#), [sacrifice](#), [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 08:32
- Genesis 30:32
- John 02:14
- Luke 15:05
- Mark 06:34
- Matthew 09:36
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 12:12
- Matthew 25:33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:02** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:08** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7462, H7716, G4165, G4262, G4263

(Go back to: [Matthew 7:15](#); [9:36](#); [10:6](#); [10:16](#); [12:11](#); [12:12](#); [15:24](#); [18:12](#); [25:32](#); [25:33](#); [26:31](#))

exalt, exalted, exaltation

Definition:

To exalt is to highly praise and honor someone. It can also mean to put someone in a high position.

- In the Bible, the term “exalt” is most often used for exalting God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he is thinking about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “exalt” could include “highly praise” or “honor greatly” or “extol” or “speak highly of.”
- In some contexts it could be translated by a word or phrase that means “put in a higher position” or “give more honor to” or “talk about proudly.”
- “Do not exalt yourself” could also be translated as “Do not think of yourself too highly” or “Do not brag about yourself.”
- “Those that exalt themselves” could also be translated as “Those who think proudly about themselves” or “Those who boast about themselves.”

(See also: [praise](#), [worship](#), [glory](#), boast, proud)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:5-7
- 2 Samuel 22:47
- Acts 05:31
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Psalms 018:46

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1361, H4984, H5375, H5549, H5927, H7311, H7426, H7682, G1869, G5229, G5251, G5311, G5312

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:23](#); [23:12](#))

exult, exultant

Definition:

The terms “exult” and “exultant” refer to being very happy because of a success or special blessing.

- To “exult” includes a feeling of celebrating something wonderful.
- A person can exult in God’s goodness.
- The term “exultant” can also include being arrogant in one’s feeling of gladness about success or prosperity.
- The term “exult” could also be translated as “celebrate joyfully” or “praise with great joy.”
- Depending on the context, the term “exultant” could be translated as “praising triumphantly” or “celebrating with self praise” or “arrogant.”

(See also: arrogant, [joy](#), [praise](#), [rejoice](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:1
- Isaiah 13:03
- Job 06:10
- Psalm 068:1-3
- Zephaniah 02:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5539, H5947, H5970

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:12](#))

face, facial

Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression “your face” is often a figurative way of saying “you.” Similarly, the expression “my face” often means “I” or “me.”
- In a physical sense, to “face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to “face” could be translated as to “turn toward” or to “look at directly” or to “look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression “hide his face from” could be translated as “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression “say it to their face” could be translated as “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression “on the face of the land” could also be translated as “throughout the land” or “over the whole earth” or “living throughout the earth.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 05:04
- Genesis 33:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H600, H639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G3799, G4383, G4750

(Go back to: [Matthew 6:16](#); [6:17](#); [11:10](#); [17:2](#); [17:6](#); [18:10](#); [22:16](#); [26:39](#); [26:67](#))

faith

Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God’s teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- The expression “keep the faith” could be translated by “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:07
- Acts 06:7
- Galatians 02:20-21
- James 02:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s **faith** by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **31:07** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, “You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?”
- **32:16** Jesus said to her, “Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace.”
- **38:09** Then Jesus said to Peter, “Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H529, H530, G1680, G3640, G4102, G6066

(Go back to: [Matthew 6:30](#); [8:10](#); [8:26](#); [9:2](#); [9:22](#); [9:29](#); [15:28](#); [16:8](#); [17:20](#); [21:21](#))

faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy

Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

The term “unfaithful” describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is “unfaithfulness.”

- The people of Israel were called “unfaithful” when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
- In marriage, someone who commits adultery is “unfaithful” to his or her spouse.
- God used the term “unfaithfulness” to describe Israel’s disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”
- Depending on the context, “unfaithful” could be translated as “not faithful” or “unbelieving” or “not obedient” or “not loyal.”
- The phrase “the unfaithful” could be translated as “people who are not faithful (to God)” or “unfaithful people” or “those who disobey God” or “people who rebel against God.”
- The term “unfaithfulness” could be translated as “disobedience” or “disloyalty” or “not believing or obeying.”
- In some languages, the term “unfaithful” is related to the word for “unbelief.”

(See also: [adultery](#), [believe](#), [disobey](#), [faith](#), [believe](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:07
- Joshua 02:14
- Judges 02:16-17
- 1 Samuel 02:9
- Psalm 012:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 01:26
- Jeremiah 09:7-9
- Hosea 05:07
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 01:07
- 1 Thessalonians 05:24
- 3 John 01:05

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:09** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon's death.
- **35:12** "The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!'"
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:04** If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H529, H530, H539, H540, H571, H898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G569, G571, G4103

(Go back to: [Matthew 23:23](#); [24:45](#); [25:21](#); [25:23](#))

false prophet

Definition:

A false prophet is a person who wrongly claims that his message comes from God.

- The prophecies of false prophets are not usually fulfilled. That is, they do not come true.
- False prophets teach messages that partially or totally contradict what the Bible says.
- This term could also be translated as “person who falsely claims to be God’s spokesman” or “someone who falsely claims to speak God’s words.”
- The New Testament teaches that in the end times there will be many false prophets who will try to deceive people into thinking that they come from God.

(See also: [fulfill](#), [prophet](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:1-3
- 2 Peter 02:01
- Acts 13:6-8
- Luke 06:26
- Matthew 07:16
- Matthew 24:23-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: G5578

(Go back to: [Matthew 7:15](#); [24:11](#); [24:24](#))

famine

Definition:

The term “famine” refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain.

- Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
- Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies who destroy crops.
- In the Bible, God sometimes caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
- In Amos 8:11 the term “famine” is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for “famine” in your language, or with a phrase such as “extreme lack” or “severe deprivation.”

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:11-12
- Acts 07:11
- Genesis 12:10
- Genesis 45:06
- Jeremiah 11:21-23
- Luke 04:25
- Matthew 24:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3720, H7458, H7459, G3042

(Go back to: [Matthew 24:7](#))

fast, fasting

Definition:

The term to “fast” means to stop eating food for a period of time, such as for a day or more. Sometimes it also includes not drinking.

- Fasting can help people to focus on God and pray without being distracted by preparing food and eating.
- Jesus condemned the Jewish religious leaders for fasting for the wrong reasons. They fasted so that others would think they were righteous.
- Sometimes people fast because they are very sad or grieved about something.
- The verb to “fast” can also be translated as to “refrain from eating” or to “not eat.”
- The noun “fast” could be translated as “time of not eating” or “time of abstaining from food.”

(See also: Jewish leaders)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 20:03
- Acts 13:1-3
- Jonah 03:4-5
- Luke 05:34
- Mark 02:19
- Matthew 06:18
- Matthew 09:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:01** Immediately after Jesus was baptized, the Holy Spirit led him out into the wilderness, where he **fasted** for forty days and forty nights.
- **34:08** “For example, I **fast** two times every week and I give you ten percent of all the money and goods that I receive.”
- **46:10** One day, while the Christians at Antioch were **fasting** and praying, the Holy Spirit said to them, “Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul to do the work I have called them to do.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2908, H5144, H6684, H6685, G3521, G3522

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:2](#); [6:16](#); [6:17](#); [6:18](#); [9:14](#); [9:15](#))

fear, afraid, dread

Definition:

The terms "fear" refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term "fear" can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king. The term "dread" refers to extreme or intense fear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "fear" can be translated in various ways, depending on the context. Some possibilities include: "be afraid;" "deeply respect;" or "deep respect;" "revere;" or "reverence;" or perhaps "be in awe of."
- The phrase "fear not" could also be translated as "do not be afraid" or "stop being afraid."
- The sentence "The fear of God fell on all of them" might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: "Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;" or, "Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;" or, "Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power)."

(See also: [marvel](#), awe, [Lord](#), [power](#), Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:18
- Acts 02:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 06:14
- Jonah 01:09
- Luke 12:05
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H367, H926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G870, G1167, G1168, G1169, G1630, G1719, G2124, G2125, G2962, G5398, G5399, G5400, G5401

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:20](#); [2:22](#); [8:26](#); [9:8](#); [10:26](#); [10:28](#); [10:31](#); [14:5](#); [14:26](#); [14:27](#); [14:30](#); [Notes](#); [17:6](#); [17:7](#); [21:26](#); [21:46](#); [25:25](#); [27:54](#); [28:4](#); [28:5](#); [28:8](#); [28:10](#))

feast, feasting

Definition:

The term “feast” is a very general term that refers to an event where people gather to celebrate something by eating a large meal together. In biblical times, a feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In biblical times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- The term to “feast” could also be translated as to “eat lavishly” or to “celebrate by eating lots of food” or to “eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: [festival](#), banquet)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Genesis 26:30
- Genesis 29:22
- Genesis 40:20
- Jude 01:12-13
- Luke 02:43
- Luke 14:7-9
- Matthew 22:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H2077, H2282, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G26, G1062, G1173, G1859, G2165, G4910

(Go back to: [Matthew 22:2](#); [22:3](#); [22:4](#); [22:8](#); [22:9](#); [23:6](#); [25:10](#))

festival

Definition:

In general, a festival is a celebration held by a community of people.

- The word for “festival” in the Old Testament literally means “appointed time.”
- The festivals celebrated by the Israelites were specially appointed times or seasons that God had commanded them to observe.
- In some English translations, the word “feast” is used instead of festival because the celebrations included having a large meal together.
- There were several main festivals that the Israelites celebrated every year:
 - Passover
 - Festival of Unleavened Bread
 - Firstfruits
 - Festival of Weeks (Pentecost)
 - Festival of Trumpets
 - Day of Atonement
 - Festival of Shelters
- The purpose of these festivals was to thank God and to remember the amazing things he had done to rescue, protect, and provide for his people.

(See also: [feast](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:31
- 2 Chronicles 08:13
- Exodus 05:01
- John 04:45
- Luke 22:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1974, H2166, H2282, H2287, H6213, H4150, G1456, G1858, G1859

(Go back to: [Matthew 26:5](#); [27:15](#))

fig

Definition:

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

- Fig trees can grow 6 meters in height and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
- Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
- Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
- In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
- The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
- Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

Bible References:

- Habakkuk 03:17
- James 03:12
- Luke 13:07
- Mark 11:14
- Matthew 07:17
- Matthew 21:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H1690, H6291, H8384, G3653, G4808, G4810

(Go back to: [Matthew 7:16](#); [21:19](#); [21:20](#); [21:21](#); [24:32](#))

fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as “cause to experience suffering in order to be purified.”

(See also: pure)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 01:10
- 2 Thessalonians 01:08
- Acts 07:29-30
- John 15:06
- Luke 03:16
- Matthew 03:12
- Nehemiah 01:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H215, H217, H398, H784, H800, H801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H2734, H3341, H3857, H4071, H4168, H5135, H6315, H8316, G439, G440, G1067, G2741, G4442, G4443, G4447, G4448, G4451, G5394, G5457

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:10](#); [3:11](#); [3:12](#); [5:22](#); [7:19](#); [13:40](#); [13:42](#); [13:50](#); [17:15](#); [18:8](#); [18:9](#); [25:41](#))

fishermen, fishers

Definition:

Fishermen are men who catch fish from the water as a means of earning money. In the New Testament, the fishermen used large nets to catch fish. The term “fishers” is another name for fishermen.

- Peter and other apostles worked as fishermen before being called by Jesus.
- Since the land of Israel was near water, the Bible has many references to fish and fishermen.
- This term could be translated with a phrase such as “men who catch fish” or “men who earn money by catching fish.”

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 47:9-10
- Isaiah 19:08
- Luke 05:1-3
- Matthew 04:19
- Matthew 13:47

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1728, H1771, H2271, G231

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:18](#); [4:19](#))

flesh

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kinfolk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression “become one flesh” could be translated as “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: [euphemism](#)). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who “become one flesh” literally become one person.

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:16
- 2 John 01:07
- Ephesians 06:12
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 02:24
- John 01:14
- Matthew 16:17
- Romans 08:08

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G2907, G4559, G4560, G4561

(Go back to: [Matthew 16:17](#); [19:5](#); [19:6](#); [24:22](#); [26:41](#))

flock, herd

Definition:

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals, and use the appropriate term for each kind of animal.
- If your language uses the same word to refer to both sheep and cattle, then you may need to say "groups of sheep" where the Bible says only “flocks,” and "groups of cattle" where the Bible says only “herds.”

(See also: [goat](#), [cow](#), [pig](#), [sheep](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:28-29
- 2 Chronicles 17:11
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Luke 02:8-9
- Matthew 08:30
- Matthew 26:31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7399, H7462, G34, G4167, G4168

(Go back to: [Matthew 26:31](#))

flood

Definition:

The term “flood” literally refers to a large amount of water that completely covers over the land.

- This term is also used figuratively to refer to an overwhelming amount of something, especially something that happens suddenly.
- In Noah’s time, people had become so evil that God caused a worldwide flood to come over the entire surface of the earth, even covering the mountaintops. Everyone who was not in the boat with Noah drowned. All other floods cover a much smaller land area.
- This term can also be an action, as in “the land was flooded by river water.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the literal meaning of “flood” could include “an overflowing of water” or “large amounts of water.”
- The figurative comparison “like a flood” could keep the literal term, or a substitute term could be used that refers to something that has a flowing aspect to it, such as a river.
- For the expression “like a flood of water” where water is already mentioned, the word “flood” could be translated as “an overwhelming amount” or “an overflowing.”
- This term can be used as a metaphor, as in “do not let the flood sweep over me,” which means “do not let these overwhelming disasters happen to me” or “don’t let me be devastated by disasters” or “don’t let your anger devastate me.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- The figurative expression “I flood my bed with tears” could be translated as “my tears cover my bed with water like a flood.”

(See also: ark, Noah)

Bible References:

- Daniel 11:10
- Genesis 07:6-7
- Luke 06:46-48
- Matthew 07:24-25
- Matthew 07:26-27
- Matthew 24:37-39

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3999, G2627

(Go back to: [Matthew 24:38](#); [24:39](#))

flute, pipe

Definition:

In Bible times, pipes were musical instruments made of bone or wood with holes to allow the sound to come out. A flute was a kind of pipe.

- Most pipes had reeds made out of a kind of thick grass that vibrated as air was blown over it.
- A pipe without any reeds was often called a “flute.”
- A shepherd played a pipe to calm his flocks of sheep.
- Pipes and flutes were used for playing sad or joyful music.

(See also: [flock](#), [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 14:07
- 1 Kings 01:38-40
- Daniel 03:3-5
- Luke 07:31-32
- Matthew 09:23
- Matthew 11:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4953, H5748, H2485, H2490, G832, G834, G836

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:17](#))

fool, foolish, folly

Definition:

The term “fool” refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term “foolish” describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

- In the Bible, the term “fool” usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
- In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, one who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
- The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
- The term “folly” refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God’s will. Often “folly” also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “fool” could be translated as “foolish person” or “unwise person” or “senseless person” or “ungodly person.”
- Ways to translate “foolish” could include “lacking understanding” or “unwise” or “senseless.”

(See also: [wise](#))

Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 01:17
- Ephesians 05:15
- Galatians 03:03
- Genesis 31:28
- Matthew 07:26
- Matthew 25:08
- Proverbs 13:16
- Psalms 049:13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H191, H196, H200, H1198, H1984, H2973, H3684, H3687, H3688, H3689, H3690, H5014, H5034, H5036, H5039, H5528, H5529, H5530, H5531, H6612, H8417, H8602, H8604, G453, G454, G781, G801, G877, G878, G2757, G3150, G3154, G3471, G3472, G3473, G3474, G3912

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:22](#); [7:26](#); [23:17](#); [23:19](#); [25:2](#); [25:3](#); [25:8](#))

footstool

Definition:

The term “footstool” refers to an object which a person puts his feet on, usually to rest them while sitting. This term also has figurative meanings of submission and lower status.

- People in Bible times considered feet to be the least honorable parts of the body. So a “footstool” was of even lower honor because feet were rested on it.
- When God says “I will make my enemies a footstool for my feet” he is declaring power, control, and victory over the people who rebel against him. They will be humbled and conquered to the point of submitting to God’s will.
- To “worship at God’s footstool” means to bow down in worship before him as he sits on his throne. This again communicates humility and submission to God.
- David refers to the temple as God’s “footstool.” This could refer to his absolute authority over his people. This could also be picturing God the King on his throne, with his feet resting on his footstool, which represents all that is in submission to him.

Bible References:

- Acts 07:49
- Isaiah 66:1
- Luke 20:43
- Matthew 05:35
- Matthew 22:44
- Psalm 110:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1916, H3534, H7272, G4228, G5286

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:35](#); [22:44](#))

forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned

Definition:

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. "Forgiveness" is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean "cancel," as in the expression "forgive a debt."
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus' sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

The term "pardon" means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

- This word has the same meaning as "forgive" but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
- In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
- Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "forgive" could be translated as "pardon" or "cancel" or "release" or "not hold against" (someone).
- The term "forgiveness" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "practice of not resenting" or "declaring (someone) as not guilty" or "the act of pardoning."
- If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate "pardon."

(See also: guilt)

Bible References:

- Genesis 50:17
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Joshua 24:19-20
- 2 Kings 05:17-19
- Psalms 025:11
- Psalms 025:17-19
- Isaiah 55:6-7
- Isaiah 40:02
- Luke 05:21
- Acts 08:22
- Ephesians 04:31-32
- Colossians 03:12-14
- 1 John 02:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **07:10** But Esau had already **forgiven** Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- **13:15** Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would **forgive** the people. God listened to Moses and **forgave** them.
- **17:13** David repented of his sin and God **forgave** him.
- **21:05** In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would **forgive** their sins.

- **29:01** One day Peter asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?"
- **29:08** I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins.

Word Data:

- H5546, H5547, H3722, H5375, H5545, H5547, H7521, G859, G863, G5483

(Go back to: [Matthew 6:12](#); [6:14](#); [6:15](#); [9:2](#); [9:5](#); [9:6](#); [12:31](#); [12:32](#); [18:21](#); [18:27](#); [18:32](#); [18:35](#); [26:28](#))

forsake, forsaken, leave

Definition:

The term “forsake” means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been “forsaken” has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people “forsake” God, they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God “forsakes” people, he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following, God’s teachings.
- The term “forsaken” can be used in the past tense, as in “he has forsaken you” or as in referring to someone who has “been forsaken.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “abandon” or “neglect” or “give up” or “go away from” or “leave behind,” depending on the context.
- To “forsake” God’s law could be translated “disobey God’s law.” This could also be translated as “abandon” or “give up on” or “stop obeying” his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase “be forsaken” can be translated as “be abandoned” or “be deserted.”
- It more clearer to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text describes forsaking a thing or a person.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:11-13
- Daniel 11:29-30
- Genesis 24:27
- Joshua 24:16-18
- Matthew 27:45-47
- Proverbs 27:9-10
- Psalms 071:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H488, H2308, H5203, H5428, H5800, H5805, H7503, G646, G657, G863, G1459, G2641,

(Go back to: [Matthew 26:56; 27:46](#))

found, founder, foundation

Definition:

The verb “found” means build, create, or lay a base for. The phrase “founded on” means supported by or based on. A “foundation” is the base of support on which something is built or created.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term “foundation” can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A “foundation stone” was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “before the foundation of the world” could be translated as “before the creation of the world” or “before the time when the world first existed” or “before everything was first created.”
- The term “founded on” could be translated as “securely built on” or “firmly based on.”
- Depending on the context, “foundation” could be translated as “strong base” or “solid support” or “beginning” or “creation.”

(See also: [cornerstone](#), [create](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:37-38
- 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
- Ezekiel 13:13-14
- Luke 14:29
- Matthew 13:35
- Matthew 25:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H134, H787, H2713, H3245, H3247, H3248, H4143, H4144, H4146, H4328, H4349, H4527, H8356, G2310, G2311, G2602

(Go back to: [Matthew 7:25](#); [13:35](#); [25:34](#))

frankincense

Definition:

Frankincense is a fragrant spice made from tree resin. It is used to make perfumes and incense.

- In Bible times, frankincense was an important spice used to prepare dead bodies for burial.
- This spice is also valuable for its healing and calming qualities.
- When learned men came from an eastern country to visit baby Jesus in Bethlehem, frankincense was one of the three gifts they brought him.

(See also: [Bethlehem](#), [learned men](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:28-29
- Exodus 30:34-36
- Matthew 02:11-12
- Numbers 05:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3828, G3030

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:11](#))

free, freed, freedom, freeman, freewill, liberty

Definition:

The terms “free” or “freedom” refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for “freedom” is “liberty.”

- The expression to “set someone free” or to “free someone” means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
- In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
- Having “liberty” or “freedom” can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “free” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “not bound” or “not enslaved” or “not in slavery” or “not in bondage.”
- The term “freedom” or “liberty” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the state of being free” or “the condition of not being a slave” or “not being bound.”
- The expression to “set free” could be translated as to “cause to be free” or to “rescue from slavery” or to “release from bondage.”
- A person who has been “set free” has been “released” or “taken out of” bondage or slavery.

(See also: [bind](#), [enslave](#), [servant](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:26
- Galatians 05:01
- Isaiah 61:1
- Leviticus 25:10
- Romans 06:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1865, H2600, H2666, H2668, H2670, H3318, H4800, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5337, H5352, H5355, H5425, H5674, H5800, H6299, H6362, H7342, H7971, G425, G525, G558, G629, G630, G859, G1344, G1432, G1657, G1658, G1659, G1849, G3089, G3955, G4506, G5483

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:8](#); [17:26](#))

fruit, fruitful, unfruitful

Definition:

The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person’s actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person’s words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces--”that is children.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural, “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression “fruit of the land” could also be translated as “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a woman gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elizabeth says to Mary “blessed is the fruit of your womb,” she means “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression “fruit of the vine,” could be translated as “vine fruit” or “grapes.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”
- The apostle Paul’s expression “fruitful labor” could be translated as “work that brings very good results” or “efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus.”
- The “fruit of the Spirit” could also be translated as “works that the Holy Spirit produces” or “words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone.”

(See also: descendant, [grain](#), [grape](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [vine](#), [womb](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 05:23
- Genesis 01:11
- Luke 08:15
- Matthew 03:08
- Matthew 07:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2233, H2981, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H5108, H6509, H6529, H7019, H8393, H8570, G1081, G2590, G2592, G2593, G3703, G5052, G5352

(Go back to: [Matthew 3 General Notes](#); [3:8](#); [3:10](#); [Notes](#); [7:16](#); [7:17](#); [7:18](#); [7:19](#); [7:20](#); [12:33](#); [13:22](#); [13:23](#); [13:26](#); [21:19](#); [21:34](#); [21:41](#); [21:43](#); [26:29](#))

fulfill, fulfilled, carried out

Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill,” as in “fulfill your ministry,” could include “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: [prophet](#), [Christ](#), [minister](#), [call](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 02:27
- Acts 03:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 04:21
- Matthew 01:22-23
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalms 116:12-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:04** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- **40:03** The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- **42:07** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”
- **43:05** “This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **43:07** “This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- **44:05** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H5487, G1096, G4138

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:22](#); [2:15](#); [2:17](#); [2:23](#); [3:15](#); [4:14](#); [5:17](#); [8:17](#); [12:17](#); [13:14](#); [13:35](#); [21:4](#); [26:54](#); [26:56](#); [27:9](#))

furnace

Facts:

A furnace was a very large oven used for heating objects to a high temperature.

- In ancient times, most furnaces were used for melting metals to make objects such as cooking pots, jewelry, weapons, and idols.
- Furnaces were also used in the making of clay pottery.
- Sometimes a furnace is referred to figuratively to explain that something is very hot.

(See also: false god, [image](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:51
- Genesis 19:28
- Proverbs 17:03
- Psalms 021:09
- Revelation 09:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H861, H3536, H3564, H5948, H8574, G2575

(Go back to: [Matthew 13:42](#); [13:50](#))

Galilee, Galilean

Facts:

Galilee was the most northern region of Israel, just north of Samaria. A “Galilean” was a person who lived in Galilee or who lived in Galilee.

- Galilee, Samaria, and Judea were the three main provinces of Israel during New Testament times.
- Galilee is bordered on the east by a large lake called the “Sea of Galilee.”
- Jesus grew up and lived in the town of Nazareth in Galilee.
- Most of the miracles and teachings of Jesus took place in the region of Galilee.

(See also: [Nazareth](#), [Samaria](#), [Sea of Galilee](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 09:32
- Acts 13:31
- John 02:1-2
- John 04:03
- Luke 13:03
- Mark 03:07
- Matthew 02:22-23
- Matthew 03:13-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:10** The prophet Isaiah said the Messiah would live in **Galilee**, comfort broken-hearted people, and proclaim freedom to captives and release to prisoners.
- **26:01** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of the Holy Spirit to the region of **Galilee** where he lived.
- **39:06** Finally, the people said, “We know that you were with Jesus because you both are from **Galilee**.”
- **41:06** Then the angel told the women, “Go and tell the disciples, ‘Jesus has risen from the dead and he will go to **Galilee** ahead of you.’”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1551, G1056, G1057

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:22](#); [3:13](#); [4:12](#); [4:15](#); [4:18](#); [4:23](#); [4:25](#); [15:29](#); [17:22](#); [19:1](#); [21:11](#); [26:32](#); [26:69](#); [27:55](#); [28:7](#); [28:10](#); [28:16](#))

gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Definition:

A “gate” is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city. The “gate bar” refers to a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place so that the gate cannot be opened from the outside.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase “bars of the gate” could be translated as “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

Bible References:

- Acts 09:24
- Acts 10:18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:01
- Genesis 24:60
- Matthew 07:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G2374, G4439, G4440

(Go back to: [Matthew 7:13](#); [7:14](#); [26:71](#))

generation

Definition:

The term “generation” generally refers to a group of people who are all alive at the same time. They are all born in the same general time period and are therefore about the same age.

- A generation can also refer to a span of time. In Bible times, a generation was usually considered to be about 40 years.
- Parents and their children are from two different generations.
- In the Bible, the term “generation” is also used figuratively to refer generally to people who share common characteristics.

Translation Suggestions

- The phrase “this generation” or “people of this generation” could be translated as “the people living now” or “you people.”
- “This wicked generation” could also be translated as “these wicked people living now.”
- The expression “from generation to generation” or “from one generation to the next” could be translated as “people living now, as well as their children and grandchildren” or “people in every time period” or “people in this time period and future time periods” or “all people and their descendants.”
- “A generation to come will serve him; they will tell the next generation about Yahweh” could also be translated as “Many people in the future will serve Yahweh and will tell their children and grandchildren about him.”

(See also: descendant, [evil](#), [ancestor](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 15:19-21
- Exodus 03:13-15
- Genesis 15:16
- Genesis 17:07
- Mark 08:12
- Matthew 11:16
- Matthew 23:34-36
- Matthew 24:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1755, H1859, H8435, G1074

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:17](#); [11:16](#); [12:39](#); [12:41](#); [12:42](#); [12:45](#); [16:4](#); [17:17](#); [23:36](#); [24:34](#))

Gentile

Facts:

The term "Gentile" refers to anyone who is not a Jew. Gentiles are people who are not descendants of Jacob.

- In the Bible, the term "uncircumcised" is also used figuratively to refer to Gentiles because many of them did not circumcise their male children as the Israelites did.
- Because God chose the Jews to be his special people, they thought of the Gentiles as outsiders who could never be God's people.
- The Jews were also called "Israelites" or "Hebrews" at different times in history. They referred to anyone else as a "Gentile."
- Gentile could also be translated as "not a Jew" or "non-Jewish" or "not an Israelite" (Old Testament) or "non-Jew."
- Traditionally, Jews would neither eat with nor associate with Gentiles, which at first caused problems within the early church.

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Jew](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 09:13-16
- Acts 14:5-7
- Galatians 02:16
- Luke 02:32
- Matthew 05:47
- Matthew 06:5-7
- Romans 11:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1471, G1482, G1484, G1672

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:15](#); [5:47](#); [6:32](#); [10:5](#); [10:18](#); [12:18](#); [12:21](#); [20:19](#); [20:25](#))

Gethsemane

Facts:

Gethsemane was a garden of olive trees east of Jerusalem beyond the Kidron valley and near the Mount of Olives.

- The garden of Gethsemane was a place where Jesus and his followers would go to be alone and rest, away from the crowds.
- It was in Gethsemane that Jesus prayed in deep sorrow, before being arrested there by Jewish leaders.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Judas Iscariot](#), Kidron Valley, [Mount of Olives](#))

Bible References:

- Mark 14:32
- Matthew 26:36

Word Data:

- Strong's: G1068

(Go back to: [Matthew 26:36](#))

gift

Definition:

The term “gift” refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

- Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called “gifts.”
- In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift.
- The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
- In the New Testament, the term “gifts” is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “gift” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “something that is given.”
- In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term “gift from the Spirit” could be translated as “spiritual ability” or “special ability from the Holy Spirit” or “special spiritual skill that God gave.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:01
- 2 Samuel 11:08
- Acts 08:20
- Acts 10:04
- Acts 11:17
- Acts 24:17
- James 01:17
- John 04:9-10
- Matthew 05:23
- Matthew 08:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H814, H4503, H4864, H4976, H4978, H4979, H4991, H5078, H5083, H5379, H7810, H8641, G334, G1390, G1394, G1431, G1434, G1435, G3311, G5486

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:11](#); [5:23](#); [5:24](#); [7:11](#); [8:4](#); [15:5](#); [23:18](#); [23:19](#))

glory, glorious, glorify

Definition:

The term “glory” is a general term for a family of concepts including value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, or majesty. The term “glorify” means to ascribe glory to someone or something, or to show or tell how glorious something or someone is.

- In the Bible, the term “glory” is especially used to describe God, who is more valuable, more worthy, more important, more honorable, more splendid, and more majestic than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything about his character reveals his glory.
- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done. They can also glorify God by living in accordance with God's character, because doing so shows to others his value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, and majesty.
- The expression to “glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

Old Testament

- The specific phrase “the glory of Yahweh” in the Old Testament usually refers to some perceptible manifestation of Yahweh's presence in a particular location.

New Testament

- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to all people the full extent of how glorious Jesus is.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. This use of the term “glorify” carries a unique meaning. It means that when people who believe in Christ are raised to life, they will be changed physically to be like Jesus as he appeared after his resurrection.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God's greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”
- “Glorify” could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God's greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as, “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: [honor](#), majesty, [exalt](#), [obey](#), [praise](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:02
- Luke 18:43
- Luke 02:09
- John 12:28

- Acts 03:13-14
- Acts 07:1-3
- Romans 08:17
- 1 Corinthians 06:19-20
- Philippians 02:14-16
- Philippians 04:19
- Colossians 03:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 02:05
- James 02:1-4
- 1 Peter 04:15-16
- Revelation 15:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glor**y to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **25:06** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glor**y and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- **37:01** When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glor**y of God.”
- **37:08** Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glor**y if you believe in me?”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H117, H142, H155, H215, H1342, H1921, H1926, H1935, H1984, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8597, G1391, G1392, G1740, G1741, G2744, G4888

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:8](#); [5:16](#); [6:2](#); [6:29](#); [9:8](#); [15:31](#); [16:27](#); [Notes](#); [19:28](#); [24:30](#); [25:31](#))

goat, goatskins, scapegoat, kids

Definition:

A goat is a medium-sized, four-legged animal which is similar to a sheep and is raised primarily for its milk and meat. A baby goat is called a “kid.”

- Like sheep, goats were important animals of sacrifice, especially at Passover.
- Although goats and sheep can be very similar, these are some ways that they are different:
 - Goats have coarse hair; sheep have wool.
 - The tail of a goat stands up; the tail of a sheep hangs down.
 - Sheep usually like to stay with their herd, but goats are more independent and tend to wander away from their herd.
- In Bible times, goats were often the main source of milk in Israel.
- Goat skins were used for tent coverings and to make bags for holding wine.
- In both the Old and New Testaments, the goat was used as a symbol for unrighteous people, perhaps because of its tendency to wander away from the one taking care of it.
- The Israelites also used goats as symbolic sin bearers. When one goat was sacrificed, the priest would lay his hands on a second, live goat, and send it into the desert as a symbol that the animal was bearing the people's sins.

(See also: [flock](#), [sacrifice](#), [sheep](#), [righteous](#), [wine](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 12:3-4
- Genesis 30:32
- Genesis 31:10
- Genesis 37:31
- Leviticus 03:12-14
- Matthew 25:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H689, H1423, H1429, H3277, H3629, H5795, H5796, H6260, H6629, H6842, H7716, H8163, H8166, H8495, G122, G2055, G2056, G5131

(Go back to: [Matthew 25:32](#); [25:33](#))

God

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”
NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [create](#), false god, [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), false god, [Son of God](#), Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 04:10
- Colossians 01:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 03:1-2
- Genesis 01:02
- Hosea 04:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 02:20
- Jeremiah 05:05
- John 01:03
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Lamentations 03:43
- Micah 04:05
- Philippians 02:06
- Proverbs 24:12
- Psalms 047:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **01:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **05:03** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **09:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:02** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:07** You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:09** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:07** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:01** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:09** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H136, H305, H410, H426, H430, H433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G112, G516, G932, G935, G1096, G1140, G2098, G2124, G2128, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2299, G2304, G2305, G2312, G2313, G2314, G2315, G2316, G2317, G2318, G2319, G2320, G3361, G3785, G4151, G5207, G5377, G5463, G5537, G5538

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:23](#); [3:9](#); [3:16](#); [4:3](#); [4:4](#); [4:6](#); [4:7](#); [4:10](#); [5:8](#); [5:9](#); [5:34](#); [6:24](#); [6:30](#); [8:29](#); [9:8](#); [12:4](#); [12:28](#); [14:33](#); [15:3](#); [15:4](#); [15:6](#); [15:31](#); [16:16](#); [16:23](#); [19:6](#); [19:24](#); [19:26](#); [21:31](#); [21:43](#); [22:16](#); [22:21](#); [22:29](#); [22:31](#); [22:32](#); [22:37](#); [23:22](#); [26:61](#); [26:63](#); [27:40](#); [27:43](#); [27:46](#); [27:54](#))

God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

Facts:

The terms "God the Father" and "heavenly Father" refer to Yahweh, the one true God. Another term with the same meaning is "Father," used most often when Jesus was referring to him.

- God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
- God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
- Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

Translation Suggestions:

- In translating the phrase "God the Father," it is best to translate "Father" with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
- The term "heavenly Father" could be translated by "Father who lives in heaven" or "Father God who lives in heaven" or "God our Father from heaven."
- Usually "Father" is capitalized when it, refers to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ancestor](#), [God](#), [heaven](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [Son of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 08:4-6
- 1 John 02:01
- 1 John 02:23
- 1 John 03:01
- Colossians 01:1-3
- Ephesians 05:18-21
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 05:16
- Matthew 23:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:09** There is only one God. But John heard **God the Father** speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **29:09** Then Jesus said, "This is what my **heavenly Father** will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart."
- **37:09** Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, "**Father**, thank you for hearing me."
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! **Father**, I give my spirit into your hands."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of **the Father**, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:08** "Jesus is now exalted to the right hand of **God the Father**."
- **50:10** "Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of **God their Father**."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H2, G3962

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:16](#); [5:45](#); [5:48](#); [6:1](#); [6:4](#); [6:6](#); [6:8](#); [6:9](#); [6:14](#); [6:15](#); [6:18](#); [6:26](#); [6:32](#); [7:11](#); [7:21](#); [10:20](#); [10:29](#); [10:32](#); [10:33](#); [11:25](#); [11:26](#); [11:27](#); [12:50](#); [13:43](#); [15:13](#); [16:17](#); [16:27](#); [18:10](#); [18:14](#); [18:19](#); [18:35](#); [20:23](#); [23:9](#); [24:36](#); [25:34](#); [26:29](#); [26:39](#); [26:53](#); [28:19](#))

gold, golden

Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), ark of the covenant, false god, [silver](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:07
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 01:15
- Acts 03:06
- Daniel 02:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6884, H6885, G5552, G5553, G5554, G5557

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:11](#); [10:9](#); [23:16](#); [23:17](#))

Golgotha

Facts:

“Golgotha” was the name of the place where Jesus was crucified. Its name comes from an Aramaic word that means “Skull” or “Place of the Skull.”

- Golgotha was located outside the city walls of Jerusalem, somewhere nearby. It was perhaps located on a slope of the Mount of Olives.
- In some older English versions of the Bible, Golgotha is translated as “Calvary,” which comes from the Latin word for “skull.”
- Many Bible versions use a word that looks or sounds similar to “Golgotha,” since its meaning is already explained in the Bible text.

(Translation Suggestion: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Aram, [Mount of Olives](#))

Bible References:

- John 19:17
- Mark 15:22
- Matthew 27:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: G1115

([Go back to: Matthew 27:33](#))

Gomorrah

Facts:

Gomorrah was a city located in a fertile valley near Sodom, where Abraham's nephew Lot chose to live.

- The exact location of Gomorrah and Sodom is unknown, but there are indications that they may have been located directly south of the Salt Sea, near the Valley of Siddim.
- There were many kings at war in the region where Sodom and Gomorrah were located.
- When Lot's family was captured in a conflict between Sodom and other cities, Abraham and his men rescued them.
- Not long after that, Sodom and Gomorrah were destroyed by God because of the wickedness of the people who lived there.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#) , [Babylon](#), Lot, Salt Sea, [Sodom](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:06
- Genesis 10:19
- Genesis 14:1-2
- Genesis 18:21
- Isaiah 01:9
- Matthew 10:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6017

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:15](#))

good news, gospel

Definition:

The term “gospel” literally means “good news” and refers to a message or announcement that tells people something that benefits them and makes them glad.

- In the Bible, this term usually refers to the message about God’s salvation for people through Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross.
- In most English Bibles, “good news” is usually translated as “gospel” and is also used in phrases such as, the “gospel of Jesus Christ,” the “gospel of God” and the “gospel of the kingdom.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways to translate this term could include, “good message” or “good announcement” or “God’s message of salvation” or “the good things God teaches about Jesus.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase, “good news of” could include, “good news/ message about” or “good message from” or “the good things God tells us about” or “what God says about how he saves people.”

(See also: [kingdom](#), [sacrifice](#), [save](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:05
- Acts 08:25
- Colossians 01:23
- Galatians 01:06
- Luke 08:1-3
- Mark 01:14
- Philippians 02:22
- Romans 01:03

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:06** The angel said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some **good news** for you. The Messiah, the Master, has been born in Bethlehem!”
- **26:03** Jesus read, “God has given me his Spirit so that I can proclaim **good news** to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed. This is the year of the Lord’s favor.”
- **45:10** Philip also used other Scriptures to tell him the **good news of Jesus**.
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to preach the **good news about Jesus** in many other places.
- **47:01** One day, Paul and his friend Silas went to the town of Philippi to proclaim the **good news about Jesus**.
- **47:13** The **good news about Jesus** kept spreading, and the Church kept growing.
- **50:01** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the **good news about Jesus** the Messiah.
- **50:02** When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will preach the **good news** about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”
- **50:03** Before he returned to heaven, Jesus told Christians to proclaim the **good news** to people who have never heard it.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G2097, G2098, G4283

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:23](#); [9:35](#); [24:14](#); [26:13](#))

good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

Definition:

The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God’s character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
- A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
- A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, “a good farmer.”
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
- The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [evil](#), [holy](#), [profit](#), [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 01:12
- Genesis 02:09
- Genesis 02:17
- James 03:13
- Romans 02:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:04** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **01:11** God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.”
- **01:12** Then God said, “It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- **02:04** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- **08:12** “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good**!”
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.

- **28:01** “**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘**good**?’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H145, H155, H202, H239, H410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G14, G15, G18, G19, G515, G744, G865, G979, G1380, G2095, G2097, G2106, G2107, G2108, G2109, G2114, G2115, G2133, G2140, G2162, G2163, G2174, G2293, G2565, G2567, G2570, G2573, G2887, G2986, G3140, G3617, G3776, G4147, G4632, G4674, G4851, G5223, G5224, G5358, G5542, G5543, G5544

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:10](#); [5:16](#); [5:45](#); [7:11](#); [7:17](#); [7:18](#); [7:19](#); [12:12](#); [12:33](#); [12:34](#); [12:35](#); [13:8](#); [13:23](#); [13:24](#); [13:27](#); [13:37](#); [13:38](#); [13:45](#); [13:48](#); [15:26](#); [17:4](#); [18:8](#); [18:9](#); [19:16](#); [19:17](#); [20:15](#); [22:10](#); [25:21](#); [25:23](#); [26:10](#); [26:24](#))

govern, government, governor, proconsul

Definition:

A “governor” is a person who rules over a state, region, or territory. To “govern” means to guide, lead, or manage them.

- The term “proconsul” was a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Roman province.
- In Bible times, governors were appointed by a king or emperor and were under his authority.
- A “government” consists of all the rulers who govern a certain country or empire. These rulers make laws that guide the behavior of their citizens so that there is peace, safety, and prosperity for all the people of that nation.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “governor” can also be translated as “ruler” or “overseer” or “regional leader” or “one who rules over a small territory.”
- Depending on the context, the term “govern” could also be translated as, “rule over” or “lead” or “manage” or supervise.”
- The term “governor” should be translated differently than the terms for “king” or “emperor”, since a governor was a less powerful ruler who was under their authority.
- The term “proconsul” could also be translated as, “Roman governor” or “Roman provincial ruler.”

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [power](#), province, Rome, [ruler](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 23:22
- Acts 26:30
- Mark 13:9-10
- Matthew 10:18
- Matthew 27:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H324, H1777, H2280, H4951, H5148, H5460, H6346, H6347, H6486, H7989, H8269, H8660, G445, G446, G746, G1481, G2232, G2233, G2230, G4232

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:6](#); [10:18](#); [27:2](#); [27:11](#); [27:14](#); [27:15](#); [27:21](#); [27:27](#); [28:14](#))

grain, grainfields

Definition:

The term “grain” usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

- In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
- A head of grain is the part of the plant that holds the grain.
- Note that some older Bible versions use the word “corn” to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, “corn” only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: [head](#), [wheat](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 42:03
- Genesis 42:26-28
- Genesis 43:1-2
- Luke 06:02
- Mark 02:24
- Matthew 13:7-9
- Ruth 01:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1250, H1430, H1715, H2233, H2591, H3759, H3899, H7054, H7383, H7641, H7668, G248, G2590, G3450, G4621, G4719

(Go back to: [Matthew 12:1](#); [13:8](#); [13:31](#); [17:20](#))

grape, grapevine

Definition:

A grape is a small, round, smooth-skinned berry fruit that grows in clusters on vines. The juice of grapes is used in making wine.

- There are different colors of grapes, such as light green, purple, or red.
- Individual grapes can be around one to three centimeters in size.
- People grow grapes in gardens called vineyards. These normally consist of long rows of vines.
- Grapes were a very important food during Bible times and having vineyards was a sign of wealth.
- In order to keep grapes from rotting, people would often dry them. Dried grapes are called "raisins" and they were used to make raisin cakes.
- Jesus told a parable about a grape vineyard to teach his disciples about God's kingdom.

(See also: [vine](#), [vineyard](#), [wine](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 23:24
- Hosea 09:10
- Job 15:33
- Luke 06:43-44
- Matthew 07:15-17
- Matthew 21:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H811, H891, H1154, H1155, H1210, H3196, H5955, H6025, H6528, G288, G4718

(Go back to: [Matthew 7:16](#))

grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

Definition:

The terms “tomb” and “grave” refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A “burial place” is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include “cave” or “hole in the side of a hill.”
- The phrase “the grave” is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: [bury](#), [death](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 02:29-31
- Genesis 23:06
- Genesis 50:05
- John 19:41
- Luke 23:53
- Mark 05:1-2
- Matthew 27:53
- Romans 03:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **32:04** The man lived among the **tombs** in the area.
- **37:06** Jesus asked them, “Where have you put Lazarus?” They told him, “In the **tomb**. Come and see.”
- **37:07** The **tomb** was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- **40:09** Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus’ body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a **tomb** cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the **tomb** to block the opening.
- **41:04** He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the **tomb** and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the **tomb** were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- **41:05** When the women arrived at the **tomb**, the angel told them, “Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the **tomb** and see.” The women looked into the **tomb** and saw where Jesus’ body had been laid. His body was not there!

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G3418, G3419, G5028

(Go back to: [Matthew 8:28](#); [23:27](#); [23:29](#); [27:52](#); [27:53](#); [27:60](#); [27:61](#); [27:64](#); [27:66](#); [28:1](#); [28:8](#))

Hades, Sheol

Definition:

The terms "Hades" (in Greek) and "Sheol" (in Hebrew) are proper names for the "underworld," meaning an underground dwelling place where people from ancient cultures believed a dead person would go after he had died.

- In the Old Testament, the Hebrew term "Sheol" can be used either as a proper name or as a common noun meaning "underground."
- In the New Testament, the Greek term "Hades" is described as a place for dead people who have rejected Jesus. The New Testament describes people as "going down" to Hades.

Translation Suggestions

- The Old Testament term "Sheol" can be translated in various ways, depending on the context. Some possibilities include: "place of the dead;" "place for dead spirits;" "the pit;" or "death."
- The New Testament term "Hades" can also be translated in various ways, depending on the context. Some possibilities include: "place for unbelieving dead souls;" "place of torment for the dead;" or "place for the souls of unbelieving dead people."
- Some translations keep the proper names "Sheol" and "Hades," spelling them to fit the sound patterns of the language of translation. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#)).
- A phrase could also be added to each term to explain it, examples of doing this are, "Sheol, place where dead people are" and "Hades, place of death."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [death](#), [heaven](#), [hell](#), [tomb](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 02:31
- Genesis 44:29
- Jonah 02:02
- Luke 10:15
- Luke 16:23
- Matthew 11:23
- Matthew 16:18
- Revelation 01:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7585, G86

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:23](#); [16:18](#))

hand

Definition:

The word “hand” refers to the part of the body at the end of the arm. In the Bible, this term is associated with a person's power, control, or action, whether it be in reference to God or in reference to a human person.

Some of the various uses of the term “hand” include the following:

- To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.”
- To “save from the hand of” means to prevent someone from being harmed by another person.
- The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
- The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, the phrase “by the hand of the Lord” means that God caused something to happen.
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- The term “laying on of hands” can refer to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service, to pray for healing, or to ask God to bless that person.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that he himself wrote that part of the letter rather than speaking it to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as, “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [bless](#), [captive](#), [honor](#), [power](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:25
- Acts 08:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 09:05
- Genesis 14:20
- John 03:35
- Mark 07:32
- Matthew 06:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G710, G1188, G1448, G1451, G2176, G2902, G4084, G4474, G5495, G5496, G5497

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:12](#); [4:6](#); [5:30](#); [8:3](#); [8:15](#); [9:18](#); [9:25](#); [12:10](#); [12:13](#); [12:49](#); [14:31](#); [15:2](#); [15:20](#); [17:22](#); [18:8](#); [19:13](#); [19:15](#); [20:21](#); [20:23](#); [22:13](#); [25:33](#); [25:41](#); [26:23](#); [26:45](#); [26:50](#); [26:51](#); [27:24](#))

hang, hung

Definition:

The term "hang" means to suspend something or someone above the ground.

- In modern times, death by hanging is usually done by tying a rope around a person's neck and suspending him from an elevated object until he dies. This elevated object can be any number of things, such as a tree or a gallows, that is, a platform built specifically for the purpose of hanging a person in order to kill him.
- In biblical times, however, ancient cultures may not have killed people by hanging in precisely the same way. For example, Jesus died while hanging on a wooden cross (sometimes called a "tree"), but there was nothing around his neck. The soldiers suspended him by nailing his hands (or wrists) and his feet to the cross.
- Some ancient cultures "hung" a person by impaling him on a wooden pole in such a way that he was suspended above the ground so that he could not escape. The person would be left there until he died.
- For many references to death by "hanging" in the Bible, the specific means of death is unknown.

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 17:23
- Acts 10:39
- Galatians 03:13
- Genesis 40:22
- Matthew 27:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2614, H3363, H8518, G519

(Go back to: [Matthew 27:5](#))

hard, harden, hardness

Definition:

The term “hard” has several different meanings, depending on the context. It usually describes something that is difficult, persistent, or unyielding.

- The expressions “hard heart” or “hard-headed” refer to people who are stubbornly unrepentant. These expressions describe people who persist in disobeying God.
- The figurative expressions “hardness of heart” and “hardness of their hearts” also refer to stubborn disobedience.
- If someone’s heart is “hardened” this means that person refuses to obey and remains stubbornly unrepentant.
- When used as an adverb, as in “work hard” or “try hard,” it means to do something very strongly and diligently, making an effort to do something very well.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “hard” could also be translated as “difficult” or “stubborn” or “challenging,” depending on the context.
- The terms “hardness” or “hardness of heart” or “hard heart” could be translated as “stubbornness” or “persistent rebellion” or “rebellious attitude” or “stubborn disobedience” or “stubbornly not repenting.”
- The term “hardened” could also be translated as “stubbornly unrepentant” or “refusing to obey.”
- “Do not harden your heart” could be translated as “do not refuse to repent” or “do not stubbornly keep disobeying.”
- Other ways to translate “hard-headed” or “hard-hearted” could include “stubbornly disobedient” or “continuing to disobey” or “refusing to repent” or “always rebelling.”
- In expressions such as “work hard” or “try hard,” the term “hard” could be translated as “with perseverance” or “diligently.”
- The expression “press hard against” could also be translated as “shove with force” or “push strongly against.”
- To “oppress people with hard labor” could be translated as “force people to work so hard that they suffer” or “cause people to suffer by forcing them to do very difficult work.”
- A different kind of “hard labor” is experienced by a woman who is about to deliver a baby.

(See also: disobey, [evil](#), [heart](#), labor pains, stiff-necked)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 11:23
- Deuteronomy 15:07
- Exodus 14:04
- Hebrews 04:07
- John 12:40
- Matthew 19:08

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H553, H1692, H2388, H2389, H2420, H2864, H3021, H3332, H3513, H3515, H3966, H4165, H4522, H5450, H5647, H5797, H5810, H5980, H5999, H6089, H6381, H6635, H7185, H7186, H7188, H7280, H8068, H8307, H8631, G917, G1419, G1421, G1422, G1423, G2205, G2532, G2553, G2872, G2873, G3425, G3433, G4053, G4183, G4456, G4457, G4641, G4642, G4643, G4645, G4912

(Go back to: [Matthew 19:8](#); [19:23](#); [25:24](#))

harvest, reap

Definition:

The term “harvest” refers to the gather the ripe fruits, vegetables, seeds, or grains from the plants on which they were growing. The term “reap” means to harvest crops.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a “Festival of Harvest” or “Festival of Ingathering” to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In biblical times, reapers usually harvested crops by hand, either pulling up the plants or cutting them with a sharp cutting tool.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate the concept with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as, “time of gathering in” or “crop gathering time” or “fruit picking time.”
- The verb to “harvest” could be translated as, to “gather in” or to “pick up” or to “collect.”

(See also: firstfruits, [festival](#), [good news](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 09:9-11
- 2 Samuel 21:7-9
- Galatians 06:9-10
- Isaiah 17:11
- James 05:7-8
- Leviticus 19:09
- Matthew 09:38
- Ruth 01:22
- Galatians 06:9-10
- Matthew 06:25-26
- Matthew 13:30
- Matthew 13:36-39
- Matthew 25:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2758, H4395, H4672 H7105, H7114, H7938, G270, G2325, G2326, G2327

(Go back to: [Matthew 6:26](#); [9:37](#); [9:38](#); [13:30](#); [13:39](#); [25:24](#); [25:26](#))

head

Definition:

The word "head" refers to the uppermost body part of a human body, above the neck. This term is often used figuratively to mean many different things, including "top," "first," "beginning," "source," and other concepts.

Some examples of various uses of the term "head" include:

- The expression "no razor will ever touch his head" means that he should never cut or shave his hair.
- The expression "let their blood be on his own head" means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
- The expression "heads of grain" refers to the top part of wheat or barley plants that contains the seeds. Similarly, the expression "head of a mountain" refers to the top part of the mountain.
- The term "head" can also refer to the beginning or source of something, or the first in a series of things (can be objects or people).
- Often the term "head" refers to the most important person in a group or to a person who is in authority over others. For example, the phrase "You have made me the head over nations" means "You have made me the ruler..." or "You have given me authority over...."

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "head" could be translated as "authority" or "ruler" or "the one who is responsible for."
- The expression "will be on his own head" could be translated as "will be on him" or "he will be punished for" or "he will be held responsible for" or "he will be considered guilty for."
- Depending on the context, some other ways to translate this term might include "top" or "beginning" or "source" or "leader."

(See also: [grain](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:51-54
- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 09:22
- Colossians 02:10
- Colossians 02:19
- Numbers 01:04

Word Data:

- Strong's: H441, H1270, H1538, H3852, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6287, H6797, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G346, G755, G2775, G2776, G4719

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:36](#); [6:17](#); [8:20](#); [10:30](#); [14:8](#); [14:11](#); [21:42](#); [26:7](#); [27:29](#); [27:30](#); [27:37](#); [27:39](#))

heart

Definition:

The term "heart" refers to the internal bodily organ that pumps blood throughout the body in people and animals. However, in the Bible the term "heart" is often used figuratively to refer to a person's thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a "hard heart" is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" mean to do something with complete sincerity, commitment, or willingness, holding nothing back.
- The expression "take it to heart" means to treat something seriously and apply it to one's life.
- The term "brokenhearted" describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as "stomach" or "liver" to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If "heart" or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as "thoughts" or "emotions" or "desires."
- Depending on the context, "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" could be translated as "with all my energy" or "with complete dedication" or "completely" or "with total commitment."
- The expression "take it to heart" could be translated as "treat it seriously" or "carefully think about it."
- The expression "hard-hearted" could also be translated as "stubbornly rebellious" or "refusing to obey" or "continually disobeying God."
- Ways to translate "brokenhearted" could include "very sad" or "feeling deeply hurt."

(See also: [hard](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:17
- 1 Thessalonians 02:04
- 2 Thessalonians 03:13-15
- Acts 08:22
- Acts 15:09
- Luke 08:15
- Mark 02:06
- Matthew 05:08
- Matthew 22:37

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1079, H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H5640, H7130, H7307, H7356, H7907, G674, G1282, G1271, G2133, G2588, G2589, G4641, G4698, G5590

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:8](#); [5:28](#); [6:21](#); [9:4](#); [11:29](#); [12:34](#); [12:40](#); [13:15](#); [13:19](#); [15:8](#); [15:18](#); [15:19](#); [18:35](#); [22:37](#); [24:48](#))

heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

Translation Suggestions:

- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: [kingdom of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Deuteronomy 09:01
- Ephesians 06:9
- Genesis 01:01
- Genesis 07:11
- John 03:12
- John 03:27
- Matthew 05:18
- Matthew 05:46-48

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:02** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **29:09** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:09** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:2](#); [3:16](#); [3:17](#); [4:17](#); [5:3](#); [5:10](#); [5:12](#); [5:16](#); [5:18](#); [5:19](#); [5:20](#); [5:34](#); [5:45](#); [5:48](#); [6:1](#); [6:9](#); [6:10](#); [6:14](#); [6:20](#); [6:26](#); [6:32](#); [7:11](#); [7:21](#); [8:11](#); [8:20](#); [10:7](#); [10:32](#); [10:33](#); [11:11](#); [11:12](#); [11:23](#); [11:25](#); [12:50](#); [13:11](#); [13:24](#); [13:31](#); [13:32](#); [13:33](#); [13:44](#); [13:45](#); [13:47](#); [13:52](#); [14:19](#); [15:13](#); [16:1](#); [16:17](#); [16:19](#); [18:1](#); [18:3](#); [18:4](#); [18:10](#); [18:14](#); [18:18](#); [18:19](#); [18:23](#); [18:35](#); [19:12](#); [19:14](#); [19:21](#); [19:23](#); [20:1](#); [21:25](#); [22:2](#); [22:30](#); [23:9](#); [23:13](#); [23:22](#); [24:29](#); [24:30](#); [24:31](#); [24:35](#); [24:36](#); [25:1](#); [26:64](#); [28:2](#); [28:18](#))

heir

Definition:

An “heir” is a person who legally receives property or money that belonged to a person who has died.

- In Bible times, the main heir was the firstborn son, who received most of the property and money of his father.
- The Bible also uses “heir” in a figurative sense to refer to person who as a Christian receives spiritual benefits from God, his spiritual father.
- As God’s children, Christians are said to be “joint heirs” with Jesus Christ. This could also be translated as “co-heirs” or “fellow heirs” or “heirs together with.”
- The term “heir” could be translated as “person receiving benefits” or whatever expression is used in the language to communicate the meaning of someone who receives property and other things when a parent or other relative dies.

(See also: firstborn, [inherit](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:1-2
- Galatians 04:07
- Genesis 15:01
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 20:14
- Mark 12:07
- Matthew 21:38-39

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1121, H3423, G2816, G2818, G2820, G4789

(Go back to: [Matthew 21:38](#))

hell, lake of fire

Definition:

Hell is the final place of unending pain and suffering where God will punish everyone who rebels against him and rejects his plan of saving them through Jesus' sacrifice. It is also referred to as the "lake of fire."

- Hell is described as a place of fire and severe suffering.
- Satan and the evil spirits who follow him will be thrown into hell for eternal punishment.
- People who do not believe in Jesus' sacrifice for their sin and do not trust in him to save them, will be punished forever in hell.

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms should probably be translated differently since they occur in different contexts.
- Some languages cannot use "lake" in the phrase "lake of fire" because it refers to water.
- The term "hell" could be translated as "place of suffering" or "final place of darkness and pain."
- The term "lake of fire" could also be translated as, "sea of fire" or "huge fire (of suffering)" or "field of fire."

(See also: [heaven](#), [death](#), [Hades](#), [abyss](#))

Bible References:

- James 03:06
- Luke 12:05
- Mark 09:42-44
- Matthew 05:21-22
- Matthew 05:29
- Matthew 10:28-31
- Matthew 23:33
- Matthew 25:41-43
- Revelation 20:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **50:14** He (God) will throw them into **hell**, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever. A fire that never goes out will continually burn them, and worms will never stop eating them.
- **50:15** He will throw Satan into **hell** where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7585, G86, G439, G440, G1067, G3041, G4442, G4443, G4447, G4448, G5020, G5394, G5457

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:22](#); [5:29](#); [5:30](#); [10:28](#); [18:9](#); [23:15](#); [23:33](#))

Herod, Herod Antipas

Facts:

During most of Jesus' lifetime, Herod Antipas was the ruler of the part of the Roman Empire that included Galilee province.

- Like his father Herod the Great, Antipas was sometimes referred to as "King Herod" even though he was not really a king.
- Herod Antipas ruled about one-fourth of the provinces of Israel, so he was also called "Herod the tetrarch." "Tetrarch" was a title for a person who ruled one-fourth of a country.
- Antipas is the "Herod" who gave the order for John the Baptist to be killed by beheading.
- It was also Herod Antipas who questioned Jesus before his crucifixion.
- The other Herods in the New Testament were Antipas' son (Agrippa) and grandson (Agrippa 2) who ruled during the time of the apostles.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [crucify](#), [Herod the Great](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [king](#), [Rome](#))

Bible References:

- Luke 03:1-2
- Luke 03:20
- Luke 09:09
- Luke 13:32
- Luke 23:09
- Mark 06:20
- Matthew 14:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2264, G2265, G2267

(Go back to: [Matthew 14:1](#); [14:3](#); [14:6](#))

Herod, Herod the Great

Facts:

Herod the Great was ruling over Judea at the time Jesus was born. He was the first of several Edomite rulers named Herod who ruled over parts of the Roman Empire.

- His ancestors converted to Judaism and he was raised as a Jew.
- Caesar Augustus named him "King Herod" even though he was not a true king. He ruled over the Jews in Judea for 33 years.
- Herod the Great was known for the beautiful buildings he ordered to be built and for the rebuilding of the Jewish temple in Jerusalem.
- This Herod was very cruel and had many people killed. When he heard that a "king of the Jews" had been born in Bethlehem, he had all the baby boys in that town killed.
- His sons Herod Antipas and Herod Philip and his grandson Herod Agrippa also became Roman rulers. His great-grandson Herod Agrippa II (called "King Agrippa") ruled over the entire area of Judea.

(See [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Herod Antipas](#), [Judea](#), [king](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- Matthew 02:03
- Matthew 02:12
- Matthew 02:16
- Matthew 02:20
- Matthew 02:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2264

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:1](#); [2:3](#); [2:7](#); [2:12](#); [2:13](#); [2:15](#); [2:16](#); [2:19](#); [2:22](#))

Herodias

Facts:

Herodias was the wife of Herod Antipas in Judea during the time of John the Baptist.

- Herodias was originally the wife of Herod Antipas's brother Philip, but later she unlawfully married Herod Antipas.
- John the Baptist rebuked Herod and Herodias for their unlawful marriage. Because of this, Herod put John in prison and because of Herodias eventually was beheaded.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Herod Antipas](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#))

Bible References:

- Luke 03:19
- Mark 06:17
- Mark 06:22
- Matthew 14:04

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2266

(Go back to: [Matthew 14:3](#); [14:6](#))

Hezekiah

Definition:

Hezekiah was the 13th king over the kingdom of Judah. He was a king who trusted and obeyed God.

- Unlike his father Ahaz, who had been an evil king, King Hezekiah was a good king who destroyed all the places of idol worship in Judah.
- One time when Hezekiah became very sick and almost died, he earnestly prayed that God would spare his life. God healed him and allowed him to live 15 more years.
- As a sign to Hezekiah that this would happen, God performed a miracle and caused the sun to move backwards in the sky.
- God also answered Hezekiah's prayer to save his people from King Sennacherib of Assyria, who was attacking them.

(See also: [Ahaz](#), Assyria, false god, [Judah](#), Sennacherib)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:13-14
- 2 Kings 16:19-20
- Hosea 01:01
- Matthew 01:9-11
- Proverbs 25:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2396, H3169, G1478

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:9](#); [1:10](#))

high priest, chief priests

Definition:

The term “high priest” refers to a special priest who was appointed to serve for one year as the leader of all of the other Israelite priests. In New Testament times, some other priests were also considered very important Jewish religious leaders, with authority over other priests and the people. These were the chief priests.

- The high priest had special responsibilities. He was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy part of the tabernacle or the temple to offer a special sacrifice once per year.
- The Israelites had many priests, but only one high priest at a time.
- After high priests retired, they still kept the title, along with some of the responsibilities of the office. For example, Annas was still referred to as high priest during the priesthood of Caiaphas and others.
- The chief priests were responsible for everything needed for the worship services at the temple. They were also in charge of the money that was given to the temple.
- The chief priests were higher in rank and power than the ordinary priests. Only the high priest had more authority.
- The chief priests were some of Jesus’ main enemies and they strongly influenced the Roman leaders to arrest and kill him.

Translation Suggestions:

- “High priest” could be translated as “supreme priest” or “highest ranking priest.”
- The term “chief priests” could be translated as “head priests” or “leading priests” or “ruling priests.”

(See also: Annas, [Caiaphas](#), [priest](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 05:27
- Acts 07:01
- Acts 09:01
- Exodus 30:10
- Hebrews 06:19-20
- Leviticus 16:32
- Luke 03:02
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Matthew 26:51-54

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:08** No one could enter the room behind the curtain except the **high priest**, because God lived there.
- **21:07** The Messiah who would come would be the perfect **high priest** who would offer himself as a perfect sacrifice to God.
- **38:03** The Jewish leaders, led by the **high priest**, paid Judas thirty silver coins to betray Jesus.
- **39:01** The soldiers led Jesus to the house of the **high priest** in order for the **high priest** to question him.
- **39:03** Finally, the **high priest** looked directly at Jesus and said, “Tell us, are you the Messiah, the Son of the living God?”
- **44:07** The next day, the Jewish leaders brought Peter and John to the **high priest** and the other religious leaders.
- **45:02** So the religious leaders arrested Stephen and brought him to the **high priest** and the other leaders of the Jews, where more false witnesses lied about Stephen.

- **46:01** The **high priest** gave Saul permission to go to the city of Damascus to arrest Christians there and bring them back to Jerusalem.
- **48:06** Jesus is the Great **High Priest**. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only sacrifice that could take away the sin of all the people in the world. Jesus was the perfect **high priest** because he took the punishment for every sin that anyone has ever committed.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7218, H1419, H3548, G748, G749

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:4](#); [16:21](#); [20:18](#); [21:15](#); [21:23](#); [21:45](#); [26:3](#); [26:14](#); [26:47](#); [26:51](#); [26:57](#); [26:58](#); [26:59](#); [26:62](#); [26:63](#); [26:65](#); [27:1](#); [27:3](#); [27:6](#); [27:12](#); [27:20](#); [27:41](#); [27:62](#); [28:11](#))

holy city

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “holy city” refers to the city of Jerusalem.

- This term is used to refer to the ancient city of Jerusalem as well as the new, heavenly Jerusalem where God will live and reign among his people.
- This term can be translated by combining the terms for “holy” and “city” that have been used in the rest of the translation.

(See also: [heaven](#), [holy](#), [Jerusalem](#))

Bible References:

- Matthew 04:5-6
- Matthew 27:51-53
- Revelation 21:1-2
- Revelation 21:9-10
- Revelation 22:18-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5892, H6944, G40, G4172

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:5](#); [27:53](#))

holy place

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “the holy place” and “the most holy place” refer to the two parts of the tabernacle or temple building.

- The “holy place” was the first room, and it contained the altar of incense and the table with the special “bread of the presence” on it.
- The “most holy place” was the second, innermost room, and it contained the ark of the covenant.
- A thick, heavy curtain separated the outer room from the inner room.
- The high priest was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy place.
- Sometimes “holy place” refers to both the building and courtyard areas of either the temple or tabernacle. It could also refer generally to any place that is set apart for God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “holy place” could also be translated as “room set apart for God” or “special room for meeting God” or “place reserved for God.”
- The term “most holy place” could be translated as “room that is the most set apart for God” or “most special room for meeting God.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the general expression “a holy place” could include “a consecrated place” or “a place that God has set apart” or “a place in the temple complex, which is holy” or “a courtyard of God’s holy temple.”

(See also: altar of incense, ark of the covenant, [bread](#), consecrate, courtyard, [curtain](#), [holy](#), [set apart](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:16-18
- Acts 06:12-15
- Exodus 26:33
- Exodus 31:10-11
- Ezekiel 41:01
- Ezra 09:8-9
- Hebrews 09:1-2
- Leviticus 16:18
- Matthew 24:15-18
- Revelation 15:05

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1964, H4720, H4725, H5116, H6918, H6944, G39, G40, G3485, G5117

(Go back to: [Matthew 24:15](#))

Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God’s Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God’s will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
- Ways to translate this term could also include “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: [holy](#), [spirit](#), [God](#), [Lord](#), [God the Father](#), [Son of God](#), [gift](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
- Acts 08:17
- Galatians 05:25
- Genesis 01:1-2
- Isaiah 63:10
- Job 33:04
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 28:18-19
- Psalms 051:10-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01** But **God’s Spirit** was there over the water.
- **24:08** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **26:01** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **26:03** Jesus read, “God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed.”
- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **43:03** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **43:08** “And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are now seeing and hearing.”
- **43:11** Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit**.”
- **45:01** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G40, G4151

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:18](#); [1:20](#); [3:11](#); [3:16](#); [4:1](#); [10:20](#); [Notes](#); [12:18](#); [12:28](#); [12:31](#); [12:32](#); [22:43](#); [28:19](#))

holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term “unholy” means “not holy.” It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called “unholy” could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sacred” was oftentimes used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” and “sacred music” refer to music that was sung or played for God’s glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” referred to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”
- Ways to translate “unholy” could include “not holy” or “not belonging to God” or “not honoring to God” or “not godly.”
- In some contexts, “unholy” could be translated as “unclean.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), consecrate, [sanctify](#), [set apart](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 03:02
- Lamentations 04:01
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 07:6
- Mark 08:38

- Acts 07:33
- Acts 11:08
- Romans 01:02
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 01:22
- 1 Thessalonians 03:13
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 03:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **09:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:01** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:05** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:05** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:02** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G37, G38, G39, G40, G41, G42, G462, G1859, G2150, G2412, G2413, G2839, G3741, G3742

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:18](#); [1:20](#); [3:11](#); [4:5](#); [7:6](#); [12:32](#); [24:15](#); [27:53](#); [28:19](#))

honey, honeycomb

Definition:

“Honey” is the sweet, sticky, edible substance that honeybees make out of flower nectar. Honeycomb is the waxy frame where the bees store honey.

- Depending on the kind, honey can be yellowish or brownish in color.
- Honey can be found in the wild, such as in the hollow of a tree, or wherever bees make a nest. People also raise bees in hives in order to produce honey to eat or sell, but probably the honey mentioned in the Bible was wild honey.
- Three people that the Bible specifically mentions as eating wild honey were Jonathan, Samson, and John the Baptist.
- This term is often used figuratively to describe something that is sweet or very pleasurable. For example, God’s words and decrees are said to be “sweeter than honey.” (See also: [Simile](#), [Metaphor](#))
- Sometimes a person’s words are described as seeming sweet like honey, but instead result in deceiving and harming others.

(See also: [John \(the Baptist\)](#), Jonathan, Philistines, Samson)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:1-3
- Deuteronomy 06:3
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Joshua 05:06
- Proverbs 05:03

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1706, H3293, H3295, H5317, H6688, G3192

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:4](#))

honor

Definition:

The terms “honor” and to “honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God instructs Christians to honor others.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
- The terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term to “honor” could be translated as to “show special respect to” or to “cause to be praised” or to “show high regard for” or to “highly value.”

(See also: dishonor, [glory](#), [glory](#), [praise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:8
- Acts 19:17
- John 04:44
- John 12:26
- Mark 06:04
- Matthew 15:06

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1420, H1921, H1922, H1923, H1926, H1927, H1935, H2082, H2142, H3366, H3367, H3368, H3372, H3373, H3374, H3444, H3513, H3519, H3655, H3678, H5081, H5375, H5457, H6213, H6286, H6437, H6942, H6944, H6965, H7236, H7613, H7812, H8597, H8416, G820, G1391, G1392, G1784, G2151, G2570, G3170, G4411, G4586, G5091, G5092, G5093, G5399

(Go back to: [Matthew 15:4](#); [15:6](#); [15:8](#); [19:19](#))

hope, hoped

Definition:

Hope is strongly desiring something to happen. Hope can imply either certainty or uncertainty regarding a future event.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” also has the meaning of “trust,” as in “my hope is in the Lord.” It refers to a sure expectation of receiving what God has promised his people.
- Sometimes the ULT translates the term in the original language as “confidence.” This happens mostly in the New Testament in situations where people who believe in Jesus as their Savior have the assurance (or confidence or hope) of receiving what God has promised.
- To have “no hope” means to have no expectation of something good happening. It means that it is actually very certain that it will not happen.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, the term to “hope” could also be translated as to “wish” or to “desire” or to “expect.”
- The expression “nothing to hope for” could be translated as “nothing to trust in” or “no expectation of anything good”
- To “have no hope” could be translated as “have no expectation of anything good” or “have no security” or “be sure that nothing good will happen.”
- The expression “have set your hopes on” could also be translated as “have put your confidence in” or “have been trusting in.”
- The phrase “I find hope in your Word” could also be translated as “I am confident that your Word is true” or “Your Word helps me trust in you” or “When I obey your Word, I am certain to be blessed.”
- Phrases such as “hope in” God could also be translated as, “trust in God” or “know for sure that God will do what he has promised” or “be certain that God is faithful.”

(See also: [bless](#), confidence, [good](#), [obey](#), [trust](#), [word of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:14-15
- 1 Thessalonians 02:19
- Acts 24:14-16
- Acts 26:06
- Acts 27:20
- Colossians 01:05
- Job 11:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H982, H983, H986, H2620, H2976, H3175, H3176, H3689, H4009, H4268, H4723, H7663, H7664, H8431, H8615, G91, G560, G1679, G1680, G2070

(Go back to: [Matthew 12:21](#))

hour

Definition:

In addition to being used to refer to when or how long something took place, the term “hour” is also used in several figurative ways:

- Sometimes “hour” refers to a regular, scheduled time to do something, such as the “hour of prayer.”
- When the text says that the “hour had come” for Jesus to suffer and be put to death, this means that it was the appointed time for this to happen--the time that God had selected long ago.
- The term “hour” is also used to mean “at that moment” or “right then.”
- When the text talks about the “hour” being late, this means that it was late in the day, when the sun would soon be setting.

Translation Suggestions:

- When used figuratively, the term “hour” can be translated as “time” or “moment” or “appointed time.”
- The phrase “in that very hour” or “the same hour” could be translated as “at that moment” or “at that time” or “immediately” or “right then.”
- The expression “the hour was late” could be translated as “it was late in the day” or “it would soon be getting dark” or “it was late afternoon.”

(See also: [hour](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:30
- Acts 10:30
- Mark 14:35

Word Data:

- Strong's: G5610

(Go back to: [Matthew 8:13](#); [9:22](#); [10:19](#); [14:15](#); [15:28](#); [17:18](#); [18:1](#); [24:36](#); [24:44](#); [24:50](#); [25:13](#); [26:45](#); [26:55](#))

hour, moment, immediately, for a while

Definition:

The term “hour” is often used in the Bible to tell what time of day a certain event took place. It is also used figuratively to mean “time” or “moment.”

- The Jews counted daylight hours starting at sunrise (around 6 a.m.). For example, “the ninth hour” meant “around three in the afternoon.”
- Nighttime hours were counted starting at sunset (around 6 p.m.). For example, “the third hour of the night” meant “around nine in the evening” in our present-day system..
- Since references to time in the Bible will not correspond exactly to the present-day time system, phrases such as “around nine” or “about six o’clock” could be used.
- Some translations might add phrases like “in the evening” or “in the morning” or “in the afternoon” to make it clear what time of day is being talked about.
- The phrase, “in that hour” could be translated as, “at that time” or “in that moment.”
- Referring to Jesus, the expression “his hour had come” could be translated as, “the time had come for him to” or “the appointed time for him had come.”

Bible References:

- Acts 02:15
- John 04:51-52
- Luke 23:44
- Matthew 20:03

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8160, G5610

(Go back to: [Matthew 20:3](#); [20:5](#); [20:9](#); [20:12](#); [26:40](#); [27:45](#); [27:46](#))

house

Definition:

The term "house" refers to a small building, shelter, or tent, usually the place where a family sleeps. The term is often used figuratively in the Bible to mean various concepts such as "household" or "descendants," etc.

- Sometimes the term "house" means "household," referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Sometimes the term "house" means "family" or "descendants," referring to all the people related to or descended from a particular person. For example, the phrase "house of David" refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms "house of God" and "house of Yahweh" refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to a central place where Yahweh was worshipped.
- The phrase "house of Israel" can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, "house" could be translated as "household" or "people" or "family" or "descendants" or "temple" or "dwelling place."
- The phrase "house of David" could be translated as "clan of David" or "family of David" or "descendants of David." Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate "house of Israel" could include "people of Israel" or "Israel's descendants" or "Israelites."
- The phrase "house of Yahweh" could be translated as "Yahweh's temple" or "place where Yahweh is worshipped" or "place where Yahweh meets with his people" or "where Yahweh dwells." The phrase "house of God" could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [David](#), descendant, [house of God](#), [household](#), kingdom of Israel, [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:42
- Acts 07:49
- Genesis 39:04
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 08:39
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 15:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1005, G3609, G3613, G3614, G3624

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:11](#); [5:15](#); [7:24](#); [7:25](#); [7:26](#); [7:27](#); [8:6](#); [8:14](#); [9:6](#); [9:7](#); [9:10](#); [9:23](#); [9:28](#); [10:6](#); [10:12](#); [10:13](#); [10:14](#); [11:8](#); [12:4](#); [12:25](#); [12:29](#); [12:44](#); [13:1](#); [13:36](#); [15:24](#); [17:25](#); [19:29](#); [21:13](#); [23:38](#); [24:17](#); [24:43](#); [26:6](#))

house of God, Yahweh's house

Definition:

In the Bible, the phrases “house of God” (God’s house) and “house of Yahweh (Yahweh’s house) refer to a place where God is worshiped.

- This term is also used more specifically to refer to the tabernacle or the temple.
- Sometimes “God’s house” is used to refer to the people of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a place of worship, this term could be translated as “a house for worshiping God” or “a place for worshiping God.”
- If it is referring to the temple or tabernacle, this could be translated as “the temple (or tabernacle) where God is worshiped (or “where God is present” or “where God meets with his people.”)
- The word “house” may be important to use in the translation in order to communicate that God “dwells” there, that is, his spirit is in that place to meet with his people and to be worshiped by them.

(See also: [people of God](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 03:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 23:8-9
- Ezra 05:13
- Genesis 28:17
- Judges 18:30-31
- Mark 02:26
- Matthew 12:04

Word Data:

- Strong's: H426, H430, H1004, H1005, H3068, G2316, G3624

(Go back to: [Matthew 12:4](#))

household

Definition:

The term “household” refers to all the people who live together in a house, including family members and all their servants.

- Managing a household would involves directing the servants and also taking care of the property.
- Sometimes “household” can refer figuratively to the whole family line of someone, especially his descendants.

(See also: [house](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:10
- Galatians 06:10
- Genesis 07:01
- Genesis 34:19
- John 04:53
- Matthew 10:25
- Matthew 10:36
- Philippians 04:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H5657, G2322, G3609, G3614, G3615, G3616, G3623, G3624

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:25](#); [10:36](#); [13:57](#); [24:45](#))

humble, humbled, humility

Definition:

The term “humble” describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand one’s weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- When a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one’s own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one’s gifts and abilities.
- The phrase “be humble” could be translated as “don’t be prideful.”
- “Humble yourself before God” could be translated as “Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness.”

(See also: proud)

Bible References:

- James 01:21
- James 03:13
- James 04:10
- Luke 14:11
- Luke 18:14
- Matthew 18:04
- Matthew 23:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:02** David was a **humble** and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **34:10** “God will **humble** everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever **humbles** himself.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1792, H3665, H6031, H6035, H6038, H6041, H6800, H6819, H7511, H7807, H7812, H8213, H8214, H8215, H8217, H8467, G858, G4236, G4239, G4240, G5011, G5012, G5013, G5391

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:29](#); [18:4](#); [23:12](#))

hypocrite, hypocrisy

Definition:

The term “hypocrite” refers to a person who does things to appear righteous, but who secretly is acting in evil ways. The term “hypocrisy” refers to the behavior that deceives people into thinking a person is righteous.

- Hypocrites want to be seen doing good things so that people will think that they are good people.
- Often a hypocrite will criticize other people for doing the same sinful things that they themselves do.
- Jesus called the Pharisees hypocrites because although they acted religiously like wearing certain clothes and eating certain foods, they were not kind or fair to people.
- A hypocrite points out faults in other people, but doesn't admit his own faults.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages have an expression like “two-faced” that refers to a hypocrite or a hypocrite's actions.
- Other ways to translate “hypocrite” could include “fraud” or “pretender” or “arrogant, deceitful person.”
- The term “hypocrisy” could be translated by, “deception” or “fake actions” or “pretending.”

Bible References:

- Galatians 02:13
- Luke 06:41-42
- Luke 12:54-56
- Luke 13:15
- Mark 07:6-7
- Matthew 06:1-2
- Romans 12:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H120, H2611, H2612, G505, G5272, G5273

(Go back to: [Matthew 6:2](#); [6:5](#); [6:16](#); [7:5](#); [15:7](#); [22:18](#); [23:13](#); [23:15](#); [23:23](#); [23:25](#); [23:27](#); [23:28](#); [23:29](#); [24:51](#))

image, carved image, cast metal images, figure, carved figure, statue

Definition:

These terms are all used to refer to idols that have been made for worshiping a false god. In the context of worshiping idols, the term “image” is a shortened form of “carved image.”

- A “carved image” or “carved figure” is a wooden object that has been made to look like an animal, person, or thing.
- A “cast metal figure” is an object or statue created by melting metal and pouring it into a mold that is in the shape of an object, animal, or person.
- These wooden and metal objects were used in the worship of false gods.
- The term “image” when referring to an idol could either refer to a wooden or metal idol.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to an idol, the term “image” could also be translated as “statue” or “engraved idol” or “carved religious object.”
- It may be more clear in some languages to always use a descriptive word with this term, such as “carved image” or “cast metal figure,” even in places where only the term “image” or “figure” is in the original text.
- Make sure it is clear that this term is different than the term used to refer to being in the image of God.

(See also: false god, [God](#), false god, image of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:9-10
- Acts 07:43
- Isaiah 21:8-9
- Matthew 22:21
- Romans 01:23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H457, H1544, H2553, H4541, H4676, H4853, H4906, H5257, H5262, H5566, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6754, H6755, H6816, H8403, H8544, H8655, G1504, G5179

(Go back to: [Matthew 22:20](#))

inherit, inheritance, heir

Definition:

The term "inherit" refers to receiving something valuable from a parent after the parent(s) die. The term can also refer to receiving something valuable from some other person because of a special relationship with that person. An "inheritance" is the thing(s) that is received, and an "heir" is a person who receives an inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term "inherit" could be translated might include "receive" or "possess" or "come into possession of."
- Ways to translate "inheritance" could include "promised gift" or "secure possession."
- The term "heir" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "privileged child who receives the father's possessions."
- The term "heritage" could be translated as "inherited blessings."

(See also: [heir](#), [Canaan](#), Promised Land)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- 1 Peter 01:04
- 2 Samuel 21:03
- Acts 07:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 05:21
- Genesis 15:07
- Hebrews 09:15
- Jeremiah 02:07
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29
- Psalm 079:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**."
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?"
- **35:03** "There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, 'Father, I want my **inheritance** now!' So the father divided his property between the two sons."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G2816, G2817, G2819, G2820

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:5](#); [19:29](#); [21:38](#); [25:34](#))

innocent

Definition:

The term “innocent” means to not be guilty of a crime or other wrongdoing. It can also refer more generally to people who are not involved in evil things.

- A person accused of doing something wrong is innocent if he has not committed that wrong.
- Sometimes the term “innocent” is used to refer to people who have done nothing wrong to deserve the bad treatment they are receiving, as in an enemy army attacking “innocent people.”
- In the Bible, "blood" can represent "killing," so "innocent blood" refers to "killing people who did not deserve to die."

Translation Suggestions:

- In most contexts, the term “innocent” can be translated as “not guilty” or “not responsible” or “not to blame” for something.
- When referring in general to innocent people, this term could be translated as “who have done nothing wrong” or “who are not involved in evil.”
- "To shed innocent blood" can be translated as "to kill people who did not deserve to die."

(See also: guilt)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:04
- 1 Samuel 19:05
- Acts 20:26
- Exodus 23:07
- Jeremiah 22:17
- Job 09:23
- Romans 16:18

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** After two years, Joseph was still in prison, even though he was **innocent**.
- **40:04** One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God? We are guilty, but this man is **innocent**.”
- **40:08** When the soldier guarding Jesus saw everything that happened, he said, “Certainly, this man was **innocent**. He was the Son of God.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2136, H2600, H2643, H5352, H5355, H5356, G121

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:16](#); [12:5](#); [12:7](#); [27:4](#); [27:24](#))

instruct, instruction, instructors

Facts:

The terms “instruct” and “instruction” refer to giving specific directions about what to do.

- To “give instructions” means to tell someone specifically what he is supposed to do.
- When Jesus gave the disciples the bread and fish to distribute to the people, he gave them specific instructions about how to do it.
- Depending on the context, the term “instruct” could also be translated as “tell” or “direct” or “teach” or “give instructions to.”
- The term “instructions” could be translated as “directions” or “explanations” or “what he has told you to do.”
- When God gives instructions, this term is sometimes translated as “commands” or “orders.”

(See also: [command](#), decree, [teach](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 14:04
- Genesis 26:05
- Hebrews 11:22
- Matthew 10:05
- Matthew 11:01
- Proverbs 01:30

Word Data:

- Strong's: H241, H376, H559, H631, H1004, H1696, H1697, H3256, H3289, H3384, H4148, H4156, H4687, H4931, H4941, H6098, H6310, H6490, H6680, H7919, H8451, G1256, G1299, G1319, G1321, G1378, G1781, G1785, G2727, G2753, G3559, G3560, G3811, G3852, G3853, G4264, G4367, G4822

(Go back to: [Matthew 28:15](#))

interpret, interpretation, interpreter

Facts:

The terms “interpret” and “interpretation” refer to understanding and explaining the meaning of something that is not clear.

- Often in the Bible these terms are used in connection with explaining the meaning of dreams or visions.
- When the king of Babylon had some confusing dreams, God helped Daniel to interpret them and to explain their meanings.
- The “interpretation” of the dream is the “explanation” of the meaning of the dream.
- In the Old Testament, God sometimes used dreams to reveal to people what would happen in the future. So the interpretations of those dreams were prophecies.
- The term “interpret” can also refer to figuring out the meaning of other things, such as figuring out what the weather will be like based on how cold or hot it is, how windy it is, and what the sky looks like.
- Ways to translate the term “interpret” could include, “figure out the meaning of” or “explain” or “give the meaning of.”
- The term “interpretation” could also be translated as “explanation” or “meaning.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Daniel](#), [dream](#), [prophet](#), [vision](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:10
- Daniel 04:4-6
- Genesis 40:4-5
- Judges 07:15-16
- Luke 12:56

Word Data:

- Strong's: H995, H3887, H6591, H6622, H6623, H7667, H7760, H7922, G1252, G1328, G1329, G1381, G1955, G2058, G3177, G4793

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:23](#))

Isaac

Facts:

Isaac was the only son of Abraham and Sarah. God had promised to give them a son even though they were very old.

- The name “Isaac” means “he laughs.” When God told Abraham that Sarah would give birth to a son, Abraham laughed because they were both very old. Some time later, Sarah also laughed when she heard this news.
- But God fulfilled his promise and Isaac was born to Abraham and Sarah in their old age.
- God told Abraham that the covenant he had made with Abraham would also be for Isaac and his descendants forever.
- When Isaac was a youth, God tested Abraham’s faith by commanding him to sacrifice Isaac.
- Isaac’s son Jacob had twelve sons whose descendants later became the twelve tribes of the nation of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), descendant, [eternity](#), [fulfill](#), [Jacob](#), Sarah, [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:28-29
- Genesis 25:9-11
- Genesis 25:19
- Genesis 26:1
- Genesis 26:08
- Genesis 28:1-2
- Genesis 31:18
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:04** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of promise. Name him **Isaac**.”
- **05:06** When **Isaac** was a young man, God tested Abraham’s faith by saying, “Take **Isaac**, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **05:09** God had provided the ram to be the sacrifice instead of **Isaac**.
- **06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, **Isaac**, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, **Isaac**.
- **06:05** **Isaac** prayed for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **07:10** Then **Isaac** died, and Jacob and Esau buried him. The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to **Isaac** now passed on to Jacob.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3327, H3446, G2464

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:2](#); [8:11](#); [22:32](#))

Isaiah

Facts:

Isaiah was a prophet of God who prophesied during the reigns of four kings of Judah: Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah.

- He lived in Jerusalem during the time when the Assyrians were attacking the city, during the reign of Hezekiah.
- The Old Testament book of Isaiah is one of the major books of the Bible.
- Isaiah wrote many prophecies that came true while he was still living.
- Isaiah is especially known for the prophecies he wrote about the Messiah that came true 700 years later when Jesus was living on earth.
- Jesus and his disciples quoted Isaiah's prophecies to teach people about the Messiah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahaz](#), Assyria, [Christ](#), [Hezekiah](#), [Jotham](#), Judah, [prophet](#), [Uzziah](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:1-3
- Acts 28:26
- Isaiah 01:1
- Luke 03:4
- Mark 01:01
- Mark 07:06
- Matthew 03:03
- Matthew 04:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:09** The prophet **Isaiah** prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **21:10** The prophet **Isaiah** said the Messiah would live in Galilee, comfort broken-hearted people, and proclaim freedom to captives and release to prisoners.
- **21:11** The prophet **Isaiah** also prophesied that the Messiah would be hated without reason and rejected.
- **21:12** **Isaiah** prophesied that people would spit on, mock, and beat the Messiah.
- **26:02** They handed him (Jesus) the scroll of the prophet **Isaiah** so that he would read from it. Jesus opened up the scroll and read part of it to the people.
- **45:08** When Philip approached the chariot, he heard the Ethiopian reading from what the prophet **Isaiah** wrote.
- **45:10** Philip explained to the Ethiopian that **Isaiah** was writing about Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3470, G2268

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:3](#); [4:14](#); [8:17](#); [12:17](#); [13:14](#); [15:7](#))

Israel, Israelite, Jacob

Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac and Rebekah.

- Jacob's name means "he grabs the heel" which is an expression meaning "he deceives." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which means "he struggles with God."
- Jacob was clever and deceptive. He found ways to take the firstborn blessing and inheritance rights from his older brother, Esau.
- Esau was angry and planned to kill him so Jacob left his homeland. But years later Jacob returned with his wives and children to the land of Canaan where Esau was living, and their families lived peacefully near each other.
- Jacob had twelve sons. Their descendants became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- A different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [deceive](#), Esau, [Isaac](#), [Israel](#), Rebekah, [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:11
- Acts 07:46
- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- John 04:4-5
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **07:01** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **07:07** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **07:08** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **07:10** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **08:01** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3290, G2384

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:2](#); [1:15](#); [1:16](#); [8:11](#); [22:32](#))

Israel, Israelites

Facts:

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. The name means "he struggles with God."

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the "people of Israel" or the "nation of Israel" or the "Israelites."
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah," and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
- Often the term "Israel" can be translated as "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), kingdom of Israel, Judah, [nation](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:01
- 1 Kings 08:02
- Acts 02:36
- Acts 07:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 02:06
- Matthew 27:09
- Philippians 03:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **09:03** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **09:05** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **10:01** They said, "This is what the God of **Israel** says, 'Let my people go!'"
- **14:12** But despite all this, the people of *Israel* complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **15:09** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** *its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave Israel* peace along all its borders.
- **16:16** So God punished *Israel* again for worshiping idols.
- **43:06** "Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G935, G2474, G2475

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:6](#); [2:20](#); [2:21](#); [8:10](#); [9:33](#); [10:6](#); [10:23](#); [15:24](#); [15:31](#); [19:28](#); [27:9](#); [27:42](#))

it is written

Definition:

The phrase “as it is written” or “what is written” occurs frequently in the New Testament and usually refers to commands or prophecies that were written in the Hebrew scriptures.

- Sometimes “as it is written” refers to what was written in the Law of Moses.
- Other times it is a quote from what one of the prophets wrote in the Old Testament.
- This could be translated “as it is written in the Law of Moses” or “as the prophets wrote long ago” or “what it says in God’s laws that Moses wrote down long ago”.
- Another option is to keep “It is written” and give a footnote that explains what this means.

(See also: [command](#), [law](#), [prophet](#), [word of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 05:13-15
- Acts 13:29
- Exodus 32:15-16
- John 21:25
- Luke 03:4
- Mark 09:12
- Matthew 04:06
- Revelation 01:03

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3789, G1125

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:5](#); [4:4](#); [4:6](#); [4:7](#); [4:10](#); [11:10](#); [21:13](#); [26:24](#); [26:31](#))

James (brother of Jesus)

Facts:

James was a son of Mary and Joseph. He was one of Jesus' younger half-brothers.

- Jesus' other half-brothers were named Joseph, Judas, and Simon.
- During Jesus' lifetime, James and his brothers did not believe that Jesus was the Messiah.
- Later, after Jesus was raised from the dead, James believed in him and became a leader of the church in Jerusalem.
- The New Testament book of James is a letter that James wrote to Christians who had fled to other countries to escape persecution.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [Christ](#), [church](#), Judas the son of James, [persecute](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 01:18-20
- Galatians 02:9-10
- James 01:1-3
- Jude 01:1-2
- Mark 09:1-3
- Matthew 13:54-56

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2385

(Go back to: [Matthew 13:55](#))

James (son of Alphaeus)

Facts:

James, the son of Alphaeus, was one of Jesus' twelve apostles.

- His name is given in the lists of Jesus' disciples in the gospels of Matthew, Mark, and Luke.
- He is also mentioned in the book of Acts as one of the eleven disciples who were together praying in Jerusalem after Jesus went back up to heaven.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [disciple](#), [James \(brother of Jesus\)](#), [James \(son of Zebedee\)](#), [the twelve](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 01:12-14
- Luke 06:14-16
- Mark 03:17-19
- Mark 14:32-34
- Matthew 10:2-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2385

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:3](#))

James (son of Zebedee)

Facts:

James, a son of Zebedee, was one of Jesus' twelve apostles. He had a younger brother named John who was also one of Jesus' apostles.

- James and his brother John worked by fishing with their father Zebedee.
- James and John were nicknamed the "Sons of Thunder," perhaps because they got angry quickly.
- Peter, James, and John were Jesus' closest disciples and were with him for amazing events such as when Jesus was on a mountaintop with Elijah and Moses and when Jesus caused a dead little girl to come back to life.
- This is a different James than the one who wrote a book in the Bible. Some languages may have to write their names differently to make it clear that they were two different men.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [Elijah](#), [James \(brother of Jesus\)](#), [James \(son of Alphaeus\)](#), [Moses](#))

Bible References:

- Luke 09:28-29
- Mark 01:19-20
- Mark 01:29-31
- Mark 03:17
- Matthew 04:21-22
- Matthew 17:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2385

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:21](#); [10:2](#); [17:1](#))

Jehoram, Joram

Facts:

“Jehoram” was the name of two kings in the Old Testament. Both kings were also known as “Joram.”

- One King Jehoram ruled over the kingdom of Judah for eight years. He was the son of King Jehoshaphat. This is the king that is most commonly known as Jehoram.
- The other King Jehoram ruled over the kingdom of Israel for twelve years. He was the son of King Ahab.
- King Jehoram of Judah reigned during the time that the prophets Jeremiah, Daniel, Obadiah, and Ezekiel were prophesying in the kingdom of Judah.
- The King Jehoram also reigned during some of the time that his father King Jehoshaphat was reigning over Judah.
- Some translations may choose to consistently use the name “Jehoram” when this king of Israel is mentioned and the name “Joram” for the king of Judah.
- Another way to clearly identify each one would be to include the name of his father.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ahab, [Jehoshaphat](#), Joram, [Judah](#), kingdom of Israel, Obadiah)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 22:48-50
- 2 Chronicles 21:03
- 2 Kings 11:1-3
- 2 Kings 12:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3088, H3141, G2496

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:8](#))

Jehoshaphat

Facts:

Jehoshaphat was the name of at least two men in the Old Testament.

- The best known man by this name was King Jehoshaphat who was the fourth king to rule over the kingdom of Judah.
- He restored peace between Judah and Israel and destroyed the altars of false gods.
- Another Jehoshaphat was a "recorder" for David and Solomon. His job included writing documents for the king to sign and recording the history of the important events that happened in the kingdom.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [altar](#), [David](#), false god, [Israel](#), [Judah](#), [priest](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:10-12
- 1 Kings 04:17
- 2 Chronicles 17:01
- 2 Kings 01:17
- 2 Samuel 08:15-18
- Matthew 01:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3092, G2498

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:8](#))

Jeremiah

Facts:

Jeremiah was a prophet of God in the kingdom of Judah. The Old Testament book of Jeremiah contains his prophecies.

- Like most of the prophets, Jeremiah often had to warn the people of Israel that God was going to punish them for their sins.
- Jeremiah prophesied that the Babylonians would capture Jerusalem, making some of the people of Judah angry. So they put him in a deep, dry well and left him there to die. But the king of Judah ordered his servants to rescue Jeremiah from the well.
- Jeremiah wrote that he wished his eyes could be a "fountain of tears," to express his deep sadness over the rebellion and sufferings of his people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), Judah, [prophet](#), rebel, [suffer](#), well)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 35:25
- Jeremiah 01:02
- Jeremiah 11:01
- Matthew 02:18
- Matthew 16:13-16
- Matthew 27:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:17** Once, the prophet **Jeremiah** was put into a dry well and left there to die. He sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had mercy on him and ordered his servants to pull **Jeremiah** out of the well before he died.
- **21:05** Through the prophet **Jeremiah**, God promised that he would make a New Covenant, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3414, G2408

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:17](#); [16:14](#); [27:9](#))

Jericho

Facts:

Jericho was a powerful city in the land of Canaan. It was located just west of the Jordan River and just north of the Salt Sea.

- As all Canaanites did, the people of Jericho worshiped false gods.
- Jericho was the first city in the land of Canaan that God told the Israelites to conquer.
- When Joshua led the Israelites against Jericho, God did a great miracle to help them defeat the city.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Jordan River](#), Joshua, [miracle](#), Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:78
- Joshua 02:1-3
- Joshua 07:2-3
- Luke 18:35
- Mark 10:46-48
- Matthew 20:29-31
- Numbers 22:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:01** Joshua sent two spies to the Canaanite city of **Jericho**.
- **15:03** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of **Jericho**.
- **15:05** Then the walls around **Jericho** fell down! The Israelites destroyed everything in the city as God had commanded.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3405, G2410

(Go back to: [Matthew 20:29](#))

Jerusalem

Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name "Jerusalem" is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include "Salem" "city of Jebus," and "Zion." Both "Jerusalem" and "Salem," have the root meaning of "peace."
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called "Zion" which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David's son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going "up" to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Christ](#), [David](#), Jebusites, [Jesus](#), [Solomon](#), [temple](#), [Zion](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:26-27
- John 02:13
- Luke 04:9-11
- Luke 13:05
- Mark 03:7-8
- Mark 03:20-22
- Matthew 03:06
- Matthew 04:23-25
- Matthew 20:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:05** David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- **18:02** In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.
- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:02** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere."
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3389, H3390, G2414, G2415, G2419

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:1](#); [2:3](#); [3:5](#); [4:25](#); [5:35](#); [15:1](#); [16:21](#); [20:17](#); [20:18](#); [21:1](#); [21:10](#); [23:37](#))

Jesse

Facts:

Jesse was the father of King David and the grandson of Ruth and Boaz.

- Jesse was from the tribe of Judah.
- He was an "Ephrathite," which means he was from the region of Ephrathah. The town of Bethlehem was located in the region of Ephrathah.
- The prophet Isaiah prophesied about a "shoot" or "branch" that would come from the "root of Jesse" and bear fruit. This refers to Jesus, who was a descendant of Jesse.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bethlehem](#), [Boaz](#), descendant, [Jesus](#), [king](#), [prophet](#), [Ruth](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:12
- 1 Kings 12:16
- 1 Samuel 16:1
- Luke 03:32
- Matthew 01:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3448, G2421

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:5](#); [1:6](#))

Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

Facts:

Jesus is God's Son. The name "Jesus" means "Yahweh saves." The term "Christ" is a title that means "anointed one" and is another word for Messiah.

- The two names are often combined as "Jesus Christ" or "Christ Jesus." These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah, who came to save people from being punished eternally for their sins.
- In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His mother was told by an angel to call him "Jesus" because he was destined to save people from their sins.
- Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many languages "Jesus" and "Christ" are spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," "Yesus Kristus", and "Hesukristo" are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
- For the term "Christ," some translators may prefer to use only some form of the term "Messiah" throughout.
- Also consider how these names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [God](#), [God the Father](#), [high priest](#), [kingdom of God](#), [Mary](#), [Savior](#), [Son of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:11
- 1 John 02:02
- 1 John 04:15
- 1 Timothy 01:02
- 2 Peter 01:02
- 2 Thessalonians 02:15
- 2 Timothy 01:10
- Acts 02:23
- Acts 05:30
- Acts 10:36
- Hebrews 09:14
- Hebrews 10:22
- Luke 24:20
- Matthew 01:21
- Matthew 04:03
- Philippians 02:05
- Philippians 02:10
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 01:06

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:04** The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him **Jesus** and he will be the Messiah."
- **23:02** "Name him **Jesus** (which means, 'Yahweh saves'), because he will save the people from their sins."
- **24:07** So John baptized him (Jesus), even though **Jesus** had never sinned.
- **24:09** There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw **Jesus** the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized **Jesus**.

- **25:08 Jesus** did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.
- **26:08** Then **Jesus** went throughout the region of Galilee, and large crowds came to him. They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and **Jesus** healed them.
- **31:03** Then **Jesus** finished praying and went to the disciples. He walked on top of the water across the lake toward their boat!
- **38:02** He (Judas) knew that the Jewish leaders denied that **Jesus** was the Messiah and that they were plotting to kill him.
- **40:08** Through his death, **Jesus** opened a way for people to come to God.
- **42:11** Then **Jesus** was taken up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight. **Jesus** sat down at the right hand of God to rule over all things.
- **50:17 Jesus** and his people will live on the new earth, and he will reign forever over everything that exists. He will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death. **Jesus** will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2424, G5547

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:1](#); [1:16](#); [1:18](#); [1:21](#); [1:25](#); [2:1](#); [3:13](#); [3:15](#); [3:16](#); [4:1](#); [4:7](#); [4:10](#); [4:17](#); [7:28](#); [8:4](#); [8:10](#); [8:13](#); [8:14](#); [8:18](#); [8:20](#); [8:22](#); [8:34](#); [9:2](#); [9:4](#); [9:9](#); [9:10](#); [9:15](#); [9:19](#); [9:22](#); [9:23](#); [9:27](#); [9:28](#); [9:30](#); [9:35](#); [10:5](#); [11:1](#); [11:4](#); [11:7](#); [11:25](#); [12:1](#); [12:15](#); [13:1](#); [13:34](#); [13:53](#); [13:57](#); [14:1](#); [14:12](#); [14:13](#); [14:16](#); [14:27](#); [14:29](#); [14:31](#); [15:1](#); [15:21](#); [15:28](#); [15:29](#); [15:32](#); [15:34](#); [16:6](#); [16:8](#); [16:13](#); [16:17](#); [16:21](#); [16:24](#); [17:1](#); [17:4](#); [17:7](#); [17:8](#); [17:9](#); [17:17](#); [17:18](#); [17:19](#); [17:22](#); [17:25](#); [17:26](#); [18:1](#); [18:22](#); [19:1](#); [19:14](#); [19:18](#); [19:21](#); [19:23](#); [19:26](#); [19:28](#); [20:17](#); [20:22](#); [20:25](#); [20:30](#); [20:32](#); [20:34](#); [21:1](#); [21:6](#); [21:11](#); [21:12](#); [21:16](#); [21:21](#); [21:24](#); [21:27](#); [21:31](#); [21:42](#); [22:1](#); [22:18](#); [22:29](#); [22:41](#); [23:1](#); [24:1](#); [24:4](#); [26:1](#); [26:4](#); [26:6](#); [26:10](#); [26:17](#); [26:19](#); [26:26](#); [26:31](#); [26:34](#); [26:36](#); [26:49](#); [26:50](#); [26:51](#); [26:52](#); [26:55](#); [26:57](#); [26:59](#); [26:63](#); [26:64](#); [26:69](#); [26:71](#); [26:75](#); [27:1](#); [27:11](#); [27:17](#); [27:20](#); [27:22](#); [27:26](#); [27:27](#); [27:37](#); [27:46](#); [27:50](#); [27:54](#); [27:55](#); [27:57](#); [27:58](#); [28:5](#); [28:9](#); [28:10](#); [28:16](#); [28:18](#))

Jew, Jewish

Facts:

Jews are people who are descendants of Abraham's grandson Jacob. The word "Jew" comes from the word "Judah."

- People began to call the Israelites "Jews" after they returned to Judah from their exile in Babylon.
- Jesus the Messiah was Jewish. However, the Jewish religious leaders rejected Jesus and demanded that he be killed.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Babylon](#), Jewish leaders)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:05
- Acts 10:28
- Acts 14:5-7
- Colossians 03:11
- John 02:14
- Matthew 28:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:11** The Israelites were now called **Jews** and most of them had lived their whole lives in Babylon.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of **Jews** returned to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.
- **37:10** Many of the **Jews** believed in Jesus because of this miracle.
- **37:11** But the religious leaders of the **Jews** were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and Lazarus.
- **40:02** Pilate commanded that they write, "King of the **Jews**" on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus' head.
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began preaching to the **Jews** in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3054, H3061, H3062, H3064, H3066, G2450, G2451, G2452, G2453, G2454

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:2](#); [27:11](#); [27:29](#); [27:37](#); [28:15](#))

John (the apostle)

Facts:

John was one of Jesus' twelve apostles and one of Jesus' closest friends.

- John and his brother James were sons of a fisherman named Zebedee.
- In the gospel that he wrote about Jesus' life, John referred to himself as "the disciple whom Jesus loved." This seems to indicate that John was an especially close friend of Jesus.
- The Apostle John wrote five New Testament books: the gospel of John, the Revelation of Jesus Christ, and three letters written to other believers.
- Note that the Apostle John was a different person than John the Baptist.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [reveal](#), [James \(son of Zebedee\)](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [Zebedee](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 02:9-10
- John 01:19-21
- Mark 03:17-19
- Matthew 04:21-22
- Revelation 01:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **36:01** One day, Jesus took three of his disciples, Peter, James, and **John** with him. (The disciple named **John** was not the same person who baptized Jesus.) They went up on a high mountain by themselves.\
- **44:01** One day, Peter and **John** were going to the Temple. As they approached the Temple gate, they saw a crippled man who was begging for money.\
- **44:06** The leaders of the Temple were very upset by what Peter and **John** were saying. So they arrested them and put them into prison.\
- **44:07** The next day, the Jewish leaders brought Peter and **John** to the high priest and the other religious leaders. They asked Peter and **John**, "By what power did you heal this crippled man?"\
- **44:09** The leaders were shocked that Peter and **John** spoke so boldly because they could see that these men were ordinary men who were uneducated. But then they remembered that these men had been with Jesus. After they threatened Peter and **John**, they let them go.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2491

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:21](#); [10:2](#); [17:1](#))

John (the Baptist)

Facts:

John was the son of Zechariah and Elizabeth. Since “John” was a common name, he is often called “John the Baptist” to distinguish him from the other people named John, such as the Apostle John.

- John was the prophet whom God sent to prepare people to believe in and follow the Messiah.
- John told people to confess their sins, turn to God, and stop sinning, so that they would be ready to receive the Messiah.
- John baptized many people in water as a sign that they were sorry for their sins and were turning away from them.
- John was called “John the Baptist” because he baptized many people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [baptize](#), Zechariah (NT))

Bible References:

- John 03:22-24
- Luke 01:11-13
- Luke 01:62-63
- Luke 03:7
- Luke 03:15-16
- Luke 07:27-28
- Matthew 03:13
- Matthew 11:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:02** The angel said to Zechariah, “Your wife will have a son. You will name him **John**. He will be filled with the Holy Spirit, and will prepare the people for Messiah!”
- **22:07** After Elizabeth gave birth to her baby boy, Zechariah and Elizabeth named the baby **John**, as the angel had commanded.
- **24:01 John**, the son of Zechariah and Elizabeth, grew up and became a prophet. He lived in the wilderness, ate wild honey and locusts, and wore clothes made from camel hair.
- **24:02** Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to **John**. He preached to them, saying, “Repent, for the kingdom of God is near!”
- **24:06** The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by **John**. When **John** saw him, he said, “Look! There is the Lamb of God who will take away the sin of the world.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: G910 G2491

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:1](#); [3:4](#); [3:13](#); [3:14](#); [4:12](#); [9:14](#); [11:2](#); [11:4](#); [11:7](#); [11:11](#); [11:12](#); [11:13](#); [11:18](#); [14:2](#); [14:3](#); [14:4](#); [14:8](#); [14:10](#); [16:14](#); [17:13](#); [21:25](#); [21:26](#); [21:32](#))

Jonah

Definition:

Jonah was a Hebrew prophet in the Old Testament.

- The book of Jonah tells the story of what happened when God sent Jonah to preach to the people of Nineveh.
- Jonah refused to go to Nineveh and instead got on a ship headed for a Tarshish.
- God caused a huge storm to overwhelm that ship.
- Jonah told the men sailing the ship that he was running away from God, and he suggested that they throw him into the sea. When they did that, the storm stopped and the sailors offered a sacrifice to Yahweh.
- Jonah was swallowed by a huge fish, and he was inside the belly of that fish for three days and nights.
- After that, Jonah went to Nineveh and preached to the people there, and the people stopped acting so violently toward others.
- Jonah became angry at God for not destroying Nineveh, and God used a plant and a worm to teach Jonah a lesson about compassion.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: disobey, [Nineveh](#), [turn](#))

Bible References:

- Jonah 01:03
- Luke 11:30
- Matthew 12:39
- Matthew 16:04

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3124, G2495

(Go back to: [Matthew 12:39](#); [12:40](#); [12:41](#); [16:4](#))

Jordan River, Jordan

Facts:

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

- Today, the Jordan River separates Israel on its west from Jordan on its east.
- The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
- When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. It was too deep to cross normally, but God miraculously stopped the river from flowing so they could walk across the river bed.
- Often in the Bible the Jordan River is referred to as “the Jordan.”

(See also: [Canaan](#), Salt Sea, [Sea of Galilee](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 32:9-10
- John 01:26-28
- John 03:25-26
- Luke 03:3
- Matthew 03:06
- Matthew 03:13-15
- Matthew 04:14-16
- Matthew 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:02** The Israelites had to cross the **Jordan River** to enter into the Promised Land.
- **15:03** After the people crossed the **Jordan River**, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.
- **19:14** Elisha told him (Naaman) to dip himself seven times in the **Jordan River**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3383, G2446

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:5](#); [3:6](#); [3:13](#); [4:15](#); [4:25](#); [19:1](#))

Joseph (NT)

Facts:

Joseph was Jesus' earthly father and raised him as his son. He was a righteous man who worked as a carpenter.

- Joseph became engaged to a Jewish girl named Mary, while they were engaged God chose her to become the mother of Jesus the Messiah.
- An angel told Joseph that the Holy Spirit had miraculously caused Mary to be pregnant, and that Mary's baby was the Son of God.
- After Jesus was born, an angel warned Joseph to take the baby and Mary to Egypt in order to escape from Herod.
- Joseph and his family later lived in the city of Nazareth of Galilee, where he earned a living doing carpentry work.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [Galilee](#), [Jesus](#), [Nazareth](#), [Son of God](#), [virgin](#))

Bible References:

- John 01:43-45
- Luke 01:26-29
- Luke 02:4-5
- Luke 02:15-16
- Matthew 01:18-19
- Matthew 01:24-25
- Matthew 02:19-21
- Matthew 13:54-56

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:04** She (Mary) was a virgin and was engaged to be married to a man named **Joseph**.
- **23:01 Joseph**, the man Mary was engaged to, was a righteous man. When he heard that Mary was pregnant, he knew it was not his baby. He did not want to shame her, so he planned to quietly divorce her.
- **23:02** The angel said, "**Joseph**, do not be afraid to take Mary as your wife. The baby in her body is from the Holy Spirit. She will give birth to a son. Name him Jesus (which means, 'Yahweh saves'), because he will save the people from their sins."
- **23:03** So **Joseph** married Mary and took her home as his wife, but he did not sleep with her until she had given birth.
- **23:04 Joseph** and Mary had to make a long journey from where they lived in Nazareth to Bethlehem because their ancestor was David whose hometown was Bethlehem.
- **26:04** Jesus said, "The words I just read to you are happening right now." All the people were amazed. "Isn't this the son of **Joseph**?" they said.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2501

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:16](#); [1:18](#); [1:19](#); [1:20](#); [1:24](#); [2:13](#); [2:19](#))

Josiah

Facts:

Josiah was a godly king who reigned over the kingdom of Judah for thirty-one years. He led the people of Judah to repent and worship Yahweh.

- After his father King Amon was killed, Josiah became king over Judah at eight years of age.
- In the eighteenth year of his reign, King Josiah ordered Hilkiah the high priest to rebuild the temple of the Lord. While this was being done, the books of the Law were found.
- When the books of the Law were read to Josiah, he was grieved at how his people were disobeying God. He ordered that all the places of idol worship be destroyed and that the priests of the false gods be killed.
- He also ordered the people to start celebrating the Passover feast again.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: false god, [Judah](#), [law](#), [Passover](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 33:24-25
- 2 Chronicles 34:03
- Jeremiah 01:03
- Matthew 01:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2977, G2502

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:10](#); [1:11](#))

Jotham

Definition:

In the Old Testament, there were three men with the name Jotham.

- One man named Jotham was the youngest son of Gideon. Jotham helped defeat his older brother Abimelech, who had killed all the rest of their brothers.
- Another man named Jotham was a king over Judah for sixteen years following the death of his father Uzziah (Azariah).
- Like his father, King Jotham obeyed God and was a good king.
- However, by not removing the places of idol worship he caused the people of Judah to later turn away from God again.
- Jotham is also one of the ancestors listed in the genealogy of Jesus Christ in the book of Matthew.

(See also: Abimelech, [Ahaz](#), Gideon, [Uzziah](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 26:21
- 2 Kings 15:05
- Isaiah 01:1
- Judges 09:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3147

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:9](#))

joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing

Definition:

joy

The term "joy" refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term "joyful" describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

rejoice

The term "rejoice" means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as "be very happy" or "be very glad" or "be full of joy."
- When Mary said "my soul rejoices in God my Savior," she meant "God my Savior has made me very happy" or "I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "joy" could also be translated as "gladness" or "delight" or "great happiness."
- The phrase, "be joyful" could be translated as "rejoice" or "be very glad" or it could be translated "be very happy in God's goodness."
- A person who is joyful could be described as "very happy" or "delighted" or "deeply glad."
- A phrase such as "make a joyful shout" could be translated as "shout in a way that shows you are very happy."
- A "joyful city" or "joyful house" could be translated as "city where joyful people live" or "house full of joyful people" or "city whose people are very happy." (See: [metonymy](#))

Bible References:

- Nehemiah 08:10
- Psalm 048:02
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 02:9-10
- Luke 15:07
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 03:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 05:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 05:23
- Philippians 04:10-13
- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 05:16
- Philemon 01:4-7

- James 01:02
- 3 John 01:1-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:07** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- **34:04** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:07** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G20, G21, G2165, G2167, G2744, G4640, G4796, G4913, G5463, G5479

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:10](#); [5:12](#); [13:20](#); [13:44](#); [18:13](#); [25:21](#); [25:23](#); [28:8](#))

Judah

Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob's older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the "tribe of Judah." When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Judah" refers to the land given to the tribe of Judah, which includes the mountainous area to the south of the city of Jerusalem.

- It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
- King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- When Solomon's reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the "Lion of Judah."
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Jew](#), [Judah](#), [Judea](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 01:09
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:02
- Luke 03:33
- Ruth 01:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3063

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:2](#); [1:3](#); [2:6](#))

Judas Iscariot

Facts:

Judas Iscariot was one of Jesus' apostles. He was the one who betrayed Jesus to the Jewish leaders.

- The name "Iscariot" may mean "from Kerioth," perhaps indicating that Judas grew up in that city.
- Judas Iscariot managed the apostles' money and regularly stole some of it to use for himself.
- Judas betrayed Jesus by telling the religious leaders where Jesus was so they could arrest him.
- After the religious leaders condemned Jesus to die, Judas regretted that he had betrayed Jesus, so he gave the betrayal money back to the Jewish leaders and then killed himself.
- Another apostle was also named Judas, as was one of Jesus' brothers. Jesus' brother was also known as "Jude."

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [betray](#), Jewish leaders, Judas the son of James)

Bible References:

- Luke 06:14-16
- Luke 22:47-48
- Mark 03:19
- Mark 14:10-11
- Matthew 26:23-25

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **38:02** One of Jesus' disciples was a man named **Judas**. ... After Jesus and the disciples arrived in Jerusalem, **Judas** went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **38:03** The Jewish leaders, led by the high priest, paid **Judas** thirty silver coins to betray Jesus.
- **38:14** **Judas** came with the Jewish leaders, soldiers, and a large crowd. They were all carrying swords and clubs. **Judas** came to Jesus and said, "Greetings, teacher," and kissed him.
- **39:08** Meanwhile, **Judas**, the betrayer, saw that the Jewish leaders had condemned Jesus to die. He became full of sorrow and went away and killed himself.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2455, G2469

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:4](#); [26:14](#); [26:25](#); [26:47](#); [27:3](#))

Judea

Facts:

The term “Judea” refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broad sense.

- Sometimes “Judea” is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province “Judah.”
- Other times “Judea” has a broad sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
- If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broad sense of Judea could be translated as “Judea Country” and the narrow sense could be translated as “Judea Province,” or “Judah Province” since this is the part of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Galilee](#), Edom, [Judah](#), Judah, [Samaria](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14
- Acts 02:09
- Acts 09:32
- Acts 12:19
- John 03:22-24
- Luke 01:05
- Luke 04:44
- Luke 05:17
- Mark 10:1-4
- Matthew 02:01
- Matthew 02:05
- Matthew 02:22-23
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 19:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2453

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:1](#); [2:5](#); [2:22](#); [3:1](#); [3:5](#); [4:25](#); [19:1](#); [24:16](#))

judge

Definition:

A judge is a person who decides what is right or wrong when there are disputes between people, usually in matters that pertain to the law.

- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a judge because he is the one perfect judge who makes the final decisions about what is right or wrong.
- After the people of Israel entered the land of Canaan and before they had kings to rule them, God appointed leaders called “judges” to lead them in times of trouble. Often these judges were military leaders who rescued the Israelites by defeating their enemies.
- The term “judge” could also be called “decision-maker” or “leader” or “deliverer” or “governor,” depending on the context.

(See also: [governor](#), [judge](#), [law](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:08
- Acts 07:27
- Luke 11:19
- Luke 12:14
- Luke 18:1-2
- Matthew 05:25
- Ruth 01:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1781, H1782, H6414, H6416, H6419, H8199, G350, G1252, G1348, G2919, G2922, G2923

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:25](#); [12:27](#))

judge, judgment

Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: decree, [judge](#), judgment day, [just](#), [law](#), [law](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:17
- 1 Kings 03:09
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 03:14
- James 02:04
- Luke 06:37
- Micah 03:9-11
- Psalm 054:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, “We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?”
- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G144, G350, G968, G1106, G1252, G1341, G1345, G1348, G1349, G2917, G2919, G2920, G2922, G2923, G4232

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:21](#); [5:22](#); [5:40](#); [7:1](#); [7:2](#); [10:15](#); [11:22](#); [11:24](#); [12:36](#); [12:41](#); [12:42](#); [19:28](#); [23:33](#))

just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification

Definition:

"Just" and "justice" refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
- To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God's laws.
- To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."

The terms "unjust" and "unjustly" refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An "injustice" is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being "partial" or "prejudiced" because he is not treating people equally.

The terms "justify" and "justification" refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- "Justification" refers to what God does when he forgives a person's sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include "morally right" or "fair."
- The term "justice" could be translated as "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."
- To "act justly" could be translated as "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."
- In some contexts, "just" could be translated as "righteous" or "upright."
- Depending on the context, "unjust" could also be translated as "unfair" or "partial" or "unrighteous."
- The phrase "the unjust" could be translated as "the unjust ones" or "unjust people" or "people who treat others unfairly" or "unrighteous people" or "people who disobey God."
- The term "unjustly" could be translated as, "in an unfair manner" or "wrongly" or "unfairly."
- Ways to translate "injustice" could include, "wrong treatment" or "unfair treatment" or "acting unfairly." (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- Other ways to translate "justify" could include "declare (someone) to be righteous" or "cause (someone) to be righteous."
- The term "justification" could be translated as "being declared righteous" or "becoming righteous" or "causing people to be righteous."
- The phrase "resulting in justification" could be translated as "so that God justified many people" or "which resulted in God causing people to be righteous."
- The phrase "for our justification" could be translated as "in order that we could be made righteous by God."

(See also: [forgive](#), guilt, [judge](#), [righteous](#), [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 44:16

- 1 Chronicles 18:14
- Isaiah 04:3-4
- Jeremiah 22:03
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Micah 03:8
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 11:19
- Matthew 23:23-24
- Luke 18:03
- Luke 18:08
- Luke 18:13-14
- Luke 21:20-22
- Luke 23:41
- Acts 13:38-39
- Acts 28:04
- Romans 04:1-3
- Galatians 03:6-9
- Galatians 03:11
- Galatians 05:3-4
- Titus 03:6-7
- Hebrews 06:10
- James 02:24
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:09** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H2555, H3477, H4941, H5765, H5766, H5767, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8264, H8636, G91, G93, G94, G1342, G1344, G1345, G1346, G1347, G1738

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:19](#); [12:18](#); [12:20](#); [12:37](#); [23:23](#))

kind [NOT kindness]

Definition:

The term “kind” refers to a group or classification of something(s) that share some common characteristics but not all characteristics.

- In the Bible, this term is specifically used to refer to the distinctive kinds of plants and animals that God made when he created the world.
- Often there are many different variations or species within each “kind.” For example, horses, zebras, and donkeys are all members of the same “kind,” but they are different species.
- The main thing that distinguishes each “kind” as a separate group is that members of that group can reproduce more of their same “kind.” Members of different kinds cannot do that with each other.

Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate this term could include “type” or “class” or “group” or “animal (plant) group” or “category.”

Bible References:

- Genesis 01:21
- Genesis 01:24
- Mark 09:29
- Matthew 13:47

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2178, H3978, H4327, G1085, G5449

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:30](#); [13:47](#))

King of the Jews

Definition:

The term “King of the Jews” is a title that refers to Jesus, the Messiah.

- The first time the Bible records this title is when it was used by the wise men who traveled to Bethlehem looking for the baby who was “King of the Jews.”
- The angel revealed to Mary that her son, a descendant of King David, would be a king whose reign would last forever.
- Before Jesus was crucified, Roman soldiers mockingly called Jesus “King of the Jews.” This title was also written on a piece of wood and nailed to the top of Jesus’ cross.
- Jesus truly is the King of the Jews and the king over all creation.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “King of the Jews” could also be translated as “king over the Jews” or “king who rules over the Jews” or “supreme ruler of the Jews.”
- Check to see how the phrase “king of” is translated in other places in the translation.

(See also: descendant, [Jew](#), [Jesus](#), [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingdom of God](#), wise men)

Bible References:

- Luke 23:03
- Luke 23:38
- Matthew 02:02
- Matthew 27:11
- Matthew 27:35-37

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:09** Some time later, wise men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky. They realized it meant a new **king of the Jews** was born.
- **39:09** Pilate asked Jesus, “Are you the **King of the Jews**?”
- **39:12** The Roman soldiers whipped Jesus and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they mocked him by saying, “Look, the **King of the Jews**!”
- **40:02** Pilate commanded that they write, “**King of the Jews**” on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus’ head.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G935, G2453

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:2](#); [27:11](#); [27:29](#); [27:37](#))

king, kingdom, kingship

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

- In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s). When a king died, usually his oldest son became the next king.
- The Bible often refers to God as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
- The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: “king of the Jews;” “king of Israel;” and “king of kings.”
- Depending on the context, the term “king” might also be translated as “supreme chief” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” might be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: [authority](#), [Herod Antipas](#), [kingdom](#), [kingdom of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 06:15-16
- 2 Kings 05:18
- 2 Samuel 05:03
- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 01:05
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 05:35
- Matthew 14:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **16:01** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **17:05** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **21:06** God's prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4427, H4428, H4430, G935, G936

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:6](#); [2:1](#); [2:2](#); [2:3](#); [2:9](#); [5:35](#); [10:18](#); [11:8](#); [14:9](#); [17:25](#); [18:23](#); [21:5](#); [22:2](#); [22:7](#); [22:11](#); [22:13](#); [25:34](#); [25:40](#); [27:11](#); [27:29](#); [27:37](#); [27:42](#))

kingdom

Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase “kingdom of light” could be translated as “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Judah](#), [priest](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:12
- 2 Timothy 04:17-18
- Colossians 01:13-14
- John 18:36
- Mark 03:24
- Matthew 04:7-9
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 16:28
- Revelation 01:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon’s death.
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:08** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G932

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:2](#); [4:8](#); [4:17](#); [5:3](#); [5:10](#); [5:19](#); [5:20](#); [7:21](#); [8:11](#); [10:7](#); [11:11](#); [11:12](#); [12:25](#); [12:26](#); [12:28](#); [13:11](#); [13:24](#); [13:31](#); [13:33](#); [13:43](#); [13:44](#); [13:45](#); [13:47](#); [13:52](#); [16:19](#); [18:1](#); [18:3](#); [18:4](#); [18:23](#); [19:12](#); [19:14](#); [19:23](#); [19:24](#); [20:1](#); [21:31](#); [21:43](#); [22:2](#); [23:13](#); [24:7](#); [25:1](#); [26:29](#))

kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven

Definition:

The terms “kingdom of God” and “kingdom of heaven” both refer to God’s rule and authority over his people and over all creation.

- The Jews often used the term “heaven” to refer to God, to avoid saying his name directly. (See: [metonymy](#))
- In the New Testament book that Matthew wrote, he referred to God’s kingdom as “the kingdom of heaven,” probably because he was writing primarily for a Jewish audience.
- The kingdom of God refers to God ruling people spiritually as well as ruling over the physical world.
- The Old Testament prophets said that God would send the Messiah to rule with righteousness. Jesus, the Son of God, is the Messiah who will rule over God’s kingdom forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “kingdom of God” can be translated as “God’s rule (as king)” or “when God reigns as king” or “God’s rule over everything.”
- The term “kingdom of heaven” could also be translated as “God’s rule from heaven as king” or “God in heaven reigning” or “heaven’s reign” or “heaven ruling over everything.” If it is not possible to translate this simply and clearly, the phrase “kingdom of God” could be translated instead.
- Some translators may prefer to capitalize “Heaven” to show that it refers to God. Others may include a note in the text, such as “kingdom of heaven (that is, ‘kingdom of God’).”
- A footnote at the bottom of the page of a printed Bible may also be used to explain the meaning of “heaven” in this expression.

(See also: [God](#), [heaven](#), [king](#), [kingdom](#), [King of the Jews](#), [reign](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 01:05
- Acts 08:12-13
- Acts 28:23
- Colossians 04:11
- John 03:03
- Luke 07:28
- Luke 10:09
- Luke 12:31-32
- Matthew 03:02
- Matthew 04:17
- Matthew 05:10
- Romans 14:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:02** He (John) preached to them, saying, “Repent, for the **kingdom of God** is near!”
- **28:06** Then Jesus said to his disciples, “It is extremely hard for rich people to enter into the **kingdom of God**! Yes, it is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the **kingdom of God**.”
- **29:02** Jesus said, “The **kingdom of God** is like a king who wanted to settle accounts with his servants.”
- **34:01** Jesus told many other stories about the **kingdom of God**. For example, he said, “The **kingdom of God** is like a mustard seed that someone planted in his field.”
- **34:03** Jesus told another story, “The **kingdom of God** is like yeast that a woman mixes into some bread dough until it spreads throughout the dough.”

- **34:04** "The **kingdom of God** is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again."
- **34:05** "The **kingdom of God** is also like a perfect pearl of great value."
- **42:09** He proved to his disciples in many ways that he was alive, and he taught them about the **kingdom of God**.
- **49:05** Jesus said that the **kingdom of God** is more valuable than anything else in the world.
- **50:02** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will preach the good news about the **kingdom of God** to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."

Word Data:

- Strong's: G932, G2316, G3772

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:2](#); [4:17](#); [4:23](#); [5:3](#); [5:10](#); [5:19](#); [5:20](#); [6:10](#); [6:33](#); [7:21](#); [8:11](#); [8:12](#); [9:35](#); [10:7](#); [11:11](#); [11:12](#); [12:28](#); [13:11](#); [13:19](#); [13:24](#); [13:31](#); [13:33](#); [13:38](#); [13:41](#); [13:43](#); [13:44](#); [13:45](#); [13:47](#); [13:52](#); [16:19](#); [16:28](#); [18:1](#); [18:3](#); [18:4](#); [18:23](#); [19:12](#); [19:14](#); [19:23](#); [19:24](#); [20:1](#); [20:21](#); [21:31](#); [21:43](#); [22:2](#); [23:13](#); [24:14](#); [25:1](#); [25:34](#); [26:29](#))

kiss

Definition:

A kiss is an action in which one person puts his lips to another person's lips or face. This term can also be used figuratively.

- Some cultures kiss each other on the cheek as a form of greeting or to say goodbye.
- A kiss can communicate deep love between two people, such as a husband and wife.
- The expression to "kiss someone farewell" means to say goodbye with a kiss.
- Sometimes the word "kiss" is used to mean "say goodbye to." When Elisha said to Elijah, "Let me first go and kiss my father and mother," he wanted to say goodbye to his parents before leaving them to follow Elijah.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:25-28
- Genesis 27:26-27
- Genesis 29:11
- Genesis 31:28
- Genesis 45:15
- Genesis 48:10
- Luke 22:48
- Mark 14:45
- Matthew 26:48

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5390, H5401, G2705, G5368, G5370

(Go back to: [Matthew 26:48](#); [26:49](#))

know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Definition:

The term "know" and "knowledge" means generally to understand something or someone. It can also mean to be aware of a fact or to be familiar with a person. The expression "to make known" means to tell information.

- The term "knowledge" refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To "know about" God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To "know" God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God's will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To "know the Law" means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes "knowledge" is used as a synonym for "wisdom," which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The "knowledge of God" is sometimes used as a synonym for the "fear of Yahweh."

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "know" could include "understand" or "be familiar with" or "be aware of" or "be acquainted with" or "be in relationship with."
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as "distinguish." When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition "between."
- Some languages have two different words for "know," one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term "make known" could be translated as "cause people to know" or "reveal" or "tell about" or "explain."
- To "know about" something could be translated as "be aware of" or "be familiar with."
- The expression "know how to" means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as "be able to" or "have the skill to."
- The term "knowledge" could also be translated as "what is known" or "wisdom" or "understanding," depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), [reveal](#), [understand](#), [wise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 02:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 02:15
- 2 Peter 01:3-4
- Deuteronomy 04:39-40
- Genesis 19:05
- Luke 01:77

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H3045, H3046, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G50, G56, G1097, G1107, G1108, G1492, G1921, G1922, G1987, G2467, G2589, G4267, G4894

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:25](#); [6:3](#); [6:8](#); [6:32](#); [7:11](#); [7:16](#); [7:20](#); [7:23](#); [9:6](#); [9:30](#); [9:31](#); [10:26](#); [11:27](#); [12:7](#); [12:15](#); [12:25](#); [12:33](#); [14:35](#); [15:12](#); [16:8](#); [17:12](#); [20:22](#); [20:25](#); [21:27](#); [21:45](#); [22:16](#); [22:18](#); [22:29](#); [24:32](#); [24:33](#); [24:36](#); [24:39](#); [24:42](#); [24:43](#); [24:50](#); [25:12](#); [25:13](#); [25:24](#); [25:26](#); [26:2](#); [26:10](#); [26:70](#); [26:72](#); [26:74](#); [27:18](#); [27:65](#); [28:5](#))

labor, laborer, work, hard work

Definition:

The term “labor” refers to doing hard work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It is often implied that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- In English, the word “labor” is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
- Ways to translate “labor” could include “work” or “hard work” or “difficult work” or to “work hard.”

(See also: [hard](#), labor pains)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:09
- 1 Thessalonians 03:05
- Galatians 04:10-11
- James 05:04
- John 04:38
- Luke 10:02
- Matthew 10:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3018, H3021, H3022, H3205, H4522, H4639, H5447, H5450, H5647, H5656, H5998, H5999, H6001, H6089, H6468, H6635, G75, G2038, G2040, G2041, G2872, G2873, G4866, G4904

(Go back to: [Matthew 6:28](#); [7:23](#); [9:37](#); [9:38](#); [10:10](#); [11:28](#); [20:1](#); [20:2](#); [20:8](#); [21:28](#); [25:16](#))

lamp

Definition:

The term “lamp” generally refers to something that produces light. The lamps used in Bible times were usually oil lamps.

The type of lamp that was used in Bible times is a small container with a fuel source, usually oil, that gives light when it burns.

- An ordinary oil lamp usually consisted of a common piece of pottery filled with olive oil, with a wick placed in the oil to burn.
- For some lamps, the pot or jar was oval, with one end pinched close together to hold the wick.
- An oil lamp could be carried or placed on a stand so that its light could fill a room or house.
- In scripture, lamps are used in several figurative ways as symbols of light and life.

(See also: [lampstand](#), [life](#), [light](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:36
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Luke 08:16-18
- Matthew 05:15
- Matthew 06:22
- Matthew 25:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3940, H3974, H4501, H5215, H5216, G2985, G3088

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:15](#); [6:22](#); [25:1](#); [25:3](#); [25:4](#); [25:7](#); [25:8](#))

lampstand

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lampstand” generally refers to a structure on which a lamp is placed in order to provide light to a room.

- A simple lampstand usually held one lamp and was made of clay, wood, or metal (such as bronze, silver, or gold.)
- In the Jerusalem temple there was a special gold lampstand which had seven branches for holding seven lamps.

Translation Suggestions

- This term could be also translated as “lamp pedestal” or “structure for holding a lamp” or “lamp holder.”
- For the temple lampstand, this could be translated as “seven-lamp lampstand” or “gold pedestal with seven lamps.”
- It would also be helpful in a translation to include pictures of a simple lampstand and a seven-branch lampstand in the relevant Bible passages.

(See also: [bronze](#), [gold](#), [lamp](#), [light](#), [silver](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- Daniel 05:5-6
- Exodus 37:17
- Mark 04:21-23
- Matthew 05:15-16
- Revelation 01:12-13
- Revelation 01:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4501, G3087

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:15](#))

law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law

Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms "law" and "God's law" are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the "law" can refer to:
 - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
 - all the laws given to Moses
 - the first five books of the Old Testament
 - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as "scriptures" in the New Testament).
 - all of God's instructions and will
- The phrase "the law and the prophets" is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or "Old Testament")

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, "laws," since they refer to many instructions.
- The "law of Moses" could be translated as "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Depending on the context, "the law of Moses" could also be translated as "the law that God told to Moses" or "God's laws that Moses wrote down" or "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Ways to translate "the law" or "law of God" or "God's laws" could include "laws from God" or "God's commands" or "laws that God gave" or "everything that God commands" or "all of God's instructions."
- The phrase "law of Yahweh" could also be translated as "Yahweh's laws" or "laws that Yahweh said to obey" or "laws from Yahweh" or "things Yahweh commanded."

(See also: [instruct](#), [Moses](#), Ten Commandments, [lawful](#), Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Acts 15:06
- Daniel 09:13
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 07:25-26
- Galatians 02:15
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 05:18
- Nehemiah 10:29
- Romans 03:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:07** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.\
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.\
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.\
- **16:01** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God's laws**.\
- **21:05** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.\
- **27:01** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"\

- **28:01** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws.**"\

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G2316, G3551, G3565

(Go back to: [Introduction to the Gospel of Matthew](#); [Matthew 5:17](#); [5:18](#); [7:12](#); [11:13](#); [12:5](#); [Notes](#); [22:36](#); [22:40](#); [23:23](#))

law, principle

Definition:

A “law” is a legal rule that is usually written down and enforced by someone in authority. A “principle” is a guideline for decision-making and behavior, and is usually not written down or enforced. However, sometimes the term “law” is used to mean a “principle.”

- A “law” is similar to a “decree,” but the term “law” is generally used to refer to something written rather than spoken.
- Both “law” and “principle” can refer to a general rule or belief that guides a person’s behavior.
- This meaning of “law” is different from its meaning in the term “law of Moses,” where it refers to commands and instructions that God gave the Israelites.
- When a general law is being referred to, “law” could be translated as “principle” or “general rule.”

(See also: [law of Moses](#), [decree](#), command, [declare](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 04:02
- Esther 03:8-9
- Exodus 12:12-14
- Genesis 26:05
- John 18:31
- Romans 07:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1285, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2708, H2710, H4687, H4941, H6310, H7560, H8451, G1785, G3548, G3551, G4747

(Go back to: [Matthew 22:35](#))

lawful, unlawful, not lawful, lawless, lawlessness

Definition:

The term “lawful” refers to something that is permitted to be done according to a law or other requirement. The opposite of this is “unlawful,” which simply means “not lawful.”

- In the Bible, something was “lawful” if it was permitted by God’s moral law, or by the Law of Moses and other Jewish laws. Something that was “unlawful” was “not permitted” by those laws.
- To do something “lawfully” means to do it “properly” or “in the right way.”
- Many of the things that the Jewish laws considered lawful or not lawful were not in agreement with God’s laws about loving others.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “lawful” could include “permitted” or “according to God’s law” or “following our laws” or “proper” or “fitting.”
- The phrase “Is it lawful?” could also be translated as “Do our laws allow?” or “Is that something our laws permit?”

The terms “unlawful” and “not lawful” are used to describe actions that break a law.

- In the New Testament, the term “unlawful” is not only used to refer to breaking God’s laws, but also often refers to breaking Jewish man-made laws.
- Over the years, the Jews added to the laws that God gave to them. The Jewish leaders would call something “unlawful” if it did not conform to their man-made laws.
- When Jesus and his disciples were picking grain on a Sabbath day, the Pharisees accused them of doing something “unlawful” because it was breaking the Jewish laws about not working on that day.
- When Peter stated that eating unclean foods was “unlawful” for him, he meant that if he ate those foods he would be breaking the laws God had given the Israelites about not eating certain foods.

The term “lawless” describes a person who does not obey laws or rules. When a country or group of people are in a state of “lawlessness,” there is widespread disobedience, rebellion, or immorality.

- A lawless person is rebellious and does not obey God’s laws.
- The apostle Paul wrote that in the last days there will be a “man of lawlessness,” or a “lawless one,” who will be influenced by Satan to do evil things.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term “unlawful” should be translated using a word or expression that means “not lawful” or “lawbreaking.”
- Other ways to translate “unlawful” could be “not permitted” or “not according to God’s law” or “not conforming to our laws.”
- The expression “against the law” has the same meaning as “unlawful.”
- The term “lawless” could also be translated as “rebellious” or “disobedient” or “law-defying”.
- The term “lawlessness” could be translated as “not obeying any laws” or “rebellion (against God’s laws).”
- The phrase “man of lawlessness” could be translated as “man who does not obey any laws” or “man who rebels against God’s laws.”
- It is important to keep the concept of “law” in this term, if possible.
- Note that the term “unlawful” has a different meaning from this term.

(See also: [law](#), [law](#), [Moses](#), [Sabbath](#))

Bible References:

- Matthew 07:21-23
- Matthew 12:02

- Matthew 12:04
- Matthew 12:10
- Mark 03:04
- Luke 06:02
- Acts 02:23
- Acts 10:28
- Acts 22:25
- 2 Thessalonians 02:03
- Titus 02:14
- 1 John 03:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6530, G111, G113, G266, G458, G459, G1832, G3545

(Go back to: [Matthew 7:23](#); [12:2](#); [12:4](#); [12:10](#); [12:12](#); [13:41](#); [14:4](#); [19:3](#); [20:15](#); [22:17](#); [23:28](#); [24:12](#); [27:6](#))

learned men, astrologers

Definition:

In Matthew's account of the birth of Christ, the "learned" or "educated" men were the "wise men" who brought gifts to Jesus in Bethlehem sometime after his birth there. They may have been "astrologers," people who study the stars.

- These men traveled a long way from a country far to the east of Israel. It is not known exactly where they came from or who they were. But they were obviously scholars who had studied the stars.
- They may have been descendants of the wise men who served the Babylonian kings in Daniel's time and who were trained in many things, including studying the stars and interpreting dreams.
- Traditionally it has been said that there were three wise men or learned men because of the three gifts they brought to Jesus. However, the Bible text does not say how many there were.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Bethlehem](#), [Daniel](#))

Bible References:

- Daniel 02:27
- Daniel 05:7
- Matthew 02:01
- Matthew 02:07
- Matthew 02:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1505, G3097

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:1](#); [2:7](#); [2:16](#))

leper, leprosy

Definition:

The term “leprosy” is used in the Bible to refer to several different skin diseases. A “leper” is a person who has leprosy. The term “leprous” describes a person or body part that is infected with leprosy.

- Certain kinds of leprosy cause the skin to become discolored with white patches, as when Miriam and Naaman had leprosy.
- In modern times, leprosy often causes hands, feet, and other body parts to become damaged and deformed.
- According to the instructions that God gave to the Israelites, when a person had leprosy, he was considered “unclean” and had to stay away from other people so that they would not become infected with the disease.
- A leper would often call out “unclean” so that others would be warned not to come near him.
- Jesus healed many lepers, and also people who had other kinds of diseases.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “leprosy” in the Bible can be translated as “skin disease” or “dreaded skin disease.”
- Ways to translate “leprous” could include “full of leprosy” or “infected with skin disease” or “covered with skin sores.”

(See also: Miriam, Naaman, [clean](#))

Bible References:

- Luke 05:13
- Luke 17:12
- Mark 01:40
- Mark 14:03
- Matthew 08:03
- Matthew 10:8-10
- Matthew 11:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6879, H6883, G3014, G3015

(Go back to: [Matthew 8:2](#); [8:3](#); [10:8](#); [11:5](#); [26:6](#))

life, live, living, alive

Definition:

The term "life" refers to being physically alive as opposed to being physically dead.

1. Physical life

- A "life" can also refer to an individual person as in "a life was saved".
- Sometimes the word "life" refers to the experience of living as in, "his life was enjoyable."
- It can also refer to a person's lifespan, as in the expression, "the end of his life."
- The term "living" may refer to being physically alive, as in "my mother is still living." It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, "they were living in the city."
- In the Bible, the concept of "life" is often contrasted with the concept of "death."

2. Eternal life

- A person has eternal life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- The opposite of eternal life is eternal death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "life" can be translated as "existence" or "person" or "soul" or "being" or "experience."
- The term "live" could be translated by "dwell" or "reside" or "exist."
- The expression "end of his life" could be translated as "when he stopped living."
- The expression "spared their lives" could be translated as "allowed them to live" or "did not kill them."
- The expression "they risked their lives" could be translated as "they put themselves in danger" or "they did something that could have killed them."
- When the Bible text talks about eternal life, the term "life" could be translated in the following ways: "eternal life" or "God making us alive in our spirits" or "new life by God's Spirit" or "being made alive in our inner self."
- Depending on the context, the expression "give life" could also be translated as "cause to live" or "give eternal life" or "cause to live eternally."

(See also: [death](#), [everlasting](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 01:03
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 02:07
- Genesis 07:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:02
- John 01:04
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 07:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were *_living_* in the world.
- **08:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:09** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:05** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G198, G222, G227, G806, G590

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:20](#); [4:4](#); [6:25](#); [7:14](#); [9:18](#); [10:39](#); [16:16](#); [16:25](#); [18:8](#); [18:9](#); [19:16](#); [19:17](#); [19:29](#); [20:28](#); [22:32](#); [25:46](#); [26:63](#); [27:63](#))

light, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten

Definition:

There are several figurative uses of the term “light” in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth. (See: [Metaphor](#))

- Jesus said, “I am the light of the world” to express that he brings God’s true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to “walk in the light,” which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that “God is light” and in him there is no darkness at all.
- Light and darkness are complete opposites. Darkness is the absence of all light.
- Jesus said that he was “the light of the world” and that his followers should shine like lights in the world by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- “Walking in the light” represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

Translation Suggestions:

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms “light” and “darkness” even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, “walk as children of light” could be translated as, “live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight.”
- Make sure that the translation of “light” does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: [darkness](#), [holy](#), [righteous](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 John 02:08
- 2 Corinthians 04:06
- Acts 26:18
- Isaiah 02:05
- John 01:05
- Matthew 05:16
- Matthew 06:23
- Nehemiah 09:12-13
- Revelation 18:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H216, H217, H3313, H3974, H5051, H5094, H5105, H5216, H7837, G681, G796, G1645, G2985, G3088, G5338, G5457, G5458, G5460, G5462

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:16](#); [5:14](#); [5:16](#); [6:22](#); [6:23](#); [10:27](#); [17:2](#); [24:29](#))

like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if

Definition:

The terms “like” and “likeness” refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

- The word “like” is also often used in a figurative expressions called a “simile” in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, “his clothes shined like the sun” and “the voice boomed like thunder.” (See: [Simile](#))
- To “be like” or “sound like” or “look like” something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
- People were created in God’s “likeness,” that is, in his “image.” It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are “like” or “similar to” qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
- To have “the likeness of” something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.

Translation Suggestions

- In some contexts, the expression “the likeness of” could be translated as “what looked like” or “what appeared to be.”
- The expression “in the likeness of his death” could be translated as “sharing in the experience of his death” or “as if experiencing his death with him.”
- The expression “in the likeness of sinful flesh” could be translated as “being like a sinful human being” or to “be a human being.” Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
- “In his own likeness” could also be translated as to “be like him” or “having many of the same qualities that he has.”
- The expression “the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things” could be translated as “idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things.”

(See also: [beast](#), [flesh](#), image of God, [image](#), [perish](#))

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 01:05
- Mark 08:24
- Matthew 17:02
- Matthew 18:03
- Psalms 073:05
- Revelation 01:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1823, H8403, H8544, G1503, G1504, G2509, G2531, G2596, G3664, G3665, G3666, G3667, G3668, G3669, G3697, G4833, G5108, G5613, G5615, G5616, G5618, G5619

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:24](#); [3:16](#); [5:48](#); [6:2](#); [6:5](#); [6:7](#); [6:8](#); [6:10](#); [6:12](#); [6:16](#); [6:29](#); [7:24](#); [7:26](#); [7:29](#); [8:13](#); [9:36](#); [10:16](#); [10:25](#); [11:16](#); [12:13](#); [12:40](#); [13:24](#); [13:40](#); [13:43](#); [13:44](#); [13:45](#); [13:47](#); [13:52](#); [14:5](#); [15:28](#); [17:2](#); [17:20](#); [18:3](#); [18:4](#); [18:5](#); [18:17](#); [18:23](#); [18:33](#); [19:19](#); [20:1](#); [20:5](#); [20:14](#); [20:28](#); [21:6](#); [21:26](#); [21:30](#); [21:36](#); [22:2](#); [22:26](#); [22:30](#); [22:39](#); [24:27](#); [24:37](#); [24:38](#); [25:1](#); [25:14](#); [25:17](#); [25:32](#); [26:19](#); [26:24](#); [26:35](#); [26:39](#); [26:55](#); [27:41](#); [27:44](#); [27:65](#); [28:3](#); [28:4](#); [28:6](#); [28:15](#))

locust

Facts:

The term “locust” refers to a type of large, flying grasshopper that sometimes flies with many other of its kind in a very destructive swarm that eats all vegetation.

- Locusts and other grasshoppers are large, straight-winged insects with long, jointed back legs that give them the ability to jump a long distance way.
- In the Old Testament, swarming locusts were referred to figuratively as a symbol or picture of the overwhelming devastation that would come as a result of Israel's disobedience.
- God sent locusts as one of the ten plagues against the Egyptians.
- The New Testament says that locusts were a main source of food for John the Baptist while he was living in the desert.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: captive, [Egypt](#), [Israel](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), plague)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:28
- Deuteronomy 28:38-39
- Exodus 10:3-4
- Mark 01:06
- Proverbs 30:27-28

Word Data:

- Strong's: H697, H1357, H1462, H1501, H2284, H3218, H5556, H6767, G200

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:4](#))

loins, waist

Definition:

The term “loins” refers to the part of the body of an animal or person that is between the lower ribs and the hip bones, also known as the lower abdomen.

- The expression “gird up the loins” refers to preparing to work hard. It comes from the custom of tucking the bottom of one’s robe into a belt around the waist in order to move with ease.
- The term “loins” is often used in the Bible to refer to the lower back part of an animal that was sacrificed.
- In the Bible, the term “loins” often refers figuratively and euphemistically to a man’s reproductive organs as the source of his descendants. (See: [euphemism](#))
- The expression “will come from your loins” could also be translated as, “will be your offspring” or “will be born from your seed” or “God will cause to come from you.” (See: [euphemism](#))
- When referring to a part of the body, this could also be translated as “abdomen” or “hips” or “waist,” depending on the context.

(See also: descendant, gird, offspring)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:13
- 2 Chronicles 06:09
- Deuteronomy 33:11
- Genesis 37:34
- Job 15:27

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2504, H3409, H3689, H4975, G3751

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:4](#))

lord, Lord, master, sir

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), [ruler](#), Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Genesis 39:02
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Psalms 086:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:04
- Lamentations 02:02
- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 09:09

- Daniel 09:17-19
- Malachi 03:01
- Matthew 07:21-23
- Luke 01:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 06:23
- Ephesians 06:9
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Colossians 03:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 02:01
- 1 Peter 01:03
- Jude 01:05
- Revelation 15:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:05** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:07** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:03** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:05** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:03** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H113, H136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G203, G634, G962, G1203, G2962

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:20; 1:22; 1:24; 2:13; 2:15; 2:19; 3:3; 4:7; 4:10; 5:33; 6:24; 7:21; 7:22; 8:2; 8:6; 8:8; 8:21; 8:25; 9:28; 9:38; 10:24; 10:25; 11:25; 12:8; 13:27; 13:52; 14:28; 14:30; 15:22; 15:25; 15:27; 16:22; 17:4; 17:15; 18:21; 18:25; 18:26; 18:27; 18:31; 18:32; 18:34; 20:1; 20:8; 20:11; 20:25; 20:30; 20:31; 20:33; 21:3; 21:9; 21:30; 21:33; 21:40; 21:42; 22:37; 22:43; 22:44; 22:45; 23:8; 23:10; 23:39; 24:42; 24:43; 24:45; 24:46; 24:48; 24:50; 25:11; 25:18; 25:19; 25:20; 25:21; 25:22; 25:23; 25:24; 25:26; 25:37; 25:44; 26:22; 27:10; 27:63; 28:2](#))

lots, casting lots

Definition:

In the Bible, a "lot" is a marked object(s) used as a way of making a fair and/or random decision, usually for the purpose of selecting a specific person within a group. "Casting lots" refers to the process of using "lots" to make a fair and/or random decision.

- In modern times, some cultures "draw" or "pull out" lots using a bunch of straws. Someone holds the straws so that no one can see how long they are. Each person pulls out a straw and the one who picks the longest (or shortest) straw is the one who is chosen.
- In biblical times, the objects cast (the "lots") were probably small marked stones. It is unknown how the "lots" actually indicated a decision, but it probably involved dropping or throwing marked stones on the ground.
- The phrase "casting lots" can be translated as "tossing lots" or "throwing lots" or "rolling lots." The translation of "cast" should not sound like the lots were being thrown a long distance.
- If a decision is made "by lot," this could be translated as "by casting lots" or "by throwing lots," etc.

(See also: Elizabeth, [priest](#), Zechariah (OT), Zechariah (NT))

Bible References:

- Jonah 01:07
- Luke 01:8-10
- Luke 23:34
- Mark 15:22
- Matthew 27:35-37
- Psalms 022:18-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1486, H5307, G2819, G2975

(Go back to: [Matthew 27:35](#))

love, beloved

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for "love" some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.
 - Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
 - When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
 - In the ULT, the word "love" refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.
2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.
 - This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
 - The term can also be used in such contexts as, "They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet." This means that they "like very much" or "greatly desire" to do that.
3. The word "love" can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word "love" in the ULT refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, "devoted, faithful caring" or "care for unselfishly" or "love from God." Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word "love" describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, "like very much" or "care for" or "have strong affection for."
- In contexts where the word "love" is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by "strongly prefer" or "like very much" or "greatly desire."
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express "love" as an action. So for example, they might translate "love is patient, love is kind" as, "when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him."

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [sacrifice](#), [save](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:07
- 1 John 03:02
- 1 Thessalonians 04:10
- Galatians 05:23
- Genesis 29:18
- Isaiah 56:06
- Jeremiah 02:02
- John 03:16

- Matthew 10:37
- Nehemiah 09:32-34
- Philippians 01:09
- Song of Solomon 01:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself."
- **33:08** "The thorny ground is a person who hears God's word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God."
- **36:05** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, "This is my Son whom I **love**."
- **39:10** "Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me."
- **47:01** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:01** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:03** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:04** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:07** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:09** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H157, H158, H159, H160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G25, G26, G5360, G5361, G5362, G5363, G5365, G5367, G5368, G5369, G5377, G5381, G5382, G5383, G5388

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:43](#); [5:44](#); [5:46](#); [6:5](#); [6:24](#); [10:37](#); [19:19](#); [22:37](#); [22:39](#); [23:6](#); [24:12](#))

lust, lustful, passions, desires

Definition:

Lust is a very strong desire, usually in the context of wanting something sinful or immoral. To lust is to have lust.

- In the Bible, “lust” usually referred to sexual desire for someone other than one’s own spouse.
- Sometimes this term was used in a figurative sense to refer to worshiping idols.
- Depending on the context, “lust” could be translated as “wrong desire” or “strong desire” or “wrongful sexual desire” or “strong immoral desire” or to “strongly desire to sin.”
- The phrase to “lust after” could be translated as to “wrongly desire” or to “think immorally about” or to “immorally desire.”

(See also: [adultery](#), false god)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:16
- 2 Timothy 02:22
- Galatians 05:16
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Genesis 39:7-9
- Matthew 05:28

Word Data:

- Strong's: H183, H185, H310, H1730, H2181, H2183, H2530, H5178, H5375, H5689, H5691, H5869, H7843, G766, G1937, G1939, G2237, G3715, G3806

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:28](#))

manager, steward, stewardship

Definition:

The term “manager” or “steward” in the Bible refers to a servant who was entrusted with taking care of his master’s property and business dealings.

- A steward was given a lot of responsibility, which included supervising the work of other servants.
- The term “manager” is a more modern term for a steward. Both terms refer to someone who manages practical affairs for someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “supervisor” or “household organizer” or “servant who manages” or “person who organizes.”

(See also: [servant](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 03:4-5
- Genesis 39:04
- Genesis 43:16
- Isaiah 55:10-11
- Luke 08:03
- Luke 16:02
- Matthew 20:8-10
- Titus 01:07

Word Data:

- Strong's: H376, H4453, H5057, H6485, G2012, G3621, G3623

(Go back to: [Matthew 20:8](#))

Manasseh

Facts:

There were five men by the name of Manasseh in the Old Testament:

- Manasseh was the name of Joseph's firstborn son.
- Both Manasseh and his younger brother Ephraim were adopted by Joseph's father, Jacob which gave their descendants the privilege of being among the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The descendants of Manasseh formed one of the tribes of Israel.
- The tribe of Manasseh was often called the "half-tribe of Manasseh" because only part of the tribe settled in the land of Canaan, on the west side of the Jordan River. The other part of the tribe settled on the east side of the Jordan.
- One of the kings of Judah was also named Manasseh.
- King Manasseh was an evil king who sacrificed his own children as burnt offerings to false gods.
- God punished King Manasseh by allowing him to be captured by an enemy army. Manasseh turned back to God and destroyed the altars where idols were worshiped.
- Two men named Manasseh lived during the time of Ezra. These men were required to divorce their pagan wives, who had influenced them to worship false gods.
- One other Manasseh was the grandfather of some Danites who were priests for false gods.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [altar](#), Dan, Ephraim, Ezra, false god, [Jacob](#), [Judah](#), [pagan](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 15:09
- Deuteronomy 03:12-13
- Genesis 41:51
- Genesis 48:1-2
- Judges 01:27-28

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4519, H4520, G3128

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:10](#))

Mary Magdalene

Facts:

Mary Magdalene was one of several women who believed in Jesus and followed him in his ministry. She was known as the one whom Jesus had healed from seven demons who had controlled her.

- Mary Magdalene and some other women helped support Jesus and his apostles by giving to them.
- She is also mentioned as one of the women who were the first to see Jesus after he rose from the dead.
- As Mary Magdalene stood outside the empty tomb, she saw Jesus standing there and he told her to go tell the other disciples that he was alive again.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [demon](#), [demon-possessed](#))

Bible References:

- Luke 08:1-3
- Luke 24:8-10
- Mark 15:39-41
- Matthew 27:54-56

Word Data:

- Strong's: G3094, G3137

(Go back to: [Matthew 27:56](#); [27:61](#); [28:1](#))

Mary, the mother of Jesus

Facts:

Mary was a young woman living in the city of Nazareth who was pledged to be married to a man named Joseph. God chose Mary to be the mother of Jesus the Messiah, the Son of God.

- The Holy Spirit miraculously caused Mary to become pregnant while she was a virgin.
- An angel told Mary that the baby to be born to her was the Son of God and that she must name him Jesus.
- Mary loved God and praised him for being gracious to her.
- Joseph married Mary, but she remained a virgin until after the baby was born.
- Mary thought deeply about the amazing things that the shepherds and wise men said about the baby Jesus.
- Mary and Joseph took the baby Jesus to be dedicated at the temple. Later they took him to Egypt to escape King Herod's plot to kill the baby. Eventually they moved back to Nazareth.
- When Jesus was an adult, Mary was with him when he changed water to wine at a wedding in Cana.
- The gospels also mention that Mary was at the cross when Jesus was dying. He told his disciple John to take care of her like his own mother.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Cana, [Egypt](#), [Herod the Great](#), [Jesus](#), [Joseph \(NT\)](#), [Son of God](#), [virgin](#))

Bible References:

- John 02:04
- John 02:12
- Luke 01:29
- Luke 01:35
- Mark 06:03
- Matthew 01:16
- Matthew 01:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:04** When Elizabeth was six months pregnant, the same angel appeared to Elizabeth's relative, whose name was **Mary**. She was a virgin and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph. The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him Jesus and he will be the Messiah."
- **22:05** The angel explained, "The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God." **Mary** believed and accepted what the angel said.
- **22:06** Soon after the angel spoke to **Mary**, she went and visited Elizabeth. As soon as Elizabeth heard **Mary's** greeting, Elizabeth's baby jumped inside her.
- **23:02** The angel said, "Joseph, do not be afraid to take **Mary** as your wife. The baby in her body is from the Holy Spirit."
- **23:04** Joseph and **Mary** had to make a long journey from where they lived in Nazareth to Bethlehem because their ancestor was David whose hometown was Bethlehem.
- **49:01** An angel told a virgin named **Mary** that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a virgin, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G3137

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:16](#); [1:18](#); [1:20](#); [2:11](#); [13:55](#))

Matthew, Levi

Facts:

Matthew was one of the twelve men that Jesus chose to be his apostles. He was also known as Levi, son of Alphaeus.

- Levi (Matthew) was a tax-collector from Capernaum before he met Jesus.
- Matthew wrote the gospel that bears his name.
- There are several other men named Levi in the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), Levite, [tax collector](#))

Bible References:

- Luke 05:27
- Luke 06:14-16
- Mark 02:14
- Mark 03:17-19
- Matthew 09:09
- Matthew 10:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: G3017, G3156

(Go back to: [Matthew 9:9](#); [10:3](#))

meek, meekness

Definition:

The term “meek” describes a person who is gentle, submissive, and willing to suffer injustice. Meekness is the ability to be gentle even when harshness or force might seem appropriate.

- Meekness is often associated with humility.
- This term could also be translated as “gentle” or “mild-mannered” or “sweet-tempered.”
- The term “meekness” could be translated as “gentleness” or “humility.”

(See also: [humble](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:15-17
- 2 Corinthians 10:1-2
- 2 Timothy 02:25
- Matthew 05:05
- Matthew 11:29
- Psalms 037:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6035, H6037, G4235, G4236, G4239, G4240

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:5](#); [11:29](#))

member, body parts

Definition:

The term “member” refers to one part of a complex body or group.

- The New Testament describes Christians as “members” of the body of Christ. Believers in Christ belong to a group that is made up of many members.
- Jesus Christ is the “head” of the body and individual believers function as the members of the body. The Holy Spirit gives each member of the body a special role to help the entire body to function well.
- Individuals who participate in groups such as the Jewish Council and the Pharisees are also called “members” of these groups.

(See also: [body](#), [Pharisee](#), [council](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:15
- 1 Corinthians 12:14-17
- Numbers 16:02
- Romans 12:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1121, H3338, H5315, H8212, G1010, G3196, G3609

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:29](#); [5:30](#))

mercy, merciful

Definition:

The terms “mercy” and “merciful” refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term “mercy” can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as “merciful” when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “mercy” could be translated as “kindness” or “compassion” or “pity.”
- The term “merciful” could be translated as “showing pity” or “being kind to” or “forgiving.”
- To “show mercy to” or “have mercy on” could be translated as “treat kindly” or “be compassionate toward.”

(See also: [compassion](#), [forgive](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:3-5
- 1 Timothy 01:13
- Daniel 09:17
- Exodus 34:06
- Genesis 19:16
- Hebrews 10:28-29
- James 02:13
- Luke 06:35-36
- Matthew 09:27
- Philippians 02:25-27
- Psalms 041:4-6
- Romans 12:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and **mercy** to others.
- **19:17** He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had **mercy** on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- **20:12** The Persian Empire was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered.
- **27:11** Then Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?” He replied, “The one who was **merciful** to him.”
- **32:11** But Jesus said to him, “No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had **mercy** on you.”
- **34:09** “But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be **merciful** to me because I am a sinner.’”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2551, H2603, H2604, H2616, H2617, H2623, H3722, H3727, H4627, H4819, H5503, H5504, H5505, H5506, H6014, H7349, H7355, H7356, H7359, G1653, G1655, G1656, G2433, G2436, G3628, G3629, G3741, G4698

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:7](#); [9:13](#); [9:27](#); [12:7](#); [15:22](#); [17:15](#); [18:33](#); [20:30](#); [20:31](#); [23:23](#))

messenger

Facts:

The term “messenger” refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate “angel” as “messenger.”
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah’s coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus’ apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: [angel](#), [apostle](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 1 Samuel 06:21
- 2 Kings 01:1-2
- Luke 07:27
- Matthew 11:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H5894, H6735, H6737, H7323, H7971, G32, G652

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:10](#))

might, mighty, mighty works

Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: Almighty, [miracle](#), [power](#), [strength](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:22
- Genesis 06:4
- Mark 09:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H46, H47, H117, H202, H386, H410, H430, H533, H650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G1411, G1415, G1498, G2478, G2479, G2900, G2904, G3167, G3173

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:11](#))

mind, mindful, remind, reminder, likeminded

Definition:

The term “mind” refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To “have the mind of Christ” means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To “change his mind” means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “mind” could also be translated as “thoughts” or “reasoning” or “thinking” or “understanding.”
- The expression “keep in mind” could be translated as “remember” or “pay attention to this” or “be sure to know this.”
- The expression “heart, soul, and mind” could also be translated as “what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about.”
- The expression “call to mind” could be translated as “remember” or “think about.”
- The expression “changed his mind and went” could also be translated as “decided differently and went” or “decided to go after all” or “changed his opinion and went.”
- The expression “double-minded” could also be translated as “doubting” or “unable to decide” or “with conflicting thoughts.”

(See also: [believe](#), [heart](#), [soul](#))

Bible References:

- Luke 10:27
- Mark 06:51-52
- Matthew 21:29
- Matthew 22:37
- James 04:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3629, H3820, H3824, H5162, H7725, G1271, G1374, G3328, G3525, G3540, G3563, G4993, G5590

(Go back to: [Matthew 16:23](#); [22:37](#))

miracle, wonder, sign

Definition:

A “miracle” is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called “wonders” because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term “wonder” can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God’s power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called “signs” because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God’s acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God’s acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah’s time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God’s miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God’s power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God’s power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of “miracles” or “wonders” could include “impossible things that God does” or “powerful works of God” or “amazing acts of God.”
- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: [power](#), [prophet](#), [apostle](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 02:8-10
- Acts 04:17
- Acts 04:22
- Daniel 04:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:01
- Exodus 03:19-22
- John 02:11
- Matthew 13:58

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:08** Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **19:14** God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- **37:10** Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- **43:06** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

- **49:02** Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H226, H852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H6725, H7560, H7583, H8047, H8074, H8539, H8540,, G880, G1213, G1229, G1411, G1569, G1718, G1770, G1839, G2285, G2296, G2297, G3167, G3902, G4591, G4592, G5059

(Go back to: [Matthew 7:22](#); [11:20](#); [11:21](#); [11:23](#); [13:58](#); [21:15](#))

mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock

Definition:

The terms “mock,” “ridicule,” and “scoff at” all refer to making fun of someone, especially in a cruel way.

- Mocking often involves imitating people’s words or actions with the intent to embarrass them or show contempt for them.
- The Roman soldiers mocked or ridiculed Jesus when they put a robe on him and pretended to honor him as king.
- A group of young people ridiculed or scoffed at Elisha when they called him a name, making fun of his bald head.
- The term “scoff at” can also refer to ridiculing an idea that is not considered believable or important.
- A “mocker” is someone who mocks and ridicules consistently.

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 03:04
- Acts 02:12-13
- Galatians 06:6-8
- Genesis 39:13-15
- Luke 22:63-65
- Mark 10:34
- Matthew 09:23-24
- Matthew 20:19
- Matthew 27:29

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:12** Isaiah prophesied that people would spit on, **mock**, and beat the Messiah.
- **39:05** The Jewish leaders all answered the high priest, “He deserves to die!” Then they blindfolded Jesus, spit on him, hit him, and **mocked** him.
- **39:12** The soldiers whipped Jesus, and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they **mocked** him by saying, “Look, the King of the Jews!”
- **40:04** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them **mocked** Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God?”
- **40:05** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd **mocked** Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1422, H2048, H2049, H2778, H2781, H3213, H3887, H3931, H3932, H3933, H3934, H3944, H3945, H4167, H4485, H4912, H5058, H5607, H6026, H6711, H7046, H7048, H7814, H7832, H8103, H8148, H8437, H8595, G1592, G1701, G1702, G1703, G2301, G2606, G3456, G5512

(Go back to: [Matthew 20:19](#); [27:29](#); [27:31](#); [27:41](#))

Moses

Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Miriam, Promised Land, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:21
- Acts 07:30
- Exodus 02:10
- Exodus 09:01
- Matthew 17:04
- Romans 05:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:12** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **12:05 Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you."
- **12:07** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters.
- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **13:07** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

\

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4872, H4873, G3475

(Go back to: [Matthew 8:4](#); [17:3](#); [17:4](#); [19:7](#); [19:8](#); [22:24](#); [23:2](#))

Mount of Olives

Definition:

The Mount of Olives is a mountain or large hill located near the east side of the city of Jerusalem. It is about 787 meters high.

- In the Old Testament, this mountain is sometimes referred to as “the mountain that is east of Jerusalem.”
- The New Testament records several occasions when Jesus and his disciples went to the Mount of Olives to pray and rest.
- Jesus was arrested in the Garden of Gethsemane, which is located on the Mount of Olives.
- This could also be translated as “Olive Hill” or “Olive Tree Mountain.”

(See also: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Gethsemane](#), [olive](#))

Bible References:

- Luke 19:29
- Luke 19:37
- Mark 13:03
- Matthew 21:1-3
- Matthew 24:3-5
- Matthew 26:30

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2022, H2132, G3735, G1636

(Go back to: [Matthew 21:1](#); [24:3](#); [26:30](#))

mourn, mourner, weeping

Facts:

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: [sackcloth](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 15:34-35
- 2 Samuel 01:11
- Genesis 23:02
- Luke 07:31-32
- Matthew 11:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H56, H57, H60, H205, H578, H584, H585, H1058, H1065, H1068, H1671, H1897, H1899, H4553, H4798, H5092, H5098, H5110, H5594, H6937, H6941, H8386, G2354, G2875, G3602, G3996, G3997

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:18](#); [5:4](#); [9:15](#); [24:30](#))

multiply, multiplied, multiplication

Definition:

The term “multiply” means to greatly increase in number. It can also mean to cause something to increase in amount, such as causing pain to multiply.

- God told animals and human beings to “multiply” and fill the earth. This was a command to reproduce many more of their own kind.
- Jesus made the bread and fish multiply in order to feed the 5,000 people. The amount of food kept increasing so that there was more than enough food to feed everyone.
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated as “increase” or “cause to increase” or “greatly increase in number” or “become greater in number” or “become more numerous.”
- The phrase “greatly multiply your pain” could also be translated as “cause your pain to become more severe” or “cause you to experience much more pain.”
- To “multiply horses” means to “greedily keep acquiring more horses” or to “get large numbers of horses.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 08:01
- Genesis 09:07
- Genesis 22:17
- Hosea 04:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3254, H3527, H6280, H7231, H7233, H7235, H7680, G4052, G4129

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:20](#); [24:12](#); [25:29](#))

myrrh

Definition:

Myrrh is an oil or spice that is made from the resin of a myrrh tree that grows in Africa and Asia. It is related to frankincense.

- Myrrh was also used to make incense, perfume, and medicine, and to prepare dead bodies for burial.
- Myrrh was one of the gifts that the learned men gave to Jesus when he was born.
- Jesus was offered wine mixed with myrrh in order to ease the pain when he was crucified.

(See also: [frankincense](#), [learned men](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 30:22-25
- Genesis 37:25-26
- John 11:1-2
- Mark 15:23
- Matthew 02:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3910, H4753, G3464, G4666, G4669

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:11](#))

mystery, hidden truth

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “mystery” refers to something unknown or difficult to understand that God is now explaining.

- The New Testament states that the gospel of Christ was a mystery that was not known in past ages.
- One of the specific points described as a mystery is that Jews and Gentiles would be equal in Christ.
- This term could also be translated as “secret” or “hidden things” or “something unknown.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [Gentile](#), [good news](#), [Jew](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 04:2-4
- Ephesians 06:19-20
- Luke 08:9-10
- Mark 04:10-12
- Matthew 13:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1219, H7328, G3466

(Go back to: [Matthew 13:11](#))

name

Definition:

The term "name" refers to the word by which a specific person or thing is called. In the Bible, however, the term "name" is used in several different ways to refer to several different concepts.

- In some contexts, "name" could refer to a person's reputation, as in "let us make a name for ourselves."
- The term "name" could also refer to the memory of something. For example, "cut off the names of the idols" means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking "in the name of God" meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The "name" of someone could refer to the entire person, as in "there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved." (See: [metonymy](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like "his good name" could be translated as "his good reputation."
- Doing something "in the name of" could be translated as "with the authority of" or "with the permission of" or "as the representative of" that person.
- The expression "make a name for ourselves" could be translated "cause many people to know about us" or "make people think we are very important."
- The expression "call his name" could be translated as "name him" or "give him the name."
- The expression "those who love your name" could be translated as "those who love you."
- The expression "cut off the names of idols" could be translated as "get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered" or "cause people to stop worshiping false gods" or "completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them."

(See also: [call](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:12
- 2 Timothy 02:19
- Acts 04:07
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 09:27
- Genesis 12:02
- Genesis 35:10
- Matthew 18:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2564, G3686, G3687, G5122

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:21](#); [1:23](#); [1:25](#); [6:9](#); [7:22](#); [10:2](#); [10:22](#); [10:41](#); [10:42](#); [12:21](#); [18:5](#); [18:20](#); [19:29](#); [21:9](#); [23:39](#); [24:5](#); [24:9](#); [27:32](#); [27:57](#); [28:19](#))

Naphtali

Facts:

Naphtali was the sixth son of Jacob. His descendants formed the tribe of Naphtali, which was one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- Sometimes the name Naphtali was used to refer to the land where the tribe lived. (See: [synecdoche](#))
- The land of Naphtali was located in the northern part of Israel, next to the tribes of Dan and Asher. its eastern border was on the western shoreline of the Sea of Chinnereth.
- This tribe was mentioned in both the Old and New Testaments of the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Asher, Dan, [Jacob](#), [Sea of Galilee](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 04:15
- Deuteronomy 27:13-14
- Ezekiel 48:1-3
- Genesis 30:08
- Judges 01:33
- Matthew 04:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5321, G3508

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:13](#); [4:15](#))

nation

Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A “nation” usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” was also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: Assyria, [Babylon](#), [Canaan](#), [Gentile](#), Greek, [people group](#), Philistines, Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:06
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 02:05
- Acts 13:19
- Acts 17:26
- Acts 26:04
- Daniel 03:04
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29
- Genesis 35:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 07:05
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43
- Romans 04:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H523, H524, H776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G246, G1074, G1085, G1484

(Go back to: [Matthew 24:7](#); [24:9](#); [24:14](#); [25:32](#); [28:19](#))

Nazareth, Nazarene

Facts:

Nazareth is a town in the region of Galilee in northern Israel. It is about 100 kilometers north of Jerusalem, and it takes about three to five days to travel there on foot.

- Joseph and Mary were from Nazareth, and this is where they raised Jesus. That is why Jesus was known as “the Nazarene.”
- Many of the Jews living in Nazareth did not respect Jesus’ teaching because he had grown up among them, and they thought he was just an ordinary person.
- Once, when Jesus was teaching in Nazareth’s synagogue, the Jews there tried to kill him because he claimed to be the Messiah and had rebuked them for rejecting him.
- The remark Nathaniel made when he heard that Jesus was from Nazareth indicated that this city was not thought of very highly.

(See also: [Christ](#), [Galilee](#), [Joseph \(NT\)](#), [Mary](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 26:9-11
- John 01:43-45
- Luke 01:26-29
- Mark 16:5-7
- Matthew 02:23
- Matthew 21:9-11
- Matthew 26:71-72

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:04** Joseph and Mary had to make a long journey from where they lived in **Nazareth** to Bethlehem because their ancestor was David whose hometown was Bethlehem.
- **26:02** Jesus went to the town of **Nazareth** where he had lived during his childhood.
- **26:07** The people of **Nazareth** dragged Jesus out of the place of worship and brought him to the edge of a cliff to throw him off of it in order to kill him.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G3478, G3479, G3480

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:23](#); [4:13](#); [21:11](#); [26:71](#))

neighbor, neighborhood, neighboring

Definition:

The term “neighbor” usually refers to a person who lives nearby. It can also refer more generally to someone who lives in the same community or people group.

- A “neighbor” is someone who would be protected and treated kindly because he is part of the same community.
- In the New Testament parable of the Good Samaritan, Jesus used the term “neighbor” figuratively, expanding its meaning to include all human beings, even someone who is considered an enemy.
- If possible, it is best to translate this term literally with a word or phrase that means “person who lives nearby.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [parable](#), [people group](#), [Samaria](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26-28
- Ephesians 04:25-27
- Galatians 05:14
- James 02:08
- John 09:8-9
- Luke 01:58
- Matthew 05:43
- Matthew 19:19
- Matthew 22:39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5997, H7138, H7453, H7468, H7934, G1069, G2087, G4040, G4139

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:43](#); [19:19](#); [22:39](#))

Nineveh, Ninevite

Facts:

Nineveh was the capital city of Assyrian empire. A “Ninevite” was a person who lived in Nineveh.

- God sent the prophet Jonah to warn the Ninevites to turn from their wicked ways. The people stopped acting so violently and God did not destroy them at that time.
- The prophets Nahum and Zephaniah both prophesied that God would destroy Nineveh as judgment for their sin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Assyria, [Jonah](#), [repent](#), [turn](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:11-14
- Jonah 01:03
- Jonah 03:03
- Luke 11:32
- Matthew 12:41

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5210, G3535, G3536

(Go back to: [Matthew 12:41](#))

Noah

Facts:

Noah was a man who lived over 4,000 years ago, at the time when God sent a worldwide flood to destroy all the evil people in the world. God told Noah to build a gigantic ark in which he and his family could live while the flood waters covered the earth.

- Noah was a righteous man who obeyed God in everything.
- When God told Noah how to build the gigantic ark, Noah built it exactly the way God told him to.
- Inside the ark, Noah and his family were kept safe, and later their children and grandchildren filled the earth with people again.
- Everyone born since the time of the flood is a descendant of Noah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: descendant, [ark](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 05:30-31
- Genesis 05:32
- Genesis 06:08
- Genesis 08:01
- Hebrews 11:7
- Matthew 24:37

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:02** But **Noah** found favor with God.
- **03:04** **Noah** obeyed God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **03:13** Two months later God said to **Noah**, “You and your family and all the animals may leave the boat now. Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.” So **Noah** and his family came out of the boat.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5146, G3575

(Go back to: [Matthew 24:37; 24:38](#))

oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Definition:

The term "oath" in the Bible refers to a formal promise, usually made in a legal or religious context, in which the person making the oath accepts some kind of accountability or punishment if he does not fulfill his promise. In the Bible, the term "swear" means to make an oath.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In modern times, one meaning of the word "swear" is to use foul or vulgar language. This is never its meaning in the Bible.
- The term "swear by" means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham's relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "an oath" could also be translated as "a pledge" or "a solemn promise."
- To "swear" could be translated as to "formally promise" or to "pledge" or to "commit to do something."
- Other ways to translate "swear by my name" could include "make a promise using my name to confirm it."
- To "swear by heaven and earth" could be translated as to, "promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it."
- Make sure the translation of "swear" or "oath" does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: Abimelech, [covenant](#), vow)

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:23
- Genesis 24:03
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:31
- Luke 01:73
- Mark 06:26
- Matthew 05:36
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:72

Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G332, G3660, G3727, G3728

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:33](#); [5:34](#); [5:36](#); [14:7](#); [14:9](#); [23:16](#); [23:18](#); [23:20](#); [23:21](#); [23:22](#); [26:72](#); [26:74](#))

obey, obedient

Definition:

The term "obey" means to do what has been commanded by a person or law. The term "obedient" describes someone who obeys. Sometimes a command prohibits doing something, as in "do not steal." In this case, to "obey" means not to steal.

- Usually the term "obey" is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority. For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate obey could include a word or phrase that means "do what is commanded" or "follow orders" or "do what God says to do."
- The term "obedient" could be translated as "doing what was commanded" or "following orders" or "doing what God commands."

(See also: citizen, [command](#), disobey, [kingdom](#), [law](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 05:32
- Acts 06:7
- Genesis 28:6-7
- James 01:25
- James 02:10
- Luke 06:47
- Matthew 07:26
- Matthew 19:20-22
- Matthew 28:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:04** Noah **obeyed** God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **05:06** Again Abraham **obeyed** God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **05:10** "Because you (Abraham) have *_obeyed_* me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family"
- **05:10** But the Egyptians did not believe God or **obey** his commands.
- **13:07** If the people **obeyed** these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H2388, H3349, H4928, H6213, H7181, H8085, H8086, H8104, G191, G3980, G3982, G5083, G5084, G5218, G5219, G5255, G5292, G5293, G5442

(Go back to: [Matthew 8:27](#); [19:17](#); [23:3](#); [28:20](#))

oil

Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: [olive](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 01:21
- Exodus 29:02
- Leviticus 05:11
- Leviticus 08:1-3
- Mark 06:12-13
- Matthew 25:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2091, H3323, H4887, H6671, H7246, H8081, G1637, G3464

(Go back to: [Matthew 25:3](#); [25:4](#); [25:8](#); [26:7](#); [26:12](#))

olive

Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit starts out green and changes to black as they ripen. Olives were useful for food and for the oil that could be extracted from them.
- Olive oil was used for cooking in lamps and for religious ceremonies.
- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: [lamp](#), the sea, [Mount of Olives](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:28-29
- Deuteronomy 06:10-12
- Exodus 23:10-11
- Genesis 08:11
- James 03:12
- Luke 16:06
- Psalms 052:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2132, H3323, H8081, G65, G1636, G1637, G2565

(Go back to: [Matthew 24:3](#); [26:30](#))

on high, in the highest

Definition:

The terms “on high” and “in the highest” are expressions that usually mean “in heaven.”

- Another meaning for the expression “in the highest” could be “the most honored.”
- This expression could also be used literally, as in the expression “in the highest tree, ” which means “in the tallest tree.”
- The expression “on high” could also refer to being high in the sky, such as a bird’s nest that is on high. In that context it could be translated as “high in the sky” or “at the top of a tall tree.”
- The word “high” could also indicate the elevated location or importance of a person or thing.
- The expression “from on high” could be translated as “from heaven.”

(See also: [heaven](#), [honor](#))

Bible References:

- Lamentations 01:13
- Psalms 069:29

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1361, H4605, H4791, H7682, G1722, G5308, G5310, G5311

(Go back to: [Matthew 21:9](#))

oppress, oppressed, oppression, oppressor

Definition:

The terms “oppress” and “oppression” refer to treating people harshly. An “oppressor” is a person who oppresses people.

- The term “oppression” especially refers to a situation where people of greater strength mistreat or enslave people who are under their power or rule.
- The term “oppressed” describes the people who are being harshly treated.
- Often enemy nations and their rulers were oppressors to the people of Israel.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “oppress” could be translated as, “severely mistreat” or “cause to be heavily burdened” or “put under miserable bondage” or “rule harshly.”
- Ways to translate “oppression” could include “heavy suppression and bondage” or “burdensome control.”
- The phrase “the oppressed” could be translated as “oppressed people” or “people in terrible bondage” or “those who are treated harshly.”
- The term “oppressor” could be translated as “person who oppresses” or “nation who controls and rules harshly” or “persecutor.”

(See also: [bind](#), enslave, [persecute](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:17-19
- Deuteronomy 26:07
- Ecclesiastes 04:1
- Job 10:03
- Judges 02:18-19
- Nehemiah 05:14-15
- Psalms 119:134

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1790, H1792, H2541, H2555, H3238, H3905, H3906, H4642, H5065, H6125, H6184, H6206, H6216, H6217, H6231, H6233, H6234, H6693, H7429, H7533, H7701, G2616, G2669

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:24](#))

ordain, ordained, ordination, planned long ago, set up, prepared

Definition:

To ordain means to formally appoint a person for a special task or role. It also means to formally make a rule or decree.

- The term “ordain” often refers to formally appointing somebody as a priest, minister, or rabbi.
- For example, God ordained Aaron and his descendants to be priests.
- It can also mean to institute or establish something, such as a religious feast or covenant.
- Depending on the context, to “ordain” could be translated as to “assign” or to “appoint” or to “command” or to “make a rule” or to “institute.”

(See also: [command](#), [covenant](#), decree, [law](#), [law](#), [priest](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 12:31-32
- 2 Samuel 17:13-14
- Exodus 28:40-41
- Numbers 03:03
- Psalms 111:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3245, H4390, H6186, H6213, H6680, H7760, H8239, G1299, G2525, G4270, G4282

(Go back to: [Matthew 21:16](#))

pagan

Definition:

In Bible times, the term “pagan” was used to describe people who worshiped false gods instead of Yahweh.

- Anything associated with these people, such as the altars where they worshiped, the religious rituals they performed, and their beliefs, were also called “pagan.”
- Pagan belief systems often included the worship of false gods and the worship of nature.
- Some pagan religions included sexually immoral rituals or the killing of human beings as part of their worship.

(See also: [altar](#), false god, [sacrifice](#), [worship](#), Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:20-22
- 1 Corinthians 12:1-3
- 2 Kings 17:14-15
- 2 Kings 21:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1471, G1484

(Go back to: [Matthew 6:7](#); [18:17](#))

parable

Definition:

The term “parable” usually refers to a short story or object lesson that is used to explain or teach a moral truth.

- Jesus used parables to teach his disciples. Although he also told parables to the crowds of people, he did not always explain the parable.
- A parable could be used to reveal truth to his disciples while hiding that truth from people like the Pharisees who did not believe in Jesus.
- The prophet Nathan told David a parable to show the king his terrible sin.
- The story of the Good Samaritan is an example of a parable that is a story. Jesus’ comparison of old and new wineskins is an example of a parable that was an object lesson to help the disciples understand Jesus’ teachings.

(See also: [Samaria](#))

Bible References:

- Luke 05:36
- Luke 06:39
- Luke 08:04
- Luke 08:9-10
- Mark 04:01
- Matthew 13:03
- Matthew 13:10
- Matthew 13:13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1819, H4912, G3850, G3942

(Go back to: [Introduction to the Gospel of Matthew](#); [Matthew 13:3](#); [13:10](#); [13:13](#); [13:18](#); [13:24](#); [13:31](#); [13:33](#); [13:34](#); [13:35](#); [13:36](#); [13:53](#); [15:15](#); [21:33](#); [21:45](#); [22:1](#); [24:32](#))

partial, partiality

Definition:

The terms “be partial” and “show partiality” refer to making a choice to treat certain people as more important than other people.

- This is similar to showing favoritism, which means to treat some people better than others.
- Usually partiality or favoritism is shown to people because they are more rich or more popular than other people.
- The Bible instructs his people to not show partiality or favoritism to people who are rich or of high status.
- In his letter to the Romans, Paul teaches that God judges people fairly and with no partiality.
- The book of James teaches that it is wrong to give someone a better seat or better treatment because they are rich.

(See also: favor)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 01:17
- Malachi 02:09
- Mark 12:13-15
- Matthew 22:16
- Romans 02:10-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5234, H6440, G991, G1519, G2983, G4299, G4383

(Go back to: [Matthew 22:16](#))

Passover

Facts:

The “Passover” is the name of a religious festival that the Jews celebrate every year, to remember how God rescued their ancestors, the Israelites, from slavery in Egypt.

- The name of this festival comes from the fact that God “passed over” the houses of the Israelites and did not kill their sons when he killed the firstborn sons of the Egyptians.
- The Passover celebration includes a special meal of a perfect lamb that they have killed and roasted, as well as bread made without yeast. These foods remind them of the meal that the Israelites ate the night before they escaped from Egypt.
- God told the Israelites to eat this meal every year in order to remember and celebrate how God “passed over” their houses and how he set them free from slavery in Egypt.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “Passover” could be translated by combining the words “pass” and “over” or another combination of words that has this meaning.
- It is helpful if the name of this festival has a clear connection to the words used to explain what the angel of the Lord did in passing by the houses of the Israelites and sparing their sons.

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:07
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- 2 Kings 23:23
- Deuteronomy 16:02
- Exodus 12:26-28
- Ezra 06:21-22
- John 13:01
- Joshua 05:10-11
- Leviticus 23:4-6
- Numbers 09:03

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:14** God commanded the Israelites to remember his victory over the Egyptians and their deliverance from slavery by celebrating the **Passover** every year.
- **38:01** Every year, the Jews celebrated the **Passover**. This was a celebration of how God had saved their ancestors from slavery in Egypt many centuries earlier.
- **38:04** Jesus celebrated the **Passover** with his disciples.
- **48:09** When God saw the blood, he passed over their houses and did not kill their firstborn sons. This event is called the **Passover**.
- **48:10** Jesus is our **Passover** Lamb. He was perfect and sinless and was killed at the time of the **Passover** celebration.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6453, G3957

(Go back to: [Matthew 26:2](#); [26:17](#); [26:18](#); [26:19](#))

patient, patience, impatient

Definition:

The terms “patient” and “patience” refer to persevering through difficult circumstances. Often patience involves waiting.

- When people are patient with someone, it means they are loving that person and forgiving whatever faults that person has.
- The Bible teaches God’s people to be patient when facing difficulties and to be patient with each other.
- Because of his mercy, God is patient with people, even though they are sinners who deserve to be punished.

(See also: [endure](#), [forgive](#), persevere)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:20
- 2 Peter 03:8-9
- Hebrews 06:11-12
- Matthew 18:28-29
- Psalms 037:7
- Revelation 02:02

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H750, H753, H2342, H3811, H6960, H7114, G420, G463, G1933, G3114, G3115, G3116, G5278, G5281

(Go back to: [Matthew 18:26](#); [18:29](#))

peace, peaceful, peacemakers

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:1-3
- Acts 07:26
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Colossians 03:15
- Galatians 05:23
- Luke 07:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 04:39
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 10:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:06** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- **15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- **16:03** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- **21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- **48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G269, G1514, G1515, G1516, G1517, G1518, G2272

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:13](#); [10:34](#))

people of God

Definition:

The concept of the “people of God” in the Bible refers to people with whom God has established a covenant relationship.

- In the Old Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel. The nation of Israel was chosen by God and set apart from the other nations of the world in order to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the "Church," meaning everyone who believes in Jesus. This includes both Jews and Gentiles. In the New Testament, sometimes this group of people is called the "sons of God" or "children of God."
- When God uses the phrase “my people,” he is referring to people who have a covenant relationship with him. God’s people are chosen by him, and he wants them to live in a way that is pleasing to him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people of God” could be translated as “God’s people” or “the people who worship God” or “people who serve God” or “people who belong to God.”
- When God says “my people” other ways to translate it could include “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: [Israel](#), [people group](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:02
- Acts 07:34
- Acts 07:51-53
- Acts 10:36-38
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Isaiah 02:5-6
- Jeremiah 06:20-22
- Joel 03:16-17
- Micah 06:3-5
- Revelation 13:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H430, H5971, G2316, G2992

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:21](#))

people, people group,

Definition:

The terms “people” and “people group” refer to some group of people that shares a common language and culture. The term “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, the term “people” can refer to a “people group” or “family” or “relatives” or “army.”
- In plural form, the term “peoples” often refers to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations, the term “nations” is also used in this way.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “the people of” could be translated as “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of,” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: descendant, [nation](#), [tribe](#), [world](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:51-53
- 1 Samuel 08:07
- Deuteronomy 28:09
- Genesis 49:16
- Ruth 01:16

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:02** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there. what follows is
- **21:02** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.
- **42:08** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere.”

- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God’s people by believing in Jesus.
- **50:03** He (Jesus) said, “Go and make disciples of all **people groups!**” and, “The fields are ripe for harvest!”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H249, H523, H524, H776, H1121, H1471, H3816, H5712, H5971, H5972, H6153, G1074, G1085, G1218, G1484, G2560, G2992, G3793

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:21](#); [2:4](#); [2:6](#); [4:16](#); [4:23](#); [13:15](#); [15:8](#); [21:23](#); [21:43](#); [26:3](#); [26:5](#); [26:47](#); [27:1](#); [27:25](#); [27:64](#))

perfect, perfected, perfection, complete

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “perfect” means to be mature in our Christian life. To perfect something means to work at it until it is excellent and without flaws.

- Being perfect and mature means that a Christian is obedient, not sinless.
- The term “perfect” also has the meaning of being “complete” or “whole.”
- The New Testament Book of James states that persevering through trials will produce completeness and maturity in the believer.
- When Christians study the Bible and obey it, they will become more spiritually perfect and mature because they will be more like Christ in their character.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “without flaw” or “without error” or “flawless” or “without fault” or “not having any faults.”

Bible References:

- Hebrews 12:02
- James 03:02
- Matthew 05:46-48
- Psalms 019:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3632, H3634, H4359, H8003, H8503, H8537, H8549, H8552, G199, G2675, G2676, G3647, G5046, G5047, G5048, G5050

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:48](#); [19:21](#))

perish

Definition:

The term "perish" means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or disaster. In the New Testament, it often has the spiritual meaning of being lost or separated from the people of God.

Spiritual Meaning of "Perish:"

- People who are "perishing" are those who have refused to trust in Jesus for their salvation.
- Those who "perish" will not live eternally with God in heaven. Instead, they will live eternally in hell under God's punishment.
- Everyone will die physically, but only those who do not trust in Jesus for their salvation will perish eternally.
- When "perish" is used in a spiritual sense, make sure that your translation expresses this differently than dying physically.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include "be lost from God's people," "die eternally," "be punished in hell," or "be destroyed."
- Try to use a term or expression that does not only mean "die physically" or "cease to exist."

(See also: [death](#), [everlasting](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:23
- 2 Corinthians 02:16-17
- 2 Thessalonians 02:10
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Psalms 049:18-20
- Zechariah 09:5-7
- Zechariah 13:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H7, H8, H1478, H1820, H1826, H5486, H5595, H6544, H8045, G599, G622, G684, G853, G1311, G2704, G4881, G5356

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:29](#); [5:30](#); [8:25](#); [8:32](#); [9:17](#); [10:6](#); [10:28](#); [10:39](#); [10:42](#); [15:24](#); [16:25](#); [18:14](#); [21:41](#); [22:7](#); [26:52](#))

persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue

Definition:

The terms “persecute” and “persecution” refer to continually treating a person or a certain group of people in a harsh way that causes harm to them.

- Persecution can be against one person or many people and usually involves repeated, persistent attacks.
- The Israelites were persecuted by many different people groups Who attacked them, captured them, and stole things from them.
- People often persecute other people who have different religious beliefs or who are weaker.
- The Jewish religious leaders persecuted Jesus because they did not like what he was teaching.
- After Jesus went back to heaven, the Jewish religious leaders and the Roman government persecuted his followers.
- The term “persecute” could also be translated as “keep oppressing” or “treat harshly” or “continually mistreat.”
- Ways to translate “persecution” could include, “harsh mistreatment” or “oppression” or “persistent hurtful treatment”

(See also: Christian, [church](#), [oppress](#), Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:52
- Acts 13:50
- Galatians 01:13-14
- John 05:16-18
- Mark 10:30
- Matthew 05:10
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 10:22
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Philippians 03:06

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:07** “The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with joy. But when he experiences hardship or **persecution**, he falls away.”
- **45:06** That day many people in Jerusalem started **persecuting** the followers of Jesus, so the believers fled to other places.
- **46:02** Saul heard someone say, “Saul! Saul! Why do you **persecute** me?” Saul asked, “Who are you, Master?” Jesus replied to him, “I am Jesus. You are **persecuting** me!”
- **46:04** But Ananias said, “Master, I have heard how this man has **persecuted** the believers.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1814, H7291, H7852, G1375, G1376, G1377, G1559, G2347

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:10](#); [5:11](#); [5:12](#); [5:44](#); [10:23](#); [13:21](#); [23:34](#))

perverse, perversion, pervert, depraved, malicious, devious, dishonest, distortion

Definition:

The term “perverse” is used to describe a person or action that is morally crooked or twisted. The term “perversely” means “in a perverse manner.” To “pervert” something means to twist it or turn it away from what is right or good.

- Someone or something that is perverse has deviated from what is good and right.
- In the Bible, the Israelites acted perversely when they disobeyed God. They often did this by worshipping false gods.
- Any action which is against God’s standards or behavior is considered perverse.
- Ways to translate “perverse” could include “morally twisted” or “immoral” or “turning away from God’s straight path,” depending on the context.
- “Perverse speech” could be translated as “speaking in an evil way” or “deceitful talk” or “immoral way of talking.”
- “Perverse people” could be described as “immoral people” or “people who are morally deviant” or “people who continually disobey God.”
- The phrase “acting perversely” could be translated as “behaving in an evil way” or “doing things against God’s commands” or “living in a way that rejects God’s teachings.”
- The term “pervert” could also be translated as “cause to be corrupt” or “turn into something evil.”

(See also: [corrupt](#), [deceive](#), disobey, [evil](#), [turn](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:47
- 1 Samuel 20:30
- Job 33:27-28
- Luke 23:02
- Psalms 101:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1942, H2015, H3868, H4297, H5186, H5557, H5558, H5753, H5766, H5773, H5791, H6140, H6141, H8138, H8397, H8419, G1294

(Go back to: [Matthew 17:17](#))

Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas

Facts:

Peter was one of Jesus' twelve apostles. He was an important leader of the early Church.

- Before Jesus called him to be his disciple, Peter's name was Simon.
- Later, Jesus also named him "Cephas," which means "stone" or "rock" in the Aramaic language. The name Peter also means "stone" or "rock" in the Greek language.
- God worked through Peter to heal people and to preach the good news about Jesus.
- Two books in the New Testament are letters that Peter wrote to encourage and teach fellow believers.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [disciple](#), [apostle](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 08:25
- Galatians 02:6-8
- Galatians 02:12
- Luke 22:58
- Mark 03:16
- Matthew 04:18-20
- Matthew 08:14
- Matthew 14:30
- Matthew 26:33-35

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **28:09 Peter** said to Jesus, "We have left everything and followed you. What will be our reward?"
- **29:01** One day **Peter** asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I forgive my brother when he sins against me? As many as seven times?"
- **31:05** Then **Peter** said to Jesus, "Master, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water." Jesus told **Peter**, "Come!"
- **36:01** One day, Jesus took three of his disciples, **Peter**, James, and John with him.
- **38:09 Peter** replied, "Even if all the others abandon you, I will not!" Then Jesus said to **Peter**, "Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, **Peter**, that your faith will not fail. Even so, tonight, before the rooster crows, you will deny that you even know me three times."
- **38:15** As the soldiers arrested Jesus, **Peter** pulled out his sword and cut off the ear of the servant of the high priest.
- **43:11 Peter** answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins."
- **44:08 Peter** answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah."

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2786, G4074, G4613

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:18](#); [8:14](#); [10:2](#); [14:28](#); [14:29](#); [15:15](#); [16:16](#); [16:17](#); [16:18](#); [16:22](#); [16:23](#); [17:1](#); [17:4](#); [17:24](#); [17:25](#); [18:21](#); [19:27](#); [26:33](#); [26:35](#); [26:37](#); [26:40](#); [26:58](#); [26:69](#); [26:73](#); [26:75](#))

Pharisee

Facts:

The Pharisees were an important, powerful group of Jewish religious leaders in Jesus' time.

- Many of them were middle class businessmen and some of them were also priests.
- Of all the Jewish leaders, the Pharisees were the most strict in obeying the Laws of Moses and other Jewish laws and traditions.
- They were very concerned about keeping the Jewish people separated from the influence of the Gentiles around them. The name "Pharisee" comes from the word to "separate."
- The Pharisees believed in life after death; they also believed in the existence of angels and other spiritual beings.
- The Pharisees and Sadducees actively opposed Jesus and the early Christians.

(See also: [council](#), Jewish leaders, [law](#), [Sadducee](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 26:04
- John 03:1-2
- Luke 11:44
- Matthew 03:07
- Matthew 05:20
- Matthew 09:11
- Matthew 12:02
- Matthew 12:38
- Philippians 03:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: G5330

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:7](#); [5:20](#); [9:11](#); [9:14](#); [9:34](#); [12:2](#); [12:14](#); [12:24](#); [12:38](#); [15:1](#); [15:12](#); [16:1](#); [16:6](#); [16:11](#); [16:12](#); [19:3](#); [21:45](#); [22:15](#); [22:34](#); [22:41](#); [23:2](#); [23:13](#); [23:15](#); [23:23](#); [23:25](#); [23:26](#); [23:27](#); [23:29](#); [27:62](#))

Philip, the apostle

Facts:

Philip the apostle was one of the original twelve disciples of Jesus. He was from the town of Bethsaida.

- Philip brought Nathanael to meet Jesus.
- Jesus questioned Philip about how to provide food for a crowd of over 5,000 people.
- At the last Passover supper that Jesus ate with his disciples, he talked to them about God, his Father. Philip asked Jesus to show them the Father.
- Some languages may prefer to spell this Philip's name in a different way from the other Philip (the evangelist) to avoid confusion.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Philip)

Bible References:

- Acts 01:14
- John 01:44
- John 06:06
- Luke 06:14
- Mark 03:17-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: G5376

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:3](#))

pig, pork, swine

Definition:

A pig is a type of four-legged, hoofed animal that is raised for meat. Its meat is called “pork.” The general term for pigs and related animals is “swine.”

- God told the Israelites not to eat pig meat and to consider it unclean. Jews today still view pigs as unclean and do not eat pork.
- Pigs are raised on farms to be sold to other people for their meat.
- There is a kind of swine that is not raised on farms but rather lives out in the wild; it is called a “wild boar.” Wild boars have tusks and are considered to be very dangerous animals.
- Sometimes large pigs are referred to as “hogs.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [clean](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:22
- Mark 05:13
- Matthew 07:6
- Matthew 08:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2386, G5519

(Go back to: [Matthew 7:6](#); [8:30](#); [8:31](#); [8:32](#))

Pilate

Facts:

Pilate was the governor of the Roman province of Judea who sentenced Jesus to death.

- Because Pilate was the governor, he had the authority to put criminals to death.
- The Jewish religious leaders wanted Pilate to crucify Jesus, so they lied and said that Jesus was a criminal.
- Pilate realized that Jesus was not guilty, but he was afraid of the crowd and wanted to please them, so he ordered his soldiers to crucify Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [crucify](#), [governor](#), [guilt](#), [Judea](#), [Rome](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 04:27-28
- Acts 13:28
- Luke 23:02
- Mark 15:02
- Matthew 27:13
- Matthew 27:58

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:09** Early the next morning, the Jewish leaders brought Jesus to **Pilate**, the Roman governor. They hoped that **Pilate** would condemn Jesus as guilty and sentenced him to be killed. **Pilate** asked Jesus, "Are you the King of the Jews?"
- **39:10** **Pilate** said, "What is truth?"
- **39:11** After speaking with Jesus, **Pilate** went out to the crowd and said, "I find no guilt in this man." But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, "Crucify him!" **Pilate** replied, "He is not guilty." But they shouted even louder. Then **Pilate** said a third time, "He is not guilty!"
- **39:12** **Pilate** became afraid that the crowd would begin to riot, so he ordered his soldiers to crucify Jesus.
- **40:02** **Pilate** commanded that a sign be put above Jesus' head that read, "King of the Jews."
- **41:02** **Pilate** said, "Take some soldiers and make the tomb as secure as you can."

Word Data:

- Strong's: G4091, G4194

(Go back to: [Matthew 27:2](#); [27:13](#); [27:17](#); [27:22](#); [27:24](#); [27:58](#); [27:62](#); [27:65](#))

pit, pitfall, trenches

Definition:

A pit is a deep hole that has been dug in the ground.

- People dig pits for the purpose of trapping animals or finding water.
- A pit can also be used as a temporary place to hold a prisoner.
- Sometimes the phrase “the pit” refers to the grave or to hell. Other times it may refer to “the abyss.”
- A very deep pit can also be called a “cistern.”
- The term “pit” is also used figuratively in phrases such as, “pit of destruction” which describes being trapped in a disastrous situation or being deeply involved in sinful, destructive practices.

(See also: abyss, [hell](#), [prison](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 37:21-22
- Job 33:18
- Luke 06:39
- Proverbs 01:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H875, H953, H1356, H1475, H2352, H4087, H4113, H4379, H6354, H7585, H7745, H7816, H7825, H7845, H7882, G12, G999, G5421

(Go back to: [Matthew 12:11](#); [15:14](#))

plant, planted, implanted, replanted, transplanted, sow

Definition:

A “plant” is generally something that grows and is attached to the ground. To “sow” means to put seeds in the ground in order to grow plants. A “sower” is a person who sows or plants seeds.

- The method of sowing or planting varies, but one method is to take handfuls of seeds and scatter them on the ground.
- Another method for planting seeds is to make holes in the soil and place seeds in each hole.
- The term “sow” can be used figuratively, as in “a person will reap what he sows.” This means that if a person does something evil, he will receive a negative result, and if a person does good, he will receive a positive result.

Translations Suggestions

- The term to “sow” could also be translated as to “plant.” Make sure the word used to translate this can include planting seeds.
- Other ways to translate “sower” could include “planter” or “farmer” or “person who plants seeds.”
- In English, “sow” is only used for planting seeds, but the English word “plant” can be used for planting seeds as well as larger things, such as trees. Other languages may also use different words, depending on what is being planted.
- The expression “a person reaps what he sows” could also be translated as “just like a certain kind of seed produces a certain kind of plant, in the same way a person’s good actions will bring a good result and a person’s evil actions will bring an evil result.”

(See also: [evil](#), [good](#), [harvest](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 06:08
- Luke 08:05
- Matthew 06:25-26
- Matthew 13:04
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 25:24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2221, H2232, H2233, H2236, H4218, H4302, H5193, H7971, H8362, G4687, G4703, G5452

(Go back to: [Matthew 6:26](#); [13:3](#); [13:4](#); [13:19](#); [13:20](#); [13:22](#); [13:23](#); [13:24](#); [13:25](#); [13:27](#); [13:31](#); [13:37](#); [13:39](#); [15:13](#); [25:24](#); [25:26](#))

possess, possessed, possession, dispossess

Facts:

The terms “possess” and “possession” usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of “possessing” or “taking possession of” an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to “possess” the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as “their possession.” This could also be translated as “their rightful place to live.”
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh’s “special possession.” This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “possess” could also be translated as “own” or “have” or “have charge over.”
- The phrase “take possession of” could be translated as “take control of” or “occupy” or “live on,” depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, “possessions” could be translated as “belongings” or “property” or “owned things” or “things they owned.”
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, “my special possession” this could also be translated as “my special people” or “people who belong to me” or “my people whom I love and rule.”
- The sentence, “they will become their possession” when referring to land, means “they will occupy the land” or “the land will belong to them.”
- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as, “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as, “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: [Canaan](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:70
- 1 Kings 09:17-19
- Acts 02:45
- Deuteronomy 04:5-6
- Genesis 31:36-37
- Matthew 13:44

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H270, H272, H834, H2505, H2631, H3027, H3423, H3424, H3425, H3426, H4180, H4181, H4672, H4735, H4736, H5157, H5159, H5459, H7069, G1139, G2192, G2697, G2722, G2932, G2933, G2935, G4047, G5224, G5564

(Go back to: [Matthew 6:2](#); [6:5](#); [6:16](#); [19:21](#); [19:22](#); [21:38](#); [24:47](#); [25:14](#))

power, powerful, powerfully

Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God’s ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [miracle](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:05
- Colossians 01:11-12
- Genesis 31:29
- Jeremiah 18:21
- Jude 01:25
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 01:17
- Luke 04:14
- Matthew 26:64
- Philippians 03:21
- Psalm 080:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:05** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”
- **26:01** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **32:15** Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, “Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you.”
- **43:06** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know.”
- **44:08** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H410, H1369, H1370, H2220, H2393, H2428, H2429, H2632, H3027, H3028, H3581, H4475, H4910, H5794, H5797, H5808, H6184, H7786, H7980, H7981, H7983, H7989, H8280, H8592, H8633, G1411, G1415, G1754, G1756, G1849, G1850, G2159, G2478, G2479, G2904, G3168

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:9](#); [9:28](#); [13:54](#); [14:2](#); [17:16](#); [17:19](#); [22:29](#); [24:29](#); [24:30](#); [26:61](#); [26:64](#); [27:42](#))

praise, praised, praiseworthy

Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term to “praise” could also be translated as to “speak well of” or to “highly honor with words” or to “say good things about.”
- The noun “praise” could be translated as “spoken honor” or “speech that honors” or “speaking good things about.”

(See also: [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 01:03
- Acts 02:47
- Acts 13:48
- Daniel 03:28
- Ephesians 01:03
- Genesis 49:8
- James 03:9-10
- John 05:41-42
- Luke 01:46
- Luke 01:64-66
- Luke 19:37-38
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Matthew 15:29-31

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
- **17:08** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- **22:07** Zechariah said, “**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people!”
- **43:13** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- **47:08** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H7121, G2980, G3853

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:25; 21:16](#))

pray, prayer

Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: false god, [forgive](#), [praise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:09
- Acts 08:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 04:04
- John 17:09
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:05** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- **19:08** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- **21:07** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- **43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- **49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G154, G1162, G1189, G1783, G2065, G2171, G2172, G3870, G4335, G4336

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:44](#); [6:5](#); [6:6](#); [6:7](#); [6:9](#); [9:38](#); [14:23](#); [19:13](#); [21:13](#); [21:22](#); [24:20](#); [26:36](#); [26:39](#); [26:41](#); [26:42](#); [26:44](#))

preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

Definition:

To “preach” means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him. To “proclaim” means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- “Preaching” and “teaching” are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- “Preaching” mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. “Teaching” is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term “preach” is usually used with the word “gospel.”
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his “teachings.”
- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See also: [good news](#), [Jesus](#), [kingdom of God](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:1-2
- Acts 08:4-5
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:21-22
- Acts 20:25
- Luke 04:42
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 04:17
- Matthew 12:41
- Matthew 24:14
- Acts 09:20-22
- Acts 13:38-39
- Jonah 03:1-3
- Luke 04:18-19
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 10:26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:02** He (John) **preached** to them, saying, “Repent, for the Kingdom of God is near!”
- **30:01** Jesus sent his apostles to **preach** and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began **preaching** and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **45:06** But in spite of this, they **preached** about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **45:07** He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began **preaching** to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to **preach** the good news of Jesus in many other places.

- **47:14** Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, **preaching** and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
- **50:02** When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will **preach** the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”

Word Data:

- Strong's:
 - preach: H1319, H7121, H7150, G1229, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2783, G2784, G2980, G4283
 - proclaim: H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G518, G591, G1229, G1861, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2784, G2980, G3142, G4135

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:1](#); [4:17](#); [4:23](#); [9:35](#); [10:7](#); [10:27](#); [11:1](#); [11:5](#); [12:41](#); [24:14](#); [26:13](#))

precious, valuable, expensive, fine

Facts:

The term “precious” describes people or things that are considered to be very valuable.

- The term “precious stones” or “precious jewels” refers to rocks and minerals that are colorful or have other qualities that make them beautiful or useful.
- Examples of precious stones include diamonds, rubies, and emeralds.
- Gold and silver are called “precious metals.”
- Yahweh says that his people are “precious” in his sight (Isaiah 43:4).
- Peter wrote that a gentle and quiet spirit is precious in God’s sight (1 Peter 3:4).
- This term could also be translated as “valuable” or “very dear” or “cherished” or “highly valued.”

(See also: [gold](#), [silver](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 01:01
- Acts 20:22-24
- Daniel 11:38-39
- Lamentations 01:7
- Luke 07:2-5
- Psalms 036:08

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H68, H1431, H2532, H2667, H2896, H3357, H3365, H3366, H3368, H4022, H4030, H4261, H4262, H5238, H8443, G927, G1784, G2472, G4185, G4186, G5092, G5093

(Go back to: [Matthew 13:46](#))

priest, priesthood

Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: Aaron, chief priests, [high priest](#), mediator, [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:22
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 01:44
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 08:4
- Matthew 12:04
- Micah 03:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 01:06

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:07** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was

sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.

- **19:07** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- **21:07** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G748, G749, G2405, G2406, G2407, G2409, G2420

(Go back to: [Matthew 8:4](#); [12:4](#); [12:5](#))

prison, prisoner, imprison

Definition:

The term “prison” refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A “prisoner” is someone who has been put in the prison.

- A person may be kept in a prison while waiting to be judged in a trial.
- The term “imprisoned” means “kept in a prison” or “kept in captivity.”
- Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.

Translation Suggestions:

- Another word for “prison” is “jail.”
- This term could also be translated as “dungeon” in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
- The term “prisoners” can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will. Another way to translate this meaning would be “captives.”
- Other ways to translate “imprisoned” could be, “kept as a prisoner” or “kept in captivity” or “held captive.”

(See also: captive)

Bible References:

- Acts 25:04
- Ephesians 04:01
- Luke 12:58
- Luke 22:33-34
- Mark 06:17
- Matthew 05:26
- Matthew 14:03
- Matthew 25:34-36

Word Data:

- Strong's: H612, H613, H615, H616, H631, H1004, H1540, H3608, H3628, H3947, H4115, H4307, H4455, H4525, H4929, H5470, H6495, H7617, H7622, H7628, G1198, G1199, G1200, G1201, G1202, G1210, G2252, G3612, G4788, G4869, G5084, G5438, G5439

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:25](#); [11:2](#); [14:3](#); [14:10](#); [18:30](#); [25:36](#); [25:39](#); [25:43](#); [25:44](#); [27:15](#); [27:16](#))

profane, profaned

Definition:

To profane something means to act in a way that defiles, pollutes, or disrespects something that is holy.

- A profane person is one who acts in a way that is unholy and dishonoring of God.
- The verb to “profane” could be translated as to “treat as unholy” or to “be irreverent toward” or to “dishonor.”
- God told the Israelites that they “profaned” themselves with idols, meaning that the people were making themselves “unclean” or “dishonored” by this sin. They were also dishonoring God.
- Depending on the context, the adjective “profane” could be translated as “dishonoring” or “godless” or “unholy.”

(See also: [defile](#), [holy](#), [clean](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:16-18
- Ezekiel 20:09
- Malachi 01:10-12
- Matthew 12:05
- Numbers 18:30-32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2455, H2490, H2491, H5234, H8610, G952, G953

(Go back to: [Matthew 12:5](#))

profit, profitable, unprofitable

Definition:

In general, the terms “profit” and “profitable” refer to gaining something good through doing certain actions or behaviors.

Something is “profitable” to someone if it brings them good things or if it helps them bring about good things for other people.

- More specifically, the term “profit” often refers to money that is gained from doing business. A business is “profitable” if it gains more money than it spends.
- Actions are profitable if they bring about good things for people.
- 2 Timothy 3:16 says that all Scripture is “profitable” for correcting and training people in righteousness. This means that the Bible’s teachings are helpful and useful for teaching people to live according to God’s will.

The term “unprofitable” means to not be useful.

- It literally means to not profit anything or to not help someone gain anything.
- Something that is unprofitable is not worth doing because it does not give any benefit.
- This could be translated as “useless” or “worthless” or “not useful” or “unworthy” or “not beneficial” or “giving no benefit.”

(See also: [worthy](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “profit” could also be translated as “benefit” or “help” or “gain.”
- The term “profitable” could be translated as “useful” or “beneficial” or “helpful.”
- To “profit from” something could be translated as “benefit from” or “gain money from” or “receive help from.”
- In the context of a business, “profit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “money gained” or “surplus of money” or “extra money.”

Bible References:

- Job 15:03
- Proverbs 10:16
- Jeremiah 02:08
- Ezekiel 18:12-13
- John 06:63
- Mark 08:36
- Matthew 16:26
- 2 Peter 02:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1215, H3148, H3276, H3504, H4195, H4768, H5532, H7737, H7939, G147, G255, G512, G888, G889, G890, G1281, G2585, G2770, G2771, G3408, G4297, G4298, G4851, G5539, G5622, G5623, G5624

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:29](#); [5:30](#); [15:5](#); [16:26](#); [18:6](#); [18:15](#); [19:10](#); [25:16](#); [25:17](#); [25:20](#); [25:22](#); [27:24](#))

promise, promised

Definition:

When used as a verb, the term "promise" refers to the action of a person saying that he will do something in such way that he obligates himself to fulfill what he has said. When used as a noun, the term "promise" refers to the thing that a person obligates himself to do.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.

Translation Suggestions:


- The term "promise" could be translated as "commitment" or "assurance" or "guarantee."
- To "promise to do something" could be translated as "assure someone that you will do something" or "commit to doing something."

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 03:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:09
- James 01:12
- Numbers 30:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, "I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children." 
- **03:16** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God's **promise**.
- **05:04** "Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**."
- **08:15** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob's twelve sons and their families.
- **17:14** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **50:01** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H562, H1696, H8569, G1843, G1860, G1861, G1862, G3670, G4279

(Go back to: [Matthew 14:7](#))

prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, false god, [false prophet](#), [fulfill](#), [law](#), [vision](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- Acts 03:25
- John 01:43-45
- Malachi 04:4-6
- Matthew 01:23
- Matthew 02:18
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalm 051:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:01** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God’s messages.
- **19:06** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.

- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:09** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:05** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:07** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G2495, G4394, G4395, G4396, G4397, G4398, G5578

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:22](#); [2:5](#); [2:15](#); [2:17](#); [2:23](#); [3:3](#); [4:14](#); [5:12](#); [5:17](#); [7:12](#); [7:22](#); [8:17](#); [10:41](#); [11:9](#); [11:13](#); [12:17](#); [12:39](#); [13:14](#); [13:17](#); [13:35](#); [13:57](#); [14:5](#); [15:7](#); [16:14](#); [Notes](#); [21:4](#); [21:11](#); [21:26](#); [21:46](#); [22:40](#); [23:29](#); [23:30](#); [23:31](#); [23:34](#); [23:37](#); [Notes](#); [24:15](#); [26:56](#); [26:68](#); [27:9](#))

prostitute, harlot, whored

Definition:

The terms “prostitute” and “harlot” both refer to a person who performs sexual acts for money or for religious rites. Prostitutes or harlots were usually female, but some were male.

- In the Bible, the word “prostitute” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a person who worships false gods or who practices witchcraft.
- The expression “play the harlot” means to act like a harlot by being sexually immoral. This expression is also used in the Bible to refer to a person who worships idols.
- To “prostitute oneself” to something means to be sexually immoral or when used figuratively, to be unfaithful to God by worshiping false gods.
- In ancient times, some pagan temples used male and female prostitutes as part of their rituals.
- This term could be translated by the word or phrase that is used in the project language to refer to a prostitute. Some languages may have a euphemistic term that is used for this. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: [adultery](#), false god, [sexual immorality](#), false god)

Bible References:

- Genesis 34:31
- Genesis 38:21
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 21:31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2154, H2181, H2183, H2185, H6945, H6948, H8457, G4204

(Go back to: [Matthew 21:31](#); [21:32](#))

prostrate, worship

Definition:

To “prostrate” oneself means to lie flat on the ground, usually in submission to a person of authority such as a king or some other powerful person. This same term can also mean to “worship,” referring to the actions of honoring, praising, and obeying God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- This term can be used both of people who worship Yahweh as the One True God and others who worship false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [praise](#), [honor](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 02:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:18
- Exodus 03:11-12
- Luke 04:07
- Matthew 02:02
- Matthew 02:08

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.”
- **14:02** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **25:07** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **26:02** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **47:01** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G1391, G1479, G2151, G2318, G2323, G2356, G3000, G3511, G4352, G4353, G4573, G4574, G4576

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:2](#); [2:8](#); [2:11](#); [4:9](#); [4:10](#); [8:2](#); [14:33](#); [15:9](#); [15:25](#); [18:26](#); [28:9](#); [28:17](#))

punish, punished, punishment, unpunished

Definition:

The term “punish” means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term “punishment” refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person's punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions “go unpunished” and “leave unpunished” mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: [just](#), [repent](#), [righteous](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:18
- 2 Thessalonians 01:09
- Acts 04:21
- Acts 07:59-60
- Genesis 04:15
- Luke 23:16
- Matthew 25:46

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:07** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would **punish** them.
- **16:02** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would **punish** them.
- **48:06** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the **punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person's sin, and God's **punishment** passes over him.
- **49:09** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be **punished** for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:11** Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be **punished** and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3027, H3256, H4148, H4941, H5221, H5414, H6031, H6064, H6213, H6485, H7999, H8011, H8199, G1349, G1556, G1557, G2849, G3811, G5097

(Go back to: [Matthew 25:46](#))

queen

Definition:

A queen is either the female ruler of a country or the wife of a king.

- Esther became the queen of the Persian empire when she married King Ahasuerus.
- Queen Jezebel was the evil wife of King Ahab.
- The Queen of Sheba was a famous ruler who came to visit King Solomon.
- A term such as “queen mother” usually referred to the mother or grandmother of a ruling king or the widow of the previous king. A queen mother had much influence; Athaliah, for example, influenced the people to worship idols.

(See also: Ahasuerus, Athaliah, Esther, [king](#). Persia [ruler](#), Sheba)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:10
- 1 Kings 11:18-19
- 2 Kings 10:12-14
- Acts 08:27
- Esther 01:17
- Luke 11:31
- Matthew 12:42

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1404, H1377, H4410, H4427, H4433, H4436, H4438, H4446, H7694, H8282, G938

(Go back to: [Matthew 12:42](#))

quench, quenched, unquenchable

Definition:

The term “quench” means to put out or stop something that is demanding to be satisfied.

- This term is usually used in the context of quenching thirst and means to stop being thirsty by drinking something.
- It can also be used to refer to putting out a fire.
- Both thirst and fire are quenched with water.
- Paul uses the term “quench” in a figurative way when he instructs believers to not “quench the Holy Spirit.” This means to not discourage people from allowing the Holy Spirit from produce his fruits and gifts in them. Quenching the Holy Spirit means preventing the Holy Spirit from freely manifesting his power and work in people..

(See also: [fruit](#), [gift](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:19
- Ezekiel 20:47
- Isaiah 01:31
- Jeremiah 21:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1846, H3518, H7665, G762, G4570

(Go back to: [Matthew 12:20](#))

Rabbi

Definition:

The term “Rabbi” literally means “my master” or “my teacher.”

- It was a title of respect that was used to address a man who was a Jewish religious teacher, especially a teacher of God’s laws.
- Both John the Baptist and Jesus were sometimes called “Rabbi” by their disciples.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate this term could include “My Master” or “My Teacher” or “Honorable Teacher” or “Religious Teacher.” Some languages may capitalize a greeting like this, while others may not.
- The project language may also have a special way that teachers are normally addressed.
- Make sure the translation of this term does not indicate that Jesus was a schoolteacher.
- Also consider how “Rabbi” is translated in a Bible translation in a related language or a national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [teacher](#))

Bible References:

- John 01:49-51
- John 06:24-25
- Mark 14:43-46
- Matthew 23:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G4461

(Go back to: [Matthew 23:7](#); [23:8](#); [26:25](#); [26:49](#))

Rachel

Facts:

Rachel was one of Jacob's wives. She was the mother of Joseph and Benjamin, whose descendants became three of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- Rachel and her sister Leah were the daughters of Laban, Jacob's uncle.
- For many years, Rachel was not able to have any children. Then God enabled her to give birth to Joseph.
- Years later, Rachel died as she gave birth to Benjamin. Jacob buried her near Bethlehem.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bethlehem](#), [Jacob](#), Laban, Leah, Joseph (OT), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:06
- Genesis 29:19-20
- Genesis 29:30
- Genesis 31:06
- Genesis 33:1-3
- Matthew 02:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7354, G4478

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:18](#))

Rahab

Facts:

Rahab was a woman who lived in Jericho when Israel attacked the city. She was a prostitute.

- Rahab hid the two Israelites who came to spy on Jericho before the Israelites attacked it. She helped the spies escape back to the Israelite camp.
- Rahab became a believer in Yahweh.
- She and her family came to live with the Israelites after the Israelites destroyed Jericho and spared Rahab and her family.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jericho](#), [prostitute](#))

Bible References:

- Hebrews 11:29-31
- James 02:25
- Joshua 02:21
- Joshua 06:17-19
- Matthew 01:05

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:01** In that city there lived a prostitute named **Rahab** who hid the spies and later helped them to escape. She did this because she believed God. They promised to protect **Rahab** and her family when the Israelites would destroy Jericho.
- **15:05** The Israelites destroyed everything in the city as God had commanded. **Rahab** and her family were the only people in the city that they did not kill. They became part of the Israelites.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7343, G4460

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:5](#))

raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up

Definition:

raise, raise up

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The phrase “raise up” sometimes means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

rise, arise

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose,” and “arose” express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen!”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “raise” or “raise up” could be translated as “lift up” or “make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as to “cause to appear” or to “appoint” or to “bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as, “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as “provide” or to “appoint” or to “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: [resurrection](#), [appoint](#), [exalt](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- 2 Samuel 07:12
- Acts 10:40
- Colossians 03:01
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 06:01
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 07:22
- Matthew 20:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.

- **41:05** "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- **43:07** "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- **44:05** " You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead. "
- **44:08** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- **48:04** This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- **49:02** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2210, H2224, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6965, H6966, H6974, H7613, G305, G386, G393, G450, G1096, G1326, G1453, G1525, G1817, G1825, G1892, G1999, G4891

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:24](#); [2:13](#); [2:14](#); [2:20](#); [2:21](#); [3:9](#); [8:15](#); [8:24](#); [8:25](#); [8:26](#); [9:5](#); [9:6](#); [9:7](#); [9:19](#); [9:25](#); [10:8](#); [11:5](#); [11:11](#); [12:11](#); [12:42](#); [14:2](#); [16:21](#); [17:7](#); [17:9](#); [17:23](#); [20:19](#); [22:24](#); [24:7](#); [24:11](#); [24:24](#); [25:7](#); [26:32](#); [26:46](#); [26:62](#); [27:52](#); [27:63](#); [27:64](#); [28:6](#); [28:7](#))

Ramah

Facts:

Ramah was an ancient Israelite city located about 8 km from Jerusalem. It was in the region where the tribe of Benjamin lived.

- Ramah was where Rachel died after giving birth to Benjamin.
- When the Israelites were taken captive to Babylon, they were first brought to Ramah before being moved to Babylon.
- Ramah was the home of Samuel's mother and father.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Benjamin, [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:27
- 1 Samuel 02:11
- 2 Chronicles 16:1
- Jeremiah 31:15
- Joshua 18:25-28
- Matthew 02:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7414, G4471

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:18](#))

ransom, ransomed

Definition:

The term “ransom” refers to a sum of money or other payment that is demanded or paid for the release of a person who is held captive.

- As a verb, to “ransom” means to make a payment or to do something self-sacrificially in order to rescue someone who has been captured, enslaved or imprisoned. This meaning of “buy back” is similar to the meaning of “redeem.”
- Jesus allowed himself to be killed as a ransom to free sinful people from their enslavement to sin. This act of God buying back his people through paying the penalty of their sin is also called “redemption” in the Bible.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “ransom” could also be translated as to “pay to release” or to “pay a price to free” or to “buy back.”
- The phrase to “pay a ransom” could be translated as to “pay the price (of freedom)” or to “pay the penalty (to free people)” or to “make the required payment.”
- The noun “ransom” could be translated as “a buying back” or “a penalty paid” or “the price paid” (to free or buy back people or land).
- The terms a “ransom” and a “redemption” have the same meaning in English but are sometimes used slightly differently. Other languages may have only one term for this concept.
- Make sure this is translated differently from “atonement.”

(See also: atonement, redeem)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 02:06
- Isaiah 43:03
- Job 06:23
- Leviticus 19:20
- Matthew 20:28
- Psalms 049:07

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H3724, H6299, H6306, G487, G3083

(Go back to: [Matthew 20:28](#))

rebuke

Definition:

The term "rebuke" refers to correcting someone verbally, usually with sternness or force.

- The New Testament commands Christians to rebuke other believers when they are clearly disobeying God.
- The book of Proverbs instructs parents to rebuke their children when they are disobedient.
- A rebuke is typically given to prevent those who committed a wrong from further involving themselves in sin.
- This could be translated by "sternly correct" or "admonish."
- The phrase "a rebuke" could be translated by "a stern correction" or "a strong criticism."
- "Without rebuke" could be translated as "without admonishing" or "without criticism."

(See also admonish, disobey)

Bible References:

- Mark 01:23-26
- Mark 16:14
- Matthew 08:26-27
- Matthew 17:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1605, H1606, H2778, H2781, H3198, H4045, H4148, H8156, H8433, G1649, G1651, G1969, G2008, G3679

(Go back to: [Matthew 8:26](#); [16:22](#); [17:18](#); [18:15](#); [19:13](#); [20:31](#))

receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance

Definition:

The term “receive” generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To “receive” can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in “he received punishment for what he did.”
- There is also a special sense in which we can “receive” a person. For example, to “receive” guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To “receive the gift of the Holy Spirit” means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To “receive Jesus” means to accept God’s offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person “receives his sight” means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “receive” could be translated as “accept” or “welcome” or “experience” or “be given.”
- The expression “you will receive power” could be translated as “you will be given power” or “God will give you power” or “power will be given to you (by God)” or “God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you.”
- The phrase “received his sight” could be translated as “was able to see” or “became able to see again” or “was healed by God so that he was able to see.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [lord](#), [save](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 05:09
- 1 Thessalonians 01:06
- 1 Thessalonians 04:01
- Acts 08:15
- Jeremiah 32:33
- Luke 09:05
- Malachi 03:10-12
- Psalms 049:14-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to **receive** the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, “Jesus, **receive** my spirit.”
- **49:06** He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the cross, he **received** your punishment.
- **49:13** God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and **receives** him as their Master.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3557, H3947, H6901, H6902, H8254, G308, G324, G353, G354, G568, G588, G618, G1183, G1209, G1523, G1653, G1926, G2865, G2983, G3028, G3335, G3336, G3549, G3858, G3880, G4327, G4355, G4356, G4687, G5264, G5562

(Go back to: [Matthew 7:8](#); [8:17](#); [10:8](#); [10:14](#); [10:40](#); [10:41](#); [11:14](#); [13:20](#); [17:25](#); [17:27](#); [18:5](#); [19:11](#); [19:12](#); [19:29](#); [20:9](#); [20:10](#); [20:11](#); [21:22](#); [21:34](#); [25:16](#); [25:18](#); [25:20](#); [25:24](#); [25:27](#); [27:30](#))

reconcile, reconciled, reconciliation

Definition:

To “reconcile” and “reconciliation” refer to “make peace” between people who were formerly enemies of each other. “Reconciliation” is that act of making peace

- In the Bible, this term usually refer to Gods reconciling people to himself through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus Christ.
- Because of sin, all human beings are God’s enemies. But because of his compassionate love, God provided a way for people to be reconciled to him through Jesus.
- Through trusting in Jesus’ sacrifice as payment for their sin, people can be forgiven and have peace with God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “reconcile” could be translated as “make peace” or “restore good relations” or “cause to be friends.”
- The term “reconciliation” could be translated as “restoring good relations” or “making peace” or “causing peaceful relating.”

(See also: [peace](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 05:19
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Matthew 05:24
- Proverbs 13:17-18
- Romans 05:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2398 , H3722 , G604 , G1259 , G2433 , G2643, G2644

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:24](#))

reed

Facts:

The term “reed” refers to a plant with a long stalk that grows in the water, usually along the edge of a river or stream.

- The reeds in the Nile River where Moses was hidden as a baby were also called “bulrushes.” They were tall, hollow stalks growing in dense clumps in the river water.
- These fibrous plants were used in ancient Egypt for making paper, baskets, and boats.
- The stalk of the reed plant is flexible and is easily bent over by the wind.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Moses](#), Nile River)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:15
- Luke 07:24
- Matthew 11:07
- Matthew 12:20
- Psalm 068:30

Word Data:

- Strong's: H98, H100, H260, H5488, H6169, H7070, G2563

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:7](#); [12:20](#); [27:29](#); [27:30](#); [27:48](#))

Rehoboam

Facts:

Rehoboam was one of the sons of King Solomon, and he became the king of the nation of Israel after Solomon died.

- At the beginning of his reign, Rehoboam was severe with his people, so ten of the tribes of Israel rebelled against him and formed the “kingdom of Israel” in the north.
- Rehoboam continued as king of the southern kingdom of Judah, which consisted of the remaining two tribes, Judah and Benjamin.
- Rehoboam was a wicked king who did not obey Yahweh, but worshiped false gods.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: kingdom of Israel, Judah, [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:10
- 1 Kings 11:41-43
- 1 Kings 14:21
- Matthew 01:07

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **18:05** After Solomon died, his son, **Rehoboam**, became king. **Rehoboam** was a foolish man.
- **18:06 Rehoboam** answered foolishly and told them, “You thought my father Solomon made you work hard, but I will make you work harder than he did, and I will punish you more harshly than he did.”
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against **Rehoboam**. Only two tribes remained faithful to him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7346, G4497

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:7](#))

reign, rule

Definition:

The term to “reign” means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term “reign” is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king.”

(See also: [kingdom](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:11-13
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Luke 01:30-33
- Luke 19:26-27
- Matthew 02:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3427, H4427, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4475, H4791, H4910, H6113, H7287, H7786, G757, G936, G2231, G4821

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:22](#))

reject, rejected, rejection

Definition:

To “reject” someone or something means to refuse to accept that person or thing.

- The term “reject” can also mean to “refuse to believe in” something.
- To reject God also means to refuse to obey him.
- When the Israelites rejected Moses’ leadership, it means that they were rebelling against his authority. They did not want to obey him.
- The Israelites showed that they were rejecting God when they worshiped false gods.
- The term “push away” is the literal meaning of this word. Other languages may have a similar expression that means to reject or refuse to believe someone or something.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “reject” could also be translated by “not accept” or “stop helping” or “refuse to obey” or “stop obeying.”
- In the expression “stone that the builders rejected,” the term “rejected” could be translated as “refused to use” or “did not accept” or “threw away” or “got rid of as worthless.”
- In the context of people who rejected God’s commandments, rejected could be translated as “refused to obey” his commands or “stubbornly chose to not accept” God’s laws.

(See also: [command](#), disobey, [obey](#), stiff-necked)

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:12-14
- Hosea 04:6-7
- Isaiah 41:09
- John 12:48-50
- Mark 07:09

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H947, H959, H2186, H2310, H3988, H5006, H5034, H5186, H5203, H5307, H5541, H5800, G114, G483, G550, G579, G580, G593, G683, G720, G1609, G3868

(Go back to: [Matthew 21:42](#))

repent, repentance

Definition:

The terms “repent” and “repentance” refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To “repent” literally means to “change one’s mind.”
- In the Bible, “repent” usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God’s way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “repent” can be translated with a word or phrase that means “turn back (to God)” or “turn away from sin and toward God” or “turn toward God, away from sin.”
- Often the term “repentance” can be translated using the verb “repent.” For example, “God has given repentance to Israel” could be translated as “God has enabled Israel to repent.”
- Other ways to translate “repentance” could include “turning away from sin” or “turning to God and away from sin.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [sin](#), [turn](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 03:19-20
- Luke 03:3
- Luke 03:8
- Luke 05:32
- Luke 24:47
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 03:03
- Matthew 03:11
- Matthew 04:17
- Romans 02:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:02** After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and asked God to rescue them.
- **17:13** David **repented** of his sin and God forgave him.
- **19:18** They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**.
- **24:02** Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, “**Repent**, for the kingdom of God is near!”
- **42:08** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to **receive** forgiveness for their sins.”
- **44:05** “So now, **repent** and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5150, H5162, H5164, G278, G3338, G3340, G3341

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:2](#); [3:8](#); [3:11](#); [4:17](#); [11:20](#); [11:21](#); [12:41](#); [Notes](#); [21:29](#); [21:32](#); [27:3](#))

report, reported, reputation

Definition:

The term to “report” means to tell people about something that happened, often giving details about that event. A “report” is what is told, and can be spoken or written.

- “Report” could also be translated as “tell” or “explain” or “tell the details of.”
- The expression “Report this to no one” could be translated as, “Don’t talk about this with anyone” or “Don’t tell anyone about this.”
- Ways to translate “a report” could include “an explanation” or “a story” or “a detailed account,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

- Acts 05:22-23
- John 12:38
- Luke 05:15
- Luke 08:34-35
- Matthew 28:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1681, H1696, H1697, H5046, H7725, H8034, H8052, H8085, H8088, G189, G191, G312, G518, G987, G1225, G1310, G1834, G2036, G2163, G3004, G3056, G3140, G3377

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:8](#); [8:33](#); [9:26](#); [11:4](#); [14:12](#); [18:31](#); [28:8](#); [28:10](#); [28:11](#); [28:15](#))

rest, rested, restless

Definition:

The term “rest” generally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. However, the term can refer to various kinds of rest besides only rest from working. For example, a person might rest from fighting, rest from speaking, or rest from moving, etc.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- A boat that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” or “landed” there.
- When a person or animals rest, they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “rest (oneself)” could also be translated as to “stop working” or to “refresh himself” or to “stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- God said, “they will not enter my rest,” and this statement could be translated as “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: remnant, [Sabbath](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 02:03
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Matthew 11:29
- Revelation 14:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H14, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3498, H3499, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5183, H5564, H6314, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7673, H7677, H7901, H7931, H7954, H8058, H8172, H8252, H8300, G372, G373, G425, G1515, G1879, G1954, G1981, G2270, G2663, G2664, G2681, G2838, G3062, G4520

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:29](#); [12:43](#); [26:45](#))

resurrection

Definition:

The term “resurrection” refers to the act of becoming alive again after having died.

- To resurrect someone means to bring that person back to life again. Only God has the power to do this.
- The word “resurrection” often refers to Jesus’ coming back to life after he died.
- When Jesus said, “I am the Resurrection and the Life” he meant that he is the source of resurrection, and the one who causes people to come back to life.

Translation Suggestions:

- A person’s “resurrection” could be translated as his “coming back to life” or his “becoming alive again after being dead.”
- The literal meaning of this word is “a rising up” or “the act of being raised (from the dead).” These would be other possible ways to translate this term.

(See also: [life](#), [death](#), [raise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:13
- 1 Peter 03:21
- Hebrews 11:35
- John 05:28-29
- Luke 20:27
- Luke 20:36
- Matthew 22:23
- Matthew 22:30
- Philippians 03:11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** Through the Messiah’s death and **resurrection**, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the New Covenant.
- **37:05** Jesus replied, “I am the **Resurrection** and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he dies.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G386, G1454, G1815

(Go back to: [Matthew 22:23](#); [22:28](#); [22:30](#); [22:31](#); [27:53](#))

return

Definition:

The term “return” means to go back or to give something back.

- To “return to” something means to start doing that activity again. To “return to” a place or person means to go back to that place or person again.
- When the Israelites returned to their worship of idols, they were starting to worship them again.
- When they returned to Yahweh, they repented and were worshiping Yahweh again.
- To return land or things that were taken or received from someone else means to give that property back to the person it belongs to.

(See also: [turn](#))

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G344, G360, G390, G1877, G1880, G1994, G5290

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:12](#); [12:44](#); [21:18](#); [24:18](#); [27:3](#))

reveal, revealed, revelation

Definition:

The term “reveal” means to cause something to be known. A “revelation” is something that has been made known.

- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul said that he received the gospel by “revelation from Jesus Christ,” he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- In the New Testament book “Revelation” is about God revealed events that will happen in the end times. He revealed them to the apostle John through visions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “reveal” could include “make known” or “disclose” or “show clearly.”
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate “revelation” could be “communication from God” or “things that God has revealed” or “teachings about God.” It is best to keep the meaning of “reveal” in the translation.
- The phrase “where there is no revelation” could be translated as “when God is not revealing himself to people” or “when God is not speaking to people” or “among people whom God has not communicating.”

(See also: [good news](#), [good news](#), [dream](#), [vision](#))

Bible References:

- Daniel 11:1-2
- Ephesians 03:05
- Galatians 01:12
- Lamentations 02:13-14
- Matthew 10:26
- Philippians 03:15
- Revelation 01:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H241, H1540, H1541, G601, G602, G5537

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:26](#); [11:25](#); [11:27](#); [12:16](#); [16:17](#))

reward, prize, deserve,

Definition:

The term "reward" refers to what a person receives because of something he has done, either good or bad. To "reward" someone is to give someone something he deserves. However, this is different than the concept of "wages," which refers to payment (often money) given in exchange for work performed.

- A reward can be a good or positive thing that a person receives because he has done something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to negative things that may result from bad behavior, such as the statement "the reward of the wicked." In this context "reward" refers to the punishment or negative consequences they receive because of their sinful actions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "reward" could be translated as "payment" or "something that is deserved" or "punishment."
- To "reward" someone could be translated by to "repay" or to "punish" or to "give what is deserved."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to wages. A reward is not specifically about earning money as part of a job.

(See also: [punish](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 32:06
- Isaiah 40:10
- Luke 06:35
- Mark 09:40-41
- Matthew 05:11-12
- Matthew 06:3-4
- Psalms 127:3-5
- Revelation 11:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H319, H866, H868, H1576, H1578, H1580, H4909, H4991, H5023, H6118, H6468, H6529, H7938, H7939, H7999, G469, G514, G591, G2603, G3405, G3406, G3408

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:12](#); [5:46](#); [6:1](#); [6:2](#); [6:4](#); [6:5](#); [6:6](#); [6:16](#); [6:18](#); [10:41](#); [10:42](#))

right hand

Definition:

The figurative expression “right hand” refers to the place of honor or strength on the right side of a ruler or other important individual.

- The right hand is also used as a symbol of power, authority, or strength.
- The Bible describes Jesus as sitting “at the right hand of” God the Father as the head of the body of believers (the Church) and in control as ruler of all creation.
- A person's right hand was used to show special honor when placed on the head of someone being given a blessing (as when the patriarch Jacob blessed Joseph's son Ephraim).
- To “serve at the right hand” of someone means to be the one whose service is especially helpful and important to that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- Sometimes the term “right hand” literally refers to a person's right hand, as when Roman soldiers put a staff into Jesus' right hand to mock him. This should be translated using the term that the language uses to refer to this hand.
- Regarding figurative uses, if an expression that includes the term “right hand” does not have the same meaning in the project language, then consider whether that language has a different expression with the same meaning.
- The expression “at the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of” or “in the place of honor beside” or “in the position of strength” or “ready to help.”
- Ways to translate “with his right hand” could include “with authority” or “using power” or “with his amazing strength.”
- The figurative expression “his right hand and his mighty arm” uses two ways of emphasizing God's power and great strength. One way to translate this expression could be “his amazing strength and mighty power.” (See: [parallelism](#))
- The expression “their right hand is falsehood” could be translated as, “even the most honorable thing about them is corrupted by lies” or “their place of honor is corrupted by deception” or “they use lies to make themselves powerful.”

(See also: [accuse](#), [evil](#), [honor](#), [mighty](#), [punish](#), [rebel](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 02:33
- Colossians 03:01
- Galatians 02:09
- Genesis 48:14
- Hebrews 10:12
- Lamentations 02:03
- Matthew 25:33
- Matthew 26:64
- Psalms 044:03
- Revelation 02:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3225, H3231, H3233, G1188

(Go back to: [Matthew 6:3](#); [20:21](#); [20:23](#); [22:44](#); [25:33](#); [25:34](#); [26:64](#); [27:29](#); [27:38](#))

righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

Definition:

The term “righteousness” refers to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God’s teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God’s laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God’s rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: [parallelism](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good.”
- The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
- Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God’s laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: [evil](#), [faithful](#), [good](#), [holy](#), integrity, [just](#), [law](#), [law](#), [obey](#), pure, [righteous](#), [sin](#), [unlawful](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 01:08
- Psalms 037:30
- Psalms 049:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 02:06
- Matthew 06:01
- Acts 03:13-14
- Romans 01:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- Galatians 03:07
- Colossians 03:25
- 2 Thessalonians 02:10
- 2 Timothy 03:16
- 1 Peter 03:18-20
- 1 John 01:09
- 1 John 05:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **04:08** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:02** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:01** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G93, G94, G458, G1341, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G2118, G3716, G3717

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:19](#); [3:15](#); [5:6](#); [5:10](#); [5:20](#); [5:45](#); [6:1](#); [6:33](#); [9:13](#); [10:41](#); [13:17](#); [13:43](#); [13:49](#); [20:4](#); [21:32](#); [23:28](#); [23:29](#); [23:35](#); [25:37](#); [25:46](#); [27:19](#))

robe, robed

Definition:

A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by a man or a woman. It is similar to a coat.

- Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
- They can be long or short.
- Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.

(See also: royal, [tunic](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 28:4-5
- Genesis 49:11-12
- Luke 15:22
- Luke 20:46
- Matthew 27:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H145, H155, H899, H1545, H2436, H2684, H3671, H3801, H3830, H3847, H4060, H4254, H4598, H5497, H5622, H6614, H7640, H7757, H7897, H8071, G1746, G2067, G2440, G4749, G4016, G5511

(Go back to: [Matthew 27:28](#); [27:31](#))

rule, ruler, ruling, overrules

Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who “rules,” and his authority is his “rule.”

- In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a “ruler,” as in the phrase “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action to “rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It means the same thing as “reign” when it refers to the ruling of a king.

(See also: [authority](#), [governor](#), [king](#), [synagogue](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 03:17-18
- Acts 07:35-37
- Luke 12:11
- Luke 23:35
- Mark 10:42
- Matthew 09:32-34
- Matthew 20:25
- Titus 03:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H995, H1166, H1167, H1404, H2708, H2710, H3027, H3548, H3920, H4043, H4410, H4427, H4428, H4438, H4467, H4474, H4475, H4623, H4910, H4941, H5057, H5065, H5387, H5401, H5461, H5715, H6113, H6213, H6485, H6957, H7101, H7218, H7287, H7300, H7336, H7786, H7860, H7980, H7981, H7985, H7989, H7990, H8199, H8269, H8323, H8451, G746, G752, G755, G757, G758, G932, G936, G1018, G1203, G1299, G1778, G1785, G1849, G2232, G2233, G2525, G2583, G2888, G2961, G3545, G3841, G4165, G4173, G4291

(Go back to: [Matthew 9:18](#); [9:23](#); [9:34](#); [12:24](#); [20:25](#))

Ruth

Facts:

Ruth was a Moabite woman who lived during the time when judges were leading Israel. In Moab, she married an Israelite man named Mahlon after his family had moved there because of a famine in Israel. Mahlon died, and some time after that she left Moab with her mother-in-law Naomi to return to the city of Bethlehem in Israel.

- Ruth was loyal to Naomi and worked hard to provide food for her.
- She also committed herself to serving the one true God of Israel.
- Ruth married an Israelite man named Boaz and gave birth to a son named Obed. Obed became the grandfather of King David, and King David was an ancestor of Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bethlehem](#), [Boaz](#), [David](#), [judge](#))

Bible References:

- Matthew 01:05
- Ruth 01:3-5
- Ruth 03:09
- Ruth 04:06

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7327, G4503

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:5](#))

Sabbath

Definition:

The term “Sabbath” refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

- After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
- The command to “keep the Sabbath holy” is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
- Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
- Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called “Sabbath day” rather than only the Sabbath.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “resting day” or “day for resting” or “day of not working” or “God’s day of rest.”
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in “Sabbath Day” or “Resting Day.”
- Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [rest](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
- Acts 13:26-27
- Exodus 31:14
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Lamentations 02:06
- Leviticus 19:03
- Luke 13:14
- Mark 02:27
- Matthew 12:02
- Nehemiah 10:32-33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:05** “Always be sure to keep the **Sabbath day** holy. That is, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to honor me.”
- **26:02** Jesus went to the town of Nazareth where he had lived during his childhood. On the **Sabbath**, he went to the place of worship.
- **41:03** The day after Jesus was buried was a **Sabbath** day, and the Jews were not permitted to go to the tomb on that day.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4868, H7676, H7677, G4315, G4521

(Go back to: [Matthew 12 General Notes](#); [12:1](#); [12:2](#); [12:5](#); [12:8](#); [12:10](#); [12:11](#); [12:12](#); [24:20](#); [28:1](#))

sackcloth

Definition:

Sackcloth was a coarse, scratchy type of cloth that was made from goat hair or camel hair.

- A person who wore clothing made from it would be uncomfortable. Sackcloth was worn to show mourning, grief, or humble repentance.
- The phrase “sackcloth and ashes” was a common term referring to a traditional expression of grief and repentance.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “coarse cloth from animal hair” or “clothes made of goat hair” or “rough, scratchy clothing.”
- Another way to translate this term could be “rough, scratchy mourning clothes.”
- The phrase “sit in sackcloth and ashes” could be translated as “show mourning and humility by wearing scratchy cloth and sitting in ashes.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [ash](#), [camel](#), [goat](#), [humble](#), [mourn](#), [repent](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 03:31
- Genesis 37:34
- Joel 01:8-10
- Jonah 03:05
- Luke 10:13
- Matthew 11:21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8242, G4526

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:21](#))

sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

sacrifice

- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God's perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin animal sacrifices could never do that.

offering

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: [altar](#), burnt offering, drink offering, false god, fellowship offering, freewill offering peace offering, [priest](#), sin offering, [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:06
- Acts 07:42
- Acts 21:25
- Genesis 04:3-5
- James 02:21-24
- Mark 01:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 05:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **05:06** “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me.” Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **05:09** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.

- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:06** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:08** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H801, H817, H819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G266, G334, G1049, G1435, G1494, G2378, G2380, G3646, G4376, G5485

(Go back to: [Matthew 9:13](#); [12:7](#))

Sadducee

Definition:

The Sadducees were a political group of Jewish priests during the time of Jesus Christ. They supported Roman rule and did not believe in the resurrection.

- Many Sadducees were wealthy, upper-class Jews who held powerful leadership positions such as chief priest and high priest.
- The duties of the Sadducees included taking care of the temple complex and priestly tasks such as offering sacrifices.
- The Sadducees and the Pharisees strongly influenced the Roman leaders to crucify Jesus.
- Jesus spoke against these two religious groups because of their selfishness and hypocrisy.

(See also: chief priests, [council](#), [high priest](#), [hypocrite](#), Jewish leaders, [Pharisee](#), [priest](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 04:03
- Acts 05:17-18
- Luke 20:27
- Matthew 03:07
- Matthew 16:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: G4523

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:7](#); [16:1](#); [16:6](#); [16:11](#); [16:12](#); [22:23](#); [22:34](#))

saint

Definition:

The term “saints” literally means “holy ones” and refers to believers in Jesus.

- Later in church history, a person known for his good works was given the title “saint,” but that was not how this term was used during New Testament times.
- Believers in Jesus are saints or holy ones, not because of what they have done, but rather because of their faith in the saving work of Jesus Christ. He is the one who makes them holy.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “saints” could include “holy ones” or “holy people” or “holy believers in Jesus” or “set apart ones.”
- Be careful not to use a term that refers to people of only one Christian group.

(See also: [holy](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:10
- 2 Corinthians 09:12-15
- Revelation 16:06
- Revelation 20:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2623, H6918, H6922, G40

(Go back to: [Matthew 27:52](#))

Samaria, Samaritan

Facts:

Samaria was the name of a city and its surrounding region in the northern part of Israel. The region was located between the Plain of Sharon on its west and the Jordan River on its east.

- In the Old Testament, Samaria was the capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel. Later the region surrounding it was also called Samaria.
- When the Assyrians conquered the northern kingdom of Israel, they captured the city of Samaria and forced most of the northern Israelites to leave the region, moving them far away to different cities in Assyria.
- The Assyrians also brought many foreigners into the region of Samaria to replace the Israelites who had been moved.
- Some of the Israelites who remained in that region married the foreigners who had moved there, and their descendants were called Samaritans.
- The Jews despised the Samaritans because they were only partly Jewish and because their ancestors had worshiped pagan gods.
- In New Testament times, the region of Samaria was bordered by the region of Galilee on its north and the region of Judea on its south.

(See also: Assyria, [Galilee](#), [Judea](#), Sharon, kingdom of Israel)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:1-3
- Acts 08:05
- John 04:4-5
- Luke 09:51-53
- Luke 10:33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:04** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called **Samaritans**.
- **27:08** "The next person to walk down that road was a **Samaritan**. (**Samaritans** were the descendants of Jews who had married people from other nations. **Samaritans** and Jews hated each other.)"
- **27:09** "The **Samaritan** then lifted the man onto his own donkey and took him to a roadside inn where he took care of him."
- **45:07** He (Philip) went to **Samaria** where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8111, H8115, H8118, G4540, G4541, G4542

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:5](#))

sanctify, sanctification

Definition:

To sanctify is to set apart or to make holy. Sanctification is the process of being made holy.

- In the Old Testament, certain people and things were sanctified, or set apart, for service to God.
- The New Testament teaches that God sanctifies people who believe in Jesus. That is, he makes them holy and sets them apart to serve him.
- Believers in Jesus are also commanded to sanctify themselves to God, to be holy in everything they do.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “sanctify” can be translated as “set apart” or “make holy” or “purify.”
- When people sanctify themselves, they purify themselves and dedicate themselves to God’s service. Often the word “consecrate” is used in the Bible with this meaning.
- When its meaning is “consecrate,” this term could be translated as “dedicate someone (or something) to God’s service.”
- Depending on the context, the phrase “your sanctification” could be translated as “making you holy” or “setting you apart (for God)” or “what makes you holy.”

(See also: consecrate, [holy](#), [set apart](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 04:3-6
- 2 Thessalonians 02:13
- Genesis 02:1-3
- Luke 11:2
- Matthew 06:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6942, G37, G38

(Go back to: [Matthew 6:9](#); [23:17](#); [23:19](#))

sandal

Definition:

A sandal is a simple shoe with a flat sole that is held onto the foot by straps that go around the foot or ankle. Sandals are worn by both men and women.

- In ancient Israel, a sandal was sometimes used to confirm a legal transaction, such as the selling of property. One person would take off a sandal and give it to the other person to show that the transaction was legal and binding.
- John said that he was not worthy to even untie Jesus' sandals, which was a normal task for the servant or slave with the lowest status in a Jewish household.

Bible References:

- Acts 07:33
- Deuteronomy 25:10
- John 01:27
- Joshua 05:15
- Mark 06:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5274, H5275, H8288, G4547, G5266

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:11](#); [10:10](#))

Satan, devil, evil one

Facts:

Although the devil is a spirit being that God created, he rebelled against God and became God's enemy. The devil is also called "Satan" and "the evil one."

- The devil hates God and all that God created because he wants to take the place of God and be worshiped as God.
- Satan tempts people to rebel against God.
- God sent his Son, Jesus, to rescue people from Satan's control.
- The name "Satan" means "adversary" or "enemy."
- The word "devil" means "accuser."

Translation Suggestions:

- The word "devil" could also be translated as "the accuser" or "the evil one" or "the king of evil spirits" or "the chief evil spirit."
- "Satan" could be translated as "Opponent" or "Adversary" or some other name that shows that he is the devil.
- These terms should be translated differently from demon and evil spirit.
- Consider how these terms are translated in a local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [demon](#), [evil](#), [kingdom of God](#), [tempt](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:08
- 1 Thessalonians 02:17-20
- 1 Timothy 05:15
- Acts 13:10
- Job 01:08
- Mark 08:33
- Zechariah 03:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:01** The snake who deceived Eve was **Satan**. The promise meant that the Messiah who would come would defeat **Satan** completely.
- **25:06** Then **Satan** showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- **25:08** Jesus did not give in to **Satan's** temptations, so **Satan** left him.
- **33:06** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the word of God. The path is a person who hears God's word, but does not understand it, and the **devil** takes the word from him."
- **38:07** After Judas took the bread, **Satan** entered into him.
- **48:04** God promised that one of Eve's descendants would crush **Satan's** head, and **Satan** would wound his heel. This meant that **Satan** would kill the Messiah, but God would raise him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of **Satan** forever.
- **49:15** God has taken you out of **Satan's** kingdom of darkness and put you into God's kingdom of light.
- **50:09** "The weeds represent the people who belong to the **evil one**. The enemy who planted the weeds represents the **devil**."

- **50:10** "When the world ends, the angels will gather together all the people who belong to the **devil** and throw them into a raging fire, where they will cry and grind their teeth in terrible suffering."
- **50:15** When Jesus returns, he will completely destroy **Satan** and his kingdom. He will throw **Satan** into hell where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7700, H7854, H8163, G1139, G1140, G1141, G1142, G1228, G4190, G4566, G4567

(Go back to: [Matthew 4 General Notes](#); [4:1](#); [4:5](#); [4:8](#); [4:10](#); [4:11](#); [6:13](#); [12:26](#); [13:19](#); [13:38](#); [13:39](#); [16:23](#); [25:41](#))

save, saved, safe, salvation

Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”
- The term “salvation” could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: [cross](#), [deliver](#), [punish](#), [sin](#), Savior)

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 080:03
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 06:3-5
- Luke 02:30
- Luke 08:36-37
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 02:21
- Romans 01:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 06:17
- Philippians 01:28
- 1 Timothy 01:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:08** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:02** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:05** Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you."
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:08** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H5338, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G803, G804, G806, G1295, G1508, G4982, G4991, G4992, G5198

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:21](#); [8:25](#); [10:22](#); [14:30](#); [16:25](#); [19:25](#); [24:13](#); [24:22](#); [27:40](#); [27:42](#); [27:49](#))

scribe

Definition:

Scribes were officials who were responsible for writing or copying important government or religious documents by hand. Another name for a Jewish scribe was “expert in Jewish law.”

- Scribes were responsible for copying and preserving the books of the Old Testament.
- They also copied, preserved, and interpreted religious opinions and commentary on the law of God.
- At times, scribes were important government officials.
- Important biblical scribes include Baruch and Ezra.
- In the New Testament, the term translated “scribes” was also translated as “teachers of the Law.”
- In the New Testament, scribes were usually part of the religious group called the “Pharisees,” and the two groups were frequently mentioned together.

(See also: [law](#), [Pharisee](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 04:05
- Luke 07:29-30
- Luke 20:47
- Mark 01:22
- Mark 02:16
- Matthew 05:19-20
- Matthew 07:28
- Matthew 12:38
- Matthew 13:52

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5608, H5613, H7083, G1122

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:4](#); [5:20](#); [7:29](#); [8:19](#); [9:3](#); [12:38](#); [13:52](#); [15:1](#); [16:21](#); [17:10](#); [20:18](#); [21:15](#); [23:2](#); [23:13](#); [23:15](#); [23:23](#); [23:25](#); [23:27](#); [23:29](#); [23:34](#); [26:57](#); [27:41](#))

Sea of Galilee, Sea of Kinnereth, lake of Gennesaret, Sea of Tiberias

Facts:

The “Sea of Galilee” is a lake in eastern Israel. In the Old Testament it was called the “Sea of Kinnereth.”

- The water of this lake flows south through the Jordan River down to the Salt Sea.
- Capernaum, Bethsaida, Gennesaret, and Tiberias were some of the towns located on the Sea of Galilee during New Testament times.
- Many events of Jesus’ life took place on or near the Sea of Galilee.
- The Sea of Galilee was also referred to as the “Sea of Tiberias” and the “lake of Gennesaret.”
- This term could also be translated as “lake in the region of Galilee” or “Lake Galilee” or “lake near Tiberias (Gennesaret).”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Capernaum](#), [Galilee](#), [Jordan River](#), Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- John 06:1-3
- Luke 05:01
- Mark 01:16-18
- Matthew 04:12-13
- Matthew 04:18-20
- Matthew 08:18-20
- Matthew 13:1-2
- Matthew 15:29-31

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3220, H3672, G1056, G1082, G2281, G3041, G5085

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:18](#); [8:24](#); [8:26](#); [8:27](#); [8:32](#); [13:1](#); [14:25](#); [14:26](#); [15:29](#); [17:27](#))

seal, sealed, unsealed

Definition:

To term "seal" means to close an object with something (usually called a "seal") that makes the object impossible to open without breaking the seal.

- Often a seal is marked with a design to show who it belongs to.
- Melted wax was used to seal letters or other documents that needed to be protected. When the wax cooled and hardened, the letter could not be opened without breaking the wax seal. The person who received the letter would see the unbroken seal and know that no one had opened it.
- A seal was put on the stone in front of Jesus' grave in order to keep anyone from moving the stone.
- Paul figuratively refers to the Holy Spirit as a "seal" showing that our salvation is secure.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [tomb](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 02:03
- Isaiah 29:11
- John 06:27
- Matthew 27:66
- Revelation 05:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2368, H2560, H2856, H2857, H2858, H5640, G2696, G4972, G4973

(Go back to: [Matthew 27:66](#))

seed, semen

Definition:

A "seed" is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. However, in the Bible the term "seed" is used figuratively to mean several different things.

- The term "seed" is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these cells is called "semen."
- Related to this, "seed" is also used to refer to a person's offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people's hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term "seed" to refer to the Word of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for "seed" that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God's Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word "descendant" or "descendants" instead of "seed." Some languages may have a word that means "children and grandchildren."
- For a man or woman's "seed," consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: descendant, offspring)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:32
- Genesis 01:11
- Jeremiah 02:21
- Matthew 13:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G4615, G4687, G4690, G4701, G4703

(Go back to: [Matthew 13:18](#); [13:19](#); [13:24](#); [13:27](#); [13:32](#); [13:37](#); [13:38](#))

seek, search, look for

Definition:

The term "seek" means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is "sought." This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to "attempt" or "make an effort" to do something or to ask for something.

- To "seek" or "look for" an opportunity to do something can mean to "try to find a time" to do it.
- To "seek Yahweh" means to "spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him."
- To "seek protection" means to "try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger."
- To "seek justice" means to "make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly."
- To "seek the truth" means to "make an effort to find out what the truth is."
- To "seek favor" means to "urgently ask for favor" or to "do things to cause someone to help you."

(See also: [just](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:06
- Luke 11:09
- Psalms 027:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7836, H8446, G327, G1567, G1934, G2052, G2212

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:13](#); [2:20](#); [6:32](#); [6:33](#); [7:7](#); [7:8](#); [12:39](#); [12:43](#); [12:46](#); [12:47](#); [13:45](#); [16:4](#); [18:12](#); [21:46](#); [26:16](#); [26:59](#); [28:5](#))

seize, seizure

Definition:

The term “seize” means to take or capture someone or something by force. It can also mean to overpower and control someone.

- When a city was taken by means of military force, the soldiers would seize the valuable property of the people they had conquered.
- When used figuratively, a person can be described as being “seized with fear.” This means that the person was suddenly “overcome by fear.” If a person was “seized with fear” it could also be stated that the person “suddenly became very afraid.”
- In the context of labor pains that “seize” a woman, the meaning is that the pains are sudden and overpowering. This could be translated by saying that the pains “overcome” or “suddenly come upon” the woman.
- This term could also be translated as “take control of” or “suddenly take” or “grab.”
- The expression “seized and slept with her” could be translated as “forced himself on her” or “violated her” or “raped her.” Make sure the translation of this concept is acceptable.

(See: [euphemism](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 16:19-21
- Exodus 15:14
- John 10:37-39
- Luke 08:29
- Matthew 26:48

Word Data:

- Strong's: H270, H1497, H2388, H3027, H3920, H3947, H4672, H5377, H5860, H6031, H7760, H8610, G724, G1949, G2638, G2902, G2983, G4815, G4884

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:12](#); [12:29](#); [13:19](#); [14:3](#); [18:28](#); [21:46](#); [22:6](#); [26:4](#); [26:48](#); [26:50](#); [26:55](#); [26:57](#))

send, sent, send out

Definition:

To “send” is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To “send out” someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

- Often a person who is “sent out” has been appointed to do a specific task.
- Phrases like “send rain” or “send disaster” mean to “cause...to come.” This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
- The term “send” is also used in expressions such as to “send word” or to “send a message,” which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
- To “send” someone “with” something can mean to “give” that thing “to” someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
- Jesus frequently used the phrase “the one who sent me” to refer to God the Father, who “sent” him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as “the one who commis

(See also: [appoint](#), redeem)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:33-34
- Acts 08:14-17
- John 20:21-23
- Matthew 09:37-38
- Matthew 10:05
- Matthew 10:40
- Matthew 21:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H935, H1540, H1980, H2199, H2904, H3318, H3474, H3947, H4916, H4917, H5042, H5130, H5375, H5414, H5674, H6963, H7368, H7725, H7964, H7971, H7972, H7993, H8421, H8446, G782, G375, G630, G649, G652, G657, G1026, G1032, G1544, G1599, G1821, G3333, G3343, G3936, G3992, G4311, G4341, G4369, G4842, G4882

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:8](#); [2:16](#); [8:31](#); [9:38](#); [10:5](#); [10:16](#); [10:40](#); [11:2](#); [11:10](#); [13:41](#); [14:10](#); [14:35](#); [15:24](#); [20:2](#); [21:1](#); [21:3](#); [21:34](#); [21:36](#); [21:37](#); [22:3](#); [22:4](#); [22:7](#); [22:16](#); [23:34](#); [23:37](#); [24:31](#); [26:53](#); [27:19](#))

serpent, snake, viper

Facts:

These terms all refer to a kind of reptile that has a long, thin body and large, fanged jaws, and that moves by slithering back and forth across the ground. The term “serpent” usually refers to a large snake and “viper” refers to a type of snake that has venom which it uses to poison its prey.

- This animal is also used figuratively to refer to a person who is evil, especially someone who is deceitful.
- Jesus called the religious leaders “offspring of vipers” because they pretended to be righteous but deceived people and treated them unfairly.
- In the garden of Eden, Satan took the form of a serpent when he talked to Eve and tempted her to disobey God.
- After the serpent tempted Eve to sin, and both Eve and her husband Adam did sin, God cursed the snake, saying that from then on, all snakes would slither along the ground, implying that before then they had had legs.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [curse](#), [deceive](#), disobey, Eden, [evil](#), offspring, prey, [Satan](#), [sin](#), [tempt](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 03:03
- Genesis 03:4-6
- Genesis 03:12-13
- Mark 16:17-18
- Matthew 03:07
- Matthew 23:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H660, H2119, H5175, H6620, H6848, H8314, H8577, G2191, G2062, G3789

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:7](#); [7:10](#); [10:16](#); [12:34](#); [23:33](#))

servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Definition:

The term "serve" generally means to do work, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts. The term refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. In the Bible, any of the following people might be called a "servant:" a slave, a young female worker, a young male worker, someone who obeys God, and others. In biblical times, there was less of a difference between a "servant" and a "slave" than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of a household, and many servants were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his "owner" or "master." Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means "care for" or "serve food to" or "provide food for." When Jesus told the disciples to "serve" the fish to the people, this could be translated as, "distribute" or "hand out" or "give."
- In the Bible, the phrase "I am your servant" was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- The term "serve" can also be translated as "minister to" or "work for" or "take care of" or "obey," depending on the context.
- In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his "servants."
- To "serve God" can be translated as to "worship and obey God" or to "do the work that God has commanded."
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his "servants."
- To "serve tables" means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to "distribute food."
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to "serve" the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they "serve" the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus' sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their "service" to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as "serving" or "obeying" or "devotion to."

(See also: [commit](#), [enslave](#), [household](#), [lord](#), [obey](#), [righteous](#), [covenant](#), [law](#).)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:29-31
- Acts 10:7-8
- Colossians 01:7-8
- Colossians 03:22-25
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 12:47-48
- Mark 09:33-35
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- 2 Timothy 02:3-5
- Acts 06:2-4
- Genesis 25:23
- Luke 04:8

- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 22:26-27
- Mark 08:7-10
- Matthew 04:10-11
- Matthew 06:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **08:04** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **09:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt."
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **29:03** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **35:06** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **47:04** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- **50:04** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

Word Data:

- (Servant) Strong's: H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G1249, G1401, G1402, G2324, G3407, G3411, G3610, G3816, G4983, G5257
- (Serve) H327, H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G1247, G1248, G1398, G1402, G1438, G1983, G2064, G2212, G2323, G2999, G3000, G3009, G4337, G4342, G4754, G5087, G5256

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:10](#); [6:24](#); [8:6](#); [8:8](#); [8:9](#); [8:13](#); [10:24](#); [10:25](#); [12:18](#); [13:27](#); [13:28](#); [14:2](#); [18:23](#); [18:26](#); [18:27](#); [18:28](#); [18:29](#); [18:31](#); [18:32](#); [18:33](#); [20:27](#); [21:34](#); [21:35](#); [21:36](#); [22:3](#); [22:4](#); [22:6](#); [22:8](#); [22:10](#); [24:45](#); [24:46](#); [24:48](#); [24:49](#); [24:50](#); [25:14](#); [25:19](#); [25:21](#); [25:23](#); [25:26](#); [25:30](#); [26:51](#); [26:69](#))

set apart

Definition:

The term “set apart” means separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose. Also, to “set apart” some person or thing means to make it “set apart.”

- The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
- The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
- A believer who is “set apart” for service to God is “dedicated to” fulfilling God’s will.
- One meaning of the term “holy” is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
- To “sanctify” someone means to set apart that person for God’s service.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate to “set apart” could include to “specially select” or to “separate from among you” or to “take aside to do a special task.”
- To “be set apart” could be translated as “be separated (from)” or “be specially appointed (for).”

(See also: [holy](#), [sanctify](#), [appoint](#))

Bible References:

- Ephesians 03:17-19
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Judges 17:12
- Numbers 03:11-13
- Philippians 01:1-2
- Romans 01:01

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2764, H4390, H5674, H6918, H6942, H6944, G37, G38, G40, G873

(Go back to: [Matthew 25:32](#))

sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication

Definition:

The term “sexual immorality” refers to sexual activity that takes place outside the marriage relationship of a man and a woman. This is against God’s plan. Older English Bible versions call this “fornication.”

- This term can refer to any kind of sexual activity that is against God’s will, including homosexual acts and pornography.
- One type of sexual immorality is adultery, which is sexual activity specifically between a married person and someone who is not that person’s spouse.
- Another type of sexual immorality is “prostitution,” which involves being paid to have sex with someone.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to Israel’s unfaithfulness to God when they worshiped false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sexual immorality” could be translated as “immorality” as long as the correct meaning of the term is understood.
- Other ways to translate this term could include “wrong sexual acts” or “sex outside of marriage.”
- This term should be translated in a different way from the term “adultery.”
- The translation of this term’s figurative uses should retain the literal term if possible since there is a common comparison in the Bible between unfaithfulness to God and unfaithfulness in the sexual relationship.

(See also: [adultery](#), false god, [prostitute](#), [faithful](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 15:20
- Acts 21:25-26
- Colossians 03:5-8
- Ephesians 05:03
- Genesis 38:24-26
- Hosea 04:13-14
- Matthew 05:31-32
- Matthew 19:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2181, H8457, G1608, G4202, G4203

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:32](#); [15:19](#); [19:9](#))

shadow, overshadow, shade

Definition:

The word “shadow” literally refers to the darkness that is caused by an object blocking the light. It also has several figurative meanings.

- The “shadow of death” means that death is present or near, just as a shadow indicates the presence of its object.
- Many times in the Bible, the life of a human being is compared to a shadow, which does not last very long and has no substance.
- Sometimes “shadow” is used as another word for “darkness.”
- The Bible talks about being hidden or protected in the shadow of God’s wings or hands. This is a picture of being protected and hidden from danger. Other ways to translate “shadow” in these contexts could include “shade” or “safety” or “protection.”
- It is best to translate “shadow” literally using the local term that is used to refer to an actual shadow.

(See also: [darkness](#), [light](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:09
- Genesis 19:08
- Isaiah 30:02
- Jeremiah 06:04
- Psalms 017:08

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2927, H6738, H6751, H6752, H6754, H6757, G644, G1982, G2683, G4639

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:16](#))

shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

Definition:

The term “shame” refers to the painful feeling of being disgraced or humiliated that a person feels when they do something that others consider dishonorable or improper.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something improper or dishonorable.
- The term “humiliate” means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced, usually publicly. The act of shaming someone is called “humiliation.”
- To “reproach” someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person’s character or behavior.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their actions so that they feel ashamed of themselves. The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- The term “disgraceful” can be used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it. When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame. For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- When God humbles someone, it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.

Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or “dishonoring.”
- To “humiliate” could also be translated as to “shame” or to “cause to feel shame” or to “embarrass.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “humiliation” could include “shame” or “degrading” or “disgrace.”
- The word “reproach” could also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- To “reproach” could also be translated as to “rebuke” or to “accuse” or to “criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: dishonor, [accuse](#), [rebuke](#), false god, [humble](#), [Isaiah](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:15-17
- 2 Kings 02:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 08:38
- Mark 12:4-5
- 1 Timothy 03:07
- Genesis 34:07
- Hebrews 11:26
- Lamentations 02:1-2
- Psalms 022:06
- Deuteronomy 21:14
- Ezra 09:05
- Proverbs 25:7-8

- Psalms 006:8-10
- Psalms 123:03
- 1 Timothy 05:7-8
- 1 Timothy 06:13-14
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Job 16:9-10
- Proverbs 18:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H937, H954, H955, H1317, H1322, H1421, H1442, H1984, H2490, H2616, H2617, H2659, H2778, H2781, H2865, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H3971, H5007, H5034, H5039, H6030, H6031, H6172, H6256, H7022, H7034, H7036, H7043, H7511, H7817, H8103, H8213, H8216, H8217, H8589, G149, G152, G153, G410, G422, G423, G808, G818, G819, G821, G1788, G1791, G1870, G2617, G3059, G3679, G3680, G3681, G3856, G5014, G5195, G5196, G5484

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:11](#); [11:20](#); [27:44](#))

shepherd, chief shepherd

Definition:

A shepherd is a person who takes care of sheep. The verb to “shepherd” means to protect the sheep and provide them with food and water. Shepherds watch over the sheep, leading them to places with good food and water. Shepherds also keep the sheep from getting lost and protect them from wild animals.

- This term is often used metaphorically in the Bible to refer to taking care of people’s spiritual needs. This includes teaching them what God has told them in the Bible and guiding them in the way they should live.
- In the Old Testament, God was called the “shepherd” of his people because he took care of all their needs and protected them. He also led and guided them. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Moses was a shepherd for the Israelites as he guided them spiritually in their worship of Yahweh and led them physically on their journey to the land of Canaan.
- In the New Testament, Jesus called himself the “good shepherd.” The apostle Paul also referred to him as the “great shepherd” over the Church.
- Also, in the New Testament, the term “shepherd” was used to refer to a person who was a spiritual leader over other believers. The word translated as “pastor” is the same word that is translated as “shepherd.” The elders and overseers were also called shepherds.

Translation Suggestions

- When used literally, the action “shepherd” could be translated as “take care of sheep” or “watch over sheep.”
- The person “shepherd” could be translated as “person who takes care of sheep” or “sheep tender” or “sheep caregiver.”
- When used as a metaphor, different ways to translate this term could include “spiritual shepherd” or “spiritual leader” or “one who is like a shepherd” or “one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep” or “one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep” or “one who takes care of God’s sheep.”
- In some contexts, “shepherd” could be translated as “leader” or “guide” or “caregiver.”
- The spiritual expression to “shepherd” could be translated as to “take care of” or to “spiritually nourish” or to “guide and teach” or to “lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep).”
- In figurative uses, it is best to use or include the literal word for “shepherd” in the translation of this term.

(See also: [believe](#), [Canaan](#), [church](#), [Moses](#), [pastor](#), [sheep](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:24
- Luke 02:09
- Mark 06:34
- Mark 14:26-27
- Matthew 02:06
- Matthew 09:36
- Matthew 25:32
- Matthew 26:31

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:11** Moses became a **shepherd** in the wilderness far away from Egypt.to
- **17:02** David was a **shepherd** from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- **23:06** That night, there were some **shepherds** in a nearby field guarding their flocks.

- **23:08** The **shepherds** soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a **shepherd**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6629, H7462, H7469, H7473, G750, G4165, G4166

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:6](#); [9:36](#); [25:32](#); [26:31](#))

Sidon, Sidonians

Facts:

Sidon was the oldest son of Canaan. There is also a Canaanite city called Sidon, probably named after Canaan's son.

- The city of Sidon was located northwest of Israel on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is part of the present-day country of Lebanon.
- The "Sidonians" were a Phoenician people group who lived in ancient Sidon and the region surrounding it.
- In the Bible, Sidon is closely associated with the city of Tyre, and both cities were known for their wealth and for immoral behavior of their people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Noah](#), Phoenicia, the sea, [Tyre](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 12:20
- Acts 27:3-6
- Genesis 10:15-18
- Genesis 10:19
- Mark 03:7-8
- Matthew 11:22
- Matthew 15:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6721, H6722, G4605, G4606

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:21](#); [11:22](#); [15:21](#))

sign, proof, reminder

Definition:

A sign is an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- Signs can help people to remember a promise that God has made:
 - The rainbows God creates in the sky are signs to remind people that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
 - God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign of his covenant with them.
 - In the Old Testament, God tells his people that he will “confirm” his covenant with them. This means he is stating that he will keep the promises he made in that covenant.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
 - An angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
 - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
 - The miracles performed by the prophets and apostles were signs that proved they were speaking God’s message.
 - The miracles that Jesus performed were signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on its context, “sign” could also be translated as “signal” or “symbol” or “mark” or “evidence” or “proof” or “gesture.”
- To “make signs with the hands” could also be translated as “motion with the hands” or “gesture with the hands” or “make gestures.”
- In some languages, there may be one word for a “sign” that proves something and a different word for a “sign” that is a miracle.

(See also: [miracle](#), [apostle](#), [Christ](#), [covenant](#), circumcise)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:18-19
- Exodus 04:8-9
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Genesis 01:14
- Genesis 09:12
- John 02:18
- Luke 02:12
- Mark 08:12
- Psalms 089:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H226, H852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, G364, G880, G1213, G1229, G1718, G1730, G1732, G1770, G3902, G4102, G4591, G4592, G4953, G4973, G5280

(Go back to: [Matthew 2 General Notes](#); [12:38](#); [12:39](#); [16:1](#); [16:4](#); [24:3](#); [24:24](#); [24:30](#); [26:48](#))

silver

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 02:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 03:06
- Matthew 26:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G693, G694, G695, G696, G1406

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:9](#); [25:18](#); [25:27](#); [26:15](#); [27:3](#); [27:5](#); [27:6](#); [27:9](#); [28:12](#); [28:15](#))

Simon the Zealot

Facts:

Simon the Zealot was one of Jesus' twelve disciples.

- Simon is mentioned three times in the listing of Jesus' disciples, but little else is known about him.
- Simon was one of the Eleven who met to pray together in Jerusalem after Jesus went back up into heaven.
- The term "zealot" may mean that Simon was a member of "the Zealots," a Jewish religious party that was very zealous in upholding the Law of Moses while strongly opposing the Roman government.
- Or, "zealot" may simply mean "the zealous one," referring to Simon's religious zeal.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [disciple](#), [the twelve](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 01:12-14
- Luke 06:14-16
- Mark 03:17-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2208, G2581, G4613

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:4](#))

sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [evil](#), [flesh](#), [tax collector](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3
- 1 John 01:10
- 1 John 02:02
- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 03:19
- Daniel 09:24
- Genesis 04:07
- Hebrews 12:02
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 04:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31
- Romans 06:23

- Romans 08:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:01** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:01** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:08** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H817, H819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G264, G265, G266, G268, G361, G3781, G3900, G4258

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:21](#); [3:6](#); [Notes](#); [9:2](#); [9:5](#); [9:6](#); [9:10](#); [9:11](#); [9:13](#); [11:19](#); [12:31](#); [Notes](#); [18:15](#); [18:21](#); [Notes](#); [26:28](#); [26:45](#); [27:4](#))

sister

Definition:

A sister is a female person who shares at least one biological parent with another person. She is said to be that other person's sister or the sister of that other person.

- In the New Testament, "sister" is also used figuratively to refer to a woman who is a fellow believer in Jesus Christ.
- Sometimes the phrase "brothers and sisters" is used to refer to all believers in Christ, both men and women.
- In the Old Testament book Song of Songs, "sister" refers to a female lover or spouse.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological sister, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- Other ways to translate this could include "sister in Christ" or "spiritual sister" or "woman who believes in Jesus" or "fellow woman believer."
- If possible, it is best to use a family term.
- If the language has a feminine form for "believer," this may be a possible way to translate this term.
- When referring to a lover or wife, this could be translated using a feminine form of "loved one" or "dear one."

(See also: [brother](#) in Christ, [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:16-17
- Deuteronomy 27:22
- Philemon 01:02
- Romans 16:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H269, H1323, G27, G79

(Go back to: [Matthew 12:50](#); [13:56](#); [19:29](#))

skull

Definition:

The term “skull” refers to the bony, skeletal structure of the head of a person or animal.

- Sometimes the term “skull” means “head,” as in the phrase “shave your skull.”
- The term “Place of the Skull” was another name for Golgotha, where Jesus was crucified.
- This term could also be translated as “head” or “head bone.”

(See also: [crucify](#), [Golgotha](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 09:35-37
- Jeremiah 02:16
- John 19:17
- Matthew 27:32-34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1538, H6936, H7218, G2898

(Go back to: [Matthew 27:33](#))

snare, ensnare, entrap, trap, trapped, pitfall

Definition:

The terms “snare” and “trap” refer to devices that are used to catch animals and keep them from escaping. To “snare” or “ensnare” is to catch with a snare, and to “trap” or “entrap” is to catch with a trap. In the Bible, these terms were also used figuratively to talk about how sin and temptation are like hidden traps that catch people and harm them.

- A “snare” is a loop of rope or wire that suddenly pulls tight when an animal steps into it, ensnaring its leg.
- A “trap” is usually made of metal or wood and has two parts that suddenly and powerfully close together, catching an animal so it can't get away. Sometimes a trap can be a deep hole that has been made in order to get something to fall into it.
- Usually the snare or trap is hidden so that its prey is taken by surprise.
- The phrase “set a trap” means to get a trap ready to capture something.
- To “fall into a trap” refers to falling into a deep hole or pit that was dug and hidden in order to catch an animal.
- A person who starts sinning and cannot stop can be described as “ensnared by sin” in a figurative reference to the way an animal can be ensnared and cannot escape.
- Just as an animal is endangered and hurt by being in a trap, so a person caught in the trap of sin is being harmed by that sin and needs to be set free.

(See also: [free](#), , prey, [Satan](#), [tempt](#))

Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 07:26
- Luke 21:34
- Mark 12:13
- Psalms 018:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2256, H3353, H3369, H3920, H3921, H4170, H4204, H4434, H4685, H4686, H4889, H5367, H5914, H6341, H6351, H6354, H6679, H6983, H7639, H7845, H8610, G64, G2339, G2340, G3802, G3803, G3985, G4625

(Go back to: [Matthew 22:15](#))

snow

Facts:

The term “snow” refers to white flakes of frozen water that can fall from clouds in places where the air temperature is cold.

- Snow falls in places of higher elevation in Israel, but does not always stay on the ground very long before melting. The peaks of mountains tend to have snow that lasts longer. One example of a place mentioned in the Bible as having snow is Mount Lebanon.
- Something that is very white often has its color compared to the color of snow. For example, in the book of Revelation Jesus’ clothing and hair were described as being “white as snow.”
- The whiteness of snow also symbolizes purity and cleanliness. For example, the statement that our “sins will be as white as snow” means that God will completely cleanse his people from their sins.
- Some languages might refer to snow as “frozen rain” or “flakes of ice” or “frozen flakes.”
- “Snow water” refers to the water that comes from melted snow.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Lebanon, pure)

Bible References:

- Exodus 04:06
- Job 37:4-6
- Matthew 28:03
- Psalms 147:16
- Revelation 01:14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7949, H7950, H8517, G5510

(Go back to: [Matthew 28:3](#))

Sodom

Definition:

Sodom was a city in the southern part of Canaan where Abraham's nephew Lot lived with his wife and children.

- The land of the region surrounding Sodom was very well watered and fertile, so Lot chose to live there when he first settled in Canaan.
- The exact location of this city is not known because Sodom and the nearby city of Gomorrah were completely destroyed by God as punishment for the evil things the people there were doing.
- The most significant sin that the people of Sodom and Gomorrah were practicing was homosexuality.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Gomorrah](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:19
- Genesis 13:12
- Matthew 10:15
- Matthew 11:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5467, G4670

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:15](#); [11:23](#); [11:24](#))

soldier, warrior

Facts:

The terms “warrior” and “soldier” both can refer to someone who fights in an army. But there are also some differences.

- Usually the term “warrior” is a general, broad term to refer to a man who is gifted and courageous in battle.
- Yahweh is figuratively described as a “warrior.”
- The term “soldier” more specifically refers to someone who belongs to a certain army or who is fighting in a certain battle.
- Roman soldiers in Jerusalem were there to keep order and to carry out duties such as executing prisoners. They guarded Jesus before crucifying him and some were ordered to stand guard at his tomb.
- The translator should consider whether there are two words in the project language for “warrior” and “soldier” that also differ in meaning and use.

(See also: [courage](#), [crucify](#), Rome, [tomb](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:05
- Acts 21:33
- Luke 03:14
- Luke 23:11
- Matthew 08:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H352, H510, H1368, H1416, H1995, H2389, H2428, H2502, H3715, H4421, H5971, H6518, H6635, H7273, H7916, G4686, G4753, G4754, G4757, G4758, G4961

(Go back to: [Matthew 8:9](#); [27:27](#); [28:12](#))

Solomon

Facts:

Solomon was one of King David's sons. His mother was Bathsheba.

- When Solomon became king, God told him to ask for anything he wanted. So Solomon asked for wisdom to rule the people justly and well. God was pleased with Solomon's request and gave him both wisdom and much wealth.
- Solomon is also well known for having a magnificent temple built in Jerusalem.
- Although Solomon ruled wisely in the first years of his reign, later on he foolishly married many foreign women and started worshiping their gods.
- Because of Solomon's unfaithfulness, after his death God divided the Israelites into two kingdoms, Israel and Judah. These kingdoms often fought against each other.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Bathsheba, [David](#), [Israel](#), Judah, kingdom of Israel, [temple](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:47-50
- Luke 12:27
- Matthew 01:7-8
- Matthew 06:29
- Matthew 12:42

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:14** Later, David and Bathsheba had another son, and they named him **Solomon**.
- **18:01** After many years, David died, and his son **Solomon** began to rule. God spoke to **Solomon** and asked him what he wanted most. When **Solomon** asked for wisdom, God was pleased and made him the wisest man in the world. **Solomon** learned many things and was a very wise judge. God also made him very wealthy.
- **18:02** In Jerusalem, **Solomon** built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **18:03** But **Solomon** loved women from other countries....When **Solomon** was old, he also worshiped their gods.
- **18:04** God was angry with **Solomon** and, as a punishment for **Solomon's** unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after **Solomon's** death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8010, G4672

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:6](#); [1:7](#); [6:29](#); [12:42](#))

son

Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their “son” for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An “adopted son” is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- In the Bible, the phrase “son of” can be used to identify a person's father, mother, or an ancestor from some previous generation. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah son of Zadok” and “Azariah son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah son of Amaziah” in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.

(See also: Azariah, descendant, [ancestor](#), firstborn, [Son of God](#), [sons of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:02
- 1 Thessalonians 05:05
- Galatians 04:07
- Hosea 11:01
- Isaiah 09:06
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 08:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **04:09** God said, “I will give you a **son** from your own body.”
- **05:05** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s **son**.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, “Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me.”
- **09:07** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:06** God killed every one of the Egyptians’ firstborn **sons**.
- **18:01** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:04** “Is this the **son** of Joseph?” they said.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G3816, G5043, G5207

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:1](#); [1:20](#); [1:21](#); [1:23](#); [1:25](#); [5:9](#); [5:45](#); [7:9](#); [8:12](#); [9:2](#); [9:15](#); [9:27](#); [10:37](#); [12:23](#); [12:27](#); [13:38](#); [13:55](#); [15:22](#); [17:15](#); [17:25](#); [17:26](#); [20:20](#); [20:21](#); [20:30](#); [20:31](#); [21:5](#); [21:9](#); [21:15](#); [21:28](#); [21:37](#); [21:38](#); [22:2](#); [22:42](#); [22:45](#); [23:15](#); [23:31](#); [23:35](#); [26:37](#); [27:9](#); [27:56](#))

Son of God, the Son

Facts:

The term “Son of God” refers to Jesus, the Word of God, who came into the world as a human being. He is also often referred to as “the Son.”

- The Son of God has the same nature as God the Father, and is fully God.
- God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit are all of one essence.
- Unlike human sons, the Son of God has always existed.
- In the beginning, the Son of God was active in creating the world, along with the Father and the Holy Spirit.

Because Jesus is God’s Son, he loves and obeys his Father, and his Father loves him.

Translation Suggestions:

- For the term “Son of God,” it is best to translate “Son” with the same word the language would naturally use to refer to a human son.
- Make sure the word used to translate “son” fits with the word used to translate “father” and that these words are the most natural ones used to express a true father-son relationship in the project language.
- Using a capital letter to begin “Son” may help show that this is talking about God.
- The phrase “the Son” is a shortened form of “the Son of God,” especially when it occurs in the same context as “the Father.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [ancestor](#), [God](#), [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [son](#), [sons of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:10
- Acts 09:20
- Colossians 01:17
- Galatians 02:20
- Hebrews 04:14
- John 03:18
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 11:27
- Revelation 02:18
- Romans 08:29

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:05** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the **Son of God.**”
- **24:09** God had told John, “The Holy Spirit will come down and rest on someone you baptize. That person is **the Son of God.**”
- **31:08** The disciples were amazed. They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, “Truly, you are **the Son of God.**”
- **37:05** Martha answered, “Yes, Master! I believe you are the Messiah, the **Son of God.**”
- **42:10** So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, **the Son**, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the **Son of God!**”
- **49:09** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only **Son** so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H426, H430, H1121, H1247, G2316, G5207

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:15](#); [3:17](#); [Notes](#); [4:3](#); [4:6](#); [8:29](#); [11:27](#); [14:33](#); [16:16](#); [17:5](#); [24:36](#); [26:63](#); [27:40](#); [27:43](#); [27:54](#); [28:19](#))

Son of Man, son of man

Definition:

The title “Son of Man” was used by Jesus to refer to himself. He often used this term instead of saying “I” or “me.”

- In the Bible, “son of man” could be a way of referring to or addressing a man. It could also mean “human being.”
- Throughout the Old Testament book of Ezekiel, God frequently addressed Ezekiel as “son of man.” For example he said, “You, son of man, must prophesy.”
- The prophet Daniel saw a vision of a “son of man” coming with the clouds, which is a reference to the coming Messiah.
- Jesus also said that the Son of Man will be coming back someday on the clouds.
- These references to the Son of Man coming on the clouds reveal that Jesus the Messiah is God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When Jesus uses the term “Son of Man” it could be translated as “the One who became a human being” or “the Man from heaven.”
- Some translators occasionally include “I” or “me” with this title (as in “I, the Son of Man”) to make it clear that Jesus was talking about himself.
- Check to make sure that the translation of this term does not give a wrong meaning (such as referring to an illegitimate son or giving the wrong impression that Jesus was only a human being).
- When used to refer to a person, “son of man” could also be translated as “you, a human being” or “you, man” or “human being” or “man.”

(See also: [heaven](#), [son](#), [Son of God](#), Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:56
- Daniel 07:14
- Ezekiel 43:6-8
- John 03:12-13
- Luke 06:05
- Mark 02:10
- Matthew 13:37
- Psalms 080:17-18
- Revelation 14:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H120, H606, H1121, H1247, G444, G5207

(Go back to: [Introduction to the Gospel of Matthew](#); [Matthew 8:20](#); [9:6](#); [10:23](#); [11:19](#); [12:8](#); [12:32](#); [12:40](#); [13:37](#); [13:41](#); [16:13](#); [16:27](#); [16:28](#); [17:9](#); [17:12](#); [17:22](#); [19:28](#); [20:18](#); [20:28](#); [24:27](#); [24:30](#); [24:37](#); [24:39](#); [24:44](#); [25:31](#); [26:2](#); [26:24](#); [26:45](#); [26:64](#))

sons of God, children of God

Definition:

The term “sons of God” is a figurative expression that has several possible meanings.

- In the New Testament, the term “sons of God” refers to all believers in Jesus and is often translated as “children of God” since it includes both males and females.
- This use of the term speaks of a relationship with God that is like the relationship between a human son and his father, with all the privileges associated with being sons.
- Some people interpret the term “sons of God” that appears in Genesis 6 to mean fallen angels—evil spirits or demons. Others think it may refer to powerful political rulers or to the descendants of Seth.
- In the New Testament, the term “sons of God” refers to all believers in Jesus and is often translated as “children of God” since it includes both males and females.
- This use of the term speaks of a relationship with God that is like the relationship between human sons and their father, with all the privileges associated with being sons.
- The title “Son of God” is a different term: it refers to Jesus, who is God’s only Son.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “sons of God” refers to believers in Jesus, it could be translated as “children of God.”
- In Genesis 6:2 and 4 ways to translate “sons of God” could include “angels,” “spirit beings,” “supernatural creatures,” or “demons.”
- Also see the link for “son.”

(See also: [angel](#), [demon](#), [son](#), [Son of God](#), [ruler](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 06:02
- Genesis 06:4
- Job 01:06
- Romans 08:14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H430, H1121, G5207, G5043

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:9](#); [5:45](#))

soul, self

Definition:

The term "soul" can either refer generally to the non-physical part of a person or refer specifically to a person's awareness of themselves as a person distinct from others.

- In the Bible, the terms "soul" and "spirit" may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- In contrast to the body, the "soul" can be spoken of as the part of a person that "relates to God."
- The word "soul" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to the whole person. For example, "the soul who sins" means "the person who sins" and "my soul is tired" means "I am tired."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "soul" could also be translated as "inner self" or "inner person."
- In some contexts, "my soul" could be translated as "I" or "me."
- Usually the phrase "the soul" can be translated as "the person" or "he" or "him," depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for the concepts "soul" and "spirit."
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase "dividing soul and spirit" could mean "deeply discerning or exposing the inner person."

(See also: [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:08
- Acts 02:27-28
- Acts 02:41
- Genesis 49:06
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- James 01:21
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Jonah 02:7-8
- Luke 01:47
- Matthew 22:37
- Psalms 019:07
- Revelation 20:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5082, H5315, H5397, G5590

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:28](#); [11:29](#); [12:18](#); [16:26](#); [22:37](#); [26:38](#))

spirit, spiritual

Definition:

The term "spirit" refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. "Spirit" can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term "spirit" can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person's spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term "spiritual" describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, "spiritual food" refers to God's teachings, which give nourishment to a person's spirit, and "spiritual wisdom" refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term "spirit of" can also mean "having the characteristics of," such as in "spirit of wisdom" or "in the spirit of Elijah."
- Examples of "spirit" as an attitude or emotion would include "spirit of fear" and "spirit of jealousy."

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate "spirit" might include "non-physical being" or "inside part" or "inner being."
- In some contexts, the term "spirit" could be translated as "evil spirit" or "evil spirit being."
- Sometimes the term "spirit" is used to express the feelings of a person, as in "my spirit was grieved in my inmost being." This could also be translated as "I felt grieved in my spirit" or "I felt deeply grieved."
- The phrase "spirit of" could be translated as "character of" or "influence of" or "attitude of" or "thinking (that is) characterized by."
- Depending on the context, "spiritual" could be translated as "non-physical" or "from the Holy Spirit" or "God's" or "part of the non-physical world."
- The phrase "spiritual maturity" could be translated as "godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit."
- The term "spiritual gift" could be translated as "special ability that the Holy Spirit gives"

(See also: [angel](#), [demon](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [soul](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- 1 John 04:03
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23
- Acts 05:09
- Colossians 01:09
- Ephesians 04:23
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Isaiah 04:04
- Mark 01:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 01:27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:03** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:07** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G5326, G5427

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:3](#); [8:16](#); [10:1](#); [12:43](#); [14:26](#); [26:41](#); [27:50](#))

staff, clubs

Definition:

A staff is a long wooden stick or rod, often used as a walking stick.

- When Jacob was old, he used a staff to help him walk.
- God turned Moses' staff into a snake to show his power to Pharaoh.
- Shepherds also used a staff to help guide their sheep, or to rescue the sheep when they fell or wandered.
- The shepherd's staff had a hook on the end, so it differed from the shepherd's rod, which was straight and was used to kill wild animals that were trying to attack the sheep.

(See also: Pharaoh, [power](#), [sheep](#), [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 04:1-3
- Exodus 07:09
- Luke 09:03
- Mark 06:7-9
- Matthew 10:8-10
- Matthew 27:29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4132, H4294, H4731, H4938, H6086, H6418, H7626, G2563, G3586, G4464

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:10](#))

stone, stoning

Definition:

A stone is a small rock. To “stone” someone is to throw stones and larger rocks at that person with the intention of killing him. A “stoning” is an event in which someone was stoned.

- In ancient times, stoning was a common method of executing people as punishment for crimes they had committed.
- God commanded the Israelite leaders to stone people for certain sins, such as adultery.
- In the New Testament, Jesus forgave a woman caught in adultery and stopped people from stoning her.
- Stephen, who was the first person in the Bible to be killed for testifying about Jesus, was stoned to death.
- In the city of Lystra, the apostle Paul was stoned, but he did not die from his wounds.

(See also: [adultery](#), [commit](#), crime, [death](#), Lystra, [testimony](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:57-58
- Acts 07:59-60
- Acts 14:05
- Acts 14:19-20
- John 08:4-6
- Luke 13:34
- Luke 20:06
- Matthew 23:37-39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H68, H69, H810, H1382, H1496, H1530, H2106, H2672, H2687, H2789, H4676, H4678, H5553, H5601, H5619, H6344, H6443, H6697, H6864, H6872, H7275, H7671, H8068, G2642, G2991, G3034, G3035, G3036, G3037, G4074, G4348, G5586

(Go back to: [Matthew 21:35](#); [23:37](#))

strength, strengthen, strong

Facts:

The term “strength” refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To “strengthen” someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has “strength of will” if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his “strength” because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being “strengthened,” people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
 - “puts strength on me like a belt” means “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
 - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
 - “will renew their strength” means “will become stronger again.”
 - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
 - “strengthen the wall” means “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
 - “I will strengthen you” means “I will cause you to be strong”
 - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
 - “the rock of your strength” means “the faithful one who makes you strong”
 - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
 - “of little strength” means “not very strong” or “weak.”
 - “with all my strength” means “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: [faithful](#), persevere, [right hand](#), [save](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 02:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 021:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H193, H202, H353, H360, H386, H410, H553, H556, H1369, H1396, H2220, H2388, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5582, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8632, H8633, G461, G950, G1411, G1412, G1743, G1765, G1840, G1991, G2479, G2480, G2901, G2904, G3619, G3756, G4599, G4732, G4733, G4741

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:13](#); [8:28](#); [9:12](#); [12:29](#); [14:30](#); [18:16](#))

stumble, reeling

Definition:

The term “stumble” means “almost fall” when walking or running. Usually it involves tripping over something.

- Figuratively, to “stumble” can mean to “sin” or to “falter” in believing.
- This term can also refer to faltering or showing weakness when fighting a battle or when being persecuted or punished.

Translation Suggestions

- In contexts where the term “stumble” means to physically trip over something, it should be translated with a term that means “almost fall” or “trip over.”
- This literal meaning could also be used in a figurative context, if it communicates the correct meaning in that context.
- For figurative uses where the literal meaning would not make sense in the project language, “stumble” could be translated as, “sin” or “falter” or “stop believing” or “become weak,” depending on the context.
- Another way to translate this term could be, “stumble by sinning” or “stumble by not believing.”
- The phrase “made to stumble” could be translated as “caused to become weak” or “caused to falter.”

(See also: [believe](#), [persecute](#), [sin](#), [stumbling block](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 02:08
- Hosea 04:05
- Isaiah 31:3
- Matthew 11:4-6
- Matthew 18:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1762, H3782, H4383, H5062, H5063, H5307, H6328, H6761, H8058, G679, G4348, G4350, G4417, G4624, G4625

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:29](#); [5:30](#); [18:6](#); [18:8](#); [18:9](#))

stumbling block, stone of stumbling

Definition:

The term “stumbling block” or “stone of stumbling” refers to a physical object that causes a person to trip and fall.

- A figurative stumbling block is anything that causes a person to fail in a moral or spiritual sense.
- Also figuratively, a “stumbling block” or “stone of stumbling” can be something that prevents someone from having faith in Jesus or that causes someone to not grow spiritually.
- Often it is sin that is like a stumbling block to oneself or to others.
- Sometimes God places a stumbling block in the way of people who are rebelling against him.

Translation Suggestions:

- If a language has a term for an object that triggers a trap, that word could be used to translate this term.
- This term could also be translated as “stone that causes stumbling” or “something that causes someone to not believe” or “obstacle that causes doubt” or “obstacle to faith” or “something that causes someone to sin.”

(See also: [stumble](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 01:23
- Galatians 05:11
- Matthew 05:29-30
- Matthew 16:23
- Romans 09:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4383, G3037, G4349, G4625

(Go back to: [Matthew 16:23](#))

suffer, suffering

Definition:

The terms “suffer” and “suffering” refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional, such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- The phrase “suffer me” means “bear with me” or “hear me out” or “listen patiently.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “suffer” can be translated as “feel pain” or “endure difficulty” or “experience hardships” or “go through difficult and painful experiences.”
- Depending on the context, “suffering” could be translated as “extremely difficult circumstances” or “severe hardships” or “experiencing hardship” or “time of painful experiences.”
- The phrase “suffer thirst” could be translated as “experience thirst” or “suffer with thirst.”
- To “suffer violence” could also be translated as “undergo violence” or “be harmed by violent acts.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- 2 Thessalonians 01:3-5
- 2 Timothy 01:08
- Acts 07:11-13
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 06:6-8
- Matthew 16:21
- Psalms 022:24
- Revelation 01:09
- Romans 05:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:13** God said, “I have seen the **suffering** of my people.”
- **38:12** Jesus prayed three times, “My Father, if it is possible, please let me not have to drink this cup of **suffering**.”
- **42:03** He (Jesus) reminded them that the prophets said the Messiah would **suffer** and be killed, but would rise again on the third day.
- **42:07** He (Jesus) said, “It was written long ago that the Messiah would **suffer**, die, and rise from the dead on the third day.”
- **44:05** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would **suffer** and die.”
- **46:04** God said, “I have chosen him (Saul) to declare my name to the unsaved. I will show him how much he must **suffer** for my sake.”
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more **suffering**, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H943, H1741, H1934, H4531, H5142, H5375, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6041, H6064, H6090, H6770, H6869, H6887, H7661, G91, G941, G971, G2210, G2346, G2347, G2552, G2553, G2561, G3804, G3958, G4310, G4778, G4777, G4841, G5004

(Go back to: [Matthew 16:21](#); [17:12](#); [27:19](#))

sweep

Facts:

To “sweep” usually means to remove dirt by making broad, quick movements with a broom or brush. “Swept” is the past tense of “sweep.” These words are also used figuratively.

- The term “sweep” is used figuratively to describe how an army attacks with swift, decisive, wide-reaching movements.
- For example, Isaiah prophesied that the Assyrians would “sweep through” the Kingdom of Judah. This means they would destroy Judah and capture its people.
- The term “sweep” can also be used to describe the manner in which rapidly flowing water pushes things and forces them away.
- When overwhelming, difficult things are happening to a person, it can be said that they are “sweeping over” him.

(See also: Assyria, [Isaiah](#), [Judah](#), [prophet](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:03
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Genesis 18:24
- Proverbs 21:7-8
- Psalms 090:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H622, H857, H1640, H2498, H2894, H3261, H5500, H5595, H7857, G4216, G4563, G4951

(Go back to: [Matthew 12:44](#))

sword, swordsmen

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [James \(brother of Jesus\)](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), tongue, [word of God](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 12:02
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Luke 02:33-35
- Luke 21:24
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55
- Revelation 01:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H19, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G3162, G4501

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:34](#); [26:47](#); [26:51](#); [26:52](#); [26:55](#))

synagogue

Definition:

A synagogue is a building where Jewish people meet together to worship God.

- Since ancient times, a synagogue's services have included times of prayer, scripture reading, and teaching about the scriptures.
- The Jews originally started building synagogues as places to pray and worship God in their own cities, because many of them lived far away from the temple in Jerusalem.
- Jesus often taught in synagogues and healed people there.
- The word "synagogue" can be used figuratively to refer to the group of people meeting there.

(See also: [heal](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Jew](#), [pray](#), [temple](#), [word of God](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 06:09
- Acts 14:1-2
- Acts 15:21
- Acts 24:10-13
- John 06:59
- Luke 04:14
- Matthew 06:1-2
- Matthew 09:35-36
- Matthew 13:54

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4150, G656, G752, G4864

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:23](#); [6:2](#); [6:5](#); [9:35](#); [10:17](#); [12:9](#); [13:54](#); [23:6](#); [23:34](#))

Syria, Ashur

Facts:

Syria is a country located northeast of Israel. During the time of the New Testament, it was a province under the rule of the Roman Empire.

- In the Old Testament time period, the Syrians were strong military enemies of the Israelites.
- Naaman was a commander of the Syrian army who was cured of leprosy by the prophet Elisha.
- Many inhabitants of Syria are descendants of Aram, who was descended from Noah's son Shem.
- Damascus, the capital city of Syria, was mentioned many times in the Bible.
- Saul went to the city of Damascus with plans to persecute Christians there, but Jesus stopped him.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Aram, commander, Damascus, descendant, Elisha, [leprosy](#), Naaman, [persecute](#), [prophet](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 15:23
- Acts 15:41
- Acts 20:03
- Galatians 01:21-24
- Matthew 04:23-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H758, H804, G4947, G4948

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:24](#))

tabernacle

Definition:

The tabernacle was a special tent-like structure where the Israelites worshiped God during the 40 years they traveled around in the desert.

- God had given the Israelites detailed instructions for building this large tent, which had two rooms and was surrounded by an enclosed courtyard.
- Each time the Israelites moved to a different place in the desert to live, the priests would take the tabernacle apart and carry it to their next campsite. Then they would set it up again in the center of their new camp.
- The tabernacle was constructed of wood frames hung with curtains made of cloth, goat hair, and animal skins. The courtyard surrounding it was enclosed with more curtains.
- The two sections of the tabernacle were the Holy Place (where the altar for burning incense was located) and the Most Holy Place (where the ark of the covenant was kept).
- The courtyard of the tabernacle had an altar for burning animal sacrifices and a special washbasin for ritual cleansing.
- The Israelites stopped using the tabernacle when the temple was built in Jerusalem by Solomon.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “tabernacle” means “dwelling place.” Other ways to translate it could include, “sacred tent” or “tent where God was” or “God’s tent.”
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of “temple.”

(See also: [altar](#), altar of incense, ark of the covenant, [temple](#), tent of meeting)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:30
- 2 Chronicles 01:2-5
- Acts 07:43
- Acts 07:45
- Exodus 38:21
- Joshua 22:19-20
- Leviticus 10:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H168, H4908, H5520, H5521, H5522, H7900, G4633, G4634, G4636, G4638

(Go back to: [Matthew 17:4](#))

Tamar

Facts:

Tamar is the name of several different women in the Old Testament. There are several cities or other places that are named Tamar in the Old Testament.

- Tamar was the daughter-in-law of Judah. She gave birth to Perez who was an ancestor of Jesus Christ.
- One of King David's daughters was named Tamar; she was the sister of Absalom. Her half-brother Amnon raped her and left her desolate.
- Absalom also had a daughter named Tamar.
- A city called "Hazezon Tamar" was the same as the city of Engedi on the western shore of the Salt Sea. There is also a "Baal Tamar," and general references to a place called "Tamar" which may have been different from the cities.

(See also: Absalom, [ancestor](#), Amnon, [David](#), [ancestor](#), [Judah](#), Salt Sea)

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:04
- 2 Samuel 13:02
- 2 Samuel 14:25-27
- Genesis 38:6-7
- Genesis 38:24
- Matthew 01:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1193, H2688, H8412, H8559

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:3](#))

tax, taxed, taxation, taxpayers, tax collector,

Definition:

The terms “tax” and “taxes” refer to money or goods that people pay to a government that is in authority over them. A “tax collector” was a government worker whose job was to receive money that people were required to pay the government in taxes.

- The amount of money that is paid as a tax is usually based on the value of an item or on how much a person's property is worth.
- In the time of Jesus and the apostles, the Roman government required taxes from everyone living in the Roman empire, including the Jews.
- If taxes are not paid, the government can take legal action against a person to get the money that is owed.
- Joseph and Mary traveled to Bethlehem to be counted in the census held to tax everyone living in the Roman empire.
- The term “tax” could also be translated as, “required payment” or “government money” or “temple money,” depending on the context.
- To “pay taxes” could also be translated as to “pay money to the government” or “receive money for the government” or “make the required payment.” To “collect taxes” could be translated as to “receive money for the government.”
- A “tax collector” is someone who works for the government and receives the money that people are required to pay it.
- The people who collected taxes for the Roman government would often demand more money from the people than the government required. The tax collectors would keep the extra amount for themselves.
- Because tax collectors cheated people in this way, the Jews considered them to be among the worst of sinners.
- The Jews also considered Jewish tax collectors to be traitors to their own people because they worked for the Roman government which was oppressing the Jewish people.
- The phrase, “tax collectors and sinners” was a common expression in the New Testament, showing how much the Jews despised tax collectors.

(See also: [Jew](#), [Rome](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- Luke 20:21-22
- Mark 02:13-14
- Matthew 09:7-9
- Numbers 31:28-29
- Romans 13:6-7
- Luke 03:12-13
- Luke 05:27-28
- Matthew 05:46-48
- Matthew 09:10-11
- Matthew 11:18-19
- Matthew 17:26-27
- Matthew 18:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

34:06 He said, “Two men went to the Temple to pray. One of them was a tax collector, and the other was a religious leader.” 34:07 “The religious leader prayed like this, ‘Thank you, God, that I am not a sinner like other men—such as robbers, unjust men, adulterers, or even like that tax collector.’” 34:09 “But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be

merciful to me because I am a sinner.” 34:10 Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous.” 35:01 One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other sinners who had gathered to hear him.

Word Data:

- Tax: Strong’s: H2670, H4060, H4371, H4522, H4864, H6186, G1323, G2778, G5055, G5411
- Tax Collector: Strong’s: H5065, H5674, G5057, G5058

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:46](#); [9:9](#); [9:10](#); [9:11](#); [10:3](#); [11:19](#); [17:25](#); [18:17](#); [21:31](#); [21:32](#))

teach, teaching, untaught

Definition:

To “teach” someone is to tell him something he doesn’t already know. It can also mean to “provide information” in general, with no reference to the person who is learning. Usually the information is given in a formal or systematic way. A person’s “teaching” is or his “teachings” are what he has taught.

- A “teacher” is someone who teaches. The past action of “teach” is “taught.”
- When Jesus was teaching, he was explaining things about God and his kingdom.
- Jesus’ disciples called him “Teacher” as a respectful form of address for someone who taught people about God.
- The information that is being taught can be shown or spoken.
- The term “doctrine” refers to a set of teachings from God about himself as well as God’s instructions about how to live. This could also be translated as “teachings from God” or “what God teaches us.”
- The phrase “what you have been taught” could also be translated as, “what these people have taught you” or “what God has taught you,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate “teach” could include “tell” or “explain” or “instruct.”
- Often this term can be translated as “teaching people about God.”

(See also: [instruct](#), [teacher](#), [word of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:03
- Acts 02:40-42
- John 07:14
- Luke 04:31
- Matthew 04:23
- Psalms 032:08

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H502, H2094, H2449, H3045, H3046, H3256, H3384, H3925, H3948, H7919, H8150, G1317, G1321, G1322, G2085, G2605, G2727, G3100, G2312, G2567, G3811, G4994

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:23](#); [5:2](#); [5:19](#); [7:28](#); [7:29](#); [9:35](#); [11:1](#); [13:54](#); [15:9](#); [16:12](#); [21:23](#); [22:16](#); [22:33](#); [26:55](#); [28:20](#))

teacher, Teacher

Definition:

A teacher is a person who gives other people new information. Teachers help others to obtain and use both knowledge and skills.

- In the Bible, the word “teacher” is used in a special sense to refer to someone who teaches about God.
- People who learn from a teacher are called “students” or “disciples.”
- In some Bible translations, this term is capitalized (“Teacher”) when it is used as a title for Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- The usual word for a teacher can be used to translate this term, unless that word is only used for a school teacher.
- Some cultures may have a special title that is used for religious teachers, such as “Sir” or “Rabbi” or “Preacher.”

(See also: [disciple](#), [preach](#))

Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 01:12-15
- Ephesians 04:11-13
- Galatians 06:6-8
- Habakkuk 02:18
- James 03:02
- John 01:37-39
- Luke 06:40
- Matthew 12:38-40

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “**Teacher**, what must I do to inherit eternal life?”
- **28:01** One day a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good **Teacher**, what must I do to have eternal life?”
- **37:02** After the two days had passed, Jesus said to his disciples, “Let’s go back to Judea.” “But **Teacher**,” the disciples answered, “Just a short time ago the people there wanted to kill you!”
- **38:14** Judas came to Jesus and said, “Greetings, **Teacher**,” and kissed him.
- **49:03** Jesus was also a great **teacher**, and he spoke with authority because he is the Son of God.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3384, H3925, G1320, G2567, G3547, G5572

(Go back to: [Matthew 8:19](#); [9:11](#); [10:24](#); [10:25](#); [12:38](#); [17:24](#); [19:16](#); [22:16](#); [22:24](#); [22:36](#); [26:18](#))

temple

Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [Solomon](#), [Babylon](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [tabernacle](#), [courtyard](#), [Zion](#), [house](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 03:02
- Acts 03:08
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:46
- Nehemiah 10:28
- Psalm 079:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:06** David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:02** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.
- **20:13** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- **25:04** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- **40:07** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1964, H1965, G1493, G2411, G3485

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:5](#); [12:5](#); [12:6](#); [21:12](#); [21:14](#); [21:15](#); [21:23](#); [23:16](#); [23:17](#); [23:21](#); [23:35](#); [24:1](#); [26:55](#); [26:61](#); [27:5](#); [27:40](#); [27:51](#))

tempt, temptation

Definition:

To tempt someone is to try to get that person to do something wrong.

- A temptation is something that causes a person to want to do something wrong.
- People are tempted by their own sinful nature and by other people.
- Satan also tempts people to disobey God and to sin against God by doing wrong things.
- Satan tempted Jesus and tried to get him to do something wrong, but Jesus resisted all of Satan's temptations and never sinned.
- Someone who is "tempting God" is not trying to get him to do something wrong, but rather, is continuing in stubborn disobedience of him to the point that God must respond by punishing him. This is also called "testing God."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "tempt" can be translated as, "try to cause to sin" or "entice" or "cause a desire to sin."
- Ways to translate "temptations" could include, "things that tempt" or "things that entice someone to sin" or "things that cause desire to do something wrong."
- To "tempt God" could be translated as to "put God to the test" or to "test God" or to "try God's patience" or to "cause God to have to punish" or to "stubbornly keep disobeying God."

(See also: disobey, [Satan](#), [sin](#), [test](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:4-5
- Hebrews 04:15
- James 01:13
- Luke 04:02
- Luke 11:04
- Matthew 26:41

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:01** Then Satan came to Jesus and **tempted** him to sin.
- **25:08** Jesus did not give in to Satan's **temptations**, so Satan left him.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to pray that they would not enter into **temptation**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H974, H4531, H5254, G551, G1598, G3985, G3986, G3987

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:1](#); [4:3](#); [6:13](#); [16:1](#); [18:7](#); [26:41](#))

tenth, tithe

Definition:

The terms “tenth” and “tithe” refer to “ten percent” or “one-out-of-ten portion” of one’s money, crops, livestock, or other possessions, which is given to God.

- In the Old Testament, God instructed the Israelites to set aside a tenth of their belongings to give as an offering of thanksgiving to him.
- This offering was used to support the Levite tribe of Israel who served the Israelites as priests and caretakers of the tabernacle and later, the temple.
- In the New Testament, God does not require giving a tithe, but instead he instructs believers to generously and cheerfully help people in need and support the work of Christian ministry.
- This could also be translated as “one-tenth” or “one out of ten.”

(See also: [believe](#), [Israel](#), Levite, livestock, Melchizedek, [minister](#), [sacrifice tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 14:19-20
- Genesis 28:20-22
- Hebrews 07:4-6
- Isaiah 06:13
- Luke 11:42
- Luke 18:11-12
- Matthew 23:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4643, H6237, H6241, G586, G1181, G1183

(Go back to: [Matthew 23:23](#))

test, tested, testing, testing in the fire

Definition:

The term “test” refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person’s strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people’s sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To “put to the test” can mean, “challenge something or someone to prove its value.”
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “test” could also be translated as, to “challenge” or to “cause to experience difficulties” or to “prove.”
- Ways to translate “a test” could be, “a challenge” or “a difficult experience.”
- To “put to the test” could be translated as to “test” or to “set up a challenge” or to “force to prove oneself.”
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, “trying to force God to prove his love.”
- In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term “test” can mean “tempt.”

(See also: [tempt](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:01
- 1 Thessalonians 05:21
- Acts 15:10
- Genesis 22:01
- Isaiah 07:13
- James 01:12
- Lamentations 03:40-43
- Malachi 03:10
- Philippians 01:10
- Psalm 026:02

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G1242, G1263, G1303, G1382, G1957, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3984, G4303, G4451, G4828, G6020

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:7](#); [19:3](#); [22:18](#); [22:35](#))

testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness

Definition:

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To “witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as, “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as, to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as, “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: ark of the covenant, guilt, [judge](#), [prophet](#), [testimony](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 06:03
- Matthew 26:60
- Mark 01:44
- John 01:07

- John 03:33
- Acts 04:32-33
- Acts 07:44
- Acts 13:31
- Romans 01:09
- 1 Thessalonians 02:10-12
- 1 Timothy 05:19-20
- 2 Timothy 01:08
- 2 Peter 01:16-18
- 1 John 05:6-8
- 3 John 01:12
- Revelation 12:11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:02** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- **43:07** "We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G267, G1263, G1957, G2649, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3144, G4303, G4828, G4901, G5575, G5576, G5577, G6020

(Go back to: [Matthew 8:4](#); [10:18](#); [18:16](#); [23:31](#); [24:14](#); [26:65](#))

tetrarch

Definition:

The term “tetrarch” refers to a governing official who ruled over part of the Roman Empire. Each tetrarch was under the authority of the Roman emperor.

- The title “tetrarch” means “one of four joint rulers.”
- Starting under the Emperor Diocletian, there were four major divisions of the Roman Empire and each tetrarch ruled one division.
- The kingdom of Herod “the Great,” who was king at the time of the birth of Jesus, was divided into four sections after his death, and ruled by his sons as “tetrarchs,” or “rulers of a fourth.”
- Each division had one or more smaller parts called “provinces,” such as Galilee or Samaria.
- “Herod the tetrarch” is mentioned several times in the New Testament. He is also known as “Herod Antipas.”
- The term “tetrarch” could also be translated as “regional governor” or “provincial ruler” or “ruler” or “governor.”

(See also: [governor](#), [Herod Antipas](#), province, Rome, [ruler](#))

Bible References:

- Luke 03:1-2
- Luke 09:07
- Matthew 14:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: G5075, G5076

(Go back to: [Matthew 14:1](#))

the twelve, the eleven

Definition:

The term “the twelve” refers to the twelve men that Jesus chose to be his closest disciples, or apostles. After Judas killed himself, they were called “the eleven.”

- Jesus had many other disciples, but the title “the twelve” distinguished those who were apparently closest to Jesus.
- The names of these twelve disciples are listed in Matthew 10, Mark 3, and Luke 6.
- Some time after Jesus had returned to heaven, “the eleven” chose a disciple named Matthias to take Judas’ place. Then they were called “the twelve” again.

Translation Suggestions:

- For many languages it may be clearer or more natural to add the noun and say, “the twelve apostles” or “Jesus’ twelve closest disciples.”
- “The eleven” could also be translated as “Jesus’ eleven remaining disciples.”
- Some translations may prefer to use a capital letter to show that it was used as a title, as in “the Twelve” and “the Eleven.”

(See also: [apostle](#), [disciple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:5-7
- Acts 06:02
- Luke 09:01
- Luke 18:31
- Mark 10:32-34
- Matthew 10:07

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G1427, G1733

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:1](#); [10:2](#); [10:5](#); [11:1](#); [20:17](#); [26:14](#); [26:20](#); [26:47](#); [28:16](#))

thief, rob, robber, robbery, bandits

Facts:

The term “thief” refers to a person who steals money or property from other people. The plural of “thief” is “thieves.” The term “robber” often refers to a thief who also physically harms or threatens the people he is stealing from.

- Jesus told a parable about a Samaritan man who took care of a Jewish man who had been attacked by robbers. The robbers had beaten the Jewish man and wounded him before stealing his money and clothing.
- Both thieves and robbers come suddenly to steal, when people are not expecting it. Often they use the cover of darkness to hide what they are doing.
- In a figurative sense, the New Testament describes Satan as a thief who comes to steal, kill, and destroy. This means that Satan’s plan is to try to get God’s people to stop obeying him. If he succeeded in doing this Satan would be stealing from them the good things that God has planned for them.
- Jesus compared the suddenness of his return to the suddenness of a thief coming to steal from people. Just as a thief comes at a time when people are not expecting it, so Jesus will return at a time when people do not expect it.

(See also: [bless](#), crime, [crucify](#), [darkness](#), [destroyer](#), [power](#), [Samaria](#), [Satan](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 03:10
- Luke 12:33
- Mark 14:48
- Proverbs 06:30
- Revelation 03:03

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H1215, H1416, H1589, H1590, H1980, H6530, H7703, G727, G2417, G2812, G3027

(Go back to: [Matthew 6:19](#); [6:20](#); [21:13](#); [24:43](#); [26:55](#); [27:38](#); [27:44](#))

Thomas

Facts:

Thomas was one of twelve men whom Jesus chose to be his disciples and later, apostles. He was also known as "Didymus," which means "twin."

- Near the end of Jesus' life, he told his disciples that he was going away to be with the Father and would prepare a place for them to be with him. Thomas asked Jesus how they could know the way to get there when they didn't even know where he was going.
- After Jesus died and came back to life, Thomas said he would not believe that Jesus was really alive again unless he could see and feel the scars where Jesus had been wounded.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [apostle](#), [disciple](#), [God the Father](#), [the twelve](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 01:12-14
- John 11:15-16
- Luke 06:14-16
- Mark 03:17-19
- Matthew 10:2-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2381

(Go back to: [Matthew 10:3](#))

thorn, thorn bush, thistle

Facts:

Thorn bushes and thistles are plants that have prickly branches or flowers. These plants do not produce fruit or anything else that is useful.

- A “thorn” is a hard, sharp growth on the branch or stem of a plant. A “thornbush” is a type of small tree or shrub that has many thorns on its branches.
- A “thistle” is a plant with prickly stems and leaves. Often the flowers are purple.
- Thorn and thistle plants multiply quickly and can cause nearby plants or crops to not be able to grow. This is a picture of how sin keeps a person from producing good spiritual fruit.
- A crown made of twisted thorn branches was placed on Jesus’ head before he was crucified.
- If possible, these terms should be translated by the names of two different plants or bushes that are known in the language area.

(See also: [crown](#), [fruit](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Hebrews 06:7-8
- Matthew 13:07
- Matthew 13:22
- Numbers 33:55

Word Data:

- Strong's: H329, H1863, H2312, H2336, H4534, H5285, H5518, H5544, H6791, H6796, H6975, H7063, H7898, G173, G174, G4647, G5146

(Go back to: [Matthew 7:16](#); [13:7](#); [13:22](#); [27:29](#))

thresh

Definition:

The terms “thresh” and “threshing” refer to the first part of the process of separating grain from the rest of the plant.

- Threshing a crop loosens the grain from the stalk. Afterwards the grain is “winnowed” to completely separate the seed from all unwanted materials, leaving only the part the grain that can be eaten.
- In Bible times, a “threshing floor” was a large flat rock or an area of packed-down dirt, giving a hard, level surface to crush the grain stalks and remove the grain.
- A “threshing cart” or “threshing wheel” was sometimes used to crush the grain and help separate it from the straw and chaff.
- A “threshing sledge” or “threshing board” was also used for separating grain. It was made of wooden boards that had sharp metal spikes on the end.

(See also: [chaff](#), [grain](#), [winnow](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
- 2 Kings 13:07
- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Daniel 02:35
- Luke 03:17
- Matthew 03:12
- Ruth 03:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H212, H4173, H1637, H1758, H1786, H1869, H2251, G248

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:12](#))

throne, enthroned

Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a ruler sits when he decides important matters and listens to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a ruler has.
- The word “throne” can also be used to refer to the ruler, his reign, or his power.
- In the Bible, God was often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus was described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God’s throne. One way to translate this could be, “where God reigns as king.”

(See also: [authority](#), [power](#), [king](#), [reign](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 01:15-17
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 01:32
- Luke 22:30
- Matthew 05:34
- Matthew 19:28
- Revelation 01:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3427, H3676, H3678, H3764, H7675, G968, G2362

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:34](#); [19:28](#); [23:22](#); [25:31](#))

time, untimely, date

Facts:

In the Bible the term “time” was often used figuratively to refer to a specific season or period of time when certain events took place. It has a meaning similar to “age” or “epoch” or “season.”

- In both Daniel and Revelation speak of a “time” of great trouble or tribulation that will come upon the earth.
- In the phrase “time, times, and half a time” the term “time” means “year.” This phrase refers to a three-and-a-half-year period of time during the great tribulation at the end of this present age.
- “Time” can mean “occasion” in a phrase like “third time.” The phrase “many times” can mean “on many occasions.”
- To be “on time” means to arrive when expected, not late.
- Depending on the context, the term “time” could be translated as, “season” or “time period” or “moment” or “event” or “occurrence.”
- The phrase “times and seasons” is a figurative expression which states the same idea twice. This could also be translated as “certain events happening in certain time periods.” (See: [doublet](#))

(See also: [age](#), [tribulation](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 01:07
- Daniel 12:1-2
- Mark 11:11
- Matthew 08:29
- Psalms 068:28-29
- Revelation 14:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H116, H227, H310, H1697, H1755, H2165, H2166, H2233, H2465, H3027, H3117, H3118, H3119, H3259, H3427, H3967, H4150, H4279, H4489, H4557, H5331, H5703, H5732, H5750, H5769, H6235, H6256, H6440, H6471, H6635, H6924, H7105, H7138, H7223, H7272, H7281, H7637, H7651, H7655, H7659, H7674, H7992, H8027, H8032, H8138, H8145, H8462, H8543, G744, G530, G1074, G1208, G1441, G1597, G1626, G1909, G2034, G2119, G2121, G2235, G2250, G2540, G3461, G3568, G3764, G3819, G3956, G3999, G4178, G4181, G4183, G4218, G4287, G4340, G4455, G5119, G5151, G5305, G5550, G5551, G5610

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:7](#); [2:16](#); [4:17](#); [8:29](#); [11:25](#); [12:1](#); [13:30](#); [14:1](#); [16:21](#); [21:34](#); [21:41](#); [24:45](#); [25:19](#); [26:18](#))

to minister, ministry

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “ministry” refers to serving others by teaching them about God and caring for their spiritual needs.

- In the Old Testament, the priests would “minister” to God in the temple by offering sacrifices to him.
- Their “ministry” also included taking care of the temple and offering prayers to God on behalf of the people.
- The job of “ministering” to people can include serving them spiritually by teaching them about God.
- It can also refer to serving people in physical ways, such as caring for the sick and providing food for the poor.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of ministering to people, to “minister” could also be translated as to “serve” or to “care for” or to “meet the needs of.”
- When referring to ministering in the temple, the term “minister” could be translated as “serve God in the temple” or “offer sacrifices to God for the people.”
- In the context of ministering to God, this could be translated as to “serve” or to “work for God.”
- The phrase “ministered to” could also be translated as “took care of” or “provided for” or “helped.”

(See also: [serve](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 20:23-26
- Acts 06:04
- Acts 21:17-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6399, H8120, H8334, H8335, G1247, G1248, G1249, G2023, G2038, G2418, G3008, G3009, G3010, G3011, G3930, G5256, G5257, G5524

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:11](#); [8:15](#); [20:26](#); [20:28](#); [22:13](#); [23:11](#); [25:44](#); [27:55](#))

torment, tormented, tormentors

Facts:

The term “torment” refers to terrible suffering. To torment someone means to cause that person to suffer, often in a cruel way.

- Sometimes the term “torment” refers to physical pain and suffering. For example, the book of Revelation describes physical torment that worshipers of the “beast” will suffer in the end times.
- Suffering may also take the form of spiritual and emotional pain, as experienced by Job.
- The apostle John wrote in the book of Revelation that people who do not believe in Jesus as their Savior will experience eternal torment in the lake of fire.
- This term could be translated as “terrible suffering” or “cause someone to suffer greatly” or “agony.” Some translators may add “physical” or “spiritual” to make the meaning clear.

(See also: [beast](#), [everlasting](#), [Job](#), [Savior](#), [spirit](#), [suffer](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:08
- Jeremiah 30:20-22
- Lamentations 01:11-12
- Luke 08:28-29
- Revelation 11:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3013, G928, G929, G930, G931, G2558, G2851, G3600

(Go back to: [Matthew 8:6](#); [8:29](#))

tradition

Definition:

The term “tradition” refers to a custom or practice that has been kept over time and which is passed down to people in later generations.

- Often in the Bible the word “traditions” referred to teachings and practices that people made, not God’s laws. The expression “tradition of men” or “human tradition” makes this clear.
- Phrases such as “traditions of the elders” or “traditions of my fathers” referred specifically to Jewish customs and practices that Jewish leaders over time had added to the laws God gave to the Israelites through Moses. Even though these added traditions had not come from God, people thought they had to obey them in order to be righteous.
- The apostle Paul used the term “tradition” in a different way to refer to teachings about Christian practice that came from God and that he and other apostles had taught new believers.
- In modern times, there are many Christian traditions that are not taught in the Bible, but rather are the result of historically accepted customs and practices. These traditions should always be evaluated in light of what God teaches us in the Bible.

(See also: [apostle](#), [believe](#), [Christian](#), [ancestor](#), [generation](#), [Jew](#), [law](#), [Moses](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 03:6-9
- Colossians 02:08
- Galatians 01:13-14
- Mark 07:02
- Matthew 15:03

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G3862

(Go back to: [Matthew 15:2](#); [15:3](#); [15:6](#))

trample

Definition:

To “trample” means to step on something and smash it with the feet. This term is also used figuratively in the Bible to mean “destroy” or “defeat” or “humiliate.”

- An example of “trampling” would be the smashing down of grass by the feet of people running in a field..
- In ancient times, wine was sometimes made by trampling grapes to remove the juice from them.
- Sometimes the term to “trample” has a figurative meaning of to “punish by humiliating,” comparing it to trampling mud for a threshing floor.
- The term “trample” was used figuratively to express how Yahweh would punish his people Israel for their pride and rebellion.
- Other ways that “trample” could be translated include “crush with the feet” or “smash down with the feet” or “stomp on and crush” or “smash into the ground.”
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated

(See also: [grape](#), humiliate, [punish](#), rebel, [thresh](#), [wine](#))

Bible References:

- Hebrews 10:29
- Psalms 007:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H947, H1758, H1869, H4001, H4823, H7429, H7512, G2662, G3961

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:13](#); [7:6](#))

tremble, stagger

Definition:

The term "tremble" means to quiver or to shake slightly and repeatedly, usually from fear or distress. The term can also be used figuratively, meaning "to be very afraid."

- Sometimes when the ground shakes it is said to "tremble." It can do this during an earthquake or in response to a very loud noise.
- The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
- This term could be translated as "be afraid" or "fear God" or "shake," depending on the context.

(See also: [earth](#), [fear](#), [Lord](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 07:15
- 2 Samuel 22:44-46
- Acts 16:29-31
- Jeremiah 05:22
- Luke 08:47

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1674, H2111, H2112, H2151, H2342, H2648, H2729, H2730, H2731, H5128, H5568, H6342, H6426, H6427, H7264, H7268, H7269, H7322, H7460, H7461, H7481, H7493, H7578, H8078, H8653, G1790, G5141, G5156, G5425

(Go back to: [Matthew 27:51](#); [28:4](#))

trespass

Definition:

The term “trespass” means to cross a line or to violate a boundary. This term is often used figuratively, meaning to break a law or to violate the rights of another person.

- This term is very similar to the word “transgression,” but is generally used more often to describe violations against other people than against God.
- A trespass can be a violation of a moral law or a civil law.
- A trespass can also be a sin committed against another person.
- This term is related to the terms “sin” and “transgress,” especially as it relates to disobeying God. All sins are trespasses against God.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “trespass against” could be translated as to “sin against” or to “break the rule.”
- Some languages may have an expression like “cross the line” that could be used to translate “trespass.”
- Consider how this term fits with the meaning of the surrounding Bible text and compare it to other terms that have a similar meaning, such as “transgress” and “sin.”

(See also: disobey, iniquity, [sin](#), transgress)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 25:28
- 2 Chronicles 26:16-18
- Colossians 02:13
- Ephesians 02:01
- Ezekiel 15:7-8
- Romans 05:17
- Romans 05:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H816, H817, H819, H2398, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G264, G3900

(Go back to: [Matthew 6:14](#); [6:15](#); [18:7](#))

tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: clan, [nation](#), [people group](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:19
- 2 Kings 17:16-18
- Genesis 25:16
- Genesis 49:17
- Luke 02:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H523, H4294, H7625, H7626, G1429, G5443

(Go back to: [Matthew 19:28](#); [24:30](#))

tribulation, distresses, trouble

Definition:

The term “tribulation” refers to a time of hardship, suffering, and distress.

- It is explained in the New Testament that Christians will endure times of persecution and other kinds of tribulation because many people in this world are opposed to Jesus’ teachings.
- “The Great Tribulation” is a term used in the Bible to describe a period of time just before Jesus’ second coming when God’s wrath will be poured out on the earth for several years.
- The term “tribulation” could also be translated as “time of great suffering” or “deep distress” or “severe difficulties.”

(See also: [earth](#), [teach](#), [wrath](#))

Bible References:

- Mark 04:17
- Mark 13:19
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Matthew 24:09
- Matthew 24:29
- Romans 02:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6869, G2347, G4423

(Go back to: [Matthew 13:21](#); [24:9](#); [24:21](#); [24:29](#))

tribute, contribution, fined

Definition:

The term “tribute” refers to a gift from one ruler to another ruler, for the purpose of protection and for good relations between their nations. A tribute can also be a payment that a ruler or government requires from the people, such as a toll or tax.

- In Bible times, traveling kings or rulers sometimes paid a tribute to the king of the region they were traveling through to make sure they would be protected and safe.
- Often the tribute would include things besides money, such as foods, spices, rich clothing, and expensive metals such as gold.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “tribute” could be translated as “official gifts” or “special tax” or “required payment.”

(See also: [gold](#), [king](#), [ruler](#), [tax](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 09:22-24
- 2 Kings 17:03
- Luke 23:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1093, H4061, H4503, H4530, H4853, H6066, H7862, G5411

(Go back to: [Matthew 17:25](#); [22:17](#); [22:19](#))

trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, hardship

Definition:

A “trouble” is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To “trouble” someone means to “bother” that person or to cause him distress. To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Don’t trouble her” could also be translated as “don’t bother her” or “don’t criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as “when you experience distress” or “when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: afflict, [persecute](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:19
- Luke 24:38
- Matthew 24:06
- Matthew 26:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H205, H926, H927, H1204, H1607, H1644, H1804, H2000, H4103, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7489, H8513, G387, G1613, G1776, G2346, G2347, G2350, G2360, G2873, G3636, G3926, G3930, G3986, G4423, G4660, G5015, G5182

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:3](#); [9:36](#); [14:26](#); [24:6](#); [26:10](#))

true, truth

Definition:

The term "truth" refers to facts, events, and statements that correspond with reality. True facts describe the universe as it really exists. True events are events that actually happened. True statements are statements that are not false according to the real world.

- "True" things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- "Truth" means understandings, beliefs, facts, or statements that are true.
- To say that a prophecy "came true" or "will come true" mean that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- In the Bible the concept of "truth" includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God's truth in the words that he spoke.
- The Bible is truth. It teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term "true" could also be translated by "real" or "factual" or "correct" or "right" or "certain" or "genuine."
- Ways to translate the term "truth" could include "what is true" or "fact" or "certainty" or "principle."
- The expression "come true" could also be translated as "actually happen" or "be fulfilled" or "happen as predicted."
- The expression "tell the truth" or "speak the truth" could also be translated as "say what is true" or "tell what really happened" or "say things that are reliable."
- To "accept the truth" could be translated as "believe what is true about God."
- In an expression such as "worship God in spirit and in truth," the expression "in truth" could also be translated by "faithfully obeying what God has taught us."

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#), [fulfill](#), [obey](#), [prophet](#), [understand](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 John 02:08
- 3 John 01:08
- Acts 26:24-26
- Colossians 01:06
- Genesis 47:29-31
- James 01:18
- James 03:14
- James 05:19
- Jeremiah 04:02
- John 01:09
- John 01:16-18
- John 01:51
- John 03:31-33
- Joshua 07:19-21
- Lamentations 05:19-22
- Matthew 08:10
- Matthew 12:17
- Psalm 026:1-3
- Revelation 01:19-20

- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** The snake responded to the woman, "That is not **true**! You will not die."
- **14:06** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is *_true_* that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the *_true_* God.
- **31:08** They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
- **39:10** "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H199, H389, H403, H529, H530, H543, H544, H551, H571, H935, H3321, H3330, H6237, H6656, H6965, H7187, H7189, G225, G226, G227, G228, G230, G1103, G3303, G3483, G3689, G4103, G4137

(Go back to: [Matthew 14:33](#); [22:16](#); [26:73](#); [27:54](#))

trumpet, trumpeters

Definition:

The term “trumpet” refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel's public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: [angel](#), [assembly](#), [earth](#), horn, [Israel](#), [wrath](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:7-8
- 2 Kings 09:13
- Exodus 19:12-13
- Hebrews 12:19
- Matthew 06:02
- Matthew 24:31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2689, H2690, H3104, H7782, H8619, H8643, G4536, G4537, G4538

(Go back to: [Matthew 6:2](#); [24:31](#))

trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

Definition:

To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: [believe](#), confidence, [faith](#), [faithful](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:22-24
- 1 Timothy 04:09
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:13
- Psalm 031:05
- Titus 03:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **14:15** Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **17:02** David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **34:06** Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G1679, G3872, G3982, G4006, G4100, G4276

(Go back to: [Matthew 27:43](#))

tunic

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “tunic” referred to a garment that was worn next to the skin, under other clothing.

- A tunic reached from the shoulders down to the waist or knees and was usually worn with a belt. Tunics worn by wealthy people sometimes had sleeves and reached down to the ankles.
- Tunics were made of leather, haircloth, wool, or linen, and were worn by both men and women.
- A tunic was normally worn under a longer over-garment, such as a toga or outer robe. In warmer weather a tunic was sometimes worn with no outer garment.
- This term could be translated as “long shirt” or “long undergarment” or “shirt-like garment.” It could also be written in a similar way to “tunic,” with a note to explain what kind of clothing it was.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See Also: [robe](#))

Bible References:

- Daniel 03:21-23
- Isaiah 22:21
- Leviticus 08:12-13
- Luke 03:11
- Mark 06:7-9
- Matthew 10:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2243, H3801, H6361, G5509

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:40](#); [10:10](#))

turn, turn away, turn back, return

Definition:

To “turn” means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term “turn” can also mean “turn around” to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To “turn back” or “turn away” means to “go back” or “go away” or “cause to go away.”
- To “turn away from” can mean to “stop” doing something or to reject someone.
- To “turn toward” someone means to look directly at that person.
- To “turn and leave” or “turn his back to leave” means to “go away.”
- To “turn back to” means to “start doing something again.”
- To “turn away from” means to “stop doing something.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “turn” can be translated as “change direction” or “go” or “move.”
- In some contexts, “turn” could be translated as “cause” (someone) to do something. To “turn (someone) away from” could be translated as “cause (someone) to go away” or “cause (someone) to stop.”
- The phrase “turn away from God” could be translated as “stop worshiping God.”
- The phrase “turn back to God” could be translated as “start worshiping God again.”
- When enemies “turn back,” it means they “retreat.” To “turn back the enemy” means to “cause the enemy to retreat.”
- Used figuratively, when Israel “turned to” false gods, they “started to worship” them. When they “turned away” from idols, they “stopped worshiping” them.
- When God “turned away from” his rebellious people, he “stopped protecting” or “stopped helping” them.
- The phrase “turn the hearts of the fathers to their children” could be translated as “cause fathers to care for their children again.”
- The expression “turn my honor into shame” could be translated as “cause my honor to become shame” or “dishonor me so that I am shamed” or “shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me.”
- “I will turn your cities into ruin” could be translated as “I will cause your cities to be destroyed” or “I will cause enemies to destroy your cities.”
- The phrase “turn into” could be translated as “become.” When Moses’ rod “turned into” a snake, it “became” a snake.” It could also be translated as “changed into.”

(See also: false god, [leprosy](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:02
- Acts 07:42
- Acts 11:21
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 01:17
- Malachi 04:06
- Revelation 11:06

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H541, H2015, H2017, H2186, H2559, H3943, H4672, H4740, H4878, H5186, H5253, H5414, H5437, H5472, H5493, H5528, H5627, H5753, H6437, H7227, H7725, H7734, H7750, H7760, H7847, H8159, H8447, G344, G387, G402, G654, G665, G868, G1294, G1578, G1612, G1624, G1994, G3179, G3313, G3329, G3344, G3346, G4762, G5157, G5290

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:39](#); [5:42](#); [7:6](#); [9:22](#); [10:13](#); [13:15](#); [16:23](#); [18:3](#); [26:52](#))

twelve tribes of Israel, twelve tribes

Definition:

The term “twelve tribes of Israel” refers to the twelve sons of Jacob and their descendants.

- Jacob was Abraham’s grandson. God later changed Jacob’s name to Israel.
- These are the names of the tribes: Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Dan, Naphtali, Gad, Asher, Issachar, Zebulun, Joseph and Benjamin.
- The descendants of Levi did not inherit any land in Canaan because they were a tribe of priests who were set apart to serve God and his people.
- Joseph received a double inheritance of land, which was passed on to his two sons, Ephraim and Manasseh.
- There are several places in the Bible where the list of the twelve tribes is slightly different. Sometimes Levi, Joseph, or Dan is left out of the list and sometimes Joseph’s two sons Ephraim and Manasseh are included in the list.

(See also: [inherit](#), [Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [priest](#), [tribe](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 26:07
- Genesis 49:28
- Luke 22:28-30
- Matthew 19:28

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3478, H7626, H8147, G1427, G2474, G5443

(Go back to: [Matthew 19:28](#))

Tyre, Tyrians

Facts:

Tyre was an ancient Canaanite city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is now part of the modern-day country of Lebanon. Its people were called "Tyrians."

- Part of the city was located on an island in the sea, about one kilometer from the mainland.
- Because of its location and its valuable natural resources, such as cedar trees, Tyre had a prosperous trading industry and was very wealthy.
- King Hiram of Tyre sent wood from cedar trees and skilled laborers to help build a palace for King David.
- Years later, Hiram also sent King Solomon wood and skilled laborers to help build the temple. Solomon paid him with large amounts of wheat and olive oil.
- Tyre was often associated with the nearby ancient city of Sidon. These were the most important cities of the region of Canaan called Phoenicia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), cedar, [Israel](#), the sea, Phoenicia, [Sidon](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 12:20
- Mark 03:7-8
- Matthew 11:22
- Matthew 15:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6865, H6876, G5183, G5184

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:21](#); [11:22](#); [15:21](#))

understand, understanding, thinking

Definition:

The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
- Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: [believe](#), [know](#), [wise](#))

Bible References:

- Job 34:16-17
- Luke 02:47
- Luke 08:10
- Matthew 13:12
- Matthew 13:14
- Proverbs 03:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H995, H998, H999, H1847, H2940, H3045, H3820, H3824, H4486, H7200, H7919, H7922, H7924, H8085, H8394, G50, G145, G191, G801, G1097, G1108, G1271, G1921, G1922, G1987, G1990, G2657, G3539, G3563, G4907, G4908, G4920, G5424, G5428, G5429

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:25](#); [13:11](#); [13:13](#); [13:14](#); [13:15](#); [13:19](#); [13:23](#); [13:51](#); [15:10](#); [15:17](#); [16:9](#); [16:11](#); [16:12](#); [17:13](#); [24:15](#))

unleavened bread

Definition:

The term “unleavened bread” refers to bread that is made without yeast or other leavening. This kind of bread is flat because it has no leaven to make it rise.

- When God freed the Israelites from slavery in Egypt, he told them to flee Egypt quickly without waiting for their bread to rise. So they ate unleavened bread with their meal. Since then unleavened bread is used in their yearly Passover celebrations to remind them of that time.
- Since leaven sometimes is used as a picture of sin, “unleavened bread” represents the removal of sin from a person’s life in order to live in a way that honors God.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “bread with no yeast” or “flat bread that did not rise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term is consistent with how you translate the term “yeast, leaven.”
- In some contexts, the term “unleavened bread” refers to the “Feast of Unleavened Bread” and can be translated that way.

(See also: [bread](#), [Egypt](#), [feast](#), [Passover](#), [servant](#), [sin](#), [yeast](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- Acts 12:03
- Exodus 23:14-15
- Ezra 06:21-22
- Genesis 19:1-3
- Judges 06:21
- Leviticus 08:1-3
- Luke 22:01

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4682, G106

(Go back to: [Matthew 26:17](#))

Uriah

Facts:

Uriah was a righteous man and one of King David's best soldiers. He is often referred to as "Uriah the Hittite."

- Uriah had a very beautiful wife named Bathsheba.
- David committed adultery with Uriah's wife, and she became pregnant with David's child.
- To cover up this sin, David caused Uriah to be killed in battle. Then David married Bathsheba.
- Another man named Uriah was a priest during the time of King Ahaz.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahaz](#), Bathsheba, [David](#), Hittite)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:05
- 2 Samuel 11:03
- 2 Samuel 11:26-27
- Nehemiah 03:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:12** Bathsheba's husband, a man named **Uriah**, was one of David's best soldiers. David called **Uriah** back from the battle and told him to go be with his wife. But **Uriah** refused to go home while the rest of the soldiers were in battle. So David sent **Uriah** back to the battle and told the general to place him where the enemy was strongest so that he would be killed.
- **17:13** After **Uriah** was killed, David married Bathsheba.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H223, G3774

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:6](#))

Uzziah, Azariah

Facts:

Uzziah became king of Judah at the age of 16 and reigned 52 years, which was an unusually long reign. Uzziah was also known as "Azariah."

- King Uzziah was well-known for his organized and skilled military. He had towers built to protect the city and had specially-designed weapons of war mounted on them to hurl arrows and large stones.
- As long as Uzziah served the Lord, he prospered. Toward the end of his reign, however, he became proud and he disobeyed the Lord by burning incense in the temple, which only the priest was permitted to do.
- Because of this sin, Uzziah became sick with leprosy and had to live separately from other people until the end of his reign.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Judah, [king](#), [leprosy](#), [reign](#), [watchtower](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 14:21
- Amos 01:01
- Hosea 01:01
- Isaiah 06:1-2
- Matthew 01:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5818, H5838, H5839

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:8](#); [1:9](#))

vain, vanity

Definition:

The terms "vain" and "vanity" describe something that is useless or extremely temporary.

- In the Old Testament, idols are sometimes described as "vain" things that are worthless and cannot do anything.
- If something is done "in vain," it means that the effort or action did not accomplish what was intended. The phrase "in vain" might be translated in various ways, including: "without result;" "with no result;" "for no reason;" "for no purpose," or "with no purpose."
- Depending on the context, the term "vain" could be translated as "empty," "useless," "hopeless," "worthless," "meaningless," etc.

(See also: false god, [worthy](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:1-2
- 1 Samuel 25:21-22
- 2 Peter 02:18
- Isaiah 45:19
- Jeremiah 02:29-31
- Matthew 15:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1891, H1892, H2600, H7307, H7385, H7387, H7723, H8193, H8267, H8414, G945, G1500, G2756, G2758, G2761, G3151, G3152, G3153, G3155

(Go back to: [Matthew 15:9](#))

vine

Definition:

The term “vine” refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word “vine” in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word “vine” almost always means “grapevine.”
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the “vine” and called his people the “branches.” In this context, the word “vine” could also be translated as “grapevine stem” or “grape plant stem.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [grape](#), [vineyard](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 40:09
- Genesis 49:11
- John 15:01
- Luke 22:18
- Mark 12:03
- Matthew 21:35-37

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5139, H1612, H8321, G288, G290, G1009, G1092

(Go back to: [Matthew 26:29](#))

vineyard

Definition:

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Vineyard could be also translated as “grapevine garden” or “grape plantation.”

(See also: [grape](#), [Israel](#), [vine](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 09:20-21
- Luke 13:06
- Luke 20:15
- Matthew 20:02
- Matthew 21:40-41

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1612, H3754, H3755, H8284, G290

(Go back to: [Matthew 20:1](#); [20:2](#); [20:4](#); [20:7](#); [20:8](#); [21:28](#); [21:33](#); [21:39](#); [21:40](#); [21:41](#))

virgin, virginity

Definition:

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

- The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
- Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin. (See: [Euphemism](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [Isaiah](#), [Jesus](#), [Mary](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:15-16
- Luke 01:27
- Luke 01:35
- Matthew 01:23
- Matthew 25:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:09** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a **virgin**.
- **22:04** She (Mary) was a **virgin** and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph.
- **22:05** Mary replied, "How can this be, since I am a **virgin**?"
- **49:01** An angel told a **virgin** named Mary that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a **virgin**, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1330, H1331, G3932, G3933

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:23](#); [25:1](#); [25:7](#); [25:11](#))

vision, envision

Facts:

The term “vision” refers to something that a person sees. It especially refers to something unusual or supernatural that God shows people in order to give them a message.

- Usually, visions are seen while the person is awake. However, sometimes a vision is something a person sees in a dream while asleep.
- God sends visions to tell people something that is very important. For example, Peter was shown a vision to tell him that God wanted him to welcome Gentiles.

Translation Suggestion

- The phrase “saw a vision” could be translated as “saw something unusual from God” or “God showed him something special.”
- Some languages may not have separate words for “vision” and “dream.” So a sentence such as “Daniel had dreams and visions in his mind” could be translated as something like “Daniel was dreaming while asleep and God caused him to see unusual things.”

(See also: [dream](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 09:10-12
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 10:11
- Acts 12:9-10
- Luke 01:22
- Luke 24:23
- Matthew 17:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2376, H2377, H2378, H2380, H2384, H4236, H4758, H4759, H7203, H7723, H8602, G3701, G3705, G3706

(Go back to: [Matthew 17:9](#))

voice

Definition:

The term "voice" refers to audible sound that a person makes when speaking or communicating. In the Bible, the term can be used figuratively to refer to the concepts of sound, communication, and/or obedience.

Translation Suggestions

- The expression "to hear someone's voice" can mean either "to hear someone speaking" or "to heed what someone says."
- The Bible describes God as "speaking" and having a "voice," even though God doesn't have a physical body in the same way a human being does.
- The term "voice" sometimes implies the presence of a person, as in this statement: "A voice is heard in the desert saying, 'Prepare the way of the Lord.'" This could be translated as "A person is heard calling out in the desert...." (See: [synecdoche](#))
- However, sometimes the word "voice" is used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the heavens have a "voice" that reaches the whole earth. This means that the objects in the sky communicate something to human beings about God the Creator. (See: [metaphor](#))

(See also: [call](#), [proclaim](#), splendor.)

Bible References:

- John 05:36-38
- Luke 01:42
- Luke 09:35
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 12:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6963, H7032, H7445, H8193, G2906, G5456

(Go back to: [Matthew 2:18](#); [3:3](#); [3:17](#); [12:19](#); [17:5](#); [27:46](#); [27:50](#))

walk, walked

Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as, “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [honor](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Kings 02:04
- Colossians 02:07
- Galatians 05:25
- Genesis 17:01
- Isaiah 02:05
- Jeremiah 13:10
- Micah 04:02

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1869, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, G1704, G4043, G4198, G4748

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:18](#); [9:5](#); [11:5](#); [14:25](#); [14:26](#); [14:29](#); [15:31](#))

waste, wasted, wasteland, becomes weak

Definition:

To waste something means to carelessly throw it away or to use it unwisely. Something that is a “wasteland” or a “waste” refers to land or a city that has been destroyed so that nothing lives in it anymore.

- The term “waste away” is an expression that means to become more and more sick or ruined. A person who is wasting away usually becomes very thin due to illness or lack of food.
- To “lay waste” to a city or land means to destroy it.
- Another word for a “wasteland” could be “desert” or “wilderness.” But a wasteland also implies that people used to live there and the land used to have trees and plants that produced food.

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 06:06
- Leviticus 26:39
- Matthew 26:08
- Revelation 18:15-17
- Zechariah 07:13-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H535, H1086, H1104, H1326, H2100, H2490, H2522, H2717, H2721, H2723, H3615, H3856, H4127, H4198, H4592, H4743, H5307, H5327, H7334, H7582, H7703, H7736, H7843, H8047, H8074, H8077, H8414, G684, G1287, G2049, G2673

(Go back to: [Matthew 26:8](#))

watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

Definition:

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:06
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 08:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H821, H2370, H4929, H4931, H5027, H5341, H6486, H6822, H6836, H6974, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G69, G991, G1127, G1492, G2334, G2892, G3525, G3708, G3906, G4337, G4648, G5083, G5438

(Go back to: [Matthew 14:25](#); [16:6](#); [24:42](#); [24:43](#); [25:13](#); [26:38](#); [26:40](#); [26:41](#); [27:36](#); [27:54](#); [28:4](#))

watchtower, tower

Definition:

The term “watchtower” refers to a tall structure built as a place from which guards could look out for any danger. These towers were often made of stone.

- Landowners sometimes built watchtowers from which they could guard their crops and protect them from being stolen.
- The towers often included rooms where the watchmen or family lived, so that they could guard the crops day and night.
- Watchtowers for cities were built higher than the city walls so that watchmen could see if any enemies were coming to attack the city.
- The term “watchtower” is also used as a symbol of protection from enemies. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [adversary](#), [watch](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:25-27
- Ezekiel 26:3-4
- Mark 12:1-3
- Matthew 21:33-34
- Psalm 062:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H803, H971, H975, H1785, H2918, H4026, H4029, H4692, H4707, H4869, H6076, H6438, H6836, G4444

(Go back to: [Matthew 21:33](#))

water

Definition:

In addition to its primary meaning, “water” also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

- The term “waters” refers to bodies of water or many sources of water. It can also be a general reference for a large amount of water.
- A figurative use of “waters” refers to great distress, difficulties, and suffering. For example, God promises that when we “go through the waters” he will be with us.
- The phrase “many waters” emphasizes how great the difficulties are.
- To “water” livestock and other animals means to “provide water for” them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as the spring or fountain of “living waters” for his people. This means he is the source of spiritual power and refreshment.
- In the New Testament, Jesus used the phrase “living water” to refer to the Holy Spirit working in a person to transform and bring new life.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase, “draw water” could be translated as “pull water up from a well with a bucket.”
- “Streams of living water will flow from them” could be translated as “the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them like streams of water.” Instead of “blessings” the term “gifts” or “fruits” or “godly character” could be used.
- When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase “living water” could be translated as “water that gives life” or “lifegiving water.” In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
- Depending on the context, the term “waters” or “many waters” could be translated as “great suffering (that surrounds you like water)” or “overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)” or “large amounts of water.”

(See also: [life](#), [spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [power](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 08:36-38
- Exodus 14:21
- John 04:10
- John 04:14
- John 04:15
- Matthew 14:28-30

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2222, H4325, H4529, H4857, H7301, H7783, H8248, G504, G4215, G4222, G5202, G5204

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:11](#); [3:16](#); [8:32](#); [14:28](#); [14:29](#); [17:15](#); [27:24](#))

wheat

Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions “grain” or “seeds,” it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

- The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
- After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called “straw” and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
- After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
- People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: barley, [chaff](#), [grain](#), [seed](#), [thresh](#), [winnow](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 27:36-38
- Exodus 34:21-22
- John 12:24
- Luke 03:17
- Matthew 03:12
- Matthew 13:26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1250, H2406, G4621

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:12](#); [13:25](#); [13:29](#); [13:30](#))

will of God

Definition:

The “will of God” refers to God’s desires and plans.

- God’s will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.
- It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
- The term to “will” means to “determine” or to “desire.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The “will of God” could also be translated as “what God desires” or “what God has planned” or “God’s purpose” or “what is pleasing to God.”

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:15-17
- 1 Thessalonians 04:3-6
- Colossians 04:12-14
- Ephesians 01:1-2
- John 05:30-32
- Mark 03:33-35
- Matthew 06:8-10
- Psalms 103:21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6310, H6634, H7522, G1012, G1013, G2307, G2308, G2309, G2596

(Go back to: [Matthew 6:10](#); [7:21](#); [12:50](#); [18:14](#); [26:42](#))

wine, wineskin, new wine

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: [grape](#), [vine](#), [vineyard](#), [winepress](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:23
- Genesis 09:21
- Genesis 49:12
- John 02:3-5
- John 02:10
- Matthew 09:17
- Matthew 11:18

smashed

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G1098, G3631, G3820, G3943

(Go back to: [Matthew 9:17](#); [27:34](#))

winepress

Definition:

During Bible times, a “winepress” was a large container or open place where the juice of grapes was extracted in order to make wine.

- In Israel, winepresses were usually large, wide basins that were dug out of solid rock. Clusters of grapes were put on the flat bottom of the hole and people trampled the grapes with their feet to get the grape juice to flow out.
- Usually a winepress had two levels, with the grapes being trampled in the top level so that the juice would run down into the lower level where it could be collected.
- The term “winepress” is also used figuratively in the Bible as a picture of God’s wrath being poured out on wicked people. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [grape](#), [wrath](#))

Bible References:

- Isaiah 63:02
- Mark 12:01
- Matthew 21:33
- Revelation 14:20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1660, H3342, H6333, G3025, G5276

(Go back to: [Matthew 21:33](#))

winnow, sift

Definition:

The terms “winnow” and “sift” mean to separate grain from unwanted materials. In the Bible, both words can also be used to refer to separating or dividing people.

- To “winnow” means to separate grain from the unwanted parts of the plant by tossing both the grain and chaff into the air, allowing the wind to blow the chaff away.
- The word “sift” refers to shaking the winnowed grain in a sieve to get rid of any remaining unwanted materials, such as dirt or stones.
- In the Old Testament, “winnow” and “sift” are used figuratively to describe hardship that separates the righteous people from the unrighteous people.
- Jesus also used the term “sift” in this figurative way when he was telling Simon Peter about how he and the other disciples would be tested in their faith.
- To translate these terms, use the words or phrases in the project language that refer to these activities; possible translations might be “shaking” or “fanning.” If winnowing or sifting are not known, then these terms could be translated by a term that refers to a different method of separating grain from chaff or dirt, or by describing this process.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [chaff](#), [grain](#))

Bible References:

- Isaiah 21:10
- Luke 22:31
- Matthew 03:12
- Proverbs 20:08
- Ruth 03:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2219, H5128, H5130, G4425, G4617

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:12](#))

wise, wisdom

Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: [obey](#), [fruit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 06:03
- Colossians 03:15-17
- Exodus 31:06
- Genesis 03:06
- Isaiah 19:12
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Matthew 07:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:05** She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- **18:01** When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- **23:09** Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- **45:01** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H998, H1350, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3823, H6195, H6493, H6912, H7535, H7919, H7922, H8454, G4678, G4679, G4680, G4920, G5428, G5429, G5430

(Go back to: [Matthew 7:24](#); [10:16](#); [11:19](#); [11:25](#); [12:42](#); [13:54](#); [23:34](#); [24:45](#); [25:2](#); [25:4](#); [25:8](#); [25:9](#))

Woe

Definition:

The term “woe” refers to a feeling of great distress. It also gives a warning that someone will experience severe trouble.

- The expression “woe to” is followed by a warning to people that they will experience suffering as punishment for their sins.
- In several places in the Bible, the word “woe” is repeated, to emphasize an especially terrible judgment.
- A person who says “woe is me” or “woe to me” is expressing sorrow about severe suffering.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “woe” could also be translated as “great sorrow” or “sadness” or “calamity” or “disaster.”
- Other ways to translate the expression “Woe to (name of city)” could include, “How terrible it will be for (name of city)” or “The people in (that city) will be severely punished” or “Those people will suffer greatly.”
- The expression, “Woe is me!” or “Woe to me!” could be translated as “How sad I am!” or “I am so sad!” or “How terrible this is for me!”
- The expression “Woe to you” could also be translated as “You will suffer terribly” or “You will experience terrible troubles.”

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 13:17-18
- Habakkuk 02:12
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Jeremiah 45:1-3
- Jude 01:9-11
- Luke 06:24
- Luke 17:1-2
- Matthew 23:23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H188, H190, H337, H480, H1929, H1945, H1958, G3759

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:21](#); [18:7](#); [23:13](#); [23:15](#); [23:16](#); [23:23](#); [23:25](#); [23:27](#); [23:29](#); [24:19](#); [26:24](#))

wolf, wild dogs

Definition:

A wolf is a fierce, meat-eating animal that is similar to a wild dog.

- Wolves usually hunt in groups and stalk their prey in a clever and stealthy manner.
- In the Bible, the term “wolves” is used figuratively to refer to false teachers or false prophets who destroy believers, who are compared to sheep. False teaching causes people to believe wrong things that bring harm to them.
- This comparison is based on the fact that sheep are especially vulnerable to being attacked and eaten by wolves, because they are weak and cannot defend themselves.

Translation Suggestion

- This term could be translated as “wild dog” or “wild animal.”
- Other names for wild dogs could be “jackal” or “coyote.”
- When used figuratively to refer to people, this could be translated as “evil people who harm people like animals that attack sheep.”

(See also: [evil](#), [false prophet](#), [sheep](#), [teach](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 20:29
- Isaiah 11:07
- John 10:11-13
- Luke 10:03
- Matthew 07:15
- Zephaniah 03:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2061, H3611, G3074

(Go back to: [Matthew 7:15](#); [10:16](#))

womb

Definition:

The term “womb” refers to where a baby grows inside its mother.

- This is an older term that is sometimes used in order to be polite and less direct. (See: [euphemism](#))
- A more modern term for womb is “uterus.”
- Some languages use a word like “belly” to refer to a woman’s womb or uterus.
- Use a word for this in the project language that is well-known, natural, and acceptable.

Bible References:

- Genesis 25:23
- Genesis 25:24-26
- Genesis 38:27-28
- Genesis 49:25
- Luke 02:21
- Luke 11:27
- Luke 23:29
- Matthew 19:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H990, H4578, H7356, H7358, G1064, G2836, G3388

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:18](#); [1:23](#); [19:12](#); [24:19](#))

word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

The term “word of truth” is another way of referring to “God’s word,” which is his message or teaching. It does not refer to just one word.

- God’s word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation, and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
- This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone and it refers to God’s word, it could be translated as “the message” or “God’s word” or “the teachings.” Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.
- When the Bible refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Truth.”
- “Word of truth” could be translated as “God’s true message” or “God’s word, which is true.”
- It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: [prophet](#), [true](#), Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:01
- 1 Kings 13:01
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 08:11
- John 05:39
- Acts 06:02
- Acts 12:24
- Romans 01:02
- 2 Corinthians 06:07
- Ephesians 01:13
- 2 Timothy 03:16

- James 01:18
- James 02:8-9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:07** In **God's word** he commands his people, "Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him."
- **33:06** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the **word of God**."
- **42:03** Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- **42:07** Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**."
- **45:10** Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- **48:12** But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**."
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H561, H565, H1697, H3068, G3056, G4487

(Go back to: [Matthew 15:6](#); [21:42](#); [22:29](#); [26:54](#); [26:56](#))

work, works, deeds

Definition:

The term “work” refers generally either to the action of expending effort in order to accomplish something, or to the result of that action. The term “works” refers generally to actions as a whole (that is, things that have been done or that need to be done).

- In the Bible, these terms are commonly used both in reference to God and humans.
- When used in reference to God, the term “work” in the Bible often refers to God's action of creating the universe or saving his people (either from enemies, from sin, or both).
- God's works refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place.
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” could be “deeds” or “actions” or “things that are done.”
- God's “works” or “deeds” or the “work of his hands” could also be translated as “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “things that God does.”
- The expression “the work of God” could be translated as “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “everything that God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- When work is done for God or others, it can be translated as “service” or “ministry.”

(See also: [fruit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [miracle](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:12
- Acts 02:8-11
- Daniel 04:37
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Galatians 02:15-16
- James 02:17
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Micah 02:07
- Romans 03:28
- Titus 03:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4566, H4567, H4611, H4659, H5949, G2041

(Go back to: [Matthew 5:16](#); [11:2](#); [16:27](#); [23:3](#); [23:5](#); [26:10](#))

world, worldly

Definition:

The term “world” usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term “worldly” describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

- In its most general sense, the term “world” refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
- In many contexts, “world” actually means “people in the world.”
- Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
- The apostles also used “world” to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
- People and things characterized by these values are said to be “worldly.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “world” could also be translated as “universe” or “people of this world” or “corrupt things in the world” or “evil attitudes of people in the world.”
- The phrase “all the world” often means “many people” and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, “all the world came to Egypt” could be translated as “many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt” or “people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there.”
- Another way to translate “all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census” would be “many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went...”
- Depending on the context, the term “worldly” could be translated as, “evil” or “sinful” or “selfish” or “ungodly” or “corrupt” or “influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world.”
- The phrase “saying these things in the world” can be translated as “saying these things to the people of the world.”
- In other contexts, “in the world” could also be translated as “living among the people of the world” or “living among ungodly people.”

(See also: [corrupt](#), [heaven](#), Rome, godly)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:15
- 1 John 04:05
- 1 John 05:05
- John 01:29
- Matthew 13:36-39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H776, H2309, H2465, H5769, H8398, G1093, G2886, G2889, G3625

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:8](#); [5:14](#); [13:35](#); [13:38](#); [16:26](#); [18:7](#); [24:14](#); [24:21](#); [25:34](#); [26:13](#))

worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless

Definition:

The term “worthy” describes someone or something that deserves respect or honor. To “have worth” means to be valuable or important. The term “worthless” means to not have any value.

- Being worthy is related to being valuable or having importance
- To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any special notice.
- To not feel worthy means to feel less important than someone else or to not feel deserving of being treated with honor or kindness.
- The term “unworthy” and the term “worthless” have related, but different meanings. To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any honor or recognition. To be “worthless” means to not have any purpose or value.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Worthy” could be translated as “deserving” or “important” or “valuable.”
- The word “worth” could be translated as “value” or “importance.”
- The phrase to “have worth” could also be translated as to “be valuable” or to “be important.”
- The phrase “is worth more than” could be translated as “is more valuable than.”
- Depending on the context, the term, “unworthy” could also be translated as “unimportant” or “dishonorable” or “undeserving.”
- The term “worthless” could be translated as “with no value” or “with no purpose” or “worth nothing.”

(See also: [honor](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 22:04
- 2 Thessalonians 01:11-12
- Acts 13:25
- Acts 25:25-27
- Acts 26:31
- Colossians 01:9-10
- Jeremiah 08:19
- Mark 01:07
- Matthew 03:10-12
- Philippians 01:25-27

Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H639, H1929, H3644, H4242, H4373, H4392, H4592, H4941, H6994, H7386, H7939, G96, G514, G515, G516, G2425, G2661, G2735

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:8](#); [3:11](#); [8:8](#); [10:10](#); [10:11](#); [10:13](#); [10:37](#); [10:38](#); [22:8](#))

wrath, fury

Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. The Bible describes both people and God as experiencing intense anger. When speaking about God's "wrath," make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage (which might be true of a human person).

- In the Bible, "wrath" often refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- God's wrath is just and holy. When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful human rage.

(See also: [judge](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- Luke 03:7
- Luke 21:23
- Matthew 03:07
- Revelation 14:10
- Romans 01:18
- Romans 05:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H639, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2740, H3707, H3708, H5678, H7107, H7109, H7110, H7265, H7267, G2372, G3709, G3949, G3950

(Go back to: [Matthew 3:7](#))

wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful

Definition:

To “wrong” someone means to treat that person unjustly and dishonestly.

- The term “mistreat” means to act badly or roughly toward someone, causing physical or emotional harm to that person.
- The term “hurt” is more general and means to “cause someone harm in some way.” It often has the meaning of “physically injure.”
- Depending on the context, these terms could also be translated as “do wrong to” or, “treat unjustly” or “cause harm to” or treat in a harmful way” or “injure.”

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26
- Exodus 22:21
- Genesis 16:05
- Luke 06:28
- Matthew 20:13-14
- Psalms 071:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H816, H2248, H2250, H2255, H2257, H2398, H2554, H2555, H3238, H3637, H4834, H5062, H5142, H5230, H5627, H5753, H5766, H5791, H5792, H5916, H6031, H6087, H6127, H6231, H6485, H6565, H6586, H7451, H7489, H7563, H7665, H7667, H7686, H8133, H8267, H8295, G91, G92, G93, G95, G264, G824, G983, G984, G1536, G1626, G1651, G1727, G1908, G2556, G2558, G2559, G2607, G3076, G3077, G3762, G4122, G5195, G5196

(Go back to: [Matthew 20:13](#))

year

Definition:

When used literally, the term “year” in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

- A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into twelve months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
- In both calendar systems a year has twelve months. But an extra thirteenth month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is eleven days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
- In the Bible, the term “year” is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, “the year of Yahweh” or “in the year of drought” or “the favorable year of the Lord.” In these contexts, “year” could be translated as “time” or “season” or “time period.”

(See also: month)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:31
- Acts 19:8-10
- Daniel 08:01
- Exodus 12:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H7620, H7657, H8140, H8141, G1763, G2094

(Go back to: [Matthew 9:20](#))

yeast, leaven, unleavened

Definition:

“Leaven” is a general term for a substance that causes bread dough to expand and rise. “Yeast” is a specific kind of leaven.

- In some English translations, the word for leaven is translated as “yeast,” which is a modern leavening agent that fills the bread dough with gas bubbles, making the dough expand before baking it. The yeast is kneaded into the dough so that it spreads throughout the entire lump of dough.
- In Old Testament times, the leavening or rising agent was produced by allowing the dough to sit for awhile. Small amounts of dough from a previous batch of dough were saved as leavening for the next batch.
- When the Israelites escaped from Egypt, they didn’t have time to wait for bread dough to rise, so they made bread without leaven to take with them on their journey. As a reminder of this, every year the Jewish people celebrate Passover by eating bread that has no leaven in it.
- The term “leaven” or “yeast” is used figuratively in the Bible as a picture of how sin spreads through a person’s life or how sin can influence other people.
- It can also refer to false teaching which often spreads to many people and influences them.
- The term “leaven” is also used in a positive way to explain how the influence of God’s kingdom spreads from person to person.

Translation Suggestions

- This could be translated as “leaven” or “substance that causes dough to rise” or “expanding agent.” The word “rise” could be expressed as “expand” or “get bigger” or “puff up.”
- If a local leavening agent is used for making bread dough rise, that term can be used. If the language has a well-known, general term that means, “leavening,” this would be the best term to use.

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Passover](#), [unleavened bread](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 12:08
- Galatians 05:9-10
- Luke 12:1
- Luke 13:21
- Matthew 13:33
- Matthew 16:08

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2556, H2557, H4682, H7603, G106, G2219, G2220

(Go back to: [Matthew 13:33](#); [16:6](#); [16:11](#); [16:12](#))

yoke, yoked, tied

Definition:

A yoke is a piece of wood or metal attached to two or more animals to connect them for the purpose of pulling a plow or a cart. There are also several figurative meanings for this term.

- The term “yoke” is used figuratively to refer to something that joins people for the purpose of working together, such as in serving Jesus.
- Paul used the term “yokefellow” to refer to someone who was serving Christ as he was. This could also be translated as “fellow worker” or “fellow servant” or “coworker.”
- The term “yoke” is also often used figuratively to refer to a heavy load that someone has to carry, such as when being oppressed by slavery or persecution.
- In most contexts, it is best to translate this term literally, using the local term for a yoke that is used for farming.
- Other ways to translate the figurative use of this term could be, “oppressive burden” or “heavy load” or “bond,” depending on the context.

(See also: [bind](#), [burden](#), [oppress](#), [persecute](#), [servant](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 15:10
- Galatians 05:01
- Genesis 27:40
- Isaiah 09:04
- Jeremiah 27:04
- Matthew 11:30
- Philippians 04:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3627, H4132, H4133, H5674, H5923, H6776, G2086, G2218

(Go back to: [Matthew 11:29](#); [11:30](#))

Zadok

Facts:

Zadok was the name of an important high priest in Israel during the reign of King David.

- When Absalom rebelled against King David, Zadok supported David and helped bring the ark of the covenant back into Jerusalem.
- Years later, he also took part in the ceremony to anoint David's son Solomon as king.
- Two different men by the name of Zadok helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem during Nehemiah's time.
- Zadok was also the name of King Jotham's grandfather.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: ark of the covenant, [David](#), [Jotham](#), Nehemiah, [reign](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 24:1-3
- 1 Kings 01:26-27
- 2 Samuel 15:24-26
- Matthew 01:12-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6659, G4524

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:14](#))

Zebedee

Facts:

Zebedee was a fisherman from Galilee who is known because of his sons, James and John, who were Jesus' disciples. They are often identified in the New Testament as the "sons of Zebedee."

- Zebedee's sons were also fishermen and worked with him to catch fish.
- James and John quit their fishing work with their father Zebedee and left to go follow Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [disciple](#), [fishermen](#), [James \(son of Zebedee\)](#), [John \(the apostle\)](#))

Bible References:

- John 21:1-3
- Luke 05:8-11
- Mark 01:19-20
- Matthew 04:21-22
- Matthew 20:20
- Matthew 26:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2199

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:21](#); [10:2](#); [20:20](#); [26:37](#); [27:56](#))

Zebulun

Facts:

Zebulun was the last son born to Jacob and Leah and is the name of one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- The Israelite tribe of Zebulun was given the land directly west of the Salt Sea.
- Sometimes the name “Zebulun” is also used to refer to the land where this Israelite tribe lived.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jacob](#), Leah, Salt Sea, [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 01:1-5
- Genesis 30:20
- Isaiah 09:01
- Judges 04:10
- Matthew 04:13
- Matthew 04:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2074, H2075, G2194

(Go back to: [Matthew 4:13](#); [4:15](#))

Zerubbabel

Facts:

Zerubbabel was the name of two Israelite men in the Old Testament.

- One of these was a descendant of Jehoiakim and Zedekiah.
- A different Zerubbabel, son of Shealtiel, was the head of the tribe of Judah during the time of Ezra and Nehemiah, when Cyrus king of Persia released the Israelites from their captivity in Babylon.
- Zerubbabel and the high priest Joshua were among those who helped rebuild the temple and altar of God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), captive, Cyrus, Ezra, [high priest](#), Jehoiakim, Joshua, [Judah](#), Nehemiah, Persia, Zedekiah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:19-21
- Ezra 02:1-2
- Ezra 03:8-9
- Luke 03:27-29
- Matthew 01:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2216, H2217, G2216

(Go back to: [Matthew 1:12](#); [1:13](#))

Zion, Mount Zion

Definition:

Originally, the term “Zion” or “Mount Zion” referred to a stronghold or fortress that King David captured from the Jebusites. Both these terms became other ways of referring to Jerusalem.

- Mount Zion and Mount Moriah were two of the hills that the city of Jerusalem was located on. Later, “Zion” and “Mount Zion” became used as general terms to refer to both of these mountains and to the city of Jerusalem. Sometimes they also referred to the temple that was located in Jerusalem. (See: [metonymy](#))
- David named Zion, or Jerusalem, the “City of David.” This is different from David’s hometown, Bethlehem, which was also called the City of David.
- The term “Zion” is used in other figurative ways, to refer to Israel or to God’s spiritual kingdom or to the new, heavenly Jerusalem that God will create.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [David](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Bethlehem](#), Jebusites)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:05
- Amos 01:02
- Jeremiah 51:35
- Psalm 076:1-3
- Romans 11:26

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6726

(Go back to: [Matthew 21:5](#))

Contributors

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community

Aaron Fenlason

Abner Bauman

Adam Van Goor

Alan Bird

Alan Borkenhagen

Alfred Van Dellen

Alice Wright

Allen Bair

Allyson Presswood Nance

Amanda Adams

Andrew Belcher

Andrew Johnson

Andrew Rice

Angelo Palo

Anita Moreau

April Linton

Aurora Lee

Barbara Summers

Barbara White

Becky Hancock

Beryl Carpenter

Bethany Fenlason

Betty Forbes

Bianca Elliott

Bill Cleveland

Bill Pruett

Bob Britting

Bram van den Heuvel

Brian Metzger

Bruce Bridges

Bruce Collier

Bruce Smith

Caleb Worgess

Carlyle Kilmore

Carol Pace

Carol Heim

Caroline Crawford

Caroline Fleming

Caroline S Wong

Carol Lee

Carol Moyer

Carolyn Lafferty

Catherine C Newton

Charese Jackson

Charlotte Gibson

Charlotte Hobbs

Cheryl A Chojnacki
Cheryl Stieben
Cheryl Warren
Christian Berry
Christine Harrison
Clairmene Pascal
Connie Bryan
Connie Goss
Craig Balden
Craig Lins
Craig Scott
Cynthia J Puckett
Dale Hahs
Dale Masser
Daniel Lauk
Daniel Summers
Darlene M Hopkins
Darlene Silas
David Boerschlein
David F Withee
David Glover
David J Forbes
David Mullen
David N Hanley
David Sandlin
David Shortess
David Smith
David Whisler
Debbie Nispel
Debbie Piper
Deborah Bartow
Deborah Bush
Deborah Miniard
Dennis Jackson
Dianne Forrest
Donna Borkenhagen
Donna Mullis
Douglas Hayes
Drew Curley
Ed Davis
Edgar Navera
Edward Kosky
Edward Quigley
Elaine VanRegenmorter
Elizabeth Nataly Silvestre Herbas
Ellen Lee
Emeline Thermidor
Emily Lee
Esther Roman
Esther Trew
Esther Zirk
Ethel Lynn Baker
Evangeline Puen
Evelyn Wildgust
Fletcher Coleman

Freda Dibble
Gail Spell
Gary Greer
Gary Shogren
Gay Ellen Stulp
Gene Gossman
George Arlyn Briggs
Gerald L. Naughton
Glen Tallent
Grace Balwit
Grace Bird
Greg Stoffregen
Gretchen Stencil
Hallie Miller
Harry Harriss
Heather Hicks
Helen Morse
Hendrik deVries
Henry Bult
Henry Whitney
Hilary O'Sullivan
Ibrahim Audu
Ines Gipson
Irene J Dodson
Jackie Jones
Jacqueline Bartley
James Giddens
James Pedersen
James Pohlig
James Roe
Janet O'Herron
Janice Connor
Jaqueline Rotruck
Jeanette Friesen
Jeff Graf
Jeff Kennedy
Jeff Martin
Jennifer Cunneen
Jenny Thomas
Jerry Lund
Jessica Lauk
Jim Frederick
Jim Lee
Jimmy Warren
Jim Rotruck
Jim Swartzentruber
Jody Garcia
Joe Chater
Joel Bryan
Joey Howell
John Anderson
John Geddis
John D Rogers
John Hutchins
John Luton

John Pace
John P Tornifolio
Jolene Valeu
Jon Haahr
Joseph Fithian
Joseph Greene
Joseph Wharton
Joshua Berkowitz
Joshua Calhoun
Joshua Rister
Josh Wondra
Joy Anderson
Joyce Jacobs
Joyce Pedersen
JT Crowder
Judi Brodeen
Judith Cline
Judith C Yon
Julia N Bult
Patty Li
Julie Susanto
Kahar Barat
Kannah Sellers
Kara Anderson
Karen Davie
Karen Dreesen
Karen Fabean
Karen Riecks
Karen Smith
Karen Turner
Kathleen Glover
Kathryn Hendrix
Kathy Mentink
Katrina Geurink
Kay Myers
Kelly Strong
Ken Haugh
Kim Puterbaugh
Kristin Butts Page
Kristin Rinne
Kwesi Opoku-debrah
Langston Spell
Larry Sallee
Lawrence Lipe
Lee Sipe
Leonard Smith
Lester Harper
Lia Hadley
Linda Buckman
Linda Dale Barton
Linda Havemeier
Linda Homer
Linda Lee Sebastien
Linn Peterson
Liz Dakota

Lloyd Box
Luis Keelin
Madeline Kilmore
Maggie D Paul
Marc Nelson
Mardi Welo
Margo Hoffman
Marilyn Cook
Marjean Swann
Marjorie Francis
Mark Albertini
Mark Chapman
Mark Thomas
Marselene Norton
Mary Jane Davis
Mary Jean Stout
Mary Landon
Mary Scarborough
Megan Kidwell
Melissa Roe
Merton Dibble
Meseret Abraham-Zemedede
Michael Bush
Michael Connor
Michael Francis
Michael Geurink
Mike Tisdell
Mickey White
Miel Horrilleno
Monique Greer
Morgan Mellette
Morris Anderson
Nancy C. Naughton
Nancy Neu
Nancy VanCott
Neal Snook
Nicholas Scovil
Nick Dettman
Nils Friberg
Noah Crabtree
Pamela B Johnston
Pamela Nungesser
Pamela Roberts
Pam Gullifer
Pat Ankney
Pat Giddens
Patricia Brougher
Patricia Carson
Patricia Cleveland
Patricia Foster
Patricia Middlebrooks
Paul Mellema
Paula Carlson
Paula Oestreich
Paul Holloway

Paul Nungesser
Peggy Anderson
Peggyrose Swartzentruber
Peter Polloni
Phillip Harms
Phyllis Mortensen
Priscilla Enggren
Rachel Agheyisi
Rachel Ropp
Raif Turner
Ray Puen
Reina Y Mora
Rene Bahrenfuss
Renee Triplett
Rhonda Bartels
Richard Beatty
Richard Moreau
Richard Rutter
Richard Stevens
Rick Keaton
Robby Little
Robert W Johnson
Rochelle Hook
Rodney White
Rolaine Franz
Ronald D Hook
Rosario Baria
Roxann Carey
Roxanne Pittard
Ruben Michael Garay
Russell Isham
Russ Perry
Ruth Calo
Ruth E Withee
Ruth Montgomery
Ryan Blizek
Sam Todd
Samuel Njuguna
Sandy Anderson
Sandy Blanes
Sara Giesmann
Sara Van Cott (Barnes)
Sharon Johnson
Sharon Peterson
Sharon Shortess
Shelly Harms
Sherie Nelson
Sherman Sebastien
Sherry Mosher
Stacey Swanson
Steve Gibbs
Steve Mercier
Susan Langohr
Susan Quigley
Susan Snook

Suzanne Richards
Sylvia Thomas
Sze Suze Lau
Tabitha Price
Tammy L Enns
Tammy White
Teresa Everett-Leone
Teresa Linn
Terri Collins
Theresa Baker
Thomas Jopling
Thomas Nickell
Thomas Warren
Tim Coleman
Tim Ingram
Tim Linn
Tim Lovestrand
Tim Mentink
Tom Penry
Tom William Warren
Toni Shuma
Tracie Pogue
Tricia Coffman
Vicki Ivester
Victoria G DeKraker
Victor M Prieto
Vivian Kamph
Vivian Richardson
Ward Pyles
Warren Blaisdell
Wayne Homer
Wendy Coleman
Wendy Colon
Wilbur Zirk
Wil Gipson
William Carson
William Cline
William Dickerson
William Smitherman
William Wilder
Yvonne Tallent

unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
David Trombold, M. Div.
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages

James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Larry Saltee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
David Trombold
Dean Ropp
Gene Mullen
James Vigen
Leonard Smith
Nicholas Alsop
Michael Francis
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
David Trombold, M. Div.
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Larry Saltee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
David Trombold
Dean Ropp
Gene Mullen
James Vigen
Leonard Smith
Nicholas Alsop
Michael Francis
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages

Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Ben Jore, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics
Bev Staley
Carol Brinneman
Jody Garcia
Kara Anderson
Kim Puterbaugh
Lizz Carlton
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors

Andrew Belcher
David Book
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Lizz Carlton
Jan Zanutto
Matthew Latham
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Richard Joki
Door43 World Missions Community